

# FRONTISPIECE A

1	<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	} X 1000	17	<i>Enterobius vermicularis</i> X 350
2	<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i> cyst, in saline		18	<i>Gastrodiscoides lousianae</i> X 275
3	<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i> cyst, iodine stained		19	<i>Schistosoma mansoni</i> X 200
4	<i>Entamoeba coli</i>		20	<i>Schistosoma haematobium</i> X 200
5	<i>Entamoeba coli</i> cyst, in saline		21	<i>Echinococcus</i> X 7
6	<i>Entamoeba coli</i> 4 nucleated cyst iodine stained		22	<i>Ixodes aegypti</i> X 5
7	<i>Trichomonas hominis</i>		23	<i>Glossina palpalis</i> X 2
8	<i>Giardia</i>		24	<i>Phlebotomus papillipes</i>
9	<i>Giardia</i> cyst		25	<i>Phlebotomus argentipes</i>
10a	<i>Microfilaria</i> of <i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i>		26	<i>Pediculus humanus</i> X 9
10b	<i>Microfilaria</i> of <i>Wuchereria malayi</i>	} X 250	27	<i>Dermacentor andersoni</i> X 6
11	Hookworm ova		28	<i>Trombicula olonchus</i> , adult X 8 (Nymph in set)
12	<i>Ascaris</i> ova (fertilized)		29	<i>Xenopaulia cheopis</i> X 8
13	<i>Ascaris</i> ova (unfertilized)		(Actual size of insects in ring)	
14	<i>Trichuris trichiura</i> ( <i>Trichocephalus trichiurus</i> )			
15	<i>Taenia saginata</i>			
16	<i>Fasciolopsis busaki</i>			

The approximate magnification of each figure is shown

FRONTISPIECE B  
(Giemsa's stain -  $\times 2,000$ )

- A Benign tertian (*Plasmodium vivax*)  
Young ring form, amœboid trophozoite, three-quarter-grown trophozoite, developing schizont, dividing schizont, male gametocyte, and female gametocyte
- B Malignant tertian (*P. falciparum*)  
Young ring form, four ring forms, including one accolé form, in one red cell; band form, a larger ring form with Maurer's dots, mature schizont, or rosette, male crescent, and female crescent
- C Quartan (*P. malariae*)  
\* Young ring form, young band form, large band form, schizont; merozoites (free), male gametocyte, and female gametocyte
- D (*P. ovale*)  
Young ring form, band form, two schizonts in one corpuscle, infected corpuscle showing a fimbriated outline, dividing schizont; male gametocyte; and female gametocyte
- E Trypanosomes  
(a) *T. gambiense* (b) *T. brucei* (c) *T. cruzi*
- F Bartonella
- G *Spirillum minus*
- H *Treponema recurrentis*
- I Leishmania  
(a) 'Round' forms (Leishman-Donovan bodies) from spleen puncture  
(b) 'Torpedo' forms of Leishman-Donovan bodies  
(c) The flagellate forms
- J *Leptospira icterohæmorrhagiae* (the rope-like spirals would not show in a Giemsa-stained specimen)
- K Comma bacilli

THE  
PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE  
OF  
TROPICAL MEDICINE

BY

L. EVERARD NAPIER

*Companion of the Order of the Indian Empire  
Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians of London,  
Formerly Director and Professor of Tropical Medicine,  
Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine*

*Consultant to the Secretary of War Visiting Lecturer  
on Tropical Medicine Army Medical School,  
Visiting Lecturer on Tropical Medicine Harvard  
Medical School Boston, Formerly Visiting Professor  
of Tropical Medicine Tulane University, New Orleans,  
Formerly Visiting Professor of Medicine  
New York University*

1946

---

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY · NEW YORK



## PREFACE

The writer has attempted to give an accurate and concise account of the more important tropical diseases from the points of view of epidemiology, ætiology, pathology, symptomatology, diagnosis prevention treatment and prognosis, and to discuss in a general way such relevant subjects as methods of mitigating the effects of a tropical climate nutrition and anæmia in the tropics and snakes and snake bite. He hopes that the book will be useful to the student the practitioner and the public health worker and that it will be looked upon rather as a textbook than as a book of reference. For this reason he has not attempted to follow that mirage of completeness either as regards the individual subjects or the field of tropical medicine as a whole but with the object of keeping the presentations both orderly and consecutive the writer has not hesitated to exercise his discretion in omitting reference to work that does not appear to him to have any direct bearing on the subject as he has presented it.

What diseases should be considered as tropical is a question that is discussed in the text of this book (see p. 3). No very satisfactory answer is given. However, the writer still had to decide what he was to include in the book and although he followed a preconceived plan he admits that many of his decisions are impossible to defend on logical grounds and that some are difficult to uphold on any grounds.

Perhaps the most glaring omissions are two infectious diseases which are of very great importance in the tropics namely smallpox and typhoid fever. These diseases are of course not confined to the tropics—but this is true of many other diseases included in the book—nor do they present any very special features in the tropics. It is true that the mild form of smallpox *alastrim* occurs in many tropical countries and provides a degree of protection to the population against infection by the more virulent strains of the virus. This form of the disease has seldom been recognized in India where in some recent years there have been nearly a hundred thousand smallpox deaths annually despite the extensive vaccination organization.

The immunity to typhoid fever reputed to be enjoyed by some native populations in the tropics is almost certainly a result of infection in childhood. With the advance of sanitation in India for example, paradoxically the disease appears to be increasing especially in the adolescent and young adult groups of the middle class indigenous population. This apparent increase is probably the result of a higher rate of infection in the economically more important age groups. Typhoid is however in the writer's experience generally a milder disease in the tropics.

Both these diseases are well described in the ordinary textbooks of medicine and it is on these grounds that their omission is justified.

The omission of tuberculosis is less easily excused. In many tropical countries this disease is making a serious bid to oust malaria from its position as the most important cause of death and sickness and although tuberculosis is a cosmopolitan disease its epidemiology pathology and symptomatology certainly exhibit special features when it occurs in tropical populations. The only excuse the writer can offer is that our present state

of knowledge of tuberculosis in the tropics is not sufficiently standardized to make possible the preparation of a concise account of the subject, and he therefore felt that it would be better to omit it altogether.

Another obvious omission is a discussion on eye diseases and blindness in the tropics. This is a very important subject in which most practitioners in the tropics will sooner or later find themselves involved but it is a specialist subject that appears to demand separate treatment.

In most books on tropical medicine considerable space is devoted to mycotic infections, sometimes—the writer feels—more than can logically be justified, although he himself has possibly erred too far in the other direction by omitting all reference to the systemic mycoses and only including those of the superficial mycoses that are common and particularly troublesome in the tropics.

Turning to errors of commission, one finds it difficult to justify the inclusion of tularæmia which is in no sense a tropical disease, though its modes of transmission are similar to those of several tropical diseases, it is however the usual practice to include tularæmia in books on tropical medicine and the writer has, perhaps somewhat weakly, fallen into line. Similarly, there are several helminthic infections that are certainly not tropical here it was felt that, by including them the section of the book on the commoner helminthic infections of man could be made more or less complete at the expenditure of very little extra space.

Descriptions of laboratory procedures have been reduced to a minimum and only the simplest tests and examinations that practitioners should be able to carry out themselves are described. Those who propose to undertake laboratory work on a more extensive scale will require a laboratory handbook such as Craig's *Laboratory Diagnosis of Protozoan Diseases* or the more comprehensive *Laboratory Methods of the United States Army* by Simmons and Gentzkow.

## LITERATURE

The writer would have been failing in his duty, if in writing this book he had not made free use of the existing textbooks of tropical medicine, especially Rogers and Megaw's *Tropical Medicine*, Manson-Bahr's *Manson's Tropical Diseases*, Strong's *Stitt's Tropical Medicine*, and Craig and Faust's *Clinical Parasitology*. Scott's *History of Tropical Medicine* and the appropriate chapters in the *British Encyclopædia of Medical Practice* were also used freely. As for the periodicals, the special journals the *American Journal of Tropical Medicine*, the *Transactions of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine*, the *Annals of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology* and the *Archiv für Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hygiene*, the Indian journals, the *Indian Medical Gazette*, the *Indian Journal of Medical Research*, and the *Records of the Malaria Institute of India*, and of the general medical journals, the *Journal of the American Medical Association*, the *Lancet*, and the *British Medical Journal*, the *Bulletin of the Health Organization of the League of Nations*, and of course, above all, the comprehensive *Tropical Diseases Bulletin* have provided the most useful material.

## REFERENCES

There is no satisfactory solution to the problem of references in a book of this kind. It would be out of the question to cite all important work on each subject, and yet on the other hand there are few subjects about which our knowledge has become so standardized that one can be entirely impersonal. Some of the authors of books on tropical medicine refer to other

workers freely by name without giving any supporting textual references. Thus, the present writer has found a little irritating, and so he has adopted the practice of referring to individual workers by name, perhaps less frequently, but as far as possible giving the specific reference when he does mention a name. Repetition has been avoided, as far as possible, so that when a reference is missing the reader should turn to an earlier chapter on a cognate subject. A few classical references are included but for the most part the references are to recent work. This rather haphazard selection of references has led, the writer finds in retrospect to his giving prominence to his own work, and to some extent to that of his immediate associates out of all proportion to their importance, and to his frequently failing to mention the more important work of others, which he hopes will be forgiven.

Such references as are given, the writer believes, are accurate. For checking the references in the earlier chapters, he has to thank Mr. Sur, the librarian of the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine.

### ILLUSTRATIONS

The majority of the figures and illustrations are original. When they have been borrowed from the books or papers of other writers, the source is given. Permission to use these illustrations is gratefully acknowledged. The one or two exceptions to this rule are charts that have been taken from the museum of the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine. It has not been possible to trace their source. The original drawings of the coloured plates were made by Mr. H. Roy, the artist at the Calcutta School, Mr. Roy, Mr. Mullick (the assistant artist at the Calcutta School), Mrs. Lawrence, and Miss Vera Morel, the two latter of New Orleans, drew the 'cycles' from the writer's very crude sketches. The assistance given by these artists is gratefully acknowledged.

The writer has to thank Colonel W. S. Robertson, commanding the 47th British General Hospital, for the loan of the skiagrams shown in Plates XIII and XIV and for the temperature charts from which Fig. 135 was copied.

### ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The writer's sincerest thanks are due to Lieut.-Colonel Seward, Officer in charge, Medical Division, 47th British General Hospital, for reading through all the proofs of the earlier chapters, for pointing out many mistakes that had been overlooked and for making several valuable suggestions that have now been adopted, to Dr. R. N. Chaudhuri for material help in several chapters and assistance with the proof reading, to Dr. Harry Senekjic for his useful note on bejel, to Dr. Sundara Rao for his collaboration in the chapter on guinea worm and for his assistance with the chapter on filariasis, especially for the photographs illustrating that chapter, to Dr. S. K. Ganguli for his collaboration in the chapter on snakes and snake bite, and above all to Dr. John Lowe not only for his contribution, the chapter on leprosy, but for reading through the typescript and proofs of the first part of the book and making many constructive criticisms.

Valuable assistance has been given by many of the writer's colleagues in Calcutta\* and at Tulane. His thanks are especially due to Dr. Grace Goldsmith, Associate Professor of Medicine, Tulane Medical School, for

\* The first part of this book up to and including the chapter on leprosy was published privately in India in 1943. The completed book is now published in the United States. It has been possible to make a certain number of corrections, alterations and additions in the previously published part of the book to conform with recent advances but for various reasons these have had to be strictly limited.

constructive criticism in the chapters on diet and dietetic diseases, to Dr F H Wilson Associate Professor of Parasitology, for reading the typescript of most of the later chapters especially those on helminth infections and for pointing out many mistakes and inaccuracies, to his friend, Dr J. Walker Associate Professor of Tropical Medicine, for his caustic but usually helpful criticism especially in the chapters on malaria, sleeping sickness and yaws to Miss A M Lyman for her careful reading of the typescript and to his secretary, Mrs Virginia Gill, for her accurate typing.

The section of helminth diseases was written in the helminthological atmosphere of the Department of Tropical Medicine of the Tulane Medical School where the writer has had the exceptional opportunity of supplementing his previous knowledge and personal experience of this subject by attending the excellent lectures and demonstrations of Dr E C Faust, Dr J S D Antoni and other members of the staff of the department. He must however assume full personal responsibility for his interpretation of this teaching.

The writer's special thanks are due to Brigadier G Covill CIP, IMS Director of the Malaria Institute of India and to Dr R Kirk of the Sudan Medical Service for going through the final drafts of the malaria and sleeping sickness sections respectively for pointing out errors of fact, and for making constructive suggestions. While it was possible to make corrections and to take advantage of the suggestions, it was not possible to send the proofs to these officers for final approval and the writer must assume full responsibility for the correct interpretation of their suggestions.

For reading the page proofs of this edition, I am very greatly indebted to Miss Joan McAllister and Dr David Weinman, who kindly volunteered to undertake this task when I had to leave for Europe on very short notice.

I am extremely grateful to The Macmillan Company who undertook the publication of this book during very difficult times, and especially to Mrs Marie Ranzini on whom a grave responsibility devolved while this edition was in process of manufacture.

# INTRODUCTION

## THE EMPHASIS IN TROPICAL MEDICINE

Soon after Japan entered the war, a number of army medical officers arrived in India from Great Britain and the United States and, in order to initiate them into medical practice in the tropics, classes were organized. It fell to the writer to conduct some of these classes. By way of introduction to his lectures he attempted to analyse the difference between medical practice in temperate climates (for which most of these men had received their training), and practice in the tropics (which was to be their lot for a time at least). Is it he wondered, just that different diseases are encountered? Surely, the difference is a deeper, more significant one, otherwise, it would only be a matter of extending one's reading to include the rarer tropical diseases that are usually omitted from the more concise textbooks of medicine. He believes that the main difference lies rather in the special emphasis given to certain aspects of those diseases that are looked upon as tropical diseases. What are the special emphases, and what are the reasons for them? It will perhaps be worth considering a few of these, and it will be more convenient to take them up in the order in which they are usually presented rather than in the order of their importance.

**History**—Tropical medicine is a young, rather self-conscious branch of medical science much of its history has happened within the lifetime of the older of the present-day writers and, even though these writers may themselves have played little part in the historical events they often knew the principal actors personally. But this emphasis on history is more than an exhibition of self-consciousness, the history of a disease and of the discovery of its ætiology forms a necessary background for the proper appreciation of our present state of knowledge, which must never be looked upon as final however complete it may appear to be.

**Epidemiology**—The diseases of Aberdeen are much the same as those of London or even of New York, Berlin, or Vienna and although respiratory diseases may be more common in the winter, and certain infectious diseases at other seasons there is no sharp segregation to any one time of year of the bulk of the diseases with which the practitioner in temperate countries has to deal. Diseases in the tropics however, show marked variations from place to place, and from season to season. Therefore, it is necessary to know at least roughly the geographical and seasonal distribution of each disease so that one knows how, where and when to expect to encounter the disease, and does not lightly diagnose kala-azar in central Africa, sleeping sickness in India, plague in the Punjab in July or sand fever anywhere in the northern hemisphere in January. Other environmental factors also assume a far greater importance in tropical than in temperate climates e.g. town compared with country residence, the type of the terrain, the rainfall of the locality, and the nature of the water-supply. The state of nutrition and the personal habits of the individual, always important in any climate frequently dominate the picture in the tropics.

**Ætiology and prevention**—The bulk of the disease that one encounters in temperate climates are degenerative or chronic inflammatory diseases the prevention of which is outside the scope or even the thoughts of

the average practitioner so that he has no further worry on this score and, even when he does encounter an infectious disease, whether it is measles, influenza or just a common cold there is seldom much mystery about the mode of infection which is usually by direct contact and/or droplet infection. He has only the household or in the case of an institution the other inmates to consider and after that, the most he need do will be to notify the local medical officer of health. On the other hand nearly all tropical diseases are of an infective nature and eminently preventable, so that the practitioner's thoughts should be for the community as much as for the patient. He must have a thorough knowledge of the ætiologies of the infections that he may encounter if he is to appreciate the significance of his diagnosis and to take the rational steps to prevent the disease spreading. The mode of transmission of tropical diseases is seldom simple and straightforward for there is often not only the parasite itself but also an insect vector an intermediate host and/or an animal reservoir of infection. In fact with few exceptions notably diseases due to the direct effects of a tropical climate nutritional diseases and the intestinal fluxes the vast majority of tropical diseases are transmitted to man through the agency of an animal and/or an insect.

This is the type of problem that the practitioner in the tropics may have to face. Is it Weil's disease? If so, he will think it would be interesting to know how in this case the infection was acquired, and whether there was an occupational association but he should know that in the tropics it is often a sporadic disease so that he need not do anything further about it and will be free to turn his full attention on the patient. Is it dengue? If so perhaps this indicates the beginning of the dengue season he will have to expect more cases if not an epidemic and he will have to make his plans accordingly. Or is it yellow fever? If it is and if the disease has not appeared in the locality before then he must give his full attention to averting a major disaster. After putting the patient under a mosquito net he must organize an anti aedes campaign immediately, order vaccine for the whole local community and take other necessary steps.

The practitioner in the tropics is so often alone and responsible for prevention as well as cure but even if he is not for his own for his family's or for his hospital personnel's sake he can never escape giving prevention an immediate thought. So perhaps most of all the practitioner in the tropics must have a thorough knowledge of the ætiology of all the diseases he is likely to encounter.

The writer has always felt that the tropics provides a field in which the physician and the public health worker can meet most easily and naturally. The physician is so often compelled to think in terms of prevention and the health officer has so often to invoke the aid of the physician to organize specific treatment campaigns as a means of limiting reservoirs of infection whereas they are nearly always mutually dependent on one another for accurate diagnosis.

**Signs and symptoms versus laboratory findings**—The populations with which one has to deal in temperate countries are usually relatively homogeneous but in the tropics they are often heterogeneous in racial type, in economic status and nutrition and in their previous experience of diseases. Consequently their response to infection will be equally varied. When the Cumberland miner gets pneumonia the disease will run very much the same course as it would in a London banker and it is possible to give a clinical description that will cover both cases. It is not so with the vast majority of tropical infections. A patient may react to malaria infection in a hundred different ways, but the one common factor is the

presence of parasites in the peripheral blood. Further, the answers given by the illiterate patient, even if the language and dialect difficulty can be overcome, are often misleading, so that one is compelled to lay less emphasis on history and subjective signs and symptoms and more on laboratory findings.

In temperate climates one is taught that it is usually safer to make one diagnosis, and to attempt to trace all the signs and symptoms to a single infection or pathological process, whereas, in the tropics, single infections are the exception, and, even when one infection has been discovered, it is as important and necessary to carry out routine laboratory examinations of, at least, the stools, the urine, and the blood, as it is in any climate to make a thorough physical examination and to examine the patient's chest even when most of the symptoms point to the abdomen.

On the other hand, very great care must be taken that laboratory findings are not allowed to deflect one from making a proper physical examination or to outweigh one's clinical judgment. For example, it is not uncommon to find microfilariæ in the blood, and hookworm ova and *Entamoeba histolytica* cysts in the stools of a patient in whom kala-azar is eventually diagnosed by sternum puncture. Although each finding might be significant in other circumstances, there may be, in the particular case, no signs or symptoms attributable to these infections, and, although in most instances one would attempt to free the patient from his hookworm and amœbic infections during his convalescence after treatment for kala-azar, return to normal health may be possible without the eradication of either of these infections. Nor does the discovery of all four of these infections exclude the possibility that the patient has some other disorder, such as a chest full of fluid, that demands immediate relief.

Laboratory findings may be as misleading in some cases as they are useful and even essential in others, and, although the writer is in favour of routine laboratory examinations whenever it is possible to carry them out, it is very necessary that the findings should be given their proper perspective, viewed in conjunction with the whole clinical picture, and interpreted intelligently. The writer's early experience of tropical medicine was all in the laboratory. Even in those days he saw the danger of the complete laboratory domination of tropical practice, and he has fought very hard against this tendency ever since. He hopes that in this book, whilst emphasizing the great importance of the laboratory, he has succeeded in keeping it in its proper place.

**Specific treatment**—Finally, in the matter of treatment, tropical medicine undoubtedly stole a march on the mother science. We had 'specifics' for malaria, kala-azar, sleeping sickness, and certain helminth infections, not to mention the tropical spirochætal infections, when 'temperate' medicine could claim only salvarsan, unless one includes antivenine and diphtheria antitoxin, one for each side. The vitamins, penicillin, the sulphonamides, and other new therapeutic substances have gone some way to even up matters, but, case for case, specific treatment is far more important in tropical than in temperate medicine. Moreover in tropical practice, conditions are often such that specific treatment is the only treatment that can be considered, and it is therefore given special emphasis. It should however, be appreciated that general and symptomatic treatment may be almost, if not quite, as important as specific treatment. If the writer on tropical medicine appears to neglect this aspect, it is because he assumes that the reader already has a sound knowledge of the general principles of medicine and expects that he will apply them. It is not because he wishes to diminish its importance.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	v
INTRODUCTION	ix
GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS	1
MEASURES FOR MITIGATING THE EFFECTS OF TROPICAL CLIMATE	16
DISEASES DUE TO THE DIRECT EFFECTS OF TROPICAL CLIMATE	33
MALARIA	52
'Blackwater fever	124
LEISHMANIASIS	134
Kala azar	135
Oriental sore	178
South American mucro cutaneous leishmaniasis	191
TRYPANOSOMIASIS	
Sleeping sickness or African trypanosomiasis	197
Chagas's disease or South American trypanosomiasis	217
THE RELAPSING FEVERS	223
Louse borne relapsing fever	225
Tick borne relapsing fever	233
RAT BITE FEVER	237
LEPTOSPIROSIS	245
Weil's disease or infective jaundice	246
Seven day fever of Japan	254
THE TYPHUS FEVERS	256
The typhus fevers	258
Classical epidemic or louse borne typhus	261
Trench fever	267
Murine typhus	268
Rocky Mountain spotted fever	271
Tsutsugamushi	275
Q fever	279
Typhus fever in India	280
OROIA FEVER OR BARTONELLOSIS	288
YELLOW FEVER	293
RIFT VALLEY FEVER	310



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
DENGUE SAND FLY GROUP	312
Dengue	313
Sand fly fever	317
PLAGUE	321
TULAREMIA	345
THE UNDULANT FEVERS	352
Malta fever	353
Abortus fever	362
MELIOIDOSIS	365
THE INTESTINAL FLUXES	368
Cholera	370
Bacillary dysentery	399
Flies	422
Amœbic dysentery	424
Amœbic hepatitis and liver abscess	444
Other protozoal and metazoal dysenteries and diarrhœas	451
Chronic post dysenteric ulcerative colitis	456
Sprue	461
Para sprue	477
Hill diarrhœa	479
LEPROSY	481
YAWS AND ASSOCIATED DISEASES	523
Yaws or Frambœsia	524
Pinta	537
Bejel	539
TROPICAL SKIN ULCERATIONS	543
Ulcus Tropicum	544
Yeldi Sore	551
LYMPHOPATHIA VENEREUM	555
GRANULOMA VENEREUM	563
SOME COMMON SKIN DISEASES OF THE TROPICS	569
Prickly Heat	571
Ringworm of the Feet (Tinea Pedis) or Dermatophytosis	574
Dhobie Itch or Tinea Cruris	578

	PAGE
Tokelau or Tinea Imbricata	580
Pityriasis (Tinea) Versicolor	581
Leucoderma or Vitiligo	582
HELMINTHIC INFECTIONS	586
COSMOPOLITAN INTESTINAL NEMATODE INFECTIONS	595
Ascariasis	596
Threadworm (Pin-Worm) Infection or Oxyuriasis	600
Whipworm or Trichuris Infection	603
TROPICAL INTESTINAL NEMATODE INFECTIONS	606
Ancylostomiasis and Hookworm Disease	607
Strongyloidiasis	628
Trichostrongyliasis	632
TAPEWORM INFECTIONS	634
Large Tapeworms	635
Dwarf Tapeworms	642
TRICHINOSIS	646
FILARIASIS	654
Filariasis Due to Wuchereria Bancrofti	657
Filariasis Due to Wuchereria Malayi	687
Filariasis Due to Loa Loa	689
Onchocerciasis	690
DRACONTIASIS OR GUINEA-WORM DISEASE	693
GNATHOSTOMIASIS	704
SCHISTOSOMIASIS	707
OTHER FLUKE INFECTIONS	728
Clonorchiasis	729
Paragonimiasis	731
Fasciolopsiasis	734
HYDATID DISEASE	737
NUTRITION AND NUTRITIONAL DISORDERS IN THE TROPICS	747
Beriberi	770
Infantile Beriberi	782
Pellagra	784

	PAGE
Scurvy . . . . .	797
Epidemic Dropsy . . . . .	803
Lathyrism . . . . .	812
Infantile Cirrhosis of the Liver . . . . .	816
ANÆMIA IN THE TROPICS . . . . .	820
SNAKES AND SNAKE-BITE . . . . .	830
Snake Bite . . . . .	847
RABIES . . . . .	860
A NOTE ON MYIASIS AND SCARABIASIS . . . . .	866
SUBJECT INDEX . . . . .	869
AUTHOR INDEX . . . . .	911

THE  
PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE  
OF  
TROPICAL MEDICINE

## GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

THE GENESIS OF TROPICAL MEDICINE	PAGE 1
DEFINING THE SCOPE OF TROPICAL MEDICINE	3
THE CHANGING PICTURE	3
DISEASES UNCOMMON IN THE TROPICS	4
ENVIRONMENT AND THE DISTRIBUTION OF DISEASE	4
<i>A Climatic factors</i>	4
Temperature—Humidity—Air movements and prevailing winds—Sunshine —Barometric pressure—Rainfall—Storms	
<i>B Telluric factors</i>	5
Natural—Artificial	
<i>C Human factors</i>	5
CLIMATE AND DISEASE	6
<i>A Direct effects of climate</i>	6
The sun's rays—Heat balance—Heat production—Heat loss—Factors affecting heat loss—The comfort zone effective temperature—Other physiological effects—Pathological changes	
<i>B Indirect effects of climate</i>	14

**The Genesis of Tropical Medicine**—Present day scientific medicine was born and nourished through all its earliest stages in temperate western countries. When the people from the western civilizations invaded the East in a military or a commercial sense or simply as scientific or dilettante travellers they found that the medicine practised in many of these countries was the crudest form of traditional folk lore though in others such as India and China there were established systems of medicine which intrigued these western invaders and from which the doctors amongst them gathered some useful recruits to the pharmacopœias of their own countries.

However early in the nineteenth century the superiority of scientific medicine over the local traditional systems became obvious not only to the visitors but also to the indigenous inhabitants of these countries and more practitioners were demanded. Such large numbers could not be spared from the West nor could the people of the tropical countries afford to support them in the style in which quite justifiably they demanded to compensate them for the conditions under which they had to live, medical schools and colleges therefore were founded in the tropical countries to train the natives of these countries in methods of scientific medicine.

About the middle of the last century, it began to dawn on the still conservative mind of the practitioner of scientific medicine in the tropics that, whilst the medicine that he had been taught was very much better than indigenous medicine, as it was then practised, he was frequently encountering syndromes to which there was no reference, or only very misleading references, in his textbooks. Amongst those who had the gift of being able to think ahead of their time and the energy to stir up others to take action with them Patrick Manson stood out. Many of his predecessors and contemporaries played their several parts, and books on the diseases of various tropical countries were written, but it was Manson who gave this study of tropical diseases a definite form, a new branch of medical science came into being, and rightly Manson is looked upon as the father of tropical medicine. Through his energies the London School of Tropical Medicine was founded and for many years his book stood alone as the textbook on tropical diseases.

Nothing succeeds like success and the early successes in the field of tropical medicine, which may be typified by Ross's work on malaria, stimulated this new branch of medical science, and other schools of tropical medicine were founded in Europe and North America.

From one point of view this awakening of interest in the study of tropical diseases had come too late, for already in certain tropical countries, India in particular, in the medical schools and colleges, to the founding of which reference was made above, western traditions of scientific medicine which took little account of tropical diseases were firmly established. The textbooks used were written by people who had never been in a tropical country and who knew nothing of local conditions and the diseases that they engendered, whilst the curricula and the course of study were faithful copies of those of western schools and universities. The doctor so trained often had a profound textbook knowledge of, shall we say, cardiology and may have been able to spot histological sections of rare sarcomata, yet was quite unable to stain a blood film for malaria parasites or to recognize an amoeba in a stool, and, although he knew that quinine and emetine were specifics used in malaria and dysentery he had no other ideas on the proper treatment of these diseases which might well constitute 75 per cent of his practice. If he wished to gain special knowledge of how to treat these diseases, he had to go to London, Hamburg, or Baltimore.

The absurdity of this position was appreciated by many, but the remedy was not obvious. The teachers in the schools and colleges, in India at least, were so deeply imbued with the established tradition that it was not possible to call a sudden change, if anyone had had the power to do so, but this power was not vested in any central authority. It was Leonard Rogers, who already had a world-wide reputation for his many researches in tropical medicine, who saw a way out of this impasse, and, with the encouragement and a considerable amount of financial help from the commercial communities and large industries, won over the official opposition and founded the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine, for post-graduate instruction and research in tropical diseases. He hoped that in time the teaching in this school would have a leavening effect on medical education throughout India, and possibly in other tropical countries not only in the final years of practical work but in due course in the physiological laboratories and possibly even in the dissecting rooms, and that when it had done its work and outlived its usefulness in this direction studies

This is the writer's explanation of the 'anomaly' of a post graduate school in a tropical country where instruction is given to the local practitioners in subjects which should have been those most emphasized in their qualifying medical course

**Defining the Scope of Tropical Medicine**—The separation of tropical medicine from the body corporate of medical science is thus an artificial, and one hopes only a temporary one. Nevertheless, at the present day, separate it is and very conveniently separate. The question now arises, is it possible to define its scope? It is certainly difficult. The problem that will exercise the minds of our successors more than it does ours is how much teaching on the physiology of hot climates should be included in this subject? Our excuse for the comparative neglect of this subject at present is the fact that as there is so very little accurate information on it, one hesitates to give information that may be misleading but this state of affairs is changing. The next question is how far should one go into the subject of tropical hygiene? This brings one to a wider question of medical policy, namely the past tendency to separate the present hesitancy, and the future decision (we foretell) to link much more closely prevention and relief in medical education and practice. In his teaching of tropical medicine the writer has solved this problem by laying special emphasis on the preventive aspects of specific diseases whilst leaving the subject of general hygiene to other lecturers.

What are the diseases that should be included—all diseases that occur in the tropics? This of course is out of the question as there are few recognized diseases that do not occur in the tropics. Then should it be diseases that only occur in the tropics? This is equally out of the question, for many diseases that are always looked upon as tropical diseases, malaria, cholera, dysentery, also occur in the temperate zones. So we must fall back on an elastic definition and say that under this heading should be included diseases that occur only in tropical and sub tropical countries, and also diseases that are either more prevalent or else exhibit special features in these countries.

**The Changing Picture**—The position is not however static. Many diseases that were at one time world wide in their distribution are now confined almost entirely to tropical countries of these perhaps the best example is leprosy. Leprosy was a cosmopolitan disease common enough in England a few hundred years ago as is evidenced by the leper windows that still exist in many old churches but it has now disappeared almost completely from most western countries. Malaria has been banished from England and many other European countries and yellow fever from the east coast ports of the United States of America to become a disease with an essentially tropical distribution. Cholera and plague have probably always originated in tropical countries but in the past have flourished for a time in temperate climates. Epidemic typhus which on the other hand never had any special liking for tropical climates and which, since its activities have been largely curtailed in cold climates by improvements in social and sanitary conditions leads a precarious existence in the sub tropics, is probably classed amongst tropical diseases only because of its aetiological association with tropical typhus.

It seems possible that tuberculosis is now going the same way as leprosy. The white man's plague has certainly changed its colour preference in America and has shown a steady decrease for nearly a hundred years in Great Britain but it is rapidly increasing in many tropical countries just as is cerebro spinal fever another respiratorily transmitted disease, in the crowded bazzars of the east.

**Diseases Uncommon in the Tropics**—There are diseases that are less common in tropical countries, *e.g.* rickets, most streptococcal infections, erysipelas, scarlet fever, and carditis, but they do occur, peptic ulcer is often included in this category but is certainly very common in parts of India. A sterile controversy regarding the occurrence or otherwise of rheumatic carditis in the true tropics has broken out in the medical press from time to time. The champions of the former view made their point many years ago, but are tending to push too far their claims for the frequency of the occurrence of rheumatic carditis, relatively and, almost certainly, actually, it is a far rarer condition in tropical than in most temperate countries.

Then, there are diseases that are *supposed* to be less common in the tropics, these include cancer but it is very doubtful if this is really uncommon. Statistics are vitiated by the infrequency of post-mortem examinations, by poorer diagnosis and poorer facilities for treating the patients when a diagnosis is made, by a much lower expectation of life so that far fewer people reach the cancer age, and by the fact that the numerous other diseases that occur distract attention from cancer as a public-health problem, except in a few instances where its cause is patent, *e.g.* Langri-burn cancer of Kashmir. Enteric was another example, sixty or seventy years ago, there were many discussions in the medical journals as to why enteric occurred amongst British soldiers in India but never amongst the indigenous inhabitants, until bacteriology came along and taught us to recognize as enteric the slightly modified disease that is very common amongst Indians.

## ENVIRONMENT AND THE DISTRIBUTION OF DISEASE

There are of course many facts about the distribution of diseases that are inexplicable in our present state of knowledge regarding the exact aetiology of these diseases, but now that epidemiological data have been collected over a period of many years it is possible to indicate some of the factors that determine the distribution of diseases in tropical and in non-tropical climates, these factors can be classed as (a) climatic, (b) telluric, and (c) human.

**A Climatic factors**—Climate is brought about by a combination of solar and terrestrial influences, though it is with the sum-effects of these influences that we are concerned, they must be considered first under a number of different headings—

(i) **Temperature**—This cannot be expressed as just hot or cold for hot climates exhibit wide variations in their temperatures and these temperatures cannot be given simple numerical expression there are climates that are hot throughout the year and others that have a very hot and a very cold season, some countries have a temperature that shows little variation during the twenty-four hours of the day, others one that whilst it is extremely high during the day drops very considerably at night and yet others that exhibit both these features but at different times of year. To convey a proper idea of the temperature of a locality, a full range of 'normal' data for the whole year should be given, but if it has to be expressed very concisely the best figures to give are the mean of daily means and the mean diurnal ranges for the hottest and for the coldest months of the year.

(ii) **Humidity**—This is expressed as—

- (a) absolute humidity in grams of moisture per cubic foot
- (b) relative humidity indicating the percentage degree of saturation, 100 per cent being complete saturation at the existing temperature,
- or (c) saturation deficiency which indicates the drying power of the air, expressed as the difference between the vapour tension at dew point and the actual vapour tension at the time, in millibars.

In one country there are wide differences in the humidities in different localities, from season to season and at different times of the day, the early morning



humidity, which is the one so often given is always high and gives a very poor indication of the humidity of a place or a season

(iii) Air movements and prevailing winds—This is recorded in miles per hour or feet per second two miles an hour being roughly 3 feet per second. In the matter of wind prevalence, an important factor is usually whether the prevailing wind is from the land or the sea but there are many other considerations too numerous to indicate here

(iv) Sunshine—This is recorded as the number of hours of sunshine during the day. This important factor appears to receive more attention in weather reports in temperate and cold climates

(v) Barometric pressure—Whilst this is subject to considerable irregular fluctuation localities of the same altitude above sea level do not show constant variations that would be likely to affect disease distribution. However the constantly low pressure in high altitudes certainly has an effect on physiology and probably on pathology too

(vi) Rainfall—This is subject to the widest variations according to the locality and the season and also from year to year. It is expressed in inches per annum and varies from nil to 700

(vii) Storminess—This is certainly an important factor in the make up of a climate both in temperate and tropical zones. Though storminess in temperate zones is associated with respiratory disease and rheumatism on the whole the balance is in favour of the stormy climate and Huntington (1924) goes as far as to say that it is the northward shift in the storm belt that has caused the northward and westward shift in the centre of civilization a view not in keeping with that expressed by the writer (*vide infra*)

A factor associated with this is atmospheric ionization and some medical climatologists attribute much in the balance of health and disease to this. Our knowledge on this subject is at present too vague to allow any helpful discussion on this factor

**B Telluric factors**—These can be considered under two headings—

(i) Natural—The physical and chemical nature of the soil, the sub soil water level, vegetation etc. and the physiographical configuration of the terrain

(ii) Artificial—Irrigation and drainage, afforestation and deforestation, the building of cities (that shut out air and hold the heat) etc.

**C. Human factors**—These include the density of the population and the degree of urbanization and industrialization to which they have been subjected, the religious practices (*e.g.* in India *melas*\* and pilgrimages tend to spread cholera and dysentery, and ceremonial bathing is largely responsible for maintaining their endemicity) and personal habits of the people (clothing encourages lice and typhus, and protects from fleas and plague), their economic status (poverty is associated with deficiency diseases), the state of civilization (laws appears to cling to aboriginal tribes) and education of the population, and their educability, the sanitary sense and progress of the population and the degree of contact with or isolation from other populations

Variations in these climatic, telluric and human factors from place to place will determine the geographical distribution of disease from year to year, their epidemic occurrence and from season to season their seasonal incidence. Nearly all these factors are interdependent and, as they never act singly, it is seldom possible to judge the effect of one alone—*e.g.* the effect of temperature cannot be considered without taking account of the humidity, which is dependent on rainfall, the nature of the soil etc., and the effect of sunshine is dependent on the humidity and purity of the atmosphere (industrialization). Finally, the effects of the various factors are not constant in different circumstances—*e.g.* cholera in the Punjab is dependent on high humidity, in Bengal rainfall stops cholera

---

\* *Melas* are Hindu religious festivals held periodically in certain places in India. Literally millions of pilgrims flock to these *melas* where they bathe in the holy Ganges and live under conditions that make it difficult to provide efficient sanitation. A free interchange of intestinal flora is inevitable. The pilgrims then trek back to their homes spreading their newly acquired infections as they go.

## CLIMATE AND DISEASE

How do climatic conditions prevalent in the tropics bring about tropical diseases? They act directly and indirectly

**A Direct effects of climate**—The compensatory mechanisms of the human organisms are so elaborate that the direct effects appear to be remarkably few, this is shown by the fact that the physiology of man living in the tropics is basically the same as that of man living in the arctic zones. There are certain immediate reactions to change to tropical climatic conditions that are rapidly adjusted or compensated. These can be imitated in the laboratory or ward, have in the past been studied frequently by physiologists, and are now, since the introduction of hyperthermal methods of treatment, receiving the attention of clinicians. At the other end of the scale, time measured in centuries produces certain fundamental changes in the human frame which are of interest to ethnologists, but here one is uncertain whether the effects of climate producing these have not also been indirect, through diet and other environmental factors. Between these extremes there are the results of the subjection for months, for years, and for generations to tropical climates, and it is these that are of special interest to the physician. Beyond the observation and explanation of certain obvious differences between the inhabitants of the temperate and tropical countries, such as that of colour, the subject of tropical physiology has been neglected and until this gap in our knowledge is better filled, we shall find our study of the pathological effects handicapped.

**The sun's rays**—Fundamentally the cause of the difference between tropical conditions and those of the temperate zones is the fact that the rays of the sun are more direct and therefore, other things being equal, produce their effects with greater intensity in the tropics, it will thus be appropriate first to consider what are the direct effects of these sun's rays on the human body. These effects can be classified according to the different rays which strike the earth, thus —

Spectral classification	Effects	Angstrom units
1 Ultra violet	Biochemical rays	1 000 - 3 900
2 Violet		3 900 - 4 300
3 Blue		4 300 - 5 000
4 Green	Luminous rays	5 000 - 5 600
5 Yellow		5 600 - 5 900
6 Orange		5 900 - 6 200
7 Red	Heat rays	6 200 - 7 700
8 Infra red		7 700 - 120 000

We have very little data regarding the relative power of the ultra-violet rays in tropical and non tropical countries, but usually there is less interference with these rays in their passage to the earth's surface in the former and their effect is therefore greater. The ultra-violet rays have a low power of penetration, so that their effects are almost entirely on the skin and subcutaneous tissues. One of the definitely established effects is their action on ergosterol, converting it into vitamin D, in the deeper layers of the skin, this accounts for the extreme rarity of rickets amongst children in tropical countries, except where strict purdah is observed or children are unduly protected from exposure to the sun.

On the skin, the most noticeable effect of the ultra-violet rays is an erythema which comes on two hours after the exposure and reaches its maximum in about six hours, this will vary in its severity and in extreme cases will lead to severe blistering. Repeated irritation by exposure will

lead to chronic changes in the skin (*vide infra*) The wave length that produces this erythema is from 2800 to 3,100 Å

The natural pigmentation in the skin of the indigenous inhabitants of the tropics acts as a protection against this effect of the ultra-violet rays, and even amongst the white races the brunette is usually less sensitive than the blonde The pigmentation that follows repeated exposures to the sunlight is brought about by rays of slightly longer wave length, including the visible rays

The unhealthy pallor of the skin that is often seen in the European sojourner in the tropics is due to the excessive zeal with which he—or more often she—has protected himself from the beneficial sun's ray, combined with unhealthy living and in many instances disease

The luminous rays again are usually stronger in the tropics, their powers of penetration are greater than those of the rays of shorter wave length, and they probably have a stimulating effect on the blood and tissues as well as a detrimental effect on parasitic micro organisms but our knowledge on this subject is more speculative than precise Their action on the retina is more certain, in excess they cause headaches a reduction in visual acuity, a decrease of adaptability to comparative darkness which may become pathological in special circumstances (night-blindness), and other pathological changes in the retina

However, probably the most important are the heat rays both the physiological and the pathological effects of the heat rays on the body temperature have been studied in rather more detail than have the physiological effects of the other climatic factors Before considering the effect of heat rays, one must review the physiology of heat balance

**Heat balance**—Heat is produced by the cellular combustion of foodstuffs Only some 20 to 25 per cent of this heat is converted into energy and the balance has to be dissipated If this heat is not dissipated the body temperature which in man and other warm blooded animals is normally maintained at a constant level will rise, and the physiological processes of the body will be interfered with To maintain this constant level there must be a balance between the heat that is produced by the metabolic processes of the body and the heat that is lost to the surroundings Under tropical conditions, the rate of this heat loss is reduced, and there are times when the process of balancing the heat account is complicated by the fact that certain items that are normally on the debit side are now transferred to the credit side of the account i.e. when the atmospheric temperature is higher than that of the body, and heat is actually absorbed from the environment

**Heat production**—In an average man (whose weight is usually placed at 70 kilogrammes or 154 lbs though the figure is too high for the individuals of many races, e.g. southern Indian average weight about 120 lbs) normal body functions produce about 100 calories an hour, at rest, work accelerates heat production and a soldier marching with a pack weighing 60 lbs will produce 8 calories per minute

**Heat loss**—Heat is lost by radiation conduction convection, and evaporation For practical purposes the means of heat loss can be considered as 'sensible' loss which includes radiation and conduction to surrounding cooler objects and convection that is lost to the air in contact with the body surface—this air absorbs heat moves away and is replaced by more air, when the process is repeated—and latent loss, which is achieved by unsaturated air absorbing moisture, from the body surface, from the

sweat that has been secreted by the sweat glands, directly from the blood through the epidermis (Whitehouse, Hancock and Haldane, 1932), and from the lungs, during the process of conversion into vapour this moisture absorbs 0.58 calorie of heat per gramme of water evaporated

**Factors affecting heat loss**—Loss of heat from the body is influenced by the following four environmental conditions, (i) the temperature of the immediate environment, (ii) the humidity of the air, (iii) the movements of the air, and (iv) insulation—mainly clothes

As the atmospheric temperature rises, the loss of sensible heat decreases, when the humidity rises, loss of latent heat by evaporation decreases; if there is no movement of air, the air in contact with the body tends to remain stagnant but with an increase in air movement—in all but extreme circumstances—the rate of both *sensible* and *latent* heat loss is increased, and finally clothes catch the radiated heat and interfere with air movement around the body, holding warm damp air in close contact with it—the thinner and more open-woven the clothes the less will be this interference

In order to maintain the balance, heat generated must be lost, if it cannot be lost by one means it must be lost by another. At a dry-bulb temperature of 67°F and a relative humidity of 60 per cent, three-quarters of the heat loss is sensible and a quarter latent. Under tropical conditions this proportion will not be maintained, and, as the temperature rises, the ratio of *sensible* to *latent* heat loss falls, until eventually when 98.4°F. is reached all the heat loss will be *latent*, after this convection, conduction, and radiation are transferred to the credit side of the heat balance account (though 'debit' as far as the person's comfort and well-being are concerned). The rôles of air-stagnation and clothing are now complicated by the fact that, while reducing loss of *latent* heat, they also limit *sensible* heat absorption (e.g. under extreme conditions in desert areas the hot dry winds soon upset the heat balance, hence the heavy burnouse of the Arab).

**The comfort zone**—The comfort of a man depends on the ease with which he can maintain his body temperature at the correct level, if the loss of heat is too rapid, his peripheral vessels contract and other physiological processes for conserving heat come into action, and he experiences a sensation of cold. Conversely, if the *sensible* heat loss—over which the normal physiological processes of the body have little control—is too slow, other means of heat loss have to be increased, the peripheral vessels dilate and more sweat is secreted, and he feels a sensation of heat. In either case he feels uncomfortable. Man however is a fairly adaptable being and the range of environmental conditions in which he feels comfortable is not very narrow, this range is conveniently known as the 'comfort zone'

The comfort zone cannot be expressed in terms of temperature, because there are other factors involved, nor of humidity, nor of air movement, for the same reason, but an empirically determined index of the degree of warmth perceived on exposure to different combinations of temperature, humidity and air movement, the 'effective temperature', has been introduced

Let us take an example—at rest in still air with light clothing on a man will find that 75°F is a fairly comfortable temperature in the presence of a degree of humidity closely approaching complete saturation, but the same degree of comfort will be experienced at 80°F in the presence of moderate humidity (60 per cent) and again at 83°F under very dry conditions (15 per cent relative humidity). If now a fan running at a moderate speed is played on him, he will experience the same degree of comfort in the presence of the three degrees

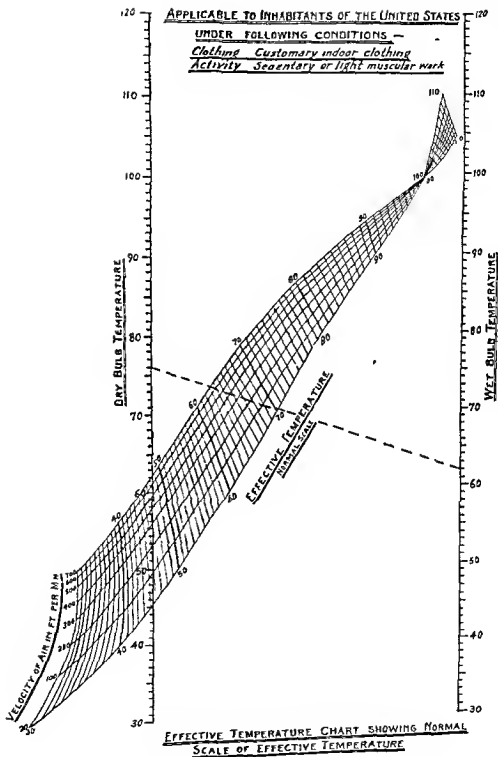


Figure I

of humidity mentioned above at, respectively, 80°F, 84°F. and 91°F. These six combinations of temperature, humidity, and air movement which produce the same degree of comfort can all be expressed by one figure, namely 75°F. 'effective temperature'

For calculating this effective temperature a chart is necessary; the chart\* given on page 9, from which the effective temperature can be calculated from the dry- and wet-bulb readings and the wind velocity, will be found a very convenient one (Relative humidity is calculated from the dry- and wet-bulb readings from a chart which is often attached to dry- and wet-bulb thermometers, or from the formulae and table given below, but this calculation is not an essential step in calculating the effective temperature)

*To calculate the relative humidity from the dry-bulb (DBT) and wet-bulb temperatures (WBT) (after Jameson and Parkinson, 1939)*

$$(i) \text{ Vapour pressure (VP) at dew point (DP)} = \text{VP at WBT (from table)} \\ - \frac{\text{DBT} - \text{WBT}}{2}$$

$$(ii) \text{ Relative humidity} = \frac{\text{VP at DP (i)} \times 100}{\text{VP at DBT (from table)}}$$

Example DBT = 75°F WBT = 67°F

VP at WBT (from table) = 22.6

VP at DBT (from table) = 29.7

$$\therefore (i) \text{ VP at DP} = 22.6 - \frac{75 - 67}{2} = 18.6$$

$$\text{and (ii) Relative humidity} = \frac{18.6 \times 100}{29.7} = 62.62 \text{ or } 63 \text{ per cent.}$$

(Incidentally, the 'effective temperature' in still air with this combination is 71.5°)

Vapour pressure table (at saturation):—

Temp, °F.	VP in millibars	Temp, °F.	VP in millibars	Temp, °F.	VP in millibars	Temp, °F.	VP in millibars
30	5.6	47	11.0	64	20.4	81	36.1
31	5.8	48	11.4	65	21.1	82	37.3
32	6.1	49	11.8	66	21.8	83	38.6
33	6.4	50	12.3	67	22.6	84	39.8
34	6.6	51	12.8	68	23.4	85	41.1
35	6.9	52	13.2	69	24.2	86	42.4
36	7.2	53	13.7	70	25.1	87	43.8
37	7.5	54	14.2	71	25.9	88	45.2
38	7.8	55	14.8	72	26.8	89	46.7
39	8.1	56	15.3	73	27.7	90	48.2
40	8.4	57	15.9	74	28.7	92	51.3
41	8.7	58	16.5	75	29.7	94	54.6
42	9.1	59	17.1	76	30.7	96	58.0
43	9.4	60	17.7	77	31.7	98	61.7
44	9.9	61	18.3	78	32.8	100	65.5
45	10.2	62	19.0	79	33.9	105	76.0
46	10.6	63	19.7	80	35.0	110	88.0

The comfort zone is thus expressed best in terms of effective temperature, but effective temperature takes into account only three out of the four environmental factors that influence loss of heat, that is, it leaves out of consideration clothes, a factor to which it is difficult to give

\* Reprinted by permission—from *ASHVE Transactions*, Vol 38, 1932

accurate numerical expression\* The clothes factor and the personal factor tend to widen the range of the comfort zone

The comfort zone can only be ascertained by actual trial. The subject has been investigated in a number of American cities in winter and in summer, and the peak of the comfort zone has been found to vary between 66° and 72° effective temperature, data for the tropics are still wanting but one may safely assume that the peak will not be lower than 72° and, as the zone extends for a few degrees on either side of this peak, 75°, the example that the writer took from personal experience, is probably well within the comfort zone for most tropical climates

Beyond this comfort zone there is a zone in which man is definitely uncomfortable, but is still able to maintain his normal temperature. The degree of discomfort experienced will depend on his previous experience and his mental attitude towards the heat as a rule those more highly educated resent it, whilst others accept it as inevitable. The reactions of man in this 'discomfort zone', as we will call it will depend very largely on the personal factor and health will play a vitally important part, in some, even quite healthy persons, there will be a very slight rise of the general temperature level, that is, the normal diurnal fluctuations will occur but at a high level. One should not be too ready to jump to the conclusion that this 'low fever' in a patient is physiological but if the patient does not suffer any other subjective symptoms and if thorough investigation does not reveal any infection, it may be safe to ignore it, however should the patient 'feel the fever coming on'—the actual occurrence of fever being confirmed by a tested clinical thermometer—and have a headache and slight shivering the search for the cause should be continued. In figure 2 the results of different effective temperature levels on the body temperature are shown, the graph was constructed from experience with artificial 'fever therapy' and is probably not applicable to natural conditions. As a general rule there is probably little rise of body temperature below about 90°F effective temperature which corresponds to a dry-bulb temperature of 99°F at 60 per cent, 110°F at 30 per cent, and 122°F at 15 per cent relative humidity, in still air, or under the influence of an electric fan running at a moderate speed, creating an air current of 300 feet per minute, 102°F, 112°F, and 123°F, respectively, at the same three humidities

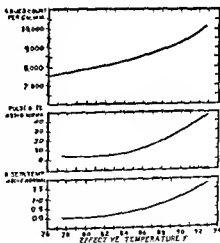


Figure 2 Effects of high environmental temperature (Fenderler and Houghten 1941)

\*The intercepting value of clothes is correlated fairly closely with their weight. For example women's 'summer clothes' (excluding foot wear) weigh under a pound, men's 'summer clothes' about 3 lbs., and men's indoor winter clothing about 6 lbs. At 50 per cent humidity comfort will be experienced at 74°, 71° and 66° effective temperatures according to which of these types of clothing is worn. As a rough basis of calculation one can say that an allowance of about 16° effective temperature per pound should be made for clothing excluding foot wear (Vaglou and Messer 1941).

Finally, beyond this 'discomfort zone' conditions are encountered under which man cannot survive for any length of time without his temperature rising, the hyperpyrexia and shock that may result from subjection to such conditions must be considered under the heading of 'diseases due directly to climatic conditions' (*vide infra*)

**Other Physiological Effects**—Some of the effects of tropical climatic conditions on other body functions and systems can be briefly reviewed

A change to a tropical climate is accompanied by an increase in blood volume (Barcroft and Marshall, 1923), which is apparently a dilution, for the hæmoglobin and other elements show a corresponding relative reduction. This reduction, certainly as far as the formed elements are concerned, is compensated very rapidly, and there is little evidence that the increased blood volume is maintained. Subjection to heat equivalent to that frequently encountered in even moderate tropical climates will lead to a temporary increase in pulse rate (see figure 2), but the normal pulse rate of the inhabitant and of the sojourner in the tropics (this term is used in reference to those who normally live in a temperate climate but are temporarily living in—not just travelling through—a tropical country) is about 75

The blood pressure of the sojourner is apparently not materially changed by residence in the tropics, though possibly low blood pressures are more frequently encountered than in temperate climates. On the other hand, that of the indigenous inhabitant is distinctly below the European and American standards (Cad-

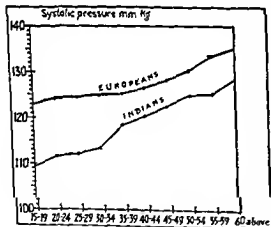


Figure 3 Blood pressure of different age groups

bury, 1922, Kean, 1941). A recent investigation in which 10,000 Indians were involved showed that the systolic pressure at different ages was from 7 to 10 mm of Hg and the diastolic from 5 to 7 mm of Hg lower than the European standards at the corresponding age (see figure 3). The blood pressure of Indians from the north (the Punjab) was a millimetre or two of mercury higher than that of southern and eastern Indians (from Madras and Bengal). Meat eaters showed pressures 1 to 2 mm higher than the pure vegetarians

The respiration rate after acclimatization, is apparently slightly decreased, but the volume of each breath is increased. There is—judged on balance of conflicting evidence—a slight decrease in the normal basal metabolic rate, and this corresponds with the lower calorie requirement of the tropical resident

Subjection to high temperatures is said to depress hæmopoietic function (Stokers' anemia), but recent data on this subject are wanting. The 'thin' blood of the tropical inhabitant is certainly a myth. The normal standards for hæmoglobin amongst healthy Indians for example, are closer to the American than the British standards (the former being inexplicably higher) and the normal range amongst white sojourners is distinctly higher than even the American standards (Napier and Das Gupta, 1942). The higher



haemoglobin normals at high altitudes is recognized as a compensatory mechanism and it is probable that a greater oxygen carrying power of the blood is necessary to counter balance the lower oxygen tension in the hot air of the tropics

Moderate heat will cause a rise in the leucocyte count (see figure 2), but this is apparently not maintained for the average leucocyte count in tropical residents is certainly not higher than in residents in temperate zones. There is however evidence that the stimulation of the leucopoietic tissue is maintained for there is a persistent shift to the left in the Arneith count, indicating a more rapid turnover of polymorphonuclear leucocytes which in many cases is unassociated with infections. There is also a persistently higher eosinophil count but it is impossible to exclude causes other than the climatic conditions for this.

Endocrine functions are not materially affected by tropical conditions in health though there is evidence that in hot monotonous climates certain endocrine organs especially the adrenal glands or rather the thyroid adrenal system suffer from lack of the frequent stimulation that they enjoy in cooler climates and consequently fail to rise to the occasion in diseased conditions. There is some effect on the sex glands for on the whole the inhabitants of the tropics tend to reach sexual maturity earlier and they are certainly liable to an earlier decline. Mill (1941) takes an opposite view and quotes figures in support in which he shows that Panamanian and Filipino girls not only reach the menarche later but that in them the lag between this time and the first conception is far greater than in Negroes living in temperate America. During the ages of maturity the sex urge is probably less in the true tropics but in the sub tropics where there are wide variations in temperature including the highest temperatures to which man is normally subjected we have the authority of India's leading sexologist that the 'Arabs of Arabia are the sexual athletes of the world'. The sex urge of the sojourner is popularly supposed to be stimulated on arrival in a tropical country but it is possible that this is a false impression created by the reduced opportunities for legitimate and the increased opportunities for illicit relief.

The digestive functions—independently of food requirements that are slightly but distinctly lower especially with reference to fat and protein—do not appear to undergo any great change. The writer and his co workers and now also many other observers have refuted the statement frequently made that the gastric acidity is lower in the tropics in our experience the normal acid-curve is higher than that given in British and American textbooks. It is certainly true that a hypotonic condition of the gastro intestinal tract is commoner amongst sojourners especially women than amongst the same persons living in cool climates but there is little evidence of this in the local inhabitants and it is difficult to exclude bowel infections as the cause. The hyperæmia of the skin induced by a hot climate may lead to an ill distribution of blood and a relative ischæmia of the digestive organs with resultant hypofunction.

The psychological and neurological effects of climate *per se* are hard to estimate on account of the influences of other factors. The nervous irritability the classical *furor tropicus* of white sojourners is undoubtedly evidence of their failure to accommodate themselves to local conditions not necessarily all climatic for there is no evidence of this in the indigenous population or in the more moderate and more adaptable sojourner. Similarly there is little evidence that tropical neurasthenia is a direct climatic effect though here again the monotony of the tropical heat

fails to provide beneficial periodic stimulation. Failure of memory, which is referred to as West Coast memory Bengal head, etc., according to the locality, though it is common in all tropical countries, is probably more a result of the environment and the circumstances than actual temperature, and may be a manifestation of a mild form of neurasthenia, associated with inability to concentrate. On the other hand, neuralgias are certainly less evident in a hot than in a temperate climate.

There is no evidence that ultra-violet rays of the sun have any direct action on the brain or spinal cord, they do not in fact penetrate even the skin, and certainly not the skull. But the visible rays may have an effect on the retina causing a temporary and in certain cases a permanent reduction in visual acuity, and also night-blindness (*vide supra et infra*), these changes may react constitutionally and produce headaches, vomiting and other symptoms often wrongly attributed to the direct action of the ultra-violet rays on the brain and cord.

The evaporation mechanism of the inhabitant in the tropics is attuned to the local conditions, and their 'invisible' perspiration is much more effective in keeping down body temperature than the profuse and wasteful perspiration of the sojourner, this helps to explain the greater frequency of heat ill-effects in the latter (Lippmann, 1942).

The continuous hyperæmia and moistness of the skin in the tropics probably does not actually produce any pathological change, but it tends towards the blocking of the sweat glands, it allows certain infections to establish themselves more easily, and possibly it prevents others.

**Pathological changes**—When the compensatory mechanisms of the body fail, or when the changes brought about by extreme environmental conditions have passed beyond the physiological limits, the conditions produced must be classed as diseases (*vide infra*) caused by the direct effects of climate.

**B Indirect effects of climate**—Whilst the direct effects of tropical climates can be dismissed in 20 pages, the indirect effects form the subject matter for the rest of this book. These indirect effects of a tropical climate are determined by the nature (a) of the food crops that in turn determine the state of nutrition of the population and the specific deficiencies that prevail amongst them, (b) of the bacterial, protozoal and helminthic parasites that are the causal organisms of disease, (c) of the insect life that transmits these causal organisms to man, and/or (d) of the animals that carry or act as reservoirs of infection, or climate acts, (e) by favouring, or the reverse, the natural enemies of insect vectors and animal reservoirs of infection, and (f) by determining the balance of biological competition amongst insects, fish, birds and mammals.

**Theoretical**—There is scarcely any limit to the indirectness of the ways in which climate may react on the distribution of a disease and the important climatic factor may appear at first sight to have as slender a connection with the particular disease as the cow with a crumpled horn had with the house that Jack built. For example the normal climate in a locality might favour a certain crop that was parasitized by an insect that was the transmitter of a human disease. A bad year (climatically) might lead to the failure of the crop which one would expect would lead to a dearth of the parasitizing caterpillar so that the bird would have to turn its attention to the disease transmitting insect, with the resulting fall in incidence of the human disease.

The effects of climate may thus be not only indirect but very complex and difficult to explain. If to follow the hypothetical case given above one wished to explain the decrease of the disease on the climatic factor, it would not be safe to assume any single step in the effects and counter effects, it would be

essential to ascertain whether unfavourable conditions to the plant did in fact cause a decrease in the caterpillar population or whether, as often happens interference in the nutrition of a plant led to an increase in parasitization whether the birds actually were induced by shortage of their primary food to feed on the disease-carrying insect or whether in fact they were driven away to other feeding grounds and whether even in the presence of a surfeit of caterpillars they did not continue also to take their quota of the disease carrying insect. Armchair theories on the probable epidemiological effects of certain climatic factors are dangerous and as often as not have to be reversed when actual investigations are carried out.

## REFERENCES

- BARCROFT J and MARSHALL E K<sup>1,5</sup> Note on the Effect of External Temperature on the Circulation in Man *J Physiol* 58, 145 (1923)
- CADURY, WM W (1922) The Blood Pressure of Normal Cantonese Students *Arch Int Med* 30, 362
- FERDREFF, M B., and HOUGHTEN F C (1911) Effective Temperature Scale *J Amer Med Assoc* 116, 474
- HUNTINGTON, E (1924) *Civilization and Climate* Yale University Press New Haven
- JAMESON W W and PARKINSON G S (1939) *A Synopsis of Hygiene* J and A Churchill Ltd., London
- KEAY B H (1941) Blood Pressure Studies on West Indians and Panamanians living on the Isthmus of Panama *Arch Intern Med.* 68, 466
- LIFFMANN A (1942) On the Insensible Perspiration and its Clinical Significance *Med J Australia* 1, 569
- MILLS C A (1941) The Influence of Climate and Geography on Health *Bull New York Academy Med.* 17, 922
- NAPIER L EYERARD and DAS GOPTA C R (1942) *Hematological Technique* Thacker's Press and Directories Calcutta Summarized from *Indian J Med Res.* 23 305 311 973 24, 855 1159 25, 529 26, 541 27, 253 1009, 28 207 29, 375 003
- WHITEHOUSE A G R., HANCOCK W., and HALDANE J S (1932) The Osmotic Passage of Water and Cases through the Human Skin *Proc Roy Soc Med Ser B* 111, 412
- YAGLOU C P., and MESSER A (1941) The Importance of Clothing in Air Conditioning *J Amer Med Assoc* 117, 1261

## MEASURES FOR MITIGATING THE EFFECTS OF TROPICAL CLIMATE

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .. .. .	16
ACCLIMATIZATION .. .. .	17
INDIVIDUAL HYGIENE .. .. .	18
Diet .. .. .	18
Beverages and alcohol .. .. .	20
Work and leave .. .. .	22
Exercise, rest, and general habits .. .. .	22
Clothing .. .. .	23
Cholera belt—Headgear—Footwear. .. .. .	23
HOUSING AND SANITATION .. .. .	26
Present-day trends—Roofing—Floors—Ceilings—Windows—Doors—Screening— Verandahs—Aspect—Kitchen—Bathroom and toilet. .. .. .	26
ARTIFICIAL COOLING .. .. .	30
Air-conditioning in offices and houses .. .. .	30
Air-conditioning in operating theatres .. .. .	32

Introduction.—The early civilizations were all in warm countries; here primitive man found food plentiful and life comparatively easy, so he had time to turn to the arts. Then, when he learnt to make clothes and build houses, he found that he could overcome the adverse environment of colder climates more easily than that of hot climates; further, it was in the latter, far more than in the former, that his natural enemies—from filterable viruses to tigers—flourished, so he developed an increasing preference for cooler climates, and the centre of civilization tended to drift thither. Now we are learning how to control our environment in hot climates also, and it seems possible that this drift may be stopped, or even reversed.

The history of civilization has been described as the story of man's struggle against his environment. Perhaps, even more appropriately, the maintenance of health, which is the eventual aim of medical science, might be said to be achieved by a process of adaptation of man to his environment on the one hand, and of the environment to man on the other.

Here we are concerned especially with a tropical environment and we have discussed above the ways this may influence the health of man. The effects may be direct or indirect. The major portion of this book is devoted to the indirect effects, to the means by which we can counteract these before they produce diseases, and when we fail in this, treat the diseases that are produced. In the previous chapter, the direct effects of the tropical environment were discussed, the present one will be devoted to the mitigation of the direct, and in a general way the indirect effects of the tropical environment by the adaptation of man to this environment and of this environment to man.

The subject will necessarily be considered more from the point of view of the foreigner, as the local inhabitants will already have achieved a degree of adaptation especially to the more obvious direct effects. Their practices should be studied but never adopted without critical examination as they are quite frequently unsound, further, they are seldom directly applicable to the mode of life to which the foreigner has become habituated for many generations, and partial adoption is often disastrous, our special knowledge regarding the causation of disease must be applied, and, finally, the amenities that recent scientific advances have given us must be superimposed.

**Acclimatization**—A very great deal that has been written on the subject of acclimatization has been dependent on analogy and guess work, in the absence of scientific data the guess work will have to continue to fill gaps. Lower organisms, individually more susceptible to temperature changes, are by a process of natural selection capable of acclimatizing themselves slowly to changed conditions but the process takes many generations in the more complex and more adaptable human individual the same process will take many more generations, so that racial acclimatization is measured in millennia.

Individual acclimatization is largely a matter of the adaptation of personal habits to the changed environment, but there is evidence that by prolonging the periods of subjection to, and/or increasing the amount of work done in, high temperatures very gradually, it is possible both to increase working efficiency and to obviate the development of pathological heat effects (see also pp 39 and 40). The white sojourner finds the tropical heat very trying because his clothing, the food he eats and drinks, and his general behaviour are less suited to the conditions than are those of the indigenous inhabitant.

What are the usual reactions of the European or North American who spends the best part of his adult life in a tropical country, to the heat?

The first year he usually finds particularly trying, but he learns how to adapt his habits, and settles down, taking the climate as he finds it, though naturally grumbling in the hottest weather, for the next 15 to 20 years after this he finds each hot weather more and more trying and the thought of retirement dominates his mind, unless he can get away each summer. There are of course other factors, such as disease and age, but at least the effects of acclimatization are not very apparent.

Again, army statistics for heat trauma show that in the British service the highest incidence is in the young recruit during his first year in India, the incidence then falls rapidly but tends to rise again after about 10 years' service. The figures for heat trauma are lower amongst Indian than amongst British troops under parallel conditions, and this is probably to some extent due to racial acclimatization, but even here other factors,

disease and behaviour, cannot be entirely ignored, heat trauma is seldom uncomplicated and is usually induced by some febrile infection, such as sandfly fever to which the Indian soldier is more likely to be immune.

The Indian coolie will exhibit his 'pathetic contentment' and not complain of the heat, but it has been the writer's experience that the loudest complaints about the Calcutta hot weather have come, not from his European hut from his Indian colleagues. In an investigation on the 'comfort zone' in a bank in Shanghai, it was found that the comfort zone of the Cantonese clerks was lower than that of the European members of the staff.

It will be apparent therefore that the question of acclimatization is not altogether a simple one and that data are urgently required.

### INDIVIDUAL HYGIENE

*Diet.*—The nature of the food taken plays a fundamentally important part in the maintenance of health of the individual and in determining the nature of the diseases from which he is likely to suffer, and in some cases food is the main, if not the only, factor in the production of a specific disease. In investigating a disease in an individual, a rough—if circumstances preclude an accurate—idea of both the food taken recently and the usual diet of the patient must be ascertained, or, in the case of a community, a knowledge of the general diet, and any special deviations that have been associated with the disease, are essential.

The subject of the dietetic requirements of the indigenous inhabitants of the tropics and of the diseases associated with dietary deficiencies will be discussed elsewhere, here it is proposed to make a brief reference to the dietary requirements of the sojourner. A legitimate criticism might be 'If diet is a matter of such fundamental importance in the maintenance of health in the tropics why is so brief and so vague?' The writer's reply is that conditions under which the sojourner has to live vary so widely in tropical countries that specific suggestions for one set of conditions would call forth the derision of a majority of readers, that accurate data for even single sets of conditions are rare and, finally, that this is not a book on dietetics or housewifery.

The dietary requirements in the tropics are distinctly lower than they are in temperate climates. This applies both to the sojourners and to the indigenous inhabitants. A very large number of the latter are vegetarians and though many of the diseases from which they suffer can be attributed directly or indirectly to a deficient diet, which a diet solely vegetable in origin is very liable to be, a well-selected vegetarian diet is certainly better suited to the local conditions than the heavy meat diet that many inhabitants of the temperate climates take.

The sojourner will maintain better health if he reduces his meat meals to one a day. The protein requirements are lower, but if he does not exceed the traditional 100 grammes, further restriction is probably unnecessary, on the other hand, it will be wise to cut down the fat to 70 grammes a day. Fruit should be taken at every meal when fresh fruit is available, and when not, tinned fruit at at least two meals, and as large a variety of vegetables as is obtainable.

The general principles of dietetics should be applied with even greater care in the tropics than elsewhere, because of the abundant infections that are about, ready to attack the individual whose nourishment is not maintained at its peak. Over eating is probably the deadlier sin, but asceticism is often carried too far.

It is of course essential that all the vitamins should be well represented in the diet. The most common deficiencies are associated with vitamins B complex, C and A, in that order, and iron. In an ordinary mixed European diet and in the ordinary diet of the well-to-do Indian, none of these will be deficient, but there is a danger when invalid diets are prescribed. Thus, to a milk diet, which is the most useful invalid diet in the tropics, fruit juice and marmite should be added and iron given medicinally, and when a fat-free or low-fat diet is recommended some source of concentrated vitamin A such as halibut-liver oil, must be prescribed.

Constipation is a common complaint amongst sojourners in the tropics, even more so than it is in their own temperate climates, it is enhanced by the dehydration that is likely to occur unless plenty of fluid is taken, and by the tendency of the jaded appetite to encourage the consumption of a high protein diet with little roughage. If the taking of plenty of fluid, fruit, salad green vegetables, and finally morning porridge fails to make the bowels' action regular, then proprietary bowel 'correctives' such as normacol and isogel or the more homely agar agar, or ispaghula (*bhusia* obtainable in the Indian bazar) should be tried before one resorts to frank purgatives.

Special care has to be taken not only in the choice of food but also in its preparation and presentation. All fruit and vegetables must be washed with particular care, and any fruit that is to be eaten uncooked should be placed in a bowl of strong permanganate of potash for half an hour, after preliminary washing in clean water, and should then be placed under cover to protect it from flies and dust. Lettuce should be washed leaf by leaf and similarly placed in permanganate. The old dictum 'never eat cut fruit' should be interpreted rationally. It was not based on any evidence regarding the detrimental effect of oxidation but originated from the fact—at that time probably not recognized—that the cut surface of fruit is a very favourite fly walk, and it need not be applied to the other half of a grape fruit that has been kept, cut side downwards, overnight in an electric refrigerator. Similarly, twice cooked food, whilst best avoided, as each cooking lowers its vitamin content and usually its digestibility, need not be looked upon as a positive danger in these days of electric refrigerators (by those who use them and use them properly). Water for drinking purposes should always be boiled, and then it is conveniently kept in clean bottles in the refrigerator. There are efficient filters, but most filters are a continual source of anxiety and a dirty or deficient filter is an active danger. (Water supplies and their sterilization are discussed elsewhere.) Milk must be carefully pasteurized or, if this cannot be supervised, it must be boiled.

In most instances in the tropics the servants are natives of the country, or of some other tropical country, their sanitary sense is usually poorly developed, and, even if they observe a strict personal ritual regarding their own food, they do not understand our scientific ritual and cannot be trusted to carry it out. There is, therefore, a wide gap between ordering a thing to be done and either doing it oneself or actually seeing that it is done. The bachelor cannot expect to find time to look after his food in the same way that his wife should do if he had one, he should nevertheless introduce a strict routine procedure regarding the boiling of milk and water and the washing of salads and fruit, so that it can be checked any day, even if he does not check it every day.

The kitchen, or cook-house, far too often a ramshackle outhouse, is the one room in the establishment over which the greatest sanitary care should

be exercised (*vide infra*) It is not always possible to have a white-tiled kitchen, but a high degree of cleanliness can be attained without this refinement. Above all it should be inspected regularly, and also at odd times, to ensure that the standards are maintained throughout the 24 hours, and it must never be looked upon as the private domain of the servants. If malaria is excluded, probably 90 per cent of the illnesses from which the sojourner suffers are gastro-intestinal in origin and the kitchen is therefore the most important centre whence may radiate good or evil. Yet there are women, looking upon themselves as good mothers and faithful wives, who not only fail to inspect their kitchens daily, but actually boast about this total negligence of their ordinary duties towards their families, often complaining at the same time that they find it difficult to fill their day. When such women come from the classes who in their own countries have a housekeeper and a butler, there is some excuse for them, though they should adjust themselves—as in fact women of this class usually do—to their new conditions, but this is more often the pose of those who never saw a domestic servant in the homes from which they originated.

Another matter closely associated with food is the servants' dusters, tea-cloths, glass-cloths, dish-cloths, etc. Native servants will, if possible, convert anything that is given to them into an all-purpose cloth, which in addition to the above functions will be used for mopping their brows, wiping their noses, straining the soup, and finally, when cold drinks are demanded, for breaking ice in. The potential dangers of such a practice are more obvious than is the remedy, but insistence on the daily exchange of several specific purpose cloths, each of which should be easily distinguishable, e.g. by means of a coloured border, or a check pattern, does at least reduce the concentration of morbid material on each cloth and ensure that at the beginning of each day clean cloths are used.

Much preventable ill-health amongst the sojourner is directly attributable to the 'studied' indolence of their women, and the writer regrets that those of British origin are apparently the worst offenders\*.

### *Beverages and Alcohol*

The question of what to drink, which may be an unimportant one in temperate climates, looms very large in a tropical country, because, when evaporation plays such an important part in maintaining a normal body temperature, the physiological requirements of water are much greater. Not only should one's thirst which is the outward and visible sign of water depletion, be satisfied, but a definite amount of fluid should be taken as a routine, for example, it is a good plan to drink a glass of water on rising in the morning. In hot dry climates, when moisture depletion is considerable, it should be remembered that a considerable amount of salt is also lost in perspiration and that this is not replaced by water, so that it is a good practice to make a habit of taking a tablet of at least 10 grains of sodium chloride with each glass of water.

\* This was written in the autumn of 1941. In the first half of 1942 when Calcutta was seriously threatened by invasion many of these same 'idle' women drove army cars served in mobile canteens and generally did a hard day's work in any capacity, without a murmur of complaint, through one of the hottest summers we have had for many years and at the same time ran their homes with a minimum of servants. It is thus not an inborn idleness nor I believe even a rooted dislike of domesticity, but a stupid tradition that has grown up—in the fostering of which husbands are often by no means blameless—that is responsible for this dangerous neglect of domestic supervision. Dare we hope that the war will kill it?



The greatest obstacle to teetotalism in the tropics is the absence of a 'soft' drink that is really acceptable to the male palate. The 'windy insufficiency' of these is more than an excuse, it is very frequently the reason, for the resort to beer or whiskey and soda to quench an honestly earned thirst. It is of course unnecessary to drink gaseous lemonades or to add soda to sweet drinks but even drunk 'still' they are very nauseating to many people. There is of course nothing more refreshing than water from a bottle kept in the refrigerator, if the taste of the water has not been spoiled by chlorination. There is also very much to be said for hot tea, at any time of the day, and taken after the day's work its slightly stimulating effect will help to put off the hour when the whiskey bottle is produced. Cold tea properly made can be a very good drink, but probably on the whole cold coffee is more popular. The neat juice of citrus fruits such as oranges, grape fruit, lemons, or limes, which are often abundant and cheap, probably make the best long drinks and are an important source of vitamin C, and tomato juice has been the salvation of many, particularly women, who do not like to refuse to drink, but dislike alcoholic cocktails.

About alcohol, it is not possible to lay down any hard-and-fast rule. The pernicious fable that it is necessary to take alcohol every night 'to ward off fever' is happily dying, but alcohol, taken in strict moderation, in the evening, to ward off depression that often follows the sinking of the sun is a valuable psychological stimulant. For this and other reasons the writer would hesitate to recommend teetotalism to the white sojourner who with his parents before him has probably been used to taking a moderate amount of alcohol, except in the case of one who has already shown instability in this matter, or who has a family history of dipsomania.

On the other hand, to the indigenous inhabitant strong spirits are very often a vice, and though there are many educated natives, Indians, for example, who take a moderate amount of alcohol regularly without any ill-effects, as a rule they seem to be better without it and when they take it are more likely to be immoderate. The peasant in many parts of the tropics takes toddy or some form of native beer regularly without any ill-effects. The same mild indulgence in native alcoholic drinks is common amongst coolies employed in industrial concerns, but in these surroundings they seem more liable to over-indulgence, often to the detriment of their working capacity.

Regarding the safety of drinks taken outside one's own house, it should be remembered that converting water into soda-water does not sterilize it, nor does the addition of alcohol, in the strength in which it is drunk in the ordinary whiskey and soda, make doubtful soda-water safe. Where a drink has to be taken in a strange place, the only safe drink is coconut water, and this is better drunk directly from the shell than from the very doubtfully clean glass that is often offered to one. It is also incidentally as refreshing a drink as any non-alcoholic drink that the writer knows.

Of the alcoholic drinks, whiskey with soda, or better still with water, is the best long drink, and gin and lime juice or bitters, not too 'short', the best cocktail. Mixed cocktails are not to be recommended. Light beer is quite a good drink, but does not suit everybody, and wines do not usually keep well in the tropics, but half a bottle of wine, red or white, with the evening meal, instead of spirits earlier in the evening, may be taken without detriment by those who prefer to drink with their meals.

### *Work and Leave*

Western sojourners in tropical countries have brought with them many of their own habits, and amongst these is a restless energy that expresses itself by observing much longer hours of work than the indigenous inhabitants in many countries were previously accustomed to, including working through the heat of the day. There is much to be said against this practice, and, except in large towns where workers live a considerable distance from their work and where therefore a mid-day interval would be of little use to them, it is wise to arrange the working hours in such a way as to take advantage of the comparative cool hours in early morning and evening, leaving a four- or five-hour interval in the middle of the day for rest. The temperature usually reaches its peak between two and three o'clock in the afternoon, so that if a start is made at six o'clock in the morning, six hours of work can be done before mid-day (that is, 2 to 3 hours before the peak is reached) and the rest of the day's work in the comparative cool of the evening.

Whilst a full day's work is certainly not to be discouraged, every opportunity should be taken to get away to a cooler, or at least a different, climate whenever opportunity arises. Many services rules allow the accumulation of leave so that it can be taken at the end of one's service. This is an extremely short-sighted policy from the point of view of the framers, as for the last few years they get the services of a tired rather than a fresh and healthy individual, and it is foolish on the part of the individual to take advantage of it, for his health frequently breaks down and he does not survive to enjoy his accumulated leave. Three-year spells are the longest that a man should be asked to work without 'home' leave in most tropical climates, and as he gets older the intervals between leaves should be shortened. Air travel has made short yearly leave possible and senior sojourners should take advantage of this whenever possible, for the sake of both their bodies and their minds. The longer spells of work should be punctuated by short breaks of even as little as ten days, whenever this can be managed, and the doctor should take every opportunity to order such leave to be taken. It is perhaps part of the mental torpor into which people fall that they are not only indifferent about getting away for a short holiday, but actually oppose the suggestion for no valid reason, this is often because they fear the mental effort of making the necessary arrangements.

### *Exercise, Rest, and General Habits*

Exercise assumes a greater importance in the tropics than in temperate countries. In the latter, even the clerical worker usually finds that walking part of the journey to and from his work, with perhaps a little cycling or gardening at the weekend, is sufficient to maintain himself in reasonable health, though the athletic type may find that he requires a little more than this. In the tropics, although under normal circumstances about the same amount of exercise would probably suffice, there are difficulties in the way of walking to one's work, it is neither pleasant nor healthy to arrive at the office with one's clothes completely saturated, and at the other end is not the best time to take exercise, and it takes a certain amount of strength of mind to delay by half an hour the return to the bath and drink that are awaiting. So the sedentary worker usually finds that some form of regular exercise, games or riding is necessary. These remarks apply equally to the native and to the sojourner, but it is probably on the former that the need for regular exercise requires to be most impressed, for

with the latter exercise is frequently a fetish and is more often overdone than neglected. It is a common fallacy that the early morning exercise expiates the sins of the previous night. Though there are individual variations in the matter of exercise requirements, just as in everything else, it is very largely habit and/or gastronomic and alcoholic excesses that lead to the remark so often heard from the sojourner 'I must have my morning exercise, or I cannot get through my day's work.'

Another fallacy is that increasing weight can be controlled by exercise alone. Figures worth quoting are—that a mile walk will counteract the effects of only two lumps of sugar, a round of golf, one meat course, and five hours of strenuous squash rackets (a physical impossibility) would be required to dissipate the calories acquired at a six-course dinner.

It is very hard to convince the exercise fiend that, if he cut down his nightly whiskeys from eight to two, reduced his evening meal to two courses, and took no exercise in the morning not only would he feel fitter for his work, but that he would not be nearly so tired at the end of the day, and that his continuous feeling of sub health is not the fault of the 'blank, blank' climate but of his own habits. The majority of their predecessors died unrepentant (and often prematurely), but the present generation is tending to learn its lesson earlier.

Exercise should be graded according to age—football, hockey, hard singles tennis, and squash rackets are for the young, cricket and mixed tennis can be continued into the forties, after which golf is the game of choice. Riding can be graded to suit all ages and walking and swimming are always useful alternatives, the last-named being particularly valuable in special conditions such as pregnancy.

As important as exercise is rest. The traditional mid-day siesta is not observed by the majority of sojourners who have their livings to earn, and, except in very hot climates where there is a mid-day break in the daily routine, it has little to recommend it, though for children nearly always, and for women in many circumstances, it is a good practice.

There is probably no single factor more important in the general maintenance of health than a good night's rest, and, as it is difficult to sleep after about 6.30 in the morning in most tropical countries, early retirement to bed is essential (see p. 30).

On the whole, smoking is probably more detrimental to health in the tropics than elsewhere. This may be because cigarettes and cheroots are the more common media than the less detrimental pipe. Idle and neurotic women are particularly liable to become 'chain smokers.' It is more frequently on account of gastric disturbances than the toxic action on the heart that one has to recommend abstinence from this practice. There are in the writer's experience far more non smokers amongst sojourners in the tropics than amongst the same class of individual in their own countries, the reason for this may be medical or otherwise. It is scarcely necessary to contradict another fable, namely that cigarette smoke has any antiseptic value in the case of an air borne or droplet infection.

Finally, advice on personal habits can be summed up in the simple counsel—admittedly one of perfection—moderation in all things.

### *Clothing*

In the matter of clothing, it is probable that we can add little to time-honoured local practice, the very scanty clothing of the South Indian coolie and the light loose clothing, easily thrown off the shoulder, of Indians of the educated classes are eminently suited to the hot damp

climate of southern and eastern India, just as the *burnouse* of the Arab is to the much greater but dry heat of the desert. The 'actinic-ray-proof' red lining of the khaki coat is just trade propaganda to sell an article ill-adapted to most tropical conditions.

The pictures of heroic scenes during the Indian Mutiny fill the present-day observer with horror, not an account of the atrocities that were practised by the rebels, but because of the cruelties inflicted on the British soldier by the army authorities who prescribed his broadcloth uniform. The khaki drill that replaced this was a distinct advance, but it seems to have taken the present war to break down old traditions and allow the adoption of the sane and sanitary, but one must admit slovenly, dress of the soldier of 1940.

The civilian sojourner in the tropical metropolis is following this example rather slowly, as individual conservatism is harder to break down than official conservatism in a matter of this kind, but one hopes that the 'bush shirt' or some other form of open necked short-sleeved garment will be the accepted 'office wear' before many more hot weathers have been endured.

The essential features are that clothing should be light in colour, so that it reflects the maximum and absorbs the minimum of heat, light in texture and open woven, so that moisture-laden air is continuously carried away from the body and replaced by drier if not cooler air, and light in weight and loosely fitting so that it does not weigh heavily on the shoulders and hips or cling round the neck, legs and wrists, but, again, allows free circulation of air and thereby evaporation.

It is not possible to lay down any hard-and-fast rules for Europeans' clothing in the tropics, as conditions as well as customs vary so widely. For general comfort and efficiency, where appearance and convention may be ignored, shorts and a shirt open at the neck (preferably white but light khaki is more serviceable), the former made of a light drill and the latter of light longcloth or an open-woven cotton material, will be the best, under this a very fine cotton vest and a pair of short trunks, of the kind that give some support to the scrotum, add to the comfort without adding much to the weight.

In the ordinary way, the shorts should be cut to rest on the hips so that a belt is unnecessary, but for those who have no hips, and in extremely hot damp climates where any constriction round the waist may be intolerable, the shorts can be made to button to the shirt. The disadvantage of such clothing is that it exposes a large area of skin to the sun, and those who are not habituated to the tropical sun should be careful at first, further, this type of clothing leaves a large surface for ticks, leeches etc., to adhere to, and for mosquitoes to bite at night. In climates where the nights are cool—this applies particularly to dry climates such as that of Egypt—the dangers of both local and general chilling are obvious, and arrangements should be made to change or supplement the clothing towards evening, but the habit of putting on a thick sweater or a heavy coat immediately after a game of tennis, when the wet-bulb temperature is 80°F and the chances of chilling are very slight, is both unthinking and unhealthy, it is far wiser to allow one's body temperature, which will probably be raised two or three degrees, to return to normal before putting on a wrap.

The flannel cholera belt, whose powers of cholera prevention were of course mythical but which could be guaranteed to produce a nice band of prickly heat in most climates, has fortunately gone out of fashion.

Quiescent abdominal infections are sometimes stimulated into activity by local chilling which the cholera belt was designed to obviate, it is therefore advisable for those subject to attacks of diarrhoea to put their wraps round their abdomens, rather than over their shoulders, when cooling off after exercise

Long stockings that were at one time nearly always worn with shorts are now often replaced by very short socks that do not come above the ankle, or ordinary socks rolled to the ankle, these should be of cotton or silk. Women seldom wear stockings in these days

'In the Malay States, they have bats like plates which the Britisher won't wear', sang the satirist, nevertheless, we have probably made some advance in the matter of suitable headgear and in most instances have improved on the local customs, though even in this there is a great deal of pseudo-scientific nonsense written and talked by the 'trade'. The essential features of suitable headgear is that the brim should be wide enough—at least 5 inches—to shade the eyes and the back of the neck, be light in weight and colour, be held well away from the head, both at the brim and over the vault—air is an excellent insulator—and be well ventilated by generous openings to ensure free interchange of air. These features are not incompatible with a headgear of reasonably æsthetic appearance from the point of view of male fashions, and a fantastic shape is no guarantee of a scientific conception

European women are recommended to adopt the 'severe' male style and not to attempt to disguise a pith foundation as a recent fashion model, the attempt is always a ludicrous failure

White is again the best colour and khaki the most serviceable. Pith is the best material, mainly on account of its lightness, the tougher composition of the service and the polo helmets gives added protection in the case of a fall, but not against the sun's rays, and is much heavier. Lining the helmet with aluminium foil is of little practical advantage. The protection given by an ordinary felt hat, and certainly that given by the 'double Terai' with a wide brim, is in most cases adequate from the point of view of interrupting the sun's rays, but neither is so well ventilated as the pith 'toper'

The protection of the eyes is more important than that of the head, and an experienced tropical sojourner will often wear an eye shade or dark glasses and dispense with headgear altogether (the writer plays golf at any time of year in Calcutta without any head protection), but it is not a practice that one would recommend a recent arrival in the tropics to adopt, until he is more certain of his personal factor. Calobar-D or other tinted glasses are more suitable than really dark glasses in most circumstances, but here again the local conditions and the personal factor are all-important, many people will manage without any glasses in the green tropics, e.g. Malaya and Assam, but it would be unwise for anyone to go to Egypt or Iraq without adequate glare-glasses. The reflection from water can also produce very severe headaches

Footwear again will depend on the circumstances. It would be inadvisable to advocate canvas shoes for tramping through excreta-contaminated soil on tea estates, but for town wear they are far better than leather, in that they allow freer ventilation, 'co respondent' shoes, made with white canvas in the place of buckskin, are smart enough for town wear and are an excellent prophylactic against 'foot-rot', i.e. tinea infection with septic complications (*vide infra*). 'Mosquito boots', with

high canvas tops, are useful for protection in the evenings in mosquito-ridden localities

### HOUSING AND SANITATION

Much can be done to mitigate the ill-effects of the tropical climate by suitable housing. The design of a building will naturally depend on the purpose for which it is to be used, as well as on economic considerations, but, even with regard to the living quarters of the average sojourner and the well-to-do indigenous inhabitant, the requirements will of course vary considerably and depend on the nature of the climate and on other local considerations, so whether it is a hot dry climate or a hot damp climate, and whether in the latter case the rainfall is so high and the drainage of the soil so poor that it will be necessary to have the house raised off the ground, or, in extreme cases where flooding is common, built on high stilts, or conversely whether the damp rising from the ground into the walls of the house will be welcome as an aid to temperature reduction during the hottest time of the year, again whether the walls should be thick and the house built so that it can be hermetically sealed during the hottest parts of the day (as for dry climates), or whether it should be constructed so that the maximum fresh air will be available throughout the 24 hours, whether it should be built to withstand heavy rainfall, or if this is so rare that no allowance need to be made for it, whether it is to be in a town or in the open country, whether it will be necessary to make the building mosquito-proof, or not, whether its rooms are to be artificially cooled, or whether cooling will have to depend on natural methods, and so on.

It will be obvious that the subject of housing in the tropics is a very complicated one. It has seldom been studied scientifically, except as a purely local problem to meet immediate requirements and is still almost entirely in the hands of the amateur, and often not a very intelligent one at that.

When looking at an old house built a hundred or more years ago, in India for example, one often hears the sigh 'Ah, they knew how to build houses in those days.' They did so fact use common sense and build houses with very thick walls and roofs, and high ceilings, and usually with broad verandahs to act as extra buffers between the external heat and the large inner rooms, but today we cannot afford to imitate them even if we wished to do so. The modern builder has tried to adapt himself to changed circumstances, and if he has not been very successful he has the excuse that science has provided him with very few data applicable to tropical climates. Since modern tropical institutes are tending to include chairs of sanitary engineering\*, one hopes that the subject will now be studied more thoroughly, and that future writers on tropical medicine and hygiene will not have to depend entirely on the few crumbs of scientific investigation, such as that of Crowden, the importance of which they have to exaggerate in order to disguise the poverty of the meal that they are giving to their readers.

**Present day trends**—The general tendency today is to build the walls of the houses less thick than formerly, primarily because of increased cost, but the thinner walls, if insulated with the low-heat transmission material, have certain definite advantages over the old type of building with very thick walls.

\* Mr B Dyer professor of sanitary engineering All India Institute of Hygiene and Public Health Calcutta has kindly supplied some of the data given below

In the old houses with walls 3 feet thick built of low-density brick and plastered inside with a difference of  $10^{\circ}\text{F}$  between the indoor and outdoor temperature there was a heat transmission of 126 BTU\* per hour. With a 12-inch wall of the same type of brick and 1 inch of insulating material such as Celotex and the same conditions as above the heat transmission would be 1.60 BTU per hour, but with a wall 18 inches thick with 1 inch of insulation the heat transmission would be 1.30 BTU per hour. There are obvious advantages in thinner walls if the insulation is equally good. Not the least of these is that they are dryer.

The walls should have a damp course of slate, if possible, or otherwise of at least half an inch of neat cement to prevent moisture creeping up the wall. This must be placed below the level of the floor, in order to protect that also. This is specially necessary in India, where in many cases the bricks are poorly burnt and the mortar is of lime and sand, with too great a proportion of sand.

The best roofing from the point of view of heat deflection, is thatch, the thicker the better, but it has certain disadvantages, in that it makes an excellent harbourage for rats, birds, snakes, and insects of many kinds and it is easily fired and has to be repaired very frequently. Rats and birds can be kept out by suitable wire netting.

Pitched roofs are usually of tiles a composition asbestos material or galvanized iron, and flat roofs are of brick and concrete. The galvanized iron roof which is cheap and serviceable is not as hot as one would imagine, provided it is painted white and there is a false roof of Celotex, or some other efficient insulating material, to intercept the radiated heat. Celotex is also used in conjunction with concrete, but brick rubble on top of concrete is also very efficient.

A pitched one inch tile roof with a plastered ceiling has a transmission coefficient of 0.34 BTU per square foot per hour per degree F, that of a two inch flat concrete roof with a ceiling is 0.82 BTU, that of a four inch concrete roof is 0.72 BTU, and that of one with 4 inches of concrete with 1 inch insulation is 0.23 BTU. A corrugated iron roof with no wooden lining has a transmission coefficient of 1.5 BTU, with a wooden lining one of 0.95 BTU, and with 1 inch of insulation a coefficient of 0.25 BTU. A roof of 6 inches of concrete under 9 inches of brick rubble gives a transmission coefficient of 0.337 BTU.

A pitched roof should overhang the walls of the building by at least two and a half feet to protect them from the sun's rays, and also in order to carry the storm water well away from the walls into a properly sloped drain. Flat roofed houses, with no overhanging roof usually have a cornice of about 2 feet over the windows, which reduces the glare, keeps the rain away from the windows, and shades the walls from the vertical rays of the sun.

The roofing material that has been introduced by Crowden, referred to above, consists of three layers, the important layer being the centre one, this consists of a quarter of an inch of thickness of some composition material, the actual nature of which is not important covered on either side by a very thin layer of aluminium or aluminium foil. The nature of the outer and the inner layers is again unimportant and they will obviously vary with the requirements but they must be of some non conducting material and be held at least half an inch away from the centre layer. The efficiency of this roofing in deflecting heat, in proportion to its thickness which need not be more than about 2 inches, is very considerable, but at present its expense precludes it from general use as a domestic roofing though it is possible that in the golden future when we have turned our swords into plough shares and our aeroplane scrap into aluminium foil it may find a wider application. The coefficient of transmission of this

\* BTU = British thermal units

roofing is in the neighbourhood of 0.23 BTU per hour per square foot for each degree of difference of temperature between the inside and outside temperatures

Floors should be of finished concrete, terrazzo or one of the new materials which are so attractive and, having a smooth finish, take a high polish. All the corners and the angles between the walls and the floor should be rounded to permit easy cleaning.

Ground floors should be at least 18 inches above the ground, and there should be sufficient grated openings on all sides to provide cross-ventilation for the space below the floor.

The ventilation space below the floor has the disadvantage of forming a harbourage for reptiles, rodents, and other animals, and it is a continual source of expense to keep the grating or wiring in a proper state of repair. For this reason a solid plinth is favoured in some places, this must be covered by good concrete to prevent the damp rising up into the house.

Ceilings should be at least 14 feet high, the advantage gained by the extremely high ceilings is not proportionate to the added expense. If the room or house is to be air-conditioned much lower ceilings are advisable. A ceiling of 9 feet is not oppressively low, and it reduces the cubic capacity of the room considerably and thereby increases the effect of the air-conditioning.

Windows should be of the casement type, and, if no shutters are provided, should swing outwards. It is a great mistake to have windows too small. They should be  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet wide and 5 feet high, but, even more important than their size is the placing of the windows, they should usually be placed in such a position that cross-ventilation is possible, and advantage can be taken of the varying prevailing winds during the hot seasons. In the tropics, there is some doubt whether the accepted ratio of 1 to 7 window space to floor space applies, as windows must be protected during the heat of the day, the ratio of 1 to 10 with cross-ventilation is more satisfactory.

Good wooden shutters with fixed slats are a great help in keeping down the temperature of the room, and can be used with the glass windows open or closed, according to whether the air is to be shut out or free ventilation encouraged.

Doors should be wide, outside doors should have lintels and also be placed to assist cross-ventilation.

Screening of doors and windows should be done in all malarious countries, whether other anti-malarial measures are adopted or not. The old belief that screening raises the temperature of the room considerably is not borne out by the observations made by many investigators, though it does diminish air circulation. In the Punjab, rented flats must be screened by the landlords, as are government bungalows. The wire-netting should not be coarser than 16 meshes to the inch, in order to exclude mosquitoes (see also Malaria).

The verandahs should be at least 12 feet wide and of sufficient length to be comfortable, there is a great advantage, in a country bungalow where space is unimportant, in having a verandah all round the house to protect the room walls from the sun but in a town where space is necessarily limited, when the verandah is to be occupied much during the day, it should face east or north.

The aspect of the house is an important point, but no hard-and-fast rule can be laid down. The full range of local seasonal conditions must be considered. In Calcutta, for example, the prevailing wind in the hot



weather is from the south, in the cool weather when the wind may be too cold it is usually from the north, and storms usually come from the north-west, so that, despite the disadvantage of the hot sun during the middle of the day, the south is the aspect of choice.

The rooms should be of good size, at least 15 feet square or its equivalent. For country bungalows much larger rooms are the rule and are to be recommended provided air-conditioning is not to be installed, but, if it is, there is a great advantage in a small room, which will usually be sufficient for ordinary living rooms or bedrooms, when properly arranged. For example, wardrobes and cupboards (almirahs) are unsightly and are favourite nesting places of mice, etc. Built-in cupboards are more convenient and save space, the old claim that they are damp is not applicable to modern building construction and has been found to be untrue in many tropical countries.

The kitchen, or cook-house, should have a considerable amount of thought devoted to it, it should be in, adjoining, or very close to the main structure, so that it can be kept under the strict supervision of the housewife, and should not be relegated to the servants' quarters, where it is impossible to control it. It should be small, 10 by 12 feet, so that it can easily be kept tidy and will not be used for purposes other than that for which it was designed, it should be well ventilated and as well lighted as any workshop, the floor should be finished with smooth concrete, the walls and ceiling should be of hard plaster, preferably painted white, so that they can be cleaned easily, and the kitchen should be fly-proof.

The excuse for the distant cook-house is that the smell of cooking is offensive, but it is possible to arrange that there is no direct closed communication between the kitchen and the rest of the house, even when it is in or adjoining the main building, and if the servants are made to do their own cooking—the smell of which can admittedly be very offensive—in their quarters, this objection is largely removed.

**Bathroom and toilet**—It is usual in the houses of sojourners in hot countries to have at least one bathroom attached to each bedroom, and, as in the hottest weather two or three baths are often taken during the day, it is worth while having the bathroom as large as possible, and fitted with a fixed bath and hand basin and a sufficient number of convenient shelves. A shower and an electric fan are comfortable additions. The floors should be made of polished concrete, which should extend 5 feet at least up the walls, the rest of the walls and the ceiling being painted.

If the spaces under the basin and bath cannot be completely enclosed in concrete, or some other vermin-proof material, it is better to have them altogether open, as the space is always damp and therefore an ideal refuge for cockroaches, centipedes, rats, or even snakes.

It is usual to have a flush toilet pan or commode in the bathroom, it is a convenient arrangement where the ratio one bathroom per person can be maintained, but otherwise it has obvious objections.

Where water is available without 'main' drainage, some form of small septic tank into which the toilet pan can be flushed directly should be built. This is not expensive, but it must be emptied regularly, about once a year, and the effluent has to be arranged for, a bore-hole soakage pit will suffice.

When there is no connected water supply and drainage, a commode with an enamel-ware pan is usually used in India, but this necessitates the continuous services of a 'sweeper' which may not always be possible. The larger type of bucket latrine with an automatic ash sprinkling arrangement,

or simply a box of ashes and a shovel, has very great advantages over the shallow enamel-ware pan where service is irregular, and is popular in many tropical countries

For garden use, the bore-hole latrine with a light superstructure that can be moved biennially is very satisfactory in most soils, and has the advantage of being cheap (For 'rural water supplies and sanitation' see other sections)

### ARTIFICIAL COOLING

In a dry climate, use should be made of the *khus-khus tattt*. This is a screen of loosely woven coconut fibre that is hung across a doorway or over a window opening, it is kept continually saturated with water by some automatic feeding device or by hand with the help of a garden hose. The dry air comes in contact with this damp screen and causes evaporation, which absorbs the heat from inside the room. This arrangement can be made more efficient by the use of a suction fan to draw the air through the screen. It is a surprising fact that this does not tend to make the atmosphere of an occupied room moister than when it is just closed up in the ordinary way, but it makes it a number of degrees cooler.

Air-conditioning in offices and houses—Twenty-two years ago, when the School of Tropical Medicine was opened in Calcutta, one of the largest cities in the tropics, our 'cool' room was one of our most popular exhibits. It was an extravagance that was only justified by the fact that a large freezing plant had to be maintained for storing and preserving sera, etc., and that the cool room was necessary for certain chemical and bacteriological experiments. Its existence was dependent on the foresight of Sir John Megaw, who seven years earlier, before the 1914 war, had seen the necessity for, and designed, this room, and it was appropriate that he, the first director of the School, should be the one to make the most use of it. Gloomy prophets foretold that the users would be victims of all the worst ills that, in a tropical country, chilling is popularly supposed to generate, quite forgetting that in temperate and cold countries people are subjected to many-fold greater temperature changes every time they enter or leave their heated houses or rooms. These ill-forebodings did not materialize, and today our prize exhibit of 1920 is of little interest to visitors of 1942, many of whom have similar installations in their offices and houses, and we are compelled to stress the historical interest as an excuse for showing it at all.

Air conditioning, which has now been extensively adopted and, had it not been for the present war, would probably have been as commonplace as the electrical refrigerator is today—though possibly restricted to slightly higher economic classes on account of the higher cost—has entirely changed the outlook of many less robust tropical sojourners. With an air-conditioning machine in their bedrooms, they are ensured a cool, quiet and undisturbed night, for not unimportant though secondary advantages of an air-conditioned room are that noise and disease-carrying and other flying insects with a high nuisance value are excluded, and that the light can be shut out far more effectively than when one has to rely on open windows and doors for ventilation.

The principle of the cool room at the School is a very simple one; air is driven over frozen pipes and conveyed by an insulated shaft to inlet holes near the roof on one side of the room, and on the other are a number of openings connected with an exit shaft. The cool and dry air (dried by the precipitation of the moisture when it is cooled) falls in a cascade into the room, and lifts the warm air, which passes out by the air-exit shaft. The walls of the room are lined with an insulating material and covered by glazed tiles, the windows are

double, and the door is a thick one with rubber bands to ensure hermetical sealing, these latter refinements undoubtedly added to the efficiency of the room, but time has shown that they were unnecessary elaborations for the range of temperature that is required.

Today air conditioning is altogether a much simpler affair, single units are available that can be fitted into any window—in a matter of few minutes if the window is of the sash variety, and after some adjustment if it is a casement window. If the windows and doors are reasonably close-fitting, no special measures need be taken, but, when the building is an old one, the openings that will usually be found around the doors can easily be filled with felt, and, if a curtain is hung over the door, there will be very little interchange of air whenever the door is opened.

The domestic units are designed to cool rooms of different cubic capacities, a machine of about one horse power will usually cool a room of 4,000 cubic feet very efficiently. When the room has a very high ceiling, as is usual in better-class houses in tropical countries even today it may be advisable to put in a false ceiling, but it should be noted that the 'dead space' at the top of a room is not such an important matter in practice, as one might suppose, though the temperature in this dead space is often 3 or 4 degrees higher than that in the lower part of the room, this fact is not of much importance as this air does not come in contact with the body. Thus, in a high ceilinged room the cooling will be more efficient than in a low-ceilinged one of the same cubic capacity, on the other hand, cooling will be more efficient in the low-ceilinged room than in the high-ceilinged one with the same floor space.

For air-conditioning, the best room is one with a north aspect (in the northern hemisphere), with the minimum of doors and windows, and with not more than one outside wall. It is not usually necessary to provide an air exit, but, if this is provided, it should be near the ceiling, or at least above the door height. The air will find some means of escape and if the pressure is on the plus side inside the room, this will ensure that the air is passing through such cracks as exist, in one direction only, that is outwards. Where the air in the room is likely to become smoke laden or otherwise obnoxious, an exhaust fan may be advisable, if this is not already provided in the air-conditioning unit, it is not however advisable to use this exhaust fan unnecessarily, for it always has the effect of raising the temperature of the room, by lowering the pressure and drawing hot air in from outside. The room should have as little furniture as possible in it, as, until every object in the room has been cooled to the air temperature, every surface is giving off heat that has to be absorbed.

The cost of domestic air-conditioning units is not prohibitive, before the present war a machine sufficient to cool a moderate sized room of about 3,000 cubic feet cost about £100\*, and, where reasonably priced 'power' electric current is available, about a penny an hour to run. For the average tropical sojourner, this is not a high price to pay for the very great benefits to health and efficiency that it provides, or, to put it another way, it is better value to have a good night's rest than an extra whiskey and soda.

For those who can afford slightly larger plants and are prepared to make structural alterations in their houses, it is possible to air condition three or four rooms in a house at a cost equal to that of

---

\* This was the price of a  $\frac{1}{2}$  'ton' (=  $\frac{1}{2}$  horse power) machine delivered in Calcutta. In the United States the price was about half this figure.

two individual plants, especially if all the rooms are not likely to be used at the same time

Commercial houses that have introduced air-conditioning into their city offices have taken this step not as a luxury for their staff but as a sound business proposition

The temperature that it will be possible to provide in an air-conditioned room will naturally depend both on the machine and on the temperature and humidity outside. The comfort zone in a tropical country, where one is wearing thin clothes, is between 72° and 78°F. with the humidity at 60 per cent, which correspond to 68.5° and 73.5° effective temperatures, respectively, and most efficient air-conditioning plants will usually achieve the latter temperature and humidity even in the most unfavourable weather, but even a temperature of 80°F. with this degree of humidity (effective temperature 75°) will be sufficiently low to ensure a good night's rest for most people

Most one-room plants will bring the temperature down to very near the minimum level within an hour, and the more powerful house plants, when they are turned on to one room, in a matter of a few minutes, so that it is not necessary to run a plant continuously

Air-conditioning in operating theatres—Air-conditioning of operating theatres has been practised for half a century in some large hospitals in England, but during the last few years considerable progress has been made in this subject, especially in America. In addition to the application of air-conditioning to these, maternity and delivery rooms, x-ray rooms nurseries, etc., are being extensively air-conditioned in some countries, but the widest application is still for operating theatres. Complete air-conditioning for operating theatres is desirable even in temperate countries to reduce the risk of explosion of modern anaesthetic gases and for other reasons, but, in a hot climate, for the comfort of the operating personnel, to increase their efficiency, and to reduce the chances of sepsis, it is almost a necessity

There is still much to be learnt about the patient's temperature requirements before, during and after operation, but some data, especially with reference to fatalities, have been collected, and, although it is clear that the comfortable air conditions for the operator are not identical with those optimal for the patient, a compromise has finally been reached in a relative humidity of 55 to 66 per cent and a temperature of 80°F. in warm weather and about 75° in cold weather

In 1940, as a result of extensive experiments in the United States, one hospital was rebuilt with the operating theatres completely air-conditioned, by means of two separate air-conditioning systems. One system serves all operating theatres using 100 per cent fresh air which is passed through disinfecting filters before being delivered into the room, the second system, which is a separate one for each operating room, takes care of the fluctuation in the internal load and removes the excess humidity. The final design called for a relative humidity of 66 per cent and a temperature of 80°F. The second system is not used unless needed, but is always ready to meet special circumstances, dependent upon the class of operation being conducted.

# DISEASES DUE TO THE DIRECT EFFECTS OF A TROPICAL CLIMATE

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .. .. .	34
<b>PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS PRODUCED BY THE HEAT RAYS OF THE SUN</b> * ..	34
<b>A Heat Stroke</b> .. .. .	34
Definitions .. .. .	34
Epidemiology .. .. .	34
Geographical incidence—Seasonal incidence—Sex, race, habitus, and habits—Other environmental factors	
Etiology .. .. .	35
Physiology—Associated factors	
The pathological processes associated with the breakdown of heat regulation .. .. .	36
(a) Hyperpyrexia; (b) Circulatory failure, (c) Electrolytic imbalance, (d) Super-dehydration	
Morbid anatomy .. .. .	37
Symptomatology .. .. .	38
The onset—Early symptoms—Second stage—Final stage—Heat shock.	
Diagnosis .. .. .	38
Prevention .. .. .	39
Test for chlorides in the urine	
Treatment .. .. .	41
Diet—Convalescence—Prognosis and sequelæ	
<b>B. Heat Exhaustion</b> .. .. .	42
Epidemiology—Etiology—Treatment	
<b>C. Heat Cramp (or Stoker's Cramp)</b> .. .. .	43
Prophylaxis, treatment	
Morbus Britannicus	
<b>PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS PRODUCED BY THE ULTRA-VIOLET AND LIGHT RAYS OF THE SUN</b> .. .. .	44
Solar dermatitis: <i>Light-stroke</i> • <i>Night-blindness</i> .. .. .	44
<b>OTHER CONDITIONS THAT ARE ATTRIBUTED TO THE TROPICAL CLIMATE</b> ..	46
<i>Tropical anæmia</i> .. .. .	46
<i>Tropical neurasthenia</i> .. .. .	46
Symptoms—Treatment	
<i>Tropical liver</i> .. .. .	50
Etiology—Prophylaxis—Treatment	

**Introduction**—When in extreme climatic conditions, other environmental conditions being optimal, the compensatory mechanisms of the healthy body fail to maintain the body within the normal physiological limits, climate may be considered to be the *sole* factor in the production of pathological changes. More usually however these same pathological changes are brought about by less extreme climatic conditions acting in conjunction with other suboptimal environmental conditions, and/or on a body in subnormal health, in these circumstances climate is only one of two or more factors that, acting in conjunction, determine the pathological state.

Under this heading only pathological conditions that are *solely* or *mainly* due to climatic conditions will be included, but it must be remembered that other factors, e.g. a specific infection, may influence the symptomatology to a greater or lesser degree, and it will be convenient to consider also in this chapter conditions of multiple aetiology that are sometimes attributed to the climate.

#### PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS PRODUCED BY THE HEAT RAYS OF THE SUN

The following clinical conditions are recognized as being produced by heat —

##### A Heat stroke

(i) Heat hyperpyrexia

(ii) Heat shock

##### B Heat exhaustion

##### C Heat cramps

It would perhaps be appropriate to make some remark about the term 'sunstroke' which was commonly used until recently and which still causes a considerable amount of confusion, not only in the lay mind but amongst less well-informed medical personnel. The term was introduced when it was thought that the solar spectrum contained some mysterious ray, usually attributed to the ultra-violet end of the spectrum, that had a direct and detrimental effect on nerve tissue. There is no evidence for the existence of such a ray.

Another objection to the term is the fact that *coup de soleil* (literally 'stroke of the sun') has already been claimed by the French, for quite a different condition, namely for what we know as solar dermatitis. It has been shown that the clinical conditions indicated by the term 'sunstroke' are all produced by heat effect on the body as a whole, though it is conceivable that localized heat applied to the brain or spinal cord might produce parallel conditions.

##### A Heat Stroke

**Definitions**—*Heat hyperpyrexia* may be defined as a condition in which, in excessive heat, the heat regulating mechanisms of the body fail to keep the temperature below the upper physiological limit. *Heat shock* is another phase of the same condition, in which shock is the predominant feature. The expression *heat stroke* may be used conveniently as a general term to include both conditions.

##### Epidemiology

**Geographical incidence**—The condition is not by any means confined to the tropics, nor is it even more common in the tropics. The heat stroke incidence in the hottest months of the year in Calcutta and Singapore is

lower than it is in a heat wave in New York, during heat waves in American cities the deaths attributable to heat amount in thousands per week. In the latter cities, the other environmental factors, both personal and general, that is, the unsuitable clothes, housing conditions, etc., enhance the effects of the climate on an unacclimatized population. Again, it is in the dry desert areas of North Africa, Arabia, Iraq, Iran and the North West Frontier of India that the condition is more frequently encountered than in the true tropics.

**Seasonal incidence**—It is of course in the hottest months of the year that most cases occur, and army statistics in India show that all heat hyperpyrexia occurs between May and September, half the cases occurring in June.

**Sex race habitus and habits**—Male adults form the bulk of the victims, mainly on account of the circumstances under which they have to work and live. In the army in India, British troops are more susceptible than Indians and in the former the incidence is highest during the first two years of service, after this there is another peak in the incidence curve at about 11 years' service. The high incidence during the first two years is undoubtedly due to lack of experience—of the heat, of how to mitigate its effects, and of mild infections, such as sandfly fever—and the second rise to increasing age, chronic disease, and possibly acquired bad habits, e.g. alcoholism. After middle-age, age itself is certainly a contributing factor.

The pyknotic individual is probably more susceptible than the asthenic, and obesity increases susceptibility.

**Alcoholism and over eating** are detrimental. The teetotaler is undoubtedly at a great advantage in extreme conditions of heat, and alcohol should never be taken during the day in hot weather.

**Other environmental factors**—In addition to climate the other important environmental factors are unsuitable clothes, ill-ventilation, and overcrowding (e.g. the historical 'black hole of Calcutta').

### Ætiology

**Physiology**—It will be necessary to refer back to the physiology of heat balance (see p. 7). To summarize, heat is formed by the normal body functions (100 calories per hour) and this heat production is markedly increased by work (marching with a pack of 65 lbs. produces nearly 500 calories an hour). The process of heat loss is sensible, that is, it is lost to the cooler immediate environment (by radiation and convection), and/or latent, that is, absorbed by evaporation (1 gramme of evaporated water absorbs 0.58 calorie). In a cool climate most of the heat loss is sensible, but, as the dry-bulb temperature of the environment nears 98.4°F, this means of heat loss is reduced until, when the temperature rises above this figure, sensible heat loss becomes heat gain. Above this temperature all the heat loss will be latent, but as the humidity rises and the wet-bulb temperature nears 98.4°F this means of heat loss is also reduced to nil, and eventually the body temperature must rise.

Air movement and clothing are also important factors and can be considered together. Provided the temperature of the air is below 98.4°F, air movement will assist sensible heat loss, and, as clothes impede the movement of air around the body, they interfere with this heat loss. At temperatures above 98.4°F air movement increases sensible heat gain, but provided the air is dry it increases latent heat loss. Thus, air movement

usually increases total heat loss and clothes decrease it, but in extreme conditions of heat the reverse may be the case

The important factors in heat balance are therefore *work, temperature, humidity, air movement, and clothing*, the last two acting in either direction, and these five become the important determining factors in heat imbalance, or hyperpyrexia. For expressing the combined effects of temperature, humidity, and air movement, a single unit, the effective temperature, has been introduced (see p 8). An effective temperature of 97°F is about the upper limit of tolerance of the body, even naked and at rest

The following figures regarding the effect of different combinations of temperature, humidity, air movement, and work from various sources are worth quoting —

In still air at rest it is just possible to survive—

a temperature of 100°F	when the humidity is 80 per cent
120°F	"                          "                          40                          "
140°F	"                          "                          15                          "

In each case the effective temperature is about 97°F

The body temperature will show a definite rise when the subject is—

at rest in moving air, at 93°F	wet-bulb temperature *
"                          still                          88°F	
doing moderate work in moving air, at 86°F	wet-bulb temperature,
or doing moderate work in still                          "                          78°F	

The adverse effect of hot winds in a desert area is shown by the observation that at 128°F it is not possible to survive long in a wind of 20 miles per hour, whereas if the wind increases to 68 miles per hour long survival would not be possible even at 117°F

**Associated factors**—Of the *predisposing* factors, infection, usually—but not necessarily—with some organism that in ordinary circumstances might produce only a mild febrile attack (e.g. influenza, dengue, sandfly fever) is undoubtedly the most important. Others mentioned above include constitutional disease, obesity, old age, and alcoholism. A previous attack of heat stroke is usually considered to be an important predisposing factor, it seems very possible that this is the case, but the statistical evidence on this point might mean nothing more than that those who have had one attack are constitutionally ill-fitted to withstand high temperatures and are therefore likely to suffer again

From another point of view, infection and the taking of alcohol might be considered to be the *determining* or *precipitating* factors, both are potent factors in upsetting the finely-balanced heat regulating mechanism when it is working under the strain of adverse environmental conditions

### The Pathological Processes associated with the Breakdown of Heat Regulation

**A Hyperpyrexia**—A slight temporary rise of temperature under extreme conditions is not pathological, but it becomes pathological when the compensatory mechanism fails to respond, through being defective or being strained beyond its physiological limits, then the temperature will rise, the heat regulating centre will be affected, there will be inhibition of sweating, and a vicious circle will be established. When the temperature reaches 108°F neuroglobin is precipitated and irreversible changes in the brain and cord occur

\* The discrepancy between these figures and those shown in figure 2 are dependent on the fact that the latter were based on patients subjected to artificial hyperthermy and that a different criterion for a definite rise in temperature has obviously been taken



*B Circulatory failure (heat shock)*—In the attempt to get rid of heat, there is a very marked dilatation of the peripheral vessels and a very great loss of fluid in perspiration. One of the first reactions to a hot climate is an increase in blood volume (*vide supra*) which is apparently an attempt to meet the extra requirements of an increased vascular bed, but this extra fluid content of the blood is soon exhausted and dilution becomes concentration, so that eventually there is an increase in the vascular bed, a decrease in the blood volume, and an increase in the viscosity of the blood. This will lead to a fall of blood pressure and circulatory failure. The recovery from such a condition is complicated by paralysis of the vaso-constrictor mechanism, an expression of the general heat regulating failure. This circulatory failure is enhanced by the taking of alcohol and/or of a heavy meal, the latter causing splanchnic dilatation and a further increase in the vascular bed.

*C Electrolytic imbalance*—There is a continuous loss of chlorides and fluids in the perspiration, this fluid loss is usually replaced by pure water. It has been shown that the blood chlorides fall during the hot weather and are always at a low level in cases of heat hyperpyrexia. There is also a fall of plasma bicarbonate and an increase in lactic acid. Marsh (1937) gives the following mean figures—

	Cold weather	Hot weather	Patients suffering from heat effects
Blood sodium chloride mg per 100 ccm	494 $\pm$ 38	466 $\pm$ 29	448 $\pm$ 52 (mean of 45 patients)
Plasma bicarbonate milli- moles per 100 ccm	278 $\pm$ 0.26	254 $\pm$ 0.18	As low as 0.61
Blood lactic acid mg per 100 ccm	24 $\pm$ 6	30 $\pm$ 9	As high as 100

A better indication of the degree of hypochloræmia will be obtained from the urine. Even before the onset of symptoms this will be reduced from a heavy cloud of chlorides (on addition of silver nitrate—*vide infra*) to complete absence. There is also acetone and diacetic acid in the urine.

Severe muscular cramps are a clinical manifestation of this condition (*vide infra*, Heat Cramp).

*D Super-dehydration*—This is a most important factor in hyperthermia, but it is one which is overlooked with surprising frequency. It is of course particularly in evidence when conditions prevent fluid replacement. The blood, organs and other tissues all suffer, the effect on the blood is reflected in the circulatory failure noted above, and the parenchymatous changes that are reported in the organs, e.g. the kidney, are probably due to this dehydration, at least in part. After dehydration has reached a certain point sweating ceases and little further evaporation is possible.

All these conditions are frequently produced in a single case of heat ill-effects but at any one time there is usually emphasis on one particular process and the symptoms will vary accordingly.

### Morbid Anatomy

There is usually a marked post mortem rise in temperature, but this will occur in other conditions and cannot be considered pathognomonic of death from heat hyperpyrexia. There is very early post-mortem rigidity, and this may also seem to appear ante mortem in subjects who have been seriously dehydrated. The skin and mucous membranes are cyanotic, and

there may be a petechial rash. There is hyperæmia of all the organs, and particularly of the meninges which in certain instances also show œdema. The heart is stopped firmly contracted in systole, and the blood in the vessels is dark and viscid suggesting tar in appearance and consistency.

Microscopically, there are punctate hæmorrhages in the muscles, in the organs, and in the serous membranes, degenerative changes are seen in the nerve cells, and parenchymatous degenerations in the various organs have been described, but these are very probably post-mortem changes, for at such temperatures these changes occur almost immediately the patient dies.

### Symptomatology

The onset—When the patient is already under observation, the onset of the symptoms may be noted from the beginning, and if circumstances permit, the attack can usually be aborted. On the other hand, it may be more insidious so that the patient does not notice the symptoms himself, or probably more often refuses to 'give in', or on account of the circumstances is unable to do so, until he suddenly collapses or passes into a state of maniacal excitement. The stages of the attack are as follows—

**Early and prodromal symptoms**—The patient who is working up to an attack of heat hyperpyrexia will have a flushed and cyanosed appearance, his conjunctivæ will be red and his pupils contracted, and his skin will be intensely hot and dry, he may be drowsy, or uncomfortable and restless, and he will complain of a severe headache, of a constriction of the chest, often of frequency of micturition and sometimes of a watery diarrhœa and vomiting. At this stage the pulse rate will be slightly increased and the temperature raised (but this may be due to the infection for which he is already under medical observation and it is mainly in such cases that the early symptoms will be observed).

**Second stage**—Nearly all the signs and symptoms of the early stage are increased, drowsiness or slight restlessness turn to marked hysterical excitement amounting to mania in many cases, the urine becomes scanty and if tested will show a distinct cloud of albumin, the pulse is now full and rapid and the respirations increased, and the temperature is beginning to mount rapidly. The knee jerks may be lost at this stage.

**Final stage**—This is very often the stage at which the patient is first seen. He is unconscious and often delirious, he has a burning skin, a cyanosed face, suffused conjunctivæ, bounding pulse, stertorous breathing, and the temperature may be to 103°F or higher. All reflexes are lost. The unconsciousness deepens to coma, the breathing becomes Cheyne-Stokes in character, and he dies with a temperature sometimes as high as 115°F in the rectum (117°F has been recorded).

**Heat shock**.—The first sign of the effects of heat may be syncope, later to be followed by hyperpyrexia, on the other hand, syncope may be a phase of the general condition, or it may result from too vigorous treatment in the hyperpyrexial stage. There is collapse, vomiting, and dyspnœa, the pulse is feeble, the systolic blood pressure falls to 70 mm Hg or so, and the rectal temperature may be low, but quite often the temperature in the rectum still remains high.

### Diagnosis

The diagnosis is complicated by the fact that in the vast majority of cases the patient is suffering from some other condition as well, and it is difficult to apportion the responsibility. However, if on a hot day a patient has hyperpyrexia, or if he is brought in unconscious with no obvious signs

of trauma vigorous treatment must be applied for the hyperpyrexia or the collapse immediately whilst attempts are being made to exclude other conditions the most important ones to exclude—as in these cases other vigorous action is indicated—are malaria and diabetic coma or hypoglycæmia. Other conditions that are likely to give rise to symptoms suggestive of heat shock are cerebro spinal meningitis dengue sandfly fever, typhoid and other febrile diseases apoplexy epilepsy and uræmia.

### Prevention

Some of the ways of mitigating the effects of heat have been discussed above (see p 16 *et seq*)

The methods adopted will naturally depend almost entirely on the circumstances. For meeting any particular set of circumstances the factors in the production of heat stroke should be kept in mind. For example, though it may be impossible to lower the temperature it may yet be possible to reduce the humidity and increase air movement (by ventilation) in most circumstances it will be possible to reduce the hours or the amount of work and almost always to modify the clothing suitably (an exception to this last is the case of ARP workers who may have to wear asbestos or rubber clothes and masks to protect themselves from fire and gas). Work in particular should be graded to meet the environmental circumstances. The soldier who is under training should have his hours of work in the heat of the day reduced in the hot weather and in India there is an arrangement in operation by which the meteorological department warns the military authorities when the temperature is likely to be particularly hot so that they do not embark on any strenuous military exercises during this time or if they think that such exercises in hot conditions constitute an important part of the soldier's training at least they can grade the strain imposed on the raw recruit.

This brings one to the matter of acclimatization (see also p 17). The general whose soldiers can fight in all circumstances has obviously a great advantage in real warfare and in industry there is much work that has to be done under adverse conditions. Much can be done by increasing the hours of work in trying circumstances very gradually and the Germans are reported to have arranged hot chambers in which the soldier has to work for gradually lengthening periods for training their soldiers to withstand high temperatures before they go to hot climates *eg* North Africa. The armies of the British Empire are more fortunately placed in being able to train many of their soldiers in hot climates.

In mines in which work has to be done at a great depth where it is very hot miners are acclimatized gradually by being put to work in the cooler seams at first and then being transferred to the deeper ones and also by having their output of work in the hotter seams graded. It has been found that after long spells of leave re-acclimatization is necessary.

During short periods of exposure to heat food may be reduced to a minimum and should be predominantly carbohydrate but in longer periods of exposure a balanced diet up to the full caloric requirements—which are slightly lower than in temperate climates—must be taken. Heavy meals during the heat of the day should always be avoided.

The fluid intake must be studied at least eight pints of fluid should be taken and for those doing hard manual work in very hot climate figures of 24 (Hunt 1912) and 33 pints (Scholl 1937) have been advocated.

The importance of avoiding dehydration cannot be over emphasized it should be remembered that the sick—and more especially the wounded

suffering from shock—may not ask for water and they must therefore not only be allowed as much water as possible but must be pressed to take it

The salt requirements will be from 10 to 20 grammes a day and more in special circumstances this may be taken in the food or with the fluid. With such large draughts of water it is absolutely essential to increase the salt intake and the addition of half an ounce of sodium chloride to each gallon of water has been recommended, but this makes an unpleasant drink and a better plan is to take three 10-grain tablets of salt with each pint of water drunk. Alcohol should be avoided during very hot weather and should certainly not be taken during the day.

When the question of salt intake is in doubt, the urine should be tested for chlorides, the urinary chlorides should not be allowed to fall below 0.5 per cent.

**Test for chlorides in the urine**—The following simple test is a very useful one for the ward or clinical laboratory. The reagents required are potassium chromate 20 per cent and silver nitrate 2.9 per cent. The test is carried out as follows—

Ten drops of urine are taken in a test-tube and a drop or so of potassium chromate added. The mixture is well shaken. The silver nitrate solution is then added drop by drop the test-tube being well shaken after the addition of each drop. At a certain point the solution will turn brown and remain brown after shaking. This is considered as the end point of the test.

The same pipette held at the same angle preferably vertically must be used for measuring the urine and the silver nitrate. After it has been used for measuring the urine the pipette must be washed out first with distilled water and then with a small amount of silver nitrate. The potassium chromate is only an indicator and need not be measured accurately.

The calculation is made from the number of drops of silver nitrate added to 10 drops of urine before the colour changes to brown, one drop representing 1 gramme of chloride calculated as NaCl per litre that is if the 7th drop turns the solution brown the amount is 6 grammes per litre or 0.6 per cent.

In a normal person 8 to 10 drops will be added before the solution turns brown. In a dehydrated and hypochloremic patient the brown colour will sometimes appear after the first drop indicating that there are practically no chlorides present in the urine.

In every large hospital in a country where heat stroke is common, there should be an air conditioned ward in which the temperature is kept within the comfort zone. This is particularly important in connection with industrial concerns where the work may entail subjection to temperatures even higher than that of the already high atmospheric temperature. Heat stroke subjects can then be admitted straight into such a ward and the lowering of their temperatures is considerably facilitated. Further, hospital patients showing the first signs of the failure of the heat regulation mechanism can be transferred to the air-conditioned ward.

Much can be done in a hospital by keeping an intelligent watch on all febrile patients and very frequently, even in the absence of an air-conditioned ward it will be possible to abort the attack. Careful watch should also be kept on the urine to be sure that it contains the normal quantity of chlorides, and, if it does not, the salt intake should be increased.

In industrial concerns, the medical officer should see that the environmental conditions are improved as much as is practicable (e.g. by artificial ventilation), that the work of the new recruit is graded, that the health of the labour force is maintained at the highest level by other sanitary measures (e.g. anti-malarial), that the worker's nutritional requirements are adequately met, and that he is supplied with plenty of safe fluid throughout the day (*vide supra*).

### Treatment

The patient must be removed by the fastest means possible to a hospital or at least to some cooler place. If he is already in hospital he should be moved to an air-conditioned room—if there is one—or to the coolest place available.

All the physical means possible must be brought into action to bring down the temperature, but drugs must be avoided at this stage. Hydrotherapy offers the best opportunities, cold baths, cold wet sheets, and ice packs, when ice is available, must be used freely, a hand or electric fan should be used to aid the cooling. Cool enemata and cool intravenous salines may also be employed, a note of warning regarding the former is necessary, because the rectum is the best temperature indicator from which one ascertains the point at which the cooling treatment is to be discontinued.

Massage is of great value in both the hyperpyrexial and the collapse phases. It is important to maintain the circulation in the former phase, so that the cooled peripheral blood is conveyed rapidly to the internal organs, and, in the latter, it will naturally form part of the treatment for shock.

The life of the unconscious person with heat stroke will depend on the early reduction of temperature, so no possible means of lowering the temperature should be neglected, once, however, the temperature has been reduced to 102°F in the rectum vigorous measures should be discontinued, and the patient left in bed covered by a sheet or a light blanket, but he must be carefully watched to see that (a) his temperature does not rise again, and (b) that he does not collapse and pass into a state of heat shock. It is by no means an uncommon experience for a patient—especially one whose heat-regulating mechanism has been upset by some infection—to see saw between hyperpyrexia and heat shock throughout the whole day, and when—as happened many times in Iraq in the writer's experience during the 1914-18 war—a number of patients in the hospital are doing this, the amount of work that falls on the staff may well be imagined.

For intravenous use, alkaline saline (sodium chloride—90 grains, calcium chloride—4 grains and sodium bicarbonate—160 grains, to a pint of water) should be given at a temperature of 60°F, this has the effect of lowering temperature, helping the circulation counteracting both the chloride loss and the acid increase, and combating dehydration, so that it helps to counteract all four pathological processes mentioned above. Warm (room temperature) intravenous alkaline saline will also be valuable in the collapse phase.

Drugs should be avoided as far as possible. No antipyretics must be given, and other drugs strongly contra indicated are strychnine and atropine, the former because it will increase the neuro muscular tonicity and exaggerate cramps, and the latter because it inhibits perspiration. Of the stimulants, caffeine, camphor and ether in oil, and coramine can be used, in that order, and with regard to sedatives, in cases of acute delirium, chloral and bromide can be given per rectum, phenobarbitone is the safest effective drug for severe headache, and it may also be used for sleeplessness, if bromide and chloral (10 grains of each) fail.

In patients in whom the blood pressure is high and there are signs of congestive heart failure, venesection should be considered, and, in unconscious cases with signs of cerebral irritation, lumbar or cisternal puncture

may be advisable. In the former case, the blood should if possible be taken into citrate saline, so that if the state of the patient changes over to the collapse phase later, it could be returned to his circulation.

In the shock phase, whether it is the initial state or has followed hyperpyrexia treatment is very much the same as for any case of shock, but the danger of pushing the patient over to the hyperpyrexial phase must always be kept in mind, and all measures that are aimed at increasing body temperature must be applied with great caution. The treatment will include nursing in the horizontal position, massage, possibly hot-water bottles, intravenous saline or 5 per cent glucose, and of drugs, cortin or the synthetic desoxycorticosterone acetate, pituitrin and adrenalin.

**Diet**—If the patient is conscious, he should be made to take fluids freely by the mouth, with glucose and sodium bicarbonate, and, if there is any chloride deficiency in the urine, sodium chloride up to two ounces in the twenty-four hours, must be given. The question of diet need not be considered for twenty-four hours and then a fluid diet should be given for a day or two before the patient is allowed to return gradually to his full diet.

**Convalescence**—This will depend on the gravity of the attack, but in any case the patient should not be allowed to return immediately to the environment in which the attack occurred, or to full work. He should, if possible, have a holiday in a cool and quiet place, live on a low diet, take no alcohol, and pay special attention to his personal hygiene, including keeping his bowels well regulated. If it is thought advisable for him to return to his previous environment and work, he should at first return but do little or no work then gradually increase his hours of work, and, if he is employed on manual labour, the actual amount of work done should be graded.

**Prognosis and sequelæ**—Prognosis will depend almost entirely on the rapidity and efficiency with which treatment is carried out. Rogers reported 83 per cent of deaths in patients whose temperature did not rise above  $107^{\circ}\text{F}$ , but when the temperature rises above  $107^{\circ}\text{F}$  or the patient remains unconscious for more than three hours the prognosis is bad, and, even if he recovers, he may suffer from the permanent effects of damage to nerve tissue. The factors that militate against recovery are previous hypertension, and the complication of some serious febrile infection, such as typhoid.

Sequelæ include long periods of low fever, headaches, myocardial weakness, enfeebled intellect, and sometimes dementia, according to Rogers the last occurs in about 10 per cent of severe cases of heat stroke. After an attack of heat stroke the subject is said to be much more liable subsequently to the effects of heat.

### B Heat Exhaustion

The epidemiology of this condition is naturally closely allied to that of heat stroke, but there are differences. For example, women are more liable to suffer from heat exhaustion than from heat stroke, and indolence is almost as likely to cause it as work. However, the male worker is also liable to heat exhaustion which is very often a prodromal stage of heat stroke, or it may be looked upon as a mild attack of heat stroke.

The ætiology is virtually the same, but there is more often a psychological element in heat exhaustion.

Some sojourners appear to suffer from a form of thermal instability, the defect in their heat regulation mechanism is probably congenital in

the majority, but in a few it appears to be acquired after some serious febrile affection such as typhoid or bent stroke

The symptoms include weakness and lassitude, headache, dizziness, diarrhoea and vomiting mild cramps, and sleeplessness. A rapid pulse, low blood pressure and low fever will probably be the only clinical findings. Chlorides will usually be low and may be absent from the urine. In the case of the worker, the first evidence may be that he faints at his work.

Some degree of anæmia will often be found, and it must be looked upon as a contributory cause and due to some other ætiological factor, possibly of dietetic origin.

In the thermal instability form the patient's temperature will rise to 102°F, or higher, every year, when the effective temperature goes beyond a point, say 85°, at which most people are uncomfortable but able to compensate it. These patients are often diagnosed as enteric, though they don't usually feel very ill, and the writer has recently had a patient who was treated as enteric 5 times in 7 years. Many children's temperatures will always rise two degrees or so in the middle of the day in the hot weather, without there being any discoverable cause.

Amongst patients with this condition, there will be a good proportion of neurasthenics and malingerers, but care must be taken that the genuine cases are not classed amongst these.

Treatment of the milder cases consists in removal of the patient from the surroundings that caused the condition, very careful investigation for some underlying disease, regulation of the diet and fluid intake—not forgetting the salt requirements, regulation of the bowels, and finally the administration of some tonic mixture.

In the more severe cases the treatment will approximate to that given for heat stroke.

### C Heat Cramp (or Stoker's Cramp)

The excuse for allowing this symptom of the general syndrome of hyperthermia a separate heading is that it has a clear cut ætiology and that it is very often the only symptom. It is due to excessive perspiration and the replacement of the lost fluid by drinking pure water so that the chlorides lost in the perspiration are not replaced. Heat rather than humidity is the important factor and cramps seldom occur if the temperature is below 100°F. There are no special predisposing factors unconnected with salt intake, except conditions in which vomiting occurs, here the further loss of chlorides in the gastric juice increases the deficiency.

The cramps usually occur in the muscles that are most used. They may start either during work or some hours after work has ceased. As well as those of the fingers—especially the flexors—fore-arms, arms, and legs, the muscles of the pelvic girdle and abdomen are sometimes affected. The involuntary muscles are never affected.

The muscle contracts to an iron like hardness and during the time of the contraction the pain is agonizing so that it is quite impossible for the patient to do anything or even to maintain a conversation. When the contraction passes the pain is immediately entirely relieved but the muscles remain very tender for some time afterwards up to a few days. The spasm may be started by active movement by a knock or even by a cold draught playing on the skin over the muscle.

There is not necessarily much diminution in the urinary output, but there may be complete absence of chlorides from the urine. The blood changes include an increase of plasma protein, and of plasma potassium, phosphorus and calcium, and a marked diminution in plasma sodium. There is also an increase in cell volume percentage.

Prophylaxis has been discussed above. The most important feature is the provision of saline drinks. Ten grains to the pint makes a reasonably palatable drink, but this may not be sufficient. The taking of three 10-grain tablets with each pint of water is an additional precaution that may well be observed.

Treatment consists in giving copious saline draughts, and intravenous and rectal saline, if necessary. In severe cases, it may be necessary to relieve the cramps by giving morphia, or whiffs of chloroform.

The similarity of this condition to hyperventilation tetany has been pointed out recently, but it seems unnecessary to suggest that the physiological hyperventilation which occurs in a hot climate is likely to be the cause of the cramps when there is a much better explanation.

*Morbus Britannicus* is an allied condition that was at one time common amongst British sailors. It was due to loss of chlorides in perspiration and vomitus, it is usually, but not necessarily, associated with a hot climate. It received its name from the fact that Scandinavian sailors who lived on salt meat seldom suffered from it, whereas it was common amongst British sailors who lived on fresh meat.

The abdominal muscles are usually affected—because of the important part played by vomiting—and the condition often simulates an acute abdomen.

#### **PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS PRODUCED BY THE ULTRA-VIOLET AND LIGHT RAYS OF THE SUN**

One of the main effects of the ultra-violet rays is physiological, the conversion of the cholesterol of the subcutaneous fat into vitamin D. The pathological condition hypervitaminosis D is recognized, but it is doubtful if it could ever be produced by the action of the sun's rays alone.

*Solar dermatitis*—the French *coup de soleil*—is a condition that is actually produced by the ultra-violet rays though the other sun's rays probably play some part in sensitizing the skin to the effects of these rays. After over-exposure to the sun's rays, the first effects will appear in about two hours and the maximum effects in about six hours. At first there is erythema, then a hyperæmia of varying intensity up to a serious congestion with œdema which may be followed by blistering, there is in any case a superficial necrosis of the epidermis, which eventually separates, as in a burn of the first degree, leaving the deeper layers of the skin exposed to the risk of secondary infection. The immediate inflammatory reaction may be a serious one causing severe pain locally, high fever, and toxæmia, even more serious results may follow secondary infection. Thus, though the condition is usually treated lightly and often jocularly, a severe sun-burn may have a fatal result.

The parts most likely to be affected are the uncovered areas of skin on which the sun's rays fall vertically, the upper part of the forehead, the nose, and the malar eminence, the back of the neck and shoulders, the backs of the hands and the dorsa of the feet, and the knees and the fronts of the thighs if the exposure was in the sitting posture. A single layer of clothes, even a thin handkerchief, will usually give complete protection.



Sun-burn is usually the effect of direct sunlight, but serious sun burns will also result from the reflection from snow or desert sand, and on a dull day the same effect may be produced by reflection from the clouds, so that care should be taken not to leave a sensitive patient on the verandah on such a day. In the case of snow-burn the lesions will be mainly on the neck, the chin and lower part of the face.

In specially sensitive individuals an urticaria sometimes develops on areas exposed to the sun, the condition has been called 'urticaria solaris'. Rays between 3800 and 5000 Å are thought to be responsible for this somewhat rare effect (Arnold, 1941).

Frequent exposure to the sun's rays will eventually lead to the deposition of pigment, which gives some protection to the skin during subsequent exposures. Whilst the rays between 2800 and 3,100 Å are the most potent in the production of erythema, the longer, light rays are more active in the production of pigment. Repeated irritation from over-exposure to the sun's rays will produce keratosis and a pre-cancerous condition which may eventually develop into rodent ulcer or epithelioma conditions that are common amongst men of European descent living open-air lives, in Australia for example.

The natural pigment of the dark-skinned races protects these subjects to a large extent from these effects, and amongst fair-skinned races the brunette is less susceptible than the blonde (*vide supra*). Certain substances sensitize the skin to the effects of the ultra-violet rays, for example, that inborn error of metabolism, hæmatoporphyrinuria, and Kaposi's disease make the unfortunate victims of these conditions extremely sensitive to the sun's rays all their lives and the dermatitis of pellagra is probably due to similar induced changes. Certain protein decomposition products and bacterial toxins also hypersensitize the skin, so that special care should be exercised in exposing sick persons to the sun's rays and in the administration of artificial light therapy to them.

Amongst drugs, the heavy metals that are used for injection, e.g. gold, and substances that have fluorescent properties, e.g. dyes, such as trypanflavin, used in the treatment of brucella infections, cause sensitization.

Prevention does not present any great difficulties, a single layer of clothing even a silk handkerchief, for example, or a thin layer of any oil will protect the skin from sun-burn. Ordinary yellow vaseline, or 2 per cent tannic acid and 10 per cent castor oil in spirit as a prophylactic paint, are quite as good as any of the more expensive preparations that are advertised. Usually the main difficulty is to keep the application from being washed away by the sweat, or absent-mindedly wiped away when the face is mopped.

The treatment of sun burn is purely palliative, cold cream or calamine lotion are probably the best substances to apply. The more serious lesions must be treated as burns, with 2 per cent tannic acid and 10 per cent silver nitrate spray, with the triple dyes, or with whatever is the treatment indicated by the distribution of the lesions.

Light-stroke or severe form of sun headache is a common and sometimes serious syndrome amongst newcomers to the special environmental conditions that produce it. In this case it is in almost every instance the reflected light rays from snow, desert sand, bare baked earth, and water surfaces, rather than the direct ones that are mainly responsible.

The symptoms produced are intense headache, vomiting, prostration, and fever. Much of the so-called 'sunstroke' of a few decades ago was undoubtedly this condition, and today the layman still attributes his symptoms to failure to keep his head or the back of his neck covered. The local effect on the retina is a reduction in visual acuity which may be considerable and in extreme cases may amount to complete blindness, this is usually temporary and from all the milder degrees of the condition complete recovery may be confidently expected.

The direct and indirect glare from the tropical sun undoubtedly play a part in the production of night-blindness, though this condition is more often due to psychological causes. Strong light breaks down the visual purple in the retina which is again formed with the aid of vitamin A. When the diet is deficient in vitamin A, night-blindness results. Other eye symptoms of vitamin-A deficiency are Bitot's spots (white or yellowish foam-like patches on the cornea), xerophthalmia (dryness of the cornea), and keratomalacia (softening of the cornea). Anæmia-producing conditions, such as hookworm disease and malaria, also increase this tendency to night-blindness.

Prevention consists in the wearing of suitable tinted glasses. In the green tropics Calobar-D lenses are suitable for general use and it is a mistake to have glasses unnecessarily dark, as this leads to eye-strain when objects have to be viewed accurately, but in desert areas much darker glasses may be necessary.

Treatment consists in rest in a darkened room. Phenobarbitone should be given to relieve the severe headache, and for the prevention and treatment of night-blindness, a liberal mixed diet with the addition of vitamin-A concentrate, if the diet is thought to be deficient in this vitamin, the fish liver oils are the best animal source of the vitamin proper, and red-palm oil the best vegetable source of carotene (or pre-vitamin A) from which the vitamin is synthesized in the body. Any associated anæmia should be treated appropriately.

## OTHER CONDITIONS THAT ARE ATTRIBUTED TO TROPICAL CLIMATE

### Tropical Anæmia

It is now well established that no such condition exists. It is however only during the last few years that the fallacy that residence in the tropics invariably leads to a 'thinning of the blood' has been exploded and that the home-returning sojourner has ceased to drink nightly a glass of port wine—the hæmatine value of which is incidentally more than questionable—to counteract this thinning as his ship enters temperate waters. The hæmoglobin content of the blood of the healthy sojourner is higher than of people of his class in temperate climates, if it is not, the reason for this should be sought and will often be found in some sub-clinical infection or dietetic deficiency. The hæmoglobin level of the indigenous inhabitant is also certainly not lower than that of the European standards (*vide infra*).

### Tropical Neurasthenia

The term 'tropical neurasthenia' is one that has come into general use, without a very exact definition being attached to it and certainly without any clear understanding regarding its ætiology. Many practitioners have encountered mild psychasthenic conditions amongst their patients and have labelled them tropical neurasthenia, but, as far as we know, no series of cases has been studied and no scientific data regarding the most commonly associated physical conditions or even the environment in which tropical neurasthenia most frequently occurs has been collected.

It is doubtful if it is ever due to the direct effects of heat alone, though it is probably most commonly encountered in hot damp monotonous climates in which there is little seasonal variation. Again, climate is certainly not the most important factor, nor are the conditions with which it is associated found only in the tropics though most of them are probably more frequently encountered in a tropical than in a temperate climate, a circumstance which provides the only justification for the term tropical neurasthenia.

The ætiological factors can be grouped under the following heads and if the author were compelled to assign the degrees of importance to these factors he would give the percentages as indicated below —

(a) Physical—disease or fatigue	50 per cent
(b) Heredity	20
(c) Social and environmental conditions	15 "
(d) Mental strain—overwork and over responsibility	5
(e) Alcoholism and drug addiction	5 "
(f) Climate <i>per se</i>	5 "

(a) *Physical*—Under this heading bowel conditions undoubtedly head the list. The commonest history is one of repeated attacks of dysentery, followed by a condition of chronic diarrhoea with mild abdominal pain and discomfort. The patient may have a chronic amœbic infection but quite often he has not.

His attention becomes centred on his bowels and his diet, in his over-anxiety to rectify the bowel disorder, he often remains on a low fluid diet for long periods and this leads to specific malnutrition of the bowel wall, stasis, fermentation and dilatation a condition of dysfunction of the small intestine, which may or may not be associated with ulceration of the large gut, and anæmia.

Unsuitable, indifferent and monotonous food served in depressing surroundings that is liable to be the lot of the isolated bachelor will often result in loss of interest in food and the necessity to stimulate this by alcohol, this sequence again will lead to a state of undernourishment.

Debilitating febrile conditions such as malaria, also predispose to neurasthenia, especially when frequent relapses occur, and both dengue and sandfly fever are particularly liable to lead to a state of depression and melancholia, which is sometimes so extreme that it may end in suicide. Finally, overdosage with certain drugs especially quinine and emetine, in the former case usually self prescribed may be important factors in producing the condition. emetine is probably the most valuable drug after the cinchona alkaloids, in tropical practice, but it is certainly the most abused.

A phase that follows a run of ill-health is the patient's fear of being ill again and this may be accompanied by worry that he is not doing his work and earning his pay, or, more egotistically, that he will lose his appointment. This phase is usually much more highly developed in the married man with children.

Fatigue may result from physical overwork, or the mistaken idea that exercise is the cure for all ills.

(b) The influence of *heredity* will not be avoided by sending the patient abroad, as the heads of families—ill advisedly encouraged by their family doctors—sometimes appear to think, or perhaps only hope. This expedient often presents an easy way of getting rid of a grown-up 'problem child'. Or, the weaker type of man hopes to escape from the speed, bustle, and competition of life in the west by coming out to the

tropics, where, however, he finds that other qualities, which also quite frequently he lacks, are necessary, and again he has to face the fact that he is a failure \*

Medical men who pass recruits for the tropics should pay particular attention to this aspect of their examination

(c) A young man comes out directly from school or college—this applies to both sojourners and educated natives of the country—and finds himself in some isolated spot many miles from the nearest potential companions, where he lives in uncomfortable and depressing surroundings, with only his servants or the subordinate staff to talk to. Further, if he is unmarried he will either suffer from sexual starvation, or if he cohabits with a local woman necessarily of the lower classes, though he may get a little crude sexual relief, he will get no sexual companionship and may suffer from a sense of shame which will make him introspective and unsociable. On the whole, therefore, even if he escapes venereal disease, his case will be a worse one than if he remains celibate

On the other hand, if he is happily married and has children, he has their illnesses and that of his wife to worry about as well as his own. Finally, unhappy marriages are a very common cause of neurasthenia in either or in both partners

(d) *Mental strain* is a common cause of neurasthenia in any climate. However, in the tropics, young and/or inexperienced sojourners are more often suddenly thrust into positions of considerable responsibility, or of special danger, for which they are not really fitted, and the experience is sometimes too much for them

(e) *Alcoholism* is probably more often a manifestation, or rather a stage in a vicious circle, of neurasthenia, than a cause of it. The unstable individual seeks, in alcohol, solace in his solitude, escape from his physical, matrimonial, or other troubles, or stimulation in his exhaustion, this subterfuge may work for a time, but eventually it fails, and leaves the victim in a neurasthenic condition

*Drug addiction* is not common in sojourners, but cannot be excluded as a cause of neurasthenia

(f) Probably the only direct effect of *climate per se* in this capacity, except in very extreme conditions, is by interfering with rest at night

In women—The causes of neurasthenia are naturally different in men and women. In the latter, health plays an even more important part, anxieties regarding the health of children or separations from children are also more prominent factors, and sexual neuroses are probably more common in women

Actual fear of servants, native neighbours, snakes, insects, etc., is probably a factor more or less confined to women. Idleness and boredom replace overwork as factors. Alcoholism is probably less common amongst women but cannot be excluded, and is to some extent replaced by 'chain smoking'

Symptoms—These do not differ materially from those exhibited in a temperate climate, and will vary with the aetiology. Headaches, sleeplessness, inability to concentrate and loss of memory, indecision—even in such an unimportant matter as to whether to use a spoon or a fork—loss of

\* On this subject, Professor Culpin (1939) says 'there is a selective tendency at work by which home-misfits vainly seek a new environment for their mal-adjusted personalities'

emotional stability, hypochondriasis, and acute depression—even to the extent of committing or attempting suicide—are some of the common symptoms. Frequently there will be tachycardia, a subnormal or an unstable temperature (i.e. one permanently raised about a degree above normal in the hot seasons), a blood pressure on the low side, and sweating of the palms. Reflexes may be exaggerated.

**Treatment**—There is no specific line of treatment, and perhaps more than in any other condition is the doctor-patient relationship of the utmost importance. It is essential that the patient should have complete confidence in and respect for the doctor, and for this reason if the doctor is already on too familiar terms with his patient, he should consider the advisability of sending him, or her to some other doctor, with very full confidential notes and possibly even recommendations as to the line of treatment.

A sympathetic appreciation of all the patient's symptoms is essential but care should be taken not to be too mysterious about these, or he may suspect that he is suffering from some serious condition which is being hidden from him.

Hypochondriasis often merges into neurasthenia and it is sometimes a good plan to send a patient to some medical institution for a 'thorough investigation'. This will have a double effect, some unsuspected underlying cause, e.g. a protozoal or helminthic infection, gastric dysfunction or gall-bladder infection, nasal sinuses, tonsils or teeth infection, an error of refraction, or even some easily corrected blood dyscrasia, may be found, or, if nothing is discovered as a result of various investigations, the patient's confidence in his own health may be restored. Naturally, whenever possible, these investigations should be carried out by the doctor himself, capital should be made out of any discovery however trivial and very thorough treatment given in the case of any important finding.

The insomnia should be tackled first by investigating the environmental conditions associated with it, to see if any improvement can be effected. Light, noise, and other disturbing factors should be excluded to the maximum extent possible. Air-conditioning should be considered, even if it imposes an economic strain on the patient (*vide supra*). The patient's habits should then be enquired into and adjusted, his evening meal should be taken before 7-30 p.m. if he is going to bed at 10-30 o'clock. It is a mistake to think that going to bed later will help him to sleep, as exhaustion prevents rather than aids sleep. A hot bath immediately before going to bed will help some people. Before putting out his light, he should take a warm drink, alcoholic (hot 'toddy', made with whiskey, lemon and sugar) or non-alcoholic (milk, or some milk preparation) according to the patient's habits.

Drugs will usually be necessary and should be given in such a form that the dose cannot be gauged accurately by the patient, that is, either in mixture or in cachet form. A large and effective dose should be given at first and, when the habit of sleeping is acquired, the dose can be reduced.

R. Chloral hydrate	..	gr xv	Spiritus ammonii aromatici	3ss
Potassii bromidi			Syrupi auranti	3i
Ammonii bromidi			Aquam chloroformi	ad 3i
Sodii bromidi		ss gr x		

To be taken at bedtime, with a dose put ready to be taken 2 to 3 hours later if necessary.

Phenobarbitone gr ii and paraldehyde 3ii are alternatives. Later, the chloral hydrate in the bromide mixture can be replaced by aspirin gr x, and this sleeping draught continued for some time.

If no cause for the headache can be found, APC powder (aspirin gr x, phenacetin gr iii and caffeine gr ii), Veganin, or Saridon should be tried first, and if these fail stronger drugs such as phenobarbitone may have to be used.

Whilst sedatives are usually indicated at first, later, when the insomnia is under control and there is some general improvement in the mental condition, tonic mixtures should be prescribed. Some of the proprietary mixtures, *e.g.* metatone, are useful in this connection.

A change of environment to a cooler climate is the obvious treatment for a neurasthenic, but this measure should not be resorted to until some attempt has been made to cure or counteract the underlying cause, or causes. If the patient is a sojourner and his home leave is due, he should certainly be sent home, but, if not, a month or two in a suitable hill station, or a short sea trip, preferably away from wife, or husband and or children, as the case is, may be sufficient, but care should be taken to choose a place where the patient will find suitable amusement and exercise, it is no help to a neurasthenic with dyspsomaniacal tendencies to send him to a bill station to spend his time in the club bar!

### Tropical Liver

This popular term describes a condition, probably commoner in the tropics than in temperate climates, that is not easy to define in medical terms.

Heavy functional demands on the liver lead to a condition of hyperæmia, which is within physiological limits at first but later becomes a pathological congestion, as well as being a troublesome minor malady, the condition is of importance because it predisposes to hepatitis and liver abscess.

**Ætiology**—There are many factors other than climate that lead to this condition, in the sojourner, the most important are an unsuitable, high-protein and high-fat diet, heavy wines and alcoholic excesses, and parasitic infections, mainly malaria and amoebiasis. Lack of exercise is also a factor, especially in women, but this should not be allowed to dominate the mind of the physician, or the patient as it is liable to do. Up to a certain point early morning exercise will mitigate the ill-effects produced by other factors, particularly those caused by gastronomic and alcoholic indiscretions, but at a certain stage this expedient will fail, and will, in fact, exaggerate the symptoms.

In the indigenous tropical resident, on the contrary, an excessive carbohydrate diet with a low-protein intake and vitamin deficiencies lead to a similar condition, and here again parasitic infections are very important.

The main symptoms are headache, dirty tongue, loss of appetite, general tiredness, sudden attacks of sleepiness, and a feeling of weight below the diaphragm. There is usually some tenderness in the liver region and possibly slight enlargement. A general unhealthy coloration of the skin, and sometimes an icteric tint of the sclerotics.

**Prophylaxis** consists in adjustment of diet and habits, and an occasional dose of sodium sulphate 3ii with sodium bicarbonate 3ii in a glass of hot water first thing in the morning. The regular taking of salts in the morning is a habit that is very easily acquired and is not a good one, as it is very liable to lead to constipation.

Treatment should first be directed at the elimination of any parasitic infection. As a general measure, after the diet has been adjusted, divided doses of calomel should be given at night, gr  $\frac{1}{4}$  every half hour up to six doses, followed by salts in the morning, and then for a week a nightly pill —

R Pilulse hydrargyri	gr 1v
Extracti aloes	gr ii
Extracti hyoscyami succati	gr i

Empirically, a course of three daily injections of emetine gr 1 is remarkably effective in this condition, but the patient should be confined to bed or to his house during these three days, and he must be particularly warned against taking exercise for a day or so afterwards. Emetine is a very valuable alkaloid, but it is a very dangerous drug when it is abused.

Some workers believe that the improvement in the liver condition after emetine administration is diagnostic of amoebic hepatitis. The writer is not altogether satisfied that the action of emetine is entirely specific. However, when this early improvement is striking it is perhaps safer to continue the emetine injections for another three days.

## REFERENCES

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| ARNOLD H L (1941)   | . Urticaria solaria <i>Arch Derm Syph</i> <b>43</b> , 607   |
| CULPIN, M (1939) .. | .. Medical Industrial Psychology <i>Report on the work of the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine for 1938-39</i> p 34 |
| HUNT E H (1912)     | The Regulation of Body Temperature in Extremes of Dry Heat <i>J Hyg</i> <b>12</b> , 479   |
| MARSH F (1937)      | Heat-stroke and Heat-exhaustion <i>British Encyclopedia of Medical Practice</i> <b>6</b> , 396<br>Butterworth and Co Ltd., London |
| SCHOLL, A J (1937)  | Discussion on Water Balance in Surgery by W G Maddock and F A Collier <i>J Amer Med Assoc</i> <b>108</b> , 6                      |

# MALARIA

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	54
DEFINITION	54
EPIDEMIOLOGY	55
Geographical distribution	55
Local distribution	57
Seasonal incidence and variation from year to year	59
Age and sex incidence	59
Race and caste	59
Occupation habits and economic status	60
ETIOLOGY	60
Historical	61
The causal organism	
The forms of the malaris parasite that are found in man—The asexual cycle—The sexual cycle	
The essentials for the natural transmission of malaria and the factors influencing them	64
A The malaria parasite	65
(i) In the mosquito—(u) In man	
B The mosquito vector	65
C Man	63
D The links between man and the mosquito	70
(i) General zoophilism or animal deviation—(u) Local and personal	
Congenital transmission	71
Artificial means by which malaria may be transmitted	71
Malaria therapy—Blood transfusion	
An exercise	72
PATHOLOGY	73
Historical	73
The general reaction	73
The spleen	73
Other organs	74
The liver—Bone marrow—Brain—Kidneys	
The blood	75
The urine	76
Wassermann reaction	76
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	76
INTRODUCTION	76
Incubation period	76
Prodromal symptoms—The onset The rigor—The hot stage—The sweating stage	



	PAGE
<i>The periodicity of the malarial attack</i> .. ..	77
<i>Other specific clinical characteristics</i> .. ..	79
Malignant tertian—Quartan malaria— <i>Plasmodium ovale</i> —Mixed infections	
<i>Other signs and symptoms of the ordinary attack</i> .. ..	80
The spleen—Heart—Liver—In infants—In pregnant women	
<i>Special clinical types of malaria</i> .. ..	81
A. Pernicious .. ..	81
(i) Cerebral forms—(ii) Algid forms—(iii) Bihous remittent fever— (iv) Blackwater fever—(v) Other forms.	
B. Chronic malaria .. ..	82
Chronic relapsing malaria—Repeated infections—Chronic malarial cachexia	
C Latent malaria .. ..	82
DIAGNOSIS .. ..	83
A <i>The history</i> .. ..	83
B <i>The fever</i> .. ..	83
C <i>The spleen</i> .. ..	83
D <i>The blood film</i> .. ..	84
Methods of examining the peripheral blood—Technique—Staining blood films—Preparing Leishman's stain—Staining with Leishman's stain—Staining with Giemsa's stain—Preparing dilute solution—The thick film—Staining—Preparation of solution—Technique	
Identification of the parasites .. ..	88
The changes in the containing red corpuscles; the pigment	
Significance of the findings .. ..	91
E. <i>Response to therapy</i> .. ..	92
DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS .. ..	92
TREATMENT .. ..	93
<i>Historical</i> .. ..	93
<i>Cinchona requirements</i> .. ..	94
Cinchona alkaloids—Cinchona plants	
<i>Quinine salts</i> .. ..	94
<i>Totaguana standard</i> .. ..	95
Cinchona policy.	
<i>The synthetic anti-malarials</i> .. ..	96
<i>Mechanism of action of anti-malarial drugs</i> .. ..	96
<i>Absorption and excretion</i> .. ..	97
<i>Principles and aims of specific treatment</i> .. ..	97
(1) True causal prophylaxis .. ..	97
(2) Clinical prophylaxis .. ..	98
Field experiments—Individual drug prophylaxis	
(3) Treatment of the clinical attack .. ..	100
Possible reasons for failure of oral administration—Test for quinine in mixtures—Tanret-Mayer test for quinine in urine—Test for atebria in the urine—Parenteral therapy—The intramuscular versus the intravenous route—Preparations and dosage	

	PAGE
(4) Treatment to prevent relapses	104
(5) Gametocyte destruction in the cause of general prophylaxis	105
<i>A comprehensive course</i>	105
<i>Army routine treatment</i>	105
<i>Recent experience</i>	106
<i>Toxic effects</i>	106
The cinchona alkaloids—Plasmochin—Atebrin	
<i>General management of a case</i>	108
<i>Treatment of the special case</i>	109
<i>Chronic malaria</i>	110
<i>The pregnant woman</i>	110
PROGNOSIS	110
PREVENTION	111
A <i>The malaria parasite</i>	112
Drug prophylaxis—Individual and community	
B <i>The mosquito vector</i>	113
Anti larval measures—Species control—Anti imago measures—Spray killing—Technique of spraying—Period of spraying—Time of spraying—Frequency of spraying—Amount of spray required—Sprayers—Freon aerosol bombs—Biological methods	
C <i>Man</i>	117
Increasing immunity—Bonification—Selection of Labour	
D <i>The links between the mosquito (B) and man (C)</i>	117
General—Personal	
<i>Amelioration of the effects of malaria</i>	119
<i>Malaria surveys</i>	119
MALARIA THERAPY	121

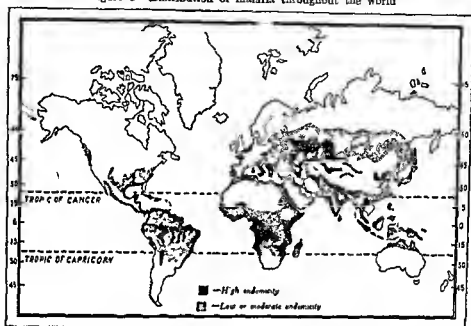
**Introduction** —Malaria is by far the most important disease in the realm of tropical medicine. In the distant past it has caused the decay of empires and in the near past the failure of the best conceived military campaigns, in our own times it has led to the abandonment of many engineering projects and has delayed innumerable others. Of all diseases except possibly the common cold, it is the most widespread, it is the cause of the greatest economic loss, and it has the highest incidence in nearly every tropical and sub tropical country. It has been subjected to a greater amount of study than any other tropical disease and a vast amount of knowledge has been accumulated about it, yet there are many lacunæ in this knowledge, it is the most easily treated of all serious diseases yet it is a disease in which the treatment is most often neglected, it is the greatest problems to the sanitarian and dominates the practice of the clinician in the tropics.

**Definition** —Malaria is a febrile disease, characterized by its intermittency, amenability to treatment with the cinchona alkaloids and by splenic enlargement, it occurs endemically and occasionally epidemically in almost every country in the world, but mainly in the tropics and sub tropics, it is caused by a plasmodium, a protozoon of the order Hemosporidia, which is transmitted from man to man by mosquitoes of the genus *Anopheles*.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

Epidemiology means literally the science of epidemics, or it can be defined more liberally as the collection and the study of observed facts regarding the behaviour of disease in relation to man. In the case of malaria, these facts have been observed and the data regarding them collected from the time of the historian Herodotus and probably earlier and today are still being accumulated.

Figure 4 Distribution of malaria throughout the world



Much of these data were collected in total ignorance of the cause of the disease and how it was transmitted from man to man, it was, however, the careful study of these accumulated facts that led, after journeys along many false trails, to the discovery of the true aetiology of malaria, and, conversely, it is our knowledge of this aetiology that has allowed us to explain many of the observed facts in its epidemiology, the reasons for which were hitherto obscure. It is therefore logical first to summarize the epidemiological data, then to state what is known about the aetiology, and finally to attempt to correlate the two and explain, as far as our present knowledge goes, what are the factors that control the incidence of malaria.

The data that have been accumulated can be arranged under a number of headings —

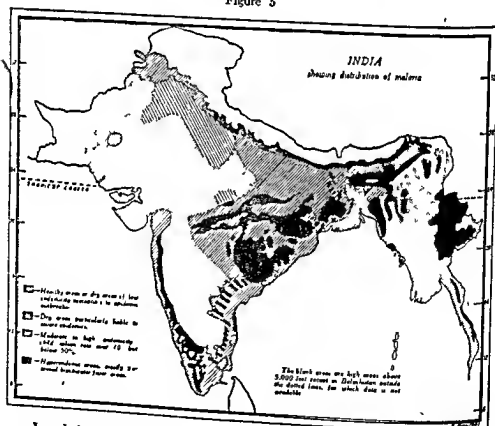
**Geographical distribution**—This is world-wide, malaria occurs in the tropical, sub-tropical and temperate zones, though its incidence is higher in the former two. In these two zones malaria occurs throughout the whole populated terrain, with a few exceptions, these are that it does not occur at altitudes over 9,000 feet—in India 7,000 feet is the highest point at which it has been reported (the incidence at high altitudes is probably a matter of temperature)—and that certain islands in the Pacific, e.g. Tahiti, Samoa, Fiji, Hawaii, are still free from the disease, the word 'still' is used deliberately, because at one time other islands, Reunion, Mauritius, and until quite recently Barbados were reported to be free from malaria.

Each of the malarial fevers caused by the four different species of parasite (*vi*) has a different distribution. The widest is benign tertian whose domain extends from 60°N. to 40°S\*; quartan has a patchy distribution in all three zones; but malignant tertian is essentially a malaria of warm countries, is limited by the 70°F. summer isotherm, and does not occur beyond 42°N. The malaria caused by *Plasmodium ovale* has a sparse and patchy distribution as yet ill-defined.

The world map shows that malaria occurs in almost every inhabited country on the globe. However, Scandinavia, Northern Russia and Siberia, Canada and the Northern United States, Australia except for Queensland, New Zealand, Cape Colony, and Patagonia in South America are and have always been practically free from the disease; in many parts of Great Britain and Central Europe it was at one time prevalent but has now almost disappeared. Broadly speaking, the incidence of malaria amongst the people of any country varies inversely with the distance of that country from the equator, although there are many other factors involved (figure 4).

The distribution in India and Burma is shown in figure 5

Figure 5



**Local distribution.**—In any country, district, or large area where malaria is a serious problem, there are almost always localities which are practically free from the disease; conversely, in countries in which malaria

\* Beyond 45°N. and 25°S. it can scarcely be considered a disease of public health importance, there is in fact not very much inhabited land as far south as 40°.

is rare, there are localities which are intensely infected, even in a small town or village, there are often considerable differences in the malaria in different parts and one can go further and say that, in a single building, it may be found that those who live on the ground or lower floors are subject to malaria, whereas on the top floors the residents may be comparatively free. It is thus essential, when studying malaria in any locality, to note carefully where the people live who are most subject to the disease.

Observations of this kind were made in the earliest historical times. Herodotus (5th century B C) referred to the dangers to health of building cities near marshy country, and described how the Egyptians lived in houses built on high poles in order to avoid the damp air, that arises from the ground, and biting insects. In total ignorance of the cause of malaria, these precautions were observed by the wise rulers of those days, with all the formulated knowledge that we have at our disposal today, there are still numerous examples of how those in authority persist in placing camps and coolie lines starting settlements, and even founding large cities in malarious countries without first consulting the malarialogist, whose knowledge is based not only on the accumulated epidemiological data of some thousands of years, but on the fuller understanding of the genesis of malaria that the discoveries of the last half century have provided.

**Seasonal incidence and variation from year to year**—There are few places in which malaria occurs with equal intensity throughout the year. Such variations are found even near the equator where, though there is little seasonal change in the temperature, other factors come into operation. On the whole, however, the seasonal variation in malaria is less marked the nearer one is to the equator. The seasonal incidence also depends to some extent on the malaria species that is prevalent, and where more than one species is to be found in one place, which is usually the case, the malaria may be caused mainly by one species at one time of the year and another at another time (see figure 6). Malignant tertian malaria is often

called *estivo-autumnal*, for in many European countries it only occurs in the summer and autumn, and in all countries where there is a distinct cold season the incidence of malignant tertian drops almost to zero during this season.

Each country and even each district has its own seasonal malarial curve, so most places, this will show only minor variations from year to year, in its general shape, even though the variations in the height of the curve may be considerable.

It is usual to consider malaria as endemic or epidemic, but, even in those localities in which it is endemic, the incidence of the disease is subject to periodical exacerbations. In the epidemic regions, the epidemic does not take the form of an introduction of malaria into a place where it did

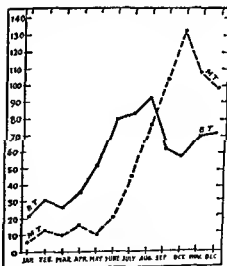


Figure 6. In June 80 per cent of the malaria is benign tertian; in October only 30 per cent of the malaria is benign tertian (Northern India).

(Acton H W 1910)

not exist before—as is the case with cholera, for example—but of a sudden and often very dramatic flaring up of malaria in an area where it occurred in a mild form before, but was normally a disease of little public health importance during most of the year, in such an area, though the individual conditions that affect malarial incidence may not vary much from year to year, it is the concatenation of a number of events that brings about a state of affairs favourable for an epidemic, cf Sydenham's epidemic constitution. Epidemics tend to occur in cycles of a definite number of years.

In India there are two main types of malaria seasonal curve the Punjab type and the Bengal-Assam type. In the former, the incidence is low during most of the year and with the onset of the rains there is a sudden rise which will in certain years amount to an epidemic.

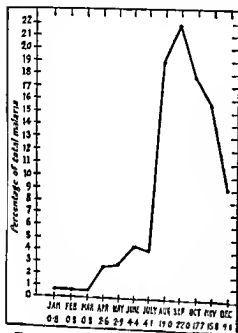


Figure 7 Seasonal malaria curve in Delhi

(Knowles and White 1930)

These epidemics have been studied by the health authorities and it has been shown that it is often possible to foretell whether it will be a normal or bad year for malaria. This information is very valuable.

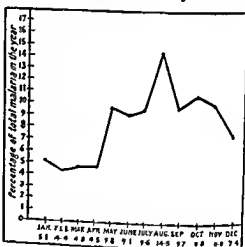


Figure 8 Seasonal malaria curve in the Assam Valley

(Knowles and White 1930)

because it enables these authorities to set in motion the special organization for dealing with the epidemic immediately it arises. In the endemic areas, e.g. in Assam and Bengal the disease is perennial, but the curve shows a steady rise in July and August and reaches its peak in about November, after which it falls fairly rapidly.

A minor spring rise in the incidence curve has often been noticed, particularly in benign tertian areas in Europe.

These endemic areas are not entirely immune from epidemics, as was shown recently by the Ceylon epidemic of 1934/1935.

In studying malaria in a locality an attempt should be made to prepare a seasonal graph from past records if they are available or failing that from current observation. If possible the malaria caused by the three different species should be plotted separately. The larger the number of years included in these data the better, and if only one year, or

a small number of years, are included, an attempt should be made by careful local enquiry to ascertain if the year or years were 'normal' as far as malaria was concerned

**Age and sex incidence**—Individuals of all ages are subject to malaria. There have been a number of instances of congenital infection reported, but this is not a normal mode of transmission of the disease, it will be referred to again later. Children are particularly liable to infection, and in them it usually takes a serious form. In a malaria-infected community, children are important for two reasons, firstly, they react to malarial infection in a more standard manner than do adults, and the frequency of splenic enlargement in children is thus a valuable indication of the degree of malarial infection of a community, and, secondly, children constitute the main reservoir of infection (*vide infra*). Both sexes are equally susceptible to infection and there is seldom any difference in the sex incidences of the disease.

The age composition of a community is thus an important factor in normal epidemiology. If children form a large proportion of the population malaria will be more difficult to control.

**Race and caste**—Persons of all races seem to be equally susceptible to infection, provided the circumstances in which they live are the same, though there are considerable individual variations in susceptibility. The morbidity caused by malaria does, however, vary considerably, and there are many instances in which the members of the indigenous races appear to be unaffected by the disease, whereas foreigners, of whatever race, become seriously ill when infected, one of the best examples of this is provided by blackwater fever, a malarial disease (*vide infra*). It has also frequently been observed that any disturbance of the population, for example, the migration of a large number of persons into another country, may not only lead to a high incidence of malaria amongst the immigrants, but also to a great exacerbation of the disease amongst the indigenous inhabitants. This is a recognized principle of herd immunity that is certainly applicable to malaria.

The racial composition of a population and more especially any changes that have taken place recently are therefore important facts to be noted.

**Occupation, habits and economic status**—Numerous observations have been made under this heading back to the time of the Roman historians who pointed out that in certain malarious districts it was dangerous to walk out at night and loiter by the water's edge. The danger to soldiers carrying out night operations or standing guard at night, and to police on night duty has frequently been observed. Again, the soldier, previously infected, who has to make long marches in trying circumstances is very liable to suffer from malaria, either an initial attack or a relapse. Any severe physical strain or trauma, e.g. surgical or obstetric operations, x-ray applications to the spleen, or sudden cold may precipitate an attack in an infected subject.

The economic factor is one of great importance in determining the development of immunity to malaria. It has been shown frequently that when the economic condition of a rural population in particular, improves the malaria loses much of its morbid potentialities. Conversely, severe epidemics have often been correlated with an economic depression.

The best example is the Roman Campagna which once harbouring a flourishing agricultural community was through misgovernment allowed to degenerate at intervals into a deadly malarious swamp for nearly two thousand years but has now reacquired its former agricultural prosperity and malaria has almost disappeared\*. Other examples of how development and prosperity have banished malaria are the fen districts in England, the low countries in Holland and Germany Lower Egypt and in India the deltas of the Cauvery and the Godavari. Conversely Corsica is often quoted as a country in which agricultural deterioration has led to a great increase of malaria and the Ceylon epidemic followed a period of economic depression.

It is thus obviously important to collect full data under all these headings

### ÆTIOLOGY

**Historical**—The early theories regarding the cause of malaria were numerous. The word malaria (bad air) is evidence of one of the earlier theories not unreasonably founded on the fact that the disease prevailed in low marshy country where the poisonous miasma arose from the ground at night. Another theory was connected with water and it has been suggested that the first Roman aqueducts were built on account of the prevalence of fever in Rome the partial success of this measure would be accounted for by the reduction of other water borne fevers.

Night flying biting insects came under suspicion very frequently and Herodotus referred to the use of what we should call mosquito nets by the Egyptians.

Laveran described the malaria parasite in 1880 this discovery was developed considerably by the Italian workers Marchiafava Celli and Golgi who demonstrated the different species and associated these with the various clinical pictures. This work was hampered by the absence of a suitable stain for the parasites and the perfection of a staining technique by Romanowsky in 1891 considerably aided future investigations.

This discovery of the causal organism opened up the field for the investigation into the mode of transmission of this parasite from man to man. It is difficult to trace the germ of an idea to its origin. Credit is due to the Jules Verne and H. G. Wellses of medical science who produce many excellent and also it should be remembered many false ideas. It is however the man who has the perspicacity to sort the grain from the chaff (or who the cynics will say is lucky enough to follow the right trail) and develops the ideas that usually gets and probably deserves the most credit. When Manson first turned his attention to the problem of the transmission of malaria the idea of an arthropod carrying a disease was new but not entirely new for as back as 1869 Fedtschenko suggested that dracontiasis was transmitted through the medium of cyclops (an

---

\* The association between malaria and poverty cannot be questioned. It has been assumed by nearly every malarialogist that malnutrition causes malaria whilst at the same time it has been appreciated that malaria also causes poverty with its sequel malnutrition in fact that there is a vicious circle.

Hackett (1937) has questioned whether malnutrition does cause malaria and adopts the view that the reaction is all in one direction namely malaria causing poverty and malnutrition. This view is supported by Covell (private communications).

In support of this view, these very widely experienced malarialogists quote much suggestive data including the fact that the healthy and well fed British soldier is very susceptible to malaria which in him quite often takes a fatal course.

This and most of the other examples they quote do not in any way run counter to the views of the writer regarding malnutrition and malaria. He believes from medical and pathological as well as from epidemiological experience that nutrition affects not the non immune patient's immediate response to a malarial attack but rather the way that immunity develops in the individual subjected to repeated attacks of malaria.



observation subsequently shown to be correct) Ten years later Manson discovered filarial embryos in the mosquito and from this time onwards he probably nursed the idea that malaria was also in some way connected with the mosquito In 1883 King in America published a paper containing a well reasoned justification for the mosquito hypothesis Manson interested Ronald Ross in this subject and in 1897 working in Secunderabad Ross discovered the pigmented bodies (oöcysts) in the stomach wall of the dapple winged (anopheles) mosquito previously fed on a patient suffering from malaria In the following year working in a small laboratory in the Presidency General Hospital in Calcutta he demonstrated the cycle of *Proteosoma*, a parasite that infects sparrows and is in many ways comparable to the malarial parasite in man in culex mosquitoes Later in the same year, Bignami Grassi and Bastianelli demonstrated the plasmodium cycle in anopheles and man Finally in 1900 Manson staged a human experiment in which infected mosquitoes were taken to England and in a malaria free locality allowed to feed on volunteers who subsequently developed malaria Subsequent work by thousands of investigators in nearly every country in the world has shown which species of mosquito carry malaria and which do not

The causal organism—This is a protozoal parasite of the class Sporozoa, the order Hæmosporidia, and the genus *Plasmodium* There are four recognized\* species of *Plasmodium* that infect man in nature, *Plasmodium falciparum* that causes malignant tertian malaria, *P. malariae* that causes quartan malaria *P. vivax* that causes benign tertian and *P. ovale* that causes a particularly mild form of malaria (The monkey malaria parasite, *P. knowlesi*, can be artificially established in man and causes transient malaria, but it is doubtful if this occurs in nature)

There are undoubtedly a large number of 'strains' of parasites of each species These strains whilst being morphologically identical exhibit certain characteristics which breed true to type In England, for example, where a number of different strains are maintained for therapeutic purposes, malaria induced by infection with the Roumanian strain differs from that induced by infection with the Madagascar strain, and the Rome strain of malignant tertian is particularly resistant to treatment

In one locality there are probably many strains, this is indicated by the fact that, in a very malarious place, it may be many years before the children acquire immunity to all the malarial strains in the locality

The life cycles of the four species of human plasmodium are practically the same

There are two phases in the life of the malaria parasite, an intra-corporeal phase in the intermediate host—man, and an extra-corporeal phase in the definitive host—the female mosquito, and two cycles, the asexual and the sexual These phases and cycles do not correspond with each other

The forms of the malaria parasite that are found in man—The ring form, which is seen in a Romanowsky-stained film as a pale blue disc with a red chromatin dot at the edge lying within a red blood corpuscle, is at first very small but rapidly increases in size, becomes amœboid, secretes a dark pigment (hæmozoin), and eventually develops into a schizont which fills practically the whole red cell, the schizont has the same pale blue cytoplasm, its chromatin is split up, and the hæmozoin pigment collects into masses, the fragments of chromatin which are more or less equal in size now tend to become arranged evenly throughout the cytoplasm and

\* *P. tenue* is probably a valid species but it is little more than a protozoological curiosity *P. perniciosum*, on the other hand may turn out to be important it is the name given to a small strain of *P. falciparum* which has been found in South America and elsewhere, and is reported to cause a particularly virulent form of malaria

the pigment tends to aggregate into one solid mass, the stage which is known as the rosette, the rosette bursts and releases into the circulation the merozoites small ovoid or globular bodies consisting of pale blue cytoplasm and red chromatin nuclei the haemozoin pigment and the debris of the containing red cell. The number of merozoites that the rosette contains varies with the species in *P. malariae* there are from 8 to 12, in *P. vivax* from 14 to 24 and in *P. falciparum* the number is more variable from 12 to 32. The merozoites then attach themselves to and eventually enter red cells where they again start the asexual cycle, or they may develop into sexual forms the male and the female gametocytes. The fully developed gametocyte fills the whole cell like the schizont, but the gametocytes of the three malaria species have distinctive characteristics. The most distinctive is the crescent form of the malignant tertian parasite, the male gametocyte is long and slender with a large nucleus and the pigment scattered throughout the cytoplasm whereas the female is stouter and shorter, and has a small nucleus with the pigment distributed around it. The *P. vivax* tertian and *P. malariae* gametocytes are more or less globular, in the former the nucleus is an irregular mass, and in the latter it takes the form of a rod or band. (Further details of the morphology of the different species will be given below, see DIAGNOSIS.)

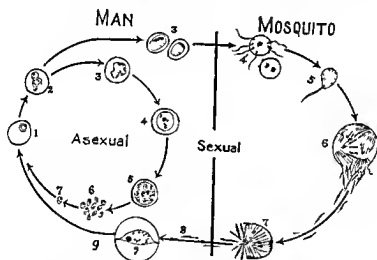


Figure 9

## Asexual cycle

- 1 Ring form
- 2 Growing trophozoite
- 3 Trophozoite
- 4 Schizont
- 5 Fully grown schizont-rosette form
- 6 Burst rosette
- 7 Merozoites

## Sexual cycle

- 1 Ring form
- 2 Growing trophozoite
- 3 Gametocytes ♂ and ♀
- 4 Flagellate bodies and gametocyte ♀
- 5 Fertilized gamete (Ookinete not shown)
- 6 Oocyst—in stomach wall
- 7 Sporozoites—in salivary gland
- 8 Free sporozoites
- 9 Exo-erythrocytic stage

in mosquitoes

The asexual cycle —The cycle—ring, schizont, rosette, merozoite, and again ring—lasts 48 hours in malignant tertian and in benign tertian and 72 hours in quartan malaria. This fact determines the periodicity of the fever, the rigor corresponds to the bursting of the rosette. This asexual

cycle leads to the multiplication of the parasites within the host, but, if it were the only form of development, there would be no chance of propagation of the species beyond this individual host, for the particular parasitic brood would end its existence in this host, they might kill him, or they might be destroyed by the cellular or humoral reactions of the host's tissues, therefore, for the continuance of the parasite's existence the sexual phase is necessary (see figure 9)

On the other hand, the sexual parasites, the gametocytes, have no future within the individual host in which they are formed, for they are capable of no further development. Their future lies only in the mosquito, and if they are not taken up by a suitable mosquito, after living for about three weeks in the blood of their host, they die.

**The sexual cycle**—When a mosquito vector feeds on an infected man, it takes in a number of malaria parasites. Any asexual forms will die, but the mature male and female gametocytes continue to develop in the stomach of the mosquito, from the male gametocyte a number of flagellate bodies separate and eventually enter a female gametocyte which they fertilize, the fertilized gametocyte, or gamete, undergoes development and becomes an ookinete, an elongated body with considerable powers of penetration. The ookinete penetrates the endothelial lining and buries itself in the wall of the mosquito's stomach, where it develops into an oocyst. These oocysts can be seen easily, under a dissecting microscope, as round glistening bodies in the wall of the dissected mosquito's stomach, they are 40 to 80  $\mu$  in size. They eventually burst, releasing a large number of sporozoites into the body cavity of the mosquito. The sporozoites are motile bodies and find their way into every part of the body of the mosquito, except the ovaries, but in the salivary glands they find a particularly suitable medium for continuing their existence. Once the sporozoites have reached the salivary glands, whenever the mosquito takes a blood meal the sporozoites escape with the salivary material and enter the body of their new host.

The time taken in this phase in the mosquito is variable, according to the conditions, the shortest time is probably about 8 days, but under adverse conditions, particularly in the cold when the mosquito is hibernating, it may take many months. The average time in moderately favourable circumstances is usually looked upon as about 12 days.

It was at one time thought that a certain minimum number of gametocytes had to be present in the blood before the mosquito would become infected, this number was placed at 12 by Darling (1909). Recent work has shown that there are many other factors besides the number of gametocytes that determine infection of the mosquito, these include species and strain of plasmodium, and species and individual variability of mosquito, some individuals of recognized vector species being entirely refractory to infection.

Ability to transmit infection starts to decline about ten days after the mosquito first becomes infective and after 40 to 50 days it usually ceases to be infective (Boyd and Stratman Thomas 1934, Boyd *et al.*, 1936), unless meanwhile it has again fed on a malarial patient. James (1926), however, reported an instance in which mosquitoes kept at a low temperature remained infective for 92 days.

Development only takes place in the female mosquito

There is considerable uncertainty as to exactly what happens to the sporozoite when it enters man. A few facts are known, it does not, for example, remain in the blood stream, for blood taken during the first eight days is not infective. On analogy with observations made in birds it is thought that the parasite enters certain reticulo-endothelial cells of the host and there multiplies by schizogony. After this latent period, the malaria parasite reappears in the peripheral blood as a ring form, it then completes a number of asexual cycles and may again become a gametocyte.

The term 'mosquito cycle' is sometimes used, but actually there is no cycle in the mosquito. The parasites enter the mosquito as gametocytes and leave it as sporozoites. From a pair of gametocytes a very large number of sporozoites are formed and it is almost certainly by weight of numbers of sporozoites formed from the primary infection that the mosquito remains infective for a long time, and not through multiplication of the sporozoites, as Missiroli has suggested, though under artificial conditions mosquitoes have been known to remain infective and to be capable of transmitting malaria for over 90 days. The asexual cycle is only completed when gametocytes are again formed, thus both the mosquito and man are essential for this cycle to take place. The average period of this sexual cycle is at least a month, this is made up by about 12 days' development in the mosquito, about 12 days' incubation period in man, and, say another six days from the time the infection reaches the clinical 'threshold' to the appearance of gametocytes, these figures are not minimal, but probably represent a low average.

The essentials for the natural transmission of malaria and the factors influencing them —

The essentials are —

- A The malaria parasite
- B The mosquito vector
- C Man
- D The links between B and C, i.e. the lines of communication along which the parasite travels

In the absence of any one of these essentials, malaria will not exist. If the conditions influencing all these four essentials favour malarogenesis the incidence of malaria will be maximal, if conditions influencing any of them are unfavourable malaria incidence will be sub-maximal, and if conditions influencing all of them are unfavourable, malaria will be minimal or may not occur.

It is by the study of the various climatic and other terrestrial factors that influence these four essentials that we shall understand and explain the observed facts regarding the incidence, distribution, etc., of malaria, which we have recorded and which we know as the epidemiology of the disease.

This is not however an academic study for it is only by knowing what these malarigenic factors are and how they exert their influence that we can hope to eliminate, reduce, or avoid these influences. The study of how this has been and is being done, how it can be done, and how it might be done, constitute the science of malariology, even the essentials of which would fill a large volume, here it is only possible to give the barest outline.

The malariogenic factors are conveniently grouped under these four headings —

**A The malaria parasite** —As a very large proportion of the human race has been or is infected with some species of malaria parasite, it is very unlikely that a community exists where the other three essentials are present, and yet there are no malaria parasites, such a state of affairs is conceivable (and has a parallel in another disease *ie* yellow fever), and, as long as no infected man or mosquito was introduced, the community would remain free from malaria.

However, apart from these theoretical considerations the parasite factor is an important one, and malaria in any locality will be influenced largely by the number and immunological variety of the strains of malaria parasite present. Further, it has been shown that other conditions remaining unchanged new strains of malaria parasite introduced into a community by immigration of foreigners, importation of foreign labour, etc (*vide supra*), will cause a sharp rise in the incidence of malaria in that community.

Again, the proximity of the reservoirs of malarial infection will be an important factor in determining the incidence in a locality.

The parasite has two phases and the factors that influence it will be different in each case.

In the *mosquito*, it is affected by temperature, if this is not favourable the development of the malaria parasite will be arrested, though the mosquito may continue to flourish. In certain sub-optimal conditions development only takes place up to the oocyst stage. A temperature of 60°F and a humidity of 63 per cent (to ensure longevity of the mosquito) are necessary for the development of *P. falciparum* this explains the absence of malignant tertian malaria from cold countries, its autumn periodicity in temperate countries and in hot countries its disappearance during periods of very high temperature but low humidity.

Other possibilities that have not yet been fully explored are the existence of other parasitic infections in the mosquito and the nature of its food, for mosquitoes take other fluids besides their blood meals.

In *man*, the parasite is influenced by the host's natural and acquired immunity (*vide infra*).

Another factor is the formation of gametocytes. It has been suggested that this is a phenomenon of immunity, but this is quite obviously not the case, for infants who enjoy the least immunity are the greatest gametocyte producers. If therefore any correlation between gametocyte formation and immunity exists it is a negative one.

For transmission to occur there must be gametocytes in the peripheral blood, their presence, quantitatively considered, is therefore an important factor in malarogenesis.

Finally, the effects of therapy have to be considered under this heading, any drug that destroys gametocytes directly or indirectly is capable of influencing malarial endemicity.

**B The mosquito vector** —Not all mosquitoes carry malaria, only certain species. The delay in incriminating the mosquito in the aetiology of malaria was undoubtedly due to the lack of basic entomological knowledge. The existence of different species of mosquitoes was recognized but little attention had been paid to the subject, however, the amount of knowledge that has been accumulated in the last 50 years is enormous, and this

particular aspect of the science of malariology has now probably received more attention than any other, but knowledge on the differentiation of species is still incomplete, and apparently homogeneous species, *eg A. maculipennis* in Europe, are frequently being shown to be made up of several heterogeneous sub-species, as our methods of identification improve. Three are at least 1,400 recognized species of mosquito (Edwards, 1932), and even the anopheline species in India alone number over fifty. All the mosquito vectors belong to the genus *Anopheles*, but all *anopheles* are not vectors. The most important vectors in different countries are:—

In Europe	<i>A. maculipennis</i> group <i>superpictus</i> , <i>sergenti</i> and <i>claviger</i>
India and Ceylon	<i>A. culicifacies</i> , <i>philippinensis</i> group, <i>fluvialis</i> , <i>minimus</i> , <i>superpictus</i> , <i>sundaicus</i> and <i>stephensi</i>
Palestine and Syria	<i>A. elutus</i> and <i>superpictus</i>
Iraq and Iran	<i>A. elutus</i> <i>superpictus</i> and <i>stephensi</i>
China	<i>A. minimus</i> <i>hyrcanus</i> and <i>maculipennis</i> group
Burma and Siam	<i>A. minimus</i> and <i>sundaicus</i>
Malaya	<i>A. maculatus</i> , <i>umbrosus</i> , <i>sundaicus</i> , <i>aconitus</i> and <i>hyrcanus</i>
Egypt	<i>A. pharoensis</i>
Africa	<i>A. gambiae</i> and <i>funestus</i>
Australasia	<i>A. punctulatus</i> group <i>omictus</i> and <i>barbivostris</i>
America	<i>A. quadrimaculatus</i> , <i>crucians</i> <i>maculipennis</i> , <i>punctimacula</i> <i>pseudo-punctipennis</i> , <i>darlingi</i> , <i>albimanus</i> <i>albimanus</i> and recently <i>gambiae</i>

All potential vectors are not of importance as vectors in nature, nor are apparently identical species of equal importance as vectors in all localities in which they are found, *eg A. subpictus* carries malaria in New Guinea, but, though the Bengal species can be infected in the laboratory, in nature it is never found infected, apparently because it is a delicate species and does not survive long.

The life cycle of the mosquito.—This is similar to that of all *nematocera*. The adult mosquito or imago lays its eggs on a water surface where they float (figure 10 1a and 1b). From the ovum a larva hatches out which feeds on algae and other organic matter. It also requires air, so that it has continually to come to the surface and normally rests just below the surface with its spiracles in contact with the air (figure 10 2a and 2b). The larva after several moults changes into a pupa (figure 10 3a and 3b) which does not require food. Finally, from the pupa the imago or adult mosquito (figure 10 4a and 4b), emerges. Thus for development of ovum to adult water is necessary.

The adult mosquito lives on fruit and plant juices but the female requires a blood meal for the maturation of its eggs. This need not necessarily be human or even mammalian blood but may be avian or reptilian. Most mosquito vectors are night feeders. The distance of dispersion of the mosquito is a subject that has been studied very frequently and there are experimental data about many species. Normally the mosquito does not fly far from its breeding place, or its food. Some species are particularly domestic and never stray more than a hundred yards or so from the locality where they breed and find their food (*eg Aedes aegypti*). However some mosquitoes will fly many miles 'down wind', and it must be remembered that for them to transmit malaria they do not have to fly back to their breeding place. The writer recently had the experience of malaria infected mosquitoes (*A. gambiae* or *A. funestus*) being blown a distance of well over a mile from a malarious shore into a ship. The normal range of malaria-carrying mosquitoes is under a mile.

The time taken to complete the life cycle of the mosquito varies according to the conditions, and is mainly controlled by temperature. Under optimum conditions development from ovum to imago may be completed in as short a time as five days, but this is probably exceptional. In southern Europe, the full cycle takes about a month even in summer, and in colder countries, it is much slower, and may be arrested for many months. Wintering will occur at the egg, larva, or adult stages, according

to the species. Similarly, the length of life of the adult mosquito varies considerably, in cold climates where it undergoes periods of hibernation, it will live up to nine months, but in the tropics where metabolism is speeded

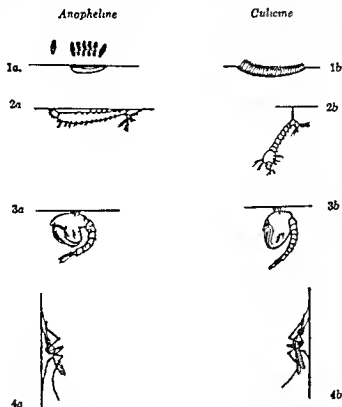


Figure 10

- | <i>Anopheline</i>                                 | <i>Culicine</i>                            |
|---|--|
| 1a Eggs with floats also shows how they float     | 1b Eggs and float                          |
| 2a Larva floats horizontally on the water surface | 2b Larva hanging from water surface        |
| 3a Pupa breathing trumpets funnel-shaped          | 3b Pupa breathing trumpets long and narrow |
| 4a Imago body straight                            | 4b Imago hunch-backed                      |

up, its average life span is probably less than a month. In nature, the mosquito is subject to many adverse influences: infections, ecto-parasites and innumerable natural enemies, fish in the water, bats in the air, and lizards on the wall, so, though it is extremely fertile, its life is a precarious one, this is an important factor and explains the relatively low sporozoite infection rate amongst mosquitoes caught in nature even in a highly malarious locality.

With this complicated life cycle it will be obvious that the factors that influence the mosquito will be numerous, these include temperature, humidity, rainfall, sub soil water level, the nature of the water, the nature of the soil, physiographical conditions, both natural and man-

made, altitude (mainly in its relation to temperature), vegetation, biological competition, and natural enemies

When these conditions are very unfavourable mosquitoes will be reduced to a minimum, or they may be absent altogether and malaria will not occur, but there are places where the conditions are extremely favourable and yet no mosquitoes of the vector species exist, *e.g.* certain isolated Pacific islands into which the mosquito vectors have never been introduced and which are therefore free from malaria. In the past, there were other such islands, but into these mosquitoes were introduced and malaria is now endemic (*vide supra*)

Many instances have been observed in which fresh vector species have been introduced into a country or district, and have caused a considerable increase in malaria, perhaps the best recent example is the introduction from Africa of *A. gambiae*—possibly to some extent by the trans-Atlantic plane service—into South America, where it has caused a most disastrous increase in malaria

It is impossible to summarize the effects of these various factors, or to make any dogmatic statements, such as, for example, that rainfall is favourable to mosquitoes, for it may be just the reverse, and there are many circumstances in which rainfall will actually stop malarial incidence, or that abundant vegetation favours the mosquito and malarial incidence, for there are some vector species that disappear when streams are shaded (*Anopheles minimus*), though others (*A. umbrosus*) require shade, some mosquitoes flourish only in clear water, others are less particular and seem to prefer contaminated water, yet others need a degree of salinity (*A. sudaicus*), some prefer stagnant pools, others running water, and so on. It does not mean that, because this information cannot be summarized, our knowledge on these subjects is confused and unsatisfactory. On the contrary, there is a very great deal of accurate and detailed information on the habits of most of the important vector species. It is a matter of primary importance that anyone who has any responsibility in the matter of malaria control should find out first what are the local vector species and the relative importance of each, he should then ascertain from the numerous books and other publications on malariology what are the habits of the most important of these, and finally by observation he should find out if in his locality they conform to their normal behaviour. There are examples of apparently identical species behaving differently in different countries [*e.g.* *A. fluviatilis* feeds exclusively on man in the Wynaad and Nilgiris (South India) and is a potent vector, whereas in the Himalayan foot-hills it feeds exclusively on cattle and is of practically no importance as a vector], but such instances are rare, and the instances in which *in nature* they have been made to change their habits (*e.g.* to breed in fresh water when they have been deprived of saline water) are even rarer. It will usually be found that one species only is of real importance and this will facilitate control very considerably.

C. Man—The influence of the human factor in the determination of malarial incidence has been to some extent neglected since the day when attention was first attracted to the parasite and the mosquito.

For all practical purposes, man is the only intermediate host of the malaria species with which we are now concerned, though in certain jungle areas a higher mosquito-infection rate than appears to be explainable on the grounds of the very sparse human population has led to the suggestion that apes may be the source of infection. There are of course many other plasmodia besides the four 'human' species, and man has been infected with the monkey plasmodium, *P. knowlesi*, under artificial conditions



The important factors under this heading are the density and age composition of the population, the previous malarial experience of the community as a whole or of the different groups that compose a community, the climatic conditions under which they live, their economic status and general mode of life, and their general state of health and nutrition

Man enjoys both natural and acquired immunity to malarial infection

There is probably no such thing as complete natural immunity to all strains of the four plasmodial species that commonly infect man, although man does enjoy immunity from infection by certain simian plasmodia, there is however incomplete immunity, for it is often difficult to infect a man with malaria and there are the many instances when the malaria has not developed for some years, until the host has been subjected to cold or some physical strain and his natural resistance thereby lowered

There is as yet no agreement on the nature of acquired immunity. There is little doubt that some, both cellular and humoral, immunity is acquired, and that it is a strain-specific immunity and to a much less extent a general immunity for all malaria strains. The other explanations for the comparative freedom of certain people from malaria is that all those who did not enjoy some natural immunity were killed off in their infancy, or that the apparent immunity is really a 'premunition', that is to say, the individual is already infected with malaria so that his body defences are active and prevent super-infection, which, some might argue, constitutes immunity

The effect of acquired immunity is well demonstrated in highly endemic localities, where infants and young children show the highest infection rate, often amounting to 100 per cent, and suffer almost continuously from fever, the average number of parasites in their peripheral blood may amount to 10,000 or more per cmm. Adults in the same locality will also show a high infection rate, though short of 100 per cent but the average number of parasites will be far less, amounting to perhaps one-hundredth that in the infants, and they will only suffer from occasional febrile attacks. Christophers (1925) has shown that, under these conditions, the infection rate, the parasite count and the frequency of the febrile attacks show a steady decline as the age advances

There is however no doubt that this immunity is very labile and that when the general powers of resistance of the host are lowered for any reason, for example, by famine and hardships, as well as by fatigue and cold, mentioned above, he is far more susceptible to malarial morbidity, even if not to malaria infection

Conversely, when they are raised by good food and comfortable living conditions, he will be much less liable to malarial morbidity and probably to malaria infection

Thus, immunity is important to the individual, but even more important to the community, for the rise in immunity means a reduction in the circulating parasites and therefore in the source of infection to others. Conversely, a bad general breakdown in immunity, from any cause, will lead to a vicious circle of increased infection and increased morbidity, sudden disastrous epidemics that sometimes occur even in endemic areas are explainable in this way

The presence of children in a community will increase incidence both on account of the heavy infections that they suffer as a result of their low immunity, and because they produce large numbers of gametocytes

The introduction of a number of non-immunes—either non-immune to all malaria strains or to the local strains—into a malarious community will be like adding fuel to a smouldering fire, and will increase malaria incidence in the whole community

D The links between man and the mosquito—Both man and the mosquito are essential but if they could be kept apart malaria would die out. The stronger the links, the higher the malaria incidence, and *vice versa*. The important factors can be considered under two headings, (i) general and (ii) local and personal

(i) The general factors include density of human population, density of mosquito vector population, living conditions of the population, and movements of the population, air movements and prevailing winds, and animal deviation (zoophilism)

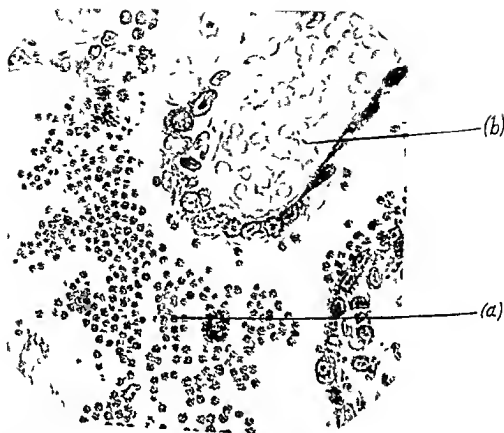
This question of the densities of the human and mosquito populations and malaria incidence is a mathematical problem, but it is not an entirely simple one. On the whole the denser the populations the greater are the chances of contact between man and the mosquito, but this would seem to suggest that the disease should be more prevalent in towns, whereas we know that it is not. The reason for this is that in towns the density of the human population is more than counterbalanced by the sparsity of the mosquito population

Again it must be remembered that to transmit malaria the mosquito must take at least two human blood feeds, there are many factors which militate against the chance of this occurring for example, the high mortality amongst mosquitoes in nature which means a short survival period for each individual mosquito this cannot be entirely compensated by a higher propagation rate which would only mean that a larger number of mosquitoes took a single blood meal. Here also the effect of wind will come in for after taking the infecting feed the mosquitoes, which are very susceptible to wind currents though they are capable of flight against the wind, may be blown away from their source of human blood meals

The chance of contact between man and mosquito will also vary considerably with differences in the living habits of the population. If the people are poor and live in dark ill-ventilated huts, mosquitoes will remain in the corners of the huts during the day and emerge at night to feed almost uninterruptedly on their human hosts under these conditions the chances of transmission will be enormous. On the other hand, if the people are well-to-do and live in well lighted and well-ventilated houses with electric fans though mosquitoes may come in at night, they will have fewer places to rest during the day, will be driven out of the house, have to face greater dangers outside, and (individually) will probably not return, so these circumstances there is considerable dilution of the once-fed mosquitoes and the chances of a second feed being taken are considerably reduced. If in addition protective measures are used by the people, the chances are reduced still further, but this is a personal matter and will be considered below

Zoophilism or animal deviation is undoubtedly an important factor although there are different schools of thought on this subject. The original view expressed by Roubaud was that the proximity of cattle deflected mosquitoes from their human hosts, but the evidence on the subject has been confusing and it is obvious that in some circumstances the cattle attract mosquitoes to their vicinity and thereby favour malaria transmission amongst the people living in close association with them. The fact that some species that are known as potential vectors and yet are

# PLATE C



A Section of the placenta of a *Simulans rhesus* monkey. Note (a) the intervillous spaces containing maternal blood with 90 per cent of the red cells infected with *Plasmodium knowlesi* and (b) the blood vessel of a chorionic villus containing uninfected fetal red cells. Drawing with an Albe camera lucida approximately  $\times 750$  magnification (Das Gupta 1939)



B The spleen in severe malignant tertian (*Plasmodium falciparum*) malaria

never found infected in nature may be explained by their zoöphilic habits. Some species of mosquito vector are anthropophilic whilst others are zoöphilic.

Strictly speaking, the word 'zoöphilic' should be applied only to species that feed on cattle exclusively. Anthropophilic is applied to species that are indifferent and will feed on either cattle or man but with a varying degree of preference for the former, these include the most important vector species. It is doubtful if there are any species that have a real preference for human blood, Covell thinks that possibly *A. minimus* and *A. fluviatilis* in Southern India may be placed in this category.

The precipitin test for the identification of blood meals in insects was used by the writer and his co-workers (Lloyd, Napier and Smith) as long ago as 1925 in studying the part played by sandflies in the epidemiology of kala-azar, but it is only during the last few years that the method has been used to any extent by malarialogists, valuable information regarding the feeding habits of different species should be obtained from such studies.

(u) The local and personal factors are, position and height of residence, personal habits and clothing and care in the use of artificial means of protection.

The ancient Egyptians built their houses on tall poles, and the writer lived on the fifth floor of a block of flats, both thereby avoided mosquitoes and malaria. Whether a residence is near a mosquito breeding ground is obviously a matter of prime importance, and here again the direction of the prevailing wind is important. The careful individual who keeps his house mosquito-proof, or uses efficient mosquito nets and protects himself and his family by suitable clothing or the use of repellents, will run less chance of contracting malaria than the careless and happy-go lucky one.

**Congenital transmission**—This does not occur normally, even when the mother has a heavy infection, sections have been cut showing the uterine blood sinuses containing numerous parasites and the contiguous placental sinuses entirely free. When direct infection of the fetus does take place, it is probably the result of some accidental breach in the dividing membrane. Strickland and Baird (1939) recently reported six instances of infants seven days or less old showing parasites in their blood, in one instance they were found within 15 hours of birth. These six cases had been encountered in the latter's practice in a period of 2½ years. Many other individual instances have been reported.

Das Gupta (1939) however showed that, in a pregnant monkey infected with *Plasmodium knowlesi*, though the maternal circulation showed enormous numbers of plasmodia, the fetal side of the placenta showed none (see Plate C).

**Artificial means by which malaria may be transmitted**—The deliberate induction of malaria is a method of treatment now recognized as of value in certain mental and nervous diseases, this is known as malaria therapy. The methods adopted are (a) the quasi-naturalistic method allowing an infected mosquito to feed on the patient, (b) a modification of this method, dissecting the infected mosquito and injecting the sporozoites into the patient, and (c) by inoculating the blood taken from a patient suffering from malaria. The disadvantage of the third method is that one may also transmit other diseases, e.g. syphilis. The quasi-naturalistic methods

reduce the chances of, but do not preclude, the transmission of a mixed infection, for example malignant as well as benign tertian infection. A further reference will be made to this subject (*see p 121*)

Blood transfusion provides another means by which transmission may occur. The danger of transmission occurring this way in tropical practice is very considerable and presents a serious problem. One way of avoiding this danger is to use plasma whenever possible. A very careful medical history of the donor will probably be even more useful than a blood smear examination, which is an obvious precaution that should always be taken before using blood for transfusion, but neither of these precautions will be sufficient to prevent this accident occurring occasionally.

Still another means that has assumed importance in some countries is by the agency of the unsterilized communal hypodermic syringe of the drug addict (*Most, 1940*)

In conclusion it will be seen that the factors influencing malaria incidence are numerous and complex, and do not allow of facile generalizations. The barest outlines have been given here and it is for the student of malariology to fill in the details from the extensive literature on the subject, and from personal experience as there are still many hiatuses in our knowledge.

It will be necessary for the reader to turn again to these pages when the subject of prevention of malaria is discussed.

An exercise—Meanwhile by way of an exercise, it might be worth considering an historical epidemiological observation and attempting to explain it in terms of the factors discussed above.

It was observed that whenever a large engineering scheme was attempted in a malarious country malaria in epidemic form appeared, and frequently the scheme had to be abandoned.

This was explained as the hand of God, a sort of modern version of the tower of Babel, for the gods of all creeds are looked upon as reactionaries by their devotees, or by the more scientifically minded as due to 'breaking of the ground' and allowing the escape of poisonous emanations.

What are the causes? Naturally they will vary according to the circumstances but we will consider the factors common to many such undertakings.

Labour has to be recruited, and this will often come from many parts of the country. Some labourers may come from non-malarious parts and they will be non-immunes, some will come from district A and others from district B and each will bring with them the malaria strains of their own district against which they themselves enjoy some immunity and there will also be the locally recruited labourers with their own malaria strains and their own immunity. We placed the malarionogenic factors in four main groups, let us consider each.

*A The malaria parasite*—This was already present and conditions were favourable to it but in our hypothetical case two sets of new strains have been introduced.

*B The mosquito*—Mosquito vectors were already present and the climatic conditions were favourable for them, but engineers have in the past been the mosquitoes' best friends, they deflect streams, they interfere with the natural drainage and periodic flooding, they dig holes in the

of enlargement is a good indication of the extent of the parasitic infection, whereas others claim that the reverse is usually the case. The writer takes the view that splenic enlargement is evidence of imperfect host-parasite adjustment. In hyper-endemic areas, immunity in the child is low, parasitic infections are heavy and considerable splenic enlargement is the rule. In the well-nourished adult, immunity is high, parasitic infections though common are light, and the spleen is small. Finally, in the ill-nourished adult of the poorer malarious districts, immunity is again low, and parasitic infection is kept down only by the continuous parasite—and incidentally red cell—destruction by the hypertrophied reticulo-endothelial tissues, so that splenic enlargement and anæmia characterize the clinical picture.

**Macroscopically.** in very acute cases, the spleen is moderately enlarged, dark red and congested, the capsule which is under pressure retracts when it is cut and a dark red substance oozes out. In less acute cases, it is moderately enlarged, firm and slate-coloured, when cut, the capsule does not contract in the same way, but a certain amount of black tarry substance can be scraped away from the slate-coloured cut surface. In chronic cases, the organ is markedly enlarged, the capsule is thickened and shows evidence of past peri-splenitis, the organ may weigh anything up to 10 pounds, but it is firm, not very dark, and shows white fibrous trabeculae.

**Microscopically** there is a general hyperplasia in which both lymphoid and reticulo-endothelial elements take part, later, there is an increase of the reticulo-endothelial tissue at the expense of the malpighian corpuscles. In an acute case these cells are loaded with red-cell and parasite debris and hæmoglobin pigment, but, in chronic malaria, parasites may be absent and pigment very scanty.

**Other organs**—The liver is enlarged, the gall-bladder is distended, and on section the liver may show a dark red surface, but in certain cases in which there has been very excessive hæmolysis (e.g. blackwater fever) there will be a distinct yellowish colour, the result of hæmosiderin staining. In addition to the dark brown of the specific hæmoglobin pigment the organ gives a marked prussian-blue reaction with potassium ferrocyanide. Under the microscope the Kupffer's cells are seen loaded with pigment and debris and the bile canaliculi are dilated, in more chronic cases there are degenerative changes in the parenchyma cells.

The active bone marrow is dark red, but the hyperplasia is mainly confined to the phagocytic reticulo-endothelial cells, which contain pigment and debris, to the detriment of the specialized hæmopoietic tissue. Parasites are usually present in fair numbers, but, from biopsy experience, there is no reason to believe that there is any particular aggregation of parasites in this site.

In fatal malignant tertian infections with cerebral symptoms, there is congestion of the meningeal vessels, and petechial hæmorrhages in the brain. In microscopic sections, the arterioles will be seen to be blocked, and occasionally there are areas where the neuroglia cells have proliferated, forming a granulomatous area around an arteriole usually in the cortex. The blocking of the arterioles is caused by a chemico-physical change in the blood elements, an increase in stickiness of the parasitized red cells resulting from fibrin deposition which causes them to aggregate in large masses, and a local hæmo-concentration due to plasma filtration into the tissues. This blocking of the arterioles is seen best in a smear made by crushing a small piece of brain cortex between two slides and staining them by Giemsa's method.

The kidneys are congested in acute cases, but do not as a rule show any characteristic changes, there are however cases of acute and sub-acute nephritis of undoubted malarial origin, and the rarity of this complication suggests that it may be an allergic phenomenon due to sensitization by the foreign proteins from parasite and tissue destruction in a previous attack. The kidney changes in this sub-acute attack are of the glomerulo-tubular nephrotic type. In blackwater fever (*qv*) there are characteristic changes.

There may be blocking of the arterioles in other organs and tissues of the body, e.g. the pancreas and intestinal mucosa, these cause the protean localized manifestations of malaria, such as malarial dysentery and a condition simulating acute pancreatitis.

The degenerative changes attributed to the malarial 'toxin' that occur in many organs are too indefinite to discuss in detail, it is very often doubtful if the changes noted are really due to the malaria or to some concomitant condition.

**The blood**—There is nearly always some anaemia, the degree will depend on the duration of the attack and on other circumstances, but it is disproportionate to the number of the red cells that have actually been destroyed by malaria parasites, and in the acute infection there is evidence of depression of haemopoietic function of the bone marrow. There is additional indirect evidence for this, the deduction is made from the fact that before treatment is given, though there is anaemia there is at first no rise in the percentage of reticulocytes but that about six to eight days after specific treatment has been instituted there is a sharp rise in reticulocytes (evidence of sudden active regeneration of red cells), suggesting that some depressing influence has been lifted. These studies have been made mostly in Great Britain and in primary induced malaria, we have not been able to confirm them in malaria in an endemic area. On the other hand, we have found that the bilirubinaemia is very frequently not as high as one would have expected had the anaemia been solely the result of red cell destruction that is to say, had it been a haemolytic anaemia.

The anaemia is usually normocytic.

There is a slight fall in leucocytes which starts just before the clinical attack, the leucopenia is maintained throughout the attack, and sometimes for some days after the temperature has returned to normal there are usually about 5000 leucocytes per cmm (see figure 11). The deficiency is mainly in the granulocytes and there is usually an actual as well as a relative, increase in large mononuclears. In the absence of kala azar and certain rarer blood diseases a large mononuclear count of 15 per cent or over is said to be diagnostic of pre-ent or post malaria.

The van den Bergh indirect reaction may be slightly increased during an acute attack, but it is not constantly so.

The blood sugar is reduced.

The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is much increased whilst the infection persists.

(The specific findings: malaria parasites, pigment and Schuffner's and Maurer's dots are discussed under the heading of diagnosis.)

Days before and after  
the appearance of  
parasites.

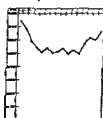


Figure 11 Mean leucocyte counts for ten patients with *falciparum* malaria (Kitchen S F., 1941)

The urine—During the febrile attack, the urine is usually concentrated and exhibits the ordinary 'febrile' characteristics.

Urea excretion is increased and the chlorides and phosphates are often diminished.

Urobilin is increased considerably during the attack. There is quite frequently a trace of albumin at the onset, and in some cases of both quartan and malignant tertian malaria—traditionally in the former, but in the writer's experience just as frequently in the latter—a heavy cloud of albumin and granular and hyaline casts.

Quinine albuminuria was not uncommon when large doses of quinine were the rule but with a maximum of 30 grains a day, this seldom occurs.

Wassermann reaction—Positive Wassermann and Kahn reactions are undoubtedly given in malaria, irrespective of syphilitic infection. Kitchen and Kupper (1939) found that one or other test was positive in all and both tests in 23, of 25 induced malarias. From his experience with naturally acquired malaria, the writer is convinced that this so-called 'false-positive' Wassermann reaction frequently occurs in this disease, it is usually transitory but may persist for some weeks. It is however certainly not as constant a finding as the experience with induced malaria, quoted above, would suggest.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Introduction—The clinical manifestations of malaria are so protean that it would be out of the question to attempt to describe here all the pictures that may be presented. They vary in their severity from a sore lip to an abdominal syndrome simulating acute appendicitis. The majority of attacks however conform to certain well recognized patterns which are described below.

Incubation period—The first symptoms do not appear until the malaria infection has reached a certain critical level, this is usually given as about 100 million parasites.

The variations in the incubation period in different species are explained by simple arithmetic. Let us take the cases of malignant tertian and quartan, and suppose that one sporozoite entered the human host and was allowed to multiply uninterruptedly (both unlikely suppositions but they will serve our purpose), in malignant tertian an average rosette contains 24 merozoites, so that the parasites are multiplied by 24 every 48 hours and the 100 million mark will be passed in 12 days, whereas in quartan, with an average of 10 merozoites per rosette which matures every 72 hours, it would take 24 days to reach the critical figure of 100 million parasites. Many merozoites of course fail to reach a red cell and are destroyed, and there are other factors which put a brake on reproduction but it is easy to see why malignant tertian with its maximum production of 32 merozoites may have a very short incubation period and why quartan with its low merozoite production and 72 hour cycle is likely to have the longest.

The incubation period of benign tertian is usually about 14 days, in malignant tertian it may be as short as eight days and is usually less than 12, and in quartan it is 20 days or more. Recent work with malaria therapy has shown that the incubation period in the initial attack may be prolonged considerably, but the long delayed onset after 30 to 40 weeks which has frequently been observed must be looked upon as a late relapse after an inapparent 'attack'.

Prodromal symptoms before the actual onset are not uncommon, lassitude, anorexia, headache and a slight sense of chilliness, if the



temperature were taken a low pyrexia 99°F or so would probably be found. In cases under close observation, a daily, or a 48 hourly, rise up to 99°F is the rule, these small rises in temperature correspond with the bursting of successive crops of rosettes before the infection has quite reached the true clinical threshold.

The true onset is sudden, there are three stages in the attack —

**The rigor** — There is a feeling of extreme coldness, the patient shivers from head to foot, sometimes shaking the whole bed, the teeth chatter, he pulls over himself all the blankets he can reach but it makes no difference to his feeling of coldness, the skin feels dry and the condition known as goose-flesh is common, the features become pinched and he has the blue appearance of a cold person. All this time the temperature is rising and after about an hour the shivering gradually ceases and the patient passes into the next stage.

**The hot stage** — There is now a feeling of intense heat and the patient will throw off his blankets, the skin is very hot and dry, the face is flushed, the pulse full and bounding, and respirations rapid, the temperature at this stage will be found to be anything up to 106°F, or even higher. He complains of severe headache, a parched throat and extreme thirst, vomiting is common. This stage usually lasts one to four hours, but it may be prolonged.

**The sweating stage** — The patient suddenly bursts into a profuse perspiration, the sweat pours from him. A feeling of great relief comes over the patient and all the symptoms of the previous stage disappear. The temperature falls and may be sub normal. He now feels 'washed out' and tired and will usually go to sleep. When he wakes up he feels perfectly well and is often prepared to get up and go about his ordinary daily routine.

The whole attack occupies six to ten hours. The rigor coincides with the bursting of the rosettes. When a rosette bursts, there is a sudden release into the blood stream of not only the merozoites but of red-cell debris and probably certain products of malarial parasite metabolism. The rigor is an anaphylactic phenomenon, sensitivity having been worked up by the bursting of the earlier crops of rosettes. Manson-Bahr states that the attack usually occurs in the morning but this is not the experience of the writer, it may occur at any time.

**The periodicity of the malarial attack** — This is dependent on the plasmodial cycle, so that in tertian malaria it will occur every 48 hours and quartan every 72 hours, in the ordinary way, but not infrequently two crops of parasites will be completing their cycle 'out of step', that is to say, in tertian malaria, the rosettes of one crop will burst on the even days of the month and the other crop on the odd days, so that the patient will have a rigor daily (Hippocrates' quotidian malaria), or, if the infection is quartan, on two days

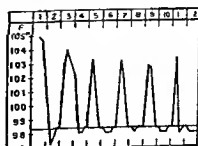


Figure 12 Benign tertian malaria

out of three

In the initial attack of benign tertian malaria in a non-immune the onset may be with a typical rigor, but much more frequently there is a daily

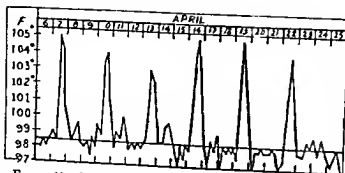


Figure 13 Double quartan infection with one 'brood' predominating

rise of temperature for a few days, with or without rigor, then a typical rigor occurs, and subsequently the classical periodicity is observed. In relapses and subsequent attacks the onset will usually be classical.

At the other end of the story, in an endemic area, in-

dividuals with a considerable degree of immunity against the local strains will frequently not show the classical febrile response, the fever may be low and irregular, or even absent, but the parasite may still be doing considerable damage, for example, causing anaemia.

Even in the partly immune individual living in an endemic area, quotidian periodicity is more common than tertian, but not infrequently one crop of parasites dies out, leaving the other crop to continue its 48-hour cycle.

In benign tertian infection spontaneous remission is the rule (figure 14), but it may be postponed for a considerable time. Lowe (1934), in a

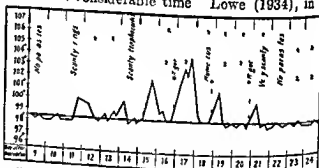


Figure 14 Induced benign tertian infection with natural subsidence in a partially immune patient (orig)

of the untreated cases three relapsed, but after a few days' fever again recovered spontaneously.

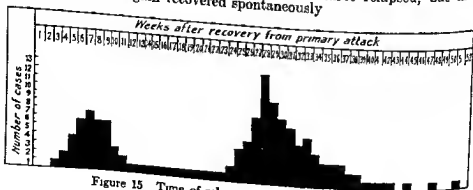


Figure 15 Time of relapse in 100 cases of relapsing benign tertian malaria (144 relapses) (James Nicol and Shute, 1936)

Benign tertian malaria shows a far greater tendency to relapse after treatment than malignant tertian. Figure 15 shows the times when relapses usually occur. In benign tertian malaria the late relapse, the peak of which occurs at about the 28th week, probably accounts for the spring rise in malarial incidence that has been reported in some countries where the temperature precludes transmission at this time of year.

Other specific clinical characteristics—It is by no means always possible to distinguish between the four different malaria infections clinically, except where quartan periodicity is clear, but the different infections have their special characteristics.

In malignant tertian the temperature chart much less frequently follows the classical form. It is usually remittent and not intermittent, and quite often the temperature is maintained at a high level for 36 hours, only falling a few hours before the next rise, a dicrotic notch in the chart is very common (figures 16 and 17). All the symptoms are more likely to be severe particularly the vomiting, cerebral symptoms may develop early

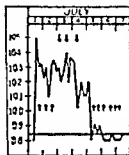


Figure 16 Malignant tertian malaria showing sustained rise despite treatment. Oral administration failed to control fever, this necessitated three intravenous injections.

↑ = oral quinine  
↓ = intravenous quinine

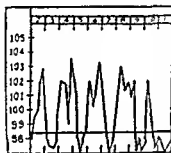


Figure 17 Malignant tertian malaria showing tertian periodicity.

and, though spontaneous remissions obviously do occur (or the mortality would be much higher than it is), the danger of cerebral symptoms supervening precludes experiments in patients under observation to ascertain how soon remission will occur. Relapses after adequate treatment are not common but when they do occur

are likely to be as serious as the initial attack.

Figure 18 shows that, if a relapse is going to occur, it will usually occur within the first few weeks.

Quartan malaria is usually no more severe than benign tertian, splenic enlargement is less marked but nephritis is said to be much more common, in some places it has been reported in 40 per cent of the cases, the albumin in the urine showing an increase with each attack.

Malaria due to *Plasmodium ovale* is very mild shows a marked tendency to early spontaneous remission, and responds rapidly to treatment.

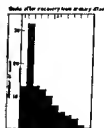


Figure 18 Time of relapse of 63 cases of malignant tertian.

In an endemic area where more than one species of parasite occurs mixed infections are very common. In Calcutta, where many cases of malaria are seen, it sometimes takes us many weeks to find what appears to be a pure benign tertian infection, even then, though many films have been searched and only benign tertian parasite found, this blood injected into another man, for purposes of malaria therapy,

will often give rise to a mixed infection, with the dangerous malignant tertian predominating

Other signs and symptoms of the ordinary attack—The spleen enlarges during an attack and subsides between attacks, but this frequent enlargement leads to hypertrophy and it tends to become larger at each successive attack. The spleen may not be palpable during the first few febrile attacks of a primary infection, but in re-infections or relapses it provides a valuable indication of the nature of the fever. The spleen has been known to rupture spontaneously during a malarial attack, there is a sudden severe pain in the abdomen but this is quite often not in the splenic area (see also Diagnosis)

The right heart is often dilated during an attack and congestion of the liver may follow. Tenderness of the liver is a very frequent symptom, this is a fact that should be recognized to avoid confusion with amoebic hepatitis.

A feeling of pressure in the thighs and legs, and sometimes actual pain in the legs are symptoms well recognized by patients subjected to frequent malarial attacks.

There is sometimes diarrhoea as a result of the pleocholia, followed by constipation associated with the hepatic congestion. An icteric tinge of the skin and sclerotics short of actual jaundice, is usual in severe malignant tertian infection. Sweat rashes will be troublesome if the patient is not properly nursed, herpes labialis is common, and urticaria by no means rare.

Acute nephritis may result from either a malignant tertian or a quartan infection. Also a sub-acute glomerular nephritis is a common complication, this condition responds rapidly to quinine (see figure 19)

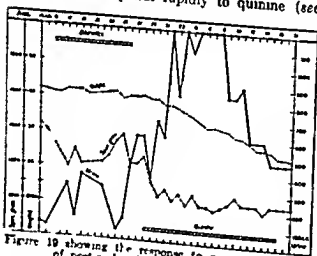


Figure 19 showing the response to quinine in a case of post-malarial glomerular nephritis

In infants the temperature will seldom run the usual course, it is nearly always a high remittent or even continuous fever, but shows great irregularity. Vomiting occurs early and is frequent. The spleen enlarges rapidly and usually the liver also. Convulsions replace the rigor that occurs in an adult. Very prompt vigorous treatment is necessary, as early death occurs, but a comatose

due to hyperpyrexia and cerebral involvement is common, but a comatose child will often come round completely in a few hours.

In pregnant women malaria if left untreated will be fatal to the child and dangerous to the woman. Still-birth and abortion are very common, these are sometimes said to be due to the blocking of the placental vessels with subsequent separation of the placenta. This is not the mechanism, since the parasites do not normally reach the placental circulation. The

parasites seem to have a particular affinity for the decidual blood vessels, a blood smear taken from the surface of the placenta after parturition will show a large number of parasites in a case in which few were to be found in the woman's peripheral blood. The decidual vessels are, however, too large to allow blocking by malaria parasites, and the abortion is more likely to be the result of some toxic effect. Malarial subjects are more liable to the toxæmias and to the severe macrocytic anæmia of pregnancy. It is imperative therefore that treatment should be undertaken immediately malaria is diagnosed in a pregnant woman.

### SPECIAL CLINICAL TYPES OF MALARIA

**A Pernicious**—This is usually associated with malignant tertian infection, but sometimes with quartan and even benign tertian. The different forms that pernicious malaria may take are almost unlimited, but those most frequently encountered can be grouped as follows —

(i) **Cerebral forms**—(a) The heat centre may be affected, the temperature will run up to 110°F, or higher, and death will be inevitable, (b) the onset of the attack may be with coma and delirium without a typical rigor, or after a typical onset this condition may develop rapidly, (c) there may be epileptiform seizures due to involvement of the cortex, or other localizing symptoms, such as aphasia, or (d) there may be psychio manifestations—mania, delusional insanity, or melancholia (such symptoms are sometimes wrongly attributed to the treatment), which may precede the febrile symptoms.

The other symptoms associated with the cerebral type are a full bounding and rapid pulse, a flushed face, sighing respirations, and vomiting.

In these cases the differential diagnosis from heat stroke, apoplexy, epilepsy, diabetic coma, meningitis, alcoholism, and trauma may be difficult.

(ii) **Algid forms**—There may be sudden collapse with no other symptoms or this collapse may be associated with hæmorrhagic vomiting, with severe choleraic diarrhœa, muscular cramps and suppression of urine, with dysenteric symptoms—blood and mucus in the stools, or with other localizing abdominal symptoms suggesting, for example, hæmorrhagic pancreatitis.

The characteristic symptoms in the algid form are collapse, a weak thready pulse, sometimes barely perceptible, a cold clammy skin, a weak voice, and slow shallow respirations. The patient may recover fairly rapidly or may pass on into a 'typhoid state' for some days. The localizing symptoms are due to the blocking of the arterioles by malaria parasites in the particular locality, as occurs in the brain in the cerebral forms.

(iii) **Bilious remittent fever**—This is a form of severe malignant tertian malaria that was distinguished clinically from the ordinary malarial attack in the days before the parasite was discovered. It seems less common in these days, possibly because it is recognized as a malarial manifestation and treated earlier. The attack starts as an ordinary malignant tertian fever, but it is associated with very severe nausea and vomiting, and jaundice appears on the second day of the fever, this will increase for a few days and then subside with the attack. It is distinguished from the jaundice of yellow fever or Weil's disease by its early appearance and its tendency to disappear, whereas in the other conditions jaundice does not appear until later and, in yellow fever in particular, it increases steadily.

(iv) Blackwater fever — [This will be considered separately]

(v) Other types that do not fall into any of the above groups are the cardiac and the broncho-pneumonic. They are self-explanatory.

**B Chronic malaria** — This term is falling into disfavour with the malarialogist, probably rightly so, because its exact meaning is not clearly defined. There is, first, the chronic relapsing malaria that is usually simply malaria that has been inadequately treated. Even after a full course of cinchona, the relapse rate in benign tertian is high and the treatment may have to be repeated for two, three, or even more relapses, but eventually it will respond. It is surprising how many people there are, including doctors, who after a single infection will allow themselves to suffer for years for want of adequate treatment.

In the next group are those persons who are subjected to repeated infections for years, often throughout their lives which are not necessarily short. This group should really be sub-divided into those that are infected periodically, for example, where malaria is definitely seasonal, and those that are infected perennially. This subject has not been sufficiently studied and the different reactions of the individual to these repeated infections satisfactorily explained. In some, the parasites will be found in the peripheral blood whenever it is examined, but the hosts seem to suffer very little disability, though they may have slightly enlarged spleens, which are residual from their childhood reactions to malaria infection, and they may be slightly anæmic (though not on clinical observation). There are others who suffer periodic attacks of fever, are weak, debilitated, and anæmic, have enlarged spleens, are very subject to other infections, and are altogether of poor value to the community, on proper treatment, these patients will recover completely and again become really useful members of society.

Finally, there is the chronic malarial cachexia. The patient has a huge spleen and liver, œdema and often ascites, he is very anæmic, has an earthy complexion and often some jaundice, he may or may not have low fever but in any case he is usually too ill and miserable to take much notice of this, and he is very subject to bowel and lung infections which eventually end his miserable life. There is a tendency to dismiss this condition as not being due to malaria but to other infections, such as kala-azar or bilharziasis, but this sequel, as perhaps it should be called, to malaria is undoubtedly very common in many endemic areas, though parasites are not often present and the patient does not respond well to anti-malaria treatment.

What determines the different reactions to malaria infection in different classes and in different individuals is not definitely known, but in the writer's opinion diet is a very important factor, the meat-eating African tribes show parasites in the peripheral blood, but, once immunity is established in childhood, suffer very little from the infection, whereas the Bengali ryot on a very poor diet with a low protein and vitamin content shows all the different stages of chronic malarial morbidity up to the stage of malarial cachexia.

**C Latent malaria** — This is an interesting and sometimes important phenomenon of malaria infection. It may be commoner than we imagine, but it can only be demonstrated properly in a person who leaves the place where he has been infected and lives in a malarin-free country. It is not uncommon in people returning home from the tropics when they are subjected to the rigours of an English winter, other physical strains, such

as surgical and obstetric operations, will often bring out a latent infection in any individual who has no knowledge of a previous attack. In such cases the parasites are so scanty, and are possibly hiding in the tissues of some internal organ, that a previous blood examination would not reveal their presence were a blood examination made, and it is therefore advisable to give a course of cinchona as a routine measure before the confinement of, or a surgical operation on any one coming from a highly malarious area.

### DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis should be considered under five headings—the history, the fever, the spleen, the blood film, and response to therapy.

**A The history**—Before making a diagnosis of malaria one should be satisfied that the patient, at some time, even if not recently, has been in a malarious country. Latent malaria will seldom, if ever, make its first appearance more than a year after infection, the last possible chance that the patient had of being infected should be carefully ascertained. Other possibilities of infection, from a blood transfusion and from an unsterilized hypodermic needle, e.g. the communal needle of the drug addict, should not be forgotten. On the other hand, it is dangerous to assume that just because a person has been in the tropics, he is certain to be 'riddled with malaria', there are many who like the writer, have lived for 25 years in the tropics without having a single attack of malaria.

A history of a previous attack is also suggestive, but here again it is necessary to be cautious, because to the layman in the tropics fever is synonymous with malaria and the patient should be questioned as to whether a diagnosis was made on a blood examination, whether the typical rigor and malarial periodicity were exhibited and whether there was response to cinchona (or mepacrine). Undue weight should not be given to this answer to the last question.

**B The fever**—The classical fever charts of tertian and quartan malaria are pathognomonic, but one does not except under very rare circumstances see such a chart for if the patient is intelligent enough to take his temperature, he is usually intelligent enough to make his own diagnosis and institute treatment, however, a clear history of rigors on alternate days or every 72 hours is often obtainable from the less sophisticated patient and is very helpful. The writer has seen colourable imitations of malarial periodicity in non-malarial subjects, but this periodicity is only accidental and is not usually maintained for any length of time.

On the other hand malaria must not be excluded just because the temperature chart does not conform to any of the classical types and rigors are absent, the chart may take almost any form in uncomplicated malaria, and malaria may be complicating any other disease.

**C The spleen**—There are many other diseases in the tropics that are accompanied by splenic enlargement. It is more important to know if the spleen is enlarging than to observe that it is enlarged. Rapid enlargement, and the increase and recession during the febrile attack and intermission, respectively, are the most suggestive features. The spleen is slightly tender and firm, this is to be compared to the very soft spleen of typhoid. In chronic malaria, as the spleen enlarges it becomes firmer, and eventually assumes a wood like hardness, as a result of the fibrotic changes that have taken place, in these stages it is not tender.

In tropical practice unless the spleen is palpable with the patient lying on his back with his legs drawn up, or standing and bending forward slightly,

the enlargement is not usually of much importance, the apparently painful contortions sometimes depicted in textbooks are not to be recommended

D The blood film —The examination of the blood film is the most important procedure in the diagnosis of malaria

Even one or two doses of cinchona or other anti-malarial drug will make the finding of parasites very difficult, so that the blood should be taken (but not necessarily examined) before any such drug is given

Whilst one would not recommend postponing the taking of the blood film, it should be remembered that immediately after a rigor, though the parasites will be most numerous, the large majority will be very young, and therefore very small, rings, these are not as easy to find as the larger trophozoites of some hours later (It is on this principle that the so-called 'malaria culture' method is useful, *in vivo* there is some mortality amongst these developing parasites and they also disappear into the internal organs but *in vitro* they develop unhampered and become more conspicuous, though no actual multiplication takes place)

Methods of examining the peripheral blood —The blood can be examined by the thin film, the thick film, and the so-called cultural methods. The last-named is a refinement that is worth undertaking when any special investigation is being carried out and where facilities exist, but a negative 'culture' cannot be accepted as conclusive evidence of the absence of parasites. It is not a method that one would recommend as a routine procedure, and it need not be described here

The Romanowsky-stained thin film is the method most frequently used, but the thick-film method is gaining popularity as the technique of this method improves. The value of the thick-film method is that a much larger quantity of blood is examined and a scanty infection, especially of gametocytes, can be recognized. The disadvantages are that the number of parasites cannot be estimated so accurately, that the parasites themselves may be distorted and their relationship to the red cells cannot be observed, so that though they are recognizable as malaria parasites their species may remain uncertain, and that any special features of the red cell such as size, stippling, Schuffner's and Maurer's dots, etc., are not seen so readily. For these reasons, both a thick and a thin film should be made

For purposes of diagnosis the thin film should be examined first, and if parasites are seen the thick film may be discarded, but if they are not found within a few minutes the thick film can be stained and examined, when parasites are found in the latter and their identity is uncertain, a return to the thin film can be made and this re-examined with more confidence. It is much easier to find parasites when you know they are there, than when you just think they may be there

For malaria survey work, it is usual to examine the thick film for the presence of malaria parasites, and subsequently the thin film if their identity is required, in these circumstances, both thick and thin films are often made on the same slide. In this type of work, it may be advisable to estimate the exact number of parasites, this is easily and accurately done by mixing with the blood an equal quantity of fowl's blood-corpuscle suspension of known concentration

A thin blood film is then made from the mixture, this is stained and field by field the number of fowl's red corpuscles (easily distinguished by their oval shape and nuclei) on the one slide and malaria parasites on the other are counted



The ratio of one to the other is worked out and as the number of fowl corpuscles per cmm is already known the number of malaria parasites can be calculated

Finally, the giving of adrenaline to cause a contraction of the spleen, so that parasitized red cells in the spleen sinuses are forced into the circulation, is a method worth employing in hospital cases when parasites cannot be found by any of the above methods. Either 0.5 ccm of 1 in 1000 adrenaline should be given subcutaneously, 20 minutes before, or 0.01 ccm intravenously, five minutes before, the blood is taken, the latter will be more effective

**Technique**—The first essential in making a good thin film is to have perfectly clean slides and a good spreader. The coverslip of a haemocytometer makes an almost ideal spreader. Otherwise one should select a good thick microscopic slide with a good edge and cut off the two corners\* to make the spreading edge slightly narrower than the slide on which the film is to be spread

The blood can be taken from the lobe of the ear or the finger. The part should be previously sterilized with alcohol and ether but it must be allowed to dry completely or be rubbed with dry sterile cotton wool. The needle, which should be a sharp bayonet pointed or triangular surgical needle must be similarly sterilized and dried. A sharp deep prick is made and when the drop of blood appears the surface of the slide is applied so that it just touches the drop but not the skin of the finger or ear. The drop should be taken on the slide about a quarter of an inch from the end. The slide is then placed on a flat surface with the drop upwards; the spreader is applied to the centre of this slide and is slid towards the drop until it touches it when the blood will spread along the edge of the spreader; this can be assisted by a little lateral movement. When the blood has spread completely along the edge of the spreader the latter is held at an angle of about 30° with the slide and is pushed along towards the centre of the slide. The blood follows the spreader leaving an even film on the slide until it is exhausted when film begins to form 'tails'. The size of the drop of blood should be such that 'tails' begin to form about or just beyond the centre of the slide (figure 20)

**Staining blood films**—All blood smears should be stained within 24 hours. If the smears cannot be stained immediately, they must be fixed with methyl alcohol and stored in a dust-proof slide box for staining at a later date. The unstained slides must never be left uncovered on the working table as blood is readily eaten by flies during the day and by cockroaches at night.

Romanowky stains especially those as modified by Leishman, Wright, Jenner and Giemsa are the most satisfactory. All these stains depend for their action on the compounds formed by the interaction of methylene blue and eosin and the differences between the various stains are dependent on the proportion of the two dyes. The fluid stains except Giemsa's stain are prepared by dissolving the dry powder in acetone free pure methyl alcohol so that a preliminary fixation with methyl alcohol is only required in the case of Giemsa's stain. Leishman's and Wright's stains are used in the strength of 0.15 per cent and Jenner's stain in the strength of 0.5 per cent.

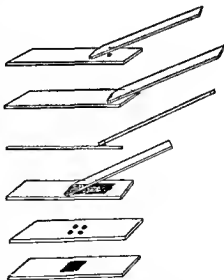


Figure 20 Methods of making thin and thick films

\* This can be done by making a scratch across each corner with a glass cutter or very simply by holding the slides under water in a basin and cutting off the corners with an ordinary pair of scissors.

**Preparing Leshman's or Wright's stain**—Stains in powder or tablet forms and extra-pure acetone free methyl alcohol for dissolving them should be obtained from some reliable firm. We have found the Gurr's\* stains to be very satisfactory.

All the glassware used in preparing the stains and in storing them should be scrupulously clean and free from any trace of water, they should be rinsed first with absolute alcohol and finally with a little methyl alcohol.

Place a weighed amount of powdered stain, say 0.15 gramme, in a bottle and add 100 c.c.m. of methyl alcohol. Shake the bottle now and then and leave overnight in a 37° C incubator. The whole amount will eventually dissolve. The bottle should not be opened unnecessarily, nor should the stain be filtered if this can be avoided, as the alcohol will absorb moisture from the air.

**Staining with Leshman's or Wright's stain**—Put the slides on a staining rack taking care that the side with the blood film is upwards, also see that the two ends of the slides are in the same plane.

From a drop bottle, or with a pipette, pour on sufficient stain to cover the whole of the film, wait for one minute to allow for proper fixing, with a capillary pipette now add two to three parts of distilled water (pH 6.8 to 7.0) or the buffer solution†. With another capillary pipette or glass rod, thoroughly mix the stain with the diluent to ensure of uniform mixture over the film.

When the mixture is allowed to settle, a scum will form on the top, if the proportion of the stain and diluent is correct. Allow the diluted stain to act for 5 to 10 minutes.

The diluted or undiluted stains on the slides must not be allowed to dry up at any stage of the staining. Drying is prevented by covering the staining rack with a wide bell-jar, or other improvised device, this is a very necessary precaution in hot dry climates.

When the staining is complete wash off the excess stain with a generous amount of the buffer solution. Tap water may be as satisfactory, but this varies from place to place, so that its suitability must first be tested. This will wash off all the stain from the upper surface while the bottom is cleaned by rubbing it well with cotton wool. The slide is now transferred to the beaker containing fresh distilled water and gently shaken to and fro until the colour of the smear becomes faintly pink. In order to dry it without allowing dust to adhere to the stained surface, the slide should be sloped against a vertical surface, e.g. a wall or the side of a box, with the film side inwards.

When it is dry the slide is ready to be examined.

**Staining with Giemsa's stain**—It is more difficult to prepare this stain and it is better to purchase it in solution. Giemsa's stain as prepared by Gurr is very satisfactory.

For staining with Giemsa's stain, preliminary fixing with methyl alcohol or some other fixative is absolutely necessary.

The optimum appearance of Giemsa-stained slides can only be learned by experience, but it is best described as a rich purple.

**Preparing dilute solution**—Take about 20 c.c.m. of prepared distilled water (pH 7.0) or buffer solution in a clean transparent glass cylinder, add 20 drops of undiluted stain or in other words as many drops of stain as there are cubic centimetres of water. Mix well by inverting the cylinder and see that the depth of colour of the mixture is such that, when held in front of the eye, it allows a distant object to be seen through it.

\* George T. Gurr, 136 New Kings Road, London, S.W.8, England

† Monopotassium phosphate—0.63 gm

Anhydrous disodium hydrogen phosphate—2.56 gm (or 6.46 gm of  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 12\text{H}_2\text{O}$ )

Distilled water up to 1 litre

Add 1 c.c.m. of chloroform as preservative

Place the slides to be stained on a staining rack flood the slide with methyl alcohol and cover with a bell-jar, so that the methyl alcohol does not dry up on the slide. Allow the methyl alcohol to act for about three minutes, remove the jar and thoroughly wash with distilled water.

Now flood the slide with the diluted stain, cover with a bell-jar and allow the stain to act for at least half an hour or better still leave it overnight. Next morning wash and dry the slide as suggested above.

**The thick film**—This is made by taking on to the middle of a slide four drops of blood arranged at the corners of an area about half an inch or one centimetre square, and then with a needle or the edge of another slide joining up these drops and spreading them evenly over the square area. The thickness of the film should be such that the blood on the surface is just mobile when the slide is tilted. Trial and error alone will teach one the exact thickness that should be aimed at, but it is better to err on the side of making the film too thin (see figure 20, p. 85).

**Staining**—Two methods of staining the thick film are described. The former is the method that has been in use for many years at the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine and provides a result suitable for detailed morphological studies whereas the latter (Field, 1941) is a simpler and quicker method more suitable for practical use.

**Method I.**—The film should be allowed to dry for two hours at room temperature or in a bacteriological incubator (37°C) for one hour.

Dehæmoglobinize the film with the following solution —

2.5 per cent solution glacial acetic acid	4 parts
20 per cent solution crystalline tartaric acid	1 part

This mixture keeps indefinitely, it should be kept in a glass-stoppered bottle.

Lay the film on the staining rack and gently flood it with the mixture. This process should be watched as thick patches will take longer than the rest to dehæmoglobinize, complete dehæmoglobinization is indicated by the whole film becoming greyish-white.

As soon as dehæmoglobinization is complete drain off the fluid by gently tilting the slide. Flood the slide with methyl alcohol, and allow this to remain for five minutes. The film is now dehæmoglobinized and fixed.

Drain off the methyl alcohol and wash the film very thoroughly with neutral or very slightly alkaline distilled water. Every trace of acid must be removed.

Stain the film with dilute Giemsa's stain, one drop to each cubic centimetre of distilled water, for 20 minutes or longer. Wash in distilled water. Do not blot the film, but let it dry by slanting it against a vertical surface, film side inwards.

**Method II.**—For this method two solutions are required —

#### Solution A

Methylene blue	0.8 gm
Azure I	0.5 "
Sodium hydrogen phosphate (anhydrous)	5 "
Potassium dihydrogen phosphate (anhydrous)	6.25 "
Distilled water	500 ccm

#### Solution B

Eosin	1 gm
Sodium hydrogen phosphate (anhydrous)	5 "
Potassium dihydrogen phosphate (anhydrous)	6.25 "
Distilled water	500 ccm

**Preparation of solutions.**—The phosphate salts are first dissolved then the stain is added. Solution of the granular azure I is aided by grinding in a mortar with a small quantity of the phosphate solvent. The solutions of the stain should be set aside for two hours when, after filtration they are ready for use. Should a scum later appear on the surface, or the dye precipitate on the stained films, subsequent filtration is necessary.

The stains are kept in covered jars of such a size that the depth of the solution is about 3 inches, the level being maintained by the addition of fresh stain as necessary. Eosin solution should be discarded if it becomes greenish.

- Technique**
- (i) Dip the film for about three seconds\* in solution A
  - (ii) Remove from the solution A and immediately rinse by waving *very gently* in clean water for a few seconds until stain ceases to flow from the film and the glass of the slide is free from stain
  - (iii) Dip for about five seconds in solution B
  - (iv) Rinse by waving *gently* in clean water, as in (ii)
  - (v) Place *vertically* against a rack to drain and dry
- N.B.*—The American equivalent of the German azure I is azure B†

**Identification of the parasites.**—(See plate B, frontispiece) In the thin film the parasites, especially the larger forms, will be found mostly at the tail end of the film. They are always within the red corpuscles though the larger forms occupy practically the whole of the corpuscle and only a shadow-like ring or segment of a disc represents the remains of the host cell.

The ring is the form of which the largest number appear in the peripheral blood, the young ring form consists of a ring of light-blue cytoplasm with a vacuole in the centre and a dark-red chromatin dot at one point on the periphery. The chromatin may take a rod-like form or appear as a double dot, and, though it is actually red, in a slightly over stained film it appears almost black. The ring forms of the different species differ, the smallest and most delicate is that of *P. falciparum* and the forms of the asexual cycle seen in the peripheral blood in malignant tertian infection are usually young rings, but larger trophozoites will also be found in heavy infections, whereas the *P. vivax* trophozoite is seen in all its stages in the peripheral blood and from the beginning develops an irregular amoeboid appearance with a large chromatin mass. As the parasite grows, the cytoplasm becomes more amoeboid sprawling all through the corpuscle and eventually almost filling it, pigment appears, the chromatin divides into irregular masses, and the unoccupied portion of the red cell shows a fine eosinophil stippling known as Schuffner's dots. *P. malariae* is not so amoeboid but the ring is coarser than that of *P. falciparum* and the chromatin globular rather than rod shaped, the growing trophozoite usually takes the form of a band, with the chromatin in one mass and the pigment scattered, stretching across the red corpuscle which does not ordinarily show any stippling.

The so-called *accolé* form of *P. falciparum* appears as a thin strip of cytoplasm attached to the surface of the cell.

When the trophozoite is fully developed schizogony commences, the chromatin divides, and the parasite becomes a *schizont*, in *P. vivax* the outline is now regular, the parasite is usually oval in shape and occupies about two thirds to three quarters of the corpuscle, the chromatin and pigment are scattered throughout the cytoplasm of the parasite, in *P. malariae*, the schizont almost fills the corpuscle, and the pigment granules are collected into a single mass.

\* Field recommended one second in each solution but actually the time should be determined for each batch of stain.

† Should azure I or azure B be unobtainable it is possible to prepare a methylene blue-azure mixture of undefined composition from medicinal methylene blue.

- (i) Dissolve 1.3 gm of medicinal methylene blue and 5 gm of anhydrous disodium hydrogen phosphate ( $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ ) in 50 ccm of distilled water
- (ii) Bring to boil and then evaporate on a water bath almost to dryness
- (iii) Add 6.25 gm of anhydrous potassium dihydrogen phosphate ( $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ ) and set aside for 24 hours
- (iv) Add 500 ccm of distilled water, stir until the stain is completely dissolved
- (v) Filter before use

The final stage of schizogony is the *rosette*. The chromatin is divided up into a number of equal portions each of which is associated with a small portion of cytoplasm to form small round nucleated bodies (*merozoites*) which tightly packed together with hemozoin pigment in the centre form the *rosette*. The number of merozoites in each *rosette* varies according to the species, for practical purposes if there are 12 or less it is probably a quartan parasite (*P. malariae*), if more than 12 it is probably a benign tertian (*P. vivax*). (A *falciparum* *rosette* is seldom seen in the peripheral blood and the inexperienced should hesitate to diagnose a *rosette* as *P. falciparum* unless there are at least 32 merozoites.)

Isolated merozoites are not usually seen in the peripheral blood. The other forms seen in the blood are the *gametocytes*. The most characteristic of these is the crescent of malignant tertian (*P. falciparum*). The crescent is much longer than the diameter of a red corpuscle so that it appears to extend beyond the red corpuscle the pale outline of which is to be seen in the convexity of the crescent. The female is a long slender crescent stained a dark blue and has a compact nucleus around which the pigment is aggregated. The male gametocyte is stouter and less characteristically crescentic with a large nucleus the pigment scattered and the cytoplasm staining a pale blue.

The gametocytes of *P. vivax* are not so frequently encountered in the peripheral blood they are round or ovoid and fill the corpuscle, the chromatin is aggregated into one mass the pigment is scattered, and if there are any visible remains of the red corpuscle Schuffner's dots will be seen. The gametocyte of *P. malariae* is usually much smaller than that of *P. vivax* but otherwise very similar. As in the case of *P. falciparum*, the nucleus in the female is more compact, and the staining of the cytoplasm darker.

The changes in the containing red corpuscles that occur are characteristic. In benign tertian infection (*P. vivax*), the cell is pale and considerably enlarged and it exhibits regular fine eosinophil stippling throughout. The red corpuscle that contains the very young ring forms of *P. falciparum* is not enlarged and in fact may appear to be smaller than normal but is really more globular. When the trophozoite enlarges, however the cell also enlarges slightly, becomes slightly darker, and shows numerous Maurer's dots or clefts these are red or purplish coarser, and much more irregular than Schuffner's dots. The red corpuscle in quartan (*P. malariae*) infection is similarly more globular but does not show Maurer's dots.

The pigment in benign tertian is a fine and lightish brown in malignant tertian it is coarser black and forms clumps and in quartan it appears early is very prominent, and falls between the other two in the matter of colour and coarseness.

*P. ovale* has not been included in this description up to the present, as it is a comparatively rare plasmodium. It is very similar to *P. vivax*, except that it is not amoeboid and the *rosette* contains 8 to 12 large merozoites the red corpuscle which is only slightly enlarged shows more marked stippling than in *P. vivax*, but is of a slightly paler red. The special characteristic of the red cell in this case is the frequency with which it assumes an ovoid shape—it is from this and not from the shape of the parasite that its name is derived—or shows a fimbriated edge. (This fimbriation must occur during spreading and is an indication of some characteristic physical change within the cell rather than of any changes in shape that occur *in vivo*.)

TABLE I  
Identification of species of malaria parasites

Parasite	Changes in red cells	Pigment	Trophozoites	Adult schizonts	Merozoites	Gametocytes
<b>BENIGN TERTIAN</b> <i>(Plasmodium vivax)</i> 48-hour cycle	Large and pale with fine red stippling (Schuffner's dots)	Fine, yellowish-brown granules or rods	Rings 1-1 diameter of red cell, growing forms very irregular, with pale blue staining and indistinct outline. Vacuole present	Completely fills red cell, irregular in shape	Medium size, 14-24 in number	Round or ovoid, larger than red cell ? With deep blue-staining cytoplasm and small compact nucleus ? Cytoplasm stains more faintly blue or reddish with larger paler nucleus
<b>QUARTAN</b> <i>(Plasmodium malarie)</i> 72 hour cycle	Not enlarged No stippling	Coarse, dark brown or almost black. Appears early	Rings 1-1 diameter of red cell, growing forms often band like or angular. Cytoplasm dense, early pigment	Fills red cell. Daisy head rosette	Large size, 8-10 in number	Round or ovoid, the size of a red cell ? Stains deep blue with small dark compact nucleus ? Stains pale blue or pink, with a large pale nucleus
<b>MALIGNANT TERTIAN</b> <i>(Plasmodium falciparum)</i> 48-hour cycle	Not enlarged, spherical and show coarse stippling (Maurer's dots)	Blacker than in other forms, clumps early	Young forms are fine, hair like rings about 1 diameter of red cell, with 2 chromatin dots and acrole forms common. Larger rings are also seen. Growing forms very rarely seen	Extremely rare in peripheral blood as they tend to adhere to blood vessel wall	Very small. Number variable 8-32 or more	? Crescentic, staining deep blue, with a compact central nucleus with pigment aggregated round it ? Sausage-shaped staining pale blue with larger and paler nucleus and scattered pigment
<b>Plasmodium ovale</b> 48-hour cycle	Very slightly enlarged, paler than normal. Stippling like <i>P. vivax</i> but coarser. Ovoid or distorted fimbriated cells	Coarser than in <i>P. vivax</i> . Dark yellowish brown	Rings about 1 diameter of red cell, not amoeboid, cytoplasm dense well defined, chromatin large, may be irregular	Mature forms slightly smaller than red cell, daisy head rosette	Large size, 8-12 in number. chromatin sometimes crescentic	Like <i>P. malarie</i> , in stippled red cells

To summarize, identification of the species depends on (i) changes in the red corpuscles, (ii) the nature of the pigment, (iii) the character of the trophozoites, (iv) the presence of the mature schizont—for they do not appear in the peripheral blood in malignant tertian (*P. falciparum*) infection—and their character, particularly with reference to the number of merozoites in the rosette, and (v) the character of the gametocytes. The data are summarized in table I which is a modification of the table given by Covell (1939).

**Significance of the findings.**—The finding of a malaria parasite naturally indicates that the patient has a malaria infection, but it does not necessarily mean that all his symptoms are due to malaria, for he may have some other disease and malaria may only be an intercurrent infection, or his immunity may be such that the malaria parasites are not actually giving rise to any symptoms at all. Again, the presence of one species of parasite, even if one is absolutely certain about its identity, does not preclude the presence of other species as well, and only recently the writer had the experience of inoculating blood from a patient who showed not only typical quartan parasites but typical quartan fever periodicity, and yet the recipient developed malignant tertian malaria.

Nevertheless, the presence of parasites cannot be ignored from the point of view of treatment even if one is certain that they are not the cause of the whole symptom complex.

Conversely, there are many occasions on which one will fail to find parasites in a true case of untreated malaria, as any honest protozoologist will admit. The importance of making a definite protozoological diagnosis cannot be over-emphasized, nor can one condemn too strongly the practitioner who assumes that all fever in a malarious country, or even in a malarial subject, is malaria. Nevertheless, after a very thorough though unsuccessful attempt to make a parasitological diagnosis, it is wholly folly to withhold treatment in a case in which other evidence points to malaria.

In the ordinary malarial attack, parasites are usually present in the peripheral blood and are easy to find. They may however be scanty and it is easy to overlook the fine rings of the malignant tertian parasite in a thin film, a thick film will help in these circumstances. There are local variations to this rule, and in some localities the parasites in an ordinary case are very scanty in the peripheral blood. Other circumstances in which the parasites are often difficult to find are, (i) at the beginning of a primary attack, (ii) in residents in an endemic area who have acquired a degree of immunity to local strains, (iii) in chronic malaria with splenomegaly, and (iv) after a few doses of an anti-malarial drug.

Regarding the identity of the parasites, even an experienced laboratory worker often finds it very difficult to be certain on the evidence of a single parasite, but after examining an average film for five minutes it should be possible to find enough forms to make identity certain. Mixed infections are however very common, and may cause confusion.

The finding of hemozoin pigment is also pathognomonic of present or past malaria infection. This is found in the large mononuclear and polymorphonuclear leucocytes. This pigment is unmistakable when it has been seen a few times, but the inexperienced are liable to make mistakes in both directions, they may dismiss true pigment as an artefact for it looks very like foreign matter superimposed on a cell, or they may mistake stain debris and dust for hemozoin pigment.

TABLE I  
Identification of species of malaria parasites

Parasite	Changes in red cells	Pigment	Trophozoites	Adult schizonts	Merozoites	Gametocytes
<b>Plasmodium tertium</b> ( <i>P. tertium</i> ) 48-hour cycle	Large and pale with fine red stippling (Schuffner's dots).	Fine, yellowish-brown granules or rods	Rings 1-3 diameter of red cell, growing forms very irregular, with pale blue staining and indistinct outline. Vacuole present	Completely fills red cell. Irregular in shape	Medium size, 14-24 in number	Round or ovoid, larger than red cell ♂ With deep-blue-staining cytoplasm and small compact nucleus ♀ Cytoplasm stains more faintly blue or reddish with larger paler nucleus
<b>Plasmodium quartanum</b> ( <i>P. quartanum</i> ) 72-hour cycle	Not enlarged. No stippling	Coarse, dark brown or almost black. Appears early	Rings 1-3 diameter of red cell, growing forms often band-like or angular. Cytoplasm dense, early pigment	Fills red cell. Dorsal head rosette	Large size, 8-10 in number	Round or ovoid, the size of a red cell ♂ Stains deep blue with small dark compact nucleus ♀ Stains pale blue or pink, with a large pale nucleus
<b>Plasmodium vivax</b> ( <i>P. vivax</i> ) 48-hour cycle	Not enlarged, spherical and show coarse stippling (Maurer's dots)	Blackish than in other forms, clumps early	Young forms are fine, hair-like rings about 1 diameter of red cell, with 2 chromatin dots and accole forms common. Larger rings are also seen. Growing forms very rarely seen	Extremely rare in peripheral blood as they tend to adhere to blood vessel wall	Very small. Number variable, 8-32 or more	♀ Crescencic, staining deep blue with a compact central nucleus with pigment aggregated round it ♂ Sausage-shaped staining pale blue with larger and paler nucleus and scattered pigment
<b>Plasmodium ovale</b> ( <i>P. ovale</i> ) 48-hour cycle	Very slightly enlarged, paler than normal. Stippling like <i>P. vivax</i> but coarser. Ovoid or distorted fimbriated cells.	Coarser than in <i>P. vivax</i> . Dark yellowish brown	Rings about 1 diameter of red cell, not amoeboid, cytoplasm dense well defined, chromatin large, may be irregular	Mature forms slightly smaller than red cell, dorsal-head rosette	Large size, 8-12 in number. Chromatin sometimes crescentic	Like <i>P. malariae</i> , in stippled red cells



To summarize, identification of the species depends on (i) changes in the red corpuscles, (ii) the nature of the pigment, (iii) the character of the trophozoites, (iv) the presence of the mature schizont—for they do not appear in the peripheral blood in malignant tertian (*P. falciparum*) infection—and their character, particularly with reference to the number of merozoites in the rosette, and (v) the character of the gametocytes. The data are summarized in table I which is a modification of the table given by Covell (1939).

Significance of the findings.—The finding of a malaria parasite naturally indicates that the patient has a malaria infection, but it does not necessarily mean that all his symptoms are due to malaria, for he may have some other disease and malaria may only be an intercurrent infection, or his immunity may be such that the malaria parasites are not actually giving rise to any symptoms at all. Again, the presence of one species of parasite, even if one is absolutely certain about its identity, does not preclude the presence of other species as well, and only recently the writer had the experience of inoculating blood from a patient who showed not only typical quartan parasites but typical quartan fever periodicity, and yet the recipient developed malignant tertian malaria.

Nevertheless, the presence of parasites cannot be ignored from the point of view of treatment, even if one is certain that they are not the cause of the whole symptom complex.

Conversely, there are many occasions on which one will fail to find parasites in a true case of untreated malaria, as any honest protozoologist will admit. The importance of making a definite protozoological diagnosis cannot be over-emphasized, nor can one condemn too strongly the practitioner who assumes that all fever in a malarious country, or even in a malarial subject, is malaria. Nevertheless, after a very thorough though unsuccessful attempt to make a parasitological diagnosis, it is sheer folly to withhold treatment in a case in which other evidence points to malaria.

In the ordinary malarial attack parasites are usually present in the peripheral blood and are easy to find. They may however be scanty and it is easy to overlook the fine rings of the malignant tertian parasite in a thin film, a thick film will help in these circumstances. There are local variations to this rule, and in some localities the parasites in an ordinary case are very scanty in the peripheral blood. Other circumstances in which the parasites are often difficult to find are, (i) at the beginning of a primary attack, (ii) in residents in an endemic area who have acquired a degree of immunity to local strains, (iii) in chronic malaria with splenomegaly, and (iv) after a few doses of an anti-malarial drug.

Regarding the identity of the parasites, even an experienced laboratory worker often finds it very difficult to be certain on the evidence of a single parasite but after examining an average film for five minutes it should be possible to find enough forms to make identity certain. Mixed infections are however very common, and may cause confusion.

The finding of hemozoin pigment is also pathognomonic of present or past malaria infection. This is found in the large mononuclear and polymorphonuclear leucocytes. This pigment is unmistakable when it has been seen a few times but the inexperienced are liable to make mistakes in both directions, they may dismiss true pigment as an artefact for it looks very like foreign matter superimposed on a cell, or they may mistake stain debris and dust for hemozoin pigment.

The increase in large mononuclears to 15 per cent will be a point of diagnostic value in some countries, but will not differentiate malaria from certain other protozoal diseases, *e.g.* kala-azar, and in any case may only indicate past malaria.

**Sternal puncture**—When the parasites cannot be found in the peripheral blood, it will often be worth using this method. In some observers' experience, it has been proved a valuable supplementary diagnostic method.

**E Response to therapy**—There is probably no other disease in which the therapeutic test is more frequently and justifiably used. As has been said above the experienced protozoologist will often fail to find parasites in a case of malaria, when therefore there is any suspicion in the mind of the physician that the fever from which the patient is suffering is malaria he should prescribe a course of some efficient anti-malarial drug. Though the occasions on which this treatment will be contra-indicated by the possible alternative diagnosis are very few, it should not be given indiscriminately in every case of fever occurring in a malarious country.

If the therapeutic test is decided upon, an adequate course must be prescribed, and, unless a definite diagnosis of some other disease is made in the meantime, the course must be completed. Ten grains of a standardized cinchona alkaloid mixture or of quinine alone, twice daily for five days or, if the synthetic preparations are preferred and available, one and a half (0.1 gramme) of atabrin or of some other preparation of *BP* mepacrine, three times a day for five days, may be considered an adequate course.

There are few cases of malaria in which the fever will not respond to five days adequate specific treatment, on the other hand, it must be remembered that there are many short fevers that simulate malaria (in such cases the temperature would have come down without treatment), and also that the cinchona alkaloids have a febrifuge action in some non-malarial febrile conditions. Therefore, though a negative diagnosis in a case in which the fever does not respond may be made with considerable certainty, it is very dangerous to make a positive diagnosis of malaria on the therapeutic test.

### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The conditions which malaria may simulate are so numerous that a textbook of medicine would have to be written to deal adequately with the subject, and even a complete list of diseases from which malaria has to be distinguished would occupy an unjustifiable amount of space, therefore only the main headings under which the differential diagnosis of malaria has to be considered, with the most important examples in each case, are given—

**Fever** *Short*.—Influenza bronchitis dengue sandfly fever relapsing fever filariasis and local inflammations

*Longer*.—Tuberculosis pyelitis cystitis malignant endocarditis kala-azar typhoid the typhuses the undulant fevers Hodgkin's disease glandular fever trichinosis and gynaecological and other chronic inflammations

**Splenic enlargements**.—Leukæmia splenic anæmia and syphilis as well as the febrile diseases mentioned above kala-azar typhoid etc

**Anæmia**.—Ancylostomiasis hæmolytic and other anæmias

**Cerebral**.—Heat stroke meningitis apoplexy, epilepsy, diabetic coma inebriation shock alcoholism narcotic poisoning and trauma

**Abdominal**.—Dysentery cholera appendicitis cholecystitis, and liver abscess

**Jaundice**.—Weil's disease, yellow fever infective hepatitis and catarrhal jaundice

**Cardiac, pulmonary and nephritic conditions**

## TREATMENT

**Historical.**—Cinchona bark which has been one of the indigenous medicines of South America, probably for millenia, was first introduced into Europe as treatment for malaria, according to tradition\* by the Countess of Chinchon, the wife of the Spanish Viceroy of Peru, about the year 1638. The fame of this bark spread rapidly—for those days—through the world and it was apparently introduced into India about twenty years later.

The subsequent history of the drug in India is interesting, for early in the nineteenth century it was almost entirely abandoned in the treatment of malaria. This surprising occurrence is easier to understand if one remembers that the diagnosis of malaria was clinical only and that there are many other fevers that simulate it. A long run of failures to get any response to cinchona therapy, because the disease was not malaria, might conceivably prejudice a physician against the drug. Also as powdered bark only was used and not the extracted alkaloids, it is probable that consignments of bark, which were all imported from South America, varied considerably in their alkaloidal content and therefore in their efficacy. Though for some years there was a semi-official ban on the use of the drug amongst practitioners of 'western' medicine, we cannot believe that a large number did not continue to use this invaluable drug surreptitiously. The treatment that was advocated in its place was heroic purging, with calomel in particular, and, of course blood-letting. Doses up to 60 grains of calomel were given and it was quite common for a patient to lose all his teeth from the mercurial gingivitis caused by this treatment.

Cinchona bark came back into favour in India towards the end of the first half of the nineteenth century. This return was assisted considerably by the work that had been done on the separation of the different alkaloids by the French chemists, Pelletier and Caventou, in 1820. Plants and seed were brought from South America in 1860 and cinchona cultivation was started in India.

In 1866, the Madras Cinchona Commission was formed to investigate the relative value of the various alkaloids of cinchona bark, they came to the conclusion that quinine was the most useful alkaloid, although the other crystalline alkaloids were also active in the treatment of malaria. This important and scientifically sound observation had very serious repercussions later.

The cultivation of cinchona flourished for some years in India and Ceylon, until in the year 1887 Ceylon alone produced 16 million pounds of cinchona bark. This uncontrolled growth of the cinchona industry led inevitably to the disastrous slump which ended in the ruin of the cinchona plantations, so that by the end of the century cinchona planting as a private enterprise had ceased in India. Java survived this slump and has enjoyed a virtual world monopoly in the cinchona industry ever since.

In 1931 a committee of the League of Nations Health Organization laid down a minimum standard for a cinchona alkaloids mixture that was efficient and at the same time could be prepared from the hardier cinchona plants without the prior separation of the various alkaloids or the addition of quinine, thus they called 'totaquina'.

After the war of 1914-18, the German chemists stimulated by the fact that they had no colonies in which they could grow cinchona, attempted to find a synthetic substitute for quinine, and in 1926 Professor Schulemann produced the quinoline compound, plasmochin, which, important though it is, has only a limited application in malaria therapy. This was followed a few years later by an acridine compound which was given the name 'atebrin'. The writer had the privilege of being the first physician not connected with the manufacturers to give a clinical trial to this drug and with his colleagues at the School of Tropical Medicine published the two first papers on the subject to appear in any medical journal (Napier and Das Gupta 1932, Napier, Butcher and Das Gupta, 1932).

\* The Countess of Chinchon tradition has now been exploded (Haggis, 1941). The Countess about whom the picturesque story is told never went to Peru, and her successor, who did never had malaria, never used the 'miraculous bark', and never returned to Europe. The true story appears to be that cinchona bark first reached Europe from South America as a fraudulent adulterant of another bark which was reputed to have anti-febrile properties and was called quina-quina locally. The superior qualities of the adulterant were eventually recognized but it still retained the name under which it was originally foisted on European consumers.

**Cinchona requirements**—The world quinine requirements have been placed at 1,387,412 kilogrammes annually (League of Nations, 1932). In India, it has been conservatively estimated that to treat her one hundred million sufferers from malaria at least a million pounds of cinchona alkaloids are required. About 70,000 lbs of cinchona alkaloids, of which quinine forms the bulk, are produced in India annually, the average amount consumed is 200,000 lbs which leaves a balance of 130,000 lbs to be imported. Nearly nine-tenths of the world's quinine supplies come from Java. Cultivation in the Philippines has been developing during the last few years. There is now little cultivation in South America, the natural home of cinchona. No other country produces cinchona in any significant amounts.

**The cinchona alkaloids**—Cinchona bark contains four crystalline and a number of amorphous alkaloids. The four former, quinine, cinchonine, quinidine and cinchonidine, all have anti-malarial properties. Of the individual alkaloids, quinine is undoubtedly the most valuable, as it is the most powerful and produces the least adverse by-effects. Of the other alkaloids, cinchonidine, which like quinine is levorotatory, is the most useful, being no more toxic and almost as effective as quinine, cinchonine if given in too large doses is liable to irritate the gastro-intestinal tract, and quinidine is well known for its depressing action on the heart and is used in medicine extensively for this purpose. A preparation of the crystalline alkaloids mixed in the proportions in which they occur in many samples of bark forms an anti-malarial drug which is very nearly, say 95 per cent, as effective as the pure quinine salt and which in only 2 or 3 per cent of patients will produce any adverse symptoms. The amorphous alkaloids have a poor anti-malarial action and tend to make the tablets—a convenient form in which the mixed cinchona alkaloids are often given—hard and insoluble.

**Quinine salts**—Quinine base being very insoluble, the drug is usually given in the form of one of its salts. The most generally useful is the sulphate, though it is not very soluble in water and has to be prescribed with acid in the mixture. The dihydrochloride is the most soluble, but, making a very acid solution, it causes pain when given intramuscularly, and therefore the neutral hydrochloride salt is preferable for this purpose.

The dihydrobromide is conveniently soluble, but contains a smaller amount of the alkaloid and therefore 25 per cent should be added to the dose when this is prescribed in the place of the sulphate, and more when it replaces the dihydrochloride. It is reported to give rise to less cinchonism, but possibly this is accounted for by its lower alkaloidal content.

The ethyl carbonate is insoluble in saliva and therefore tasteless, but it dissolves in the normal gastric juice. It is not however fully absorbed and it is generally stated that 8 grams of the ethyl carbonate of quinine (equisinine) correspond to 5 grams of the sulphate.

The strength, solubility, and reaction of the commoner salts of quinine are as follows:—

Salts	Percentage of quinine base	Solubility in H <sub>2</sub> O at 25°C	Reaction
Sulphate	74	1 in 720	Neutral
Hydrochloride	82	1 in 18	"
Bisulphate	59	1 in 8	Strongly acid
Dihydrochloride	82	1 in 0.75	"
Dihydrobromide	60	1 in 8	Neutral
Ethyl carbonate	82	not	Alkaline

**Cinchona plants**—There are many different species of cinchona, these vary considerably in their alkaloidal yield. *Cinchona ledgeriana* gives the highest yield of crystalline alkaloids and particularly of quinine but it is a comparatively delicate plant and will only grow well at certain altitudes and within certain restricted ranges of temperature and humidity. *C. succirubra* was the first species planted in India; it has a comparatively poor alkaloidal yield and so low a quinine yield that for this purpose it is totally uneconomical to grow but it is a very hardy plant and will grow over a much wider range than *C. ledgeriana*.

There are other plants e.g. the hybrids *C. officinalis* and *C. robusta* that whilst they have a comparatively high alkaloid yield though short of that of *C. ledgeriana*, are very much harder than *C. ledgeriana* and will grow over a much wider range of climatic conditions.

**Totaquina standard**—The standard laid down for totaquina (introduced into the B.P. 1933) is that it shall contain at least 70 per cent of crystalline alkaloids, of which 15 per cent must be quinine, the amorphous alkaloids must be less than 20 per cent, mineral matter less than 5 per cent, and moisture less than 5 per cent. The cinchona febrifuge grown in the government plantations and prepared in the government factories in Bengal complies, for all practical purposes, with this standard. A recent analysis of a sample showed that it contained 32 per cent quinine, cinchonine 11 per cent, quinidine 1 per cent, cinchonidine 30 per cent, and amorphous alkaloids 15 per cent.

**Cinchona policy**—One of the main reasons that Java gained and has kept this world monopoly was that they have large areas of country that are particularly suited to the growth of the high-quinine-yielding varieties of cinchona plant, e.g. *Cinchona ledgeriana*, and the world demand has during the last 50 years been almost entirely for quinine and not for the other alkaloids that might also be used in the treatment of malaria. It is natural that, if only one of the four available alkaloids is used and the others are more or less wasted the price of the one alkaloid will have to be greater than if all four were available for the planter must make his living. This has led to the price of quinine being comparatively high, and the high price of quinine is an important adverse factor in malaria control in rural areas.

A committee of the League of Nations Health Organization studied this question of the high price of quinine. They decided that, although no country could hope to produce quinine in competition with Java, many could grow other cinchona plants that would produce a comparatively high yield of total alkaloids from which a preparation of mixed alkaloids of cinchona could be produced at a very much lower price than that of quinine. Another advantage would be that by growing these other cinchona plants on a large scale many poor countries could provide their own cinchona requirements and become independent of imported quinine. The committee realized that one of the reasons for the unpopularity of the preparations of mixed cinchona alkaloids was that there was no standard for 'cinchona febrifuge', as such mixtures were usually labelled so that any waste product from the manufacture of quinine could be labelled cinchona febrifuge and sold as a malaria specific. Many of these mixtures had some anti-malarial action but this was so far below that of quinine and they so frequently produced gastro-intestinal and other unfavourable symptoms that they naturally fell into disrepute.

The unfortunate impression has arisen that cinchona febrifuge is a cheap and inferior substitute for quinine which is forced on poor people who cannot afford quinine. This was of course true of some but not of all cinchona febrifuges and the international totaquina standard has given us a means of distinguishing between the good and the bad preparations. Only such preparations that are stated to be of 'totaquina standard' should be used.

The next step taken by this committee was the organization of experiments to show the relative efficacy of totaquina as compared with quinine. These experiments have shown that totaquina is very nearly if not quite as efficacious as quinine in the treatment of malaria. The writer's experience has been that it is perhaps even more efficacious in benign tertian infections.

India was only one of the countries which the committee of the League of Nations Health Organizations had in mind but in no country could their work have more important repercussions if the government would take advantage of

the situation. Though India is not so fortunate as Java in her climate, vis-à-vis the cultivation of the high-quinine-yielding *C. ledgeriana*, she has nevertheless vast areas in which the hardier, *C. robusta* and *C. officinalis*, would grow, and if the government would either undertake, or control and guarantee to protect, large-scale cinchona planting an efficient anti-malarial drug at one-quarter the present price of quinine could be produced, and further India would become entirely independent of imported quinine\*.

**The synthetic anti-malarials**—There is a very great future in this line of chemical research. The initial successes that have been achieved are very encouraging, and we believe that when chemists and pharmacologists can again turn their full attention to this subject more efficient and less toxic compounds will be found.

The first of the successful anti-malarial drugs to be synthesized was plasmochin (*B.P.* pamaquinum), this is *N*-diethyl-amino-isopentyl-8-amino-6-methoxy-quinoline. Originally introduced for the treatment of the malarial attack and the destruction of the asexual forms, plasmochin has now been found to be too toxic, in the doses in which it has to be given, for this purpose. It is however the only drug that has any appreciable direct action on the gametocytes, particularly those of malignant tertian. Also it enhances the action of quinine and mepacrine in completely eradicating a benign tertian infection and thereby preventing a relapse. In these two capacities, it acts in very small doses, far below the toxic level.

Clinonal, di-alkylamino-alkylamino oxy-quinoline, a drug closely allied to plasmochin but much less toxic, has an action similar to that of plasmochin, it has however to be given in much larger doses to produce the same effect.

Another successful preparation is atabrin (*B.P.* mepacrine hydrochloridum), or dihydrochloride of 2-methoxy-6-chloro-9- $\alpha$ -diethylamino-8-alkylamino-acridine. This drug is less toxic, in normally non-toxic doses it destroys the asexual forms of the four species of plasmodium and controls the malarial attack, but it does not act on the gametocytes of *P. falciparum* and has little and doubtful action on those of *P. vivax* and *P. malariae*, it is therefore similar in action to quinine.

There are now a number of preparations that are apparently identical with atabrin, e.g. cinodora, quioacrine, and recently British and American firms have also placed on the market preparations that are chemically identical with plasmochin, e.g. praquine.

**Mechanism of action of anti-malarial drugs**—Our knowledge on this subject is not really very clear yet, it is believed that the cinchona alkaloids act indirectly by stimulation of the natural defences of the body, and do not have a direct action on the parasites, for *in vitro* they survive in a dilution of 1 in 10 000 which is a much higher concentration than ever occurs in the blood. The first result of quinine administration is not to reduce their numbers or to have any adverse action on the trophozoites or schizonts, as these are seen to be numerous and apparently unaffected.

\* The writer as Editor of the *Indian Medical Gazette* has for the last eleven years repeatedly urged the government to adopt a policy of extended cinchona growing and alkaloid distribution. Early in 1912 the Japanese invaded Java and India's external source of cinchona vanished. It has been possible to increase India's external production to about 80 000 lbs a year which is about 8 per cent of the real requirements and 40 per cent of her average annual consumption for some years. Recriminations are useless but the writer feels that he may be allowed just this one. I told you so. The writer is informed that Mysore, Travancore and Ceylon are already starting cinchona plantations and cultivation in the Government of India plantations in Sikkim, Bengal and Madras is now being extended.

shortly after quinine administration. It is suggested that the action may be on the merozoites whilst they are free in the blood, either directly or by altering the charge on the red cells so that the merozoites are not attracted to, or are unable to enter, the red cells. The clinical evidence that the action of quinine is greater during the sporulating stage is inconclusive, the action on the sexual forms of *P. vivax* and *P. malariae* is poor and on those of *P. falciparum* is nil.

On the other hand, the action of atebria is a direct one: the molecule is attached firmly to the parasite which shows obvious signs of degeneration very shortly after the drug is given.

**Absorption and excretion.**—By whatever route quinine is given its eventual fate is much the same. Given by mouth to a normal individual it is absorbed very rapidly and appears in the blood within 15 minutes and in the urine within about half an hour: it reaches peak concentration in the urine in 5 to 9 hours and is practically all excreted within 24 hours.

Atebrin also is absorbed very rapidly but most of it is fixed in the tissues: it is stored mainly in the liver, spleen and lungs. About one quarter of the total blood atebria is in the plasma.

A plasma level of 50 to 80 microgrammes is considered desirable for effective treatment: this is usually reached within a few hours and is maintained if the newer intensive course of atebria (see p. 105) is given but plasma concentrations show wide individual variations.

By whichever route it is given atebria appears in the urine very early though not more than 3 to 4 per cent of the dose taken is excreted by this route, excretion continues intermittently for many weeks after the patient has ceased to take atebria. About twice this amount is excreted in the faeces.

## PRINCIPLES AND AIMS OF SPECIFIC TREATMENT

It will be advisable first to analyse our aims in the treatment of malaria, and we must consider treatment in the widest sense, that is, treatment to prevent as well as cure the disease. The objects that we may hope to achieve by specific drug treatment can be placed under five headings:—

(1) *True causal prophylaxis*, the destruction of the sporozoites injected by the mosquito before they enter the red cell and commence their intra-corporal cycle.

(2) *Clinical prophylaxis*, the administration of a drug that will prevent the infected person from suffering from an attack of clinical malaria, but without necessarily destroying all the parasites in that patient\*.

(3) *The treatment of the clinical attack.*

(4) *Treatment to prevent relapses.*

(5) *Gametocyte destruction in the cause of general prophylaxis.*

(1) *True causal prophylaxis* that is to say the destruction of the sporozoites injected by the mosquito before they enter the red cell and commence their intra-corporal cycle.

There is at present no drug which will achieve this. Ten grains of quinine given daily for five days before and nine days after a person has been infected by a mosquito will not prevent the development of the parasite, nor will atebria in full therapeutic doses followed by a daily dose of 0.1 gramme.

In an experiment carried out in London, in which some half dozen well-known malaria workers took part, three daily doses of 0.02 gramme of

\*For this the army favours the expression 'suppressive treatment'. There are points in favour of this term provided that it is not used in a disparaging sense as it often is. The writer prefers the better established 'clinical prophylaxis'.

plasmochin (a dose which will sometimes produce toxic symptoms) were given for one day before and six days after the infective mosquito bite, and yet five out of six of these men became infected.

The discovery of a drug that will act on the sporozoites would mark a great advance in malaria therapy.

(2) **Clinical prophylaxis**, that is to say, the administration of a drug that will prevent the infected person from suffering from an attack of clinical malaria, but without necessarily destroying all parasites in that patient.

Now this can be done. A dose of 0.2 gramme (three grains of atabrin given twice a week, or a daily dose of six grains (five grains are sometimes insufficient) of quinine will usually keep a person free from clinical malaria, even in a very malarious place, for an almost indefinite period.

**Field experiments**—A large-scale experiment has recently been carried out in Malaya in an estate labour force. In one group everyone was given atabrin on two consecutive days during the week—adults had a dose of 0.2 gramme each day and children correspondingly smaller doses, as shown in the table below. In another group six grains of quinine were given daily to adults, and children were given smaller amounts, as shown in the table.

Age, years	Atabrin grammes	Quinine
1 to 2	.. 0.025	or 0.1 g euquinine* (1½ grains)
3 to 4	. 0.05	or 0.2 g euquinine (3 grains)
5 to 6	. 0.075	
7 to 8	. 0.1	
9 to 10	. 0.125	or 0.2 g quinine bihydrochloride
11 to 12	. 0.15	
13 to 16	. 0.175	or 0.4 g quinine bihydrochloride

A third control group received no specific treatment. The results of this prophylactic treatment are shown in figures 21a and 21b (Field, Niven and Hodgkin, 1937).

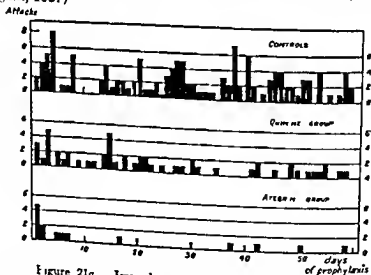


Figure 21a Immediate effect of prophylactic measures

It will be seen that in the atabrin series the malaria was controlled almost immediately and only an occasional case occurred: in the quinine

\* Euquinine or quinine ethyl carbonate is insoluble in the mouth and therefore tasteless whilst it contains 82 per cent of the alkaloid, actually more than quinine sulphate (74 per cent), its lower solubility in the gastro-intestinal tract makes it advisable to give it in the relatively larger doses indicated.



series the control of the malaria was slower but eventually it was largely effected

The important point however is that even in the atabrin group, they were only kept free from fever as long as the atabrin dosage was continued, this dosage did not produce true causal prophylaxis and did not eradicate the malaria infection completely, but kept it at a sub clinical level, so that when the drug was discontinued a very large number of the patients suffered a clinical attack of malaria almost immediately and nearly 80 per cent within two months

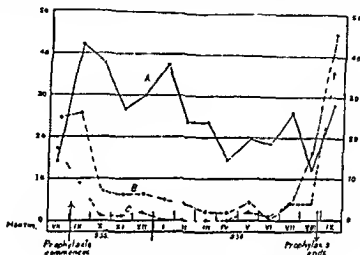


Figure 21b Monthly incidence of malarial attacks

	Number of subjects
A = Controls	91 $\pm$ 14
B = Quinine 0.4 gramme daily	91 $\pm$ 17
C = Atabrin 0.4 gramme weekly	103 $\pm$ 12

This is shown in figure 21 which gives the malaria incidence month by month for more than a year. It will be seen that, when in the control group there were nearly forty cases monthly, in the atabrin group there were none, or only one or two. However, directly the prophylactic treatment was withdrawn, the incidence in the atabrin group rose to 37 and was actually higher than in the control group. Lamprell (1940) in a similar experiment in Aescam obtained an exactly comparable result.

These field experiments suggest that the administration of these drugs, whilst keeping the infection below the clinical level, interferes with the full development of immunity, so that when the drug is withdrawn not only do latent suppressed infections become apparent but immunity to fresh infections is much less developed than in the patients of the control series in whom the infections were allowed to run their natural course and immunity was allowed to develop.

It is thus apparent that drug prophylaxis in a labour force should only be carried out in special circumstances, either as a stop gap whilst other anti malarial methods are being organized, or as a temporary measure to keep the largest possible number of workers in the field during a particularly busy time of year, this second reason will apply to armies operating in

malarious countries and the adoption of this measure might well determine the success of a campaign

**Individual drug prophylaxis**—The question naturally arises, should one advise the individual in a malarious district to take anti-malarial drugs as a prophylactic measure? A clear-cut answer cannot be given as the circumstances are subject to such wide variations. Where a European, or other foreigner, is touring in a malarious tropical country, in such circumstances that he (or she) is likely to be bitten by a malaria-carrying mosquito, he should certainly take a prophylactic drug, and atabrin is in this case probably the drug of choice, it should be taken in prophylactic doses (p 98) during the whole stay in the malarious country and for a week after leaving it after which a full therapeutic course should be taken (p 101)

(It should however be mentioned that though drug prophylaxis is most useful in the case of the casual visitor, it will actually be less effective in a non-immune individual than in one who has acquired some immunity through previous experience of malaria)

If this same person is residing for perhaps some years in a slightly malarious country he should not depend on drug prophylaxis, but take all other prophylactic measures (*vide infra*) to avoid infection, at the same time, if he is still running some risk of infection, drug prophylaxis should be used as an extra precaution, but in these circumstances, in view of our lack of knowledge of the effects of atabrin over a very long period, the writer would advocate quinine (six grains daily) again throughout the whole period of risk and for a short time afterwards

As the daily dose of quinine is not without its unpleasant and possibly mildly detrimental effects, it cannot be advocated lightly and in circumstances where the individual is not exposed to great risk of malarial infection, either because the area is one of moderate malarial endemicity or because he is adequately protected by other measures. However, no definite rule can be laid down, and local custom should be taken into account, though not followed blindly, for local conditions may have undergone a change as a result of other anti-malarial measures, and old established foreign residents in tropical countries are liable to be unreasonably conservative

There is no reason to suppose that prophylactic quinine is ever seriously detrimental, or that it increases the risk of blackwater fever occurring in a subject who takes it, as has been suggested, it is not the regular taking of quinine that is the predisposing factor in this serious sequel of malaria, but the frequent omissions to take it

For the indigenous inhabitant or the permanent settler in a malarious country, it is very questionable if drug prophylaxis should ever be attempted, it is better by letting the subjects suffer periodical attacks, which can be treated before serious symptoms appear, to allow them to work up their immunity, and to devote the money available to the general improvement of their economic condition, and to other preventive measures

(3) **Treatment of the clinical attack**—In the very great majority of cases, the clinical attack can be terminated easily and rapidly by the administration of atabrin\*, quinine, or standardized cinchona febrifuge (B.P. standard) given by mouth. Plasmochin\* has no place in treatment under this heading

\*The writer has used the words 'atabrin' and 'plasmochin' in preference to the official 'mepacrine' and 'pamaquine', as the former are at present more familiar but the references are not necessarily to the proprietary preparations with these names

Before discussing specific treatment, mention must be made of a recommendation of the Health Committee of the League of Nations, which has been severely criticized, but with which the writer is in part agreement. They recommend that in the initial attack of malaria the patient should be allowed to remain untreated for a few paroxysms in order that he may work up his natural immunity before he is given any anti malarial drug.

This suggestion is based on reliable experimental evidence and it is no doubt absolutely sound advice, in theory, but in practice it is seldom possible to do this, as in most cases the patient's only desire is to be cured of the immediate attack, and if one insisted he would simply call in another doctor. It is, in any case, only advocated in benign tertian infection.

If cinchona or quinine are given the prescriptions should be —

R Totquinæ (or cinchona febrifuge)	℥ x	or R Quinina sulphatis	℥ x
Acidi sulphurici dil	min xx	Acidi citratis	℥ xx
Magnesi sulphatis	℥ xxx	Aquam chloroformi ad	℥i
Aquam chloroformi ad	℥i		

One or other of these should be given twice daily in benign tertian infection and three times daily in malignant tertian infections and this dosage should be continued for seven days.

If atabrin is used 0.1 gramme (or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grains) should be given three times a day for five days—or in severe malignant tertian infections this may be continued for seven days, but not longer.

For women and small or weak men, this dosage may be too high and it may be advisable to reduce the 10 grains of quinine to  $7\frac{1}{2}$  grains in each case the adult dose of atabrin is usually well tolerated.

Children both need and are able to take relatively larger doses of quinine than adults, the dose in grains is calculated as 1 to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  plus half the age of the child in years (e.g. give a well nourished child of five years of age  $1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 4$  grains). This is best given, twice or thrice daily according to the species of the infecting plasmodium, in treacle or honey, preferably in the form of the tasteless (euquinine), but if this salt is given the dosage must be increased by 50 per cent.

The total daily dosage of atabrin for children should be

1 to 2 years	0.05 gramme ( $\frac{1}{4}$ gram)	9 to 12 years	0.2 gramme (3 grains)
3 to 4	0.075 ( $\frac{1}{2}$ )	13 to 16	0.25 " (4 " )
5 to 8	0.1 " ( $\frac{1}{2}$ " )	Over 16	0.30 " (4½ " )

The total dose is divided into two or three individual doses as is most convenient.

In the very great majority of instances oral administrations will be sufficient and effective. The reason for this is that when the drug is given by the mouth to a healthy person it is absorbed by the gastric mucosa immediately, and within about half an hour it will have appeared in the urine. By whatever route it is given, it will not reach the systemic blood circulation faster than this. There are however, some cases in which there is no response to oral administration and the various reasons for this are given below.

Possible reasons for failure of oral administration —(1) Absence, or a shortage, of quinine in the so called quinine mixture. This may be due to the dishonesty or carelessness of the dispenser or of the manufacturer, many instances have been reported in which serious consequences have resulted.

(ii) Faulty preparation of the tablets that is they may be insoluble through the presence of too much amorphous alkaloids, or because they are coated with some insoluble substance

(iii) Vomiting of the mixture or tablet

(iv) Failure of absorption by the gastric mucosa

(v) Deception by the patient himself, or herself, on account of prejudice (pregnant woman) or malingering

The methods that can be recommended to circumvent some of these occurrences are to test the stock mixtures by means of the simple method originally suggested by Megaw, and to test the urine of the patient by the Tanret Mayer test for the presence of quinine, or for atabrin by the method of Tropp and Weise (1933)

**Test for quinine in mixtures**—The reagent is made up as follows—Pure phosphotungstic acid—1 ounce dilute sulphuric acid—5 ounces and rectified spirit—12 ounces Place 2.5 ccm of the reagent into each of two narrow tubes add to one 0.25 ccm of the quinine solution to be tested and to the other 0.25 ccm of a control mixture containing the amount of quinine that the mixture was supposed to contain *e.g.* 10 grains to the ounce A precipitate forms which will settle and the two tubes can be compared in half an hour's time Any gross deficiency will be obvious

**Tanret Mayer test for quinine in urine**—The reagent is made as follows—Add a solution of 1.45 grammes of mercuric chloride in 80 ccm of undistilled water to a solution of 5 grammes of potassium iodide in 20 ccm of distilled water, agitating the solution all the time To test the urine first boil and then filter it then add a few drops of reagent to 5 ccm of the urine an immediate precipitate forms if the alkaloid quinine is being excreted in the urine

**Test for atabrin in the urine**—Add 2.5 ccm of 60 per cent NaOH and 25 ccm of ether to 50 ccm of urine shake well allow the ether to separate pipette it off and to it add 5 ccm of N/10 hydrochloric acid The intensity of the yellow colour will be in proportion to the atabrin content of the urine

The question of administration of anti malarial drugs by routes other than via the mouth can now be discussed

**Parenteral therapy**—There are two routes by which anti-malarial drugs can be given parenterally (*para* = besides, *enteron* = intestine), namely the intramuscular and the intravenous, we will consider them together first

The points for and against these methods of administration may be considered under the following headings—

(i) *Necessity*—In certain circumstances parenteral therapy is essential, as for example in unconscious patients and in cases where there is persistent vomiting

(ii) *Advantages*—The main advantages are that one gives the injection oneself and is therefore certain that it has been taken, and further that it has been absorbed Quicker action is claimed by some workers, but this is at the best very slight

(iii) *Dangers*—These are not very great *provided* sufficient care is taken Intramuscular injections require scrupulous asepsis, and great care must be taken to avoid large nerves or neuritis or paralyses may be caused

In intravenous therapy, the injections must be given *very* slowly and the drug must be well diluted, or syncope and collapse may occur

(iv) *Abuses*—To give parenteral injections as a routine measure in the treatment of malaria is unnecessary and therefore a definite abuse

Even when parenteral therapy is indicated, it is seldom necessary to continue it beyond the first day, after this oral therapy can usually be instituted (see figure 22)

The intramuscular *versus* the intravenous route—On the subject of parenteral therapy, there are acute divergences of opinion in the ranks of the medical profession. Extreme views are taken: there is the school of thought mainly amongst private practitioners which considers that no treatment for malaria is complete without a few intramuscular injections, and the opposite school which looks upon an intramuscular injection of quinine as little short of malpractice, this latter has been the 'official' view and for a number of years there has been an 'official' ban on intramuscular injections. Textbooks, teachers, and even regulations have been uncompromising in their condemnation of this method of administering quinine. Research workers have been called in and have supported very strongly the official view, they have shown that the injected quinine causes local necrosis, so that the slightest sepsis will lead to abscess formation and possibly extensive tissue destruction, which may cripple or even kill a debilitated patient. There is also the danger of tetanus. These dangers are all real, though they may be very slight, and the writer has seen both deaths and serious crippling result from intramuscular injections. Nevertheless, there are in the tropics many observant and careful practitioners who do not hesitate to give intramuscular injections of quinine whenever they think that parenteral administration is indicated.

Though the writer does not feel justified in criticizing all practitioners who resort to the intramuscular route much more frequently than he does, he does condemn wholeheartedly the practice of giving quinine by intramuscular injection as a routine procedure.

The writer's own point of view is that only in one in a hundred cases of malaria is the parenteral route indicated, and where it is indicated the intravenous route is preferable ninety-nine times out of a hundred. In the ten thousandth case he would not hesitate to give an intramuscular injection.

**Preparations and dosage—Intravenous—**Ten grains of quinine dihydrobromide in 20 c cm of normal saline or 5 per cent glucose repeated about six hours later, or atebrom musonate 0.125 g (0.1 g atebrom hydrochloride) in 3 c cm of distilled water, given three times in the day. Quinine must be given very slowly, not faster than 2 c cm (or 1 grain) per minute by the watch, with or without 0.5 c cm of pituitrin.

**Intramuscular—**Ten grains of quinine dihydrobromide, or 10 grains of quinine hydrochloride with five grains of urethane\* in 2 c cm of distilled water, thus makes a solution with hydrogen ion concentration of about pH 6.0 and is preferable to the bihydrochloride which forms a very acid solution (pH 3.5).

This is given into the gluteus maximus, the vastus externus, the muscles at the angle of the scapula or the deltoid, or atebrom musonate 0.375 g (0.3 of atebrom hydrochloride) in 9 c cm of distilled water, into one of these muscles.

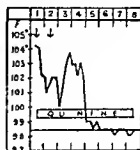


Figure 22 Malignant tertian malaria heavy infection with vomiting two intravenous injections of quinine (indicated by the arrows) and quinine by mouth for seven days

\* Urethane acts as an analgesic and also increases the solubility of the salt

(4) Treatment to prevent relapses — The big-stick methods which were at one time popular, large daily doses of quinine over long periods, are no longer considered sound practice. The average case of malignant tertian infection will not usually relapse after the ordinary curative dose of cinchona, quinine, or atabrin, but as relapse may be serious a second course after an interval of 7 to 10 days is usually advisable, the same remark applies to quartan infections. In benign tertian infections the relapse rate after quinine alone is usually high (70 per cent) and some special measures should certainly be adopted.

Following the line of thought started by Acton who showed that quinine acted best in an alkaline substratum, Sinton advocated the following routine procedure in the treatment of relapsing benign tertian malaria.

The two mixtures he used were —

Mixture A		Mixture B	
R Sodii bicarbonatis	g lx	R Quininae sulphatis	g x
Sodii citratis	g xl	Acidi citratis	g xx
Aquam ad	℥i	(or acidi sulph. dil)	℥xx
		Aquam ad	℥i

**Course** — Give calomel in divided doses, i.e. 6 quarter-grain doses at half-hour intervals at night, and magnesium sulphate at 6 o'clock in the morning, 5ss to ʒi at 7-30, 9-30 and 11-30 a.m. give one dose of mixture A, followed by a dose of mixture B at 12 o'clock, at 6 o'clock give a dose of mixture A, followed half an hour later by a dose of mixture B.

From the 2nd to 5th days inclusive give three times during the day a dose of mixture A followed half an hour later by a dose of mixture B.

On the 6th and 7th days give a dose of mixture A, followed half an hour later by one of mixture B, twice during the day.

This makes a total dose of 180 grains of quinine. Totaquina may be substituted for quinine without detriment to the treatment and where economy is to be considered this should always be done.

**Quinine plus plasmochin** — A very marked further reduction in the relapse rate in benign tertian malaria can be obtained by the addition of plasmochin to the quinine. The following dosages are recommended, the results obtained with each of these courses are about the same, but in either case the patients should be kept under observation for signs of intolerance to plasmochin.

Plasmochin 0.02 gramme plus quinine 10 grains twice a day,

or plasmochin 0.01 gramme plus quinine 10 grains thrice a day, for seven days.

**Atabrin and atabrin plus plasmochin** \* — Better results have been obtained with atabrin alone than with quinine alone, but, even with atabrin, plasmochin can be added with advantage in benign tertian infections.

Atabrin 0.1 g thrice daily, plasmochin 0.02 g once a day for five days — given together or separately.

There is considerable evidence to show that the combination of these two drugs enhances the toxic action of each, and patients should therefore

\* The writer has never seen any ill-effects from these combinations but recent experience of others seems to indicate that serious ill-effects are commoner than was previously supposed even when the drugs are given separately. The writer would therefore emphasize the precaution that they should be given only when the patient is under strict supervision, preferably in hospital, that this combination should only be used for the specific purpose for which it is designed namely the treatment of relapsing benign tertian malaria and that it should only be resorted to when quinine is not available.

be kept under strict observation while these combinations are being administered. Many workers take the view that it is better to give atabrin alone for five days and then to give plasmochin in doses of 0.01 gramme twice daily for another five days. If the drugs are given in this way the danger of toxic symptoms is undoubtedly less but the course of treatment is prolonged.

Arsenic is a valuable adjuvant in the treatment. This can be given in the form of some arsphenamine preparation in three doses at 7 day intervals between two courses of cinchona febrifuge or quinine and alkalies, or as liquor arsenicalis added to a 'tonic' mixture given after the specific anti-malarial course.

(5) Gametocyte destruction in the cause of general prophylaxis.—This does not in any way help the patient for gametocytes can never again become asexual forms as long as they remain in the blood but if they are taken up by a mosquito they develop and the infection may be transmitted to others. It is therefore only in the interests of general prophylaxis that attempts should be made to destroy gametocytes.

It is in this capacity that plasmochin and the closely allied drug cinchonine are unique. No other drug that we know will destroy the gametocytes of malignant tertian but this can be effected by a very small dose of plasmochin 0.01 gramme twice a day for three days. It may be given for the last three days of the quinine or atabrin treatment or after the course has been finished.

Mass treatment with plasmochin is a prophylactic measure suitable only in isolated communities but it is essential that every single member of the community, particularly the infants should be treated and this is rarely possible (see p. 112).

A comprehensive course.—We have considered treatment of malaria under the five headings separately, but in most circumstances one will naturally wish to achieve more than one of these objectives in fact except for the first which cannot be achieved with any drug we have at our disposal one will often wish to achieve all of them. That is to say, one will want to treat the clinical attack, to ensure that the condition does not recur either as the result of a relapse or of a re-infection and finally to prevent the patient being a source of infection to others for this the following routine course should be given.—

Quinine or totaquina gr. x three times a day with plasmochin 0.02 gramme (or  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain) once a day, for seven days followed by quinine or totaquina gr. x, daily, or 0.2 gramme atabrin in a single dose on two consecutive days each week, in either case the last mentioned dosages must be given as long as prophylaxis is to be maintained.

Recent experience.—This has abundantly confirmed the value of atabrin in all circumstances in which quinine was used hitherto. It has also tended to de-emphasize the toxicity of atabrin.

The very great importance of the blood level of atabrin in determining the efficiency of the drug has been realized and therefore there has been a tendency to increase the early dosage in order to work up the blood level rapidly for until the tissues are saturated the blood level remains low. The American Army recommends 0.2 gramme (3 grains) of atabrin with 1 gramme of sodium bicarbonate in half a pint of water every six hours for the first five doses that is a total of 1 gramme of atabrin in the first 24 hours followed by 0.1 gramme three daily for 5 days—a total of 2.8 grammes in a week. For quinine they recommend 1 gramme (15 grains) thrice daily for the first two days followed by 0.63 gramme (10 grains) thrice daily for five days—a total of 15 grammes (240 grains) in a week.

For causal prophylaxis (suppressive treatment) the daily administration of 0.1 gramme of atebryn for six days a week is now favoured. In order to reach the required blood level it must be given for two weeks before the subject enters the endemic area or alternatively an equivalent amount of atebryn must be given in a shorter period.

The dosage that the writer has recommended in the earlier paragraphs of this section are based mainly but not entirely on experience with partly immune residents of malarious countries mostly East Indians and he still believes that the smaller doses are sufficient for such patients, but recent experience has shown that larger doses are required for the heavier non immune British American or Australian soldier. The rationale of concentrating the medication during the first day is sound and should be applied generally.

The role of plasmochin as an adjuvant in the treatment of benign tertian malaria to prevent relapses is being questioned nowadays. Although this subject must be considered *sub judice* the routine use of plasmochin has been suspended in the American armed forces for the time being.

Much very important work on malaria has been carried out in Great Britain and America during the last few years but most of the results of this work are still considered of sufficient importance for the authorities in these two countries to prohibit their publication at present.

### Toxic Effects

The cinchona alkaloids—*Cinchonism* is the word used to indicate the mild toxic symptoms that follow the administration of these alkaloids, namely headache and a 'fullness' of the head, buzzing in the ears, and deafness. Cinchonism is largely responsible for the unpopularity of the cinchona alkaloids amongst patients. The extent to which different individuals suffer from cinchonism varies very considerably, in this respect the personal factor is more important than the drug factor, though some alkaloids, e.g. cinchonidine, and some salts e.g. quinine hydrobromide, are reputed to cause less cinchonism than others.

Taken in large doses all these alkaloids have toxic actions, and even in moderate doses these effects may be apparent in susceptible individuals. As we have noted above, quinidine is a heart depressant, and cinchonine is apt to irritate the gastric and intestinal mucosa and cause vomiting and diarrhoea. The other crystalline alkaloids may produce the same effects but are much less likely to do so. Quinine given in large doses produces albuminuria, and this complication was at one time comparatively common, but is seldom seen now that the large doses of quinine have been abandoned, it will seldom occur if not more than 30 grains a day are given. Amblyopia, usually the result of large doses, may occur with a moderate dose. Temporary blindness sometimes accompanied by mental confusion has also been reported in susceptible individuals.

Finally, some individuals have an idiosyncrasy towards quinine and even a very minute dose of quinine will precipitate toxic symptoms, these include anaphylactic like symptoms, urticaria and other rashes, local swellings, and hæmorrhages, as well as those already mentioned. Such patients can sometimes be desensitized by commencing with fractional doses and increasing the dosage very gradually, but, as alternative drugs are now available, it is seldom necessary to do this. The occurrence of quinine hæmoglobinuria as distinct from blackwater fever, is now questioned, but the writer recently saw an undoubted case, this is another example of personal idiosyncrasy.

In the treatment of the toxic effects caffeine is the only drug of much value, this can be given as a subcutaneous injection, caffeine citrate gr 4 or five grains by mouth, preferably before the quinine is administered.



Otherwise, symptomatic treatment is indicated *e.g.* large doses of bicarbonate of soda or if necessary adrenaline for the vomiting

**Plasmochin**—The common mild toxic effects are cyanosis, gastric pain, slight jaundice, and more rarely hæmoglobinuria. These were commonly experienced when the large therapeutic doses of 0.09 gramme daily were given, with the therapeutic doses now recommended especially as the drug is usually given with quinine which appears to have an antagonistic action, even these mild symptoms are rare there are however cases of individual idiosyncrasy where these symptoms follow small doses. The cyanosis results from the formation of methæmoglobin.

There is still considerable misunderstanding amongst members of the medical profession regarding the place of plasmochin in malaria treatment, and instances of gross overdosage are not uncommon. The following incident illustrates the dangers of self medication—

A planter living in a malarious district took a tablet of quino-plasmochin (containing 0.01 gramme of plasmochin) daily for two years as a prophylactic measure (not one hopes on medical advice as it would be useless in this capacity). During this time he remained quite free from fever. When he obtained a fresh supply he was given tablets of plasmochin simplex by mistake these tablets contained 0.02 gramme of plasmochin. He noticed that the tablets were smaller than those he had been taking and proceeded to double the dose that is to take two tablets at a time. He then had an attack of malaria and by way of treatment he decided to take his two tablets three times a day. Thus in the place of the original 0.01 gramme daily he was now taking 0.12 gramme of plasmochin and he continued to do this until he became seriously ill.

**Atebrin**—Although toxic effects do occasionally follow atebrin administration, there is much misunderstanding on the subject.

Almost without exception all drugs that are therapeutically active are toxic. Toxicity must therefore be considered relatively—the dose administered and the person to whom it is administered. There is strong evidence that atebrin given in the ordinary therapeutic doses is not toxic to the ordinary individual, though occasionally a patient who has some idiosyncrasy to the drug will show special symptoms.

This personal idiosyncrasy may be found with any drug but the practitioner naturally wants to know how often these susceptible individuals are likely to crop up in his practice.

General experience indicates that mild symptoms occur in about 3 per cent of those treated with the ordinary effective course, and that an increase in the individual or total dosage will lead to a greater frequency of such incidents. With ordinary dosage the more severe instances will probably occur less than once in a thousand cases, and the really serious ones not once in ten thousand. Therefore, it will be seldom that the practitioner, who keeps to the ordinary dosage will encounter in his whole experience anything but the mildest by effects and these should not deter him from using a valuable drug. At the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine, though we have had patients who have come into hospital for treatment on account of suggestive symptoms following the administration both of atebrin and of plasmochin, we have treated many hundreds of patients with atebrin during the last 10 years and in none of these have any serious symptoms followed.

The actual and reputed by effects can be classified as follows—

(i) *The result of a misconception e.g.* yellow colour mistaken for jaundice.

(ii) *Symptoms really due to malaria itself, e.g.* gastro intestinal or cerebral disturbances, hæmoglobinuria.

(iii) *Symptoms following overdosage*, as noted below in (iv) and (v) in—(a) patients who have undertaken treatment themselves, (b) patients who have been first treated by a doctor and then continued treatment themselves, and (c) patients whose doctors have wrongly advised them through ignorance

(iv) *Mild by-effects which cannot harm the patient but about which the doctor should warn him*, e.g. (a) yellow discoloration, particularly of the skin, distinguished from jaundice by relative freedom of the sclerotics, and (b) a 'knocked out' feeling (general lassitude) due to reduction in hæmoglobin which is dependent on destruction of parasitized red cells (it does not occur in the uninfected person receiving atabrin)

(v) *Personal idiosyncrasy following ordinary dosage*, e.g. gastric pains, headaches, giddiness, anorexia, hæmoglobinuria, epileptiform fits and psychosis

Hæmoglobinuria is more usually associated with plasmochin administration

Epileptiform fits have been reported—the consequence was not serious and evidence that they were actually caused by the drug was not complete. Cases of temporary psychosis are reported from time to time—a series of such cases were reported from Malaya (Neave-Kingsbury, 1934) where an enormous number of people have been treated by the drug. The author has seen only two instances in his personal experience

(vi) It is known that plasmochin in large doses will give rise to symptoms (*vide supra*), it is suggested that the addition of plasmochin in even small doses, increases the toxicity of atabrin

**General management of a case**—Malaria not being a disease of the modern metropolis but of the tropical jungle, recommendations to treat it by putting the patient to bed in a high-ceilinged well-ventilated room with a night and a day nurse in attendance may not seem very reasonable to the practitioner who has to treat the vast majority of his patients where they lie, stand, or even march, and where the specific treatment will be the only thing that he can possibly afford to consider. Nevertheless, the message that such recommendations convey is the right one, namely, that the potentialities for serious development of the malarial attack should always be kept in mind, and that therefore the patient should, whenever possible, be put to bed and watched carefully for serious developments. The room should be darkened and in the choice of clothing and bedding the drenching sweats that the patient may suffer should be remembered. If circumstances do not permit these to be changed frequently, then only flannel clothing and woollen blankets should be allowed, on the other hand, if proper nursing is available these are unnecessary and will not add to the patient's personal comfort.

The diet should be light and during the febrile period only fluids should be given, these should include plenty of glucose. The bowels should be kept open daily by giving six quarter-grain doses of calomel at half-hour intervals, followed by salts in the morning at first and subsequently salts in the morning when necessary. Aspirin and caffeine can be given for headache, or, if these fail to relieve it, phenobarbitone.

There is a popular theory that quinine should not be given at the height of the fever, there is no foundation for this, and specific treatment should be given immediately its administration is decided upon. Unless there is serious doubt about the diagnosis the result of the blood examination should not be awaited. At one time, a great deal was made of the

necessity of administering the drug at the moment of sporulation, in order to catch the merozoites before they find their way into new corpuscles, the evidence that the parasites are more susceptible at this stage is not very convincing and certainly nothing should be sacrificed in order to give the drug at this particular moment, better results will be obtained by maintaining a regular dosage

A return to full diet can be allowed immediately the fever is controlled, and in fact, in the majority of cases from this point no further restrictions need be imposed on the patient but much will depend on other factors *e.g.* his age, the severity of the attack and the degree of debility he has suffered and the conditions to which he proposes to return, he may also have to continue his specific treatment (*vide supra*) and he must be informed regarding the possibilities of relapse

If the patient has become at all anæmic during the attack—this is by no means always the case—the appropriate treatment should be given for the anæmia. In the ordinary attack of malaria there has been no actual loss of iron from the body, but nevertheless possibly because of previously-existing iron deficiency so common in the tropics iron given in large doses will usually improve the blood picture. The rational treatment is with liver extract, either by injection or by the mouth, and autolysed yeast products such as marmite. In the absence of facilities for accurate blood examination, treatment for both microcytic, *i.e.* iron, and macrocytic anæmia, *i.e.* liver extract and marmite, should be given. A useful prescription for the former is —

R Ferrous sulphate	grains 6	Liquor arsenicalis	minims 2
*Quinine sulphate	2	Dilute sulphuric acid	" 5
Magnesium sulphate	60	Peppermint water to one ounce	
To be taken three times a day			
* Omit at present in interest of economy			

The treatment of the special case — It is scarcely possible to lay down hard and-fast rules and to provide for all contingencies in the treatment of any disease, and this is particularly true of malaria with its great variety of manifestations, special mention must however be made of the treatment of the pernicious forms of malaria, the cerebral and the algid forms. In both these forms prompt action is necessary to save the patient a life and, even when facilities for blood examination are present it may not be advisable to await the confirmation of the blood film, this does not apply if there is any real doubt about the diagnosis as it only takes a few minutes to make and stain a film. In any case, the film should be taken for later examination if immediate examination is not possible. Oral administration will probably be out of the question and some parenteral method will have to be adopted. Atebrin in the form of the soluble atebrin musonate, is the drug of choice, this should be given intravenously in a dose of 0.125 gramme and repeated twice at one hour's intervals or intramuscularly as a single dose of 0.375 gramme. (The large dose is often given intravenously, but a few instances of ill effects have been reported.)

If atebrin, or its equivalent, is not available the next choice is quinine, 10 grains (0.6 gramme) of some soluble salt dissolved in 20 c.c.m. of saline and given intravenously. Finally, if for any reason (*e.g.* the absence of a suitable syringe or of sufficient sterile solvent, or the difficulty of finding a suitable vein) the quinine cannot be given intravenously it must be given intramuscularly, with the necessary precautions (*vide supra*). This dose should be repeated within a few hours if the acute symptoms do not subside.

It is possible that the circumstances may necessitate the parenteral route being used on the following day, for example, if vomiting occurs or persists, but by the third day it will, in almost every case, be possible to change to oral administration. This should be done at the earliest possible moment and the usual course completed.

**Chronic malaria**—The treatment to prevent relapses has already been discussed, and when relapses do occur, or the patient suffers a succession of infections, the treatment must be repeated. The patient with chronic malarial cachexia may, or may not, respond to the ordinary course of treatment, and in most cases there will only be a slight diminution in the size of the spleen. In these circumstances, the treatment known as Ascoli's treatment is certainly worth trying, this consists in the daily intravenous administration of adrenaline. The doses must be very small, or serious reactions will occur, the first dose should be 1/100th of a milligramme, that is, 0.01 c cm of the usual 1 in 1,000 solution, and to measure this accurately, even with a tuberculin syringe, dilution with normal saline will be necessary. Subsequent doses should be 2/100ths, 3/100ths etc up to 1/10th, this last dose should be repeated up to about 15 times, making a total of 25 injections. In a suitable case the effect on the spleen is remarkable and sometimes a spleen that was two inches below the costal margin will disappear under the ribs in two or three minutes, to return to its previous size in about half an hour. In course of time the diminution in size becomes permanent. The Ascoli treatment should be combined with oral administration of the cinchona alkaloids to obtain the maximum and most permanent results.

Another method for reducing the size of the spleen is the intramuscular injection of sterile fat-free milk, at least 12 injections, from 2 c cm to 10 c cm, twice weekly.

**The pregnant woman**—The importance of giving the pregnant woman adequate treatment cannot be over-emphasized. Whenever possible it is best to give atabrin, or its equivalent, but failing this, quinine can be given in modified dosage. A dose of 20 grains of quinine will sometimes precipitate labour (quinine is used for this purpose) but doses of 5 grains are safe, and the full course should be given in 5-grain doses. It is a common obstetric practice in highly malarious countries to give a course of anti-malarial treatment in every case shortly before labour is due, as a routine measure even in the absence of evidence of malaria infection.

#### PROGNOSIS

This must be considered from a number of different points of view, the immediate response to treatment, the chances of relapse, the immediate mortality, the indirect mortality, and the general effect on the health of the individual.

Prognosis will depend on the species and strain of parasite, the nutrition of the patient and his previous experience of malaria, the treatment given, and complications.

There are considerable differences in the virulence of the malaria strains in different localities, no general rule can be applied, but in peninsular India the strains are generally of low virulence, whereas in the Himalayan districts they may be much more virulent. The first attack of malaria is always likely to be serious, and the seriousness usually decreases with each successive attack, provided the attacks are well spaced; further, an attack is likely to be more serious in a new-comer to a locality, as he is not immune to local strains.

When treatment is immediately available no one should die as the result of malaria alone but when a patient is first seen already unconscious his chances of recovery will be in the inverse ratio to the length of time that he has been unconscious and of the further delay in administering treatment

In the partially immune adequate treatment will usually control the attack within 48 hours that is to say given first during one paroxysm in a single tertian infection it will control the next paroxysm but in the non-immune it will usually fail to do so though controlling subsequent paroxysms. Malignant tertian infection will often resist treatment for four or five days (see figure 16), if the fever lasts longer than five days the efficacy of the treatment should be investigated (see p 101) and/or the diagnosis reviewed

The highest rate of immediate mortality is caused by *P. falciparum* (malignant tertian) infection it is particularly fatal in the infant and young child, and in the pregnant woman. *P. vivax* (benign tertian) and to a less extent *P. malariae* (quartan) infections will seldom prove immediately fatal even when no treatment is given

On the other hand relapses after adequate treatment are less common in malignant tertian malaria

Benign tertian malaria is probably little short of malignant tertian in the seriousness of its indirect effects especially on account of its marked tendency to relapse about 70 per cent of primary attacks relapse after an ordinary course of quinine

Quartan infections fall between malignant and benign tertian both in the severity of the attack and in the liability to relapse. Kidney complications are said to be most common in quartan malaria but they also occur in malignant tertian

Anemia is more likely to follow *P. falciparum* infections. The failure of the blood picture to return to normal rapidly is usually an indication that some infection still remains and that a relapse may be expected. However when the patient is in a state of malnutrition liver extract will often be required to bring the blood count back to normal even though the infection has been eradicated

In a healthy well nourished person who receives adequate treatment convalescence is short and return to full activity may be expected within a week or ten days should frequent attacks or relapses occur at short intervals the period of convalescence will be considerably lengthened and still further so if the attacks are complicated by any bowel disease that interferes with nutrition

*P. ovale* infections are always mild and seldom relapse

### PREVENTION

To appreciate the possibilities of malarial prophylaxis the reader must turn back to page 64 and consider the factors that determine malaria incidence. If the cycle can be broken or even sufficiently weakened at any point malaria will be prevented

The methods by which the cycle may be broken can be discussed under the same four headings —

- A The malaria parasite
- B The mosquito vector
- C Man
- D The links between B and C

*A The malaria parasite*—In theory, the malaria parasite might be attacked (i) in the mosquito, or (ii) in man, we will consider how far it is possible to translate this into practice

(i) It is conceivable that, without destroying the mosquitoes, by the alteration of the local vegetation on which they feed, the mosquitoes' (non-blood) food might be made to affect adversely the malaria parasite in the insects' gut. Some work on these lines has been done, *e.g.* d'Herelle (1924) suggested that coumarin in clover might act in this way but the suggestion has been experimentally refuted by Bruce Mayne (1930), and conversely a suggestion has been made about the plant *pistia*, namely, that it favours the development of the parasite, but nothing definite has been established.

This theoretical method of malaria control has a popular appeal which opportunist scientists readily take advantage of to intrigue non-medical administrators, and much valuable time is wasted in refuting unscientifically based claims, so far all work on these lines has been entirely without result.

(ii) In man, the parasite can be destroyed by means of drugs at any but the sporozoite stage.

Drug prophylaxis may be considered under two headings, *individual* and *community*.

The question of individual prophylaxis has been discussed above (p. 100) and it has been shown that clinical prophylaxis can be achieved but not true *crusul* prophylaxis.

A malaria-infected individual is a danger to the community. The ordinary treatment for malaria with the cinchona alkaloids or the atabrin group of drugs leads to the destruction of the asexual forms, but does not *directly* affect the sexual forms, at any rate in malignant tertian malaria, so that the sexual forms still continue to circulate and are a source of infection to mosquitoes. If the asexual cycle has been broken by treatment, no fresh gametocytes will be formed and in time those in the circulation will die out. Therefore, though eventually this treatment will lead to the disappearance of the gametocytes, so much mischief will meanwhile have been done that as a practical measure of malaria control it is useless.

On the other hand, the plasmochin group of drugs have a direct effect on the gametocytes and even a small dose of plasmochin, such as 0.01 g. twice daily for three days, will destroy the gametocytes or at least make them non-viable. But if the patient still has an active infection, more gametocytes will be formed, so it is necessary first to destroy the parasites of the asexual cycle by treatment with cinchona or atabrin, and then to destroy the gametocytes by means of plasmochin.

The circumstances in which community drug prophylaxis is likely to be completely effective are very few. The main difficulty will arise in a mixed community where there are children, for children are prolific gametocyte producers, and it is often impossible to bring them within the scope of any scheme of treatment. For a scheme to be a complete success every single individual must be treated. Again, the community should be an isolated one, and new arrivals should be subjected to treatment before they are allowed to reside with the established community.

Drug prophylaxis is expensive, both in cost of the drug and in the labour involved. A 'blanket' treatment of the whole community will have

to be carried out, at first at frequent intervals. The results will not be immediately apparent for at the commencement of the scheme the mosquitoes that are going to produce the human infections or re infections during the next month or so are already infected. Later, it will be possible to reduce the frequency of the blanket treatments but the treatment of all those who suffer from an attack of malaria, or who show gametocytes in their blood, must be continued.

Therefore, before a scheme of drug prophylaxis is undertaken one should be satisfied that (i) no other method of prophylaxis is practicable in the circumstances, (ii) the community is sufficiently isolated (a) geographically, to ensure that there will be no infiltration of infected mosquitoes from outside, and (b) socially to make it possible to prevent casual night visitors and to control permanent immigrants (iii) it will be possible to bring every man, woman and child living within the locality into the operation of the scheme, (iv) the cost for the continuance of the measure can be met from the funds available and (v) if complete success is achieved the results will be worth this cost.

Whilst the occasions on which it will be worth carrying out a full dress scheme of drug prophylaxis may be rare, whenever possible advantage should be taken of the fact that plasmochin destroys gametocytes, in private houses, hospitals, and other institutions even if other measures of protection are carried out, great care should be taken that after every attack of malaria amongst the inmates or servants the blood is cleared of gametocytes, and that new arrivals from malarious places are subjected to a routine course of treatment. The greatest danger is from servants and their children.

In conjunction with other anti malarial schemes it is always worth giving plasmochin, and some workers have advocated a modified form of 'blanket' treatment in conjunction with anti mosquito measures but it is very doubtful if in most circumstances the results are worth the additional cost of such a measure.

On the other hand, spray-killing of adult mosquitoes will obviously be a very desirable adjuvant measure, particularly at the commencement of a scheme of community drug prophylaxis.

*B The mosquito vector*—This is most vulnerable either in the adult or in the larval stage, but the large majority of the measures adopted against the mosquito in the latter stage will also destroy the ova and the pupæ.

*Anti larval measures*—The methods adopted can be discussed under the following headings—

(i) *Elimination of unnecessary collections of water*, these will mostly be of a casual nature and the result of general untidiness, and will include water collected in old tin cans, broken chatties, coconut shells, blocked rain water gutters, holes in trees and rocks, holes in the ground (hoof marks), and disused water supply and drainage apparatus of all sorts, e.g. flushing tanks, wells, and ditches and around hydrants and water taps.

(ii) *The avoidance of the construction of man made breeding places*, borrow pits at the sides of roads and railways are the classical example, but there are numerous other ways in which engineers make unnecessary water collections.

(iii) *The control of treatment of necessary local water collections*, of these, common examples are cisterns, wells, fire buckets and fountains and ornamental water.

(iv) *The elimination or treatment of large scale but avoidable collections of water*, these may be due to water-logging, natural or brought

about by interference with natural drainage by the building of railways, roads, etc., or may consist of irregular collections of water in dead rivers or in river beds during the drier seasons of the year

(v) *The control of larval breeding in large essential collections of water, lakes, reservoirs and tanks, rivers, irrigation channels and streams, drainage channels, and rice fields*

In the case of water collections of the first three groups, it is not absolutely essential first to consider whether they are the source of mosquito vectors, though the information will be of value for the other reasons, because in any case they will breed other mosquitoes which may carry other diseases and are at the least a cause of annoyance to man. The methods of dealing with these will usually be obvious. Where they cannot be eliminated, they should be dealt with in other ways, wells and cisterns must, for example, be kept covered, or the water emptied periodically, in many cantonments in India a 'dry day' is instituted once a week, on this day all uncovered collections of water must be emptied

Water collections of the last two groups present the real problems of malaria control by anti-larval measures about which so much has been written, it will only be possible here to enumerate some of the methods that have been adopted, and readers must refer to the many useful books on this subject for details (e.g. Covell, 1941)

The methods of eliminating the large collections of water or controlling breeding in them are almost without exception expensive, and it is therefore first essential to make sure that these potential breeding places are actually the source of mosquito vectors and are an important factor in the malaria incidence in the locality. It will be necessary to find out what species breed in these waters at different times of the year, whether these species are recognized vectors, and finally whether they do in this particular locality actually carry malaria, this latter can be found out by catching and dissecting a large number of mosquitoes at the right time of year. This common sense procedure of utilizing accumulated knowledge, to which has been added the results of local investigation, regarding which mosquito species do actually carry malaria, and of only attacking these is often given the status of a new principle in malariology and referred to as species control. It will usually be found that one species of mosquito only is the important vector in a locality, and if this is the case all one's resources can be directed towards making conditions unsuitable for this particular species. Nine times out of ten this measure will be successful in reducing the malaria, on the tenth occasion it may make conditions more suitable for another vector and thereby defeat one's object. This is where the expert's superior knowledge will come in, but where nature is concerned no one is omniscient.

For some of the very worst set-backs in anti malaria campaigns, the responsibility goes to world-famous malariologists who have come to a new country and, without studying local conditions sufficiently or listening to the advice of less famous local malariologists, have tried to apply methods that they had previously employed with success in other countries. It is therefore essential to make a very careful study of local conditions before giving any advice on larval control methods. Each country in the world presents its own particular problems, and if one cannot learn from some local malariologist, one should make a special study of the books or papers based on local experience, although there are many useful books in which the general principles are discussed.



There are numerous methods of draining unnecessary collections of water, and circumstances will dictate which of these is likely to be the most fruitful. Or it may be cheaper to treat the breeding places with larvicides. Permanent waters, rivers, streams, etc., may be made innocuous in a number of different ways by physico-chemical means, e.g. pollution, changing the saline content, silting or muddying by physical means, e.g. removing marginal vegetation (anchorage for larvæ), agitating the surface, increasing the rate of flow, intermittent irrigation, flooding, periodic sluicing or varying the water level, shading or letting in the light by biological means, e.g. changing the flora and fauna, introducing larivorous fish or deterrent aquatic vegetation (largely theoretical) or by poisoning the larvæ or their food supply with oil, chemical poisons, e.g. DDT, Paris green or copper sulphate, or vegetable larvicides, e.g. pyrethrum or derris.

**Anti imago measures**—The principle of this method of control is not simply to reduce the number of mosquitoes, nor even to kill the infective mosquitoes, but to *prevent the local malaria vector from becoming infective by shortening its average duration of life*. The most striking demonstration of its effectiveness is that in all cases when spraying is carried out properly the infectivity rate among mosquitoes immediately drops to nil.

Recently much more attention has been paid to this method, particularly in Europe and cooler countries where the mosquito enters a house and tends to remain there for long periods if left undisturbed, and where it is much easier in closed rooms to destroy them. However, this method has been used extensively in hotter climates even under conditions where it is more difficult to close the rooms on account of the much more open nature of the habitations, and considerable success has been claimed. It is particularly applicable to private houses, barracks, and offices, but can be applied to the huts of the poorer inhabitants. It is also employed usefully in public conveyances, railway carriages, omnibuses, and aeroplanes.

The methods of destruction employed are *stating*, trapping, fumigating, and spraying, the last named usually being the method of choice.

Spray killing of adult mosquitoes is now recognized to be one of the major methods of control in anti malaria campaigns. It is the only one of the anti imago measures of real practical importance. It is the only measure which can have an *immediate* effect on the course of a malaria epidemic which has already started; it is the only anti malaria measure which is universally popular, and it is one of the few anti malaria measures which is likely to have a success in combating rural malaria. It might be said that next to site selection and in special circumstances drug prophylaxis, it is the most important of all anti malaria measures for troops operating under modern war conditions.

Covell considers that the Punjab epidemics provide an excellent opportunity for spray killing of adult mosquitoes. The epidemic units that are organized to meet these epidemics and distribute quinine should be equipped also with sprayers and supplies of pyrethrum spray. Energetic spraying should immediately bring the epidemic under control, and the consequent saving of anti malarial drugs would more than compensate the outlay in sprayers and pyrethrum spray. If the value of the method could be established, village communities might be induced to keep their own sprayers to meet an emergency.

The most effective sprays have a basis of kerosene, and the majority contain pyrethrum; there are many proprietary brands, but a useful and not expensive spray may be made from 19 parts of kerosene and one part of concentrated (2 per cent) extract of pyrethrum.

There are certain advantages in a spray with a watery base; the main ones are lower cost and non-inflammability. The only disadvantage, other than the difficulty—which can be overcome—of preparing a suitable emulsion, is the fact that the droplets are heavier, and therefore the 'mist' does not rise as well as that from the kerosene spray. Russell, Knipe and Rao (1942) have recommended the following spray:—

Twenty pounds of pyrethrum flowers are extracted with 12 gallons of white kerosene. This will make 10 to 11 gallons of concentrated extract, the extract is mixed with water in the proportions of 1 to 7, and 23 grammes of sodium lauryl sulphate (or Gardinol) are added for each gallon of emulsion.

### **Technique of Spraying**

All apertures should be closed as far as possible before spraying, and should remain closed for 20 minutes thereafter. It is however, usually impossible to do this completely, in which case it is necessary to use rather more of the spraying solution. It is more economical in the end to use a greater quantity of spray, rather than to waste time in stopping up apertures with racking, etc. Even when the structure sprayed consists of a thatched roof without sides, numbers of mosquitoes can be killed by directing the spray upwards into the thatch. Before spraying the inside of a hut the outside should be systematically sprayed under the eaves. The sprayer should in all cases be directed upwards.

**Period of spraying**—Systematic spraying should commence a fortnight before the malaria season is expected to start and should be continued throughout the transmission period.

**Time of spraying**—Mosquitoes almost invariably feed during the night. *A. minimus* for instance, usually feeds between midnight and daybreak. After feeding the mosquito remains in a sluggish condition during the early stage of digestion of its blood meal. It is therefore advisable to commence spraying in the early morning as soon as after daybreak as possible.

**Frequency of spraying**—The efficacy of the method is in direct proportion to the frequency with which it is carried out. Where the percentage of infection among the vector species of anophelines is low, good results have been obtained by spraying once a week. In very malarious areas, however, where the infectivity rate among the local mosquitoes is high, it is necessary to spray at least twice, preferably thrice, a week, and at the height of an epidemic the rule should be to spray as often as possible.

**Amount of spray required**—This is about half an ounce per 1000 cubic feet which is about the size of the average one-roomed coolie hut. Allowance must also be made for spraying other suitable anopheline shelters, such as cattle-sheds and store rooms.

**Sprayers**—Power-driven sprayers are the most effective, and are also the most economical in consumption of spray, in labour and in time of spraying. The apparatus used is identical with that employed for the spray painting of motor cars etc. The following models have been found suitable:—

1. De Vilbiss portable petrol-driven power sprayer, type NH-616 1/2 H.P., mounted on trolley, cost about Rs 605/-.

2. De Vilbiss portable electric (universal) sprayer, type NC-615, 1/4 H.P., mounted on trolley, cost about Rs 330/-.

Excellent results can also be obtained by the use of hand sprayers although there is no type at present available which is at the same time effective in operation, durable, easy to operate, and economical in consumption of spray.

### **Freon aerosol "bombs"**

These are small hand grenade like metal containers in which there is a mixture of pyrethrins—1 per cent sesame oil—2 per cent freon (dichloro-difluoro-methane)—97 per cent. Since the vapour pressure of the freon provides the necessary spraying power it is only necessary to remove the cap to operate the spray. Freon is itself harmless to man and mosquito but it acts as a vehicle, it evaporates rapidly and leaves the pyrethrum and oil in a fine aerial suspension. The spray is directed into the corners and towards the roof of the room or hut, about four seconds is required for 1000 cubic feet in a room or military hut rather more in a native hut. One pound of freon will spray effectively 150 000 cubic feet if properly used.

It seems possible that DDT will eventually replace pyrethrum as the insecticide. Pyrethrum will grow in many places in India and so far the Indian-grown flowers have been found to give a higher yield of pyrethrin than the Japanese flowers though not as high as the Kenya plants.

There are probably unexplored biological methods of destroying adult mosquitoes, but none so far suggested has proved of any value whatsoever. A classical example was the erection of a bat tower or 'belfry' to encourage bats which were reputed to feed on mosquitoes, this failed because (i) the bats refused to live in the tower in any numbers, and (ii) those which did, it was found, did not feed on mosquitoes.

**C Man**—The elimination of man would break the malaria cycle. Short of this drastic procedure, it is however possible to take some action under this heading.

**Increasing immunity**—Immunity is seldom complete, but if a community is by previous experience of malaria well immunized against a particular strain—the term *salted* is used in this connection—it will mean that the adult in the community seldom suffers from an infection heavy enough to cause a febrile reaction or to lead to the formation of any considerable number of gametocytes, he will thus not himself become a casualty nor will he be a prolific source of infection to the mosquitoes in the locality. In this way, immunity acts as a brake on the intensity of the malaria incidence in any community and any measure that raises this immunity is an anti-malarial measure, just as, conversely, anything that lowers it is a malariogenic factor.

A method of malaria control, mainly practised in Italy, is known as *bonificazione* or *bonification*. This includes increasing the immunity of the population by raising their standard of living and treating the sick, as well as other methods of malaria control, such as irrigation and drainage (see figure 23).

Other measures of control under this heading will include the careful selection of labour forces so that immune populations are not mixed with non immune, and children are excluded as far as possible.

The question of employment of *salted* labour is a very complicated one. Some employers of labour advocate it strongly and others criticize it. The ideal labour force in a malarious district consists of the locally-recruited labourers that are partly immunized against all local strain. Labourers recruited from a malarious district may be partly, but will not be completely, immune to local strains, and further they will bring their own strains with them to which local or other imported labourers are not immune (*vide* p. 73). Therefore, if labour from more than one place has to be recruited, their sleeping quarters should be kept some distance apart.



Figure 23 Decrease in mortality from malaria in Italy over a forty year period (Hackett 1937)

**D The links between the mosquito (B) and man (C)**—Provided that the mosquito vector can be kept away from man, malaria will not occur. The methods of preventing or reducing the chances of, this contact may be considered under the headings *general* and *personal*.

**General**—In the choice of sites of towns, villages, settlements, coolie lines, camps or even houses, the question of the proximity to uncontrollable mosquito-breeding grounds, as well as to uncontrollable human reservoirs of infection, should always be considered. Whenever possible the opinion of an expert malariologist should be obtained. In the past, millions of pounds could have been saved by this ample precaution, and mistakes are still being made. Unless he has made a special study of malariology and had some personal experience, a medical officer should refuse to express an opinion on a matter of this kind, and, whenever any considerable amount of money is involved, he will be well advised in any case to insist on the opinion of an expert malariologist being obtained.

Small bodies of men, hunting parties, prospectors and engineers, or 'commando' troops, going into malaria-infected country should be warned to avoid native villages for their temporary night halts as they would a plague-stricken village, they should also view with equal suspicion any clearing in bush or jungle which has obviously recently been the site of an encampment.

Where the village or residence is already established there are some biological methods of interception that have been advocated, these include the planting of alleged deterrent vegetation, *e.g.* neem and eucalyptus trees, castor-oil plants, lavender and clover, and the use of cattle to divert the attentions of the mosquitoes from their human sources of blood supply, *i.e.* zooprophylaxis (*see* p 70 Zoophilism). In practice, all these biological methods have proved disappointing.

Another measure is the screening of barracks, hospitals, and houses. In some countries this is practised extensively and its popularity is increasing, it must always be considered, whenever it is practicable, as an additional measure. Dr D P Curry, who has directed the mosquito control work for many years in the Panama Canal Zone, recently wrote, 'in spite of all our sanitation, we still must insist on screened living quarters, and screened offices for those persons who must work at night'. It does not add much to the cost of a building to include screening in its construction. Combined with systematic spray-killing, screening may be considered a major method, in places where more comprehensive methods of malaria prevention are impracticable. It is however necessary that the building should be a well constructed one and for this reason the method has its limitations. Copper-wire netting is the most generally useful, except near the sea, it should be 14 mesh, 20 to 30 gauge (S W G), this gives an aperture of about 0.056 inch, which will keep out all mosquitoes in ordinary circumstances and does not interfere too much with the entrance of fresh air.

Other points in the construction of buildings are the avoidance of dark corners in which mosquitoes can lurk during the day and the provision of electric fans, the latter is perhaps verging on the personal methods of prevention.

The personal methods of protection include the use of repellents for smearing over the uncovered parts of the body, the spraying of ankles with one of mosquito-killing sprays (*vs*), mosquito boots or other simpler means of protecting the legs, *e.g.* a pillow case tied round the knees whilst sitting at table, veils and gloves, and mosquito nets.

Innumerable repellents have been suggested from time to time, but in India pyrethrum was preferred before the introduction of the new insecticide, DDT, which will probably prove cheaper.

Covell recommends the following formula —Extract of pyrethrum (2 per cent), 20 c cm, Oil of citronella 5 c cm, Gum tragacanth powder 4 grammes, Water, 80 c cm

*Note.*—If a stronger extract of pyrethrum can be obtained it should be used. If the European tragacanth is available the quantity should be 5 to 6 grammes.

A great improvement has recently been made in repellents and some of the best in use today are effective for 24 hours with one application.

The principle adopted is to adsorb the insecticide on to some inert clay binder so that it does not evaporate too rapidly or become absorbed by the skin and then to incorporate it in a shellac paint. The insecticide substances used are (a) dimethyl phthalate (b) Indalone and (c) Rutgers 612. (a) is the cheapest and (c) the most effective. The best proportions for use in paints are about a b c 2 1 2.

Mosquito nets 'should be 25/26 mesh of 30/s cotton'. These trade terms will mean little to the ordinary man; they are arrived at by fantastic methods of calculation with which the reader need not burden his memory. They do not mean that there are 25 holes to the inch linear or square, actually, a net of this specification has about 12 holes to the linear inch and 150 to the square inch.

Similarly, the mosquitoes must be prevented from feeding on an infected person, and in a hospital or other institution the patient suffering from malaria should always be made to use a mosquito net as a measure of protection for the community.

**Amelioration of the effects of malaria.**—In certain circumstances it has been found that the practical difficulties of preventing malaria are so great that preventive measures are scarcely worth attempting. In these circumstances the question of organized treatment to ameliorate the effects of malaria should be considered. Bonification referred to above is really a measure of this nature, though it may achieve mosquito control as a side line.

In many places in India there is little hope of eradicating malaria and the next best measure is to provide cheap or free treatment for the individual sufferer, not with any hope of actually eradicating the disease but in order to mitigate the damage that the infection does. This is especially true in the epidemic areas in the Punjab where for a short time during the year conditions may be extremely favourable for transmission and where anti-larval measures would be impossible or prohibitively costly. By studying climatic conditions that precede these epidemics sanitarians have learnt to foretell epidemics and, with the help of special epidemic units, now arrange for the mass treatment of the population by free distribution of cinchona alkaloids and by other means. The possibilities of combining this treatment campaign with spray killing of mosquitoes is discussed above.

**Malaria Surveys.**—Before undertaking or recommending any procedure designed to control malaria, it is essential that one should have all the obtainable data at one's disposal and in nearly every case some form of malarial survey will have to be undertaken. By a malaria survey one ascertains the extent to which malaria is present in the locality, or, if a large area is involved, in different parts of that area; how it affects different sections of the population, the time of year when it is most prevalent, what are the vectors, what are their sporozoite rates and where they breed; and in fact all that can be ascertained about the epidemiology of malaria under the various headings under which it has been discussed above.

The extent of malarial endemicity can be judged from the 'parasite rate' or the 'spleen rate', or preferably both. To find out the parasite rate, thick and thin films will have to be taken of a representative group of the population, and examined by the methods described above, from this examination the infestation rate and the average parasite count can be calculated, of the whole and of different groups of the population, but there are many refinements in this type of work and the reader is referred to one of the books devoted to this subject (*e.g.* Covell, 1939).

The calculation of the spleen rate has similarly been reduced to a fine art (Covell\*, *loc. cit.*), but there are simpler methods that give invaluable information. The spleen rate is usually taken from children between the ages of two and ten years, as it has been shown that between these years the spleen's reaction to malarial infection is more constant than at other ages. The children should be lined up against a wall and the sizes of their spleens ascertained by palpation. The children are placed in five classes according to the sizes of their spleens, class I, not palpable—o, class II palpable but not beyond the costal margin—p, class III, up to three-fingers' breadth below the costal margin—+, class IV, larger than this but not to the navel—++ , class V, reaching the navel or beyond—+++ . The important point is the percentage that shows palpable splenic enlargement, this is known as the 'child spleen rate'. As far as India is concerned, different areas have been classified according to the child spleen rate, as follows —

Healthy areas—below 10 per cent

Areas of moderate endemicity—from 10 to 25 per cent

Areas of high endemicity—between 25 and 50 per cent

Areas of hyperendemicity—constantly 50 per cent or over

In conclusion the successful control of malaria requires a very wide knowledge and a very open mind. Practical experience, even in one locality, is useful, but, unless the knowledge thus gained is applied intelligently, it becomes mere stupid prejudice and will be a handicap rather than a help. Every possibility should be considered before any one method of control is decided upon. The experience in malaria control of those on the spot should never be ignored, but it should be examined critically to make sure that the methods have not become unintelligent routine.

The economic aspect will always be paramount in this imperfect world. One's first thoughts must be, how much will it cost and will it pay? An accurate answer to the first half of the question should be given, but for the second a long view may have to be taken. A government should be satisfied with a promising long-term policy, even if it is likely to be ten years before the good effects are felt, a commercial concern naturally expects a quicker return though they may be content to wait a year or two, but on the other hand, a commander of an army, or an engineer in charge of the construction of a railway, road or bridge, may have little interest in what happens next year and only be concerned with next week or next month.

---

\* Christopher's method has many advantages including the important one of allowing for differences in the size of the children and is very easy in practice though from the description it appears complicated. It consists in marking the 'apex' of the spleen taking two measurements only, the nipple umbilicus and the umbilicus-apex with a centimetre tape measure, and applying a correction obtained from a table. For further details reference should be made to Government of India *Health Bulletin* No. 14.

## MALARIA THERAPY

The origin of this form of treatment was the observation that though syphilis is as common in most malarious countries as it is in the temperate zones neurosyphilitic conditions are comparatively rare in the former. The first observation on this subject was made by Wagner von Jauregg a Viennese physician in 1887 though it was nearly 30 years later before any general attention was directed to this subject by the publication of the results of his practical trials in the treatment of general paralysis of the insane by malaria.

This form of treatment attracted a very great deal of attention in Europe and in England a 'moquito farm' was organized under the auspices of the Ministry of Health for the purpose of conveying malaria infection easily and safely to those who were to be treated by this measure.

Besides being a very successful form of treatment—about half the patients suffering from general paralysis thus treated were considerably improved by the treatment—it provided us with a very valuable opportunity for studying experimentally certain aspects of malaria transmission and treatment. The most important workers in this field have been James and later Sinton in England, Cuica in Roumania and Boyd and later Shannon in the United States.

The infection may be transmitted by the agency of laboratory bred mosquitoes directly by their bite or by dissecting out the salivary glands and inoculating the sporozoites or by the injection of infected blood (see p 71). In the latter case 2 to 5 c.c.m. of defibrinated blood from a patient with malaria is inoculated intramuscularly into the subject to be treated. Care must be taken that the donor has no other transmissible disease e.g. syphilis or a malaria infection other than the one that one wishes to transmit. The choice of procedure will depend on the circumstances. There is however a considerable difference in the nature of the attack produced: the incubation period of inoculation malaria is shorter, the course tends to be milder, there are fewer early and no late relapses and it is much more easily controlled by treatment.

*Plasmodium vivax* is the infection of choice but where the patient is or has become immune to all the available strains of *P. vivax* it may be permissible to inoculate *P. malariae* or even certain benign strains of *P. falciparum*. Both *P. ovale* and the miasm parasite *P. knowlesi* have also been used. Several different strains of each species are used. In the United States the strains in most common use are the McCoy strain of benign tertian, the Long and the McLenden strains of malignant tertian and the St. Elizabeth strain of quartan malaria.

In malarious countries where more than one species of malaria parasite is prevalent it is almost—in fact one might say quite—impossible to be certain that the proposed donor has only one species of parasite in his blood and therefore very great vigilance must be exercised when the patient develops malaria to identify the species.

An example of this difficulty occurred recently in the author's experience. A patient with an apparently pure benign tertian infection was admitted to hospital as a source of malarial infection for another patient with tabes dorsalis. His blood was examined repeatedly for about a week by means of thick film, thin film and the cultural methods and only benign tertian parasites were found. However on the day that his blood was to be given to the tabetic patient a quartan parasite was found so that the inoculation was postponed while further examinations were carried out. A few more quartan parasites were found but the infection was still mainly benign tertian. As the infection was showing signs of dying out inoculation was not delayed further. Twelve days after the inoculation the tabetic patient developed fever which was found to be due to a heavy malignant tertian infection and within a day or two very energetic anti-malarial treatment had to be given to save his life.

The patient should be allowed to have 8 to 12 paroxysms before the infection is terminated by anti-malarial treatment. If the rigors are too severe and occur daily the severity of the attack can be controlled by neo-arphenamine, a dose of 0.05 to 0.10 grammes is usually sufficient (Winckel 1941). Thiobismol given intramuscularly in a dose of 0.1 grammes 16 to 25 hours after a rigor will eliminate the brood causing that paroxysm and can therefore be used to convert a diurnal into a tertian fever in a debilitated patient. In trophozoite-induced infections the attack can be finally terminated by 5 grams of quinine three times a day for five days.

## REFERENCES

- ACTON, H W (1910) .. The rationale of quinine prophylaxis *Indian Med Gaz*, **45**, 283
- BOTD M F (1941) .. A symposium on human malaria with special reference to North America and the Caribbean Region Publication of the American Association for the Advancement of Science No 15
- BOTD, M F and STRATMAN-THOMAS, On duration of infectiousness in Anophelines harbouring *Plasmodium vivax* *Amer J Hyg*, **19**, 539
- BOTD, M F, STRATMAN-THOMAS, On duration of infectiousness in Anophelines harbouring *Plasmodium falciparum* *Amer J Trop Med*, **16**, 157
- W K, and KITCHEN, S F (1936)
- CHRISTOPHERS, S R (1925) Two malarial surveys connected with industrial projects in certain very highly malarious localities in India *Ind Jour Med Res*, **13**, 313
- COVELL, G (1939) *How to do a malaria survey* Health Bulletin No 14 Malaria Bureau, No 6 Fourth edition Manager of Publications, Delhi
- Idem* (1941) *Malaria control by anti-mosquito measures* Thacker Spink and Co (1933), Ltd Calcutta
- DARLING S T (1909) Transmission of malarial fever in the canal zone by anopheles mosquitoes *J Amer Med Assoc*, **53**, 2051
- DAS GUPTA, B M (1939) Malarial infection in the placenta and transmission to the fetus *Indian Med Gaz*, **74**, 397
- EDWARDS F W (1932) *Diptera Family Culicidae Genera Insectorum* Fasc 194 L Desmet-Verteneuil, Brussels
- FIELD, J W (1941) Further note on method of staining malarial parasites in thick blood films *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg*, **35**, 35
- FIELD, J W, NIVEN, J C, and The prevention of malaria in the field by the use of quinine and atabrin *League of Nations Bull Health Organization*, **6**, 238
- HOOCKIN, E P (1937)
- GRANETT P (1940) Studies of mosquito repellents I Test procedure and method of evaluating test data *J Econ Ent*, **33**, 563 Abstract (*Rev App Ent*, Ser B, 1941, **29**, 65)
- HACKETT, L W (1937) *Malaria in Europe* Oxford University Press London
- HAGGIS A W (1941) Fundamental errors in early history of cinchona *Bull Hist Med*, **10**, 417 (referred to in *Brit Med Jour*, 1942, **1**, 299)
- D'HERELLE F (1924) Immunity in natural infectious disease Williams and Wilkins Co, Baltimore
- JAMES, S P (1926) .. *Anopheles maculipennis*, three months' infective *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg*, **19**, 278
- JAMES, S P, NICOL, W D, and Clinical and parasitological observations on induced malaria *Proc Roy Soc Med*, **29**, 879
- SHUTE P G (1936)
- KIRKE C C., and BREEDLOVE H E Mosquito-proofing for malaria control from the standpoint of construction costs *Amer J Hyg*, Sect C, **34**, 95
- (1941)
- KINGSBURY, A N (1934) .. Psychoses in cases of malaria following exhibition of atabrin *Lancet*, **ii**, 979



- KITCHEN, S F. (1941) .. The infection in the intermediate host symptomatology, falciparum malaria 'Human Malaria', p 196 Publication of the American Association for the Advancement of Science No 15
- KITCHEN, S F, WEER, E L, and KUPFER, W. H (1939). The influence of malarial infections on the Wassermann and Kahn reactions *J Amer Med Assoc*, **112**, 1443
- LAMPRELL, B A (1940) .. Quinine and atebria in the control of malaria *Indian Med Gaz*, **75**, 266
- LLOYD, R B, NAPIER, L E, and SMITH, R O A (1925) The 'blood meal' of *Phlebotomus argentipes* identified by precipitin antisera *Ind Jour Med Res*, **12**, 811
- LOWE, J (1934) .. Studies in untreated malaria *Indian Med Gaz*, **69**, 16
- MATNE, BRUCE (1930) .. Tests on the effects of Coumarin on the life of the mosquito and the malaria parasite *Ind Jour Med Res* **17**, 963
- MOST, H (1940) .. Malignant malaria among drug addicts epidemiological clinical and laboratory studies *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg* **34**, 139
- NAPIER, L E, BUTCHER, D, and DAS GUPTA, C R (1932) Field experiments with atebria and plasmochin *Indian Med Gaz*, **67**, 186
- NAPIER, L E, and DAS GUPTA, B M (1932) Atebria a synthetic drug for the treatment of malaria *Indian Med Gaz*, **67**, 181
- NOCHT, B, and MAYER, M (1937) *Malaria 4 Handbook of Treatment Parasitology and Prevention* John Bale Sons and Curnow Ltd London
- RUSSELL P F, KNIFE, F W, and RAO T R (1942) A water emulsion of pyrethrum extract for spray killing adult mosquitoes *Indian Med Gaz*, **77**, 477
- SINTON, J A, and GHOSH, B N (1934) Studies of malarial pigment (haemozoin) Part I Investigation of the action of solvents on haemozoin and the spectroscopic appearances observed in the solutions *Rec Mal Survey, India* **4**, 15
- STRICKLAND C, and BAKER, S Y (1939) Early infantile malaria *Brit Med Jour*, **1**, 979
- TROPP, C., and WEISE, W (1933) Untersuchungen über die Ausscheidung von Atebria durch Harn und Faeces *Arch exper Path u Pharmacol*, **170**, 339
- WINCKEL, C W F (1941) . Nevarsphenamine to manage course of fever in therapeutic malaria *J Amer Med Assoc*, **118**, 2680

# BLACKWATER FEVER

	PAGE
DEFINITION .. .. .	124
HISTORICAL .. .. .	124
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	125
<i>Geographical distribution</i> .. .. .	125
<i>Local distribution</i> .. .. .	125
<i>Individual incidence</i> .. .. .	125
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	126
<i>A Predisposing factors</i> .. .. .	126
<i>B Precipitating factors</i> .. .. .	126
<i>The mechanism of hæmolysis</i> .. .. .	126
<i>Theories regarding the cause of blackwater fever</i> .. .. .	127
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	128
<i>Morbid anatomy</i> .. .. .	128
<i>Blood</i> .. .. .	128
<i>Cytology—Biochemistry</i> .. .. .	128
<i>Urine and fæces</i> .. .. .	129
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	129
<i>Prodroma</i> .. .. .	129
<i>Onset</i> .. .. .	129
<i>The course of the disease</i> .. .. .	129
<i>Clinical types</i> .. .. .	130
DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	130
<i>A Hæmoglobinuria</i> .. .. .	130
<i>B Hæmaturia</i> .. .. .	130
<i>C Jaundice</i> .. .. .	130
TREATMENT .. .. .	131
<i>General principles</i> .. .. .	131
<i>Anti-malarial drugs</i> .. .. .	131
<i>Symptomatic 'Specifics'</i> .. .. .	131
<i>Blood transfusion and other hæmatinic treatment</i> .. .. .	132
<i>Diet</i> .. .. .	132
<i>Convalescence</i> .. .. .	132
PREVENTION .. .. .	132
PROGNOSIS .. .. .	132

Definition—Blackwater fever is a special manifestation of malaria, characterized by hæmoglobinuria

The pathology and the clinical picture in this condition are so characteristic and so different from those of the ordinary malarial attack that it is justifiable to consider it as a separate disease entity, though it is now generally accepted that plasmodia are the sole causal organisms

Historical—The main historical interest is that although malaria has been known for twenty-five centuries, with the exception of some doubtful references in Hippocratic medical writings there is no reference to the blackwater syndrome in medical literature until a little over a century ago, when Boyle (1831) referred to it in his *Fever of West Africa*. Scott (1939) draws attention to the fact that the literature of blackwater fever has shown a marked national grouping; about the middle of the century, writers reported the disease in Madagascar and in other French possessions in Africa after another decade the Greeks took up the subject, and these are followed in turn by Italian, American, Dutch (Java), German (1890), and eventually British medical writers

This late historical appearance of the disease has been used to support various claims regarding its aetiology for example that it must be a disease *sui generis* or at least caused by a special plasmodial strain and alternately that it must be due to quinine because quinine came into more general use about the time of the appearance of the disease in medical literature. In view of our knowledge of the epidemiology of blackwater fever, it seems to the present writer that the increase of blackwater fever at the beginning of the last century was associated with the widespread foreign invasion of tropical territory that occurred at this time and that beyond this the observation does not point to any special aetiological factor.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Blackwater fever occurs only in highly endemic malarious countries (or amongst persons who have lived in such countries) and its seasonal incidence is always correlated with the season of highest malaria incidence, so that its epidemiology is the epidemiology of malaria with some special features.

**Geographical distribution**—As it occurs in nearly all the intensely malarious countries in the world, no separate map is necessary, it does not, however, occur further north than 40°N or further south than 20°S. In Europe it is most prevalent in Greece and Macedonia and in southern Italy, along the north African coast as far east as Tripoli, throughout tropical Africa, and in Madagascar, in Palestine and Syria, in the southern states of the U.S.A., in Mexico, Panama, the West Indies, and the northern countries of South America, and in India Burma, Malaya, the East Indies, Siam, French Indo-China, and southern China.

In India, the worst blackwater fever areas are in the Doorgs and Terai (at the foot of the Himalayas), Assam the Chittagong hill tracts, Santal Parganas, Chota Nagpur, and the Madras Presidency, and in Burma in the North and South Shan States.

Whilst these are the localities where the patient acquires his predisposing tendency to blackwater fever, the attack may develop in some non-malarious country, it is quite common for example for those returning from the East to be attacked in London.

**Local distribution**—It occurs mainly in areas where malignant tertian malaria is endemic throughout the year. In India, and in many other countries, it is prevalent where more civilized races come into close contact with primitive peoples, that is to say, on the borders of jungle tracts. In places it also has a local distribution that does not seem to be solely explained by high malaria endemicity, for in other equally malarious districts it does not occur, this has led to the suggestions, (a) that in some local carrier species of mosquito, the malaria parasite undergoes a change which endows it with special toxic properties, or, alternatively, and in the writer's opinion more probably, (b) that some hæmolytic strain of malaria parasite is prevalent locally. 'Blackwater fever houses' have also been reported, these might add support to the above theories, but it has usually been possible to explain them on the grounds of their close proximity to prolific mosquito-breeding sites and/or reservoirs of infection.

**Individual incidence**—In blackwater fever areas, the disease is very rare amongst the local natives, but occurs amongst foreigners, in India, it is common in Europeans and in Indians from the cities. It seldom occurs earlier than one year after the subject's arrival in an endemic area, and is less common after four years' residence except amongst those who have had a previous attack.

People of all ages and both sexes may be attacked

# BLACKWATER FEVER

				PAGE
DEFINITION	..	..	..	124
HISTORICAL	..	..	..	124
EPIDEMIOLOGY	..	..	..	125
Geographical distribution	Local distribution	Individual incidence		125
ETIOLOGY	..	..	..	126
A Predisposing factors	B Precipitating factors			126
The mechanism of hæmolysis	..	..		126
Theories regarding the cause of blackwater fever		..		127
PATHOLOGY	..	..	..	128
Morbid anatomy	..	..	..	128
Blood	..	..	..	128
Cytology—Biochemistry	..	..	..	128
Urine and fæces	..	..	..	129
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	..	..	..	129
Prodroma Onset	The course of the disease			129
Clinical types	..	..		130
DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS	..	..	..	130
A Hæmoglobinuria	B Hæmaturia	C Jaundice		130
TREATMENT	..	..	..	131
General principles	Anti-malarial drugs	Symptomatic	'Specifics'	131
Blood transfusion and other hæmatinic treatment		..		132
Diet Convalescence	..	..		132
PREVENTION	..	..	..	132
PROGNOSIS	..	..	..	132

Definition—Blackwater fever is a special manifestation of malaria, characterized by hæmoglobinuria

The pathology and the clinical picture in this condition are so characteristic and so different from those of the ordinary malarial attack that it is justifiable to consider it as a separate disease entity, though it is now generally accepted that plasmodia are the sole causal organisms

Historical—The main historical interest is that although malaria has been known for twenty-five centuries, with the exception of some doubtful references in Hippocratic medical writings, there is no reference to the blackwater syndrome in medical literature until a little over a century ago, when Boyle (1831) referred to it in his *Fevers of West Africa*. Scott (1939) draws attention to the fact that the literature of blackwater fever has shown a marked national grouping; about the middle of the century, writers reported the disease in Madagascar and in other French possessions in Africa, after another decade the Greeks took up the subject, and these are followed in turn by Italian, American, Dutch (Java), German (1890), and eventually British medical writers

This late historical appearance of the disease has been used to support various claims regarding its aetiology for example that it must be a disease *sui generis* or at least caused by a special plasmodial strain and alternately that it must be due to quinine because quinine came into more general use about the time of the appearance of the disease in medical literature. In view of our knowledge of the epidemiology of blackwater fever, it seems to the present writer that the increase of blackwater fever at the beginning of the last century was associated with the widespread foreign invasion of tropical territory that occurred at this time, and that beyond this the observation does not point to any special aetiological factor.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Blackwater fever occurs only in highly endemic malarious countries (or amongst persons who have lived in such countries) and its seasonal incidence is always correlated with the season of highest malaria incidence so that its epidemiology is the epidemiology of malaria, with some special features.

**Geographical distribution**—As it occurs in nearly all the intensely malarious countries in the world, no separate map is necessary, it does not, however, occur further north than 40°N or further south than 20°S. In Europe it is most prevalent in Greece and Macedonia and in southern Italy, along the north African coast as far east as Tripoli, throughout tropical Africa, and in Madagascar, in Palestine and Syria, in the southern states of the U.S.A., in Mexico, Panama, the West Indies, and the northern countries of South America, and in India, Burma, Malaya, the East Indies, Siam, French Indo China, and southern China.

In India, the worst blackwater fever areas are in the Doorgas and Terai (at the foot of the Himalayas), Assam, the Chittagong hill tracts, Santal Parganas, Chota Nagpur, and the Madras Presidency, and in Burma in the North and South Shan States.

Whilst these are the localities where the patient acquires his predisposing tendency to blackwater fever, the attack may develop in some non-malarious country, it is quite common, for example for those returning from the East to be attacked in London.

**Local distribution**—It occurs mainly in areas where malignant tertian malaria is endemic throughout the year. In India, and in many other countries, it is prevalent where more civilized races come into close contact with primitive peoples, that is to say, on the borders of jungle tracts. In places it also has a local distribution that does not seem to be solely explained by high malaria endemicity, for in other equally malarious districts it does not occur, this has led to the suggestions, (a) that in some local carrier species of mosquito, the malaria parasite undergoes a change which endows it with special toxic properties, or, alternatively, and in the writer's opinion more probably, (b) that some hæmolytic strain of malaria parasite is prevalent locally. 'Blackwater fever houses' have also been reported, these might add support to the above theories, but it has usually been possible to explain them on the grounds of their close proximity to prolific mosquito-breeding sites and/or reservoirs of infection.

**Individual incidence**—In blackwater fever areas, the disease is very rare amongst the local natives, but occurs amongst foreigners, in India, it is common in Europeans and in Indians from the cities. It seldom occurs earlier than one year after the subject's arrival in an endemic area, and is less common after four years' residence except amongst those who have had a previous attack.

People of all ages and both sexes may be attacked.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The ætiological factors must be considered under two headings, (A) *predisposing*, and (B) *precipitating*

Of the predisposing factors, (i), (ii) and (iii) are essential, and (iv) and (v) important additional factors. The incidents that may precipitate an attack can be placed in three groups, one alone is sufficient but there may be a combination of precipitating factors

(A) *Predisposing factors*—(i) A plasmodial infection is the first essential. The disease is nearly always associated with malignant tertian infections but instances have been reported where apparently pure benign tertian or pure quartan infections have given rise to blackwater fever

(ii) Absence of established immunity to all local malaria strains, such as is acquired by indigenous inhabitants of a locality

(iii) Previous subjection to intense malarial infection over a period of at least a year

(iv) Irregular and inadequate treatment of these attacks

(v) A previous attack of blackwater fever, this is evidence of individual susceptibility, for about 10 per cent of blackwater fever subjects suffer a second attack

(B) *Precipitating factors*—(i) Quinine administration. This has a double action as it stimulates the action of the reticulo endothelial cells to destroy parasites and incidentally red cells and quinine itself, especially as an acid salt also has a slight hæmolytic action. The other anti-malarial drugs may act in the same way, but are not so frequently reported as the precipitating factor, possibly because as in the case of atabrin the main action of the drug is a direct one on the malaria parasite itself

(ii) Cold (cf paroxysmal hæmoglobinuria), fatigue (increase of sarcolactic acid), alcohol arsenamine and certain other toxic drugs, and trauma

(iii) X ray applications to the spleen which stimulate the hæmolytic cells of the reticulo endothelial system

The mechanism of hæmolysis—The exact physiological process by which old and worn out red cells are removed from the circulation is a question not yet finally settled, but it is probably an intracellular, rather than an intravascular, process as little unchanged hæmoglobin can be found in the plasma of the general circulation in the normal subject. In malarial infection with the intravascular bursting of the rosette, red cell debris is thrown into the circulation and stimulates the formation of anti bodies including hæmolysins and probably lysolecithins which all play their part in the destruction of the invading parasite and incidentally of a very large number of red cells. Lysolecithins which reduce the protecting blood cholesterol assist the latter process. Repeated attacks work up the sensitivity of the reticulo-endothelial tissues to this hæmolysin production, there is a sudden excessive stimulation and these sensitized tissues respond by an explosive production of hæmolysin which causes the 'hæmoclastic crisis' of blackwater fever. The excessive stimulation may be brought about by a particularly heavy malarial infection, possibly by a new strain of parasite against which the patient has little immunity, or, even in the presence of an ordinary infection, by the taking of quinine, which, we know, acts by stimulating the reticulo endothelial tissues, or by subjection to

cold which assists the action of the hæmolytin already formed (cf paroxysmal hæmoglobinuria)

As a result of this hæmoclastic crisis, an enormous quantity of oxyhæmoglobin (much of which is reduced to methæmoglobin) is thrown into the circulation (hæmoglobinæmia), the reticulo-endothelial cells convert a large amount of this into bilirubin but are unable to cope with this great excess and much of the hæmoglobin remains in the circulation, and is then excreted by the kidneys (hæmoglobinuria), which are damaged in the process. The amount of bilirubin in the blood is also well above the normal, the liver cells are unable to excrete the excess, it is deposited in the tissues, producing jaundice, and, being present in the blood in amounts above the kidney threshold (hyperbilirubinæmia), this too is excreted in the urine (bilirubinuria).

Theories regarding the cause of blackwater fever—Even if we accept the description given above as the mechanism of the attack, it does not really explain why it occurs in some people and not in others. One suggestion is that there are certain biological strains of malaria parasite that lead to the production of a particularly active hæmolytin or lysocæritins in favour of this are certain observations in the epidemiology of the disease mentioned above (e.g. the close association with certain places and particularly with jungle tracts), and the established fact that there are considerable differences in the virulence of different strains of malaria parasite, but against it is the occurrence of blackwater fever in therapeutic malaria—a few instances of which have been reported—where the virulence of the strain used is known. The alternative suggestion, that a benign strain might undergo some biological change during transmission by certain species of mosquito, would also be negatived by the last observation, and otherwise lacks positive supporting evidence.

Some years ago the writer tentatively put forward two suggestions these were based on both epidemiological and experimental evidence (Napier and Campbell 1932). The first was that rapid passage through a series of susceptible hosts raised the virulence of a previously normal strain of malaria parasite and the second, somewhat contradictory to the first that the virulent strains of the plasmodium which are harboured by the immunized people of jungle tracts when transmitted to non-immunes (non immune to that particular strain), caused a virulent infection. In the experiments on which these theories were based by passage of the Simian plasmodium, *Plasmodium knowlesi* (later named as such) from a monkey of the *Silenus rufus* species in which it was dormant and over shadowed by a *P. vivax* infection through a series of *Silenus rufus* monkeys we produced a virulent infection associated with hæmoglobinuria\* in the latter species (and incidentally drew the first attention to this plasmodium species which has played such an important role in experimental malaria ever since).

There is little support for the former theory, but the latter dovetails in with the general theory enunciated above.

Other theories that have been put forward have either been disproved or died through lack of support. These include the theory that it is the result of acidosis enhanced by giving acid salts of quinine, or the excessive formation of lactic acid by muscular exertion, this theory is weakened by the observation that acidosis is not constantly present in blackwater fever. That it is a pure quinine intoxication has now been disproved by the occurrence of blackwater fever in people who have not taken quinine, so frequently that this theory can have few supporters. The finding of

\* This hæmoglobinuria is not strictly comparable to blackwater fever as it is not associated with any hæmoclastic crisis but is simply the result of excessive destruction of red cells by the plasmodium infection possibly combined with a low kidney threshold for hæmoglobin in the host.

though it is not uncommon for urinary secretion to commence again, even after 48 hours, azotæmia ('uræmia') as the result of continued anuria is a common cause of death. Even polyuric cases may prove fatal.

The spleen is usually markedly enlarged and tender (but may be temporarily reduced during an attack as a result of the expulsion of reserve blood), the liver is tender and the gall-bladder may be felt, jaundice appears early, on the second day, and is usually unaccompanied by itching.

Recovery may be rapid, or on the other hand the symptoms may increase and the patient die of heart failure, or cerebral symptoms—irritability, delirium and coma—may appear, in such a case he usually shows early signs of collapse, the breathing becomes Cheyne-Stokes in character and death soon follows.

A marked degree of anæmia, which is usually macrocytic, and general debility are common sequelæ. In some cases blood regeneration takes place very rapidly without any specific treatment, but when the anæmia is definitely macrocytic, it may necessitate vigorous hæmatinic treatment (*vide infra*).

Relapses are common.

**Clinical types**—The recognized special types are (a) the mild (more or less symptomless hæmoglobinuria), (b) the fulminating, (c) the continuous (in which repeated hæmolytic crises occur), (d) the anuric and (e) the hæmorrhagic.

#### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The conditions from which blackwater fever has to be distinguished can be grouped under the following headings—

(a) Hæmoglobinuria caused solely by the taking of quinine or plasmochin (the existence of this condition is now questioned), 'march' hæmoglobinuria, paroxysmal hæmoglobinuria (an interesting condition dependent on the incompatibility of an individual's plasma and red cells due to the presence of a special hæmolysin, the action being precipitated by cold, usually locally applied cold), nocturnal hæmoglobinuria (Marchiafava-Micheli syndrome), syphilitic hæmoglobinuria, hæmoglobinuria caused by poisons such as potassium chlorate or carbolic acid, snake bite, and as a result of specific sensitiveness to certain dietary substances, an example of which is 'favism', a condition simulating blackwater in other symptoms and caused by eating uncooked broad beans (*Vicia faba*) in excess (Luisada, 1941).

Certain drugs and other substances may produce a red coloration in the urine, which could be mistaken for hæmoglobin, for example, beetroot, cochineal and, amongst the drugs, amidopyrin, phenolphthalein, and protosil rubrum.

Hæmoglobinuria is also imitated as a means of malingerer (in India, *pan*, commonly chewed by Indians, particularly women, added to the urine makes a fair semblance of hæmoglobinuria). The final test for hæmoglobin is by means of a spectroscope, the hæmoglobin bands are easily recognized. This can be done with a pocket spectroscope.

(b) Hæmaturia due to various local causes, oxaluria, new growth, stone, etc., yellow fever, hæmorrhagic diathesis and other conditions where hæmorrhages occur from mucous membranes.

(c) Jaundice due to any cause but especially yellow fever, or Weil's disease, in both these conditions it develops later and tends to progress.



## TREATMENT

**General principles**—The patient should be treated and nursed on the spot, and moving avoided as far as possible, he should be kept warm and if possible provided with a night and a day attendant, the acidosis should be counteracted vigorously and he should not be given quinine.

As the acute stage is likely to be a short one, the patient need not be pressed to take food, and if he demands it, fluid of low protein content only should be given. The fluid intake should be maintained at a high level and at least 6 pints of fluid given daily. Thirty grains of bicarbonate of soda can be added to a pint of barley water or fruit juice and water without making it unpalatable. Additional bicarbonate can be given in a mixture, and if intravenous saline is indicated, 150 grains of sodium bicarbonate to the pint should be added, at all costs the urine must be kept alkaline to prevent precipitation of the hæmatin and the consequent damage to the renal tubules. Glucose should be given by the mouth *ad lib*, and some workers prefer intravenous glucose, 5 per cent solution, to intravenous bicarbonate as they report that it also helps to reduce hæmolysis.

**Anti-malarial drugs**—In the majority of cases there are no parasites in the peripheral blood at the time the patient is seen after the attack and in these circumstances no anti-malarial drug is necessary. If parasites are still present atabrin in the usual doses (see p. 101) should be given.

**Symptomatic**—For anuria if intravenous therapy fails hot fomentations or dry cupping should be applied to the loin, hot colonic washes given and finally the bladder filled with warm citrate saline (2 per cent sodium citrate in normal saline) and the patient allowed to empty the bladder after a few minutes, this often starts a reflex secretion of urine.

Sodium sulphate 1.89 per cent of the anhydrous salt in distilled water, given intravenously by the drip feed method, up to a litre, should be tried, if the above methods fail.

The diuretics that are most likely to be of value are caffeine and sodium benzoate given by intramuscular injection in doses of 4 grains, or caffeine citrate gr. iii or diuretin gr. x three times daily given by the mouth.

Vomiting can sometimes be stopped by giving the patient ice to suck, if not, 1 ccm of adrenaline diluted with an ounce of water should be given by mouth but if this and other simpler means of controlling vomiting fail, an injection of morphia (1/10 grain) and hyoscine (1/200 grain) may be given.

For cardiac stimulation, camphor in oil, cardiazol, and coramine are the drugs of choice.

As a purgative, calomel should be given in divided doses ( $\frac{1}{4}$  grain half-hourly up to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grains).

**'Specifics'**—A large number of specifics for the treatment of black-water fever have been advocated. Many of these have acquired a considerable local reputation, though usually without any scientific basis. A good example of such a drug is the extract of *Vitex peduncularis*. How this is supposed to act has never been clearly defined by its advocates, it has no effect on a malarial infection but recently a special extract from this plant has been prepared which has been shown to possess definite anti-hæmolytic properties *in vitro* (Gupta *et al*, 1942).

Another such specific is extract of *Cassia beareana*, this does not grow in India and recently the extract of an allied species *Cassia fistula* has been tried in this country, with apparent success.

A line of treatment more recently introduced is with cortin, or its synthetic equivalent, desoxycorticosterone acetate, 25 mg. immediately and 5 mg. 4-hourly, combined with vitamin C in maximal doses intravenously or intramuscularly, and cholesterol 15 grains 4-hourly by the mouth. Even in this case, the exact rationale is not clear and it is doubtful if cholesterol taken by mouth increases the blood cholesterol appreciably, but the writer has seen uniformly satisfactory results with this routine during the last few years. Again, however, no scientifically controlled series of experiments of sufficient number to carry any weight have been reported upon.

**Blood transfusion and other hæmâtinic treatment**—Transfusion has been used freely in England in anæmic and asthenic cases, but has not been so successful in the acute hæmolytic stages of the disease in the tropics. It should be avoided in anuric cases, but in other cases, where the patient is suffering from anoxæmia after a crisis, transfusions of cross-matched whole blood up to 400 c cm. in the first instance are certainly worth considering, they must always be given slowly. Oxygen will always be helpful at this juncture.

After the acute stage has subsided, as there has been an actual loss of hæmoglobin in the urine, there will be some iron deficiency which should be made up, but liver extract usually causes a more dramatic improvement in the blood picture. Marmite should be given, and continued for some weeks if possible.

**Diet**—Diet should be fluid and of low nitrogen content during the acute stages, it should be increased gradually but protein should be avoided for a few days. When the albumin has disappeared from the urine, a liberal well-balanced diet should be given to compensate for the serious protein losses that have accompanied the attack.

**Convalescence**—A special word of warning is necessary in convalescence, as sudden heart failure is common, some physicians insist on all patients remaining strictly in bed for at least 10 days after the hæmoglobinuria has completely stopped.

## PREVENTION

The prevention of blackwater fever is the prevention of malaria and the subject does not require separate discussion here (see pp. 111-119).

The drug prophylaxis is also the same as for malaria, but, in view of the undoubted action of quinine in precipitating an attack of blackwater fever, the question whether it is advisable to take prophylactic quinine in a blackwater fever area will naturally arise. Whenever this point has been investigated, it has been found that the disease is far less common amongst those who take prophylactic quinine regularly than amongst those who take it just when they happen to remember it, or not at all. Thorough treatment of the malarial attack, whenever it occurs, can be looked upon as a prophylactic measure against blackwater fever, for this atabrin is probably preferable to the cinchona alkaloids and, after a blackwater fever attack, preference should certainly be given to the atabrin group of drugs.

If the old remedy *Viter peduncularis* lives up to its new promise, it might provide a drug that could usefully be employed prophylactically in a blackwater fever country, especially by blackwater fever subjects, whenever they feel a malarial attack coming on.

## PROGNOSIS

One of the principal characteristics of blackwater fever is the great variability of the severity of the disease from place to place and from time to time in any one place this is why the results of any particular form of treatment are so likely to be misleading. When large series are reported the death rate usually varies between 10 to 20 per cent but in a smaller series a death rate of 40 per cent is not at all uncommon and conversely death rates as low as 5 per cent are reported.

The prognosis deteriorates with each successive attack. There is a popular saying in blackwater fever districts that 'one often recovers from the first attack, seldom from a second and never from a third'. This is of course not true but it conveys the right message and as there is some evidence of individual susceptibility which is possibly enhanced by an attack, it is advisable for a blackwater fever subject to seek employment in some other locality.

## REFERENCES

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| BHATTACHARJEE J C (1941)                      | Blackwater Fever in Darjeeling Terai <i>Indian Med Gaz</i> 76 734   |
| GUPTA J C, KAHALI B S, and GANGULY S C (1942) | Vitez peduncularis—A New Antihæmolytic Agent <i>Indian Med Gaz</i> , 77, 721  |
| FAIRLEY N H (1941)                            | Methæmalbumin <i>Quart J Med</i> 10 95  |
| LUIZADA A (1911)                              | Favism Singular Disease chiefly affecting Red Blood Cells <i>Medicine</i> 20 145  |
| NAPIER L E and H. C M (1932)                  | Observations on a Plasmodium Infection which causes Hæmoglobinuria in Certain Species of Monkey <i>Indian Med Gaz</i> 87, 246 |
| SCOTT H H (1933)                              | Blackwater Fever <i>A History of Tropical Medicine</i> 1, 252 Edward Arnold and Co London.                                    |

*Addendum*—Recent examination of the current explanation for the anuria namely, damage to the kidney as a result of excreting the large molecule (68 000) hæmoglobin and precipitation of acid hæmatin in the tubules in an acid substratum has shown some discrepancies. The degree of tubular blockage is not sufficient to produce complete anuria and the damage is greater in the tubular epithelium than in the glomeruli; it is also suggested that the tubular damage actually precedes the blockage. This damage is possibly due to ischæmia of the kidney tissues to which tubular epithelium is far more sensitive than the glomeruli. It is believed that acidosis which is not constant cannot alone explain the changes and that acid base electrolyte water balance must be considered as a whole dehydration extrinsic and intrinsic is an important factor.

The practical point here is that treatment by excessive alkalinization may do more harm than good. Whole blood transfusion has for many years been used successfully in treatment even when the degree of anæmia did not seem to demand it and though it is known that the hæmoglobin thus given is often hæmolyzed. It seems possible that better results might be obtained with plasma transfusions combined with oxygen inhalation.

## LEISHMANIASIS

### CLASSIFICATION OF LEISHMANIA INFECTIONS

The diseases in man caused by protozoa of the genus *Leishmania* Ross, 1903, can be considered under the following three headings:—

(i) Visceral leishmaniasis, or kala-azar, in which the causal organism, *Leishmania donovani*, is spread by the blood and invades practically all the tissues in the body except those of the nervous system

There is an infantile variety of kala-azar, and in the past the causal organism of this disease was called *Leishmania infantum*, but it is now generally considered that this latter organism is identical with *L. donovani*. Similarly, the causal organism of the recently discovered South American variety of kala-azar has been called *Leishmania chagasi*, but its distinction from *L. donovani* has not been established

Post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis, in its numerous forms, is a late sequel to the generalized infection, in this condition the parasites (*L. donovani*), having disappeared from the viscera, are confined to the skin and cause non-ulcerative skin lesions unaccompanied by any general symptoms

(ii) Cutaneous leishmaniasis or oriental sore, in which the infection is localized in the skin and causes ulcerative lesions, in this condition the infection is apparently not spread by the blood-stream, but, rarely, extension has occurred along lymphatic channels, *Leishmania tropica* is the causal organism

(iii) Muco-cutaneous or South American leishmaniasis, or espundia, in which there is a primary invasion of the skin, as in oriental sore, followed, sometimes after the original sore has healed, by a specific ulceration of the nasal, buccal, and pharyngeal mucous membranes, the spread of infection is presumably by the blood-stream, although the blood infection has not been demonstrated in this disease, *Leishmania brasiliensis* is the causal organism

# KALA-AZAR

DEFINITION	..	..	..	..	..	137
HISTORICAL	..	..	..	..	..	137
EPIDEMIOLOGY	..	..	..	..	..	137
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	..	..	..	..	..	137
<i>Epidemic features</i>	..	..	..	..	..	139
<i>Factors determining distribution</i>	..	..	..	..	..	140
<i>Seasonal incidence</i>	..	..	..	..	..	140
<i>Age and sex incidence</i>	..	..	..	..	..	141
<i>Race, caste and class</i>	..	..	..	..	..	141
ETIOLOGY	..	..	..	..	..	142
<i>Causal organism</i>	..	..	..	..	..	142
Morphology and life-cycle of <i>Leishmanus donovani</i>						
Culture						
Survival and pathogenicity						
<i>Transmission</i>	..	..	..	..	..	143
Historical • The future						
The development of the parasite in the sand-fly, and the mechanism of transmission—The sand fly vectors—Sand-fly prevalence—Relation to livestock—Correlation of sand flies and kala-azar						
Sources of infection						
IMMUNOLOGY	..	..	..	..	..	147
<i>Antigenic properties</i>	..	..	..	..	..	147
<i>Immunity</i>	..	..	..	..	..	147
<i>Secondary factors determining infection</i>	..	..	..	..	..	147
PATHOLOGY	..	..	..	..	..	148
<i>Morbid anatomy and histopathology</i>	..	..	..	..	..	148
Spleen—Liver—Lymphatic glands—Intestinal tract—Adrenal cortex						
Post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis						
<i>Blood picture</i>	..	..	..	..	..	150
<i>Blood chemistry</i>	..	..	..	..	..	150
Hydrogen-ion concentration—Calcium—Blood sugar—Albumin-globulin ratio						
<i>Urine</i>	..	..	..	..	..	151
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	..	..	..	..	..	151
<i>Incubation period</i>	..	..	..	..	..	152
<i>Onset</i>	..	..	..	..	..	152
Enteric-like type—Malaria-like type—Insidious type—Asymptomatic type						
<i>Transient infection</i>	..	..	..	..	..	153
<i>Signs and symptoms of the established disease</i>	..	..	..	..	..	153
Symptoms—General appearance—Spleen—Liver						

Fever .. .. .	154
Double diurnal rise—Apyrexial.	
Cardio-vascular system .. .. .	155
Blood pressure—Heart—Pulse-rate—Edema—Ascites—Bleeding.	
Alimentary tract .. .. .	155
Cancerum oris—Gastric analyses—Diarrhoea and dysentery.	
Respiratory system—Nervous system—Skin and subcutaneous tissues—Urinary and reproductive systems .. .. .	156
Variations in the clinical picture in different countries .. .. .	157
SEQUELÆ .. .. .	157
Post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis .. .. .	157
Hypo-pigmented macules—Butterfly erythema—Nodules.	
DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	159
Therapeutic tests .. .. .	160
Diagnostic methods .. .. .	160
Parasites in the peripheral blood .. .. .	160
Blood culture .. .. .	161
Sternum puncture .. .. .	161
Technique of sternum puncture.	
Tibia puncture .. .. .	162
Spleen puncture .. .. .	162
Technique of spleen puncture.	
Liver puncture .. .. .	163
Gland puncture .. .. .	164
Serum tests .. .. .	164
Aldehyde (Napier) test .. .. .	164
Diagnostic value of test.	
Antimony (Chopra) test .. .. .	164
Globulin-precipitation test .. .. .	164
Other experience .. .. .	165
Diagnosis of post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis .. .. .	165
PREVENTION .. .. .	165
TREATMENT .. .. .	166
Historical .. .. .	166
The pre-antimony period—The antimony era—The new chemotherapeutic era.	
Discussion .. .. .	167
Specific treatment .. .. .	168
Antimonyl tartrate—Neostibosan—Urea stibamine—Other antimony preparations—Complications associated with antimony treatment—The aromatic disimides.	
Subsidiary treatment—Diet .. .. .	173
Treatment of complications .. .. .	173
Treatment of resistant cases .. .. .	173
Treatment of post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis .. .. .	174
PROGNOSIS .. .. .	175

**Definition** — Kala-azar or visceral leishmaniasis (also known as black fever, Dum-Dum fever and ponos) is a fever of long duration, which occurs epidemically or endemically in certain tropical and subtropical countries, is usually associated with progressive emaciation and enlargement of the spleen and liver, and is characterized by the presence of a parasitic protozoon, *Leishmania donovani*, in the peripheral blood, in the spleen and elsewhere in the tissues

**Historical** — In India kala azar has been recognised as a distinct clinical entity for over a hundred years. A number of epidemics occurred in Bengal and, though it was undoubtedly confused with malaria the frequency with which the infection failed to respond to treatment and ended fatally made the physicians of those days realize that they were dealing with a different disease. More attention was attracted to the disease when it began to invade Assam in 1875. Kala azar swept up the Brahmaputra valley in three distinct epidemic waves between this date and 1917. Some interesting examples of the dangers of partial correlations were displayed when Giles (1892), finding hookworm ova in the stools in every case, declared the disease to be ancylostomiasis and later when first Rogers (1897) and then Ross (1899) concluded that it was a severe form of malaria for a parallel reason. Both these infections will be found in almost 100 per cent of the inhabitants of some districts in Assam.

The position was clarified when in 1903 the causal organism now classified as *Leishmania donovani* was discovered almost simultaneously by Leishman in the spleen of a soldier who died in England from kala azar which he had contracted at Dum Dum, a military cantonment just outside Calcutta and by Donovan in the smears made from spleen material at biopsies and necropsies.

A disease known as 'ponos', which had been recognised in Greece and other Mediterranean countries for many years was shown to be caused by the same organism.

Kala-azar was first diagnosed in China by Aspland in 1910 and in the Sudan by Bousfield Thomson and Marshall (1911).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution** — The disease has a widespread distribution in the Old World, and has been reported from South America, but up to now not from Oceania.

In Europe, the most heavily infected areas are in Sicily, the 'toe' of Italy, and certain Mediterranean islands. In the Adriatic, an indigenous case has been reported in Venice, and in Yugoslavia the disease appears to be comparatively common. It is prevalent along the coastal area of the provinces of Catalonia and Valencia in Spain, in Malta, and in Crete, Hydra, and other Greek islands. Isolated cases have been reported from many other Mediterranean ports. At Catania 1,424 cases were diagnosed in a period of ten years, and in Hydra 39 per cent of the deaths among infants during one year were said to be due to this disease, but in most of the other places it is only sporadic in occurrence (see figure 24).

In the Mediterranean area the disease is confined almost entirely to infants and young children.

In North Africa the same infantile form of the disease occurs along the Mediterranean littoral, in Morocco, Algeria, and Tunis, the incidence being highest in the last-named.

There is another endemic area in the Sudan in Kassala and the Blue Nile district, and cases have been reported from Abyssinia, northern Kenya, and a few other places in tropical



Figure 24 Map showing kala azar distribution (shaded) in the Mediterranean area

in the Sudan in Kassala and the Blue Nile district, and cases have been reported from Abyssinia, northern Kenya, and a few other places in tropical

Africa, but only in the Sudan endemic focus has there been any serious incidence of the disease, here kala azar, which is not of the infantile type but has an age distribution comparable to the Asiatic form of the disease, came into prominence during the fighting in 1940-41 in Abyssinia and on the borders of the Sudan, and a number of Indian troops were infected.

In India the distribution is extensive, but the limits of the endemic areas are well defined the disease being confined to the eastern side of the peninsula. Intensely infected isolated villages have been found in the extreme south near Cape Comorin. There is a steady incidence of a few

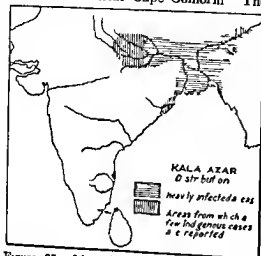


Figure 25 Map showing kala azar distribution in India.

hundred cases each year in Madras city. The coastal areas are then free up as far as the Ganges delta. The whole of the plains of Bengal are heavily infected. The endemic area spreads along the Ganges plain into Bihar, where the incidence is still high, and to the eastern side of the United Provinces as far as Lucknow, where the incidence gradually tails off, its westerly extension being checked by the dry areas. In Bihar it is confined to the Ganges valley, being limited on the north by the Himalayas and on the south by the low laterite hills of the Bihar plateau. In a north-easterly direction the endemic area extends along the Brahmaputra valley into Assam, which province is heavily infected as far as Sibsagar, at present sporadic cases only occur further east. From the main Bengal focus the endemic areas extend into eastern Bengal and Sylhet, but further extension is prevented by the high mountain ranges which divide India from Burma. It will be interesting to see whether the opening up of direct communications between India and Burma across these mountains will lead to an extension of the disease into Burma, on analogy the writer believes that it will not (see figure 25).

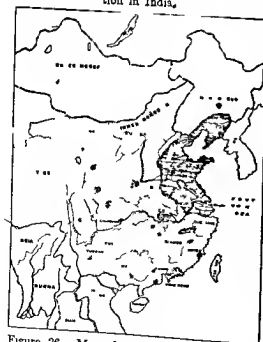


Figure 26 Map showing kala azar distribution in China shaded areas

are nearly all north of the Yangtze river and are mainly along the line of the grand canal in the provinces of Kiangsu, Shantung and Chihli up to Peiping and further north into Jehol and Fientien in Manchuria. Cases have also been



reported from Mongolia. Undoubted indigenous cases have been found in a few places in western and southern China, but there is some question if the cases reported in the extreme south near Canton and in Yunnan (also shown in figure 26) are really indigenous cases, in view of the extensive migrations of the population that recent events have led to.

There are endemic foci in Transcaucasia and Russian Turkestan. It has recently been shown that kala azar is widespread in the tropical zone in South America and a few cases have been reported from Argentina. Isolated cases have been reported from here during the last twenty years, but on the whole the reports were received with scepticism, until light was thrown on the subject by the yellow-fever viscerotomy service in Brazil and Argentina, out of 47,000 viscerotomies, leishmaniae were found in 41 specimens. Subsequent clinical investigations in some of the infected areas brought to light a few cases of kala-azar. Nearly all the leishmania-infected viscerotomy specimens and most of the clinical cases came from the north east corner of Brazil between Para and Bahia, but a few kala-azar patients were also found in the Chaco district of Argentina. The cases were sporadic, and entirely unconnected with one another (see figure 27).



Figure 27. Map showing kala-azar distribution in South America.

**Epidemic features.**—In most countries in which it exists, kala-azar is sporadic in its occurrence, but there are others, such as Bengal, where it is intensely endemic although subject to exacerbations of an epidemic-like nature. In the days before effective treatment was given, these rises and falls in incidence appear to have had a definite periodicity of about fifteen to twenty years. In an endemic area, there was usually a widespread increase in incidence over the whole area, which lasted for three or four years, then there would be a gradual fall but the disease did not disappear, and even in the trough of the wave the incidence did not drop to less than one-third or a quarter of the incidence at the top of the wave.

The character and periodicity of these epidemic waves are probably being disturbed by the extensive treatment campaigns that have been instituted in the most heavily infected provinces Assam and Bengal, since the beginning of the last epidemic. The last epidemic wave started in 1917 and reached its peak about 1923. On previous experience another wave is overdue by at least five years, but provincial health returns give little indication of it, except in the province of Bihar, at the periphery of the endemic area, where no treatment campaign was instituted, and here the increase in the incidence of the disease has recently alarmed the health authorities.

In individual villages or in smaller areas within an endemic area, the epidemic wave will be shorter and sharper and may be followed by a period of some years during which the disease disappears almost completely, but when the incidence is falling in one village it may be rising in another not many miles away.

There are indications that a concatenation of climatic or other factors, such as widespread distress after an earthquake or an influenza epidemic, determines a generalized increase, and that local conditions and the population factor determine the extent and duration of the incidence in the individual villages, when all the highly susceptible material, i.e. the children born since the last epidemic wave, is exhausted, the disease dies down. In a village in Bengal in which we studied the disease for many years 20 per cent of the population of three hundred were attacked within a period of three years, and two years later only one case occurred during the whole year.

The disease may also show a true epidemic invasion of an area. During the last half-century there have been three epidemic waves in Assam, each has carried the disease further up the Assam valley. In the part of the Assam valley adjoining the Bengal plain, kala-azar is now endemic, as it is in Bengal, but further up the valley it appears in epidemic form and seems to disappear entirely in the period between epidemics. The disease has not yet reached the extreme eastern end of the valley.

**Factors determining distribution**—In India kala-azar is confined to areas below 2000 feet, although a few isolated cases of rather doubtful origin have been reported from higher altitudes, and to alluvial soil, to areas with a high humidity, i.e. a mean annual humidity of not less than 70 per cent and with a low mean diurnal range of temperature, i.e. not more than 20°F, it is a disease of rural areas rather than of towns, and when it occurs in the latter it is found in old, low (one storey) and usually damp residences with small compounds in which there is some vegetation and in which fowls, ducks, or goats are kept, i.e. in surroundings very similar to those of the rural areas, except that in the towns there are usually organized sanitary services and good water-supplies.

Kala-azar is a family, house, and site infection, and it was shown in Assam that even burning down a hut and re-erecting one on the same site did not check the spread of infection, but that removal of 'coohe lines' a distance of at least three hundred yards was essential.

In China also it is a disease of rural areas, but in towns, such as Peiping, there are endemic foci comparable to those in the towns in India. In the infected areas on the Mediterranean littoral, the disease is reported as occurring mainly on the outskirts of towns and villages in surroundings similar to those already described, but there the association with dogs, which are suspected as carriers in some countries, has been noted.

**Seasonal incidence**—In most of the places where the disease has been studied, a definite seasonal incidence has been noted. In Bengal and Assam there is a well-defined peak in the onset curve in the winter months, but it starts to rise in the autumn, the period immediately following the rainy season (see figure 28), in Madras the seasonal incidence is less well defined. In the Sudan and Abyssinia, Henderson (1937) noted that the rise in the seasonal curve started in August which is the height of the rainy season. In China the early summer months and in Europe the spring are the periods of highest incidence.

**Age and sex incidence**—In so far as the age incidence of the disease is concerned, the endemic areas are sharply divided into two groups. In the Mediterranean areas the disease occurs among infants and very young children, 93 per cent under the age of five years, and is rare among adults. On the other hand in Asiatic endemic areas the highest incidence is among children between the ages of five and fifteen years. This difference in the age incidence has led some workers to regard kala azar in the two regions as being distinct, and to use the term 'infantile kala azar' for the disease as it occurs on the Mediterranean littoral. The age distribution, however, is the only notable point of distinction. Even in India kala-azar occurs among infants, we reported a case of an infant of less than eight months with well developed kala azar of about four months' duration.

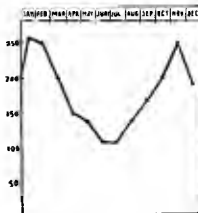


Figure 28. Month of onset of kala azar based on over 2000 cases seen in Calcutta.

The age incidences in the two sexes seem to differ slightly, in Bengal we found that the peak of the age-incidence curve was from the eighth to the tenth year in girls and from the tenth to the twelfth in boys. This is possibly correlated with the earlier maturity of females in India. Many figures showing the age incidence are available but the following table, although based on a comparatively small number, is probably the most accurate, since the figures were collected by house to house investigation over a long period, and are not taken from hospital and dispensary returns. They are probably typical of the Asiatic endemic areas generally. The available evidence suggests that in the Sudan the age incidence is slightly higher, Henderson (1937) reported 34 per cent in persons aged 20 years or under (cf 74 per cent in our Indian series).

*Age and sex incidence of Kala azar*

Age group	Males	Females	Total	Per cent per quinquennial age period
Under 5 years	22	26	48	12.40
5 years but under 10 years	43	57	105	27.13
10 15	60	29	89	23.00
15 20	26	20	46	11.83
20 30	30	37	67	$8.50 \times 2$
30 40	16	8	24	$3.10 \times 2$
40 50	2	6	8	$1.03 \times 2$
TOTAL	204	183	387	

There is no evidence that either sex is the more susceptible, most of the collected figures show a preponderance among males, but, when the errors of selection are eliminated the difference practically disappears.

**Race, caste and class**—There is also no evidence of racial or class immunity. In India, Europeans and Asiatics are equally liable to infection.

when living under comparable conditions. The disease is rare among better-class Europeans and Indians living in well-built and well-ventilated houses, but it is very common among poorer class Europeans and Anglo-Indians. In some mixed villages the disease seems to predominate among those living in the Mohammedan and Indian Christian quarters, the Hindus being comparatively free.

### ÆTIOLOGY

**Causal organism** — *Leishmania donovani* is a protozoon of the family Trypanosomidae, other members of the genus are *L. tropica*, the causal organism of cutaneous leishmaniasis or oriental sore, and *L. brasiliensis*, the causal organism of South American leishmaniasis, or espundia. The parasite of the infantile type of kala-azar has been named *L. infantum*, but there is little evidence that this organism differs in any way from *L. donovani*. The parasite that causes leishmania infection in dogs has been called *L. canis*, but there is evidence that, in some instances, at least, this also is identical with *L. donovani*.

### Morphology and Life-cycle of *Leishmania donovani*

Two forms of the parasite are known: the non-flagellate or 'round' form, the Leishman-Donovan body, in which form it occurs in the body of its mammalian host, and the flagellate form in which it occurs in its arthropod host (*vide infra*). The development from the round form to the flagellate form will also take place in culture medium.

**Non-flagellate form** — The non flagellate form is an oval or round body with an average diameter of about  $2\mu$ , the breadth in the oval form being about three quarters of the length. It consists of cytoplasm containing a nucleus which is more or less round and a little less than  $1\mu$  in diameter, a parabasal body from which springs a rhizoplast, and a vacuole.

The Leishman-Donovan body is found in the endothelial cells and large wandering macrophages in all parts of the host's body. The parasites are therefore found in the tissues and organs richest in reticulo-endothelial cells, i.e. in the spleen, liver, bone marrow, lymphatic glands and in the submucosa in all parts of the respiratory and intestinal tracts. In the blood they are also seen in the polymorphonuclear leucocytes, in which they are apparently undergoing phagocytosis and in the large mononuclear cells in which there is evidence of rapid multiplication, in smears made from spleen material extra-cellular parasites are often seen, but there is every reason to believe that these have come from large endothelial cells which have ruptured during the process of making the smear. The parasites are seldom found in the parenchymatous cells of the organs. In China and in the Sudan they are said to be found in large numbers in the lymphatic glands, but in India it has been difficult to demonstrate them in this site.

Viable parasites in this form have been demonstrated in the faeces (Mackie, 1914), in the urine (Shortt, 1923), and in nasal secretion (Forkner and Zia, 1934), their presence in these excreta and secretions must be looked upon as accidental, depending as it does on the separation of small pieces of mucous membrane with its submucosa, which is not the usual result of leishmania infection but is due to some coincident secondary infection.

Whilst the immediate viability of these parasites in the stools and nasal secretions has been demonstrated by animal experiment, there is no reason to believe that, outside the body, they remain viable for more than a matter of hours. A pure growth of leishmania has been obtained from

sterile urine, but in the presence of other organisms the leishmaniae are rapidly killed

**Flagellate stage**—The flagellate form shows several morphological variations, but, generally speaking it is a fusiform organism with a flagellum, the length of the body is  $5\mu$  to  $15\mu$  the breadth  $0.5\mu$  to  $2.0\mu$  and the length of the flagellum  $10\mu$  to  $15\mu$ . The body of the flagellate consists of cytoplasm, a centrally situated nucleus a parabasal body situated about midway between the nucleus and the anterior end of the body of the parasite a rhizoplast and flagellum springing from the parabasal body, and a vacuole lying between the parabasal body and the anterior end of the body of the parasite (see figure 29 and plate B)



Figure 29 Structure of *Leishmania* in the round and the flagellate or leptomonad stages

N = nucleus  
P = parabasal  
R = rhizoplast  
V = vacuole  
F = flagellum

**Culture**—A number of different media have been used for the cultivation of leishmania but by far the most satisfactory is NNN, or Senekjy's (see p 164) medium. The former is a simple saline agar preparation to which about one third fresh rabbit's blood is added while the agar is cooling but is still in the fluid state. The blood and agar are then mixed by rotating the tube between the palms and eloped. The hydrogen-ion concentration need not be adjusted as the blood is an efficient buffer, the pH is usually about 7.0 but good growth will take place between pH 4.7 and 8.3, actually the optimum appears to be somewhere about 6.0. The morbid material containing the leishmaniae is placed in the condensation fluid, flagellates appear within a day or two, but much longer (10 to 30 days) is usually required for the identification of a scanty infection. The optimum temperature is about  $28^{\circ}\text{C}$ , but a good growth will occur at  $22^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

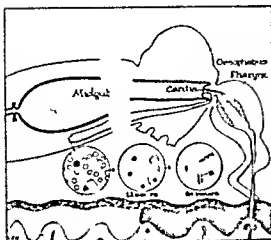
**Survival and pathogenicity**—The flagellate form is a very delicate form and contamination with bacteria will rapidly kill a culture. The flagellate will not survive in water or soil but survives in sterile milk for a few days. When injected subcutaneously it rapidly rounds up and loses its flagellum.

It has been shown that in susceptible animals, Chinese and Syrian hamsters, *Cricetulus griseus* and *Cricetus auratus*, infection can be caused by the introduction of either the round or the flagellate forms by the peritoneal, the subcutaneous, the percutaneous the oral and the conjunctival routes, except that the flagellate form will not infect by the conjunctival route, it appears to be the more infective stage (Napier *et al*, 1933). In man, infection is not easily conveyed by the subcutaneous route (*vide infra*).

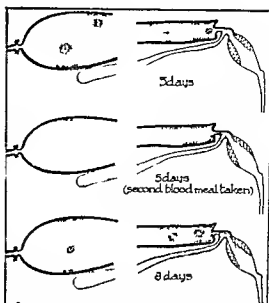
### Transmission

**Historical**—Since the discovery of the parasite forty years ago many investigations have been undertaken to discover how kala-azar is transmitted from one person to another. Innumerable hypotheses have been propounded and

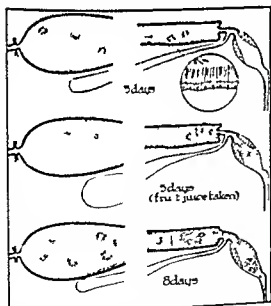
# PLATE I (Mechanism of transmission of Kala azar)



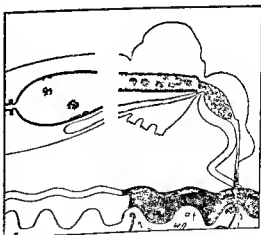
The sandfly takes infected blood into its midgut. This is digested and leishmania forms are freed. They develop into leptomonad forms, multiply by binary fission and move forward in the fly's intestinal tract.



If the fly takes a second blood meal too early, the leptomonad growth is interrupted and a relatively light infection results.

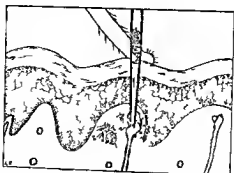


If, however, it takes fruit or plant juice, the leptomonad growth flourishes and the cardia, oesophagus and pharynx of the fly become blocked with leptomonad forms.



When this blocked fly attempts to feed, it is unable to draw blood past the solid plug of leptomonad forms. During its struggle to obtain food, some of these are detached and are injected into the skin.

## PLATE II (Pathogenesis of Kala azar)



Leptomonad forms are injected by a blocked sandfly into the skin



In the skin they immediately lose their flagella and round up. Some are taken up by macrophages others by polymorphonuclears



The former multiply but the latter are digested and disappear



There is a local reaction to the presence of leishmania in the form of an aggregation and proliferation of tissue and blood

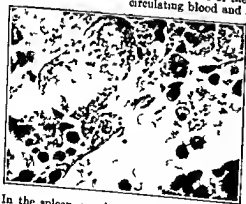


The parasites continue to multiply slowly until the parasitized cell bursts

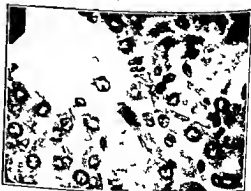


Parasites are then taken up by other macrophages

Eventually some of the parasitized cells reach the circulating blood and are carried to the viscera.



In the spleen rapid multiplication occurs and the reticulo-endothelial cells become heavily parasitized. In the figure a parasitized cell is seen escaping into the spleen sinus; this will circulate for a time but will eventually come to rest in some other organ or tissue where if this is rich in reticulo-endothelial cells further parasitization and proliferation will take place



In the liver Kupfer's cells are seen heavily parasitized; the parenchyma cells escape infection but appear to be compressed by the hypertrophied Kupfer's cells

division occurs, by the third day the infection has reached the cardia, by the fifth day the parasites have passed through the œsophageal opening into the pharynx, and by the seventh day the parasites may be found in the buccal cavity. If about the fifth day the fly takes another blood meal, the flagellate infection is retarded and remains comparatively light, if on the other hand it takes fruit- or plant juice, the infection is not retarded but progresses rapidly to the stage where the œsophagus and pharynx are blocked with a massive flagellate infection.

When a 'blocked' fly feeds on man, before it can take any blood this solid block of flagellates has to be ejected, and it will naturally be injected into the wound made by the sandfly's proboscis. There is a little local reaction to this inoculum of flagellates, some flagellates will enter the blood stream where they will probably be destroyed but others will be taken up by the tissue macrophages and here they multiply slowly. Parasitized cells may enter the circulation and be carried to the viscera, or they may remain in this local depôt until some general mobilization of the macrophages takes place, as in typhoid and malaria (see pp 147-8), when the parasitized cells are carried to the viscera where in a more favourable environment the leishmania multiply rapidly, and the infection becomes generalized.

**The sand-fly vectors.**—The three most important species are *Phlebotomus argentipes* Ann & Brun in India, *P. major* var *chinensis* Newst in China, and *P. perniciosus* Newst in the Mediterranean area. They are all very similar in their habits.

*Phlebotomus argentipes*.—This is a dark brown medium sized sand fly 2.3 to 2.8 mm long, on the thorax the dorsum is black and the sides light yellow, the wings are rather broader than those of most species and the tarsi are white. According to Sinton this species is not found outside India. It has a wide-spread distribution in India, but is most prevalent in Bengal and Assam where it can be found at any time of the year but is most prevalent during and immediately after the monsoon (see figure 25 plate A).

*Phlebotomus major* var *chinensis*.—The colour is variable dull greyish to bright golden yellow, the abdominal hairs are more or less erect dorsally and are a uniform golden grey with very strong silvery lights, the disc of the wings has a bluish iridescence the eyes are black and the legs are sometimes darker than the abdomen which is clothed with long recumbent hairs and has tufts of longer upright ones on the dorsal surface. This species is closely allied to *P. argentipes* from which it is however easily distinguished.

*Phlebotomus perniciosus*.—The thorax is with or without dull red brown spots which when present are arranged in a triangle, there is occasionally a similar spot on the vertex of the head, the eyes are black, the thorax and coxae are pale translucent and ochreous, the abdomen is similar but sometimes a pale smoky grey, the hairs are pallid, the wing are faintly iridescent in a strong light with a distinct metallic lustre, the abdomen is densely hairy, the largest hairs arising from the apical margin of the segment, but no distinct tufts are found as in *P. papatasi*.

**Sand-fly prevalence.**—In Bengal there is a small rise in the sand fly incidence curve in March in the period between the cool months and the hot dry months of April and May. The sand flies are found in the largest numbers in cattle sheds well protected from wind currents. They are also found in the ground-floor rooms of houses when these are damp and ill ventilated and have a broken or unpaved floor, and especially in rooms with a window opening on to a courtyard where ducks, chickens, or goats are kept. In the rural areas they can be found in almost any hut but they prefer those with thick mud walls, as in the cracks of these walls, which continually draw up moisture from the ground, they can find comparatively cool humid conditions at almost any time of the year.



These sand flies breed in any earth that contains an admixture of nitrogenous matter the larvae are found in the corners of broken floors and in rat holes in houses in chicken runs under the eaves of houses, under shrubs and trees which provide some protection from the sun and rain and on the sloping banks of 'tanks' (reservoirs from which the villagers of Bengal obtain their water supply)

**Relation to live stock**—They seldom breed far from their food supply, and when the choice is between bovine and human blood they choose the former on the other hand they seldom feed on other domestic animals or birds. This observation is based on the examination and identification of the blood meals of many sand flies of this species by the precipitin method (Lloyd and Napier 1930). The deduction is therefore that cows attract sand flies to the vicinity but at the same time withdraw the flies' attention from human hosts and are therefore a mixed blessing on the other hand other animals attract sand flies by providing a suitable environment for their breeding but do not withdraw their attention and are therefore wholly noxious. This fits in with our observations on the distribution of kala azar in towns and mixed villages the inevitable cow in the Hindu homestead seems to provide some degree of protection to the community.

In the laboratory it has been found that these sand flies must be bred and kept at a constant temperature of 80° to 82°F with almost complete saturation of the atmosphere throughout the twenty four hours if they are to survive sufficiently long for the flagellate infection to develop fully. kept at this even temperature they will survive for three weeks or even longer. The wet bulb temperature keeps within these narrow limits during about three months of the year in Bengal and Assam but does not in other provinces this may account for both the geographical distribution and the seasonal incidence of kala azar in India.

**Correlation of sand flies and kala azar**—So far as India is concerned every epidemiological observation fits in with the sand fly hypothesis of transmission. Further this sand fly has actually been found in large numbers in every locality where kala azar occurs it is a persistent human blood feeder a large percentage of the flies that feed on an infected person acquire the infection, infected flies have been found repeatedly in nature this is not true of other sand flies which are more prevalent in the non endemic areas nor of insects of any other genus so far experimented with in this fly an anterior development of the flagellate infection occurs and is unlikely to be purposeless (in natural flagellate infections which pass from insect to insect the development is usually posterior) and it has been shown experimentally that the fly is capable of transmitting the infection to man and other mammalian hosts by its bite (see p 144). All these facts make it almost certain that this insect is the most important agent in the natural transmission of the disease from man to man in most localities although it may not be the only agent.

**Sources of infection**—It is believed that in India man is the sole source of infection of the transmitting sand fly naturally during an attack of kala azar when the parasites are usually present in the peripheral blood he is the most prolific source of infection but it has been shown that the post kala azar dermal lesions will also provide the flagellate infection. Further it has been shown (Napier *et al* 1933) that a patient treated and cured (of the visceral infection) may still be a source of infection to a sand fly. In such a case the blood culture is negative so that infection must take place from the parasites that are lying dormant in the skin—the

causes of the later dermal lesions. It is thus easy to understand how infection, once established in a locality, remains endemic.

In the Mediterranean, as canine infection is widespread in these areas and corresponds seasonally to the human infection, it is suggested that dogs may act as carriers, there are, however, areas where the canine infection is common and human kala-azar does not occur. In China also, dogs have been repeatedly found infected in kala-azar endemic areas, but in India, on the other hand, the only canine infections reported have been in northern India where kala-azar does not occur. A natural infection of a bullock has been reported from Assam.

#### IMMUNOLOGY

**Antigenic properties**—Noguchi demonstrated that there were differences in the antigenic structure between *L. donovani*, *L. tropica* and *L. brasiliensis*, but that *L. infantum* was antigenically identical with *L. donovani*. There are strains of *L. canis* (of the dog) that are closely related to *L. donovani* and others that are related to *L. tropica*.

It is usually stated that no agglutinins are present in the blood in kala-azar, but new methods have demonstrated specific agglutinins, both flagellar and somatic, in infected and immunized experimental animals.

The presence of a specific complement-fixing antibody was demonstrated by Hindle, *et al.* (1926), they used a flagellate emulsion as antigen.

**Immunity**—There is evidence of some natural immunity to infection. It has been shown that healthy adult man is not always susceptible. Numerous attempts to infect man by the injection of infected material have failed, and accidental inoculations have not produced the disease, these include four deliberate (in leper volunteers) and two accidental self-inoculations by the writer, in which no infections occurred, and five inoculations by Adler (1940) in inoperable carcinoma, in which one sub-clinical infection followed. This immunity is subject to the influences of many factors which determine infection (*vide infra*). When the disease has been cured, the patient apparently enjoys almost complete protection from a second visceral infection. This also applies in the case of the experimentally infected hamster, treated hamsters cured of a *L. donovani* infection are immune to infection with *L. canis*. There is however no cross immunity against other leishmanial infections, *e.g.* *L. tropica* which causes oriental sore.

**Secondary factors determining infection**—Many observations make it seem probable that some secondary factor determines the onset of the disease in a person inoculated with the parasite. It has been pointed out that the worst outbreaks in Assam were associated with conditions of economic distress or some epidemic outbreak such as the malaria epidemic in the seventies, which according to Rogers (1903) determined the original Assam epidemic, and the influenza epidemic of 1917, which preceded the last extension in this province.

On the other hand, there is little reason to suppose that general lowering of resistance is an essential preliminary to kala-azar infection, as weak and debilitated people are not usually picked out, but the writer has suggested that possibly certain specific infections might prepare the way for a general visceral invasion of the parasite in a person in whom it had been lying dormant for some time (the incubation period varies from a few weeks to a year or more), and we have produced epidemiological, serological, and cytological evidence suggesting that malaria and

enteric were two such infections, part of the evidence for the inclusion of the latter disease was that in Calcutta a large percentage of the patients diagnosed serologically or bacteriologically as enteric fever and coming from parts of the city where kala-azar was endemic subsequently returned to hospital with kala azar

### PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy and histopathology**—Parasites are found in all parts of the body, particularly in tissues rich in cells of the reticulo-endothelial system and the specific reactum of the body to invasion appears to be a multiplication and mobilization of the macrophages, the cells of this system. There is evidence that macrophage proliferation actually precedes parasitization, as often the cells in the centre of an island of histiocytic tissue will not be parasitized, whereas those at the periphery are heavily so. Nearly all the histological changes observed in the different organs are due to the proliferation of reticulo endothelial tissue. Later, fibrotic changes may occur in some of the organs e.g. liver and spleen, but these usually appear very late, and are not constant.

The spleen is almost always enlarged, it may be immense, weighing as much as ten pounds in an adult. The capsule is usually thickened, and occasionally at the site of recent perisplenitis there is considerable thickening. Its consistence is variable, but in most cases it is soft and pulpy, the surface bulging on section of the capsule. In the more chronic cases it is firm, retaining its shape on removal from the body but it is usually very friable and is seldom hard and fibrous like the chronic malarial spleen. The cut surface has a uniform dark-red appearance, if the knife is drawn across the cut surface of the soft type of spleen, quantities of pulp will be scraped off, and the surface will be felt to be quite smooth. There may be infarcts.

Microscopically, there is infiltration by masses of heavily parasitized macrophages these encroach on the lymphatic follicles (Malpighian corpuscles), which eventually disappear almost completely. There is considerable enlargement of the vascular spaces. The large parasitized macrophages appear to dominate the whole picture.

The liver is usually enlarged. It is firm, retaining its shape well on removal from the body. It is friable but not so friable as the spleen. The capsule is thickened in places, and the liver on section shows the greasy appearance associated with fatty degeneration. It also shows the nutmeg appearance of the chronically congested liver. The cells affected are the Kupffer's stellate cells which are enlarged and parasitized so much that they may be wrongly identified as the parenchyma cells, which some writers have reported as being invaded in the later stages of the infection. The proliferation of these cells is most marked in the portal zone, and in some cases masses of parasitized reticulo endothelial cells will be seen in the portal spaces. The reticulo endothelial tissue invades the lobules and separates the liver cells. In the central zone the capillaries are dilated, and both the reticulo endothelial and the liver cells may be atrophied. There is usually some fatty change in the parenchyma cells. Later, this increased reticulo-endothelial tissue is partially superseded by fibrous tissue, producing the interlobular cirrhosis that occurs in the later stages of the disease.

There is usually evidence of increased activity in the bone marrow red marrow taking the place of the fat. Microscopically, there is a considerable reduction in the haemopoietic tissue which is largely displaced by

proliferating and parasitized macrophages, these may occupy almost the whole marrow space, but there are usually a few areas of haemopoietic activity.

In other organs and tissues the changes are inconstant, and the reports of observers in different countries vary.

Although workers in China and the Sudan have reported the frequent involvement of the lymphatic glands, in India we have seldom noted any clinical enlargement or any considerable histological changes. There is sometimes proliferation of the reticulo-endothelial cells in the neighbourhood of the vessels; in extreme cases these cells, many of which contain parasites, invade the lymph follicles, displace the lymphatic tissue, and disorganize the whole structure of the lymph node.

The changes in the intestinal tract which have been reported from time to time are not constant and are certainly not specific. Proliferation and parasitization of the reticulo-endothelial cells in the submucosa have been described by various workers, especially those in China, and appear to be fairly constantly noted in the infected hamster. In the absence of secondary ulceration and post-mortem denudation, the epithelium is always intact and is not parasitized; it is therefore only by means of this secondary ulceration that parasites can escape into the intestine. De (1934) in a series of twenty-six necropsies in Calcutta failed to find this involvement of the submucosa, although he examined sections from all parts of the intestinal tract.

The histopathological findings in the skin are somewhat anomalous. Workers in China have demonstrated leishmaniasis in the skin of a large percentage of visceral infections, i.e. kala-azar, whereas we in India have failed to do so. On the other hand, the occurrence of dermal lesions (*vide infra*) as a sequel to kala-azar is common in India but is rarely reported in China. It is obvious that in the Indian cases of kala-azar too the parasites must be present in the skin but in such small numbers that it is not possible to demonstrate them.

Changes in the adrenal cortex due to invasion of the zona fasciculata and zona glomerulosa by parasitized macrophages are commonly but not constantly observed. Parasitized macrophages have been comparatively rarely found in the kidney, heart, testes, and thyroid.

**Post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis**—When the visceral infection has been overcome, either spontaneously or with the aid of treatment, some of the parasites in the skin may survive and continue to multiply very slowly, taking a year or more to produce clinical lesions. In the early hypopigmented lesion of post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis the epidermis has undergone very little change, but there is some decrease in the pigment in the cells of the basal layer. The sub-papillary layer is oedematous, and the vessels are large and dilated, the latter change being very marked in cases with erythematous lesions. There is some infiltration by macrophages in the deeper layers around the sub-papillary plexus. Parasites are scarce in these early lesions, but can be demonstrated by cultural methods, and sand-flies allowed to feed on these areas become infected. As blood cultures are usually negative at this stage, the sand-flies must obtain the parasites from the local tissues.

In the nodular lesions the epidermis is thinned down to a few layers of cells, and the papillae are flattened out. Below, in the reticular layer, there is much proliferation of the macrophages, which form into large masses of cells, many of which are parasitized.

**Blood picture**—The most characteristic changes in the blood picture are the leucopenia and the decrease in granulocytes. Some degree of anaemia is always present, except possibly in the earliest stages. The red-cell count is constantly about 3,000,000 per c mm, in a series of forty-seven cases it was under 2,000,000 only once and over 3,500,000 only six times. The cell is usually slightly macrocytic and hyperchromic, nucleated red cells are not often found. The reticulocyte count is nearly always a little above normal, from 2 to 4 per cent. The fragility of the red cells to hypotonic and hypertonic saline solutions is decreased.

The decrease in leucocytes occurs early in the disease, and is a useful diagnostic sign. In 80 per cent of well-developed cases the count is below 4,000 per c mm (see figure 30).

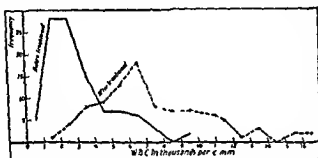


Figure 30 The leucocyte count before and after treatment frequency curves based on 100 cases

**Agranulocytosis** has been described in China, where Zia and Forkner reported seven cases among about 70 cases of kala-azar, but we have rarely seen it in India\*.

The decrease is almost entirely in the granulocytic elements, which often drop to 1,000 or even less. Eosinophils

are often absent and are usually not more than 1 to 2 per cent of the low total count, this diminution is less noticeable among Europeans, in whom the normal eosinophil count is about 2 per cent, but among Indians it is higher, indeed, 7 to 10 per cent cannot be considered abnormal among some Indian populations.

There is sometimes an absolute increase of large mononuclear cells, and there is always a relative increase, it has been shown by supravital staining methods that two-thirds of these cells are histiocytes. In the lymphocytes there may be a slight absolute decrease, but there is nearly always a definite relative increase. There is usually a marked shift to the left in the Arneeth count the mean Arneeth index in thirty cases being 92.

There is nearly always a reduction in the number of platelets the count being usually about 200,000 per c mm.

The indirect van den Bergh reaction is nearly always positive, the quantitative test usually shows from 1 to 3 mg of bilirubin per 100 c cm.

The erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) is very much increased, more consistently so than in any other disease (Napier and Henderson, 1931). The mean reading (Westergren) in 77 mixed cases recently examined was  $68.3 \pm 11.2$  mm, only in one case was the ESR below 40 mm.

**Blood chemistry**—Hydrogen-ion concentration of the blood in kala-azar is slightly above the normal and the alkaline reserve is reduced. The writer (Napier, 1923) has pointed out that the true change is a reduction in the buffer action of the blood.

\*Though the writer's personal experience of kala-azar during the last 20 years amounts to more than ten thousand cases he has only had one case of complete agranulocytosis under his charge (Das Gupta and Sen Gupta, 1943).

The calcium content is reduced, it is usually below 9 milligrammes per 100 c cm. The blood sugar is reduced, and is sometimes as low as 0.05 per cent. The lœvulose tolerance is also reduced.

There is a marked reduction in the serum-albumin and a corresponding increase in the euglobulin, the pseudo-globulin remaining about normal in amount, i.e. there is an inversion in the albumin-globulin ratio. The immediate effect of treatment is to bring the ratio back towards normal (figure 31). The serum tests (see p. 164) for this disease mainly depend on this increase in the euglobulin, which is often very considerable in advanced cases.

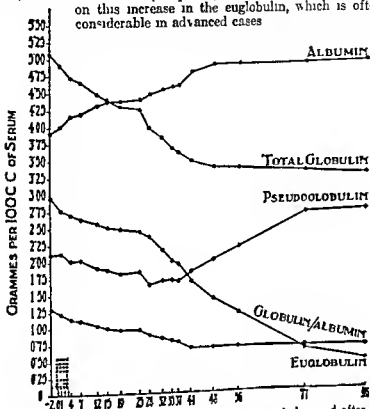


Figure 31 The proportions of the serum proteins before and after treatment, the latter is about normal

The Takata-Ara test is always strongly positive. This fact, the moderately positive indirect van den Bergh reaction, the high sedimentation rate, and the disturbances in serum protein suggest considerable liver dysfunction as an early and constant feature in this disease.

**Urine**—There is nearly always a trace of albumin and marked increase in urobilin. Otherwise there is no characteristic change, the urine is often concentrated and has the usual characters of a 'febrile' urine during febrile periods.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Incubation period**—There is very little exact information about the incubation period. Manson reported a case in which the patient had lived only ten days in the endemic area, and Muir another in which the incubation period was apparently fourteen days or less. On the other hand, the writer had a patient who had been away from any endemic area for eighteen months. In a leper inoculated with spleen-puncture material from

a kala-azar case, suggestive symptoms appeared after four months, and, in each of the five cases in which the infection was transmitted experimentally by sand-fly bites (*vide supra*), symptoms had developed within about four months of the first infected bite. The incubation period is generally considered to be from two to four months.

A case of congenital infection has been reported.

**Onset.**—The nature of the onset is not constant; it is sometimes acute, but in many cases it is extremely insidious. In India, the cases can be classed, as far as the onset is concerned, into three groups: the enteric-like, the malaria-like, and the insidious type.

In the enteric-like type the patient suffers from general malaise without any localizing symptoms, and the temperature climbs rapidly, reaching 103° or 104°F. in about a week, this is maintained for a week or so as a high continuous or a high remittent temperature, and then the temperature gradually falls to 99°F. or even to normal. Usually abdominal symptoms are absent; the spleen is sometimes just palpable but not tender; the liver is not usually enlarged. The attack may simulate one of enteric fevers very closely, but the distinguishing features are a pulse-rate of about 120 a minute and the absence of the typical coated tongue and of the characteristic toxic drowsiness of the enteric patient.

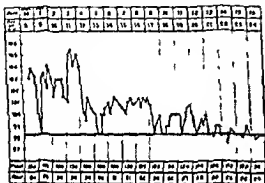


FIGURE 32 Temperature at onset of kala-azar.



FIGURE 33 Chart showing double rise of temperature in 24 hours

The temperature may remain low for a week or so; then it will gradually creep up again. In this second febrile attack the temperature is more likely to be remittent or even intermittent, and the classical double rise in the twenty-four hours may appear (*see figure 33*). Meanwhile the spleen will have enlarged and should be definitely palpable by now. This attack may be diagnosed as an enteric fever relapse, but by the time that a third bout occurs there is little excuse for this mistake.

In the malaria-like type, the onset is sharper, and the fever may be accompanied by a rigor. The history in these cases is that they respond to quinine at first, but that the second attack responds less satisfactorily, and that after this, quinine does not affect the temperature at all. The splenic enlargement increases steadily and does not disappear between the attacks as it usually does in malaria.

In the insidious type, the patient cannot give a clear history of the time of onset of the illness but often states that for some months he has not felt well, and possibly he has had attacks of irregular fever. Eventually he

comes to hospital because of the size of his spleen or because of some complication such as dysentery or pneumonia and it is obvious from the advanced state of the infection, indicated by the serum test, that he has been suffering for at least six months

A modification of this is the truly asymptomatic type, where the patient's condition is discovered accidentally when, for example, he happens to bring another patient to hospital

**Transient infection**—In a few cases with the febrile type of onset, the infection has been transient, the parasite has been demonstrated by blood culture, but meanwhile all the symptoms have subsided, and specific treatment has not been given. The writer traced a few cases of this kind in which symptoms did not return for three or four years at least, the conclusion is that in these cases spontaneous recovery has taken place. It is possible that this occurs quite often, evidence for this suggestion is provided by typical post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis in patients who give a history of a transient attack of this kind, but not of definite kala-azar for which treatment was given

#### *Signs and symptoms of the established disease*

Unless otherwise stated, the following description will apply to a patient in whom the disease has been allowed to progress unchecked for about six months, such patients present the characteristic picture of kala-azar, and in India it is at this stage that the majority seek treatment, as the disease runs a more rapid course in children, they enter this stage in three to four months

**Symptoms**—When the disease has reached a comparatively advanced stage, the patient complains of fever, progressive loss of weight, weakness increasing darkening of the skin—usually noticed by his friends—falling of the hair, palpitations and dyspnoea, intermittent attacks of diarrhoea, bleeding from the nose and from the gums, and a persistent and very irritating cough. Headaches, which would be expected with the fever, are noticeably absent in most cases, and the appetite is good and sometimes ravenous. The patient will also usually complain of progressive enlargement of the spleen, in some cases this is the first symptom, in others the enlargement is not noted for a month or two after the onset of the fever

**General appearance**—The patient may be emaciated but is often moderately well nourished, the hair is dry, lustreless, and sparse, the natural pigmentation of the skin of the forehead, of the temples, and around the mouth in dark-skinned people, is intensified and contrasts with the bloodlessness of the less pigmented part of the face, the appearance resembles that given by shading a white paper lightly with a black lead-pencil, and in some children the presence of adventitious hair is well marked, there is visible pulsation of the carotids in the neck and the rapid pulsation of the heart is observed through the thin chest wall, the abdomen is protuberant, with the enlarged spleen and liver outlined on it, the cutaneous veins on the lower part of the chest and upper part of the abdomen stand out, the legs are thin, with tight shiny stretched skin over the shins, and the feet are possibly oedematous (see plate III)

**Spleen**—Splenic enlargement is one of the most constant features, but cases in which there is apparently no enlargement are by no means uncommon. In a few cases the enlargement is upwards and can be demonstrated only by percussion. As a rule the spleen enlarges with the regularity and precision of a gravid uterus reaching the level of the costal arch at the end of the first month, and being palpable one inch at the end



of the second, two inches at the end of the third, and so on; there are, however, exceptions to this general rule. There is practically no condition in which so rapid an enlargement of the spleen can take place, from being just palpable a spleen will sometimes reach the level of the umbilicus in a month; on the other hand, there are cases in which the enlargement is slow or is checked by the intervention of some inflammatory complication, such as broncho-pneumonia or cancerum oris.

The actual size of the spleen is not a very useful diagnostic point, although the regularity and comparative rapidity of the enlargement may arouse suspicion.

The peculiar soft doughy consistence of a kala-azar spleen, however, is highly significant, it is not common in other conditions, whereas the wood-like resistance of an old standing chronic malarial spleen is uncommon in even a chronic case of kala-azar. 'The more chronic the disease the harder the spleen' may be taken as a general rule.

Tenderness is not common and is not complained of in more than about five per cent of cases. It is without diagnostic value, as perisplenitis is so frequent in similar diseases. Occasionally, however, a patient, either under treatment or during the course of the disease before treatment, complains of a pain in his spleen, which comes on suddenly and may last for a few days. The pain, which is at first general but soon becomes localized to one particular spot, is probably due to infarction.

**Liver** — There is nearly always some degree of enlargement of the liver. An enlarged soft liver, with a thinned out edge, overlapping a large soft spleen is very characteristic of the disease. Some tenderness is sometimes present but is in no way comparable to the tenderness associated with acute hepatitis or liver abscess. Occasionally, hepatic enlargement appears to take the place of splenic enlargement, but usually both conditions are present, and there is little evidence that this enlargement is in any way compensatory, the liver is enlarged in at least 80 per cent of all cases of kala azar, and in those cases in which there is no splenic enlargement the liver is on the whole less often enlarged.

**Jaundice** is not common in the early stages of the disease, but later it may occur and is a bad prognostic sign.

**Fever** — An attempt to classify the types of fever observed when once the disease is well established merely resolves itself into making the maximal number of variations by combining the words 'high' and 'low' with the words 'continuous', 'remittent', and 'intermittent', and interposing the words 'double' and 'triple' wherever suitable. There is, however, one form of fever which, when it occurs, is characteristic of the disease, i.e. the double intermittent or remittent fever, the temperature subsides towards early morning and remains low until about midday, it rises in the afternoon, subsiding again towards evening, about eight or nine o'clock at night it again rises, or the second rise may be delayed until midnight, and again it subsides towards morning. In order to demonstrate this double rise it may be necessary to take the temperature every three hours, day and night.

### PLATE III

- Fig 1 A group of kala azar patients attending a village treatment centre near Calcutta. Note predominance of children and that some are well nourished.
- Fig 2 Kala-azar in Indian child typical case.
- Fig 3 Kala azar in Chinese child with commencing cancerum oris on right side (Courtesy of Dr E C Forast).

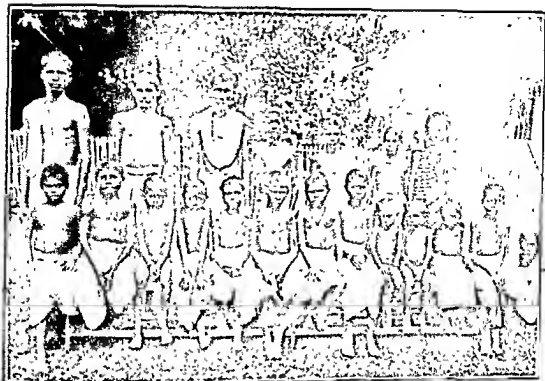


Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3

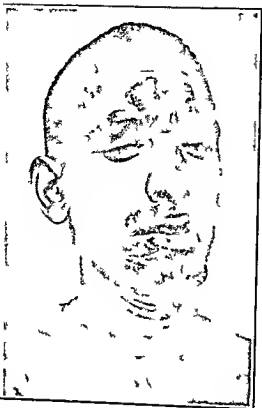


Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Some writers have exaggerated the diagnostic value of this sign the double diurnal rise of temperature. It is possibly a sign that is present at some time or another during the course of the disease in most cases and it is a sign of great diagnostic value when it is quite definitely present but its absence is not a matter of great importance because the chances of the condition being present at the time the patient is under observation are comparatively small. In the Carmichael Hospital for Tropical Diseases Calcutta where a four-hourly temperature chart is kept a definite double diurnal rise is observed in less than 10 per cent of the kala azar cases during their stay in hospital.

Sometimes a third diurnal rise of temperature may be recorded this, although equally diagnostic, is not seen so often as the double rise.

Throughout the course of the untreated disease there is a tendency for periods of apyrexia to occur. During these periods the characteristic nightly rise of temperature may persist, but may not be recorded unless the temperature is taken at midnight. The nightly rise is also the last to disappear when the patient is recovering under treatment.

Some cases are truly apyrexial at least from the time that they come under observation in hospital even a two hourly temperature chart failing to show any rise above normal over a period of weeks.

There is another characteristic point about the fever the patient with a temperature of  $102^{\circ}\text{F}$  may be doing his work in the ordinary way and be quite unaware that he has fever. A child will be seen playing cheerfully in the ward with a beaming smile on his face and a temperature of  $104^{\circ}\text{F}$  in his rectum.

**Cardio vascular system**—The blood pressure is usually low the systolic pressure often being below 100 mm Hg. The very prominent pulsation of the carotids in the neck, one of the most useful clinical signs is probably also due to this. 'Hæmic' cardiac murmurs are common.

The heart carries a very heavy burden of toxic effects. A certain amount of dilatation is the rule, and in a few cases hypertrophy of the heart has also been noted. Even in the earliest stages of the disease the rapidity of the pulse rate constitutes a valuable diagnostic sign.

**Œdema of the extremities** is comparatively common, it was found in 16 per cent of the Calcutta cases at the time of examination, but a very much greater number gave a history of swelling of the feet at some time.

**Clinically obvious ascites** is not common being found in less than 3 per cent of the Calcutta cases, in advanced case, when it is probably associated with cirrhotic changes in the liver, it occurs and is a bad prognostic sign.

#### PLATE IV

- Fig 1 A long-standing (five years) case of post kala azar dermal leishmaniasis with involvement of both corneæ the patient was almost blind.
- Fig 2 The same patient as in figure 1 a little over a year later after treatment sight in right eye almost normal.
- Fig 3 An acute case of dermal leishmaniasis the lesions developed to their present state in a few months being tense pink and shiny.
- Fig 4 Post-kala azar dermal leishmaniasis hypo-pigmented form. The whole skin area is involved except patches on the neck and in the axillæ and a band about 3 inches wide around the waist where the dhoti is tied. In these areas the normal colour of skin is seen. The patient had kala azar about three years before this photograph was taken.

Bleeding from the gums and epistaxis generally occur. Purpuric spots are not very uncommon and are sometimes a terminal symptom in a case running an acute course, they are often associated with uncontrollable hæmorrhage from the gums and into the bowel, a condition suggestive of Henoch's purpura. Retinal hæmorrhages have been observed in a few cases.

**Alimentary tract**—Gingivitis, with subsequent loosening of the teeth, is common. Stomatitis, other than cancrum oris, is not very uncommon at any stage, and in the late stages cancrum oris is the most classical and most fatal complication of the disease. The last-named condition, however, is not seen so often as in the days before a satisfactory form of treatment was introduced. Like œdema of the glottis, which also was formerly far commoner than now, it is always associated with extreme leucopenia.

The appetite is nearly always good, but the digestion is usually less satisfactory, with the result that intestinal disturbances may result from indiscretions in diet. Fractional gastric analyses show that there is little departure from the normal in the gastric acidity.

Diarrhœa and dysentery are such common complications that it has been suggested that there is a specific leishmanial dysentery, there is no support for this suggestion. Bowel disturbances are comparatively rare in a well regulated hospital, and respiratory diseases are far more common complications in these circumstances, in the country districts the reverse is usually the case. A terminal dysentery sometimes occurs.

**Respiratory system**—The respiratory system is peculiarly prone to inflammatory processes. At all stages of the disease an irritating cough is usually present without any considerable physical signs in the lungs to account for it. In a few cases this is the most distressing symptom of the disease, seriously interfering with the patient's rest at night. It has been suggested that this is due to irritation of the vagus from pressure caused by the enlarged spleen. In the later stages, some congestion of the bases of the lungs is common. Broncho-pneumonia is a very common complication.

The nervous system seems peculiarly free from attack by the parasites or their toxins. The mental condition is always quite clear, even in the final stages, and delirium is less common during pyrexial attacks in this disease than in any other, a point of diagnostic value.

Herpes zoster occurs sometimes during the course of the disease in a patient who is not under treatment, but it is much more often seen in a patient receiving antimony injections.

**Skin and subcutaneous tissues**—Certain very prominent changes, probably of a trophic nature, take place in the skin of a kala-azar patient.

(i) The whole skin surface becomes dry, rough, and harsh. The hair falls out and becomes very thin, sometimes children become almost bald. Skin eruptions are common, and all sores that form are slow to heal. The parasites can sometimes be found in the granulation tissue, but their presence here is probably due not to any special local deposition but to their presence in the general circulation. Acarus infections and septic folliculitis are very common, but are probably due rather to the habits of the patient than to any special liability of the tissues to attack by these organisms. Among some peoples in India it is the custom never to allow a patient with fever to have a bath.

(ii) The characteristic blackening of the skin, from which the disease derives its name, is possibly to a certain extent due to increased activity of the melanoblasts, as there is other evidence of hypo-adrenia but it is also probably an intensification of the natural pigmentation due to the dryness of the skin. It is most evident over the forehead and temples and occasionally around the mouth. The blackening is intensified by contrast with the anæmic pallor of the rest of the face. This pseudo-pigmentation is not seen in Europeans but is very marked in dark-skinned Anglo-Indians.

The skin over the tibia is stretched and glossy, and this condition is usually associated with pitting over the tibial periosteum.

**Urinary and reproductive systems**—Some symptoms occurring during the course of the disease suggest renal inefficiency, i.e. puffiness of the face, swelling of the legs, and some ascites. These are sometimes associated with a decreased output of urine. It is probable that the œdema is due to vasomotor disturbances, as the urine seldom provides evidence of any serious disturbance of renal function or to disturbance of the albumin-globulin ratio.

In women, amenorrhœa is often an early symptom and is almost invariable in a well-established case. Although conception is probably prevented in the later stages of the disease when amenorrhœa is established, the writer has seen cases in which conception occurred early in the disease, an uncomplicated pregnancy was continued to full term and was ended by the birth of a comparatively healthy child.

An instance in which the disease was apparently transmitted *in utero* came under the writer's notice some years ago. On the other hand, Muir reported the case of a pregnant woman who died of kala-azar, a necropsy was performed, and no trace of leishmania was found in the fetus.

#### Variations in the clinical picture in different countries

The above description applies to the clinical picture as it is seen in different places in India, and it applies generally to the disease as it is seen elsewhere, but in some countries the severe form of the disease is more common. In the Sudan, Stephenson (1940) has described an epidemic in which there was an 84 per cent mortality despite treatment. High fever, intractable diarrhœa, and hæmorrhages are the rule, and fatal complications, such as cancerum oris and pneumonia, are common.

Kirk and Satı (1940) have described a punctate rash which usually appears during the course of antimony treatment but sometimes independently of any treatment. Similar rashes have from time to time been observed in Indian kala-azar, but their specificity was questioned. They are quite distinct from the post-kala-azar dermal lesions. In the Sudan ulcers also appear to be a common complication and Kirk and Macdonald (1940) have described neurites and footdrop, neither has been observed by the writer, in India.

#### SEQUELÆ

Other than post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis, there are few sequelæ of importance and there is every reason to believe that after satisfactory treatment most patients recover completely and regain their original state of health. A condition of splenomegaly, anæmia and leucopenia appears to have occurred about two years after an attack of kala-azar in a few of our cases, but this syndrome is fairly common in Bengal and the proof that it occurs only in kala-azar cases is lacking. It has not been reported from elsewhere.

**Post kala azar dermal leishmaniasis**—Besides the biological interest that is aroused by this example of a change in the tropism of a micro-organism from a visceral to a dermal one, post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis is interesting from a number of points of view. When the first case was described (Brahmachari 1922), it was looked upon as a pathological freak, it remained a rare finding for a year or two, since then apparently its incidence has steadily increased, and at the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine notes have now been collected on over a thousand cases. Cases have been reported from Madras, very few from Assam, but, except for an isolated case here and there from China and the Sudan, none from the endemic areas outside India.

The observation that this form of dermal leishmaniasis is confined to the oldest endemic areas of kala azar and its apparent increase in incidence as the wave of kala-azar subsides led to the suggestion that it was an example of host-parasite adjustment (Napier and Krishnan, 1931). That it is a sequel to the generalized visceral infection, kala-azar, there can be no possible doubt, two-thirds of the patients give a history of having had kala-azar and treatment for it and nearly all the rest give a history of some febrile illness that might well have been kala-azar, there is a time relation between the visceral and dermal diseases, the latter making its first appearance usually about a year after the visceral attack has been completely cured, and finally, the leishmania that is always recoverable from the dermal lesions is in every way identical with *Leishmania donovani*, morphologically, in culture, in its development in the sand-fly, and in the production of lesions in experimental animals. Any suggestion that it is related to oriental sore, clinically an entirely different lesion, even in its non ulcerating form can be dismissed immediately, oriental sore does not occur in Bengal, and this form of dermal leishmaniasis has never been reported from areas where oriental sore is endemic.

A few years ago we estimated that in Bengal this condition followed in 5 per cent of all cases of kala-azar, subsequent experience has suggested that this was possibly an underestimate. Sand-flies feeding on these patients with dermal lesions readily become infected with leishmania. From an epidemiological point of view, therefore, this sequel may be very important.

Clinically, the dermal lesions take many forms, but the hypo-pigmented macule, the butterfly erythema, and the nodule are the commonest forms.

The hypo pigmented macules appear on any part of the body, the commonest sites are the upper trunk, arms, thighs, forearms, legs, abdomen, and neck, in that order, less common sites are the face, hands, and feet. The macules are pin point at first and increase up to about half an inch in diameter, although the individual macules are seldom larger, they may coalesce and form patches, they usually appear in different parts of the body simultaneously and not in successive crops. The whole body may be affected, with the result that a dark skinned Indian acquires the colour of a fair Iran. When this occurs there is usually a small area of skin somewhere in the body which has retained its original colour, Smith and Halder (1935) pointed out that the waistline, where the *dhota* was tied round and caused a constriction, often escaped depigmentation. On certain parts of the body, the macules gradually develop into nodules, but on the trunk, arms, and thighs they usually remain as macules. The degree of loss of pigmentation is fairly constant, it is never complete as in leucoderma but the colour is reduced as noted above (see plate IV, figure 4).

The butterfly erythema a typical form, occurs on the face, involving the nose, cheeks, and chin, but cases have been seen in which there was a flush over the whole body. The area involved is very photo sensitive, in the early mornings it is sometimes unnoticeable, but by mid day, after the patient has been in the bright light for a few hours, it becomes very prominent. Underlying the erythema there is sometimes a little depigmentation. This is again an early manifestation, coming on about a year after the kala-azar has been cured, it is usually associated with hypo-pigmented macules on other parts of the body, it usually disappears when the nodules develop, but it may persist for a year or two.

Nodules are generally a later manifestation but they may be the first to be noticed by the patient. They usually occur on the face and are comparatively rare on other parts of the body the nose, chin and cheek are the commonest sites, but there may also be nodules on the lips forehead and ears (see plate IV) and more rarely on the mucous membranes, e.g. the tongue.

They usually grow at the site of a hypo-pigmented patch or in the erythematous area, but occasionally they appear in normal skin. They sometimes occur in the mucous membranes of the lips, and they have been noted on the palate, in one case the nodules on the palate had broken down and ulcerated. Ulceration is very rare and even when a nodule is removed for diagnosis the wound heals rapidly. The nodules on the face may be very numerous and simulate leprosy very closely, one of our patients had been treated for thirty years as a leper.

Many other types of lesion have been seen and described (Napier and Das Gupta, 1934), the verrucose, papillomatous, hypertrophic, and xanthoma types.

Recently, we encountered a case (Napier, Kirwan and Sen 1941) in which there was a nodule on the cornea in which leishmaniae could be demonstrated (plate IV, figures 1 and 2).

## DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

In the endemic areas, the diagnosis of a case of well developed kala-azar does not present any difficulties. Although a diagnosis can be made with a fair amount of assurance on clinical grounds, it is unjustifiable to make one on these grounds alone, in view of the simplicity of the serum tests, these, however, are not of value in the earliest stages, when the diagnosis will have to depend on the demonstration of the parasite (see pp 160-163). A strongly positive aldehyde reaction (see p 164) in a patient with suggestive signs and symptoms is sufficient evidence for all practical purposes, but, for scientific purposes, especially if the data are to be used for appraising the value of different forms of treatment, the presence of the parasite should be demonstrated.

In the early stages of the disease (one month), most information will be obtained from the temperature chart. If the temperature assumes the typical double diurnal remittent form strong suspicions will naturally be aroused, but this form of temperature is comparatively rare. The temperature chart shown in figure 32 is very characteristic, after a month's pyrexia there is often a period of some days' apyrexia and then a steadily mounting remittent temperature without any accompanying increase of the symptoms or any physical signs except possibly the appearance of the spleen at the level of the costal arch and a pulse rate above 100, the



clean tongue and the mental alertness of the patient will be helpful signs. At this stage the leucocyte count will usually be about 4,000 per cmm. The serum tests will not be very helpful. The aldehyde test may be negative, but the experienced will often detect a faint cloud which should arouse suspicion in an early case, and the antimony test may be suggestive. The diagnosis can be confirmed by identifying the parasites in the peripheral blood by blood culture, or by gland or sternum puncture, as the spleen may not be easily punctured at this stage.

In the later stages (five months) the points of diagnostic value are the history of a long-continued fever resistant to quinine, progressive enlargement of the spleen, loss of weight, epistaxis or bleeding from the gums, falling of the hair, and increasing darkness of complexion (in dark-skinned people). Additional physical signs will be the spongy consistence of the enlarged spleen, the enlargement of the liver, the pulsation of the carotids in the neck, the clean tongue, and the rapid pulse.

Leucopenia will now be established, and the leucocyte count will almost certainly be below 4,000 and possibly as low as 2,000 per cmm, eosinophils will be few or absent, and granulocytes will form less than 50 per cent in the differential count, and the red cells will number about 3,000,000 and will be slightly hyperchromic. The aldehyde test will now be strongly positive. If it is desirable to confirm the diagnosis, after failure to find the parasite in the peripheral blood, puncture of the lymphatic glands, sternum, or spleen is the easiest method at this stage.

It should be remembered that every sign and symptom of the disease may be absent, the writer has seen many cases that were afebrile for months at a time, if not throughout the disease, and many in which the spleen was not palpable.

**Therapeutic tests**—It may be justifiable to exclude other infections, such as malaria, by giving quinine, but it is never justifiable to give a few antimony injections to exclude kala azar.

If other conditions that require immediate action can be excluded, it is far better to await developments than to rush into a diagnosis of kala-azar. Once treatment is begun, diagnosis becomes far more difficult. Patients do not die in the early stages of the disease (in India, at least) and, although their temperatures may run very high, they do not suffer much discomfort. There is no truth in the oft-repeated statement that the prognosis is better if the treatment is undertaken early, on the contrary, the best results are obtained in cases in which there is a history of four or five months' illness, as in these cases the patient's natural resistance has had time to develop. Nevertheless, in most circumstances treatment should be undertaken immediately a definite diagnosis is made.

In special circumstances it may be justifiable to make a provisional diagnosis of kala-azar and to give a *full course* of treatment, but once the treatment has been started failure to effect an early improvement must not be allowed to discourage one. Many resistant cases of kala-azar give a history of therapeutic tests and tinkering treatment of this kind.

### Diagnostic methods

**Parasites in the peripheral blood**—Parasites are always present in the peripheral blood in an untreated case of kala-azar, their discovery depends on the persistence of the searcher and the methods adopted. By searching four films made with a straight 'leucocytic edge', as suggested by Wright

for the opsonic index, and stained by Leishman's or Giemsa's method it should be possible to establish a diagnosis in 60 to 70 per cent of cases. Casual examination of an ordinary blood smear is of little value.

Blood culture should produce a positive result in 100 per cent of cases if the technique is beyond reproach, but it is a slow method, and it is unsafe to discard a culture as negative in less than one month although a positive result may be obtained within a week. Blood is taken from a vein in an oil-sterilized syringe, 0.5 c cm is added to 10 c cm of saline, 0.85 per cent containing 2 per cent of sodium citrate, the cells are allowed to settle, the cellular deposit is then sown into NNN tubes (a rabbit's blood agar slope with condensation fluid), these tubes are kept at 22°C, and a drop of the condensation fluid is examined at intervals in the fresh state. The flagellates will be seen as actively moving forms among the red cells. As the medium is easily contaminated it is advisable to sow into at least three tubes.

**Sternum puncture**—Recent experience has shown that this is a very valuable method of diagnosis. In a recent series of 80 subsequently proven cases of kala-azar, parasites were found in the sternum puncture smear in 71, or 89 per cent, in six of nine cases in which no parasites were found, a spleen puncture was done and parasites were found in the smear in three, in the remainder a positive culture was obtained. In a sternum puncture smear, parasites are always more difficult to find than in a spleen puncture smear from the same case, and in cases in which parasites are scanty they may easily not be found in the former. Thus, though it is a valuable additional method, and one that can be employed when the spleen is not puncturable, it has not replaced spleen puncture. It is a more painful procedure, and, though probably safer, experience has still to prove this.

A culture on NNN medium can be made from the material obtained by sternum puncture, but it is difficult with the apparatus at present at our disposal to avoid contamination, satisfactory cultures will however always show leishmaniae in a case of kala-azar.

**Technique of sternum puncture**—The Salish needle used for sternum puncture is shown below (figure 34). It is made of rustless steel and the bore is about the

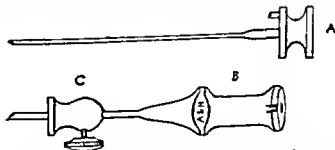


Figure 34. Sternum puncture needle (actual size)

same as that of a lumbar-puncture needle. The guard C on the needle can be moved so as to adjust the depth of the puncture. Usually the guard has to be fixed at a distance of 1 to 1.5 cm from the tip in order that the marrow may be reached. This distance will vary with the thickness of the skin and subcutaneous tissue of the thoracic wall in fat individuals as much as 2 cm may be required and in the very emaciated ones less than 1 cm. It may be found advisable to readjust the guard after the needle has reached the perosteum before it is pushed through the outer plate into the marrow cavity. The stylet A is kept in while the puncture is being made and is withdrawn after the cavity is reached.

**Procedure**—The hair over the sternum if there is any, is first clipped with a pair of scissors shaved with a razor, and the skin finally cleaned thoroughly with alcohol. The best site for the puncture is just to one side of the middle line at the level of the second intercostal space. This area is first anesthetized by infiltration with a 2 per cent solution of novocaine or its substitute. Some solution is first injected into the skin with a fine needle attached to a 2-cm syringe then the needle is pushed down to the periosteum and the rest of the solution injected. About 1 cm is usually sufficient in a thin individual but more is required where the subcutaneous tissue is deeper. After an interval of 5 to 10 minutes the actual puncture is made.

The apparatus is held with the knob of the stylet in the palm of the hand and the needle itself between the thumb and index finger, the latter being on the guard C of the needle. Pressure is applied and the skin and subcutaneous tissues are pierced. A rotatory movement will then facilitate puncture of the outer plate of the sternum. As the external plate of the sternum is pierced and the marrow cavity is entered, there is a sensation of loss of resistance, just as is felt on entering the spinal canal during lumbar puncture. The stylet is now taken out, a dry-sterilized 2-cm all glass or Record syringe is attached to the end of the needle and the marrow blood is aspirated. When the fluid is aspirated the patient feels a dragging pain which is a guide as to whether the needle is in the marrow cavity or not. Only a few drops of marrow (sinusoidal) blood are removed and the syringe and the sternum puncture needle are withdrawn. Digital pressure is applied over the puncture for a minute or two and the puncture is sealed with collodion. With the needle still attached to the syringe one drop is placed into NNN medium and the rest placed on clean slides for smears to be made, these are stained with Leishman's or Giemsa's stain and examined in the usual way.

Only very rarely will one fail to obtain blood. The commonest error is to fail to allow a sufficient length of needle. In this case the guard must be adjusted slightly the stylet replaced and the needle pushed in a little deeper. Occasionally, the needle goes too deeply and has to be withdrawn slightly before blood will come.

**Tibia puncture**—This is useful in small children, up to the age of about two years especially as in these young children the sternum is very soft and undated will not usually support the needle while the stylet is removed. The percentage of positive findings is however smaller.

The puncture is made about the middle of the shaft of the tibia with a sternum puncture needle. More force is required as the bone is denser even than the sternum of an adult.

**Spleen puncture**—The dangers of spleen puncture are much exaggerated but nevertheless it should never be performed unnecessarily or carelessly and the adoption of a rigid technique is advisable. In 95 per cent of cases of kala azar the parasites will be found in large numbers in the smear (stained by Leishman's or Giemsa's method) and in every case by cultivation directly into NNN or Senekjje's medium.

#### Technique of spleen puncture

**Preparation of patient.**—If possible the patient is given a dose of calcium lactate 30 grains on the previous night another dose in the morning and a third dose immediately after the operation. The patient is given no food on the morning of the operation and is kept in bed for the day, he is allowed food one hour after the puncture.

The writer has followed this procedure whenever possible for over 20 years and he has had no disasters in over 7,000 spleen punctures, he therefore hesitates to abandon it though he is doubtful if it is necessary or even if the rationale is sound. In the out-patient department he has used a considerably modified procedure, reducing the calcium lactate to two doses and the resting time to one hour after the puncture with equally good results.

**Procedure**—The puncture is done with a 5-cm syringe and a no 11\* needle about 1 to 1½ inches in length. If possible a special spleen puncture attachment should be used (Napier 1937) but although it facilitates the operation and must

\* No. 19 in the United States of America.

correspondingly decrease the danger, it is not essential (figure 35). The syringe is oil-sterilized or if an all-glass syringe is used it may be dry-sterilized.

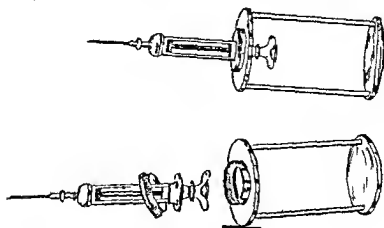


Figure 35 Spleen puncture fitment for syringe

The patient lies on a flat bed with fracture boards if necessary without a pillow and the operator sits on the edge of the bed on the left of the patient. The splenic area is sterilized with alcohol. The spot chosen for the puncture is half an inch below the costal margin about the centre of the parastal surface of the spleen. At this spot the skin is touched with pure phenol which after a minute is wiped off with a spirit swab. If an ordinary syringe is used an assistant standing on the other side of the bed should place his right hand below the spleen to prevent downward movement. If the special spleen puncture attachment is used the operator's left hand is free and he can do this himself.

The puncture is made in two movements. By the first the skin alone is punctured; this can be done at a very acute angle with the skin surface just the tip of the needle should go through the skin. The direction of the needle is then changed and it should be pointed in an upward and outward direction parallel with the long axis of the spleen and at an angle of about 45° with the skin surface. The needle is then plunged into the spleen the piston withdrawn rapidly two or three times and the needle withdrawn. Whereas the first movement is done slowly and deliberately the second the puncture of the spleen must be done rapidly because the longer the needle remains in the spleen the greater is the danger of tearing the capsule. The contents of the syringe are ejected on to a slide and into culture medium. It is necessary to have only the smallest trace of blood in the needle and not on any account must the withdrawal of the plunger be continued because blood cannot be seen in the syringe. Sometimes the syringe does fill rapidly with blood but this is not a serious matter.

A binder should be put round the abdomen with a pad over the point where the puncture was made. In about 10 per cent of cases the spleen is tender for the next 24 hours but most patients do not have any discomfort.

**Liver puncture** — In the writer's practice sternum puncture has entirely displaced liver puncture the latter holds no advantages over the former, and has many disadvantages but in the absence of a palpable spleen and special sternum puncture needle or a suitable improvisation it may be indicated.

In at least 10 per cent of kala azar cases parasites will not be found in the smears although culture will probably give 100 per cent positive results. It is usually necessary to make the puncture between the ribs, and also to withdraw the plunger a number of times to be certain of obtaining blood as the organ is not so vascular as the spleen. Otherwise there is little difference in the technique.

**Gland puncture**—In China (Cochrane, 1912) and in the Sudan (Kirk and Sati, 1940) gland puncture is found a useful method of diagnosis, in the latter workers' experience, a diagnosis can always be made by this method, but other workers in the Sudan have been less successful. In India we seldom find the lymphatic glands sufficiently enlarged for the puncture to be made, and when, in an emaciated patient, it is possible to grip the glands between the finger and thumb, the findings are usually negative.

**Procedure**—Take a medium-sized dry sterilized hypodermic needle (no 11) Grip a lymphatic gland e.g. an inguinal or a cervical gland, between the finger and thumb and after sterilizing the skin plunge the needle into the gland and leave it for half a minute or so. Then withdraw it and force out the contained fluid on to a slide and into culture medium in the ordinary way, scanty leishmanise will usually be found and will grow in the NNN medium. It is usually possible by kneading the gland between the finger and thumb to obtain enough fluid without suction but this may assist.

**Culture on laboratory medium**—The material obtained by spleen, sternum, liver, or gland puncture may be inoculated into NNN or Senekje's medium. This must be done with very strict aseptic precautions.

After the spleen puncture has been made the material should first be squirted out on to a slide without the point of the needle being allowed to touch the slide and then about half a cubic centimetre of sterile saline or citrate saline should be drawn into the syringe and a few drops of diluted spleen puncture material placed into each of three tubes of culture medium. This medium is placed in a 22° C incubator.

It is not advisable to examine the NNN medium within seven days, but with Senekje's medium a profuse growth may be obtained at an earlier date. Great care must be taken to prevent contamination when a tube is opened. A loop of condensation fluid is examined under the high-power objective and, if it is positive, rapidly moving leptomonad forms will be seen darting across the field.

**Senekje's medium**—In 1000 ccm of distilled water dissolve 50 grammes of 'bacto' beef extract. Heat at 50° C for one hour and at 80° C for 5 minutes. Filter through paper and add —Neopeptone (Difeo), 20 grammes, Agar (preferably Nobel), 20 grammes, Sodium chloride, 5 grammes.

Adjust to pH 7.2 to 7.4 and autoclave at 15 pounds pressure for 20 minutes.

As the agar cools, but before it 'sets', add 10 per cent of defibrinated rabbit's blood. Mix by rotating between the palms and slope or pour into a petri dish.

#### Serum tests

The serum tests all depend on the increase in the euglobulin fraction (*vide supra*). Many modifications have been introduced, but the writer much prefers the aldehyde test. Chopra's antimony test has the advantage of giving a positive result earlier in the disease, but in cases with a large spleen not due to kala azar it is liable to give a false positive, therefore, in an early case without splenic enlargement both tests should be done, but in a well-established case with a large spleen, the aldehyde test can be relied upon.

**Aldehyde (Napier) test**—This reaction is not fully developed until the third to the fifth month and after successful treatment takes about four months to disappear so that it is of little value as a test for cure.

To 1 ccm of clear serum one or two drops of commercial formalin are added. In a strongly positive result the serum becomes solid and completely opaque like the white of a hard boiled egg within a very few minutes if it becomes completely opaque within 24 hours the result is still considered positive. Doubtful results are solidification of the serum with various degrees of cloudiness. In a negative result the serum remains crystal clear, although it may solidify

**Reading the result.**—The final result should be read at the end of 24 hours, but with experience a very good idea of the probable result will be obtained in half an hour

(a) **Positive** Solid, white and completely opaque (hard-boiled egg), no light transmitted through the serum. If complete opacity is produced in 20 minutes, the result is +++, if in two hours, ++, and if in 24 hours, +

(b) **Doubtful (+)** Solid, with milky appearance which looks opaque against a dark background, but shows the shape of the window when held up to the light, after 24 hours

(c) **Doubtful ±** Solid, slightly milky but quite transparent after 24 hours

(d) **Negative (—)** Solid but crystal clear, after 24 hours

(e) **Negative —ive** Serum unchanged (fluid), after 24 hours

**Diagnostic value of test.**—The test is seldom completely negative after one month from the onset of the disease, and after five months it is nearly always strongly positive. Although the margin between these two events appears to be a wide one, in actual practice in an endemic area it has been found that with this test a definite diagnosis can be made with very little risk of error in at least 70 per cent of cases that attend the out-patient department, for example, a negative diagnosis can be made in a patient with a long history of illness and a spleen below the navel, if the test gives a doubtful or negative result (as it would certainly be positive if the disease were kala-azar), but, if the same doubtful result were given in the case of a patient with a very small spleen and a short history of fever, it would be necessary to take other steps to exclude kala-azar.

A definitely positive reaction may be taken as indicating kala-azar. In Calcutta, where neither trypanosomiasis nor schistosomiasis occurs in at least 20 000 tests the writer has only encountered a dozen instances in which the result was positive in cases other than kala-azar.

TABLE II THE INTERPRETATION OF THE RESULTS OF THE ALDEHYDE TEST

Size of spleen \ Aldehyde test reading	+++ ++ or +*	(+)	±	(—)	—ive
Below the navel	Kala-azar	Doubtful	Not kala-azar	Not kala-azar	Not kala-azar
Four inches or more below costal margin but not below the navel	Kala-azar	Probably kala-azar*	Possibly kala-azar	Probably not kala-azar	Not kala-azar
Two inches or more but less than four below costal margin	Kala-azar	Kala-azar*	Possibly kala-azar	Probably not kala-azar	Doubtful
Palpable but less than two inches below costal margin, or not palpable	Kala-azar	Kala-azar*	Possibly kala-azar	Doubtful	Doubtful

\* Except when there are obvious signs of advanced tuberculosis or leprosy

**Antimony (Chopra) test.**—The serum is diluted ten times with double-distilled water and is placed in a narrow-bored test-tube, to this, 4 per cent urea-stibamine solution is added with a Wright's pipette. The tube is then rotated between the palms to mix the contents. In a strongly positive reaction there is a heavy flocculent precipitate, in a less strongly positive reaction a fine flocculent precipitate, in a doubtful reaction a distinct cloudiness, and in a negative reaction the two fluids mix without any precipitation.

**Reading the result. Positive** This is indicated by a heavy flocculent precipitate forming almost immediately, this settles as a flocculent mass in the course of half an hour or so

**Doubtful** This is indicated by a fine granular precipitate which settles more slowly but forms a more compact mass at the bottom of the tube

**Negative** In a negative result no precipitate occurs

There is usually a doubtful reaction at the end of the first month or even earlier and a positive one at the end of the second or third month. In cases of enlarged spleen from other causes, a positive reaction is sometimes given, therefore the test can be relied on only in cases with little splenic enlargement

TABLE III THE INTERPRETATION OF THE RESULTS OF THE ANTIMONY TEST

Antimony test reading	Positive	Doubtful	Negative
Size of spleen			
Below the navel			
Four inches or more below costal margin but not below the navel	Doubtful Probably kala azar	Not kala azar Doubtful	Not kala azar Not kala-azar
Two inches or more but less than four below costal margin	Kala azar *	Doubtful	Probably not kala azar
Palpable but less than two inches below costal margin or not palpable	Kala azar *	Doubtful	Doubtful

\* Except when there are obvious signs of advanced tuberculosis or leprosy

**The Globulin-precipitation test**—In the globulin-precipitation test, one part of serum is added to three parts of distilled water. In kala-azar a flocculent precipitate forms. The test has the same limitations as the above two tests and is less specific

**Other experience**—In the Sudan, the serum tests have not proved of much value, and in China the more delicate tests which give very misleading results in India, e.g. the globulin-precipitation test, are sometimes preferred to the aldehyde test. A recent elaboration is a photometric test with 1 in 1000 dilution of serum and 1 in 100 urea stibamine solution (d Oelsnitz 1938)

**Antibody tests**—The complement fixation test with a flagellate culture as antigen usually gives reliable results once the disease is well established. This is also true of the test with the WKK antigen (Grevel Sen Gupta & Napier, 1939). Senekje (1944 personal communication) has devised a slide agglutination test which is quite specific with infected animals

**Differential Diagnosis**—In the early stages, kala-azar has to be diagnosed from all other febrile diseases, especially malaria, typhoid fever and all such conditions that have no very distinctive exanthemata or localizing signs, and in the later stages from

- other febrile diseases especially those in which there are long febrile periods alternating with periods of apyrexia
- conditions in which the spleen is enlarged
- conditions in which the liver is enlarged
- conditions in which there is marked leucopenia

The simulation is more complete when two or more of these abnormalities are present. In this category are chronic relapsing malaria, undulant fever, amœbic liver abscess, intestinal tuberculosis, Hodgkin's disease with the Pel-Ebstein syndrome, Banti's disease, leukaemia, infantile biliary cirrhosis, schistosomiasis and histoplasmosis. In none of these instances will differentiation present any difficulties if the above procedures are followed.

**Diagnosis of post kala azar dermal leishmaniasis.**—The hypopigmented macules and the erythematous rash are clinically very typical and will seldom be mistaken by those with experience of the disease. In these cases parasites can be found in the tissues but it is difficult to demonstrate them and there is no simple procedure which can be recommended for routine use. On the other hand in the nodules the parasites can be detected with ease: a nodule is seized with a fine pair of forceps and snipped off with a pair of curved scissors. Smears are made by rubbing the cut surface of this nodule on a slide which is then stained by Leishman's or Giemsa's method. Typical parasites will be seen lying in endothelial cells or free as a result of rupture of a cell.

### PREVENTION

A sufficiently large number of facts regarding the epidemiology of the disease has been accumulated for us to recognize the conditions under which transmission occurs and the first measure of prevention is to avoid these; the reader is referred back to pages 139-142.

For transmission to occur two factors are necessary: (a) *the source of infection* and (b) *the transmitting insects* and preventive measures can be considered under these two headings.

(a) *The source of infection.*—There are in India, as far as we know, no animal reservoirs of infection so that man is always the source of infection. A patient with kala azar will be the richest source of infection but once treatment has been started the parasites usually disappear from the peripheral blood.

The only control measure that has been undertaken on a public health scale has been a treatment campaign. Such a scheme was instituted in Assam from the year 1922 onwards. A similar scheme was put into operation in Bengal a few years later. These treatment campaigns undoubtedly had a great influence in controlling the disease in these provinces in cutting short the epidemic in the former and possibly in delaying the next epidemic wave which according to previous experience is already overdue. In Bihar which was never such a highly endemic area but in which no treatment campaign was undertaken there has been a marked rise in incidence in the last year or so: no similar rise is yet (1942) apparent in the other two provinces.

In a small experimental area near Calcutta where we undertook an intensive treatment campaign about 15 years ago there has been no recrudescence of the disease in an area where there were 121 and 137 cases in the years 1925 and 1926; there were no cases in 1937 and only sporadic cases have occurred since.

As a case of dermal leishmaniasis is a potential source of danger and as there are always residual cases of this condition in an endemic area it will probably never be possible to eradicate kala azar completely by



means of treatment campaigns, but the disease can apparently be controlled to a great extent, by reducing the sources of infection to a minimum.

In the Mediterranean endemic areas and in China, the evidence is accumulating that dogs act as reservoirs of infection. An attempt should be made to estimate the extent of the infection amongst the local canine community, and, if it is found to be high, a campaign against all stray dogs should be undertaken.

(b) The transmitting insects.—The conditions under which sand-flies (*Phlebotomus argentipes*) flourish have been indicated (p 145).

Damp ground-floor residences should be avoided; no dark corners should be allowed in the rooms and a through draft should be arranged; no vegetation should be allowed close up to the house; all animals should be kept away from the house; a yard or more around the house should be paved with cement and no crevices should be allowed; and chloride of lime should be spread on any uncovered earth near the house to destroy the sand-fly larvæ. The building itself should be of brick and should be kept well pointed. Concrete floors are to be preferred and must be kept in repair. In the case of poorer-class dwellings, it is better to have thin bamboo-matting walls than mud walls or even plastered reeds.

The control of sand-flies in rural areas is very difficult and has yet not become a practicable measure for preventing kala-azar, but the removal of a coolie colony to a new site was practised even before the means of transmission was understood, and the measure proved very successful. By this means the old breeding places of the sand-flies were left behind and it took some time for the flies to establish themselves on the new site. It was however well recognized that if the huts were simply burnt down and rebuilt on the old site, there was no interruption of the kala-azar epidemic.

### TREATMENT

Historical.—The history of the treatment of kala-azar can conveniently be divided into three phases: the pre-antimony period, the antimony era, and the new chemotherapeutic era.

The Pre-antimony Period.—Prior to 1915, kala-azar was, it is said, fatal in 95 per cent of cases. This left out of consideration those cases in which the disease disappeared spontaneously, there is indirect evidence that this occurs more often than was previously supposed, but probably 75 per cent of those infected died of the disease within two or three years.

The Antimony Era.—In 1915, Di Cristina and Caronia introduced the treatment by potassium antimonyl tartrate given intravenously, a treatment which had been used two years earlier by Vianna and Machado in American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. This treatment was used in India by Rogers and by Muir later in the same year; later, the former introduced a valuable modification, using the less toxic sodium antimonyl tartrate.

In China and the Sudan, on the other hand, the result obtained with the antimonyl tartrates was so poor that these drugs were never used systematically.

The next important advance was the introduction of the pentavalent antimony compounds. All the earliest and most of the more successful of these have been prepared by Professor Hans Schmidt. Caronia first used sodium *para*-acetylaminophenyl stibinate clinically in Italy in 1916. After the 1914/18 war, when the preparation was sent out to India, we were less successful with this compound, but many similar compounds were prepared by Schmidt and tested by the writer in India. Of these sodium *meta*-chlor-*para*-acetylaminophenyl-stibinate (Napier, 1923) and diethylamine-*para*-aminophenyl-stibinate (Napier, 1927 and 1932) were successively chosen for more extensive clinical trial; the latter was, until the beginning of the 1939 war when supplies were cut off, very widely used throughout the world under the name neostibosan. In 1922a Brahmachari introduced urea stibamide, another preparation of *para*-aminophenylstibinic acid, which he had prepared in India. A comprehensive account of the antimony preparations used in the treatment of kala-azar and other diseases has been given by Schmidt and Peter.

In 1937 Napier Chaudhuri and Rai Chaudhuri first used solustibosan Bayer 561 a pentavalent compound that can be given intramuscularly and makes a stable solution so that it can be supplied conveniently in ampoules in our later experience we found it less efficacious than neostibosan

**The New Chemotherapeutic Era.**—In 1939 Adams and Yorke used 4,4-diamidino-stilbene in the treatment of a case of kala-azar in England Adler and Rachmilewits (1939) in a case of infantile kala azar in Palestine Kirk and Sati (1940a) in 8 cases of Sudanese kala azar and Napier and Sen (1940) in 8 cases of kala-azar in India all with very successful results The writer followed this preliminary report with a report on 100 cases *one quarter of which were antimony-resistant cases* (Napier *et al* 1942) which showed that this drug was the most powerful that had so far been used in the treatment of the disease

Recent experience particularly in the Sudan seems to indicate that diamidino-stilbene may prove a very toxic drug but what determines this toxicity is not yet clear No immediate serious toxic symptoms occurred in any of our hundred cases but the paresthesia and dissociated anaesthesia in the area served by the sensory part of the 5th cranial nerve has been so troublesome and so persistent in a majority of our cases that we do not feel justified in using this drug in any but really resistant cases (Napier and Sen Gupta 1942)

Kirk has also given a short trial to 4,4-diamidino-diphenoxy pentane and our results so far with this drug have been very satisfactory In some twenty odd cases we have obtained an *earlier fall of temperature* than with the diamidino-stilbene the fall of blood pressure appears to be less but we cannot yet say whether the neuropathy will follow the injections of this preparation also

**Discussion**—As far as India was concerned the introduction of the antimonyl tartrate constituted a very great advance the death rate among treated kala azar patients was reduced to about 20 per cent but the treatment was very prolonged taking from two to three months patients were very liable not to persist with it and many relapses occurred

The advantage of the pentavalent compounds is that they are very much less toxic and can therefore be given in very much larger doses this means that the duration of treatment can be cut down very materially They do not cause some of the serious by effects of the antimonyl tartrates and consequently the mortality among patients under treatment is very much lower, in our series of more than 500 cases treated by neostibosan it was only about 2 per cent By an intensive course of treatment the period in hospital can be reduced to one week

It is now clear to the writer that kala azar in Bengal is infinitely more amenable to treatment than is the same disease in other parts of the world He was at one time inclined to be critical of the methods of other workers, which he judged by their results and he now fears that these same workers, failing to confirm his results in their own countries must have questioned his veracity The writer spent some months in Assam in 1928 and he found that the patients in this province required at least 25 per cent more treatment than his Calcutta patients he visited China in 1934 and came to the conclusion that at least 50 per cent more treatment was required there reports on infantile kala azar in Malta and elsewhere in the Mediterranean indicated that relative to weight at least twice as much antimony was required to effect a cure and reports from the Sudan (Henderson 1937) show that a very poor cure rate, at the most 50 per cent, could be expected with neostibosan however much the course of treatment was prolonged

The aromatic diamidines appear to constitute another advance, as infinitely better results than hitherto have been obtained in the Sudan and even in Calcutta our previously more successful results have been surpassed further, excellent results have been obtained in antimony-resistant cases

### Specific treatment

**Antimonyl tartrates**—The only reason for using the old form of treatment with the antimonyl tartrates is the higher cost of the new preparations. Relatively unsatisfactory as the former salts are, they are better than no treatment at all, and in poor countries will probably remain in use for many years.

Either the potassium or the sodium salt may be used, but the latter is less toxic. A 2-per-cent solution in physiological saline (0.85 per cent in distilled water) is prepared and to it 0.5 per cent of phenol is added to prevent the growth of moulds. This solution will keep for some weeks, but it should be examined carefully before it is used, to see that there is no precipitate. For adults the initial dose is 2 c cm, this should be increased by 1 c cm with each dose up to 5 c cm, the injections must be given intravenously, and if the solution leaks into the tissues very severe reactions will follow, injections should be given on alternate days or three times a week, and as a minimum twenty-five injections will be necessary.

Coughing, vomiting and joint pains are common accompaniments of this treatment, and it may be necessary to increase the dosage more slowly or even in some cases to reduce it so as to obviate these symptoms, this prolongs the course of treatment, and the results are correspondingly less satisfactory.

**Neostibosan** \* • di-ethyl amine *para*-amino-phenyl stibinate.—This is supplied in sealed ampoules as a light-brown powder, which is dissolved in sterilized distilled water. The strength of the solution is not a matter of great importance, but we generally use 5 per cent for intravenous injections although strengths up to 25 per cent can be used.

In adults it is better to give the drug intravenously, but in children this is often difficult, it can be given intramuscularly and then a 25-per-cent solution should be used; this reduces the bulk of fluid and makes an isotonic solution. It should be given into the buttocks on alternate sides, there may be slight local reaction but often there is none and abscess formation is very rare. Only one abscess occurred in a series of twenty adults treated with intramuscular injections, and we have never seen an abscess in a child.

**Dosage**—The first dose for an adult should be 0.2 and subsequent doses 0.3 gramme. The adult dose can be given to children of 60 pounds or more, about 50 pounds 0.25 gramme, about 40 pounds 0.2 gramme, about 30 pounds 0.15 gramme, and about 20 pounds 0.1 gramme for the maximum dose may be taken as a rough guide to dosage. Children tolerate a relatively larger dose than adults and seem to require it. It may be advisable to modify the dosage in very debilitated patients.

The injections may be given daily or on alternate days, better results being obtained from daily injections.

**Length of treatment**—It is extremely difficult to be dogmatic about the length of the course of treatment. A high rate of cures was obtained by giving eight injections on eight consecutive days. Workers in other

\* Di-ethyl-amine *para*-amino-phenyl stibinate was made by the German I. G. Farben and marketed under the name *neostibosan*. It is now made by Winthrop and Co. and marketed under the same name.

countries, especially those in the Sudan, in China and in some of the Mediterranean areas, have not found that this short course is sufficient (*vide supra*). In any case, if the economic aspect does not predominate, it is probably safer to extend the course to twelve injections, but, when it is a matter of curing the largest number of persons with a given quantity of the drug, eight injections constitute probably the optimal course, according to Indian experience.

**Response to treatment**—Little notice should be taken of the immediate response of each patient to the treatment, especially when the daily dosage is adopted, as, at the conclusion of a course of treatment, which the subsequent history of the patient shows was successful, the patient may show very little improvement, even the fever remaining until after the last injection has been given. Although as a rule the temperature comes down after five or six injections, there is seldom much reduction in the size of the spleen until about a fortnight after the beginning of the treatment, it then decreases steadily. Figure 36 shows a characteristic response to treatment in an average case.

After three weeks the spleen should be considerably reduced, the patient should be gaining weight—he may lose weight for the first two weeks—the leucocyte count should be above 6000 per cmm, and he should be free from fever. When he is in this state, the patient is probably cured, if not, he may be going to relapse, and a second course of injections may be necessary. In some cases, however, progress is very slow, and unless there is a definite return of fever,

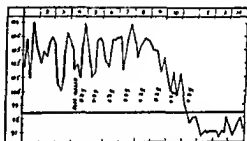


Figure 36 A characteristic response to treatment in an average case

which is not due to some complicating infection, it is probably advisable not to embark too readily on a second course but to wait a few weeks before starting it. In the relapsing case the temperature usually mounts slowly, any sharp rise during the course of treatment is generally due to some coincident infection—malaria being by far the commonest in India. In most

cases in which malaria supervenes, it is obvious that the disease must have been latent, and when patients come from a malaria endemic area it is advisable to give a course of quinine or other anti-malarial drug as a routine when the antimony course is completed.

Patients afebrile at the beginning of treatment not uncommonly show a febrile reaction, in the form of a daily rise of temperature or a sharp rise after each injection.

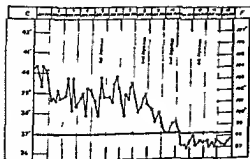


Figure 37 Early response to neostibosan treatment, the temperature remained normal subsequently

**Urea stibamine** — Urea stibamine has been extensively used in India and in a series of cases treated in our hospital gave very good results. It is slightly more toxic than neostibosan and cannot be given in such large doses we found that 0.25 gramme was the largest dose that it was advisable to use but most workers advocate 0.2 gramme as a maximum the injections should be given on alternate days or three times a week but not daily. The initial dose recommended is 0.05 gramme the second 0.1 gramme the third 0.15 gramme and the fourth and subsequent doses 0.2 gramme. This drug also is supplied in sealed ampoules the strength of solution is not important but as the solution cannot be sterilized by heating sterilized distilled water must be used. It should be given intravenously. If allowed to leak into the subcutaneous tissues or if given intramuscularly it causes much more pain than neostibosan but not the very severe reactions caused by sodium antimonyl tartrate. The course of treatment is from twelve to fifteen injections.

**Other antimony preparations** — Neostam gave satisfactory results in our cases. The dosage is much the same as for neostibosan. Antimosan and foudadin are aromatic trivalent compounds a cure can be effected with either but they are not so satisfactory as the pentavalent compounds for the visceral form of the disease about twenty injections being required.

**Complications associated with antimony treatment** — Whereas with the trivalent salts of antimony coughing vomiting joint pains and the more serious lung complications commonly occur with the pentavalent compounds complications are rare. With neostibosan practically the only complication that ever occurs is a sharp rise of temperature on the day of the injection this may be accompanied by vomiting. Very rarely this is due to some idiosyncrasy on the part of the patient and the dosage has to be modified until tolerance is established but more often it is due to some defect in the solution. We have never traced this to the drug but always to the distilled water in which it is dissolved since the use of a fresh supply of distilled water has always eliminated the reactions.

With some of the pentavalent compounds but very rarely with neostibosan a condition suggesting anaphylactic shock occurs. Usually this does not follow the first injection but one of the later ones the fifth or sixth thus suggesting that the patient has been sensitized. This reaction has not been observed when daily injections are given but has been reported in a few cases in which wider spacing of the injections was adopted. A few minutes after an injection the patient's face becomes puffy and an urticarial rash appears all over the body the voice becomes husky and the patient has difficulty in breathing he becomes collapsed and the pulse is imperceptible at the wrist he often has diarrhoea and vomiting and he may become cyanosed and unconscious for a few minutes. Recovery is usually rapid and is accelerated by an injection of solution of adrenaline hydrochloride and the administration of a diffusible stimulant. For the continuance of the treatment the best course is to employ another compound and to begin with minute doses.

With higher doses of urea stibamine and of some of the other compounds hæmorrhages from the gums nose and stomach sometimes occur we have also seen retinal hæmorrhages and in one or two cases cerebral hæmorrhages have been suspected.

The aromatic diamidines—In our present state of knowledge, great caution should be exercised in using these drugs (*vide supra*) and they should be reserved for antimony resistant cases only. The dosage recommended below is that used by the writer who has treated well over a hundred cases with 4,4'-diamidino diphenyl ethylene (stilbene) and thirty or so with 4,4'-diamidino diphenyl pentane. The immediate reactions described below have been more prominent in the case of the former drug and the late sequel has only been noted with this drug but our experience with the latter has been too short and too recent for us to say that the neuropathological sequel described below does not occur.

They are supplied in the form of a white powder in sealed ampoules this is dissolved in distilled water to make a 1 per cent solution and given intravenously. The injections are given daily and very slowly. The maximum dose should not exceed 1 milligramme (0.001 gramme) per pound weight of patient. In adults irrespective of size and condition (because we have found that weak emaciated individuals stand the drug best) we give 0.025 g as the initial dose. If this is followed by a very severe reaction we give 0.035 g next day but precede the dose by an injection of 0.25 c.c.m. of 1 in 1000 adrenaline if the reaction is mild we increase the dose to 0.05 g but still give the adrenaline or if there is no reaction we make the next dose 0.050 g without adrenaline. The doses are increased as rapidly as possible by 0.010 g or 0.020 g according to the reactions up to the maximum namely 0.001 g per pound weight of patient to the nearest 0.010 g, adrenaline is given for the next dose whenever there is a marked reaction to the previous dose and it is usually possible to omit it after the maximum has been reached.

Children stand the drug better than adults we usually start with 0.010 g and increase the dose by 0.005 g to well over the 0.001 g per pound maximum. In a few cases we gave the drug intramuscularly: it was distinctly painful and caused a sharp local reaction but produced no abscess. The effect seemed to be about as good as when it was given intravenously but we were slightly bolder with our dosage as there was practically no general reaction.

We gave 10 injections in the majority of cases. This meant a varying total dose. It is probably safe in our present state of knowledge to aim at a total dose of not less than 0.750 g per 100 pounds weight of patient and 1.000 gramme for resistant cases. Other workers have recommended a maximum of 0.001 g per kilogramme but in the writer's experience some of the worst reactions followed the earlier injections which were always small and as he found little difficulty in reaching his higher maximum he considers that it is unnecessary to prolong the course of treatment or alternately to risk having to repeat it. Kirk in the Sudan seems to have given a much more extended course and greater total doses in his series of 8 cases (Kirk and Sati 1940a) he obtained cures with total doses varying from 0.975 g in 24 doses to 4.400 grammes in 70 doses and in his later report (Kirk and Sati 1940b) his total dose varied from 0.750 g to 4.900 g.

The good effects of treatment with the aromatic diamidine are not immediately apparent and in the vast majority of cases the temperature remains until after the course is complete in fact in many the first few injections appear to cause an exacerbation of all the symptoms. The temperature usually falls to normal a day or two after the last injection.

about a week later there is a sudden very rapid decrease in the size of the spleen, and the patient then begins to put on weight (see figures 38, 39 and 40)

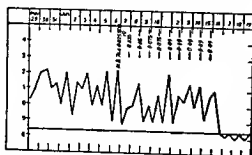


Figure 38 Response to diamidino-stilbene no fall of temperature until course is complete the usual response

loss of control of the bowels and urine and loss of conjunctival reflex, in the worst case in the writer's experience, the patient a well-developed and healthy-looking man with no discoverable abnormality except an oriental sore, who had received a dose of less than 0.0005 gramme per pound body weight, remained unconscious for about an hour, but recovered completely in another hour or so

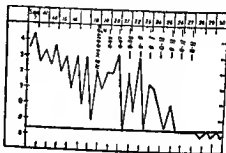


Figure 39 Response to diamidino-stilbene earlier fall of temperature

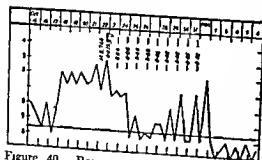


Figure 40 Response to diamidino-stilbene very early fall usually results in a subsequent febrile reaction

As noted above, most of these symptoms can be obviated, or reduced to a minimum by a small dose of adrenaline before the injection of the drug, and a moderate dose after the injection will usually relieve the patient rapidly. Where vomiting is prominent, this can be reduced to some extent by giving the drug on an empty stomach but otherwise it is better to give it not more than two hours after a meal

In about twenty cases, that is in over half the patients actually seen by us subsequently, a curious neuropathy occurred, namely, a subjective disturbance of sensation over various parts of the trigeminal nerve area, hyperæsthesia, paræsthesia, anaesthesia, and formication, and loss of sensation to light touch but preservation of the sense of pressure and pain. The first symptom is usually numbness of the area and is noticed about three months after the course is completed. The condition has persisted in one case for nearly two years, it showed little increase from the time we first saw the patient, five months after discharge from hospital, and has now decreased slightly (see figure 41)

Several patients have been treated with large doses of aneurin without effect, but subjective improvement has appeared to follow the (empirical)

*The reactions and sequelæ* — Some reactions will be noticed in almost every case. The mild reactions include a headache, flushing of the face, sweating, and a burning sensation all over the body. In the more severe cases the headache will be intense, there will be giddiness, faintness, palpitations, and epigastric pain and vomiting. The most severe symptoms will be collapse, unconsciousness,

administration of cobra venom, intramuscularly, in doses of 0.1 c cm rising to 1.0 c cm 1 in 100,000, every third day, in a number of cases



Figure 41 Affected areas in three cases of post-diamidino-stilbene neuropathy

### Subsidiary treatment

Very little subsidiary treatment is of any value until the course of specific has been completed, indeed, whatever other treatment is given, nothing should be allowed to interfere with the course of injections once they have been begun. When there are complicating infections, such as malaria, and hookworm disease, the kala-azar should be treated first. It has been suggested that heavy hookworm infections diminish the effect of the specific kala-azar treatment, there is no evidence that this is the case, but treatment of the hookworm infection should always be delayed until one course of antimony has been given, though it is not necessary to wait to see if the cure of the kala-azar is complete.

The blood picture will soon return to normal, but this may be accelerated by a course of ferrous sulphate, 9 grains a day for two weeks. In cool climates or in the cold weather in India, malt and cod-liver oil and in the hot weather, compound syrup of hypophosphites, or some other suitable tonic, should be given during convalescence.

**Diet**—As a rule it is not necessary to enforce any severe dietary restrictions unless this is indicated by special symptoms. Some patients are always attacked by diarrhoea when allowed a full diet, and when the fever is at its height it is inadvisable to allow a high protein diet, but most patients have a good appetite and do well on a liberal diet. Our hospital patients are allowed an ordinary diet unless there is some special contra-indication, but for out-patients and others not immediately under control a vegetarian diet with only a little rice plenty of milk, and eggs is recommended.

**Treatment of complications**—Practically there are no complications which warrant the discontinuance of the specific treatment, frank pneumonia being possibly the exception. In the presence of cancerum oris, the specific treatment should be begun immediately, and the injections given daily. The mouth should be kept as clean as possible with a solution of hydrogen peroxide, eusol, or other mild antiseptic lotions, vigorous local treatment with strong antiseptics should be avoided. Plastic surgery may eventually be necessary to replace lost tissue.

**Treatment of resistant cases**—Other complications should be treated symptomatically. A resistant case may be defined as one in which a cure is not effected by an ordinary course of treatment which will cure from 90 to 95 per cent of patients, it is therefore a relative term, but nevertheless



patients seem to be divided fairly sharply into two classes, the ordinary and the resistant. When a patient who has a clear history of having had a full course of treatment a month or two before is found still to have a visceral infection, he should be classed as a resistant case and treated accordingly.

Early experience with the aromatic diamidines indicates that these are the drugs of choice in resistant cases. We have prolonged the course to 12 or 15 injections in resistant cases with a mean total dose of 0.919 g. and a mean relative dose of 1.048 g. per 100 lb. of body-weight of patient, we cured (apparently) 22 out of 25 antimony-resistant cases.

Previously, the course of neostibosan that we gave in a resistant case (adult) was as follows —

Twelve injections in twelve days beginning with 0.2, followed by 0.3, 0.4, and subsequently 0.5 gramme daily, an interval of twelve days, a second series of twelve injections, beginning with a dose of 0.3 gramme, another interval of twelve days, and a third series of twelve injections beginning with 0.3 gramme.

If the patient shows little sign of improvement during the first series of injections, it is advisable to give one or two turpentine injections during the second series. Murr's prescription for the turpentine injections is 1 part each of turpentine, camphor, and creosote and 2½ parts of olive oil. Of this, 1 ccm. is injected into the gluteal muscle, if a sharp reaction does not occur, a larger dose is injected a day or two later. The object is to produce a very severe local reaction. The turpentine injections are given coincidentally with the antimony injections.

In one of the most resistant cases the writer has ever encountered, a cure was effected by the application of the same principle in a slightly more primitive form by a practitioner of the 'indigenous' system of medicine who placed a vesicatory plaster on the patient's abdomen which caused the whole abdominal wall down to the muscle to slough and left a deep ulcer the size of the palm of the hand, when the ulcer healed the kala-azar was cured.

When one antimony compound has been used throughout without success, a change to another compound should be tried.

Treatment of post kala azar dermal leishmaniasis. — Antimony seems to be the only specific for post-kala azar dermal leishmaniasis, but a cure is not nearly so readily effected as in the visceral form of the disease. Preliminary experience with diamidino stilbene does not suggest that it is of any value in this condition. We have generally used one of the pentavalent compounds, but in a few obstinate cases good results have followed the use of the newer trivalent compounds, antimosan and foudrin.

The ordinary course of injections, as recommended for the visceral infection, should be given, but the injections should be on alternate days or even more widely spaced. One course may be sufficient. The nodular lesions will usually show distinct improvement during the first course of injections, but the hypopigmented lesions usually remain unchanged, gradually regaining their pigment during the course of a month or so. Similarly, the shrinking in the nodular lesions will continue for some time after the end of the course of treatment, a period of at least two months should therefore be allowed before it is decided that another course will be necessary.

Injection of a 2 per cent solution of berberine sulphate into the nodular lesions is usually followed by their shrinkage, but this is not a very

practical method when lesions are extensive. We have seen a few cases improve on large doses of potassium iodide, given up to the point of producing iodism, especially cases in which the nodular lesions were very extensive, the nodules may undergo ulceration, but heal rapidly when the potassium iodide is discontinued.

### PROGNOSIS

Opportunities for watching the progress of the untreated disease have now gone, but in the past temperature records have been kept for a year and longer. Periods of high remittent fever were followed by periods of almost complete absence of fever, the complete cycle taking from a month to two months. The average duration of the disease was about two years, but many cases were reported in which it seemed to enter upon a chronic stage without any symptoms except slight anaemia and great splenomegaly.

Death usually occurs from some complicating infection such as dysentery or pneumonia, or from cancerum oris. In infants and young children the disease runs a far more acute course, and the duration is often less than six months.

Rarely, in India at least but apparently much more frequently in other countries, especially in the Sudan the disease runs a much more rapid course, after two or three months of high fever, purpuric spots appear, there are profuse hæmorrhages from the mucous membranes, and death follows rapidly.

From experience in India, the prognosis can be summarized as follows: if no treatment at all is given, 75 per cent of patients will die, the majority within a period of two years. In the fatal form the natural duration of the disease is shorter, probably about a year. If a full course of treatment with either neostibosan or urea stibamine is given between the third and about the twelfth month of the disease from 90 to 95 per cent will be completely cured of the visceral infection about 2 per cent will die of some intercurrent infection during the course of the treatment, and the rest will relapse. Of those that relapse, 10 of the resistant cases, about half to two-thirds will be cured by subsequent treatment, but there will be a small residue of entirely resistant cases. The new drug diamidino stilbene promises a higher cure rate, especially amongst antimony-resistant cases. In a series of one hundred cases of which a quarter were resistant cases, there were two deaths and five relapses, that is to say an apparent cure rate of 93 per cent.

If the disease has lasted more than a year, the patient may be very weak and emaciated and have developed various complications, e.g. cirrhotic changes in the liver. Although uncomplicated cases of long duration usually respond well to treatment, on the whole the prognosis is not quite so good at this stage. Jaundice appearing late in the disease, and ascites are bad prognostic signs. Amongst the cases treated during the first three months of the disease, a slightly higher initial relapse rate may be expected, but there is no evidence that such cases become antimony-resistant more readily.

In Bengal, in about 5 per cent of treated cases post-kala azar dermal leishmaniasis develops. This sequel is apparently much rarer, or even unknown, in other localities.

### REFERENCES

- ADAMS, A. R. D., and YORKE, W. Studies in Chemotherapy. XLIII. A Case of Indian Kala azar treated with 4,4'-diamidino Stilbene. *Ann. Trop. Med. and Parasit.* 33, 323 (1939).

- ADLER S (1940) Attempts to Transmit Visceral Leishmaniasis to Man. Remarks on Histopathology of Leishmaniasis. *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg* **33**, 419
- ADLER S and RACHMILEWITZ M (1939) A Note on the Treatment of a Case of *Leishmania infantum* with 4,4-Diamidino Stilbene. *Ann Trop Med and Parasit* **33**, 327
- ADLER S and THEODOR O (1931) Investigations on Mediterranean Kala-azar. *Proc Roy Soc Ser B* **105**, 494
- BOUSFIELD L, THOMSON D S B and MARSHALL W E (1911) Remarks on Kala-azar in the Kassala and Blue Nile Districts of the Sudan. *Fourth Rep Wellcome Trop Res Lab at the Gordon Memorial College Khartoum* Vol A pp 127, 143 and 157. Baillière Tindall and Cox London
- BRAHMACHARI U N (1922) A New Form of Cutaneous Leishmaniasis—Dermal Leishmanoid. *Indian Med Gaz* **57**, 125
- Idem* (1922a) Chemotherapy of Antimonial Compounds in Kala-azar Infection. *Indian J Med Res* **10**, 492
- COCHRANE S (1912) The Superficial Lymph Nodes as a Source of Leishmania for Diagnosis in Cases of Kala-azar. *J Trop Med and Hyg* **15**, 9
- DE M N (1934) A Study on the Parasites of Kala-azar and Their Distribution in the Body. *Indian J Med Res* **21**, 627
- FORBES C E and ZIA L S (1934) Viable *Leishmania donovani* in Nasal and Oral Secretions of Patients with Kala-azar and the Bearing of this Finding on the Transmission of the Disease. *J Exper Med* **59**, 491
- GILES G M (1892) Notes on Anchylostomiasis being for the most part a resume of a Report on the Diseases known in Assam as Kala-azar and Beriberi. *Indian Med Gaz* **27**, 170, 193
- HENDERSON L H (1937) Clinical Observations on Kala-azar in Fung Province of Sudan. *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg* **31**, 179
- HINDLE E, HOU P C and PATTON W S (1926) Serological Studies on Chinese Kala-azar. *Proc Roy Soc Ser B* **100**, 368
- KIRK R and LEWIS D J (1940) Studies in Leishmaniasis in Anglo-Egyptian Sudan Sandflies (*Phlebotomus*) of Sudan. *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg* **33**, 623
- KIRK R and MACDONALD D R (1940) An Unusual Case of Leishmaniasis treated with 4,4-Diamidino Diphenoxypentane. *Ann Trop Med and Parasit* **34**, 131
- KIRK R and SATT M R (1940) Studies in Leishmaniasis in Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. Punctate Rash in Treated Cases. *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg* **34**, 213
- Idem* (1940a) Notes on Some Cases of Sudan Kala-azar treated with 4,4-Diamidino Stilbene. *Ann Trop Med and Parasit* **34**, 83
- Idem* (1940b) The Use of Certain Aromatic Diamidines in the Treatment of Kala-azar. *Ann Trop Med and Parasit* **34**, 181
- KNOWLES R., NAPIER L E and SMITH R O A (1924) On a Herpetomonas found in the Gut of the Sandfly *Phlebotomus argentipes* fed on Kala-azar Patients. *Indian Med Gaz* **59**, 593
- LOYD R B and NAPIER L E (1930) The Blood meal of Sandflies Investigated by means of Precipitin Antisera. *Indian J Med Res* **18**, 347
- MACKIE F P (1914) Kala-azar in Nowzong (Assam). *Indian J Med Res* **1**, 626

- NAPIER, L. E. (1923) . The Treatment of Kala-azar by Meta-Chlor-Para-Acetyl Amino-Phenyl Stibiate of Sodium (von Heyden 471) 11 Cases *Indian Med Gaz.*, 58, 578
- Idem* (1927) The Pentavalent Compounds of Antimony in the Treatment of Kala-azar Part II *Indian J Med Res.*, 15, 181
- Idem* (1932) The Pentavalent Compounds of Antimony in the Treatment of Kala-azar Part VII *Indian J Med Res.*, 19, 719
- Idem* (1933) Technique of Spleen Puncture *Lancet*, ii, 126
- NAPIER, L. E., CHAUDHURY, R. N., and RAI CHAUDHURY M. N. (1937) A Stable Solution of Antimony for the Treatment of Kala-azar *Indian Med Gaz.*, 72, 462
- NAPIER, L. E. and DAS GUPTA C. R. (1931) Further Clinical Observations on Post-Kala-azar Dermal Leishmaniasis *Indian Med Gaz.*, 66, 121
- NAPIER, L. E., KIRWAN, E. O. G., and SEN, G. (1941) Eye Complications of Dermal Leishmaniasis *Indian Med Gaz.*, 76, 542.
- NAPIER, L. E., and KRISHNAN K. V. (1931) A Theory of the Aetiology and Epidemiology of Kala-azar in India *Indian Med Gaz.*, 66, 603
- NAPIER, L. E., and HENDERSON J. M. (1931) The Erythrocyte Sedimentation Rate in Kala-azar *Indian J Med Res.*, 19, 691
- NAPIER, L. E., and SEN, O. N. (1940) Diamidino-Stilbene in the Treatment of Kala-azar *Indian Med Gaz.*, 75, 720
- NAPIER, L. E., SEN GUPTA P. C., and SEN, G. N. (1942) The Treatment of Kala-azar by Diamidino Stilbene Analysis of 101 Cases *Indian Med Gaz.*, 77, 321
- NAPIER, L. E., SMITH R. O. A., DAS GUPTA C. R. and MUKHERJI S. (1933) The Infection of *Phlebotomus argentipes* from Dermal Leishmanial Lesions. *Indian J Med Res.*, 21, 173
- D OLSHITZ M. (1938) Early Diagnosis Treatment and Prophylaxis of Kala-azar *Mouvement Sanitaire*, 15, 220 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull.*, 38, 889)
- ROGERS L. (1877) Report of an Investigation of the Epidemic of Malarial Fever in Assam or Kala-azar Shillong
- Idem* (1908) *Fever in the Tropics* Oxford University Press London
- ROSS R. (1899) Infectiousness of Malarial Fever and Kala-azar *Indian Med Gaz.*, 34, 233
- SCHMIDT H., and PETER, F. M. (1938) *Advances in the Therapeutics of Antimony* George Thieme Leipzig
- SHORTT H. E. (1923) *Herpetomonas ctenocephala*. Fantham Some Observations on its Life History and Reactions to Different Environments *Indian J Med Res.*, 10, 721
- SHORTT H. E., BARRAUD P. J., and CRAIGHEAD A. C. (1926) Note on a Massive Infection of the Buccal Cavity of *Phlebotomus argentipes* with *Herpetomonas donovani* *Indian J Med Res.*, 14, 329
- SHORTT H. E., SMITH R. O. A., SWAMINATH C. S., and KRISHNAN K. V. (1931) Transmission of Indian Kala-azar by the Bite of *Phlebotomus argentipes* *Indian J Med Res.*, 18, 1373
- SMITH R. O. A., and HALDER K. C. (1935) Some Observations on Dermal Leishmaniasis *Indian Med Gaz.*, 70, 544
- SMITH R. O. A., HALDER K. C., and AHMED I. (1941) Further Investigations on the Transmission of Kala-azar *Indian J Med Res.*, 29, 799
- STEPHENSON R. W. (1940) An Epidemic of Kala-azar in the Upper Nile Province of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan *Ann. Trop. Med. and Parasit.*, 34, 175
- SWAMINATH C. S., SHORTT, H. E. and ANDERSON L. A. P. (1942) Transmission of Indian Kala-azar to Man by the Bites of *Phlebotomus argentipes* *Ann. and Brum. Indian J Med Res.*, 30, 473
- YOUNG C. W., and HERTIG M. (1926) The Development of Flagellates in Chinese Sandflies (*Phlebotomus*) fed on Hamsters infected with *Leishmania donovani* *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med.*, 23, 611

# ORIENTAL SORE

DEFINITION	179
EPIDEMIOLOGY	179
Geographical distribution	179
Distribution of oriental sore compared with that of kala azar	180
Climatic factors	180
Epidemic features	180
Seasonal incidence	181
Age race and sex incidence	181
ÆTIOLOGY	181
Historical	181
The causal organism	181
Transmission	182
Animal reservoirs	182
Immunity	183
PATHOLOGY	183
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	184
Incubation period	184
Distribution of lesions	184
Number of sores	184
Absence of general symptoms	184
The typical sore	184
Other clinical types	185
DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS	185
Clinical—Examination for <i>Leishmania</i> —Culture—Specific skin reactions	185
Differential diagnosis	186
Ulcer tropicum—Yaws—Tuberculosis of the skin—Leprosy—Veld sore—Syphilitic sore	
PREVENTION	186
General	186
Personal	187
TREATMENT	187
(i) Local	187
(a) Surgical (b) Application of specific drugs (c) Physical measures	
(d) Local injections	
(ii) General	188
PROGNOSIS	189

**Definition** — Cutaneous leishmaniasis or oriental sore (also known as Baghdad boil, Aleppo boil, Delhi boil, Birkra button, Lahore sore, and by many other local names) is a specific granuloma of the skin which usually breaks down to form a large indolent ulcer, the lesions are more often multiple but may be single and are usually on exposed parts of the body, they are caused by a protozoal parasite, *Leishmania tropica*, which is transmitted from host to host by a sand fly of the genus *Phlebotomus*.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution** — Oriental sore is more widely distributed throughout the world than any of the other leishmania infections.

In Europe several cases have been reported from Italy, most of them from the southern portion of the peninsula. Pulvirenti also recorded cases from Calabria and from several districts in Sicily, from Palermo on the north coast to Catania on the south and Caltanissetta inland. The disease is very common in Crete and isolated cases have been reported from northern Italy, from the east coast of Spain, and from the Eastern Pyrenees in France.



Figure 42 Distribution of *espundia* and oriental sore the former is confined to the American continent and the latter to the Old World.

There are certain endemic foci in northern Africa notably at Gafsa in Tunis, Birkra in Algeria, and Bonanane in Morocco, but the whole of these countries would appear to be endemic areas since sporadic cases are reported from time to time. Most of the endemic foci are inland and well away from the endemic areas of kala azar, but in some places both diseases occur. Cases have been reported from Egypt, the Sudan, Souf in the Sahara, the French Congo, Nigeria and Angola in West Africa.

The incidence is very widespread in Asia; sporadic cases have been recognized in various parts of Asia Minor. Aleppo is an endemic focus; further south many cases have been reported from Palestine, Jericho and Kantara being the main endemic foci; the disease occurs in Transcaucasia, in Turkmenistan, Termez, Bokhara, Samarkand and Akabad are mentioned as endemic foci and Agromch (1925 and 1927) reported cases in Transcaspia, the disease occurs in Iran especially southern Iran and in Iraq where Baghdad is an endemic focus.

In India, the disease is found over the whole of the western and drier portion of the Indo-Gangetic plain, the endemic area extends north into the North-West Frontier Province and Baluchistan and down the west coast of the peninsula as far as Cambay in the Bombay Presidency and east as far as Delhi, further east as far as Benares sporadic cases are reported

In Oceania, instances of oriental sore have been reported from North Queensland

Distribution of oriental sore compared with that of kala-azar—Kala-azar and oriental sore are very rarely present in the same locality; both diseases occur in Crete, and in some parts of Asia Minor they occur side by side and in fact are reported to have appeared simultaneously in the same family. In India, oriental sore is found in the dry western half of the Indo-Gangetic plain, whereas kala-azar is confined to the moist eastern portion of this plain, in no one place in India are both diseases truly endemic, although from a few places in the central portion of this plain, e.g. Benares, sporadic cases of both diseases have been reported. This natural segregation of the two diseases led Manson to suggest that cross immunity existed and that protective inoculation with the comparatively benign oriental sore might prove a protection against the then deadly kala-azar. It has now been satisfactorily shown that cross immunization does not occur.

The distribution of the two diseases is easily explained on the grounds of sand-fly distribution, the common sand-fly of the moist areas being *Phlebotomus argentipes*, the proved transmitter of kala-azar, whereas *P. papatasi* and *P. sergenti*, which probably transmit oriental sore, are common sand-flies of the dry areas.

Climatic factors—It would be difficult to correlate the various climatic conditions in the endemic areas, and, as they are so widespread, it seems improbable that there are many climatic factors common to these areas. Most of the areas of greatest activity, however, lie between latitudes 20° and 45°N. These areas have a very hot season, some of them as hot as in any part of the world, and a short cold season in which the night temperature occasionally falls as low as zero. Most of them are dry areas in which there is little vegetation, and many of them border on desert land. In northern Africa they are inland rather than on the coast, and the disease is usually associated with a rocky soil. In India, the disease appears to be confined largely to the alluvial areas of the western portion of the Indo-Gangetic plain.

Epidemic features—In the areas where it occurs the disease is usually endemic, but the incidence varies considerably from year to year, and very frequently assumes epidemic proportions.

An epidemic of oriental sore in the neighbourhood of Aleppo occurred when some refugees occupied a new partly cleared site on which they erected mud and straw-brick huts. Out of a total of 127 families, 45 were affected, 78 individuals having sores. The site abounded with sand-flies, when the clearing of the new site was complete, the number of sand-flies decreased and the incidence of oriental sore fell.

In Quetta, after the earthquake, where the debris provided ideal conditions for breeding of sand flies, there was an epidemic of oriental sore amongst the troops who helped to clear the area.

In Iraq there is a popular association, both with reference to season and locale, between dates and oriental sore, the explanation might well be that sandflies feed on ripe dates (see p. 145 and Plate V).

Dostrowsky in Palestine reported that family incidence was considerable but this has not been the experience of many other observers, and in areas where the disease is sporadic it is by no means uncommon in a family of children for one child alone to be infected.

Seasonal incidence.—Practically all observers have noted that there is a definite season of onset, but this season is not identical in the various endemic areas. Dostrowsky reported that in Palestine in most cases the lesions first appeared between the months of September and April, i.e. immediately before and during the rainy season. Cartron and Bacqué said that most of the cases in northern Africa were infected in July, August and September. Yakimoff and Schockov reported that out of 48 cases seen in Turkestan in January, in one case the sores appeared in June, in 7 in July, and in 40 in August. In Iraq the first cases are usually seen in July, the monthly incidence rises up to September or October, after which it begins to fall. In the North-West Frontier Province and in the Punjab the first cases appear in June and July, August and September are the months of the highest incidence. A report on oriental sores acquired in Quetta (Goodall) suggested that there the months of maximal infection were September and October. The month of infection, or, if about three months is allowed as an incubation period, the first appearance of the lesions, usually corresponds with the maximum sand-fly incidence.

Age, race and sex incidence.—Persons of all ages and races and of both sexes appear to be equally susceptible. In the heavily infected areas, children form the bulk of the patients but this is only because the adults have acquired a degree of immunity from having been infected and cured during childhood. For the same reason foreigners in endemic areas appear to be particularly susceptible.

# ETIOLOGY

Historical.—The causative organism was first observed in Calcutta by Cunningham (1885), who described a parasite which he had seen in the tissues of an oriental sore in a patient who had come from Delhi. The plate which accompanied his paper leaves little doubt about the nature of the parasites which he observed, but not unnaturally at that early date he was ignorant of the true nature of the bodies that he saw. In 1879, Borowsky recognized the parasite and described it but his paper, which was written in Russian, was overlooked, and the credit for the first accurate description is usually given to J. H. Wright. Wright (1903) described the parasite which he had recovered from the tissues of an oriental sore in an Armenian immigrant in Boston; he suggested the name *Helicosoma tropicum*. Marmowky and Bogrow (1904) described the organism which they had found in an ulcer in a boy from Iran and suggested the name *Ovoplasmia orientale*. Nicolle and Sica (1908) were the first to cultivate the organism and thus to demonstrate its true nature and its relation to *Leishmania donovani*.

The causal organism.—*Leishmania tropica* (Wright, 1903) is a protozoon of the family Trypanosomidae, it is indistinguishable morphologically and culturally from *L. donovani*, the causal organism of kala azar. Serologically, however, Noguchi was able to distinguish the two parasites. In the tissues of the mammalian host the parasite appears in the 'round' form and has a local distribution, namely, in the endothelial cells in the granulomatous tissue at the margins and in the base of the ulcer where it is usually found in large numbers. In its arthropod hosts, *Phlebotomus sergenti* and *P. papatasi* and also in culture medium it passes into its flagellate (leptomonad) form. A few writers have reported invasion of the blood stream by *Leishmania tropica*, but this observation has not been supported generally, and if this does occur, it must be a rare accident. On the other hand, extension of the infection along lymphatic channels sometimes follows and results in a chain of ulcers along the course of the vessel (see plate V figure 5).



In some small animals a generalized blood infection occurs

**Transmission**—Attention was first focused on the sand-fly as a possible transmitter by Wenyon (1911), who found 6 per cent of the sand-flies in Aleppo, an endemic area, infected with a leptomonad. Work on sand-flies was continued by the Sergents and others during the next few years, but no very important observation was made. In 1919 Acton, by making comparative anatomical 'spot' diagrams of oriental sores and of sand-fly bites and showing the marked similarity between these diagrams, added further support to the sand-fly hypothesis (see figures 43 and 44)

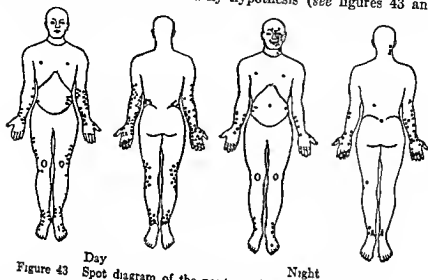


Figure 43 Spot diagram of the position of sand fly bites during the day and night

Sergeant, Sergeant, Parrot, Donatien and Beguet (1921) produced oriental sore in volunteers in a non-endemic area by inoculating crushed sand-flies, *P. papatasi*, collected in an endemic area. This work was elaborated by Adler and Theodor (1926) who carried out numerous experiments with both naturally infected and laboratory infected sand-flies, both *P. papatasi* and *P. sergenti*, which proved conclusively that these sand-flies were natural carriers of *L. tropica*, and that in special circumstances they were capable of transmitting the infection from host to host. In Italy, *P. macedonicum* has been incriminated as the transmitter.

More recently, Adler and Ber (1941) have actually produced 28 oriental sores in 5 volunteers by the bites of artificially infected sand-flies.

The mechanism of transmission is believed to be similar to that of kala-azar. The sand-fly becomes infected by feeding on the indurated edge of the sores of an infected person, or on an animal, sand-flies have been shown to be attracted to the indurated area surrounding a sore, particularly in dogs where the sores are mainly around the eyes and nose, the development of the flagellate form takes place in the fly and the infection moves forward towards its mouth parts, so that, if the fly lives long enough for full development to take place, it will convey the infection when it again feeds on a new host.

It is known that direct inoculation from a sore can produce the lesion, and it is certain that in nature this sometimes occurs, but it is equally certain that it is not the main mode of transmission.

**Animal reservoirs**—The sporadic incidence of oriental sore has suggested that there is some non-human reservoir of infection, and lizards

have been suspected in this connection, but there is little evidence to support this view. On the other hand, in some of the endemic areas *e.g.* Baghdad, Aleppo, and Teheran, dogs are heavily infected and probably act as reservoirs. Many other animals *e.g.* cats and bears, have been found infected in nature. In certain animals as well as producing local lesions, *Leishmania tropica* causes a generalized infection so that it is possible that sand flies may become infected by simply feeding on the blood of infected animals. In Turkmenistan the gerbil *Rhombomys opimus* has been found infected in nature, to the extent of 60 per cent of specimens examined. Thirty five per cent of sand flies living in their burrows have been found infected. These animals therefore obviously play an important part in the etiology of the disease in desert areas.

**Immunity**—Some immunity against subsequent attack is conferred on the patient. This is demonstrated in the epidemiology of the disease by the fact that in endemic areas the indigenous adult is comparatively immune, most of the sufferers being children and immigrants. Advantage has been taken of this fact, and in certain countries women have inoculated themselves with oriental sore on some covered part of the body as a prophylactic against the disfiguring effect of a sore on the face. That this immunity is not complete is shown by the facts that auto inoculation is not uncommon and that second attacks sometimes occur after the original ulcers have healed completely. Of forty eight cases seen by Yakimoff and Schockov in Turkestan eight had been attacked previously, Marzinowsky and Schourenkoff stated that experimentally produced sore in man only conferred immunity when they ran their natural course, abortive lesions and those subjected to treatment at an early stage failing to produce immunity. It is also claimed that there are different strains of *L. tropica*, and that immunity is not complete against heterologous strains.

There is no reason to suppose that oriental sore confers immunity against other leishmania infections, although there are few areas where both kala azar and oriental sore are endemic instances have been reported in which a person suffered from kala azar after having suffered from oriental sore (Patton, 1922).

### PATHOLOGY

The infection is a localized one and there is no general reaction to infection. A very definite tissue reaction is caused by the local presence of the parasite, the macrophage apparently playing the main part in this reaction. Considerable infiltration of all the layers of the dermis by these cells many of which contain parasites extends into the subcutaneous tissues. Giant cells are sometimes present. The parasites apparently have a special affinity for the endothelial cells of the arterioles and capillaries which become parasitized and swollen the channels become blocked and necrosis may follow. The cellular proliferation continues and spreads centrifugally, interfering further with the blood supply of the epidermis and reducing it by pressure to a thin membrane which is easily damaged by trauma.

Pyogenic organisms eventually find their way through this damaged epidermis and ulceration occurs. The pyogenic organisms invade the granuloma and tend to destroy the leishmania parasites. The histological picture then undergoes a change and becomes more like that of an ordinary pyogenic ulcer. At the base of the ulcer the specific granulomatous condition still exists consequently healing is delayed. The margins of the ulcer show considerable thickening of the epidermis and occasionally

down-growths from the epithelium *Leishmaniae* do not invade the epidermis.

Eventually the granuloma is invaded and superseded by fibrous tissue and, when the superficial septic process resolves, the epithelium grows in from the edges of the ulcer; a scar, consisting of a thin covering of epithelium over hard fibrous tissue, is left.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Incubation period.**—The incubation period is not constant; it may be as short as a fortnight (Marziniowsky and Schourenkoff) or as long as three years (Napier and Halder). Wenyon (1912) inoculated himself; the incubation period was seven months. Goodall found that in 57 per cent of his cases the incubation period was at least three months. The usual incubation period appears to be from two to six months.

**Distribution of lesions.**—The lesions nearly always occur on exposed parts of the body and those in which the epidermis is thin, i.e. on the face, ears, hands, arms, feet, legs, and the scalp, the palms of the hands, and soles of the feet are not affected. A 'spot' diagram (after Acton) shows the distribution of the sores in Indian troops in Iraq; these soldiers wore 'shorts' and puttees, i.e. their knees were bare (see figure 44).

**Number of sores.**—The sores are sometimes single, but more often multiple. Occasionally very many sores appear on different parts of the body; figure 4 (plate V) shows a patient with 239 sores.

**Absence of general symptoms.**—As a rule general symptoms do not accompany the appearance of the local lesions, but in some cases there is a history of slight fever lasting a few days.

**The typical sore.**—A small itching red papule surrounded by a narrow pink halo is first observed at the site of inoculation; this increases in size and an exudate from it forms a scab of dry scales that vary in colour from a whitish to a dark reddish brown; the lesion increases in size and may develop into an ordinary boil or carbuncle, or into a large raised fleshy nodule. In either case the centre of the lesion usually breaks down under the scab and an ulcer forms; the ulcer which is small at first spreads but is usually more or less circular, has clean-cut edges, a

### PLATE V

- Fig 1.—Fungating sore on cheek  
 Fig 2.—Oriental sores on the back of the hands of a British soldier, these are beginning to heal  
 Fig 3.—One month later, now completely healed, repigmentation commencing in left hand  
 Fig 4.—Patient with 239 sores  
 Fig 5.—Ulcerating sore on finger with lymphatic spread, nodules appearing along the course of the lymphatics  
 [Figures 2 and 3 after Goodall (1937). others after Shah (1941)]

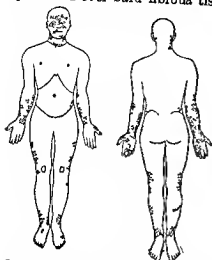


Figure 44. Spot diagram of the sites of sores in Indian troops in Iraq

PLATE V (Oriental sore)



Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4

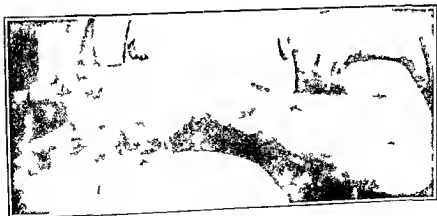


Fig 5

# PLATE VI



Cutaneous leishmaniasis in a chiclé gum worker in Yucatan. The lesion on ear one month's duration; lesion on arm 6 months' duration; both lesions have been cleaned up by surgical dressings but are otherwise typical. This is presumably a case of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis but the lesions would pass as oriental sores. (Courtesy Army Medical Museum)

sloughing and later a granulating base, and is surrounded by an area of red induration about a quarter of an inch in breadth. The ulcer exudes a sero-purulent discharge which may dry and fill the ulcer with a hard dry scab which is difficult to remove. If it is left untreated, after a year or so, the sore may heal, leaving a depressed pink or white scar which may cause considerable disfigurement, more especially when contraction of the scar-tissue occurs. The ulcerating form is always secondarily infected with pyogenic organisms, and in cases of long standing a streptothrix infection which eventually replaces the leishmania is not uncommon.

**Other clinical types**—Other forms of open lesion are the eczematous and the verrucose, in the latter form, a cauliflower-like growth may involve a large area of the instep, for example.

There are many non-ulcerating forms, the commonest of which is the fleshy nodule that does not break down. There are also the keloid and the lupoid forms.

The lymph channels in the neighbourhood of the sore and the glands draining the area are often affected, but this involvement is almost always caused by the secondary invading organisms, although leishmaniae are occasionally found in the lymphatic glands. In some cases subcutaneous nodules appear along the line of the lymph channel, these eventually break down and become separate ulcers (see figure 5 plate V).

The complications are those commonly associated with open ulcers. Lymphangitis has already been mentioned, less often phlebitis and erysipelas occur. When the scars contract they leave disfiguring deformities, e.g. ectropion.

### DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

After considerable experience with this condition it is easy to make a diagnosis on clinical grounds alone with some degree of certainty, especially in the endemic areas. Otherwise the only satisfactory method of diagnosis is by examination of the lesions for leishmaniae. This is quite easily done in early lesions, it is more difficult in the open ulcers when secondary infection has led to the destruction of the parasites except in the deeper portions of the ulcer. After about a year it is seldom possible to demonstrate leishmaniae, and it is probable that they have died out and that the ulceration is maintained by the secondary organisms.

No parasites will be found in the pus taken from the centre of an ulcer, the secondary infecting organism alone being present. There are several ways in which the parasites can be demonstrated, if the lesion has not ulcerated or is in the first stages of ulceration, a simple method is first to sterilize the surface with alcohol and ether, then to wash it with sterile saline, to prick or scrape the spreading edge of the lesion so that it bleeds, to wipe away the first blood with a sterile swab, and to make a smear from the serous fluid which will subsequently come out. Or if this serous fluid is drawn up into a sterile pipette it can be placed into Nicolle, Novy and MacNeal (NNN) or Senekjens medium to obtain a culture of the organism.

The smear should be examined after staining by Leishman's or by Giemsa's method. When any surgical treatment is undertaken a piece of the margin of the ulcer can be removed and a smear made from the cut edge of this piece or a smear can be made from the deep scrapings of the ulcer after it has been cleaned and washed with saline.

Jessner and Amster obtained specific skin reactions in dogs and human beings by injection of a dilute blood free vaccine of flagellates. By separating the polysaccharide and protein fractions of the antigen Senekje believes that he can distinguish between current and past infections.

**Differential diagnosis**—The condition must be differentiated from all other forms of skin nodule, boil, and ulcer. It is unnecessary to deal fully with all the non-specific boils and ulcers following an injury, or with syphilitic and varicose ulcers of the legs, but a few specific conditions, chiefly tropical or subtropical in their distribution deserve special mention.

Each of these conditions has its characteristic appearance, which is distinct from that of the typical oriental sore, but all of them as well as oriental sore may vary from the typical. A knowledge of the geographical distribution of these diseases and of the recent movements of the patient is a most essential preliminary to accurate diagnosis, the final test is the demonstration of the specific organism, which in oriental sores of moderately short duration presents little difficulty.

**Ulcus tropicum**, the sloughing phagedenic ulcer of the tropics, is mainly confined to the legs and occurs in ill-nourished coolies. It usually begins with a water-blister or bleb, and sloughing is an earlier and more prominent feature. Scrapings from the base of this ulcer, after the slough has been cleaned away, will show the characteristic flora, a spirochæte and a fusiform bacillus.

**Yaws** is a disease of aboriginal races and occurs in all parts of the body, and the lesions are rarely single, the typical lesion is raised above the skin level, and, when the scab is removed, the characteristic 'raspberry' appearance is seen. *Treponema pertenue* is found in the lesions, and the Wassermann reaction is positive.

**Tuberculosis of the skin** is not uncommon in the tropics, and, whether in the form of a tubercle, which is more usual, or of an open ulcer, it may be mistaken for oriental sore, the extreme chronicity of these lesions and the characteristic appearance in the histological sections will settle the diagnosis.

The localized, raised and indurated lesions of leprosy may be mistaken for the non-ulcerating form of oriental sore, microscopical examination will settle the diagnosis. Leprotic ulcers will present less difficulty on account of their painlessness. In either case other manifestations of leprosy should be looked for but the presence of these does not necessarily exclude oriental sore.

**Veld sore** begins with a vesicle and is usually shallower than the oriental sore, it generally has an undermined edge and is very painful. *Corynebacterium diphtheriæ* is easily isolated in the early stages, but chronic sores of the two conditions present considerable difficulty.

A primary syphilitic sore on the lip is not at all unlike an oriental sore, nor is a tertiary gummatous ulcer. Microscopical examination will settle the diagnosis rapidly in the first case, and in the second a positive Wassermann reaction will be suggestive but not conclusive.

## PREVENTION

**General**—The general measures will include the avoidance of the source of infection and of the transmitting sand-fly.

All close association with infected human beings and infected dogs should be avoided. A dog destruction campaign should be undertaken where these are suspected as carriers.

Sand-flies are very local in their habits, and it is often possible to get out of their range by moving a tent or hut only a few hundred yards the banks of rivers and old brick or mud walls are their favourite habitats, but unfortunately sand-flies will also live in cracks in the ground. In special circumstances sand-fly control may be worth attempting (see p 320)

**Personal**—These will include the use of a sand fly net (45/46 mesh), insect repellents (see p 119), and possibly prophylactic inoculation

The production of immunity by the injection of dead vaccine has not yet reached a satisfactory stage. Lawrow and Dubowskoj (1937) obtained very satisfactory results by the induction of single sores on the covered parts of the body by the injection of 0.1 to 0.2 c.c. of living cultures. The sores appear in two to six months, increase in size for a time, and eventually heal in about twelve months' time.

### TREATMENT

The cure of oriental sore is not so satisfactory as that of the visceral infection, kala azar. This is evident from the large number of different forms of treatment that are advocated. No satisfactory comparative study has been undertaken since the newer forms of treatment were introduced, and most of the opinions expressed by different workers are based on clinical impressions.

The treatment may be (i) local or (ii) general. The local forms of treatment advocated can be considered under the headings (a) surgical treatment, (b) application of specific drugs, (c) physical measures, and (d) local injection of specific drugs. The general measures consist in the intravenous or intramuscular injection of various antimony preparations.

(i) **Local**—(a) **Surgical** In the pre-antimony days, surgical measures were mainly relied upon, e.g. vigorous scraping with a Volkmann spoon under an anæsthetic until all the friable tissue had been removed from the edges and base of the ulcer, which was then swabbed with pure liquefied phenol and dressed according to the particular choice of the surgeon. With the introduction of other forms of treatment, particularly those in which antimony was used, this rather crude surgical procedure fell temporarily into disfavour. However, as the newer forms of treatment have not lived up to their initial promise, there has been a tendency to return to this surgical treatment, the method of covering the wound directly with adhesive strapping and leaving it without further dressing for a week or more, after thorough scraping and treating with liquefied phenol under an anæsthetic, has given very satisfactory results and is probably the treatment of choice for the more advanced septic ulcers. For small ulcers direct application of liquefied phenol without previous scraping is said to be very satisfactory. Castor oil dressings have given satisfactory results in some workers' experiences.

(b) **Application of specific drugs**—Those recommended include potassium antimonyl tartrate ointment, 2 or even 4 per cent, powdered potassium permanganate, mercuric chloride, mercurous chloride, methylene blue ointment, and powdered sulphonamide, good results have been claimed with each of these drugs by certain workers, but none has proved generally satisfactory.

(c) **Physical measures**—Solid carbon dioxide, diathermy, hot air, heliotherapy, x-ray, and radium have all been advocated as local applications. The first-named is the simplest and the most satisfactory. In



towns this is usually obtainable ready for application in the form of 'dry ice', otherwise a suitable stick can be prepared from a carbon-dioxide-gas cylinder. The dry ice is applied directly to the sore and held there for at least two minutes by the clock. There is a severe reaction with blistering, but when this has subsided the ulcer usually heals.

(d) Local injections.—Emetine hydrochloride has been used very often, 20 minims of a 5 per cent solution are injected into the margins of the sore. Mepacrine (atebrin) hydrochloride was suggested some years ago for local infiltration and according to some reports, a few of which are recent, is very satisfactory.

The local injection of berberine sulphate has in our hands produced some excellent results and is, in the writer's opinion, the best of the drugs used for local infiltration, the drug appears to have a direct specific action on the parasites.

If the ulcer is septic, hot magnesium sulphate fomentations and frequent dressings should be used for a few days to make the wound as clean as possible. A 2 per cent solution of berberine sulphate is used, this is injected by means of a tuberculin syringe into the indurated area surrounding the ulcer, about six injections will be required for each ulcer in order to infiltrate the whole circumference of the ulcer, but 1 ccm of solution will usually be sufficient for an average-sized ulcer. There will usually be some inflammatory reaction, which should be allowed to subside before further injections are given, it will usually be possible to give the injections once a week. From three to six treatments will effect a cure. If there are multiple sores, not more than two or at the most three should be treated at one 'sitting', but treatments can be given daily, the ulcers being taken in turn. This treatment however cannot be recommended when there are more than half a dozen ulcers.

(ii) General.—The intravenous injection of tartar emetic solution was applied in the treatment of oriental sore immediately after it was introduced for the treatment of kala-azar. Good results are undoubtedly obtained in some cases, but the treatment is not without its dangers and unpleasant complications and cannot be recommended at the present day. When the pentavalent compounds of antimony were introduced, these were substituted for the antimonial salts, and it was hoped that the results with these compounds would be as satisfactory as they were in kala-azar. The writer treated a number of cases with stibosan and, later, neostibosan. Cures were effected but on the whole the progress was disappointingly slow. More recently we have used the aromatic trivalent antimony compounds, e.g. foudadin, with rather better results.

The dosage for neostibosan has already been given under the treatment of kala-azar (see p. 168). It is probably better to give the injections on alternate days rather than daily, and ten to twelve injections will usually be necessary.

Foudadin is supplied in ampoules as a 63 per cent solution the starting dose is 1.5 ccm and the maximal single dose 5 ccm. The injections are given intramuscularly on alternate days or three times a week, and eight to ten injections are usually sufficient.

It is too early to be dogmatic, but the evidence up to the present suggests that the aromatic diamidines, some of which are so successful in kala-azar, are quite useless in this condition.

To summarize, in those cases in which there are single or only a few early sores and non ulcerating lesions, berberine sulphate is recommended, in cases with numerous small or moderate sized lesions foudadin or neostibosan injections should be given and in all cases with extensive ulcers heavily infected with pyogenic organisms recourse should be had to surgical treatment. Until the sore is obviously healing sulphonamide powder should be included in all dry dressings. A judicious combination of surgical treatment with antimony injections will produce the best results in cases with very numerous extensive ulcers.

### PROGNOSIS

Under normal circumstances there should be no question of mortality from oriental sores, though no doubt many lives have been lost as an indirect result of these sores, especially when septic complications have followed. The two important points are the time taken in healing and the scarring left behind.

The course of an untreated sore is about a year, when eventually it heals, it always leaves a disfiguring scar.

Under efficient treatment simple sores will often heal in two to three weeks, but the average time taken for septic sores is probably at least two months.

In the case of a well-developed sore, even if efficient treatment is given, it is difficult to ensure healing without scarring but the risk can be reduced considerably by suitable skin-grafting. A white scar will often become pigmented in the course of time. Early lesions that are treated by berberine sulphate injections usually heal completely, leaving no scar.

### REFERENCES

- ACTON H W (1919) .. A Study of the Distribution of Bagdad Boils on the Body made with a view to Discover the Transmitting Agent *Indian J Med Res* 6 262
- ADLER S and BER M (1941) The Transmission of *Leishmania tropica* by the Bite of *Phlebotomus papatasi*. *Indian J Med Res* 29, 803
- ADLER S and THEODOR O (1926) Further Observations on the Transmission of Cutaneous Leishmaniasis to Man from *Phlebotomus papatasi*. *Ann Trop Med and Parasit* 20, 175
- AGONICK M A (1925) On the Propagation Pathogenesis and Treatment of the Oriental Sore. *Russian J Trop Med.*, Nos 1-2-3 p 74 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull.*, 1926 23, 584)
- Idem* (1927) .. Epidemiology and Symptomatology of Oriental Sore. *Dermat Woch* 84 261 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull* 24, 641)
- BOROWSKY (1898) Über das Sartengeschwür. *Wojenomedizinsky J* November 5 325
- CARTON M., and BACQUE M (1921) Notes sur le Clou de Biskra chez les Tirailleurs Sénégalais à Biskra (Algerie). *Ann Med Pharm Coloniales* 19 303
- CUNNINGHAM D D (1885) On the presence of peculiar parasitic organisms in the tissue of a specimen of Delhi Boil. *Scientific Memoirs by Medical Officers of the Army of India Pt I* 1884 p 21 Supdt Govt Printing India Calcutta

- DOSTROWSKY, A (1920) .. A Study of Cutaneous Leishmaniasis in Palestine *Ann. Trop. Med. and Parasit.*, 20, 335
- GOODALL, J (1937) .. Clinical Study of Sixty-three Cases of Oriental Sore *Indian Med. Gaz.*, 72, 3
- JESSNER, M, and AMSTER, S (1925) Leishmanavakzine—Leishmaniiinreaktion *Deut. Med. Woch.*, 51, 784
- LAWROW, A P, and DUBOWSKOJ, P A (1937) Über Schutzimpfungen gegen Hautleishmaniose. *Arch. Schiffs- u. Trop.-Hyg.*, 41, 374.
- MARZINOWSKY, E J, and BOGROW, S L (1901) Zur Aetiologie der Orientbeule (bouton d'Orient) *L'archiv. Pathologique Anatomie u. Physiologie*, 178, 112
- MARZINOWSKY, E I, and SCHOUREY-KOFF, A I (1924). Immunity in Oriental Sore. *Russian J. Trop. Med.*, No 2, p. 17 (Abstract—*Trop. Dis. Bull.*, 21, 726)
- NAPIER, L E (1933) .. Oriental Sore. *British Encyclopaedia of Medical Practice*, 7, 665 Butterworth and Co., Ltd., London
- NAPIER, L E, and HALDER, K. C. (1936). The Incubation Period of Oriental Sore. *Indian Med. Gaz.*, 71, 723
- NICOLLE, C, and SICRE, A. (1908) . Recherches sur le bouton d'Orient. *Arch. Inst. Pasteur, Tunis*, 3, 117.
- PATTON, W. S (1922) .. Some Reflections on the Kala-azar and Oriental Sore Problems *Indian J. Med. Res.*, 9, 496
- SERGEANT, ED ET ET, PARROT, L, DONATIEN, A, and BEQUET, M (1921) Transmission du clou de Bukra par le phlébotome (*Phlebotomus papatasi*, Scop). *Compt. Rend. Acad. Sci.*, 173, 1030 (Abstract—*Trop. Dis. Bull.*, 1922, 19, 315)
- SHAH, M H (1941) .. Report on the Epidemic of Oriental Sore in Delhi *Indian Med. Gaz.*, 76, 419
- WENTON, C M (1911) .. Note on the Occurrence of *Herpetomonas* in the *Phlebotomus* of Aleppo. *J. London School Trop Med.*, 1, 93
- Idem* (1912) .. Some Remarks on the Successful Inoculation of *Leishmania tropica* to Man *J. London School Trop Med.*, 1, 221
- WRIGHT, J H (1903) .. Protozoa in a Case of Tropical Ulcer ('Delhi Sore'). *J. Med. Res.*, 10, 472.
- YAKIMOFF, W L, and SCHROCKOV, N. F (1915). Leishmaniose cutanée (bouton d'Orient), au Turkestan russe *Compt. Rend. Soc. Biol.*, 78, 107.

**Addendum**—The Russian literature of the last few years on oriental sore has been reviewed by Hoare (*Trop. Dis. Bull.*, 41, 331). They recognize two types of sore, the wet and the dry, the ulcerating and the non-ulcerating (which may ulcerate later), and they consider that the causal organisms of these two types are antigenically different. The dry type has a longer incubation period, is more chronic, and is urban in distribution. These two clinical types are recognized in most endemic areas and difference lay in the reaction of the host to the infection. Re-examination of this question is indicated.

Advantage has been taken of the observation that the gerbil is the reservoir of infection and in hyperendemic (or rather hyperenzootic) areas in south Russia (Middle Asia) poisoning campaigns in which 3 to 4 grammes of chloropicrin per burrow were used have resulted in the almost complete elimination of the disease, and incidentally of sandflies, in the areas treated.

The new insecticide DDT will undoubtedly play an important part in the control of all sand-fly-borne diseases. The 5 per cent 'residual' spray should be sprayed inside on all the walls of the living and sleeping rooms, and outside around openings such as doors, windows and ventilators.

# SOUTH AMERICAN MUCO-CUTANEOUS LEISHMANIASIS

DEFINITION	191
HISTORICAL	191
EPIDEMIOLOGY	191
Geographical distribution	191
Local distribution and altitude	192
Seasonal incidence	192
Age, sex, and race	192
ETIOLOGY	192
Historical	192
The causal organism	192
Distribution of the parasite	192
In animals	192
Transmission	193
PATHOLOGY	193
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	193
Cutaneous lesions	193
Incubation period—Ulcerating—Papillomatous	
The mucosal lesions	194
DIAGNOSIS	194
PREVENTION	195
TREATMENT	195

**Definition**—Muco cutaneous leishmaniasis or espundia (known also as uta, Bauru ulcer forest yaws and by many other local names) is a specific granuloma of the skin, that usually ulcerates and forms a chronic ulcer, on various mainly the exposed parts of the body, in a variable percentage of cases, secondary ulcerative lesions occur in the mucosa of the mouth and upper respiratory tract. The disease is almost entirely confined to Central and South America, it is caused by a protozoan, *Leishmania brasiliensis*, which is transmitted from host to host by sand flies of the genus *Phlebotomus*.

**Historical**—The disease has undoubtedly existed in America for some considerable time. Certain observers consider that the drawings on the Inca pottery on which men with typical lesions are shown are evidence of the existence of the disease before the discovery of America (da Matta 1918). On the other hand it has been claimed that other infections common in South America cause similar scars and the suggestion has been made that the disease was imported from the Old World.

Lindenberg (1903) and Carini and Paranhos (1909) were the first observers to establish the etiological relationship between this disease in Brazil and oriental sore by finding leishmania in the lesions of the former.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—The disease is endemic in Central and South America. It has been reported as far north as Yucatan in Mexico.

and as far south as Buenos Aire but the more highly endemic areas are north of the Tropic of Capricorn. The disease has been studied most in Brazil and Peru but it is also reported from Colombia, Venezuela, British, Dutch and French Guiana, Chile, Bolivia, Paraguay, Uruguay and Argentina. It is a serious public health problem in rural districts of Minas Geraes in Brazil (Orsini 1940).

In most of the northern endemic areas the secondary mucosal lesions are rare and it has been definitely stated that in some places they do not occur as one travels further south however, the mucosal lesions appear to increase in frequency, and in some places, in as many as 20 per cent of cases cutaneous lesions are followed eventually by mucosal lesions.

Isolated instances of mucosal lesions following what appeared to be oriental sores have been reported from Europe and Africa, and in the Sudan Kirk who has observed a number of different cutaneous manifestations of leishmania infection has described some that are suggestive of espundia though no parasitological studies have been carried out to confirm or otherwise the identity of the causal organism with *L. brasiliensis*.

Local distribution and altitude.—The disease is contracted mainly in forest regions and the most serious epidemics have occurred amongst workers in virgin forest marshy areas seem to favour dissemination of the infection. In Mexico the disease occurs amongst chicle gum gatherers (Inchaurtgui 1918). Burga (1926) says that in Amazonia it is limited to an area with an altitude not more than 2 000 feet above sea level which area is nevertheless characterized by a temperate climate.

Seasonal incidence.—The infection appears to be definitely seasonal, and in Sao Paulo the ulcers appear mainly in late summer and autumn months (da Silva 1920) but Cerqueira and de Vasconcellos (1923) refer to an epidemic in Rio de Janeiro occurring in May to August.

Age, sex and race.—Although persons of all ages from infants at the breast (Migone 1915), of all races and of both sexes are susceptible, the disease attacks mostly male adults—over 90 per cent of patients are male adults according to Villela (1939)—probably on account of the fact that they are most frequently exposed to infection.

In animals Brumpt and Pedroso (1913) found the parasite in lesions on the noses of dogs. Mazza (1927) reported infection in a horse.

In the laboratory, cats, dogs, monkeys, guinea pigs, and mice have been infected.

**Transmission**—The parasite is almost certainly transmitted to man by a species of *Phlebotomus*. *Phlebotomus intermedius* is under suspicion.

### PATHOLOGY

There is no essential difference between the cutaneous lesions in this condition and those in *Leishmania tropica* infection. The histopathology of the disease in the mucosa has been studied by Klotz and Lindenberg (1923). In the earliest stage, there is oedema of the submucosa and perivascular lymphocyte infiltration, in the inflammatory focus thus formed, although the lymphocytes predominate there are a few endothelial cells, some of which may contain leishmaniae. The epithelium at this stage is intact.

The infected lymph nodes show macrophage infiltration, but the picture is usually complicated by secondary infection. Later, there is some fibrosis.

In the second phase of the infection, the mucosa becomes swollen and there is desquamation of the epithelium over the infected focus. The ulceration of the epithelium continues independently of the pathological process in the deeper structures and eventually there appears a definite area of superficial necrosis, covered by a fibrinous exudate. Meanwhile the perivascular infiltration becomes more extensive and diffuse, involving the surrounding lymphatics and a change takes place in the nature of the cell exudate, there is a definite increase in the number of plasma and endothelial cells and as the process continues the endothelial proliferation becomes a more and more marked feature. Eventually numerous multinucleate cells containing large numbers of leishmaniae appear.

Finally, the endothelial proliferation progresses and the cells show a tendency to form groups, and eventually nodules along the course of the small blood vessels. As the nodules form the reaction in the surrounding tissue subsides and the normal structure of this tissue reappears. These granulomatous nodules eventually go on to necrosis and fibrosis, when they are near the surface secondary infection occurs, and endarteritis leading to complete occlusion of the vessels follows.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

There are two phases of the infection: the primary phase of cutaneous ulceration and the secondary phase of infection of the mucosa of the buccal cavity and upper respiratory tract.

Though many patients first come under observation with mucosal lesions they usually give a history of primary cutaneous lesions but there are instances when this history cannot be obtained (Vilella 1939).

**Cutaneous lesions**—In most cases the incubation period appears to be from 2 to 3 months.

In general, the lesions can be divided into two main types: the ulcerating and the non ulcerating. The latter may be subdivided into the hypertrophic variety in which either a simple papillomatous or a cauliflower-like growth is formed, and the atrophic variety in which there is a red plaque with raised edges.

Lesions occur almost always on uncovered parts of the body, on the ears, face, neck, arms, wrists, legs and ankles, they are usually multiple

The ulcerating type commences as a small red itching papule or as a localized papular erythema. The papules go on to pustule formation, break down and form small ulcers. The ulcer is surrounded by an oedematous area which eventually becomes necrosed, until in some instances an ulcer of 9 or 10 centimetres diameter is formed. The ulcers are usually round but may be asymmetrical. The edges are at first undermined, but later become clean-cut, slightly raised and surrounded by a narrow area of induration. There is a purulent exudate. In many instances there is lymphatic involvement following on local infiltration around the ulcers, there may be subcutaneous nodule formation along the course of the lymphatics, and the glands become enlarged and painful, this glandular enlargement is not entirely due to septic invasion of the ulcer, since leishmaniae can be recovered from the glands. The glands often fail to regain their natural size after the local condition is cured.

The papillomatous type commences in much the same way, but the red papule, instead of becoming a pustule, increases in size and exudes a serous fluid which may form a crust, under this crust, which soon scales off, lies the thin but intact epithelium. The non-ulcerating type may eventually, after many months or even years, break down and become an ulcer.

The mucosal lesions—As already stated, the frequency of the occurrence of the mucosal lesions varies in the different areas of activity of the disease. In the northern areas, the secondary mucosal lesions are rare, but in the southern areas São Paulo for example, Klotz and Lindenberg (1923) report that from 15 per cent to 20 per cent of those patients who have had cutaneous lesions for more than two years suffer from mucosal lesions, and Villela, Pestana and Pessoa (1939) that in practically all untreated cases of cutaneous lesion, there is infection of the nasal mucosa which may or may not break down. In 12 cases without clinical symptoms referable to the nasal mucosa, 5 showed small lesions, and in the rest, smears made from the mucosa showed leishmaniae.

When they occur, the mucosal lesions usually appear 6 to 18 months after the cutaneous lesions, but in some cases the onset of the nasal lesions has been delayed for as long as 15 years. They usually commence as an oedematous swelling of the mucous membrane of the nose, followed by the formation of small raised granular ulcers, these enlarge and spread with the formation of granulation tissue. Villela (*loc cit*) reports that 78 per cent of the lesions are in the nose. All the soft parts of the nose, mouth and pharynx may be involved and destroyed. The bones and the tongue are not, however, attacked. The patient, when untreated, usually dies from septic absorption, pneumonia, or starvation from blockage of the passages. Costa (1916) described certain ocular complications which have occurred in this condition: a new growth in the centre of the cornea, and lesions in the lower eyelid accompanied by opacity of the vitreous.

#### DIAGNOSIS

This does not usually present much difficulty when there are early cutaneous lesions, the indurated edge of the ulcer is pricked and a smear made from the exudate will usually show leishmaniae (see ORIENTAL SORE). In older sores it may be difficult to find them.

In cases with mucosal lesions it is usually possible to find the leishmaniae by scratching the intact part of the mucous membrane of the nose.

and making a smear from the exudate. Smears from the lesions themselves will seldom show leishmaniae.

The intradermal test of Montenegro is a valuable specific test. This is done by injecting intradermally 0.1 c.c. of a suspension of a culture of *Leishmania brasiliensis* in 0.4 per cent phenol. Within 48 hours there is a sharp local reaction which persists up to 72 hours. The test first becomes positive after about a month and continues to be positive as long as the lesions remain. Complement-fixation and agglutination tests have also been used.

The condition has to be differentiated from leprosy, frambæsia, blastomycosis and syphilis, it differs from the last named in that, in the leishmania infection, bones are not attacked and, in syphilis the ulceration does not usually spread beyond the mucocutaneous margin.

### PREVENTION

The only absolute means of control is by anti sand fly measures, but little is known about the bionomics of sand-flies.

Ointments and repellents of various kinds will prevent sand fly bites but the indigenous inhabitants of the areas where the infection occurs could scarcely use these throughout the transmitting season.

The thorough treatment of all cutaneous lesions must be looked upon as the only means of preventing the more serious mucosal lesions that can be applied at present with much hope of success.

### TREATMENT

This should be both general and local. The local treatment recommended for oriental sore (*q.v.*) can be applied for the cutaneous lesions in this infection, but general treatment must also be applied to prevent the later development of mucosal lesions.

Vianna and Machado (1913) used potassium antimonyl tartrate by the intravenous route in this disease and thereby initiated a new era in the treatment of leishmaniasis. Antimony has been the mainstay in the treatment ever since.

The new antimony compounds have been used more recently, and foudadin (sodium antimony pyrocatechin sulphonate) has been one of the most successful. It is given in a 6.3 per cent (isotonic) solution, in doses of 1.5 c.c. increasing to 5.0 c.c., intramuscularly, daily at first and then on alternate days, up to 15 to 20 injections.

Arsphenamine preparations are sometimes used for the cutaneous lesions, but, whilst curing these (after 3 or 4 injections), they leave the mucous membrane infections intact, nasal ulceration usually follows eventually, and in the end antimony has to be resorted to.

Recently, it has been claimed that atabrin injected locally and given by mouth at the same time is a specific for the cutaneous lesions, and yatrien given intravenously combined with foudadin is said to accelerate the cure of the mucosal lesions.

For local application to the mucosal lesions a bicarbonate of soda gargle for the throat and nose followed by a wash of 0.1 per cent solution of tartar emetic is said to be useful. Another method is spraying with a 2 per cent solution of tartar emetic after anaesthetizing with a spray of 1 per cent cocaine plus 1 per cent phenol.



## REFERENCES

- BRUMPT, E and PEDROSO A (1913) *Recherches Epidemiologiques sur la Leishmaniose Forestiere Americaine dans l'Etat de Sao Paulo (Bresil) Bull Soc Path Exot* 6 752
- BURGA B (1926) *Distribucion Geografica de las Leishmaniasis en el Departamento de Amazonas Cronica Med Lima* 43, 169 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull*, 1927 24, 642)
- CARINI and PARANHOS U (1909) *Identification de l' 'Ulcera de Bauru' avec le Bouton d'Orient Bull Soc Path Exot* 2 255
- CERQUEIRA A. DE C., and DE VASCON CELLOS A (1923)
- COSTA P (1916) *La Leishmaniose a Rio de Janeiro Bull Office Internat d Hyg Publique* 15, 123
- INCHAUSTROUT A (1918) *Nota Preliminar Sobre lesões Oculares da Leishmaniose Gaz Med Bohia* 47, 496 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull* 1917, 10, 65)
- KIRK R (1942) *De la Leishmaniosis Americana y de la Ulcera de los Cheleros en Mexico Thèse Mexico* p 100 (Abstract—*Bull Inst Pasteur* 1920 18 576)
- KLOTZ O and LINDENBERG H (1923) *Studies in Leishmaniasis in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan V Cutaneous and Mucocutaneous Leishmaniasis Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg* 35, 257
- LINDENBERG A (1909) *The Pathology of Leishmaniasis of the Nose Amer J Trop Med*, 3 117
- DA MATTA A (1918) *Ulcera de Bauru ou le Bouton d'Orient au Bresil Bull Soc Path Exot*, 2, 252
- MAZZA S (1927) *Notas para a Historia das Leishmanioses da pelle e das Mucosas Amazonas Medico* 1, 11
- MIGONE L E (1915) *Bol Inst Clin quir B Aires* 3, 472
- NOGUCHI H (1924) *Buba or Leishmaniasis Americana in Paraguay Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg* 8, 219
- OSINT O (1910) *Action of certain biological chemical and physical agents upon cultures of Leishmania some observations on plant and insect Herpetomonads Proc Internat Conference on Health Problems in Trop America* p 455
- DA SILVEIRA, R (1920) *United Fruit Co Boston Mass Leishmaniose em Minas Gerais Brazil Medico* 64 762 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull* 1941 38 576)
- SPLENDOZE A (1911) *Frequencia e Distribuicao da Leishmaniose em S Paulo Brazil Medico* 34, 200 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull* 16, 458)
- VIANNA C (1911) *Buba Blastomycosi Leishmaniosi (Nota sopra alcune affezioni Framboesiche Osservate nel Brasile) Potulnico*, 18C
- VIANNA and MACHADO (1913) *Sobra una nova Especie de Leishmania Brazil Med No 41*
- VILLELA F (1939) *Reports of two cases of Mucocutaneous Leishmaniasis treated with Intravenous Tartar Emetic Bol Soc Brasileira Dermat.*, 2 17
- VILLELA F, PESTANA B R., and PESSOA S B (1939) *Dados Estatisticos Sobre a Leishmaniose das Mucosas em Aracatuba S Paulo Folha Med* 20, 243 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull*, 1940 37, 352)
- VILLELA F, PESTANA B R., and PESSOA S B (1939) *Presencia da 'Leishmania brasiliensis' na Mucosa Nasal sem Lesão Aparente em Casos Recentes de Leishmaniose Cutanea Hospital Rio de Janeiro* 18 953 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull*, 1940 37, 353)

# SLEEPING SICKNESS, OR AFRICAN TRYPANOSOMIASIS

DEFINITION	PAGE
	198
HISTORICAL	198
ETIOLOGY	200
<i>The causal organism</i>	200
Morphology and staining—Culture—Distribution in the body—Pathogenesis in animals—Strains	
<i>Immunity</i>	201
<i>Transmission</i>	201
Direct—Cyclical—Other possible means of transmission—The tsetse-fly vectors	
<i>Reservoirs of infection</i>	203
EPIDEMIOLOGY	203
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	203
<i>Epidemic features</i>	204
Local distribution—Effect of temperature—Age sex race and occupation	
PATHOLOGY	205
<i>Morbid anatomy</i>	205
Lymph glands—Central nervous system	
<i>Cerebrospinal fluid</i>	206
<i>Blood</i>	206
<i>Urine</i>	207
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	207
<i>Febrile stage</i>	207
Incubation period—Trypanosomal changes—Fever—Rash—Enlargement of lymphatic glands—Other signs and symptoms	
<i>Meningo encephalitic stage</i>	208
DIAGNOSIS	209
<i>Clinical</i>	209
<i>Confirmatory methods</i>	210
Technical	
<i>Presumptive tests</i>	211
TREATMENT	211
<i>Historical</i>	211
<i>Specific drugs and dosages</i>	211
Atoxyl—Orosamine—Tryparsamide—Antryiol—4,4'-diamidino diphenylethylene dihydroxy pentamine and dihydroxy pentamine—Antimony preparations	

of Corson and others between 1930 and 1938 suggest that in both cases the trypanosomes show a considerable degree of stability (Corson, 1939)

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism —As indicated above there are two species of trypanosome, *Trypanosoma gambiense* and *Trypanosoma rhodesiense*, that cause the two forms of sleeping sickness, they are protozoa of the class Mastigophora, family Trypanosomida.

Morphology and staining —These two trypanosomes are morphologically indistinguishable in the peripheral blood of man. In the fresh specimen of peripheral blood the trypanosome is a rapidly moving spindle-shaped body with an undulating membrane and flagellum, it can be seen easily as it disturbs the red cells, but for the study of further details of its structure, the unstained specimen is unsatisfactory.

In the blood smear stained by Leishman's or Giemsa's method the trypanosome is seen as a spindle shaped body 14 to 32  $\mu$  in length and 1.5 to 3.5  $\mu$  in breadth with a parabasal body and a blepharoplast at the posterior end from this a flagellum arises passes forward along the whole length of the body to which it is attached by an undulating membrane and extends for about one quarter of its length beyond the anterior end of the body. About the middle of the body is an oval-shaped nucleus with a centrally-placed karyosome (seen only in a hamatoxylin stained specimen) which occupies about two thirds of the breadth of the cytoplasm. The cytoplasm stains a light blue it contains dark-blue granules and sometimes vacuoles. The trichonucleus stains a reddish purple, and the parabasal body and blepharoplast usually appear as one dark-red mass. The undulating membrane is a transparent pale-violet membrane.

There are two distinct forms of trypanosomes the thin slender forms that are the usual ones seen in the peripheral blood and the broad stumpy ones less frequently encountered, in the latter, the flagellum ends with the undulating membrane at the anterior end of the body of the parasite, and there is no free flagellum. In both types of infection, these two forms maintain about the same proportions, the slender form always predominating, many intermediate forms are recognizable.

The parasite multiplies by binary longitudinal division of the trypanosome forms, all stages of division may be seen in the peripheral blood.

In the cerebrospinal fluid the same forms will be seen, but they are more pleomorphic, and involution forms are frequently seen.

Criticial forms, in which the blepharoplast is anterior to the nucleus, occur at certain stages in the insect vector (*vide infra*), but are not found in man.

Though the two species of trypanosome are identical in the blood of man, when the infection is transferred to a laboratory animal, they exhibit certain differences, and in the case of *rhodesiense* infection a percentage, often about 5 per cent, of the trypanosomes are 'posterior-nuclear' forms that is the nucleus is near or actually at the posterior end, and the blepharoplast is necessarily anterior to it.

Culture — Trypanosomes will survive for many weeks in NNN culture medium (*see p 161*), but there is little multiplication, and subcultures cannot be obtained.

Distribution in the body —Trypanosomes are found in the blood, lymph glands and lymph vessels in the early stages of the disease, and in

the later in the cerebrospinal fluid also. The parasites never invade the cells, but are found in the connective tissue spaces of many organs in the intra cellular spaces of the brain and in the reticular tissue of the spleen and lymph glands.

**Pathogenesis in animals**—Both trypanosomes will infect laboratory animals rats, guinea pigs and rabbits but *rhodesiense* produces a much more virulent infection in these animals further this latter parasite gives rise to the posterior nuclear forms referred to above which are only very rarely found when a *gambiense* infection is transmitted to a laboratory animal.

The infection can be transmitted to many species of wild antelope but only one species has been found infected with what appeared to be *T. gambiense* in nature on the other hand *T. rhodesiense* is believed by some workers to be identical with *T. brucei* which is a common natural infection in wild game and which when transmitted to domestic equines and bovines causes nagana (*vide supra et infra*).

In the tsetse fly, trypanosomes will be found in the gut mouth parts and salivary glands in all of which sites they multiply (*see p 202*).

**Strains**—As in many other infections there is evidence that, in addition to the differences in species there are a number of different strains of the causal organism which vary in their virulence to man and animals and in their susceptibility to drugs. It seems possible that many if not all the puzzling variations in the pathogenicity of trypanosomes in different animal species and in drug resistance might be explainable on a theory of strain selectivity of vectors hosts and drugs.

**Immunity**—There is evidence of both natural and acquired immunity to trypanosome infection.

Normally man is resistant to infection with *T. brucei* less so to infection with *T. rhodesiense* but susceptible to infection with *T. gambiense*. Yorke and his co workers consider that there is evidence to suggest that in the presence of special conditions *eg* some other infection or dietary deficiencies the trypanocidal action of the blood of man is destroyed and that he then becomes susceptible to infection with *T. brucei* which once established requires a degree of resistance to the trypanocidal action of human blood is capable of establishing itself in a normal individual and becomes what we know as *T. rhodesiense* finally as this trypanosome is transmitted rapidly from man to man by the tsetse fly its potentialities for infecting man become still more fixed it loses its pathogenicity for cattle though it still infects them and becomes *T. gambiense*. There are still many gaps in this attractive theory.

On the whole the African native shows a greater degree of immunity than the European intruder in the latter the disease tends to run a more acute course.

**Transmission**—This is effected by the agency of certain species of *Glossina*. This may be (i) direct or (ii) cyclical.

**Direct**—It has been shown that when a fly that is feeding on an infected animal is interrupted and then immediately allowed to feed on another uninfected animal the infection will be transferred to the second animal presumably by the contaminated mouth parts of the fly, there is evidence that this occurs in nature and that during epidemic periods in particular, infection is transferred from man to man by this means but it is also certain that the cyclical method of transmission is the usual one. Certain *Stomoxys* species are capable of transmitting the infection directly.

**Cyclical**—The fly takes the infected blood containing trypanosomes (figure 45 1) into its mid gut, there the blood is digested, but trypanosomes (1a) multiply and undergo a slight change in morphology, becoming larger and broader, later, long slender forms appear (2), these pass round the lower free end of the peritrophic membrane and occupy the space between this and the epithelial lining of the gut wall where they continue to multiply for some days, in this extra peritrophic space they move anteriorly and reach the level of the proventriculus where they penetrate the peritrophic membrane and reach the lumen of the proventriculus (2a) At this stage the trypanosomes are now all long slender forms, they continue to multiply and still moving forwards they reach the opening of the salivary duct (2b) and eventually the salivary glands. In the salivary glands they continue to multiply but undergo a further change of morphology, becoming first crithidial (3) and then 'metacyclic' (4) forms 'short forms' that are very similar to the 'short forms' seen in the peripheral blood. The metacyclic forms are injected with the salivary gland secretion (4a) into the wound made by the tsetse fly's proboscis.

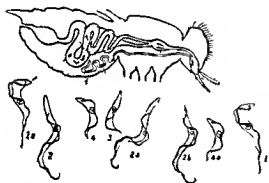


Figure 45 Diagrammatic outline showing position of different forms of trypanosome in the tsetse fly

- 1 Trypanosome form as found in the peripheral blood in the hypopharynx entering
- 1a Same form in the mid gut
- 2 Long slender form in the mid-gut
- 2a Same form in the proventriculus
- 2b Same form in the hypopharynx on the way to the salivary glands
- 3 Crithidial form in the salivary glands
- 4 Metacyclic form in the salivary gland
- 4a Same form in the hypopharynx on the way out

The trypanosome loses its powers of infecting vertebrates soon after it reaches the mid gut of the fly, but when it reaches the metacyclic stage it again becomes infective the whole cycle takes from 10 to 25 days according to the circumstances temperature (optimum 75° to 85°F) being the most important factor.

In only a proportion of flies—even of the recognized transmitting species—that feed on infected blood do the trypanosomes complete this cycle, but, when once infected a tsetse fly remains infected indefinitely the salivary infection being periodically replenished from the extra peritrophic space. Newly hatched flies are more readily infected than older ones that have already taken a number of blood meals.

The infection is not transmitted hereditarily in the tsetse

**Other possible means of transmission**—A few cases of congenital infection have been reported and transmission is also said to occur during coitus.

**The tsetse fly vectors**—There are four species of *Glossina* concerned in the transmission of sleeping sickness *G. palpalis* and *G. tachinoides*, *G. morsitans* and *G. swynnertonii*, in nature the first two transmit the *gambiense* and the latter two the *rhodesiense* infections though in the laboratory many other species have been shown to be capable of transmitting both infections.

Flies of the genus *Glossina* (family Muscidae) are larger than *Stomoxys*, and have a similar type of proboscis, but a more hairy arista. The characteristic posture of the fly at rest is with wings folded scissor-wise, the wings show distinctive venation. They have a short stout proboscis, thick palpi with broad channels on their inner surfaces in which the proboscis lies (see figure 46 and plate I).



Figure 46 The tsetse fly  $\times 3$

A diagrammatic representation of the internal anatomy of the tsetse is shown in figure 45. In figure 47, the relative position of the peritrophic membrane is shown. This membrane is secreted by the epithelium of the mid gut and is designed to protect the delicate epithelium from the direct action of the ingested meal. It is a sleeve-like structure with a lower end free and the upper end attached at the level of the proventriculus. It might be compared to a coat sleeve lining that only reaches to the elbow where it ends free, the upper end being sewn to the sleeve proper at the shoulder seam.



Figure 47 Diagrammatic outline of mid gut of tsetse fly

The female fly does not lay eggs but gives birth periodically (about once a fortnight) to a larva (in girth nearly as big as the female itself) which it drops in a shady spot usually not far from water, this larva crawls into a place of safety and

immediately pupates. The pupa hatches into an adult after an interval varying from three weeks (at 85°F) to a month or two according to the environmental conditions.

Both male and female tsetse flies feed on vertebrate blood, and flies of either sex are capable of transmitting trypanosomes. They feed almost exclusively during the day.

**Reservoirs of infection**—The role of wild game is a controversial subject. As far as the Gambian disease is concerned, it is generally believed that man is the sole source of infection and that game do not play an important part in the aetiology of this infection, many species, of wild game, as well as domestic bovines and pigs, are potential carriers, and one species of antelope has been found infected in nature by a trypanosome that appeared to be *T. gambiense*.



Figure 48

It is however fairly certain that wild game are the main reservoirs of infection of the Rhodesian type of sleeping sickness, for the disease occurs mainly amongst those who come in close contact with wild game, is usually sporadic, and only in special circumstances becomes epidemic. This whole problem is mixed up with that of the identity, or otherwise, of *T. rhodesiense* and *T. brucei*, as the wild game are heavily infected with the latter trypanosome.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—The disease is confined to tropical Africa, between 15°N and 20°S.

*Gambiense* infection extends from St Louis in Senegal, north of the Gambia river throughout all the countries on the west coast of Africa down as far as Angola but there are few endemic areas below  $10^{\circ}\text{S}$ . It extends as far east as Lake Tanganyika in the south, and further north into Uganda, and to the borders of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan.

*Rhodesiense* infection has a much more limited distribution, its realm is mainly in the south-east corner of tropical Africa, north, and in few areas south, of the Zambesi river, in Mozambique Nyasaland, Rhodesia, and Tanganyika.



Figure 49

**Epidemic features**—The disease is in normal times endemic in the infected areas, but may become epidemic under special circumstances. These circumstances have mainly been associated with the opening up of the country and the migration of African natives into infected areas but in other cases the infection has undoubtedly been conveyed into new areas by the personnel of exploratory, commercial, scientific, and religious expeditions. Epidemics have nearly always been associated with *gambiense* infection, in *gambiense* areas the incidence of the disease is usually much higher, even during the inter-epidemic periods, than in the *rhodesiense* areas where it is nearly always sporadic. Anything that lowers the general resistance of the population may lead to an exacerbation of the disease in an endemic area.

The degree of the infection varies considerably from area to area and within an area from year to year. In some districts in Nigeria, surveys a few years ago (1935) showed a 20 per cent infection rate, in some of these same areas there has been a steady decline, and recent surveys have shown 5 per cent (1938) and 4 per cent (1939) infection rates (Briercliffe, 1940), the reduction being partly due to treatment campaigns.

The relationship of the disease to wild game has been discussed above.

**Local distribution**—In neither form of the disease is the whole country side infected but the distribution is always patchy and very local. *Gambiense* infection is confined to riverine areas and the shores of the big lakes, whilst *rhodesiense*, though found in the cities is also found in drier tracts of country, well away from natural water supplies. In *gambiense* areas the local inhabitants have from time to time appreciated this fact and moved their villages away from rivers and lakes but their need for water for themselves and their animals has necessitated their visiting watering clearances where they are liable to get infected.

**Effect of temperature**—The geographical distribution indicates that a moderately high temperature is essential and this observation has been supported by laboratory work. Kinghorn and Yorke (1912) showed that a temperature between 75° and 85°F was necessary for transmission.

**Age sex race and occupation**—There are little differences in the age and sex susceptibility though men coming in contact with the infecting tsetse fly much more frequently are more liable to become infected. However children who look after grazing herds of goats sheep etc. during the hottest part of the day naturally rest in the shade and are very liable to be bitten by tsetse flies. There is also little evidence of any racial immunity, though the inhabitants of the endemic areas suffer a more chronic form of the disease. Occupation is a very important factor boat men fishermen and others whose work takes them into closer contact with the tsetse are naturally more frequently infected.

## PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy**—When the parasite is injected it causes a local inflammatory reaction which subsides in a week or two the trypanosomes find their way into the blood stream and a septicæmia follows. The trypanosomes and their toxins reach and probably have some detrimental effect on every organ and tissue in the body but the most noticeable effects are on the lymph glands the meninges and the central nervous system. The effect is slower in the latter tissues so that symptoms develop later.

In the lymph glands there is a generalized hyperplasia with a cellular increase in the lymph follicles proliferation of the endothelial cells in the sinuses, and leucocytic infiltration largely of plasma cells, around the blood vessels. This general hyperplasia leads to an increase in the size of the gland which leads to hypertrophy of the supporting trabeculae. Later, there is a further increase of fibrous tissue which eventually replaces the lymphoid and the endothelial tissue and the whole gland becomes sclerosed.

The walls of the blood vessels of the central nervous system the choroid plexus and vessels of the pia arachnoid are damaged by the trypanosomes or their toxins, the trypanosomes penetrate these damaged tissues and find their way into the arachnoid space and eventually into the brain substance. They produce a generalized lepto meningitis there is infiltration of the pia arachnoid with plasma cells and lymphocytes and proliferation of the endothelial cells of the capillaries and of the neuroglia cells in the adjacent brain nerve tissue. There is perivascular infiltration by endothelial and neuroglia cells lymphocytes plasma and 'morular' cells, and these cells fill the space between the blood vessels and the perivascular sheath that arises from the pia mater as these blood vessels penetrate the membrane (this space is an extension of the arachnoid space).



Anæmia is common in the later stages of the disease and the red cells have a tendency to clump when blood is taken for a red cell count, which fact may make this a very difficult procedure. In the differential leucocyte count there is relative increase of large mononuclears.

In the urine, albumin is often found early in the disease and it persists throughout; otherwise no specific changes have been reported.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

It is convenient to divide the symptoms of sleeping sickness into two stages, the early febrile stage and the later stage of cerebrospinal involvement. The division is a convenient one that has survived from the time before the discovery of the causal organism when the two syndromes were not definitely associated, but it should not be forgotten that the pathological process that produces both these sets of symptoms is a continuous one, there are in the first stage many signs and symptoms that suggest meningeal involvement, and it is now well recognized that the characteristic changes found in the cerebrospinal fluid precede the development of the typical second stage symptoms by some weeks at least.

**Febrile stage**—It must also be remembered that there are cases of entirely symptom-free infection with *T. gambiense*. In a survey, these symptom-free infections may constitute the bulk of the infections identified, and, whilst a certain number of patients will develop cerebrospinal symptoms at a later date, others undoubtedly remain symptom-free for years, if not for ever. This carrier state is more common amongst African natives, but Europeans have been found infected during routine blood examination some years after leaving Africa.

Between these symptom-free and the typical cases, there are cases with all degrees of symptom development.

The typical case is described below—

The incubation period is not well defined; it may apparently be as short as seven days, though it is usually from two to three weeks before general symptoms appear.

The earliest symptom is the local reaction at the site of the bite of the infecting *glossina*. Normally the bite of the tsetse causes local pain followed, in those not used to the bite by irritation that subsides in a day or two, but in the local inhabitant it will often be unnoticed. The infected bite will cause a sharp local reaction that will usually be first noticed within seven days. A furuncle appears surrounded by an area of redness and induration, this develops into a typical trypanosomal chancre—a dark red raised button-like lesion about an inch in circumference surrounded by an area of erythema and œdema, it is very painful on pressure, and it lasts two to three weeks. This primary lesion has recently attracted much attention as it is realized that it is the rule in European patients, though less frequently reported by African natives, that it provides an opportunity for early diagnosis as the trypanosomes are easily demonstrated in it, and that it thus helps the institution of early treatment.

Fever may accompany this primary lesion or follow very shortly after its first appearance. There is sudden high fever which reaches 103°F or so within the first 48 hours, high fever continues for about a week and then the temperature falls and remains normal or low for a few days before rising again for a few more days. After this the temperature

chart shows an irregular low pyrexia for some months, with perhaps evening rises to 99° or 99.5°F and occasional short bouts of high fever, then the fever gradually disappears.

The rash is inconstant and irregular. It would not easily be seen on the dark skin, so it is mainly in Europeans that it has been reported. It may appear at any time during the disease, but is most common soon after the onset of the fever. It is usually a circinate erythema that appears in patches on the trunk, face, or limbs, it may be transient or persistent, and when it disappears it leaves no traces, and there is no desquamation.

The enlargement of the lymphatic glands is one of the most characteristic signs of the first stage, in the African native sufferer, it may be the only sign by which the disease can be recognized. The glands most easily seen are those in the posterior triangle of the neck, the other cervical glands, the glands in the groin, popliteal space, and axilla, and the epitrochlear glands are others easily examined and they will frequently be found enlarged.

The gland is at first soft, mobile, and rubbery, discrete and painless. Enlargement of the glands in the posterior triangle of the neck may be due to pediculosis or other scalp infections common in African natives, but in this case they will be more painful, less movable, and possibly matted. Later, the enlargement subsides and the glands become hard sclerosed masses.

Other signs and symptoms include localized and transient œdema of different parts of the body, most commonly of the face, including the eyelids, neck, ankles, and in the vicinity of the initial lesion. The spleen and liver are both enlarged in many cases, but concomitant malaria can seldom be entirely excluded.

Tachycardia is a constant sign and the pulse rate seldom falls below 100, even in the afebrile periods. The blood pressure is also low, and there are other signs of myocardial involvement, such as palpitation and shortness of breath on slight exertion.

Deep reflexes may be normal but are often exaggerated, hyperæsthesia is very common, and a particular form of this is known as Kérandel's sign, this is a delayed action hyperæsthesia, in which, following pressure or a slight knock, severe pain comes on after a few minutes. There may be paralysis of single muscles or groups of muscles, facial paralysis is not uncommon. Neuralgias often occur.

Asthenia develops early and is often very pronounced. Severe headache is almost constant. The patient is drowsy during the day and restless at night. Depression amounting to melancholia, irritability, emotional imbalance, deterioration of memory and of general intellectual powers are not uncommon.

During this stage the patient may become extremely debilitated and emaciated, and die of some intercurrent infection.

There are a few cases reported in which the disease was undoubtedly arrested at this stage, without specific treatment, but generally after lasting a variable time, usually six months to a year (but sometimes longer, even up to 7 years) in *gambiense* infection and four months or less in *rhodesiense*, it passes into the next stage.

**Meningo encephalitic stage**—The onset of this stage will be indicated by an increasing lassitude and general indifference to surroundings, with



Fig 1.—Early stage

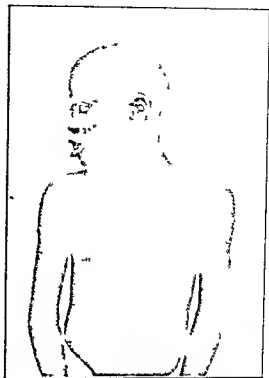


Fig 2.—Glandular enlargement



Fig 3.—More advanced first stage



Fig 4.—Meningo-encephalitic stage (Courtesy Dr E. R. Kellersberger)

PLATE VIII (Chagas's Disease)



Fig 1—Romanus sign (after Mazza)



Fig 2—Heart muscle showing *Trypanosoma cruzi* (*Leishmania* forms) (Courtesy W J Tomlinson and R G Grocott)

a subsidence rather than an exacerbation of the more acute symptoms of the early stages, the tachycardia becomes less pronounced but other cardiac manifestations develop, and there is usually considerable hypertrophy and dilatation. The gait is slow and shuffling, the speech slow and slurred, there are fine tremors of the hands, of the tongue, and occasionally of other muscular groups. Intolerable pruritus is common. The latent period of response to questioning is prolonged, and insistence has to be exerted, but the intelligence is not seriously impaired at first. The patient is somnolent but can be aroused, his indifference to food—which he will take if it is given to him, though he may fall asleep in the process of mastication—leads to malnutrition with its sequelæ. Later, convulsions which may lead to temporary paralyses of groups of muscles, and psychical disturbances, mania and delusions, may occur.

The characteristic appearance, the morose expression, the half-closed puffy eyelids, the drooping corners of the mouth from which saliva dribbles, and the extreme emaciation, is a picture familiar to all readers of textbooks of tropical medicine, but in the majority of cases even this stage of the disease will be much more subtle in its manifestations.

There is little change in the reflexes until almost the terminal stage, when the knee jerks, after a period of over brisk response, may be absent and the sphincter controls lost. The pupils usually react normally.

Optic atrophy has been described, even in the absence of any arsenical treatment, and there may be œdema of the disc due to meningeal involvement, with or without increased intracerebral pressure.

This stage seldom lasts more than a year if no treatment is given though there have been instances of temporary remission with consequently a much longer duration. In more severe cases the end will come within three or four months. Death in convulsions has been reported, but the usual termination is from emaciation and complications, e.g. bed sores, bladder infection, pneumonia, etc.

## DIAGNOSIS

The common clinical signs and symptoms of the early stages are the trypanosome 'chance', irregular fever, glandular enlargement—particularly in the neck, the rash, and Kerandel's sign, but it will always be advisable to confirm the diagnosis by finding the trypanosome.

Certain presumptive laboratory tests will be of value only in cases in which the clinical signs are not characteristic, because in a typical case they add little weight to the provisional diagnosis, and parasitological confirmation will still be necessary.

To carry out a survey in an endemic area after a preliminary selection of suspected cases by gland palpation thick film examination, gland puncture and lumbar puncture should be done.

In the later stages, the parasites in the blood are very scanty and the glands may be sclerosed. In these cases the cerebrospinal fluid will be the only medium of diagnosis, even in the absence of trypanosomes, which are always difficult to find, characteristic changes in this fluid are considered to be diagnostic.

The confirmatory and presumptive methods of diagnosis can be summarized as follows —

Confirmatory methods—(i) Direct examination of fluid from the primary lesion (trypanosome chancre)

(ii) Gland puncture

(iii) Examination of the peripheral blood, (a) direct coverslip examination, (b) by the thick-film method, and (c) after triple centrifugalization

(iv) Lumbar puncture

(v) Animal inoculation

Technique—(i) The indurated margin of the lesion is pricked with a needle and the fluid that exudes is examined under a coverslip, or a smear is made, stained by Giemsa's method, and examined

(ii) The skin over the gland to be punctured is sterilized and the gland is held firmly with the left hand while a hypodermic needle of wide bore is thrust into the gland, the needle is passed backwards and forwards in several directions through the gland substance, which is thus forced up the bore of the needle. The needle is withdrawn and its contents blown on to a slide by attaching the syringe to it and examined fresh and after staining. When the needle is in the gland digital massage will help to extract the gland fluid

(iii) (a) A drop of blood taken from the finger or ear lobe is mixed with an equal quantity of citrate saline and examined under a vaseline ringed coverslip with a 1/6 inch objective the attention will be drawn to the trypanosome by the movement of the red cells

(b) The thick film methods of examining for malaria parasites (see p 87) can be utilized, Field's rapid staining method gives excellent results

(c) About 5 ccm of blood is withdrawn placed in a centrifuge tube containing 1 ccm of 2 per cent sodium citrate solution and centrifuged at low speed (1 000 revolutions per minute) for ten minutes, this will throw down the majority of the red cells. The supernatant fluid is removed and centrifuged again at the same speed until the rest of the red cells and most of the leucocytes are deposited. The supernatant fluid is again removed and centrifuged a third time at a rapid speed—2 000 revolutions per minute. The deposit is now examined directly under a coverslip and after staining

(iv) The cerebrospinal fluid can be obtained by either lumbar or cisternal puncture. After rapid centrifugalization, the deposit is examined for trypanosomes. Trypanosomes are seldom found in gambiense infection but a definite diagnosis can be made on the cellular findings and the biochemical changes. A lymphocyte count of 50 per cmm or more, and a protein content of 0.03 per cent are claimed by some workers to be diagnostic, the presence of morular cells will considerably strengthen the evidence

Pandy's test is a simple and most useful test to carry out in the field. One drop of cerebrospinal fluid is dropped into 2 ccm of carbolic acid solution (1 part pure phenol in 15 parts of distilled water), the appearance of a bluish white cloud constitutes a positive result, which indicates an excess of globulin. In a case in which trypanosomes have been found in the glands this test will show whether the central nervous system is involved, it is very sensitive and is usually positive long before the development of physical signs of involvement of the central nervous system

(v) Of laboratory animals, mice rats guinea-pigs and rabbits are all susceptible to infection and strains can be maintained for long periods by passage through these animals but to establish a strain in the laboratory, it is usually necessary to make the first passage through a monkey, *Silenus rhesus* or some species of *Cercopithecus*. The deposit of 5 ccm of citrated triple-centrifugalized blood should be inoculated intraperitoneally into a monkey, subsequent passages are made from the monkey's blood, 0.5 to 3 ccm., according to the size of the animal to be infected. Cerebrospinal fluid deposit can be used in the same way.

A differential diagnosis between *T. gambiense* and *T. rhodesiense* can be satisfactorily made only by animal inoculation, in the latter, the

infection is much more virulent, and posterior nuclear forms will appear (*vide supra*)

The presumptive tests—(i) The clumping of the red cells, when blood is taken in normal saline for doing a blood count, occurs very constantly in this disease and seldom in other diseases. The clumping may be noticed in the gland-puncture slide when this is examined fresh, and should at once arouse suspicion so that the gland juice can be examined for a longer period than usual before being pronounced negative.

(ii) Brown's adhesion phenomenon depends on the fact that, in the presence of immune serum, platelets and other small particles (e.g. bacilli) will adhere to trypanosomes, it is claimed that the test is *species specific*.

(iii) The serum-formalin test is carried out in the same way as for kala azar (*see p 164*).

The 'positive' result is not as clear cut as in kala azar, though a definite change occurs in all advanced cases of sleeping sickness, and many other conditions produce confusing results so that it is not a test of great value in the human disease, as it is in animal trypanosomiasis, e.g. camel trypanosomiasis in which it is the routine diagnostic procedure.

## TREATMENT

**Historical.**—From the earliest days arsenic in one form or another has been considered a specific for sleeping sickness. *Liquor arsenicalis* was at one time used in increasing doses up to the point of intolerance, later sodium arsenate was given by injection but the beneficial effect was found to be transient. The synthetic arsenical, atoxyl (sodium para-aminophenyl arsonate) a proprietary preparation used in certain skin diseases was found by Thomas working at the Liverpool School of Tropical Medicine to have a sterilizing effect on experimental trypanosomiasis in mice. The early success of these investigations did much to encourage the German chemists to persevere in their search for the *therapia magna* the first stage of which ended in the discovery of salvarsan by Ehrlich in 1910.

In 1908 Plimmer and Thomson showed that intravenous sodium antimonyl tartrate caused trypanosomes to disappear from the blood of experimental animals, Kerandel claimed to have cured himself with potassium antimonyl tartrate after atoxyl had failed.

Many other arsenical antimonyl preparations were introduced and tried but none had the success of atoxyl which however had its strict limitations (*vide infra*) until 1922 when the complex organic urea preparation Bayer 205 or Germanin, was introduced this still has an established place in the treatment of the disease. A few years later trypanamide sodium N-phenyl-glycinamide-p-arsonate was prepared by Jacobs and Heidelberger and has proved one of the most powerful of the arsenical preparations yet used in the treatment of sleeping sickness. Orsamine (Fournau 270) 4-acetyl-amino-2-hydroxy-phenyl arsonic acid was introduced by Ledentu and Daude in 1926. The most recent additions to the trypanocidal drugs are the aromatic diamidines of these 4,4-diamidino diphenyl ethylene has had the most extensive trial but there are indications that it does not reach the cerebrospinal fluid. In this respect 4,4-diamidino diphenyl pentane and propane are believed from more limited experience to be superior. It was again at the Liverpool School of Tropical Medicine by Yorke (1940) and his co-workers, that this group of drugs was introduced.

An 'incident' in the history of the treatment of sleeping sickness was the wide publicity given in the early inter-war period to the now finally discarded salvarsanized serum treatment.

Since the best of the drugs so far used will only cure about 50 per cent of the patients treated in the late stages of the disease and since many drug-resistant cases are encountered at all stages the history of the treatment of this disease is obviously still in the making.

**Specific drugs and dosages.**—At the present day, the only specific drugs that have survived an extensive trial are—atoxyl, which is now

practically obsolete, orsanine, and germanin (or antrypol, a British product which is identical with germanin\*), for treatment in the first stage, and tryparsamide for the meningo-encephalitic stage, orsanine is also used in the latter stage but its value is very limited. The antimonials may be looked upon as an adjuvant treatment in arsenic resistant cases. The aromatic diamidines show considerable promise, but have not yet undergone the test of time.

**Atoxyl** is given in a 10 per cent solution in sterile distilled water, in doses of 10 to 15 mg per kilogramme body-weight, weekly for six to ten weeks. With larger doses, higher cure rates can be expected, but toxic sequelæ are correspondingly more common.

**Orsanine** is given subcutaneously, intramuscularly, or intravenously in a 20 per cent solution in sterile distilled water, in doses of 20 to 35 mg per kilogramme body weight, the maximum individual dose is usually considered to be 2 grammes. The injections are given weekly for ten to twelve weeks. It is less toxic and more efficient than atoxyl in sterilizing the peripheral blood in the early stages, but it is far less efficient than tryparsamide in the meningo-encephalitic stage, though it is still used in this stage.

**Tryparsamide** is given intravenously in a 20 to 40 per cent solution in sterile distilled water, in doses of 20 to 40 mg per kilogramme body-weight, up to a maximum individual dose of 3 grammes in an adult, at weekly intervals for 10 weeks. Chesterman recommends larger doses, of the order of 60 mg per kilogramme in adults, with a maximum of 4 grammes for an individual dose. This drug has a relatively poor trypanocidal action and is therefore not given in the early stages, but it appears to possess special powers of penetrating nervous tissues, and is therefore the drug of choice in the late stages of the disease.

**Antrypol or germanin** is given intravenously in a 10 per cent solution in sterile normal saline in doses of 2 grammes for an adult twice or thrice weekly, up to a total dose of 10 grammes.

**4,4-diamidino diphenyl ethylene diphenoxypentane, and diphenoxypentane**, the members of the diamidine group that have so far been used, are given in a 2 per cent solution in sterile distilled water, in doses of 1 mg per kilogramme body-weight thrice weekly, up to 15 injections.

**Antimony preparations**—Sodium antimonyl tartrate has been largely superseded by other less toxic drugs. The trivalent fousadin and the pentavalent neostibosan have been used with some success and are given in the dosages used in leishmaniasis (see p. 168).

**Toxic effects**—All the pentavalent arsenical drugs may give rise to toxic symptoms even when given in moderate doses, but the likelihood of this occurring increases with the dose. Each drug has its own specific range of toxicity, and individual susceptibility is a variable factor.

Occasionally, severe diarrhoea and vomiting will occur, liver disturbances and dermatitis are rarer than with the trivalent arsenicals, but do occur. Visual disturbances are usually the limiting factor, these may be serious. The earliest symptoms are dimness of vision, contraction of the visual field, and sometimes flickerings. Later, blind spots will appear and eventually there will be complete blindness.

\* A French product moranyl (Fournes 309) is also identical with germanin.



Little change will be seen by use of the ophthalmoscope until permanent and irreparable damage is done. Therefore a patient having tryparsamide should, if practicable have his vision tested before the course is started, and then before each subsequent dose, if there is any deterioration of vision the tryparsamide should be stopped immediately. If this is done directly the early symptoms appear the vision will usually improve again.

Optic atrophy is more likely to occur in advanced second stage cases than in early cases, and is due both to the disease—which alone will occasionally produce it—and to the treatment.

When one is treating uneducated African natives it will be impossible to test their vision accurately and one has to face the fact that in a certain proportion of cases blindness will occur and to hope that if treatment is stopped immediately they will recover.

The most important toxic effect of antrypol is due to idiosyncrasy that occurs in a very small proportion of patients, it is easily avoided by giving 1 c cm. of the solution first and then waiting a few moments before giving the remainder. Idiosyncrasy is indicated by an almost instantaneous collapse. Antrypol also damages the renal epithelium and often causes albuminuria after a few doses have been administered, this is usually transitory and disappears when the injections are discontinued, but may recur when they are started again. More serious damage may be done, and epithelial casts and blood may appear in the urine. If the condition is ignored, it may progress, causing anuria and death. Necrotic changes in the suprarenal cortex, and, as a rare effect of this drug, dermatitis have been reported.

Certain alarming, both early and late, toxic effects from 4, 4'-diamidino diphenyl ethylene have recently been reported.

The treatment of the case—Early institution of treatment is very important as the trypanosome is very much more easily killed before it has established itself in the meninges and brain. The *gambiense* infection is much more amenable to treatment than the *rhodesiense* which is very apt to become arsenic-fast.

In the first stage of either infection, antrypol is the drug of choice, but in *gambiense* infection orsanine may be used as an alternative. Yorke considers that the danger of making a *rhodesiense* case arsenic-resistant should deter one from using any arsenic drug in the early stages.

Pandy's test (*v s*, p 210) is of great value in determining whether a patient with trypanosomes in his blood, or gland juice, can be treated as an out-patient with antrypol or whether he must be admitted to hospital for treatment with the more toxic tryparsamide.

In the meningo encephalitic stage, tryparsamide is the only really satisfactory drug. Orsanine will undoubtedly produce cures in this stage, and claims as high as 50 per cent have been made for it, but it is generally agreed that it is inferior to tryparsamide.

In arsenic-resistant cases, the physician must resort to antimony preparations, at least as alternating courses and to antrypol, though the latter has a relatively poor action when once changes have occurred in the cerebrospinal fluid.

The art of the treatment of this disease resolves itself into striking a balance between the toxic and the efficient dose of the trypanocidal drugs and playing them in such a way that the infection does not become drug-resistant—this drug-resistance is not confined to the arsenic compounds. Inadequate dosage certainly tends to produce drug-resistance. Chesterman

takes the view that in the treatment of an otherwise fatal disease one should be prepared to risk the complications that larger doses may cause. Obviously this is a matter of circumstances as well as opinion.

**General and subsidiary treatment**—The circumstances are not usually such that the patient can be confined to bed, but when this is possible it should certainly be done, at least during the febrile stage. In both this and the later stages, good nursing is of the greatest importance, in the latter in particular, bed-sores, hypostatic pneumonia, etc., are very likely to occur unless great care is taken.

Concomitant infection, such as hookworm, malaria, etc., must first be treated to allow the specific drugs to exert their full action.

**Drug resistance**—This is an interesting phenomenon, the full explanation of which has not yet been given. Drug-resistance may be a function of the parasite, or of the host. It is easier to conceive of it as a function of the latter, but it is believed in this case to be one of the former.

After treatment by the pentavalent arsenic compounds, it is sometimes found that the infection from which the patient is suffering is arsenic-resistant, that is to say, further treatment by any of the pentavalent arsenic compounds and to a less extent the pentavalent antimony compounds, will not affect the trypanosomes. If this strain of trypanosome is transmitted to another man, or to an animal, it still retains its arsenic-resistant character, in fact, no multiplication of animal passages or alternation of the insect vectors will alter the arsenic resistant character of the strain.

Antrypol-resistant strains have also been isolated, but not so readily.

Drug-resistant strains are more frequently encountered in *T. rhodesiense* than in *T. gambiense* infections, but they have been found in the latter, in areas where wholesale inadequate treatment has been undertaken. This suggests to the writer that arsenic-resistance in a trypanosome is born and not made, for in *rhodesiense* infection the cycle is probably not man-tsetse-man, but animal-tsetse-animal with infection of man as a sporadic incident, from this *cul de-sac* the trypanosome strains do not as a rule return into circulation.

The theory that appeals to the writer is as follows. In man (and in animals) there are innumerable strains of trypanosome with slightly varying characteristics, living in biological competition, when a number of strains are infecting a single individual, one strain predominates but the others are still there ready to come in the fore when their stronger rivals are knocked out (*cf* malaria). Eventually, all drug susceptible strains are knocked out, drug-resistant strains are thus selected, and not made. If this theory is established, some revision of the principles of treatment will be necessary.

## PREVENTION

Before considering preventive measures it will be as well to review the essential factors in transmission, these are (i) the trypanosome and its 'reservoirs', (ii) the tsetse fly, (iii) susceptible man, and (iv) contact between the tsetse and man.

Preventive measures must be considered in connection with each of the factors —

(i) The trypanosome and its 'reservoirs'—In *gambiense* infection man is the main reservoir of infection and attempts have been made to reduce this reservoir by widespread blood sterilizing campaigns, in which very large numbers of people are given single, or at any rate only a few,

injections of some arsenical compound *eg* arsamine. Cure is not effected, but temporary sterilization, or at any rate a marked reduction in the number of trypanosomes in the blood will be achieved. The objection to this procedure is the danger of the development of arsenic-resistant strains, it is still practised in some colonies but is not to be recommended. On the other hand, treatment campaigns that aim at giving a full course and curing the patients will help to reduce the reservoir of infection. The possible wild game reservoir of *rhodesiense* infection opens up controversial subjects which it would be out of place to raise here.

(ii) The tsetse fly — *G. palpalis* remains near the shores of lakes and the banks of rivers. Burning or otherwise destroying the bush and undergrowth that provides shade for tsetse larvae at river crossings and watering places may render the ground unsuitable for breeding but is very expensive, wastes timber, and may encourage soil erosion. Numbers can be greatly reduced by the regular catching of flies with hand nets in selected blocks of bush (Symes and Southby, 1938). Trapping and other special methods have been introduced in special circumstances.

(iii) Susceptible man — Individual protection can be achieved by the administration of acrypol, or gammaoio, two grammes will give protection for at least three months. In the Belgian Congo a large scale experiment, in which 1 gramme per adult was given every three months had some apparent success.

Rules have from time to time been put into operation to prevent migration of susceptible natives into infected areas, but are difficult to enforce.

(iv) Contact between the tsetse and man — As the tsetse bites during the day, it is difficult to devise means of protection. Clothing certainly helps to protect the European sojourner. Night travel has in the past been resorted to in order to avoid infection.

The location of settlements away from rivers and lakes, and the aggregation of the population into relatively large villages as opposed to wide distribution in scattered homesteads, are measures that are now being adopted. It is possible to make wide clearings around these villages and of course this should be extended to the roads as far as possible.

Gibbions (1941) has recently investigated the use of rod shaped clearings along streams, watering places and road crossings. These clearings discourage *G. palpalis* from lingering to bite man.

As in the case of almost every tropical disease, the economic agricultural and nutritional aspects of control loom large, and the subject has to be studied from all these points of view.

#### PROGNOSIS

Untreated *gambiense* infection may run a very chronic course of some years' duration whereas *rhodesiense* infection usually runs a rapid course of a few months' duration, but there are exceptions in each instance.

Prognosis in the treated case will depend on the stage at which the diagnosis is made and treatment instituted on the species of infecting trypanosome, and on the treatment given. In the early stages the prognosis is much better than in the late stage when the meninges are involved in either infection, and in *gambiense* infection even in the second stage at least 50 per cent will respond to tryparsamide, but in *rhodesiense* infection the prognosis is usually much graver.

To this general rule there are exceptions, some strains of *T. gambiense* are very resistant to treatment, and there are strains of *T. rhodesiense* that respond readily.

## REFERENCES

- BRUCE D (1895) *Preliminary Report on the Tsetse-Fly Disease or Nagana in Zululand* Bennet and Davis, Durban
- Idem (1910) *Discussion on Human Trypanosomiasis Brit Med J.*, 11, 861
- COLESON, J F (1939) A summary of the work of the Research Scheme on *Trypanosoma rhodesiense* during the years 1930 to 1938 *East African Med J.*, 16, 84
- EVANS G (1881) On a Horse Disease in India known as 'Surra' probably due to a *Hæmatozoon* *Vet J.*, p 1, *et seq*
- FORD, R M (1902) Some clinical notes on a European patient in whose blood a Trypanosome was observed *J Trop Med and Hyg.*, 5, 261
- GIBBINA E G (1941) Studies on the bionomics, control and natural infectivity of the riverine *Glossina palpalis* sub-species *fuscipes* Newstead in the West Nile district of Uganda *Ann Trop Med Parasit.*, 35, 195
- KINGHORN, A., and YORKE, W (1912) On the influence of meteorological conditions on the development of *Trypanosoma rhodesiense* in *Glossina morsitans* *Ann Trop Med and Parasit.*, 6, 405
- KLEINF, F K (1909) Positive Infektionsversuche mit *Trypanosoma brucei* durch *Glossina palpalis* *Deut med Woch.*, 35, 469
- LEDENTU, G., and DAUDE J (1926) Treatment of Trypanosomiasis by Fournieu 270 *Ann Inst Pasteur*, 40, 830 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull.*, 1927, 24, 565)
- LIVINGSTONE, D (1857) *Missionary Travels and Researches in South Africa (Tsetse-Fly)*, pp 80, 571 John Murray, London
- PLIMMER, H G., and THOMSON, J D (1908) Further results of experimental treatment of Trypanosomiasis in rats *Proc Roy Soc Ser B*, 80, 1
- STEPHENS J W W and FANTHAM, H B (1910) On the peculiar morphology of a Trypanosome from a case of sleeping sickness and the possibility of its being a new species (*T. rhodesiense*) *Ann Trop Med and Parasit.*, 4, 343
- SYMES C B., and SOUTHEY, R (1938) The Reduction of *G. palpalis* in a Lake Shore Area by the 'Block' Method Nairobi (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull.*, 1939, 36, 740)
- TOMLINSON, W J and GROCOTT R G (1944) A simple method of staining malarial protozoa and other parasites in paraffin sections *Amer J Clin Path*, 14, 316
- YORKE W (1939) Trypanosomiasis *British Encyclopædia of Medical Practice*, 12, 263 Butterworth and Co, Ltd, London
- Idem (1940) .. Recent work on the chemotherapy of protozoal infections *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg.*, 33, 463

# CHAGAS'S DISEASE, OR SOUTH AMERICAN TRYPANOSOMIASIS

	PAGE
DEFINITION . . . . .	217
HISTORICAL .. .. .	217
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	218
<i>The causal organism</i> . . . . .	218
Morphology and staining—Distribution in the human host	
<i>Transmission</i> .. .. .	218
<i>Mechanism of transmission</i> . . . . .	218
<i>Animal reservoirs of infection</i> .. . . .	219
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	219
<i>Geographical distribution</i> .. .. .	219
<i>Epidemic features</i> .. .. .	219
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	220
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	220
<i>Acute form</i> .. .. .	220
Incubation period—Romana's sign	
<i>Chronic form</i> .. .. .	221
<i>Chagomas</i> .. .. .	221
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	221
PROGNOSIS .. .. .	222
PREVENTION .. .. .	222
TREATMENT .. .. .	222

**Definition.**—South American trypanosomiasis, or Chagas's disease, is usually acute in its early stages and is characterized by local swellings, fever, adenitis and anæmia, and later develops varied chronic manifestations, cardiac, nervous or myxœdematous, it mainly affects children, and it occurs in South and Central America. It is caused by *Trypanosoma cruzi* which is transmitted to man by reduviid bugs of the family Triatomidae, notably *Triatoma megista* and *Triatoma infestans*.

**Historical.**—The history of this disease is almost unique in that the causal organism and the mode of transmission were discovered in the laboratory before the disease was recognized clinically. Carlos Chagas and Cruz demonstrated the trypanosomes in reduviid bugs and transmitted the infection to monkeys; later, Chagas discovered the disease in children in Brazil. Recently, the disease has been shown to be more widespread than was at first supposed, and to occur in a number of other South and Central American countries. Further, Triatomidae have been found infected in many American countries, *eg* Texas (Packchanian, 1939), where the disease has not yet been found, and many insects other than the Triatomidae have been shown to be potential vectors, *eg* *Triatoma sanguisuga ambigua* (Packchanian, 1940).

two years. The trypanosome multiplies and passes through different developmental stages to become a metacyclic, short stumpy, form which is passed in the feces. The salivary glands are not infected, and transmission is not effected by the bite, as was at first supposed, but by the metacyclic trypanosomes that are passed in the feces of the bug being rubbed into the wound made during the bite, and possibly by contamination of the conjunctivæ with the fingers. The irritation caused by the bite will lead to scratching so that either of these events is a likely sequel.



Figure 50 *Triatoma megista*

**Animal reservoirs of infection**—There is a long list of wild animals that have been found infected and/or shown to be capable of sustaining the infection, notably the armadillo and the opossum.

Domestic animals are also found naturally infected, e.g. the cat and the dog, in a high percentage. It seems probable that wild animals are the main sources of infection, as triatoma have been found living in their burrows.

Cats and dogs are infected by feeding on infected rodents.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—All the earliest cases were reported from the Minas Geraes district of Brazil, and in fact as pointed out by Yorke (1937), only a little over a hundred cases had been reported from anywhere else, up to that date despite the very wide distribution of the infection in animals and of the potential insect vectors. However, during the last few years more cases have been reported from many South American countries, Argentina, Uruguay, Peru, Venezuela, and Chile, from Panama, Guatemala and San Salvador, in Central America and recently from Mexico.

No human case has yet been reported from the United States.

After Brazil, Argentina has provided the largest number of cases, and this had reached about 500 by 1940 (Mazza). In most other countries only isolated cases have been found even after systematic investigation.

**Epidemic features**—The disease is sporadic and occurs mainly amongst the infants and young children of the lower classes in the endemic areas. Children of either sex are attacked and usually the first symptoms appear before they are two years old. Older children and adults are occasionally affected. The disease is commoner in country districts than in towns.



Figure 51

About the chronic form there is considerable confusion in the literature, since the authenticity of the original picture of this stage, as painted by Chagas, is seriously questioned. Endemic goitre and cretinism are very common in the district of Minas Geraes where Chagas first discovered the disease, and it appears that the picture he painted is really not chronic Chagas's disease, but endemic hypothyroidism. A similar condition has not been observed in any of the other non goitrous districts where Chagas's disease is endemic. Further, there is no experimental evidence that this trypanosome has any predilection for the thyroid gland as it undoubtedly has for heart muscle, for example.

If this view is accepted, there is little left of the chronic syndrome. The patients who have been found infected, often accidentally and/or at post mortem, have shown a variety of symptoms, but the most commonly recurring ones are those associated with a chronic form of heart disease, with alterations in conductivity and disturbances in rhythm.

Early death from chronic fibrotic changes in the heart is common in the districts where infected hogs are found, and, in the absence of any other obvious cause for this, and in view of the facts that many of these persons have been shown to be infected and that this trypanosome undoubtedly has a predilection for heart muscle, it is tempting to associate these two observations.

**Chagomas**—This term has been introduced recently by Mazza to describe certain swellings that occur in the skin as a result of infection with *T. cruzi*. He describes the pathological changes as a fatty necrosis in the epidermis and subcutaneous tissues. The swellings produced are firm, sometimes of cartilaginous hardness, they move freely over the underlying muscles, and they are often of a reddish purple colour. They may occur at the original site of the entry of the parasite following a bite, in which case Mazza calls them inoculation chagomas, or they may be metastatic, appearing in large numbers in different parts of the body a month or so after the primary lesion. The inoculation chagoma appears within about a week of the inoculation and persists for some weeks, and leishmania forms of the parasite can be found in it.

### DIAGNOSIS

The clinical diagnosis in a typical case does not present any particular difficulties. Romana's sign in children and the more recently described chagomas in both adults and children will arouse strong suspicion. During the first few weeks of the infection, confirmation is not usually difficult, in a large percentage of cases, trypanosomes can be found in the blood, by direct examination or by the triple centrifugalization method (see p. 210). The leishmania forms can also be demonstrated in the chagomas.

Later, animal inoculation or xeno-diagnosis will be necessary.

For the former, young animals, guinea-pigs or better still puppies, are inoculated with the deposit after triple centrifugalization of 10 ccm of blood from the patient. After about 14 days, the trypanosomes will be found in the blood of the animal.

Xeno-diagnosis is carried out by allowing third nymphal-stage clean laboratory-bred triatoma to feed on a patient and after an interval dissecting the hog and demonstrating the infection, this may well be considered too elaborate a procedure for an ordinary laboratory to carry out, as a long-established laboratory strain of triatoma must be used in order to obviate a false positive finding.

The Machado-Guerrero reaction is a form of complement-fixation test, in which an extract made from a heavily infected puppy's liver is used as antigen. A more recent modification is to prepare a more standardized antigen from cultures of *T. cruzi* in blood dextrose agar. The test is said to be specific to a high degree at any stage after the early acute stage, it is not usually positive before the 30th day. The result may however be positive in sleeping sickness and kala azar, the latter disease occurs in South America. Both complement fixation and slide agglutination tests have been used and apparently give accurate results.

#### PROGNOSIS

A high death rate is reported in the early acute stage in young children, the death rate is usually placed at about 50 per cent in the first year of life, but in the later age groups it declines rapidly. It must be remembered that this estimate takes into account only diagnosed cases, and, while it is possible that in young children the infection is always accompanied by marked symptoms, this is not the case in older children and adults, for many who give no history of an acute attack have been shown to be suffering from a chronic infection.

Though many cases have been discovered amongst persons showing no symptoms, the general indication is that the individual with a chronic infection is not on the whole a 'good life'.

#### PREVENTION

The dark corners and the thatched roofs of the huts of the poor obviously provide good cover for vectors, therefore any measure to improve the living conditions of the poor must be looked upon as a preventive procedure. Also, the bugs bite mostly at night, so that mosquito nets, even of very wide mesh, will give protection. Infants should certainly be so protected.

#### TREATMENT

None of the drugs so far used in the treatment of sleeping sickness has been of the slightest use in Chagas's disease.

Mazza has reported very good results with Bayer 7602, a preparation the composition of which has not been disclosed. The drug is given intramuscularly on alternate days, as a freshly prepared 3 per cent solution, in doses from 5 ccm for an adult, a total dosage of 0.222 gramme per kilo gramm body-weight is considered to be sufficient to effect a cure. Brumpt also had good results with this drug, but not all other workers have been so successful.

#### REFERENCES

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Mazza S (1940)         | Chagas Disease in San Juan <i>Prensa Med Argentina</i> 27, 401 (Abstract— <i>Trop Dis Bull</i> , 37, 413)   |
| Packettianian A (1939) | Natural infection of <i>Triatoma gerstaeckeri</i> with <i>Trypanosoma cruzi</i> in Texas <i>Pub Health Rep</i> 54, 1517                               |
| <i>Idem</i> (1940)     | .. Experimental transmission of <i>Trypanosoma cruzi</i> infection in animals by <i>Triatoma sanguisuga ambiguus</i> <i>Pub Health Rep</i> , 55, 1526 |
| Yorke W (1937)         | .. Chagas' Disease. A Critical Review <i>Trop Dis Bull</i> , 34, 275  |



## THE RELAPSING FEVERS

	PAGE
DEFINITION	224
DISCUSSION	224
LOUSE BORNE RELAPSING FEVER	
HISTORICAL	225
EPIDEMIOLOGY	225
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	225
<i>Epidemic features</i>	225
<i>Seasonal incidence</i>	226
<i>Age sex, race and occupation</i>	226
ÆTIOLOGY	226
<i>Historical</i>	226
<i>The causal organism</i>	226
Morphology and staining—Culture—Distribution and pathogenesis	
<i>Immunity</i>	227
<i>Transmission</i>	228
<i>Source and spread of infection</i>	228
PATHOLOGY	228
<i>Morbid anatomy</i>	228
<i>Blood picture—Urine</i>	229
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	229
<i>The incubation period—Onset—Rash—Jaundice</i>	229
<i>Relapses</i>	230
<i>Complications and sequelæ</i>	230
DIAGNOSIS	230
<i>Differential diagnosis</i>	230
PREVENTION	230
<i>Hospital and ambulance personnel</i>	231
<i>Delousing hospital admissions</i>	231
TREATMENT	232
<i>General and dietetic</i>	232
<i>Specific</i>	232
PROGNOSIS	
TICK BORNE RELAPSING FEVER	
HISTORICAL	233
EPIDEMIOLOGY	233
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	233
<i>Epidemic features</i>	233

	PAGE
ÆTIOLOGY	233
<i>The causal organism</i>	233
<i>Transmission</i>	233
<i>Animal reservoirs</i>	234
PATHOLOGY	234
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	235
<i>African type</i>	235
The incubation period—Febrile period—Afebrile period—Relapses	
<i>Iranian type</i>	235
<i>Spanish type</i>	235
DIAGNOSIS	235
PREVENTION	235
TREATMENT	236
PROGNOSIS	236

**Definition.**—Relapsing fever is an acute specific disease occurring in many parts of the world, characterized by fever that appears in bouts of a few days' duration, with a sudden onset, a rapid subsidence and a tendency to relapse at regular short intervals. It is caused by a spirochæte that is found in the blood and in other organs and tissues and is transmitted to man by insects of at least two genera. The symptoms vary with the genus of the transmitting insect.

**Discussion.**—Relapsing fevers that comply with the above definition have been described in many temperate sub tropical and tropical countries. The causal organisms are morphologically indistinguishable from one another, but have been given a very large number of different names both generic and specific. The following list has been prepared from data given by various workers —

Generic name	Specific name	Location	Insect vector
<i>Spirochæta</i> <i>Spironema</i> <i>Treponema</i> <i>Borrelia</i>	<i>recurrentis</i> <i>obermeieri</i> <i>carteri</i> <i>navyi</i> <i>egyptica</i> (um) <i>berbera</i> (um)	Europe Europe India America Egypt North Africa	<i>Pediculus humanus</i>
	<i>duttoni</i>	Central Africa	<i>Ornithodoros moubata</i>
	<i>rossi</i>	East Africa	
	<i>kochi</i>	East Africa	<i>O. savignyi</i>
	<i>crocidura</i>	Africa	<i>O. lahorensis</i>
	<i>pernica</i> (um)	Persia and N W Africa	<i>O. papillipes</i>
	<i>sogdiana</i> (um)	North Africa	<i>O. moubata savignyi</i> and <i>erraticus</i>
	<i>marocana</i> (um)	Morocco	<i>O. moubata</i> and <i>savignyi</i>
	<i>hispanica</i> (um)	S Spain	<i>O. marocanus</i>
	<i>neotropicalis</i>	Panama	<i>O. talje</i>
	<i>venezuelensis</i> (e)	Venezuela and Columbia	<i>O. venezuelensis</i>
	<i>turcata</i>	Texas	<i>O. turcata</i>
	<i>normandi</i>	North Africa	<i>O. moubata savignyi</i> and <i>erraticus</i>

epidemic outbreaks and the disease is liable to spread to, and in, other countries and communities when normal standards are not maintained, during wars—amongst both troops and refugees—famines, and earthquakes and other natural disasters

A severe epidemic occurred in the African epidemic belt south of the Sahara (*vide supra*) from 1921 for about eight years, and affected some millions of persons, the death rate is said to have been about 5 per cent of the populations of these countries, and in some it was as high as 25 per cent. In India there has been little relapsing fever since 1929 when the last traces of the 1923 4-5 epidemic disappeared

Epidemic relapsing fever is very frequently but not only always associated with epidemic typhus, in a mixed epidemic the latter usually predominates

**Seasonal incidence**—There is a distinct seasonal variation in incidence, the height of the epidemic wave is usually in the spring. In India and Iraq, the disease used to disappear completely during the hottest months of the year

**Age, sex, race and occupation**—Relapsing fever appears to be most common in male adults, but persons of all ages and both sexes are susceptible. Individuals of all races are susceptible unless protected by previous experience of the disease when a large percentage of the population is thus protected, racial immunity may be simulated

Washermen or -women, and dealers in old clothes are particularly liable to be infected. Nurses and hospital attendants are also exposed through close contact with louse-infected patients, but not doctors, at least not to the same extent as in typhus, since viable spirochaetes are not present in the dried faeces of lice and there is therefore no air-borne infection

### ÆTIOLOGY

**Historical**—Obermeier first found the parasite in 1868 but he did not describe it until about five years later. Lebert named it *Protophysetum recurrentis* in 1874 and Cohn *Spirillum obermeieri* in the next year the specific name *recurrentis* thus has precedence. Other workers in other countries e.g. Vandyke Carter in India in 1876 found probably the same species of spirochaete and gave it different names. In 1907 Mackie showed that the louse was the important transmitter in India his observations were confirmed and extended by Nicolle, Blautot and Conseil (1913) in north Africa who showed that the transmission was not by the bite but by the crushing of the louse on the skin

**The causal organism** **Morphology and staining**—*Spirochæta*\* *recurrentis* is an actively motile spiral organism with five to ten fairly regular loose primary spirals, it is from 10 to 20  $\mu$  in length and about 0.2  $\mu$  in thickness, each spiral is 2 to 3  $\mu$  in length and 1  $\mu$  in amplitude. The spirochaetes can be seen, though not accurately, in a fresh specimen of blood preferably by dark ground illumination. They move by rapid

\* The generic name *Spirochæta* is used here because it is still the most popular one. When parasitologists arrive at a unanimous decision as to the correct generic names, it will be time for clinicians to adopt them.

In the more recent classifications there are no organisms pathogenic in man in the genus *Spirochæta*. The spirochætal organisms with which we are concerned in this book are four—*Treponema* (*Borrelia*) *recurrentis* and/or *duttoni*; a flexible organism with fairly regular loose primary spirals the cause of relapsing fever; *Treponema pertenue*, an organism with regular short spirals (morphologically indistinguishable from the causal organism of syphilis) the cause of yaws; *Treponema carateum* (Aernyoni) another organism with short fairly regular spirals similar to the last named the cause of pinta; *Spirillum minus* a short rigid organism with 3 or 4 short spirals and flagella at each end the cause of rat bite fever, and *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* a flexible organism with numerous tightly-wound primary spirals and a secondary characteristic hook, sometimes at each end the cause of Weil's disease.

rotation, but not apparently purposefully, for they move backwards and forwards within the space of the microscopic field

They stain well with all Romanowsky stains, and when stained assume various shapes often a circular one in which the spiral waves are completely lost. The spirochete appears very fine in the stained specimen and the ends taper off to invisibility but there is no true flagellum (see plate B II)

**Culture**—The spirochaetes can be grown anaerobically in a medium containing aseptic fluid, citrated blood, and kidney substance, but they do not grow well

**Distribution and pathogenesis**—They are found in the blood during the height of the febrile attack, but disappear just before the fall of the temperature, reappearing during the relapse. It has been suggested that during this period the spirochaetes assume a granular form, since infection has been transmitted by blood taken during the afebrile phase, on the other hand, it has been shown that during the remission, the spirochaetes find their way into reticulo endothelial cells in the internal organs, e.g. the spleen, and the brain, where they can be found as such

Infection can be transmitted to a number of animals e.g. monkeys, squirrel, rats and mice, but not to rabbits or guinea pigs. In monkeys the attack is very similar to that in man, 48 to 72 hours after the inoculation, a febrile attack occurs which lasts three or four days; there is a relapse after two to eight days and the cycle may be repeated two or three times. In smaller animals the organisms may appear in the blood in large numbers 24 hours after intraperitoneal inoculation of infected blood relapses are less constant

**Immunity**—Immune bodies appear in the blood after an attack, they are capable of agglutinating and lysing homologous spirochaetes and protecting animals against infection. The immunity does not last long. Immunity against *Spirochata recurrentis* gives some but not very complete protection against infection with *Spirochata duttoni*, and the antigenic correlationship between these two species if separate species they are, is of a much lower order than that between the various strains (or types) of *recurrentis* (vide infra)

To explain the phenomenon of relapse, it is suggested that the immune bodies appear in the blood and cause the spirochaetes to disappear into the internal organs, these immune bodies are very transitory and when they disappear, the spirochaetes return to the systemic blood, multiply, and again cause fever, more antibodies are formed and so on, until the antibody load is sufficient to knock out the infection altogether

In the writer's opinion, the more feasible explanation is that there is a multiplicity of strains with slightly differing antigenic structures, (cf the antigenic structure of Flexner dysentery strains, q.v.) that when a person is infected, he is infected by a number of strains of which one is dominant and causes the first bout of fever, antibodies appear and suppress the spirochaetes of this first strain, spirochaetes of another strain, hitherto dormant, now appear and multiply, and so on, until eventually enough antibodies are formed to counteract spirochaetes with all possible antigenic patterns. This hypothesis is supported by the work of Cunningham and others (1934, et seq.), in which he showed that in one individual the 'type' of spirochete present in the initial attack was different from that present in the first relapse, and that, when a second relapse occurred, a third type appeared, and so on. The type recoverable during the apyrexial period was always the type that appeared in the next paroxysm. He separated

nine antigenic types (as he called them), four of which were stable types, maintaining their antigenic individuality through many sub-passages, but the other five tended eventually to revert to one or other of the four stable types

**Transmission**—This is effected by the louse, *Pediculus humanus*. After the louse has fed on an infected person the spirochaetes disappear in about 24 hours and are not traceable in the louse, nor is it infective for another three to five days, after this they reappear as slender metacyclic forms in the fluid of the body cavity of the louse and can be found in all parts of its body (they are easily demonstrated by taking off a leg and making a smear from the exuding fluid), the louse remains infective for the rest of its life. Transmission occurs when the louse is crushed and the body-cavity fluid rubbed into the abraded skin. *The bite of the louse does not transmit infection, nor do its faeces*. It is a question whether infection can be transmitted through the unbroken skin, by the blood or by a crushed louse, the balance of evidence suggests that it can. In 1918, during a relapsing fever epidemic, the writer lost (temporarily) a succession of louse-free post-mortem assistants from relapsing fever, though he himself escaped infection—by the strict use of rubber gloves, he believes. In these men small abrasions could not be excluded.

**Source and spread of infection**—Whilst man is not the only susceptible mammal, the louse *Pediculus humanus* feeds only on man, so that man must always be the source of infection. It is however a possibility that the tick borne spirochaete of endemic relapsing fever (*vide infra*) might provide the initial infection for a louse-borne epidemic. It has been shown that it is possible to infect lice with this organism, and it is conceivable that, after several passages through the louse, the spirochætal strain might undergo some biological change so that it behaves like or actually becomes, *Spirochata recurrentis*. The infection is spread by direct contact with the body of a louse infected patient, by handling his louse-infected clothes, or by louse interchange during close contact, and it may be conveyed considerable distances in louse infected clothes.

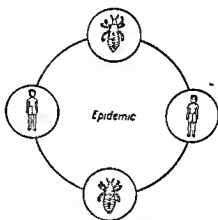


Figure 53. The transmission cycle in louse-borne relapsing fever

### PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy**—The large majority of the patients who die from this condition, die from some secondary infection, and the true pathological picture is hard to gather.

In a severe case, the skin, internal organs, and mucous membranes are jaundiced and show numerous petechial hæmorrhages. The liver and spleen are usually enlarged.

The most constant lesions are in the spleen, this organ is enlarged and soft, and shows many miliary necrotic lesions, especially in the malpighian corpuscles.

In sections there will be seen areas of congestion and cell infiltration around the malpighian corpuscles, in which spirochaetes will be found inside proliferating endothelial cells.

In the bone marrow there is marked leucoblastic hyperplasia

In the other organs, in the liver and kidney, there is cloudy swelling and degeneration of the parenchyma cells

**Blood picture**—There is usually a distinct polymorphonuclear leucocytosis with an actual increase in large mononuclears also. Counts of about 12 000 to 15 000 per c mm are usually found. This is not a constant finding

Reference to the presence of the spirinchæte in the blood has been made above (see also Diagnosis)

**Urine**—Slight albuminuria will be found in more than half of the cases, and often granular casts, in severe cases there may be hæmaturia

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period is from three to seven days as a rule the limits being from 2 to 14 days. (In experimental infections it has always been between two and six days)

The onset is sudden, sometimes with a rigor, the temperature rising to 104° or even higher in 24 hours, the pulse is rapid. There are often severe pains all over the body suggesting dengue but they are particularly severe in the calves, there is intense headache with photophobia. The skin is hot and dry but occasionally there are attacks of sweating. The eyes show an icteric tinge. Epistaxis is common. The tongue is coated but usually moist, and constipation is constant. Bilious vomiting at the onset is not unusual and may be a marked feature of some severe epidemics

An erythematous rash appears early in the first febrile attack in perhaps less than half the cases. In severe cases this may become petechial and even hæmorrhagic. It appears to start from the tip of the mastoid process and it spreads out over the neck, shoulders, arms, back and chest.

Frank jaundice occurs in 20 to 50 per cent of cases in different epidemics it appears early

Both spleen and liver are enlarged in the majority of cases, the latter will usually be tender. The splenic enlargement is only slight and may disappear between attacks. The first attack usually lasts five or six days but occasionally it will be prolonged even up to 12 days, the crisis then occurs and the patient's temperature drops to sub normal with profuse sweating and in severe cases with considerable prostration. Heart failure at this stage is not uncommon. Cases have been reported in which the temperature fell 10°F in a few hours.

All the symptoms subside during the apyrexial period but the patient will often be very weak, this remission period will last from four to nine days.

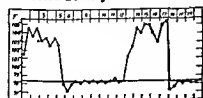


Figure 51. Temperature chart in louse-borne relapsing fever (original)

Megaw takes the view that 'the disease period' that is the time from the onset of the first attack to the onset of the first relapse is constant for each type of relapsing fever but that the febrile and afebrile periods may vary reciprocally, so that if the febrile period is prolonged the afebrile period will be correspondingly shortened. In this form of relapsing fever the disease period is from 12 to 16

days, average 13 days. This view is not universally accepted.

The first relapse is seldom as severe, or as long, as the initial attack, but is otherwise very similar to it. After another interval, usually shorter than the first, in the writer's experience, there may be a second relapse which will again be shorter and less severe than the first.

In this form of the disease there are never more than four relapses. The following figures have been given for the number of relapses that occur in different epidemics —

A single attack	• 10 to 50 per cent
One relapse	25 to 50
Two relapses	10 to 40
More than two relapses	1 to 2

**Complications and sequelæ** — Cough and bronchitis are so common in temperate climates that they may be looked upon as a constant feature of the disease. They are less common in the tropics. Broncho pneumonia is a relatively common complication in cold climates.

In pregnant women, abortion will usually occur. Eye complications are not uncommon, particularly in a mal nourished population, these include iritis and ophthalmia.

Parotitis, nephritis, polyarthritis and neuritis are rarer sequelæ, the latter is very rare in this form of the disease, though common in tick-borne relapsing fever.

### DIAGNOSIS

While the complete temperature chart of a case of relapsing fever is so characteristic that one could scarcely fail to recognize it, it must be remembered that one usually first sees the patient at an earlier date. The sudden onset of the fever, and the longer continuance than one would expect in malaria, and then the dramatic fall will help to distinguish the two diseases, but the microscope will have to be resorted to for confirmation.

In most epidemics the parasites are easy to find but are easily overlooked if not specifically looked for.

Giemsa's or Leishman's stains will show up the spirochaetes very well. In looking for malaria parasites one focuses on the red cells and not between them so that, unless one expects to find spirochaetes it is very easy to miss them even in a well stained film. The curious circular form that they may take simulates a rather pale red cell, but, if one examines these forms carefully, the disguise is easily penetrated.

It should be remembered that the spirochaetes disappear from the peripheral blood 24 hours before the crisis. They will not be found during the remission period, and are usually scantier in a relapse than in the initial attack.

**Differential diagnosis** — At the height of the attack, influenza, dengue, malaria, yellow fever, Weil's disease, typhus and even small pox may be suspected. The case showing a single attack may be mistaken for dengue, even in retrospect, the pulse after dengue is however usually very slow.

### PREVENTION

Preventive measures will consist in keeping the populations in a louse-free condition, in preventing conditions that will encourage an interchange of lice (e.g. overcrowding), in the early hospitalization and treatment of all cases, and in instituting special measures for delousing all patients admitted to hospital during an epidemic.

Established lousiness will never be tolerated by an educated and sane individual, in ordinary circumstances, and its prevention is solely a matter of personal cleanliness.

The clothing of hospital and ambulance personnel should be white, one-piece, and with no openings in front (figure 55), gloves and gum-

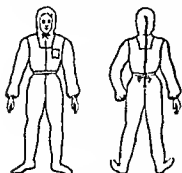


Figure 55 Figure shows one piece suit for use by hospital and ambulance personnel. It is closed by means of a zipper behind elastic round the wrists and a tape round the face tied under the chin.

boots should be worn and the sleeves and trousers tied firmly round the wrists and ankles a white handkerchief tied round the head covering the hair and a gauze mask worn across the mouth and nose. For those dealing with heavily infected clothes, a respirator that also covers the eyes would be a desirable additional safeguard this last precaution is even more important where typhus is also suspected. For hospital personnel the best protection that can be given is the complete delousing of the patients before admission.

**Delousing hospital admissions** — With a little organization this can be effected more easily than where one is dealing with a population that has to be reclothed, it will however necessitate complete removal of all hair from the body and in the case of men it will be advisable to include the

head, followed by thorough washing with anti septic soap under supervision. Women will usually object to having their heads shaved, and an elaborate process of hair washing is necessary.

The old method of effecting this was by saturating the hair in 1 in 40 carbolic acid and tying the head up in a towel for about 2 hours, after this it is washed, and then a hair lotion rubbed in, for the latter purpose, a good mixture is —

Kerosene	50 per cent	Citronella oil	1 per cent
Tar oil	5 "	Coconut oil	41

Coconut oil alone will not destroy lice, though it may gum up the ova and prevent hatching to some extent.

A much more effective method, of which the writer has had recent first-hand experience, is by spraying the hair thoroughly with a pyrethrum and kerosene mixture. The patient should be given a small towel to hold over her face, the hair is then sprayed thoroughly from all directions with a no 15 de Vilbiss atomizer, care being taken that the lotion reaches all the roots of the hairs.

The lotion is made with one part of 'pyroicide 20', or any other concentrated pyrethrum extract and 19 parts of white kerosene or deobase oil which is scentless. To this a little (one per cent) of citronella oil may be added to give the lotion a smell, but it is not necessary.

Underclothing removed can be disinfected in 2 per cent cresol or lysol, and other clothing autoclaved. Outer garments should be sterilized by autoclaving, a comparatively low temperature of 60°C maintained for 10 minutes will kill lice and their eggs. Fumigation will be necessary for boots and other clothing that would be spoilt by heat or washing. Exposure for 2 hours to 0.2 per cent cyanogas is in most circumstances sufficient for this.



Repeated inspection of the clothing of personnel, especially the menial personnel of a hospital is an essential measure to maintain freedom from lice. A lens will facilitate the search for lice and their eggs, special attention should be paid to the seams of the underclothing.

For the delousing of troops or infested populations, a very well-organized delousing station is necessary. This must include an entrance room for undressing with side rooms for dirty underclothes, the disinfection of outer clothing, and the safe-keeping of money and other valuables, from this room the individual passes through the barber's room, the washing room and the medical inspection room to the dressing room where he is issued with clean under-linen, and receives back his outer clothing and valuables.

The introduction of DDT has simplified delousing, a 10 per cent powder in pyrophyllite and 6 per cent spray in benzyl-benzoate being convenient forms. Clothes can be rendered louse-proof for several weeks by impregnation with a 2 per cent emulsion.

#### TREATMENT

The general and dietetic treatment will be that of any short febrile disease. It is not necessary to force food during the febrile period, but a fluid diet of about 1,000 calories with plenty of additional fluid will be sufficient. The calorie intake may be doubled during the intermission, but the patient should not be given the free run of his teeth during this period, as he may be ravenously hungry. The diet at this time should be well balanced and still mainly fluid.

Rest in bed is important, it will be observed naturally during the febrile attacks, but the patient should be warned seriously of the danger of collapse and heart failure during the early intermission period.

Mouth sanitation should be given special attention.

**Specific treatment**—The arsphenamine preparations have a rapid specific action. Novarsenobillon has proved the best drug in the writer's experience, but any of the well-known preparations can be used. A single dose of 0.6 gramme for a normal male adult, and a smaller dose in others on the basis of about 0.01 gramme per kilogramme body-weight should be given, a second dose is seldom necessary and should only be given if a relapse occurs.

If treatment cannot be given within the first three or four days of the onset, and the state of the patient is not obviously critical, it will be as well to withhold the specific treatment, since, if the injection is given just before the crisis, it may dangerously enhance the collapse that sometimes follows the crisis, further, as in some epidemics in more than half the cases no relapse occurs, it may be possible to dispense with the specific treatment altogether. This may be important in an epidemic when cost and/or the supply of drugs have to be considered, arsphenamine can in such circumstances be reserved for severe cases only.

Penicillin has a specific action on this infection in animals (Augustine *et al*, 1944), but the dosage indicated in man (21 million units) is too large to make this a practical therapeutic measure.

#### PROGNOSIS

After one adequate dose of arsphenamine the relapse incidence will not exceed 15 per cent.

The death rate varies very considerably from epidemic to epidemic, and according to the circumstances. Figures from 1 to 50 per cent are quoted but the latter high figure would only occur in a starved or exhausted population.

### TICK BORNE RELAPSING FEVER

**Historical**—Livingstone suggested that relapsing fever in Africa was conveyed by ticks. A number of workers described the finding of the spirochæte in African cases but it was Dutton and Todd in 1903 who definitely showed that infection was transmitted by the tick *Ornithodoros moubata*.

Later other workers discovered other transmitters of the disease in other countries (see p. 224).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—This form of the disease has a typically tropical and sub tropical distribution. It is found in southern Spain, north Africa including Morocco, north west Africa, east Africa, and central Africa, in Iran and neighbouring countries and in northern India, in central and south America, Panama, Colombia and Venezuela, Peru, Uruguay, Brazil and Argentina, in Mexico and a number of western and mid west states of the U.S.A., California, Colorado, Arizona, Texas and Kansas.

**Epidemic features**—It is essentially an endemic disease and it occurs sporadically in the countries mentioned above. Children are very likely to be infected whilst playing on the ground, as thereby they come into closer contact with the ticks. It is a regional or even a house infection, a history of a succession of infections amongst visitors to a house has often been obtained.

Temperature is an important factor controlling the development of the spirochæte in the tick. In tropical countries the disease is perennial but in the sub tropics cases occur mainly in the spring and summer, when the ticks are always most active.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism, as has been stated above, is morphologically identical with *Spirochæta recurrentis*.

**Transmission**—It is believed by some workers that *S. duttoni* was originally a parasite of *Ornithodoros moubata* and that man was only

infected incidentally. There is evidence that once infected *O. moubata* is capable of maintaining the infection through many generations if not indefinitely and transmitting it to man so that the cycle of infection is as shown in figure 56. However, clean ticks may become infected through feeding on an infected man. The spirochætes are taken into the insect's gut with the blood meal after disappearing for a few days they reappear and invade practically all the tissues of the insect host. They are found in large numbers in the body cavity fluid where they multiply. The

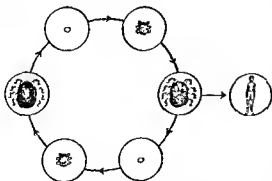


Figure 56. The transmission cycle in African (moubata) tick-borne relapsing fever.

reappear and invade practically all the tissues of the insect host. They are found in large numbers in the body cavity fluid where they multiply. The

spirochaetes enter the body cells, including the cells of the ovaries, and are transmitted to the next generation through the ovum

In the case of the other vector ticks, *Ornithodoros erraticus*, for example, the infection dies out after passing through two or three generations, and the tick only becomes reinfected after feeding on an infected mammal. Unlike *O. moubata*, that feeds on man only, these other ticks feed on their natural hosts, rodents and small carnivores, which act as reservoirs of infection, and they transmit the infection to man sporadically (see figure 57)

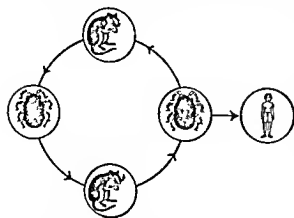


Figure 57 The transmission cycle in other tick-borne (e.g. *erraticus*) relapsing fevers

than probable that there are a number of ways in which transmission may be effected. The three probable methods are via the salivary glands and/or contaminated mouth parts during the process of feeding by the coxal fluid, and by the excreta. It seems probable that with so many vectors, transmission will take place by each one of the three methods, and that with some ticks transmission will be by more than one method, possibly by all three. Buxton (1939) believes that in *O. moubata* the coxal fluid is the only medium of infection. It seems very unlikely that, in nature, transmission would take place by the tick being crushed on the skin ticks are far too tough for this, though experimentally it is possible to cause infection in this way.

**Animal reservoirs**—Vector ticks other than *O. moubata* feed normally on wild rodents and small carnivores e.g. rats, mice, gerbilles, weasels, foxes and armadillos, which act as reservoirs of infection. Dogs have been found naturally infected, and *Rhipicephalus sanguineus* the dog tick, transmits the infection from the dog to man. Infection can also be acquired by picking ticks off infected dogs.

differ from the louse-borne infection as well as from one another, will be indicated

The special features of the African type are —

The incubation period tends to be slightly longer, seven to ten days, the febrile period may be much shorter, lasting only a day or so but in some



Figure 55 Temperature chart in tick borne relapsing fever (original)

('afebrile' period) seldom remains quite normal but is irregular frequently rising to 99.5°F or 100°F. Occasionally the fever loses all its relapsing character and becomes intermittent

The relapses are far more numerous as many as eleven have been reported

In some outbreaks fulminating cases occur in which there is severe jaundice, hæmorrhages and coma and the patient dies within 48 hours

The common complications are bronchitis and pneumonia as in the other form of relapsing fever, but in tick relapsing fever the special sequelæ are diarrhoea and dysentery, neuritis, spastic paralysis, aphasia, strabismus, deafness, hemiplegia and fortunately very rarely atrophy of the optic nerve. Parotitis and iritis also occur. The cerebrospinal fluid may be under increased pressure in it. Spirochaetes are sometimes found and there is usually an increase of lymphocytes

In the Iranian type the disease is milder the initial pyrexial bout usually lasts four or five days there may be deep remissions and there are a number usually four or five relapses of much shorter duration not usually more than three days. The attack is usually relatively mild but severe attacks have been reported

The Spanish type is also mild but the patient is very drowsy and prostration may be considerable when the temperature falls. Herpes labialis is common. The spleen and cervical lymphatic glands are enlarged

There are not usually more than four relapses

The leucocytosis occasionally amounts to 25,000 per c mm

#### DIAGNOSIS

The clinical diagnosis will be more difficult than in louse borne relapsing fever and the fever will often simulate malaria. The spirochaetes also may be more difficult to find in the blood film and thick films should be examined (see p 87) but animals are more easily infected with *Spirocheta duttoni* than with *Spirocheta recurrentis* in mice the brain should be examined for spirochaetes

#### PREVENTION

The preventive measures to be adopted against this disease must obviously be very different from those employed against the louse borne infection however the possibility that the spirochaete may change its habitat and become adapted to living in the louse should not be forgotten

and lousiness should be looked upon as particularly dangerous in an endemic area of tick-borne relapsing fever. It is possible to institute some measures against *Ornithodoros moubata*, because they live mainly in the walls and floors of native huts and even European houses. Old heavily infected huts or houses should be demolished preferably by burning, and replaced by buildings with concrete floors and well-built brick walls. Other houses it may be possible to repair and to make tick proof.

The sites of camps must be carefully selected, and old camp sites and areas near villages avoided.

Sleeping on the floor should be discouraged, but old locally-made beds should be avoided.

In the case of other tick vectors, preventive measures will be difficult, since they live in the caves and burrows of their alternative hosts and only come into man's habitations fortuitously. The control of domestic animals that may bring them in will be an important preventive measure.

For personal protection suitable clothing that will protect from ticks, should be worn in 'tick country'. After walking in bush or jungle, the legs should be examined, any adhering ticks removed carefully, and the area from where they have been removed washed with a strong antiseptic. The starved tick does not transmit infection for some hours. The tick must not be pulled off, but touched with a hot cigarette end or some strong insecticide to make it loosen its grip.

### TREATMENT

This is not materially different from that of the louse-borne relapsing type (qv). However, since in most of the tick-borne types, relapses are far more numerous, specific treatment will be indicated whenever it is available. The infection is more resistant to treatment, and the injections will often have to be repeated.

### PROGNOSIS

The average death rate is about 6 per cent. Some types are very mild, but from time to time a fulminating outbreak of the African type occurs, with a death rate of at least 50 per cent.

### REFERENCES

- Buxton, P. A. (1939) *The Louse* Edward Arnold and Co. London.
- Cunningham, J., Theodore, J. H. and Fraser, A. G. L. (1934) Further Observations on Indian Relapsing Fever. *Indian J. Med. Res.*, **22**, 105 and 595, 24, 571 and 581.
- Dutton, J. E. and Todd, J. L. (1905) The Nature of Human Tick-fever in the Eastern Part of the Congo Free State. *Liverpool School Trop. Med. Mem.*, No. 17. University Press of Liverpool.
- Mackie, F. P. (1907) The Part played by *Pediculus corporis* in the Transmission of Relapsing Fever. *Brit. Med. J.* n 1706.
- Nicoll, C., Blaizot, I. and Coquerel, I. (1913) Etologie de la Fievre Recurrente son mode de Transmission par les Poux. *Ann. Inst. Pasteur* **27**, 201.
- Augustine, D. I., Weisman, D. and McAllister, John (1914) *Science* **99**, 19.

## RAT-BITE FEVER

	PAGE
DEFINITION	237
DISCUSSION	237
HISTORICAL	238
EPIDEMIOLOGY	238
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	238
<i>Epidemic features</i>	238
ETIOLOGY	238
<i>Historical</i>	238
<i>The causal organism</i>	239
<i>Distribution in the tissues</i>	239
<i>Transmission</i>	239
<i>Animal reservoirs of infection</i>	239
PATHOLOGY	240
<i>Blood picture—Urine—Wassermann and Kahn reactions</i>	240
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	240
<i>Incubation period—Onset—Rash—Fever—Relapses</i>	240
DIAGNOSIS	241
<i>Clinical</i>	241
<i>Laboratory methods</i>	241
(a) Examination of local lesion—(b) Immobilization of spirilla with patient's serum—(c) Animal inoculation	
<i>Therapeutic test</i>	243
<i>Differential diagnosis</i>	243
TREATMENT	243
PROGNOSIS	243

**Definition**—Rat bite fever is a fever of relapsing type caused by micro organisms that are conveyed to man by the bite of small animals mainly rats

**Discussion**—All recent evidence suggests that the parasite principally responsible for this disease is the spirochætal micro organism *Spirillum*

*minus*. However, the careful work of Schottmuller (1914) and others who found *Streptobacillus moniliformis* in animals inoculated with the blood of patients suffering from a post-rat-bite fever cannot be ignored, and recent work in the United States suggests that it may be the commoner causal organism in temperate climates (Brown and Nunemaker, 1942). Knowles and Das Gupta (1928) once isolated a streptobacillus in a case of rat-bite fever in which they had already isolated *Spirillum minus*, in practically every other case they found the latter organism, and from this they concluded that, in India at least, *Spirillum minus* is the sole causal organism and that the presence of a streptobacillus was an accidental association. The disease caused by *Spirillum minus* will be described here.

**Historical**—The disease has been recognized in Japan and elsewhere as a clinical entity for many years. In Japan it was known as *sodoku* (*so*=rat, *doku*=poison). In India the first clinical record was in 1913. However, the discovery in 1916 by Futaki and others of the causal organism gave the disease a more concrete form.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—This is probably world-wide, but the tropical association of the disease is not solely a matter of poor sanitary and social conditions, though these undoubtedly play an important part, climate *per se* is probably a factor. Most of the earliest cases were reported from Japan. Knowles and Das Gupta (1928) drew attention to the fact that it was a common disease in India and certainly in Calcutta, and the subsequent annual reports of the School of Tropical Medicine have borne this out. Between 50 and 100 cases are seen annually at the out-patient department of the School.

Isolated cases have been reported from many countries. The first definite report of a case in the United States was made by Shattuck and Thieier in 1924 and Bayne Jones (1931) collected 75 apparently authentic cases from the literature, *Spirillum minus* had been isolated in only five of these cases.



FIGURE 59. Seasonal incidence of 455 cases of rat-bite fever in Calcutta between 1931 and 1936 (Chopra, Bera and Sen 1937)

**Epidemic features**—It is essentially a sporadic disease, it occurs in those living under insanitary conditions and most subject to the bites of rats, the published records of age and sex incidence reflect only the age distribution of the population from which they are drawn, but there appears to be a definite seasonal incidence, which in Calcutta corresponds to the warm and humid months of the year (see figure 59).

The causal organism—*Spirillum minus* is a short, rigid, spiral organism measuring from 2 to 5 $\mu$  but is occasionally longer, even up to 10 $\mu$ , it is relatively thicker than the spirochetes, and the coils vary in number according to the size of the spirillum but the length of each coil is uniformly about 1 $\mu$ . With dark-ground illumination the rapid darting and progressive movements of the organism can be studied, these movements are effected by means of terminal flagella—of which there are several at each pole—and are very different from the backward and forward movements of the spirochetes. Multiplication takes place by transverse division.

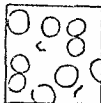


FIGURE 60  
*Spirillum minus*

The spirillum stains well with Giemsa's or other Romanowsky stains, but for demonstrating the flagella Tribondeau's modification of Fontana's silver impregnation method is perhaps the best. The spirilla can be shown in the tissues by this method.

Cultivation of the organism has been claimed by Futaki and others but it is not at present a practical procedure.

The infection is readily transmissible to laboratory animals: monkeys, guinea pigs, rats and mice; the last named are most commonly used. It has been claimed that the infection is transmitted from the mother to the young either by intra uterine or by milk infection. Das Gupta (1938) however failed to confirm this observation, as also to infect mice by feeding them on contaminated food. Nevertheless it is not uncommon for one's whole stock of laboratory mice to become infected naturally.

Distribution in the tissues—In man the spirillum is found in the local tissues at the site of the bite, in the lymphatics draining the area, in the lymph nodes on the course of these and in the blood. It has also been demonstrated in the liver, spleen, kidney and suprarenals.

In animals it appears in the blood in about six days, and it has a predilection for the connective tissues of the nose, the lips, and the gums. Infection of the conjunctival sac is apparently common, the organisms being found in the secretions. The salivary glands are not infected.

Transmission—This is effected by the bite of an infected rat or other small animal. The tissues around the mouth are particularly rich in spirilla, and when a rat bites viciously it usually damages its gums so that they bleed, this infected blood contaminates the wound. Another suggestion is that the mouth of the rat is infected by the conjunctival secretions that come down the nasal duct.

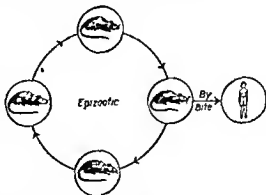


FIGURE 61 The transmission cycle in rat bite fever

Animal reservoirs of infection—Wild rats constitute the main reservoir, 3 per cent of wild rats in Japan have been shown to be infected. In



Calcutta, infected rats have frequently been found. After the rat, the cat is the most common agent of infection and instances have been reported of a similar disease following the bites of weasels, ferrets, squirrels (Das Gupta, 1942), and even dogs, it will be noted that most of these are carnivores that habitually kill rats and are likely to have been infected by rats when they were killing them. As infection is apparently not transmissible by the oral route it is uncertain how it is transmitted from rat to rat.

### **PATHOLOGY**

Locally there is hyperæmia and œdema of the skin and subcutaneous tissues, with polymorphonuclear and eosinophil infiltration. Similar changes will be found in the lymph nodes that drain the area.

There are few records of post-mortem examinations in man. Hyperæmia and œdema of the kidney, with degenerative changes in the tubular epithelium, and cloudy swelling and necrosis of the parenchyma cells in the centre of the liver lobules, have been described.

In the rat, there appears to be little tissue reaction to the infection. The liver may show some congestion. In mice, there may be conjunctivitis and loss of hair. Young guinea pigs usually show emaciation, keratosis, and other eye complications and die within two months.

**Blood picture**—There is an increasing anæmia if the disease is allowed to progress untreated but this is not very evident in cases in which treatment is instituted early. With the onset of fever there is a sharp rise in the leucocyte count which subsides during the remission periods, there is a relative increase in eosinophils and a decrease in lymphocytes.

**Urine**—A cloud of albumin is common and, more rarely, granular casts appear.

The Wassermann reaction is reported to be positive in this disease. Our experience in Calcutta contradicts this. Das Gupta chose Wassermann-negative volunteers and infected them experimentally with *Spirillum minus*, at no stage of the infection did their Wassermann reactions become positive. Other reports indicate that the Kahn reaction is frequently positive even when the Wassermann reaction is negative, the writer has recently confirmed this observation.

### **SYMPTOMATOLOGY**

A definite history of a rat bite may be given, but, as the majority of bites occur at night much more frequently the patient says that he was awakened by a sudden pain in his foot or hand and that next morning he found an inflamed local lesion which was obviously a bite.

The incubation period is very variable, but the average is about two weeks, instances as short as three days and as long as several months have been reported. The initial lesions made by the bite may heal in a few days, this will depend on the degree of sepsis. Then, after the incubation period, the true onset will occur suddenly with a high rise of temperature and often a rigor, headache, pains in the joints and muscles, and a considerable degree of prostration. With the first and sometimes with each subsequent febrile paroxysm, there is a local response of the allergic type, with redness, swelling and œdema at the site of the original lesion, and, if this has not healed, there will be an increase in the amount

of discharge. The reaction may also occur in the proximal lymph nodes, which were possibly swollen previously but had meanwhile subsided.

At the same time a rash may appear on different parts of the body, mainly on the limbs and the trunk, but sometimes on the face, and rarely on the mucous membranes. The rash takes the form of large reddish-purple patches, as much as an inch to two inches in diameter, they are sometimes raised very slightly above the surface, but they would usually be described as macules. Sometimes purplish papules also appear. The rash subsides with the temperature and occasionally, but not usually, reappears during the relapses.

The rash is by no means common, it occurs in less than 2 per cent of our Calcutta cases.

The fever rises sharply to 103° or 104°F and may remain as a high remittent temperature for three or four days, it then falls to normal within a few hours, where it remains for a

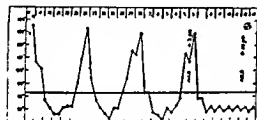


Figure 62 'Rat-bite' fever after a bite by a squirrel (Das Gupta 1942)

A classical temperature chart of rat-bite fever showing regular periodicity and response to arphenamine

variable period but not usually more than a week (see figure 62). The second rise of temperature is usually as high as the first but the duration is shorter, if no specific treatment is given, these relapses may occur at intervals of from 6 to 10 days for many months, but, as a rule, the febrile paroxysms become less and less in height and duration, and eventually the infection disappears spontaneously.

The rhythm of the paroxysms may be disturbed by sepsis, and the temperature may show a moderately high, irregular curve in which the paroxysms are scarcely distinguishable (see figure 63).

## DIAGNOSIS

A clinical diagnosis can often be made on the history alone, definite or circumstantial evidence of a rat bite which healed in a few days, an interval of about a fortnight, and a sudden attack of fever with a focal reaction, even before the relapsing nature of the fever with its characteristic periodicity (longer than malaria and shorter than relapsing fever) becomes apparent, are sufficient to establish a diagnosis with a considerable degree of certainty.

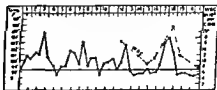


Figure 63 Temperature chart and leucocyte count in rat-bite fever

There are three practical laboratory methods of confirming the diagnosis: (a) by direct examination of serous exudate taken from the initial lesion, (b) by the immobilization test with the patient's serum and (c) by animal inoculation with exudate or blood.

(a) Examination of local lesion — The hyperæmic or œdematous area around the site of the bite is pricked with a sterile needle, after sterilization

of the area and subsequent washing with normal saline, and the exudate is taken up with a capillary pipette and examined by dark-ground illumination. At first the darting movements of the spirillum make it impossible to identify it, but, if the specimen is sealed with paraffin or vaseline, left for a time, and examined later, the spirillum will easily be recognized by its characteristic shape, as well as by its movements, now slowed down.

Films made from the exudate stained by Leishman's or Giemsa's stains will often show the spirilla quite well, but Tribondeau's modification of Fontana's stain gives the best results. The technique of this method is described by Das Gupta (1938) as follows —

(i) A thin film of the clear serous exudate is prepared from the lesion on a clean slide and allowed to dry in the air.

(ii) The slide is then laid on a staining rack and flooded with Ruge's solution, which has the following composition: glacial acetic acid 1 ccm, solution of formaldehyde 2 ccm, and distilled water 100 ccm. The fixative is poured on and drained off. This is repeated two or three times for about a minute.

(iii) The fixative is drained off the slide which is next covered with methyl alcohol and flamed by applying a lighted match. This completes fixation.

(iv) The slide is laid on the staining rack and flooded with the following mordant: tannic acid 5 grammes in distilled water 100 ccm. It is gently warmed until steam rises. The best and least messy way of doing this is to wrap a little cotton wool round the end of a piece of wire, soak it in alcohol, light it and hold under the slide. When steam rises from the slide the flame is removed and the mordant allowed to act for thirty seconds longer without further heating.

(v) The slide is washed with distilled water and then covered with Fontana's silver solution. To prepare this a 5 per cent aqueous solution of silver nitrate is taken in a glass cylinder which has previously been thoroughly washed with distilled water. With a capillary pipette a strong solution of ammonia is added drop by drop. A sepia precipitate forms and then re-dissolves. To the now clear solution more silver nitrate solution is added very carefully and only drop by drop from a capillary pipette until a solution results which is just opalescent (and not more) on shaking. Not a drop more of the silver solution should be added than is necessary to produce slight opalescence. The slide is covered with the solution and warmed gently until steam rises, then the flame is removed and the warm solution is allowed to act for a further thirty seconds.

(vi) The film is washed in distilled water and allowed to dry in the air. It should never be blotted.

The film is then examined with an oil immersion lens. The spirilla are stained an intense brown black or black against a faint yellow background.

The spirilla are usually scanty and a determined search for them has to be made. They were found in 64 per cent of our Calcutta cases believed on clinical grounds to be cases of rat bite fever.

(b) Immobilization of spirilla with patient's serum — Blood is taken from an infected mouse's tail and mixed with a 1-in-5 dilution of the patient's serum in normal saline. A coverslip is applied and the specimen sealed with vaseline. Examined after an hour, the spirilla will be immobile if the patient is suffering from rat bite fever, but still very active in the control (with normal serum), a control must always be put up. A positive result definitely indicates rat-bite fever, a negative result does not exclude this diagnosis.

(c) Animal inoculation — The most suitable animals are — (i) *White mice* the limitation is that these animals are very subject to 'natural' infection, so that clean stock has to be used and the mice examined thoroughly before inoculation. (ii) *Young guinea-pigs* in these the development of the infection is slower and perhaps less certain. (iii) *Other animals* these include adult guinea pigs, rabbits and monkeys.

The inoculation is made either from the serous exudate from the lesions, a drop of which is given subcutaneously, or from the blood, 0.5 ccm being given intraperitoneally to a mouse, 1 ccm to a young guinea-pig, and 2 ccm or more to any of the larger animals used.

The blood of the animals is examined from the sixth day onwards, by cutting off the tip of the mouse's tail, or in the case of the guinea-pig by snipping its nail or puncturing a vein in its ear. The blood is placed on a carefully cleaned thin slide, covered with a clean coverslip, ringed with vaseline, and left for half an hour, at the end of this time, it is examined with dark-ground illumination. The motile spirilla will be identified easily.

Spirilla were identified in 70 per cent of our clinically typical Calcutta cases by blood inoculation into white mice.

**Therapeutic test**—One adequate dose of ar-sphenamine will always interrupt, at any rate temporarily the periodicity of the fever.

**Differential diagnosis**—The conditions likely to be confused with rat-bite fever are —

(i) Septic fever from the bite. This will usually follow the bite almost immediately.

(ii) Filarial lymphangitis and fever. *microfilaria* will usually be found in the blood taken at night.

(iii) Relapsing fever. The 'disease period' is usually much longer, and spirochaetes will be found in the blood.

(iv) Malaria. The periodicity is much shorter malaria parasites will be found in the blood, and the fever will respond to anti malarial drugs.

Rat-bite fever may simulate other short febrile diseases such as dengue, sand fly fever, and influenza but the diagnosis will be cleared up when the characteristic periodicity of the fever becomes apparent.

### TREATMENT

The prophylactic treatment of a rat bite consists in applying pure phenol to the wound with a match stick swab, washing this out with sterile water, putting powdered sulphanilamide into the wound, and applying a dressing.

Specific treatment is provided by any of the ar-sphenamine group of drugs, given according to the weight of the patient (see p 232). Usually two injections will effect a complete cure but it may be advisable to give a third.

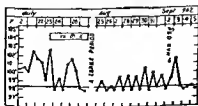


Figure 64. Sulphapyridine appeared to effect a cure but *Spirillum minus* was still present in the blood and the fever relapsed.

Sulphapyridine given in the usual doses appears to control the fever temporarily in some cases, but it does not effect a cure. In the case of which the temperature chart is shown in figure 64 spirilla were found in the blood until novarsenobillon was given.

### PROGNOSIS

If adequate treatment is given, complete recovery may be expected by the time the local lesion settles down, and the death rate in our experience has been negligible. In Japan however, a death rate of 10 per cent has been reported.

## REFERENCES

- BAYNE-JONES S (1931) Rat-bite Fever in United States *Internat Chn*, **3**, 235
- BROWN, T McP., and NUNEMAKER, J C (1942) Rat-Bite Fever A Review of the American Cases with Reevaluation of Etiology, Report of Cases *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp*, **70**, 201
- CHOPRA R. N., BASU, B C., and SEN, S (1939) Rat-Bite Fever in Calcutta *Indian Med Gaz*, **74**, 449
- DAS GUPTA, B M (1938) Experiments on the spirillum of rat-bite fever *Indian Med Gaz*, **73**, 14
- Idem* (1942) *Spirillum minus* infection acquired from an Indian squirrel (*Sciurus* sp) *Indian Med Gaz*, **77**, 541
- FUTAKI, K TAKAKI F, TANIGUCHI, T, and OSUMI, S (1916) The cause of rat-bite fever *J Exper Med.*, **23**, 249
- KNOWLES R., and DAS GUPTA B M (1928) Rat-bite fever as an Indian disease *Indian Med Gaz*, **63**, 493
- ROW, R (1922) Some cutaneous manifestations in rat-bite pyrochætiæsis *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg*, **16**, 203
- SCHOTTMULLER, H (1914) Zur Ätiologie und Klinik der Bisskrankheit *Dermat Woch.*, **58**, 77 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull*, **4**, 162)
- SHATTUCK, G C., and TREILER, M (1924) Rat-bite Disease in the United States with Report of a Case *Amer J Trop Med*, **4**, 453
- TOPLEY W. W C., and WILSON, G S (1938) *The Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity* Edward Arnold and Co, London

Addendum.—Penicillin has proved most effective in the treatment of animals infected with either *Spirillum minus* or *Streptobacillus moniliformis* (Heilman and Herrell, 1944, *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin*, **19**, 257)

# LEPTOSPIROSIS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	246
WEIL'S DISEASE OR INFECTIVE JAUNDICE	
DEFINITION	246
HISTORICAL	246
EPIDEMIOLOGY	246
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	246
<i>Epidemic status</i>	246
Occupational incidence	
<i>Seasonal incidence—Race sex and age incidence</i>	247
ETIOLOGY	247
<i>The causal organism</i>	247
Serological strains—Resistance—Distribution in the body and excreta	
<i>Source and mode of spread of infection</i>	248
Infection in the rat	
<i>Route of entry—Mouth—Skin</i>	249
<i>Immunity</i>	249
PATHOLOGY	249
<i>Morbid anatomy</i>	249
Liver—Kidney—Spleen—Lymph nodes—Bone marrow	
<i>Blood picture</i>	249
<i>Urine</i>	250
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	250
<i>Incubation—Onset—Fever—Jaundice—Rashes—Anuria</i>	250
DIAGNOSIS	251
<i>Blood—Animal inoculation—Urine—Serological</i>	251
<i>Differential diagnosis</i>	252
PREVENTION	253
TREATMENT	253
PROGNOSIS	253
SEVEN DAY FEVER OF JAPAN	
INTRODUCTION	254
ETIOLOGY	254
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	254

**Introduction**—Under the general name 'leptospirosis' are grouped together a number of diseases that have many common clinical and pathological features, and which are caused by organisms of the genus *Leptospira*, of these the best known is Weil's disease or infective jaundice, another is the seven-day fever of Japan, but there are probably many other similar but distinguishable syndromes which are as yet not clearly differentiated

*Leptospira* is the generic name of a group of spirochæte-like organisms, they have tightly-wound spirals, which give them the appearance of a twisted rope and, usually, hooked ends. They live saprophytically as well as parasitically. The commonest species is *Leptospira biflexa* which is found in water supplies in many parts of the world and is a filter-passer. The parasitic species infect rodents and man causing in the latter diseases of the group under discussion

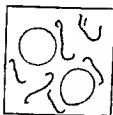


Figure 65  
*Leptospira*

### WEIL'S DISEASE OR INFECTIVE JAUNDICE

**Definition**—Weil's disease is an acute infectious disease of sudden onset, characterized by fever, jaundice, albuminuria, hæmorrhages from mucous surfaces, extreme prostration, muscular pain and tenderness, and occasionally a petechial rash, it is caused by a spirochætal organism of the genus *Leptospira*, which is a common infection of the urinary tract of rodents and which infects man through abrasions in the skin and mucous membranes, or by the oral route

**Historical**—Infective jaundice is not a new disease. Early in the nineteenth century French writers described the disease and reported small outbreaks of it in Europe. In 1886 Weil gave a clear description of the disease and from that time onwards it began to attract considerable attention. At this stage of its history, the disease was a clinical and histopathological syndrome only and probably more than one causal organism was involved in the epidemics described. However in 1915-16 when Inada in Japan and Uhlenhuth in Germany associated leptospiral infections with this syndrome there was a considerable revival of interest in Weil's disease and it was soon shown to have a widespread distribution

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—It occurs in Japan, Holland, Great Britain, France, Germany, Sweden, U.S.A., Africa, and India and neighbouring countries. In Japan, about 1000 cases are reported annually, in Great Britain about 100 cases, in Holland a larger number and in other European countries a varying number, probably more or less in proportion to the amount of attention that is paid to the disease. During the 1914-18 war, the disease was common among the troops serving on the Western front. So far as India and her immediate neighbours are concerned, a small number of cases have been reported from time to time by different workers from several places such as the Andamans (Barker, 1926), Rangoon, Calcutta, Bombay, Madras, and the North-West Frontier Province. In most of these places the disease occurs in a sporadic form. For example, in Calcutta within the last seven years some 50 or more cases have been reported. In the Andamans, a sharp outbreak occurred in 1929 in which less than a hundred cases were recorded, but now that its presence has been recognized a large number of cases have been diagnosed each year.

**Epidemic status**—On account of the very low incidence, the disease is not at present one of very great public health importance in any tropical

country, with the possible exception of the Andaman Islands, but there are indications that it may be much more widespread than it appears to be at present

In temperate countries its occupational character stands out so clearly that it comes within the purview of workmen's compensation acts. It occurs in those who come in contact with water or slime contaminated with the urine of infected rats. Sewer and canal workers, miners, fish-handlers and butchers, agricultural labourers, sugar-cane cutters, bargemen and soldiers fighting in trenches are liable to suffer from it.

In the Andamans, the disease is found chiefly amongst agricultural labourers many of whom are adult males who have to work standing in water during part of the year. However, in Calcutta Das Gupta, who has confirmed the diagnosis in 40 to 50 cases during the last few years, found no association with any particular occupation. Moist soil, moderate temperature, insanitary conditions, and rat infestation favour incidence. In cities, sporadic cases may occur amongst the general population. The larger outbreaks are generally confined to swampy areas, to mines and to canal and coastal regions, but even in the largest outbreak the number of cases is never more than a few hundred.

**Seasonal incidence**—In cooler countries it is a summer and autumn infection, but in the tropics the disease occurs most frequently during or after the rains, and with the onset of dry cold weather it tends to disappear.

**Race, sex and age incidence**—It occurs in people of all races, and in both sexes, but few cases have been reported amongst children. The majority of the occupational groups have consisted of men only, but, in the case of the fish-handlers they were mostly women.

## ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal organism**—*Leptospira icterohæmorrhagica* is a spiral organism, 6 to 9  $\mu$  long and 0.25  $\mu$  thick. It has a large number of closely wound spirals, which give it a rope-like appearance, the ends are usually hooked. It is actively motile, and is best examined with dark-ground illumination. It grows well on serum media, such as Noguchi's, Fletcher's, or Vervoot's medium, but takes a week to grow.

**Serological strains**—There are a large number of serological strains of leptospira known. Of these at least three strains have been recovered from the cases occurring in India. Whilst there is a tendency towards a geographical grouping of these strains in the same outbreak more than one strain may be isolated. The *canicola* strain is common in the United States.

**Resistance**—*Leptospira icterohæmorrhagica* is a comparatively hardy organism and remains alive in moist earth, water or food for about three to seven days. Heat and antiseptics readily destroy these leptospiræ, they are killed in half an hour at 55°C. They are also very susceptible to acids and are rapidly killed by hydrochloric or sulphuric acid in dilutions of 1 in 30,000. Mercury perchloride solution in a dilution of 1 in 2,000 kills them in ten minutes.

**Distribution in the body and excreta**—It is a blood infection during the first week of the disease, and during this period leptospiræ will be found in most of the internal organs, especially the liver, spleen and kidney. Later, the leptospiræ disappear from the blood, and the kidney becomes



the main focus of infection, from the kidney foci they escape with the urine and may be excreted by this route for a month or more

**Source and mode of spread of infection**—Rats are the chief source of infection. Leptospirosis is primarily a disease of rats, and from rats the

infection is transferred to man. Mice also may act as a source of infection.

Up to 40 per cent, or even more, of wild rats have been found infected in nature in the countries where the disease is common. In Calcutta, however Knowles and Das Gupta found the infection rate in rats to be very low, less than 1 per cent, but later Das Gupta found a higher incidence in rats from the dock area, and, in Bombay, Lahiri (1943) found 12 per cent of the rats infected. Taylor and Goyle (1931) obtained similar results in the Andamans. Lewis (1942) found 11 per cent of rats infected in Philadelphia. In the United States, as the blood of dogs has been found to agglutinate leptospiræ in high titre (Packchianian, 1941) and others have been found infected, they are suspected as reservoirs.

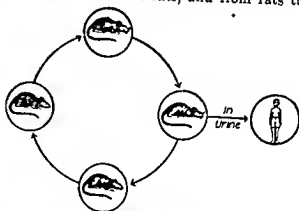


Figure 66 The transmission cycle in Weil's disease

**Infection in the rat**—In the rat the organisms are present in the blood in the early stages of the infection but do not cause severe disease or death. Later the infection becomes localized in the kidney, and from there the organisms are excreted in the urine intermittently for a considerable period and sometimes throughout the rat's life. The infection may possibly be transmitted from rat to rat directly through a bite; organisms are found in the mouths of infected rats and, if these infected rats bite healthy ones infection will be transmitted but it is probable that in most cases rats become infected by the same routes as man namely by contact with or ingestion of infected material.

There is no evidence that any insect is concerned in the transmission of infection in these animals.

The urine of infected rats contaminates soil, water and food. Pathogenic leptospiræ have been recovered from such infected waters. As we have noted above, in soil, water, etc., the organisms are capable of living for about three to seven days, but in favourable conditions, e.g. in the slime at the bottom of canals, slowly-moving rivers, docks, etc., they can probably live saprophytically for a considerable time, from these sources man gets infected.

A patient may pass viable organisms in his urine for one or two months, and thus also act as a source of infection, in many of the Andamans cases, organisms were found in the urine from the ninth day of illness onwards to as late as the forty-fourth day, viable leptospiræ being discharged in the urine intermittently, but this is probably not an important method of the spread of infection.

As pathogenic organisms have so frequently been found in contaminated waters, it is suggested that the rat may not be an important link, but that it may simply be a disseminator of infection. Another suggestion is that passage through the rat determines the pathogenicity of the organism. The

balance of evidence is however in favour of the rat's playing some essential part in the transmission of the disease to man

**Route of entry**—The organisms enter either by the mouth or through the skin. The latter is considered to be the more frequent route of entry. Organisms generally enter through abrasions in the skin though they are capable of penetrating even the unbroken skin and mucous membrane. Prolonged contact with infected water and soil facilitates entry. Bathing and accidental immersion in infected water have frequently given rise to the disease and in Holland it is the commonest mode of infection.

**Immunity**—From the sporadic nature of the incidence of the disease even in the presence of a heavy source of infection it would appear that man enjoys some natural immunity against leptospira infection. After recovery from an attack of the disease a high degree of immunity develops. This acquired immunity is mainly due to the presence of specific antibodies. Convalescent serum has therefore been used in treatment (*vide infra*), as well as the serum of immunized horses which in some countries has been used extensively. Active immunity can be produced in man by means of a specific vaccine. Das Gupta (1942) found that after inoculation antibodies protective to guinea pigs appeared in the blood but disappeared within a year.

#### PATHOLOGY

After an initial leptospiraemia toxins produced by the leptospiræ damage successively the parenchyma cells of the liver and the tubular epithelium of the kidney, the leptospiræ then invade the damaged cells. Other organs and tissues especially the spleen and bone marrow are also affected. The widespread hæmorrhages are secondary to liver damage.

**Morbid anatomy**—The liver is enlarged and usually yellow, there is degeneration of the parenchyma cells which will vary from degeneration of isolated cells to similar changes in localized areas and to complete disorganization of the whole liver structure similar to but usually not so extensive as the changes that occur in yellow fever. Where isolated parenchyma cells are affected they die but are replaced so that unless the damage is very extensive complete recovery is possible.

In the kidneys, there is invasion of the inter tubular tissues where small hæmorrhages occur and degenerative changes occur in the tubular epithelium. Regeneration follows in the latter case but the interstitial changes will sometimes though rarely lead to a chronic nephritis.

The spleen is slightly enlarged but is soft and diffuent so that attention is not usually drawn to it clinically. There is hyperplasia of the lymphatic tissue.

Similarly there is hyperplasia of the lymph nodes in other parts of the body particularly of the abdominal glands. The bone marrow shows leucoblastic hyperplasia with erythroblastic depression. There may be petechial hæmorrhages in the mucous membrane of the stomach and intestines or even extensive hæmorrhages into these organs. Cellular infiltration and sometimes hæmorrhages occur in the meninges, and leptospiræ are found in the cerebrospinal fluid.

**Blood picture**—There is usually a leucocytosis of 10 000 per cmm, a polymorphonuclear percentage of 80 to 85 with a leftward shift in the Arneth count and a progressive anæmia. The indirect van den Bergh reaction

is usually positive even in an-icteric cases, and in the cases with jaundice it is biphasic and may reach 60 units of bilirubin

**Urine**—There is usually a heavy cloud of albumin and often traces of blood, occasionally, hæmaturia may reach macroscopic proportions. There is sometimes a decrease in the urea excretion, and later, after a period of anuria, there will often be a temporary increase. Later, in the jaundiced cases, bile will appear

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The attacks vary very considerably in intensity, and from serological evidence it is clear that the infection may be sub-clinical. About half of the clinical cases show no jaundice and suffer relatively mild febrile attacks, but in its severest form the disease simulates yellow fever

The three pathological phases of the disease, the leptospiraemic, the hepatic, and the renal may not be clearly defined clinically. Liver damage becomes evident from the fourth or fifth day and the renal only in the severest cases about the tenth day

The incubation period is from four to twelve days and the onset is usually sudden. The fever mounts rapidly to reach 102°F or 103°F on the

fourth day, continuing as a high remittent fever for a few days and then falling by lysis, the whole attack lasting about 10 days. A febrile relapse after about three or four days of freedom from fever is not uncommon. In severe and complicated cases the fever may last much longer, and tends to occur in a series of relapses

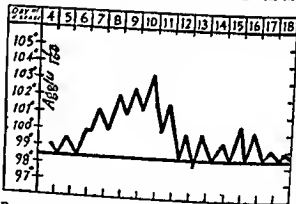


Figure 67 Temperature chart in Weil's disease

The pulse is rapid at first but often slows down when the jaundice appears. Other symptoms are headache, stiffness of the neck, photophobia, marked redness and injection of the conjunctivæ, pains in the muscles and joints, vomiting, and severe prostration. Jaundice appears on the fourth day or later, but it is by no means a constant symptom, actually occurring in less than half the clinical cases. The tongue is thickly coated, and there is usually obstinate constipation, though onset with diarrhoea is reported. Epistaxis and bleeding from the gums are common, and hæmorrhages from other mucous surfaces may occur. Rashes are not constant, a petechial rash may appear from the third to the fifth day, and a morbilliform rash from the fifth to the twelfth day. In very severe cases the rash is hæmorrhagic.

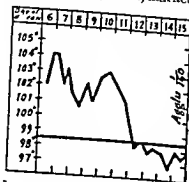


Figure 68 Case showing an early fall of temperature

Anuria is not uncommon, and, even when some urine is being excreted, there is evidence of nitrogen retention

The hair tends to fall out, and in milder forms of this infection, this is sometimes the first observation of the patient

The liver is usually palpable and the spleen occasionally so, the former is nearly always tender

Complications — The most important complications are bronchitis and broncho-pneumonia, this is particularly true in cold countries

Iritis and irido-cyclitis have been described in some countries

Relapses — In about 30 per cent of febrile cases, there is a relapse of the fever at the end of the third or early in the fourth, week. This recurrence of fever is not accompanied by any reappearance of the leptospiræ in the blood, and is therefore not a true relapse comparable with that which occurs in certain other spirochætal diseases. In this second bout, the fever does not usually rise much above 100°F, the temperature is usually irregular for a few days and then falls again to normal

## DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of Weil's disease, with any degree of certainty, on clinical grounds alone, is not easy, especially in cases in which there is no jaundice. Demonstration of the causal organism in the blood or urine is the surest method of confirming the diagnosis but strong presumptive evidence may be obtained from the agglutination test

Leptospiræ are present in the blood of patients during the first week of illness, and can be isolated readily even as late as the ninth day. Microscopic examination of the blood either by means of stained films or by dark-ground illumination is of little practical use as the leptospiræ are scanty and therefore very difficult to find by this means

Cultural examination gives fairly satisfactory results. Vervoot's medium is the best to use, into 10 ccm of Vervoot's medium, 1 ccm of blood is inoculated and the medium is incubated for at least one week, either at room temperature or at 28° to 30°C. In 60 to 80 per cent of cases examined within the first week, positive results are obtained

Animal inoculation is perhaps the most reliable method of diagnosis. Three to five cubic centimetres of blood are injected intra-peritoneally into young guinea-pigs weighing about 250 grammes and their peritoneal fluid examined for leptospiræ by dark-ground illumination from the seventh day onwards. If the animal dies, a post mortem examination is done and sections of the liver and kidney are stained by Levaditi's method and examined for leptospiræ

The urine of patients may also show leptospiræ they appear in the urine from about the tenth day of the illness, and may continue to be excreted for two months. Repeated examinations are however necessary to detect the organisms in the urine as they are passed intermittently, and usually only a few are present. The urine examination should be done by dark ground illumination, by culture or by guinea pig inoculation. For these, it is best to use the sediment obtained by centrifugalization of the urine

Serological methods for the diagnosis of Weil's disease have also been developed. The patient's serum and a weak formalinized culture of

leptospiræ are used, agglutinins begin to appear in the blood about the sixth day of illness, and are present for years after recovery. Positive results in dilutions as high as 1 in 10,000 are common, and occasionally the titre rises to 1 in 1,000,000, but an agglutination of 1 in 100 is considered specific by some workers. Such a low titre might indicate past infection, and, as in the Widal test, more attention should be paid to a rising titre. As there are several serological strains of leptospiræ, the serum should be put up with all the strains that are available. In some cases the urine also gives a positive agglutination test up to 1 in 250 dilution.

Recently, Brown (1939) has described an adhesion test for the diagnosis of Weil's disease. The patient's serum is mixed with a young culture of leptospiræ, a living culture of some motile bacillus, and fresh serum from a guinea-pig, the mixture is incubated at 37°C for half an hour. It is then examined under dark-ground illumination. A positive result is indicated by the motile bacilli adhering to the leptospiræ.

### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

In severe cases, the clinical picture will suggest yellow fever, in less severe cases, 'bilious remittent' malarial fever or relapsing fever, in the last two, blood examination will clinch the diagnosis. In cases in which jaundice is prominent catarrhal jaundice will have to be excluded, but the fever will be lower and the prostration less in the latter case. Severe hæmaturia may simulate the hæmoglobinuria of blackwater fever, but careful investigation will distinguish them. Mild cases may suggest dengue, or sand-fly fever, but the leucopenia which is the rule in these conditions, as well as the shorter duration of the fever, should help to distinguish them.

### PREVENTION

Successful control and prevention of Weil's disease depends upon—(a) the destruction of rats, (b) the disinfection of infected water and soil, (c) the protection of persons who are exposed to infection, and, in some circumstances, (d) the diagnosis and treatment of cases and disinfection of their urine.

(a) *The destruction of rats*—As rats are the main source of infection, war against rats is of the greatest importance. Food stores and supplies should be protected by rat-proofing. Attempts should be made to trap or poison rats and reduce their numbers.

(b) *The disinfection of infected water and soil*—Contaminated water should not be used for bathing, washing, or drinking. Infected water and soil should be disinfected, the latter by the use of calcium cyanamide, this is a fertilizer and is of special value in damp and water-logged agricultural areas. About 168 lb of calcium cyanamide are required for one acre of soil. For the disinfection of water in paddy fields, 44 lb of the fertilizer should be used per acre for each inch of depth of water. Leptospiræ generally thrive in alkaline soils. Acidifying the soil also helps to destroy the organisms. Wherever possible, drainage of the soil should be effected.

(c) *The protection of persons who are exposed to infection*—People working in water or soils infected with leptospiræ should wear sound boots to prevent infection occurring through the skin. They should be warned regarding the danger of using infected water for bathing, washing, or drinking. Before taking food they should thoroughly wash their hands with clean soap and water. Persons with achlorhydria should be particularly

careful. Cuts and abrasions received by workers should be promptly disinfected.

In population groups under special risk vaccination should be considered, but, as there are a number of serological strains of leptospira the local strains should be used in the preparation of the vaccine in order to obtain the best results, this vaccine should consist of 50 to 75 millions of dead leptospira per ccm, and the two inoculations should be given at an interval of a week. According to Iwada this vaccine has helped considerably to reduce the incidence of the disease in Japan. The protection is however apparently short-lived, and re-vaccination should be carried out at regular intervals of certainly not less than a year.

(d) *The diagnosis and treatment of cases and disinfection of their urine*—Cases should be diagnosed early and admitted into hospital, if possible. Their urine should be disinfected. Convalescents should be detained until their urine is free from leptospira.

Convalescents may be re-employed as labourers about two months after recovery. It is advantageous to employ them as they will be immune to infection.

#### TREATMENT

The only specific treatment that has been effective is specific anti-serum, either horse serum, which has now been prepared on a commercial scale, or convalescent serum. An initial injection of 60 ccm of horse serum in a pint of saline should be given intravenously, with the usual precautions against anaphylactic shock, this should be repeated next day, and each day, as long as it is indicated by the patient's condition. A polyvalent serum, or better still one prepared from all local strains should be used. Of convalescent serum about 30 ccm is usually given and this is also repeated, if necessary.

Asphenamine has no specific action in this infection.

A pint of 5 per cent glucose in pyrogen free water and 5 units of insulin should be given, as long as there is evidence of toxæmia. In less severe cases, isotonic rectal saline with 4 grains of calcium chloride to the pint is useful.

Otherwise, the treatment is symptomatic and must be indicated by the complications that arise. The patient should be confined strictly to bed until some days after the temperature has fallen to normal and he should be kept on a fluid diet, glucose, albumen water and lime whey at first, then milk, and the diet should be increased very slowly during convalescence. (See note on p. 308 regarding high protein diet.)

#### PROGNOSIS

The mortality from the disease is very variable and ranges from 2 to 50 per cent. Death seldom occurs in the anicteric cases but in the writer's experience the death rate even under hospital conditions in cases with well-developed jaundice is as high as 50 per cent.

Age is an important factor. In mild epidemics the deaths are often only amongst persons over 50 years of age. The following is the percentage case mortality recorded in different countries: in Japan 32 to 48 per cent, in Malaya 30 per cent, in India 18 to 40 per cent, in Scotland 25 per cent, in Germany 13 per cent, in London 4 to 6 per cent, in Belgium 4 to 6 per cent and in Italy 2 per cent. These figures are based on clinically diagnosed cases and the higher figures probably exclude the mild anicteric cases.

## SEVEN-DAY FEVER OF JAPAN

**Introduction**—This is one of the milder forms of leptospiral infection, the syndrome has been recognized in Japan for many years, and is known by the names *nanukayami* or *sakusku* fever. Autumn fever is probably a variant of the same infection. It was distinguished from dengue and shown to be caused by a leptospira (*Leptospira hebdomadis*) by Ido, Ito and Wani in 1918.

There are many recognized strains of *L. icterohamorrhagiae* which differ from one another antigenically but are apparently similar in their pathogenicity, at least, up to the present, little correlation between particular strains and degrees of pathogenicity has been demonstrated. The obviously low pathogenicity of *L. hebdomadis* constitutes a difference which at present seems to warrant special differentiation, but nevertheless in time, intermediate strains may be encountered, and it may then be necessary to consider *L. hebdomadis* as simply one strain of *L. icterohamorrhagiae*, in such circumstances, seven-day fever will have to be looked upon as a mild form of Weil's disease, which from a clinical standpoint it might well be.

Autumn fever, pseudo dengue and certain other short fevers of Java and Sumatra will also probably fall into line.

**Epidemiology**—It is a sporadic infection, common in certain rural districts of Japan, mainly affecting field workers.

## ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism *Leptospira hebdomadis*, is morphologically identical with *L. icterohamorrhagiae*, but antigenically it is quite distinct. In guinea-pigs, it causes a febrile disease which is sometimes fatal, but it produces jaundice in only about 17 per cent of animals infected, of *L. icterohamorrhagiae* which is almost always fatal and causes severe jaundice in 100 per cent of animals.

**Transmission**—The reservoir of infection is the short-eared field-mouse *Microtus montebelloi*, the leptospirae are found infecting the kidney in about 3 per cent of these mice in Japan and infection is transmitted to man by the same routes as in *L. icterohamorrhagiae* infection.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The onset of this disease is usually sudden, with high fever, headaches, muscular pains, loss of appetite, glandular enlargement, and occasionally a morbilliform rash. The fever sometimes runs a dengue-like course, and in fact the disease was, and probably still is, confused with dengue. Otherwise, it is like a mild form of Weil's disease.

Little is known of the pathology as the prognosis is uniformly good. The diagnosis is made in the same way as that of Weil's disease.

The main points of distinction between this disease and dengue are the slow pulse and the leucopenia in the latter, the white cell count in seven-day fever is usually about 10,000 per cmm, and the increase is mainly in polymorphonuclears.

The treatment is symptomatic, and the preventive measures that can be adopted are based on the knowledge of the reservoir of infection and common-sense application of this knowledge.

## REFERENCES

- BARKER F A (1926) Leptospirosis with Special Reference to Existence of *Spirochaetosis icterohæmorrhagica* or Weils Disease in the Andaman Islands *Indian Med Gaz* **61**, 479
- BROWN, H C (1939) A rapid presumptive serological test for Weils Disease *B M J* **2**, 1183
- DAS GUPTA, B M (1933) Leptospirosis in India *Indian Med Gaz* **73**, 449
- Idem* (1942) Observations on some Immunological Aspects of *Leptospira icterohæmorrhagæ* *Indian Med Gaz* **77**, 28
- Idem* (1942a) *Spirillum minus* Infection acquired from an Indian Squirrel (*Sciurus sp*) *Indian Med Gaz* **77**, 541
- IDO, Y, ITO H, and WANI H (1918) *Spirochæta hebdomadis* the Causative Agent of Seven Day Fever (Nanukayami) *J Exper Med* **28**, 435
- INADA R (1917) The Clinical Aspects of *Spirochaetosis icterohæmorrhagica* or Weils Disease *J Exper Med* **26**, 359
- LEWIS M (1912) The Incidence of *Leptospira icterohæmorrhagæ* in Trapped Rats in Philadelphia *Amer J Trop Med* **22**, 571
- NOGUCHI H (1918) Morphological Characteristics and Nomenclature of *Leptospira (Spirochæta) icterohæmorrhagæ* (Inada and Ido) *J Exper Med* **27**, 575
- PACKCHANIAN, A (1941) Positive Agglutination Tests in suspected Cases of Weils Disease *U S Pub Health Rep* **56**, 2145
- TAYLOR J, and GOYLE A V (1931) Leptospirosis in the Andamans *Indian Med Res Mem* No 20 Thacker Spink and Co (1933) Ltd Calcutta
- UHLENHUTH and FROMME (1916) Zur Ætiologie der sog Weilschen Krankheit (ansteckende Gelbsucht) *Berliner Klin Hoch* **53**, 269 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull* **8**, 51)
- WALCH-SORCDRAGER B (1939) Leptospiroses *Bull Health Organization League of Nations* **8** 143
- WEIL, A (1886) .. Über eine eigentümliche mit Milztumor Ikterus und Nephritis einhergehende akute Infektionskrankheit *Deut Arch klin Med* **39**, 209



# THE TYPHUS FEVERS

	PAGE
DEFINITION	258
INTRODUCTION	258
HISTORICAL	258
CLASSIFICATION	259
THE TICKETTSLE	260

## CLASSICAL. EPIDEMIC. OR LOUSE-BORNE TYPHUS

DEFINITION	261
EPIDEMIOLOGY	261
Geographical distribution	261
Epidemic features	261
Season, race, and sex incidence	261
ÆTIOLOGY	261
The virus	261
Transmission	262
Immunity	263
PATHOLOGY	263
Morbidity anatomy	263
Blood picture	263
Urine	263
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	263
Incubation period—Onset—Temperature—Rash	263
Variations from the normal	264
Complications	265
DIAGNOSIS	265
PREVENTION	266
TREATMENT	266
PROGNOSIS	267

## TRENCH FEVER

DEFINITION	267
ÆTIOLOGY	267
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	268
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	268

## MURINE TYPHUS

	PAGE
DEFINITION	268
<i>Synonyms associated diseases and geographical distribution</i>	268
ÆTIOLOGY	268
<i>The causal organism</i>	268
<i>Transmission</i>	268
EPIDEMIOLOGY	269
PATHOLOGY	270
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	270
DIAGNOSIS	270
IMMUNITY	270
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	271

## ROCKY MOUNTAIN SPOTTED FEVER

DEFINITION	271
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	271
ÆTIOLOGY	271
<i>The virus</i>	271
<i>Transmission</i>	272
<i>Immunity</i>	272
EPIDEMIOLOGY	272
PATHOLOGY	273
<i>Blood—Urine</i>	273
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	273
<i>Incubation period—Temperature—Rash—Pulse</i>	274
<i>Convalescence</i>	274
<i>Complications</i>	274
<i>Sequelæ</i>	274
DIAGNOSIS	274
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	275
ASSOCIATED DISEASES	275

## TSUTSUGAMUSHI

DEFINITION	275
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	276
ÆTIOLOGY	276
<i>The virus</i>	276
<i>Transmission</i>	276
IMMUNITY	276

	PAGE
EPIDEMIOLOGY	276
PATHOLOGY	
Blood	277
Urine	277
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	277
Incubation period—Onset—Initial lesion—Fever—Pulse—Rash	277
Complications	278
DIAGNOSIS	278
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	279

### 'Q' FEVER

AUSTRALIAN 'Q' FEVER	279
AFRICAN 'Q' FEVER PNEUMONITIS	280

### TYPHUS FEVER IN INDIA

INTRODUCTORY	280
CLASSIFICATION	282
EPIDEMIOLOGY	283
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	283
RECENT OBSERVATIONS	284
CONCLUSION	285

### THE TYPHUS FEVERS

**Definition**—The typhus fevers are a group of febrile diseases of varying severity caused by micro organisms of the genus *Rickettsia*, and transmitted to man mainly if not entirely by the agency of insects.

**Introduction**—In view of the fact that all the diseases hitherto recognized clinically as typhus have been shown to be rickettsial in origin, and that all diseases that are known to be caused by rickettsiae have some clinical features in common with the recognized typhus fevers it seems logical in our present state of knowledge to include all rickettsial diseases under the general name typhus with the full appreciation of the fact that at some probably not very distant, future date we may have to modify this nomenclature. Some years ago Megaw pointed out that there were 27 different names applied to diseases of this group and urged the necessity for clarification and classification since he wrote this the number has been added to. He suggested a simple epidemiological classification which has formed the basis of most subsequent classifications. From the point of view of the clinician the important point is to distinguish between the epidemic form and the endemic or sporadic forms.

There are many forms of the disease in many countries, but, as it is not expedient nor would it be possible in the space at his disposal to discuss all these the writer proposes to describe only certain clear cut types that have appeared in countries outside India and then to discuss the disease as we see it in India.

**Historical**—Typhus fever was distinguished from typhoid fever only about a century ago both by Stille (1838) and Gerhard (1837) though there are many earlier historical references to epidemics that were almost certainly typhus. It

was always recognized as a very infectious disease but the manner in which it spread from man to man was not known until early in the present century, when Nicolle and Conseil (1911) transmitted the infection to apes by the agency of lice. Meanwhile Ricketts (1906) had transmitted Rocky Mountain spotted fever to guinea pigs by the bite of ticks and later he and Wilder (1911) reported the finding of the organisms that are now known as Rickettsia in the gut of infected lice in Mexico but it was not until some years later that the etiological associations of these diseases with the rickettsiae were placed on a satisfactory basis (Wolbach 1919, 1923, 1925). In 1916 da Rocha Lima published the first adequate description of the rickettsiae and gave the name *Rickettsia prowazeki* to the causal organism of epidemic typhus. Wolbach (1919) recognized organisms of the same group which he called *Dermacentrozoon rickettsi* as the cause of Rocky Mountain spotted fever, Japanese river fever, or tsutsugamushi disease which had long been recognized clinically and known to be transmitted by mites was shown to be caused by a rickettsia which Sellards (1923) described and called *R. orientalis*, the mild sporadic form of typhus that Brill (1898) described in New York the slightly more severe but still mild sporadic form that occurred in Mexico and South East United States (Maxcy 1926) and 'trench fever' that occurred on both sides of the western front in the last war, were also shown to be rickettsial in origin. In 1925, the endemic typhus fevers of Malaya were linked up with this group of diseases by Fletcher and Lesslar, and the position was clarified by Lewthwaite and his collaborators (Lewthwaite and Savori, 1940). In 1937 Burnet and Freeman showed that Australian 'Q' fever (Derrick 1937) was caused by a rickettsia.

Wilson (1909) reported the isolation from the stools of typhus patients of proteus-like organisms that were agglutinated by the patients' sera and later Weil and Felix (1916) separated the special strain of proteus that gave a very high agglutination titre with the serum of patients suffering from epidemic typhus thereby introducing the test now usually known as the Weil-Felix or the Wilson-Weil-Felix test which appears to be positive in most of the typhus fevers and is a further means of identifying them.

In 1917 Megaw drew attention to the existence of endemic typhus in India and suggested the tick as a transmitter.

Thus during the last thirty years a number of diseases which occur in many different parts of the world have little in common epidemiologically and are clinically often very dissimilar have been linked up and shown to be caused by some species of the genus *Rickettsia*. It has only been possible here to outline the story and to mention a very few of the workers involved some of whom including both Ricketts and von Proszek lost their lives during their investigations as the result of laboratory infections.

**Classification.**—Since Megaw suggested his classification according to the vector, a considerable advance has been made in our knowledge of the antigenic relations of the various rickettsiae that infect man. On an immunological basis there are four main groups of typhus fever: (a) classical typhus (with which endemic typhus is closely related), (b) Rocky Mountain spotted fever, (c) tsutsugamushi, and (d) trench fever.

The classification that has been adopted here is modelled on Megaw's original classification, which has been modified to take into account recent work on the antigenic relationships of the rickettsiae, and to indicate the nature of the primary rickettsial transmission cycle. The three main divisions in the classification indicate the *primary* transmission cycles, for example, epidemic, that is from man to man 'enarthropod' (a word introduced provisionally by the writer) that is from arthropod to arthropod and enzootic, that is (in this instance) from rodent to rodent. This provisional classification is shown in table IV, which also gives some of the outstanding clinical and other features of these diseases.

There are still certain typhus fevers which have not found their places in either of these classifications notably the typhus fevers of Kenya and South Africa, those of India, which we do not look upon as a homogeneous group, and the newly described 'Q' fevers of Australia and America. Further reference is made to these below.



Pinkerton 1944

## THE RICKETTSIÆ

These are a group of micro organisms that fall between the bacteria and the filtrable viruses not only in size but in biological reactions and also probably in their evolution. Many bacteria are free living and possess a complete enzyme system that allows them to synthesize their food from simple chemical elements. Other bacteria are less well equipped and require animal or plant tissues or special medium containing tissue extracts for their growth. The rickettsiæ have descended even further down the evolutionary scale and have become obligatory parasites; their enzyme systems have degenerated so far that they are unable to sustain saprophytic existence.

Rickettsiæ are smaller than bacteria but larger than the filtrable viruses; they are just visible under the high power of the microscope but their morphological characters are difficult to make out. They are usually held up by the ordinary bacterial filters. They are usually coccoid or bacillary in shape and in tissue culture or in their insect hosts may be seen in chains within individual cells.

The rickettsiæ\* can be divided into several groups according to the distance they have descended in the evolutionary scale.

- (i) Non pathogenic (to mammals) extra cellular and intra cellular rickettsiæ a large number have been isolated from a variety of insects
- (ii) Potentially pathogenic extra cellular rickettsiæ—e.g. *R. quintana* of trench fever
- (iii) Pathogenic intra cellular rickettsiæ that will also live extra cellularly under certain conditions e.g. *R. burneti* of Q fever
- (iv) Pathogenic rickettsiæ that are obligatory intra cellular parasites these are sub divided into two groups—
  - (a) the intracytoplasmic e.g. *R. prowazeki* and *R. orientalis* of epidemic typhus and tsutsugamushi respectively
  - (b) the intranuclear e.g. *R. rickettsi* (*Dermacentroxinus rickettsi*) of Rocky Mountain spotted fever, these are also present in the cell cytoplasm

\* Rickettsiaceæ (Wolbach 1940) has been suggested as the family name for this group of organisms but it would perhaps be more appropriate if a super family Rickettsodea with families say Wolbachaceæ for the non pathogenic and potentially extra-cellular organisms and Rickettsiaceæ for the obligatory intra-cellular species of the last group were created.

TABLE IV FEVERS OF THE TYPHUS GROUP

Primary cycle	Epidemic	Enanthropodic	Enzootic			
Epidemiological classification	Epidemic	Enanthropodic	Sporadic place-diseases communicated from natural reservoirs to man by various arthropods Mostly diseases of the open country			
Vector classification	Louse-typus	Tick typhus	Flea-typus	Mite-typus		
Names and synonyms	Classical type typhus fever, typhus exanthematicus	Trench fever Weigl's disease	Jaundice boutonneuse tick-bite fever	Marine, endemic, urban or ship typhus	Tsutsugamushi Japanese river fever scrub or tropical typhus Sumatra mite-fever	
Distribution	Common in the tropics	War conditions laboratory infection	Europe South Africa Asia	Many localities all over the world	Oriental tropical and sub tropical countries	
Virus	Flaccid	Rickettsia	Rickettsia	Rickettsia	Rickettsia	
Vectors	Human lice (Pediculus humanus)	Human lice	Rhipicephalus sanguineus	Fleas (especially Xenopsylla cheopis)	Mites (Trombicula akamushi and T. delousei) Rats and mice	
Reservoirs of infection	Man	Lice	Domestic animals (no animal reservoir identified)	Rats and mice		
Nature of infection	+++	+	+	+	+	
Host	Man	Man	Man	Man	Man	
Local name, lymphatic and lymphadenitis	Man	Man	Man	Man	Man	
Mortality, per cent	5 to 20	Very low	High 10 to 80	Low, about 2	Low, about 2	

## CLASSICAL EPIDEMIC OR LOUSE BORNE TYPHUS

**Definition**—Classical typhus is a severe febrile epidemic disease with a sudden onset lasting 10 to 15 days and ending in rapid lysis accompanied by a rash that appears from the third to the fifth day and caused by *Rickettsia prowazeki* which is carried from man to man by lice

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—This disease has or rather has had a world wide distribution. It is certainly not 'tropical' though it might be considered *exotique* it is actually much less common in tropical than in temperate countries

Recent epidemics have occurred in Russia Poland the Balkans Ireland and Spain in Europe in North Africa in Asia Minor Transcaspia Siberia and China and in Colombia Ecuador Peru and Chile

**Epidemic features**—It is essentially an epidemic disease and its incidence is clearly explainable on the basis of its mode of transmission. It occurs in the less civilized countries in Europe where the sense of personal cleanliness of the individual is not highly developed or where through circumstances his normal habits are interfered with such as during wars persecutions and famines. Its absence from many tropical countries can probably be explained by the small amount of clothing worn which reduces the harbourage of the transmitting louse and in the case of India on the cleanliness of the personal habits of the majority of the population

In addition to the transmission factor the lowering of the resistance of the population by hardships and privations is probably important. In such circumstances the natural and the acquired immunity is lowered so that the individual not only becomes infected very easily but antibody formation is poor and the virus is able to circulate unneutralized in the peripheral blood for a longer period than under more favourable circumstances and therefore causes a heavier infection of the lice

Deaths from typhus in England and Wales which numbered about 4000 annually in 1870 had fallen below 40 at the beginning of the century to disappear from the returns by 1920. The history of the disease in other sanitarly advanced European countries has been similar

**Season race and sex incidence**—In its seasonal distribution typhus is more common in winter than in summer for the obvious reason that people tend to sleep herded together in their huts and wear more clothes in winter

All races appear to be equally susceptible to the disease but it tends to take a milder form in the races habituated to it (Napier 1919)

The sexes are equally susceptible the disease is usually milder in children

### ETIOLOGY

**The virus**—The causal organism is *Rickettsia prowazeki* the type species of the genus *Rickettsia*. The rickettsiae are granule-like bodies more or less pleomorphic with a diameter of less than half a micron more or less pleomorphic with a diameter of less than half a micron staining badly with aniline dyes but well (purplish) with Giemsa's stain they show a tendency to bipolar staining. In their behaviour they fall between the filtrable viruses and the bacteria they do not grow on ordinary

laboratory media but can be grown in tissue culture medium, or on the yolk sac of the developing chick embryo which is the method used in preparing vaccines. They are held up by fine filters while they pass through coarse ones as do small bacteria.

These rickettsiæ are found in the cytoplasm of the endothelial cells of the blood vessel of their mammalian hosts, in the cells of the gut lining of lice. An intra cellular position characterizes the pathogenic rickettsiæ, and distinguishes them from the non pathogenic varieties that are also found in certain arthropods. In the blood stream the rickettsia tends to adhere to the red cells and platelets.

**Transmission**—The virus circulates in the peripheral blood during the febrile period and defervescence. The louse *Pediculus humanus* becomes infected by sucking the blood of its host which is exclusively man. The rickettsiæ invade the endothelial lining of the gut of the louse, here they multiply, the cells eventually burst into the lumen of the gut, and the rickettsial bodies are passed out with the faeces. The cycle within the louse takes at least three days, usually longer after which the louse is infective and remains so for the rest of its life. The normal life span of the louse is about 14 days but survival up to 45 days has been reported, the infection however tends to kill them. The rickettsiæ survive in the dried faeces of lice up to 60 days and the faeces are probably the main source of infection of man and the sole source of infection of the next generation of lice. The extreme infectiousness of typhus depends on the fact that the dried faeces of lice may be blown about in the air of the sick-room or laboratory. Man is infected by scratching the faeces into his skin, by contamination of his mucous membranes, or via the respiratory tract. It is doubtful if gastro intestinal infection takes place and it is

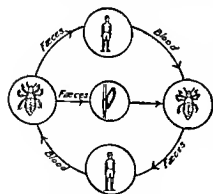


Figure 69 Transmission cycle in epidemic typhus

known that infection is not transmitted by the bite of the louse. The cycle is thus man—louse—man. The louse is an essential link and so probably is man for *Pediculus humanus* feeds exclusively on human blood and though the infection may be transmitted to the next generation of lice by contamination there is no hereditary transmission and, as the infection is fatal to the louse no louse to louse cycle would survive any length of time.

The possible modes of dissemination of infection are by (a) migration of infected lice (b) by contact of infected lice (c) by air-borne infection from dried faeces of lice. The former two have long been recognized and explain the rapid spreading of the disease when louse infected people are crowded together, but the possibility of the latter mode was overlooked until recently, it explains the high incidence amongst doctors and nurses, and the many laboratory infections. It was reported in Ireland that during an epidemic, 50 per cent of attending doctors contracted the disease. The same was the experience in Serbia after the last war, when 36 per cent of the doctors in the country died of typhus. Many laboratory infections have occurred, and some of the most prominent workers in this field have died of typhus (*vide supra*).



**Immunity** —The immunity produced by an attack is not complete and second and even third attacks have been reported. The comparatively mild form that the disease sometimes takes in communities where it is common can probably be accounted for by the previous attacks that these people have suffered especially during childhood when the attacks are often very mild and might not be recognized as typhus.

Passive immunity can be conveyed by the injection of the sera of convalescents but as a practical means of protection this method is of little or no value.

Active immunity can be produced by the inoculation of dead rickettsiae (*vide infra*).

Cross immunity between classical typhus and the so called Brill's disease has been shown to be complete this is of course natural. A considerable degree of cross immunity between classical and murine typhus (*eg* tabardillo of Mexico *vi*) has been demonstrated though this is not complete but against the other forms of typhus there is little or no cross immunity. The immunity runs more or less parallel with the Weil-Felix reaction.

### PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy** —There are few macroscopic changes. The spleen is usually distinctly enlarged on section it is dark red soft and diffused. There is cloudy swelling of the liver and kidneys. Waxy degeneration of the muscles has been noted. There are petechial haemorrhages in the serous and mucous membranes and in the pons and medulla and occasionally more extensive haemorrhages into the hollow viscera the serous cavities and even into the ventricles.

Microscopically the characteristic lesion is produced by endothelial proliferation in the arteriole a specific reaction to invasion by rickettsiae which leads to thrombosis and eventually necrosis there is a perivascular infiltration first of mononuclears and plasma cells and later of polymorphonuclears. The tubercular nodules that are thus produced in the organs and tissues are suggestive of miliary tuberculosis. These changes take place in the skin and cause the characteristic rash in the mucous and serous membranes and cause haemorrhages in the various organs and in the central nervous system the neuroglia cells taking part in the reaction and cause the mental symptoms.

There are no very characteristic changes in the blood picture. In severe cases especially when the patients first come under observation and are suffering some dehydration there will be polycythemia there is usually a leucocytosis of 12 000 to 15 000 per cmm and an absence of eosinophils.

The urine shows the characteristics that are usually associated with high fever and often some albumin but there are seldom casts or other evidence of nephritis.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period is usually from 10 to 14 days extreme instances of incubation periods of 4 and 24 days have been reported.

After a day or two of prodromal symptoms general malaise loss of appetite headache and joint pain the onset is sudden with the fever rising to its peak 104°F or higher in 48 hours occasionally with a rigor. This is accompanied by pains in the loins and joints severe headache

photophobia, and rigidity of the neck. The face is flushed and bloated, the conjunctivæ injected, the tongue has a dirty brown centre and bright pink edges, the mucous membranes generally are a deep red, the breath is offensive, and there is often epistaxis. There are fine tremors of the extended fingers and fibrillary twitchings of the face, and the speech is hesitant, slow and slurred. Vomiting is common and constipation is a constant symptom. The pulse is full and soft, usually about 100 per minute, and the blood pressure is low.

Nervous symptoms develop early, the patient is drowsy and apathetic, and, during consciousness, cerebration is slow, as early as the fourth day (*cf.* typhoid in which the mental symptoms develop much later). Then later he becomes anxious and restless, and eventually may become delirious or pass into a stuporous state preceding death in coma.

The temperature, as noted above, rises rapidly to  $104^{\circ}\text{F}$  and remains at a high remittent temperature for 10 to 12 days, at the end of this period, it may show deep remissions and eventually it falls by rapid lysis. The whole febrile period lasts from 12 to 17 days.

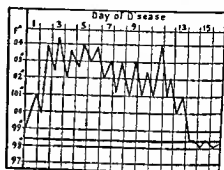


Figure 70 Temperature chart in a case of classical typhus (original)

The rash appears on the fifth or sixth day, rarely as early as the third or fourth. It is a profuse roseolar rash on the trunk, limbs and sometimes the face, but not on the palms of the hands or soles of the feet. The macules are comparatively large, varying in diameter from 2 to 7 millimetres, and on the background between the spots there is a general erythema. Ligature of the limb causes an intensification of the rash, and on dark skins it is often only by this device that one can see it. The spots continue to develop for a few days and they may become petechial or even hæmorrhagic, particularly at the bends of the knee and elbow, and on the feet and ankles. There may be slight desquamation at the fall of the temperature, and there is usually a slight brown stain of the skin, that remains for some time.

**Variations from the normal**—The disease described by Brill in 1898 and shown by Anderson and Goldberger in 1912 to be a form of typhus has

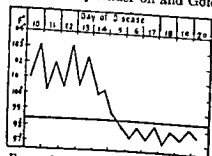


Figure 71 Temperature chart in a case of mild classical typhus which was diagnosed as broncho-pneumonia, but later shown by the Weil-Felix reaction to be typhus (original)

more recently been shown by Zinsser to be almost certainly a manifestation of late relapse of classical typhus, for he found that in nearly every one of the 538 cases of this disease reported between 1910 and 1933 in New York, the patients were emigres from Russia or other European countries where typhus is frequently epidemic. This is a clinically mild type of typhus with no mortality, usually with a modified rash which may be absent, but the serum gives the typical agglutination against proteus X19.

Another modified form of the disease in which the clinical picture is typical, except for its benignity, is sometimes encountered amongst populations in which epidemics are common. Such an epidemic occurred amongst Armenian refugees in Mesopotamia in 1918, in this instance the disease was mild amongst the refugees, who were well fed and comfortably accommodated, but was much more severe amongst the Indian and British personnel who were looking after them (Napier, 1919).

**Complications**—Broncho pneumonia is common other complications are stomatitis, parotitis, and even noma, thrombosis followed by gangrene of the feet or toes, genitals, and ears characterize some epidemics. Heart failure, preceded by a very low blood pressure and a slow pulse is not an uncommon mode of death.

### DIAGNOSIS

In a typical case, the clinical diagnosis will present little difficulty, the points which differentiate typhus from typhoid are (i) sudden and rapid onset with the early development of severe symptoms, (ii) pains in the joints, limbs, and loins, and rigidity (iii) the rash (iv) the nervous symptoms and especially their earlier development (v) the leucocytosis and (vi) the earlier and more rapid resolution.

Of the laboratory methods the Weil Felix reaction is the most valuable. This test is dependent on the probably accidental similarity of the antigenic structure of the specific rickettsia of typhus to that of a bacillus of the proteus group,  $\lambda 19$  that was originally isolated from the urine of a typhus patient and found to be agglutinated in a high titre by his serum. Though really a non-specific test, this test is as specific as any 'specific' agglutination test in common use. At the end of the first week the patient's serum gives a positive result in a dilution of 1 in 100, and by the end of febrile period it may be as high as 1 in 5000, agglutination persists for some weeks and probably for some years in a low titre, which may be raised by some other febrile attack. It is not safe to accept any agglutination of less than 1 in 125 as suggesting typhus and moreover a rising titre should be expected as in the writer's experience a titre of at least 1 in 640 is always reached at some stage of the disease.

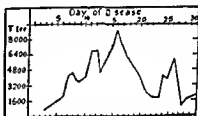


Figure 72. Graph based on the Weil Felix reactions on 85 samples of serum from definite cases of typhus taken at different periods during the disease (original).

More recently, an agglutination test with an emulsion of rickettsiae has been developed but this test presents no advantages in this form of typhus.

Of the more elaborate laboratory procedures guinea pig inoculation is the most useful, about 2 c.c. of the patient's blood during the febrile period is inoculated into the peritoneum of a young guinea-pig, the guinea pig will develop the characteristic fever in about eight days but without scrotal swelling which is the characteristic of other rickettsial infections. Occasionally in the first passage the virus is fixed in the brain and there is no febrile reaction, in such cases the inoculation of an emulsion of the brain of the first guinea pig into a second will usually lead to the characteristic fever.

stimulants may be necessary, camphor in ether or cardiazol is preferable to strychnine or digitalis. Oxygen will often be useful.

### PROGNOSIS

The death rate is very variable and will depend on the conditions. For example, in time of famine and amongst half starved and exhausted refugees, it may be nearly 100 per cent, it will also vary from epidemic to epidemic, but is seldom less than 10 per cent, in children the rate is low and in the aged high. Death usually occurs about the 10th to 12th day.

## TRENCH FEVER

**Definition** — Trench fever is a febrile disease of moderate severity which shows a tendency to relapse, it is caused by a rickettsial organism *R. quintana*, which is transmitted to man sporadically from the louse in which it is a saprophytic infection. The disease appeared during the last war, mainly in the trenches on the western front but also in Poland, Northern Italy and Macedonia, and has subsequently disappeared.

**Ætiology** — The causal organism *Rickettsia quintana*, is apparently a natural parasite of the louse, *Pediculus humanus*, and only infects man sporadically. This rickettsia lives in the lumen of the gut of lice, and is never intra-cellular, its normal cycle is from louse to louse by contamination, and only when he is subjected to intensive dosage with the virus does man become infected. The infection is transmitted from the crushed bodies of lice, or from their faeces, through an abrasion in the skin or via the conjunctiva. Man is said to be infective in the louse from the third day of the disease, and to remain so well into convalescence but the early experimenters who demonstrated this do not seem to have taken the extreme precautions to ensure the cleanliness of their louse stock which recent investigations have shown to be necessary. In fact, all work done on this disease in the past should be repeated and confirmed. There is at present a school of thought which entertains grave doubts as to whether trench fever was caused by rickettsiæ.

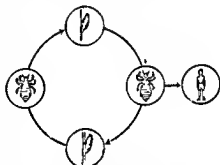


Figure 73 Suggested transmission cycle in trench fever

The relation between *R. quintana* (and *R. weigl*, vide infra) and *R. pediculi*, the natural rickettsia of the louse, is not clear. These two rickettsiæ are indistinguishable, both morphologically and in their relation to the louse as they are both extra cellular and non pathogenic in the louse, but the latter is normally non pathogenic to man. It seems possible that, in certain circumstances not yet determined, *R. pediculi* becomes pathogenic to man. As this disease has now disappeared, quite possibly only temporarily, it is impossible to study it, and the rickettsial organism that causes it, by modern methods.

Weigl's disease, which is the name given to a localized laboratory outbreak of rickettsial infection, is almost certainly exactly the same disease, laboratory workers were infected through handling infected lice.

**Symptomatology**—The incubation period is eight to ten days. The onset is sudden, usually without prodromal symptoms, but occasionally there is headache, weakness, restlessness and diarrhoea. In a few cases the onset is so sudden that the patient falls down or becomes so giddy that he cannot walk, other symptoms are generalized pains, vomiting and gastro-intestinal symptoms. The temperature rises to 103°F, or so, and the fever continues for about three days, it then falls to normal for a day or two, and again rises. The periodicity

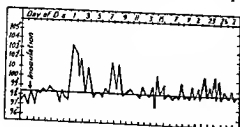


Figure 74 Temperature chart in trench fever (after Byam 1923)

varies between four and eight days. There is usually conjunctival injection, a very dirty tongue, occasionally rose spots on the chest, that disappear on pressure, and a slightly enlarged hard spleen. The blood shows a moderate leucocytosis. The diagnosis is largely clinical and circumstantial, and by a process of exclusion. At the present day, it would be unwise to make this diagnosis in the absence of a heavy infestation with rickettsia-infected lice.

**Prevention and treatment**—The louse is the essential factor and vigorous measures, indicated above, should be directed against this parasite. Treatment is symptomatic.

## MURINE TYPHUS

**Definition**—Murine typhus is a fever of the typhus group, of moderate severity, caused by *Rickettsia muricola* (mooseri) which is closely related to if not identical with, *Rickettsia prowazeki*, and is transmitted to man by the rat flea *Xenopsylla cheopis*, it occurs endemically in many tropical and sub-tropical countries.

**Synonyms associated diseases and geographical distribution**—Included under this heading are *tabardillo*, or endemic typhus of Mexico and the south-eastern states of the USA, ship typhus of Toulon (France), urban or shop typhus of Malaya, Manchurian endemic typhus and certain other flea-borne typhuses reported from different parts of the world, Syria, Greece, Africa, China and Indo China.

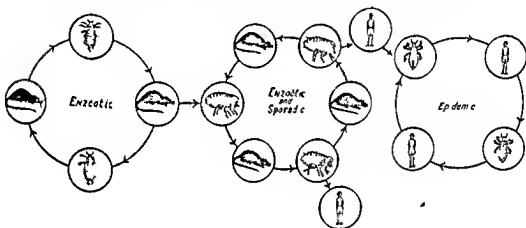
## ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism is usually known as *Rickettsia muricola*, but is also referred to as *R. mooseri*. It is morphologically identical with *R. prowazeki*, and in its behaviour in its arthropod hosts it is very similar to it, in the flea, it is found in the endothelial cells of the lining of the gut, but it does not kill the insect. The only distinguishing characteristic is that *R. muricola* produces scrotal swellings when inoculated intraperitoneally into guinea-pigs, but some doubt has been thrown on the stability of this differentiation by the observation that *R. prowazeki* will acquire this characteristic if it is transmitted through a series of guinea-pigs.

**Transmission**—The epidemiological investigations of Maxcy (1926), the later experimental work of Dyer *et al* (1931), and the co-ordinating studies of Ziosser and his associates have led to a clearer understanding of this disease. These studies have established the following facts. The

main reservoir of infection is the rat (mice and other rodents also possibly act in this capacity) and the infection is passed from rat to rat by the rat louse *Polyplax spinulosus*. This louse is specific to the rat and does not infest man. But the infection is also transmitted from rat to rat by the rat flea *Xenopsylla cheopis* which does in certain circumstances infest man. The rickettsia does not kill the rat louse, the flea, or the rat, so that transmission to man is sporadic and only occurs when the association between the rat and man is very close. (Compare the transmission of plague by the same rat flea; in this case the rat dies, the infected fleas leave the dead rat to find new hosts either rats or man and a rapid dissemination of infection takes place, resulting in an epidemic.)

Further it has been shown that from man the louse can acquire the infection with this virus so that when epidemiological conditions are favourable a louse borne epidemic starts. The relationship of the three cycles is shown diagrammatically below —



This demonstrates how the virus of typhus survives during the inter epidemic periods and seems to offer a very reasonable explanation for the apparent spontaneous generation of epidemic typhus.

Zinsser has pointed out that the facts of the non pathogenicity of this rickettsia to the flea and its lethal effect in the human louse suggest a much longer association with the former or in other words that endemic murine typhus was the older disease from which epidemic typhus originated.

**Epidemiology** —The disease is sporadic. It occurs where man lives in close association with rats in insanitary prisons in crowded and in sanitary bazars of tropical ports on rat infested ships and in grain stores.

In the endemic areas the incidence of this disease may be such as to constitute an important public health problem and even in the United States the annual incidence is in the neighbourhood of 3 000 with a death rate of about 3 per cent.

In most of the endemic areas it has no special seasonal incidence but in the colder countries where it occurs it is a summer or autumn disease. Individuals of all races and ages and both sexes seem to be equally susceptible.

The relation of this disease to epidemic typhus has been suggested above. When once the louse-man cycle has been established the disease takes on all the characters of classical typhus.

**Pathology**—This does not differ materially from that of classical typhus but it has not been studied very thoroughly as deaths are comparatively rare.

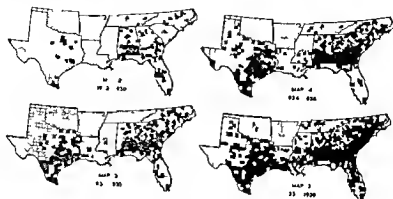


Figure 76 The extension of murine typhus in the southern states of the U S A (H E Meleney *Amer J Pub Health* 31, 219)

**Symptomatology**—The disease differs from classical typhus mainly in its intensity. The incubation period is from 10 to 16 days, the onset is sudden and may be quite severe, but the severity is short-lived and the temperature drops to the 100°F line or so within a few days, the whole course is not usually more than 10 to 14 days. The rash appears about the fifth day but is less intense. The deaths are usually due to complications *e.g.* broncho pneumonia but occasionally an isolated case runs a severe course which may be indistinguishable from the classical disease on clinical grounds.

The diagnosis is confirmed by a positive Weil-Felix reaction with the OX19 antigen (*vide infra*).

**Immunity**—It is on the immunological experiments that our knowledge of the close relationship of the murine and classical typhus depends. In animals previous infection with either virus produces a solid immunity against infection with the other, this lasts in some cases up to a year. Whilst complement fixation tests confirm the existence of this cross-immunity, quantitative experiments show that a positive result will occur in higher dilutions with the homologous than with the heterologous rickettsia. Both rickettsial infections lead to the formation of agglutinins against proteus OX19 in animals and man.

There is no cross-immunity against the other species of rickettsia.

**Prevention and treatment**—It must be obvious that the preventive measures in this disease are on entirely different lines from those in epidemic typhus. The main attack is on the rat, but it is obviously essential that the rat's fleas must also be destroyed, or they will migrate to other rats and possibly man, and will tend to disseminate the infection. The methods to be adopted are numerous and varied, and will depend very largely on the circumstances (*vide PLAGUE*).

One could not advocate extensive and expensive measures for the sake of limiting this disease alone but rats carry so many other diseases and cause so much economic loss through their rapacious and destructive habits that any successful measures against these vermin must be a sound investment

The dangers of heavy louse infestation in areas of endemic typhus are worth stressing again here for even if other circumstances are necessary for the change over to the epidemic form to take place louse infestation is a *sine qua non*

Personal prophylaxis can be effected by inoculation with either the murine or the classical strain

Treatment is symptomatic, on the lines indicated above

### ROCKY MOUNTAIN SPOTTED FEVER

**Definition**—Rocky Mountain spotted fever is a fever of the typhus group usually of considerable severity and with a high mortality characterized by an intense maculopapular rash caused by *Rickettsia rickettsi* and transmitted to man sporadically by the ticks *Dermacentor variabilis* and *americanus* the disease is endemic in most of the states in the U.S.A. but the Rocky Mountain states are the most heavily infected

**Geographical distribution**—As the name suggests the disease was first recognized and is most prevalent in the mountain states of the U.S.A. Montana Idaho Wyoming Colorado Utah and Nevada also in the Pacific states especially Oregon In the last ten years either the infection has spread towards the eastern states or more probably the disease has been recognized in these states the highest incidence is in Maryland Virginia North Carolina and Washington D.C. but a few cases have been reported from nearly every state in the union outside of New England Wisconsin and Michigan In Canada it has been reported from British Columbia and Alberta



Figure 77 The distribution of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever in 1941 (E. C. Faust 1944)

The typhus of Sao Paulo and Minas Geraes of Brazil and Tobia fever in Colombia are apparently the same disease. *Fievre boutonneuse* which occurs in France Portugal Roumania and North Africa *Kenya typhus* and the tick bite fever of southern Africa are closely allied diseases

### ÆTIOLOGY

**The virus**—The causal organism was originally named *Dermacentrozoon rickettsi* but was later shown to be a rickettsia and re-named *Rickettsia rickettsi*. It has the morphological and tissue cultural characters of the other intracellular rickettsiae but is distinguished by its intra nuclear position. It occurs in nature in the wood tick and



in other ticks. Many wild rodents as well as laboratory animals can be infected and in the guinea pig it produces fever and the characteristic scrotal lesion (Neill Mooser reaction).

**Transmission**—The two principal transmitters are the wood tick, *Dermacentor andersoni*, and the dog tick, *Dermacentor variabilis*, the former is the main transmitter in the mountain states and the latter in the

eastern states. In the southern states, *Amblyomma americanum* has also been found infected in nature and is probably a vector. Many other ticks are potential vectors. In Brazil, *Amblyomma cajennense* is the tick incriminated, and in France the dog tick *Rhipicephalus sanguineus*.

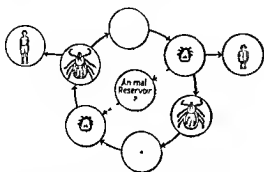


Figure 78. Transmission cycle in Rocky Mountain spotted fever (Western variety).

stitute a reservoir of infection. Though none of these animals has been found infected in nature in the endemic areas, many are susceptible to the infection and it seems probable that they help to maintain this widespread sporadic infection. It has however been pointed out that no reservoir is necessary, since the infection is transmitted to the progeny of the ticks, in the case of the main vector *Dermacentor andersoni*, through an infinite number of generations.

The adult ticks bite man and transmit the disease to him, and the nymphs and larvæ will sometimes be found on children. The percentage of ticks infected is comparatively small, in the enzootic areas this varies from place to place, and from year to year in the same place, but the general average is about 2 per cent, and it seldom rises above 10 per cent of a sample of ticks examined.

In a starved tick the infection is dormant and it takes some time before it is reactivated. In a recently fed tick, the infection may be active, and transmission may take place fairly quickly, but it is usually considered that if a tick is removed within four hours infection will be avoided, a starved infected tick has been fed on a susceptible animal for as long as three days, without transmitting the infection. The infection is transmitted by the bite of the tick and by squashing infected ticks.

**Immunity**—The immunity produced by an attack is not complete and many instances of second attacks have been reported. There is no cross-immunity with other forms of typhus except those that have been recognized as closely allied diseases (*vs.*). The serum agglutinates proteus OX19 and OX2 but in rabbits the Rocky Mountain spotted fever strain will give rise to agglutinins against OX2 whereas the typhus strain will not. Some immunity can be produced by inoculation with a vaccine.

**Epidemiology**—The incidence is sporadic. In the mountain states, it is to some extent an occupational infection in that those engaged in hunting and trapping game and rodents, and in agricultural pursuits, are most

likely to be infected. Others that are frequently infected include prospectors and miners, highway construction workers and tourists and picnickers. Thus, men are most frequently infected in these areas but in the eastern states where the dog tick is the carrier, the tick is brought into the houses and women and children are more frequently infected.

The spring and early summer months when the ticks are most active are the months of highest incidence in most places but at higher altitudes the infection season extends late into the summer and even on into the autumn. In the eastern states it is a summer and autumn (fall) infection.

The intensity of the disease varies very considerably in different districts, in the Bitter Root valley and other districts in Montana the death rate has been as high as 80 per cent and taking it all round it is certainly 40 per cent in the mountain districts but in some of the districts in the eastern states where *Dermacentor variabilis* is the transmitter it is much lower, and the average death rate is probably less than 25 per cent. The lower death rate in the eastern states is certainly in part and possibly entirely, due to the lower age incidence in these states (Topping 1943). The severity varies from year to year in any one area.

**Pathology**—The rickettsia invade the endothelial cells and also the muscular coat of the smaller blood vessels so that thrombo necrosis is the reaction rather than proliferative endarteritis. Of the macroscopic lesions extensive ecchymoses into the skin, mucous membranes and serous cavities, enlargement of the spleen, meningeal congestion, broncho pneumonia and scrotal gangrene are common.

In the blood there are no characteristic changes there is usually a moderate leucocytosis but a leucopenia (granulopenia) is not uncommon. The urine is acid, it is often reduced in amount and retention may occur. Some albumin may be present.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period is from three to twelve days being shorter in the more severe infections. After a day or so of prodromal symptoms headache, backache, general malaise and loss of appetite the onset is rapid though not usually as sudden as in classical typhus with rigor and sweating, nausea and vomiting, photophobia, congestion of the conjunctivæ, intensification of the prodromal symptoms and pains all over the body. The clinical picture then rapidly develops into that of a severe typhus attack (vide supra).

The temperature rises by rapid steps to a maximum between 103°F and 106°F according to the severity of the attack in five or six days it maintains its height for a few days often with deep remissions and then begins to come down by lysis taking three to four days in the eastern type and seven to eight in the more severe western type, the whole febrile period lasting from two to three weeks. Fatal hyperpyrexia with temperature above 108°F sometimes occurs.

The rash usually appears from the second to the fourth day but may be delayed to the fifth or even sixth, and is sometimes preceded by a subcuticular mottling of the skin. The typical rash is bright red macular or maculo papular, it appears first on the wrist and ankles sometimes on the forehead or back it spreads rapidly all over the body including the palms and soles. In severe cases it commences with small pin head spots

that rapidly darken, and eventually become hæmorrhagic and coalesce. In the less severe cases, the spots appear in a succession of crops at a few days' interval. The rash fades slowly, leaving a brown stain which is very photosensitive, becoming red on exposure, and sometimes pock marks.

The pulse is full and bounding and often disproportionately slow in the mild cases, but in the toxic cases it becomes very rapid and is often uncountable.

Convalescence is usually slow and it may take some months.

The common complications are pneumonia, phlebitis, and hæmorrhages, including cerebral rarely, and, less frequently, iritis and acute nephritis.

Sequelæ are not common, but neuroses, psychoses, and insomnia, deafness, impaired vision, anaemia, and myocardial weakness have been reported.

Diagnosis does not present any difficulties in a typical case, but the temperature may suggest typhoid, other conditions that will have to be considered are measles and other acute exanthemata, secondary syphilis, meningitis, and purpura hæmorrhagica.

Further evidence will be obtained from the Weil-Felix reaction; standard agglutination against OX19 and/or OX2 at 1 in 320 or higher should be considered suggestive. However, the complement-fixation test will confirm the diagnosis and clearly differentiate the disease from the other rickettsial diseases, e.g. epidemic and murine typhus and tsutsugamushi, but not from São Paulo and Tobia fever.

Another laboratory test is the inoculation intraperitoneally into a guinea-pig of 1 c.c. of blood taken from the patient during the febrile stage. In the severe types, there is a characteristic serotal swelling which may lead to gangrene, but in milder types this may be fleeting or absent, there is always some febrile reaction, and often the guinea-pig dies. Death does not follow other rickettsial infections.

**Prevention and treatment.**—Personal prophylaxis includes protection against tick bites by means of suitable clothing, for example, riding breeches and boots, women should wear similar clothes. When there has been any chance of tick infection, the lower limbs and body should be inspected carefully, and, if a tick is found, this should be removed by touching it with kerosene, so that it lets go and falls off, and not by squeezing it and pulling it off. The bite should be touched with silver nitrate or pure carbolic. The tick does not transmit immediately, and by this means infection may be obviated.

In the districts where the dog tick is the carrier, dogs should be washed in some insecticidal solution to prevent ticks adhering to them, whenever they have been out hunting, and the inadvisability of allowing them to come into the house at all is obvious. Great care should be exercised in removing ticks from dogs, as several persons have infected themselves by this means.

Vaccination has now been practised for a number of years, and it has been shown that some considerable degree of protection is given. However, it is obvious that there is room for improvement in the vaccine, for many inoculated persons have died as the result of infection with the virulent western strain. This is probably largely a matter of dosage, and with the improved technique of the last few years, a better vaccine should be forthcoming. Re-vaccination each season is advisable.

**Prognosis**—This has been discussed above. The main factor is apparently age. In children the death rate is low and in the elderly and middle-aged it is always high.

**Treatment** is symptomatic and does not differ from that of classical typhus. No known drugs are of any value.

#### ASSOCIATED DISEASES

Associated diseases include the tick-bite fever of southern Africa, the Transvaal, Natal, the Cape Province, and South and North Rhodesia, which is caused by a rickettsia apparently of this group. A number of ticks have been incriminated as vectors, e.g. *Amblyomma hebraeum*, *Rhipicephalus appendiculatus*, *Boophilus decoloratus* and *Haemaphysalis leachi*. In the last-named hereditary transmission for a number of generations has been proved. The reservoir of infection if such exists is presumably a wild rodent, and cattle and dogs act as conveyors of ticks to the vicinity of man. The infection is transmitted by the bite through an abrasion or via the conjunctiva in the latter case from contamination from a squashed tick. Clinically, it is usually a mild infection with a low death rate less than 1 per cent. There may be an initial lesion of the *tache noire* type, and there is usually a rash about the fifth day. The fever lasts about 14 days and ends by rapid lysis. In elderly patients femoral thrombosis appears to be a common complication, pulmonary thrombosis has also been reported. The Weil-Felix reaction shows a late development—after the 10th day—and is positive with OX2 and OX19 antigen in moderately high titre, the former being higher than the latter, usually (vide Gear 1940).

**Fievre boutonneuse** (t.s.) which occurs in the south of France and along the north African coast is caused by *Rickettsia conori* which is probably identical with *R. rickettsii*, it is transmitted from the dog which may act as a reservoir of infection by the dog tick *Rhipicephalus sanguineus*, it is a comparatively mild form of typhus with a low mortality (2 per cent), there is an initial lesion—the *tache noire*—which is similar to that of tsutsugamushi disease (vi), but antigenically the disease is more closely related to Rocky Mountain spotted fever. The serum agglutinates proteus OX19 and OX2.

In Sao Paulo typhus of Brazil the infection is transmitted by the tick *Amblyomma cajennense* possibly from a rodent reservoir. It is a severe disease with a high mortality (70 per cent) and similar both clinically and antigenically to Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

---

#### TSUTSUGAMUSHI

**Definition**—Tsutsugamushi or Japanese river fever, is a disease of the typhus group caused by *Rickettsia orientalis*, transmitted to man by the bite of certain mites, e.g. *Trombicula akamushi*, from field mice rats and other wild rodents, it is characterized by an initial lesion and adenitis and it runs a severe course, the serum of the patient agglutinates the proteus organism OXK.

**Geographical distribution**—The original disease, as the name suggests, was described as occurring along the rivers of north Japan and in Formosa, since then it has been shown to have a much wider distribution, how wide we probably do not know even to-day. The disease that has been described as 'scrub' or rural typhus in Malaya, the coastal fever of Queensland and

the pseudo-typhus of Sumatra are certainly the same disease. A similar disease is also reported from Indo-China and the Philippine Islands.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The virus — The causal organism is *Rickettsia orientalis* (*R. nipponica* or *R. tsutsugamushi*). This species is far more refractory to laboratory propagation than the other species of rickettsia. Infection is established only with considerable difficulty in guinea-pigs, after lowering their natural

resistance, but it can be transmitted to rabbits by intra-ocular injection, and to monkeys and apes by intradermal inoculation, with considerable regularity, in the latter it produces a primary ulcer, a febrile reaction, leucopenia, and agglutinins against OXK.

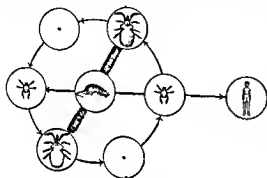


Figure 79 Transmission cycle in tsutsugamushi disease

*Lalaps australiensis*. The larval mites, which only take one blood meal, become infected from field rodents, (e.g. in Japan the vole *Microtus montebelli*), transmit the infection to their offspring, and the larval mites of the next generation pass it on to man by their bite (salivary gland infection). The small mite, measuring only 0.25 mm, is barely visible to the naked eye, and, being easily overlooked, remains *in situ* for several days. The infection from this small insect is a very superficial one and therefore causes a local lesion, it is suggested that the absence of a local lesion in certain cases indicates that sometimes a large vector, whose proboscis reaches the deeper layers of the skin, is responsible.

**Immunity** — Cross-protection tests with guinea-pigs, rabbits and monkeys show complete reciprocal cross-immunity between the Malayan and the Japanese type of tsutsugamushi, but not between this and other typhuses. The specific proteus is the OXK.

**Epidemiology** — The disease is an endemic one, depending on the presence of the reservoir of infection and the transmitting mites. It occurs almost exclusively amongst farmers and other field workers, surveyors, game wardens and hunters. In Malaya, practically all persons infected had been in the habit of walking through the long *alang* grass and were mostly workers on oil-palm estates, especially those who worked around the roots of the trees where rats forage for food.

The disease occurs mainly amongst adult men, on account of their occupational associations, but probably for no other reason, as it is found amongst children doing similar work, persons of all races are apparently equally susceptible but the initial lesion and the rash are more difficult to identify on the dark skin.

In Japan, the disease occurs most frequently between June and October, but, in Malaya, it occurs all the year round.

**Pathology**—This does not differ materially from that of other typhus fevers. In Malaya, Lewthwaite and Savor (1940) found characteristic changes in five out of seven brains examined microscopically. Macroscopically, in 12 post mortem examinations they found extensive subdural hæmorrhages in two cases, 11 enlarged spleens of which eight were diffused, enlarged lymphatic glands in 10, and petechial hæmorrhages in the heart in four, in the pleura in 11, and in the kidneys in five cases.

The blood shows a leucopenia or a normal leucocyte count, very rarely a slight leucocytosis. There is an actual or relative increase of lymphocytes, a slight increase of monocytes and granulopenia, and usually complete absence of eosinophils. The urine shows traces of albumin, and the usual characters associated with fever.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period in this infection varies over a wide range, from 5 to 21 days. The onset is usually sudden, all symptoms developing within 24 hours, but occasionally there is a prodromal period lasting a few days with a slight headache and malaise, the first definite symptoms are almost invariably fever, shivering and headache, often with vomiting and pains all over the body, there is photophobia and suffusion of the eyes and some injection of the conjunctivæ. Cough may be distressing, even without the development of lung complications. The symptoms are not at first severe, but develop steadily in intensity up to the end of the first week and longer, and continue to be severe during the rest of the febrile period. Prostration continues to increase and a state of intense toxæmia may develop.

The initial lesion that occurs at the site of the bite was at one time supposed to be a *sine qua non* for the diagnosis of this form of typhus but it is obviously very variable, both in its incidence and character, it may well be dependent on some factor other than the rickettsial infection, which varies in different localities as well as in different species of vector. In Japan and Sumatra, it is apparently very common, in Malaya, it is rarely found. The lesion is at first macular, then papular, and eventually a necrotic centre develops which separates and leaves a punched out ulcer. It is very probable that in a number of cases it does not go beyond the macular or papular stages, and heals before the main symptoms develop. That it is noticeably more common in fair-skinned individuals adds support to this suggestion.

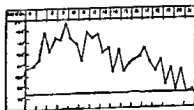


Figure 80 Temperature chart in Malayan VK typhus with an initial lesion (see plate X Figure 4)

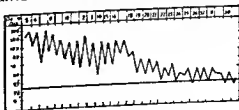
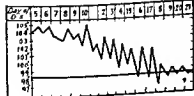


Figure 81 Temperature charts in tsutsugamushi disease (after Nagayo 1923)

The typical lesion at the time of onset of general symptoms is a depressed necrotic eschar about 5 mm in diameter with a well-defined areola of about the same breadth.

The fever usually rises rapidly to 101 or 102°F, and then after a further few days reaches its maximum of 104° or higher, and is maintained at this level with deep morning remissions of two or three degrees, until the end of the second week, when it falls by rapid lysis, after this there may be one or two final kicks in the temperature chart up to 100° or 101° during the next day or so, before the fever finally subsides. In the Japanese type the lysis may take several days and a low fever may continue for another week. As in other typhuses, the height of the fever is not a guide to the severity of the infection.

The pulse rate is usually increased with the temperature, though a few cases in which it remained slow have been reported, in convalescence there may be bradycardia.

The rash appears about the fourth or fifth day, but in some cases there is a subcuticular mottling from the second day. The rash proper is macular with barely perceptible papules in a few cases, it is dusky red, discrete and fades on pressure. It appears on the chest, abdomen and flanks, and spreads to the limbs and occasionally the face. It begins to fade after about three days, and leaves no stain. The rash is not however as constant or as marked as in classical typhus or Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

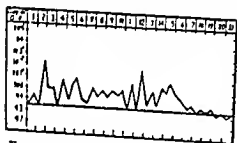


Figure 82. Temperature chart of a case of scrub typhus in Malaya (Angstein 1933).

The lymphatic glands, especially—but not only—those that drain the initial lesion are palpably enlarged in about half the cases and are often tender (see Pathology). The spleen is frequently palpable and tender.

Nervous symptoms are usually pronounced, and develop as the temperature rises, there are fine tremors of the lips and tongue, and twitchings of the face muscles, the patient is dull and apathetic during the day and often delirious at night, insomnia is common, he may become stuporous and eventually pass into coma. Another symptom is deafness, this is irregular but tends to develop throughout the disease.

**Complications**—The only frequent complications are bronchitis and broncho-pneumonia.

**Diagnosis**—The finding of the initial lesions or even of the remains of such lesions, is not essential for a diagnosis of this type of typhus though this constitutes the only really characteristic clinical feature, others are the enlarged glands, and the leucopenia with an increase in lymphocytes.

The Weil-Felix reaction gives agglutination in high titre against proteus OXK, and a negligible agglutination with OX19 and OX2. The lowest titre that can be accepted as diagnostic is 1 in 250, but, as a few cases of leptospirosis have shown even higher agglutinations against OXK proteus diagnosis on this titre should be confirmed by subsequent tests to demonstrate a rising and then a falling titre. Further confirmation may be obtained by guinea-pig inoculation, as in this disease the guinea pig is refractory and, even if infection is established, there is no scrotal swelling.

If mice are inoculated intraperitoneally with the supernatant fluid from a blood clot ground up in saline, they will die within 16 days and show abundant rickettsiae in their peritoneal membrane.

**Prevention and treatment**—The adoption of suitable clothing when in endemic areas and careful inspection of the body after removing the clothes are obvious measures for personal protection. Prophylactic inoculation is being developed for this as well as for other typhuses. In special circumstances, rodent extermination may be advisable where the specific reservoir has been identified, but such a measure should not be advocated lightly.

**Prognosis**—The infection is less severe in children and very fatal in old people. In Japan, the death rate is given as 30 to 60 per cent and in Malaya, as an average of 15 per cent.

### Q FEVER

The most recent recruits to the typhus fevers are the so called 'Q' fever, first reported from Brisbane (Derrick 1937), and the American 'Q' fever, which takes the form of a pneumonitis, these two diseases appear to be caused by antigenically-identical rickettsiae.

The Australian disease is confined almost entirely to abattoir and dairy workers, except that many laboratory infections have occurred.

The Queensland bandicoot *Isodon torosus*, provides a reservoir of infection and the infection is transmitted from bandicoot to bandicoot by the tick, *Haemaphysalis humerosa* in which this rickettsia is possibly a natural parasite. Another common ectoparasite of the bandicoot is *Ixodes holocyclus*, which is a very promiscuous insect and feeds also on cattle, dogs and man, this tick is a potential vector of rickettsiae and it seems very probable that it conveys the infection to young cattle (known to be susceptible), these in turn infect the common cattle tick, *Bovicophilus annulatus*, which broadcasts the infection. There are steps in this cycle of infection that still have to be confirmed especially with regard to the part played by *Ixodes holocyclus*, but it would appear to be as shown graphically below—

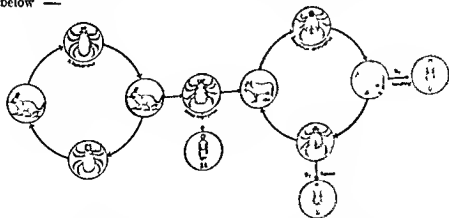


Figure 53 Probable transmission cycles in Australian 'Q' fever

The causal organism *Rickettsia burnetii* infects the endothelial cells lining the alimentary canals of the susceptible ticks. The rickettsiae



multiply in these cells, which eventually burst into the lumen of the alimentary canal, and the rickettsiæ are passed out with the fæces

Infection may take place by the handling of the cattle harbouring infected ticks, from the tick fæces, or from crushed ticks, but there is strong epidemiological evidence that the main route of invasion is *via* the lungs, from the infected dust of the abattoirs (*e.g.* infection has been reported in casual visitors to abattoirs)

The infection is transmissible to guinea-pigs, monkeya and other domestic and laboratory animals, but mice appear to be most susceptible and from their livers and spleens large numbers of rickettsiæ can be recovered, with which agglutination tests can be carried out

Immunity develops in an infected person or animal, and their serum will agglutinate the rickettsial emulsions. There is cross-immunity against the rickettsia that causes American 'Q' fever, but not against any other rickettsia, *e.g.* *R. rickettsii* or *R. prowazekii*. No agglutination occurs with any of the recognized proteus X strains

The clinical picture is that of a mild form of typhus with a low mortality, in the typical case the onset is sudden, the fever rises to as high as 104°F, with deep remissions, it lasts for about a week, and then falls by crisis. There is another form in which the fever runs a more chronic course, other symptoms are intense persistent headache, photophobia and conjunctival congestion. There is usually marked bradycardia. There is no rash

The American form of 'Q' fever has an interesting history in that it was an example of a disease in which the causal organism was discovered before the disease. A rickettsia, which was antigenically different from *Rickettsia rickettsii*, the causal organism of Rocky Mountain spotted fever, was isolated by Davis and Cox (1938) from the tick, *Dermacentor andersoni*, in Montana. This organism caused an outbreak of pneumonitis amongst the staff in the laboratory where it was being experimented with, and it was also isolated from persons, similarly with pneumonitis, who had acquired the infection naturally, possibly from ticks

In the case of the laboratory infections, many persons, of whom one died, who had had no direct contact with the cultures or infected animals, were infected, so that it seems probable that the infection was air-borne, possibly spread by dust

The causal organism of this American 'Q' fever was called *Rickettsia diaporica* but it has been shown to be antigenically identical with *R. burnetii* which has precedence

The position of this disease *vis à-vis* other typhuses is not yet clear. It does not appear to conform to any of the types included in the provisional classification given above, it exhibits few clinical or other features common to the previously recognized typhuses, and the causal organism, though a rickettsia, differs from all the other known rickettsiæ in its pathogenicity to animals and in its antigenic structure

### TYPHUS FEVER IN INDIA

Introductory — Attention was first drawn to this disease in India by Megaw (1917) who described a case of typhus-like fever that had occurred in the Kumaon hills, he insisted on the clinical similarity between the case he was reporting and typhus, and he strongly suspected that the transmitter was a tick (he was himself the patient). The importance of

this observation will be realized if we remember that at this date no form of tropical typhus had been recognized as such, and little was known about any of the so-called epidemic typhuses. Megaw later described other cases of typhus occurring in India, in which the patients had been bitten by unidentified ticks, in other cases though there was no direct history of a tick bite, the possibility could not be excluded.

Since this date, a number of cases of typhus and suspected typhus have been reported from various parts of India. The most important publication on the subject is that of Boyd (1935) who collected data from 110 cases that had occurred in the army, or in persons associated with the army, in the previous year. This is another demonstration of the value of such a body of individuals as the army in India as detectors of so-called apparent diseases amongst the indigenous population, the individuals, even when they are not British born are usually foreign to the locality and therefore have none of the natural immunity that the indigenous population enjoys. One important point in Boyd's paper was that he was unable in any single case to identify the vector, and in many there seemed to be a reasonable doubt if any of the previously recognized insect vectors were involved.

Some experimental work has been done in India, but the position has not been appreciably clarified by this, it has been mainly concerned with the agglutinating properties, against the proteus X strains, of the blood of various animals suspected as reservoirs of infection and with the isolation of rickettsial strains from these and from possible arthropod vectors. Competent research workers have been engaged in these investigations, and the so-called results that have been produced are due to the circumstances, mainly the extremely sporadic nature of the disease in this vast country, though the annual incidence probably runs into tens of thousands of even clinically apparent cases. A murine strain has been isolated from rats a number of times, and this has been transmitted by rat fleas, and a *tsutsugamushi* (XX) strain has been isolated from a patient. The monkeys of the Simla hills (*Simulans rhesus*) have been suspected as a reservoir of infection, they have been found to be infested with *Trombicula deliensis*, and their blood has been shown to agglutinate OXX at a dilution of 1 in 50 in 32 per cent of instances, and at a dilution of 1 in 25 in nearly all others, whereas the plains monkeys not so infested, give a much lower grade of agglutination.

The only possible view to take of the position is that, in a vast country like India, with almost every possible climate represented, it would be very surprising if there were only one type of typhus. A more reasonable hypothesis is that each of the major groups is almost certainly represented, our object should be to sort them out and attribute to each its special clinical picture, its vector, and its reservoir of infection, so that they can be recognized and appropriate measures of prevention can be adopted rather than to stress their similarity—beyond the fact that they are typhus fevers—and to claim for them homogeneity.

The fortunate accident of the close antigenic relationship of the different rickettsiae to certain specific strains of proteus will serve us for the time being as a means of separating the various typhus fevers, until this artificial method is replaced by the more specific methods of agglutination with rickettsial emulsions and of infection and cross-immunity experiments with laboratory animals, such methods are now being employed extensively in other countries, for example the USA and Malaya, and when the technique becomes more standardized, will undoubtedly be adopted to a

It is worthy of note that in no case of this series did the rash become papular or petechial nor with one exception did the macules extend beyond the trunk. The macules were found chiefly on the abdomen and thorax, the face and neck and extremities were unaffected.

The inconspicuous nature of the rash no doubt affords the explanation of its apparent rarity in Indian patients as it is presumably obscured by the pigmented skin.

The average duration of the rash calculated from figures given in thirteen cases was seven days. There was however difficulty in determining the exact time when it could be said to have disappeared.

Complications and sequelæ were by no means uncommon. Nine cases showed pulmonary symptoms, 5 developing bronchitis, 2 pneumonic symptoms and 2 pleurisy. Three cases developed acute mental symptoms and 2 others varying degrees of transient paralysis.

The average duration of fever (33 cases) was 14.2 days. During the pyrexial period the pulse rate was relatively slow resembling in this respect the pulse in fevers of the enteric group.

Recovery was by lysis and in some cases by crisis. In uncomplicated cases all other symptoms disappeared and convalescence was rapid as soon as the fever subsided.

The average stay in hospital (35 cases) was thirty one days.

**Recent observations**—A few notes are added on three recent reports on outbreaks of Indian typhus fevers.

Heilig and Naidu (1942) reported 14 cases in Indians in Mysore, from the city and surrounding country. All the cases were sporadic, they occurred between August and February, and there were no indications regarding the transmitting agent. The onset was sudden, but without rigor, with malaise, headache, photophobia, body aches and usually conjunctival suffusion. No splenic enlargement was noted. The temperature chart showed a moderately high remittent fever which lasted from 16 to 21 days and resolved by rapid lysis (see figure 84). The rash first appeared between the fifth and the tenth days, it started as a pinkish macular rash on the trunk and upper extremities, and it spread all over the

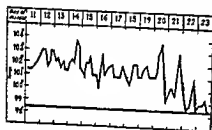


Figure 84 Temperature chart of a case of Indian endemic typhus

body, and to the lower part of the face in a few cases. The rash became maculo-papular, the pink colour changing to purplish, and then petechial, desquamation occurred during the fourth week, and finally, it turned to brown and left a stain that persisted for months. There was a distinct leucocytosis in most cases.

The diagnosis depended on the demonstration of rickettsiæ in the tunica vaginalis of guinea pigs injected with the blood of some of the cases but in only one case was a Neill Mooser reaction produced in the injected guinea-pig.

The Weil Felix reaction was positive with the OX2 antigen in most of the cases, though there was some co agglutination with the other two antigens.

#### PLATE IX

Fig 1—Rash in epidemic typhus (Army Medical Museum)

Fig 2—Rash in Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever (Army Medical Museum)

Fig 3—Primary ulcer in a case of Malayan scrub (XX) typhus (after Fletcher and Field 1929)

PLATE IX (Typhus)

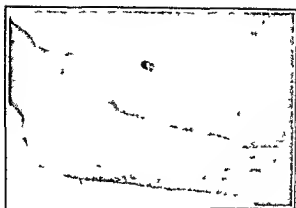


FIG 1

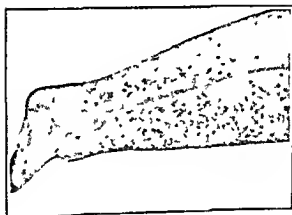


FIG 2



FIG 3

# PLATE X



Fig. 1.—A case of Indian typhus (proteus agglutinations negative): 29th day of disease.

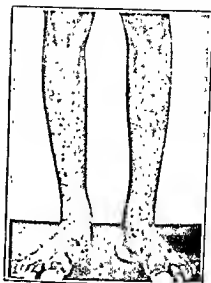


Fig. 2.—Same as figure 1.

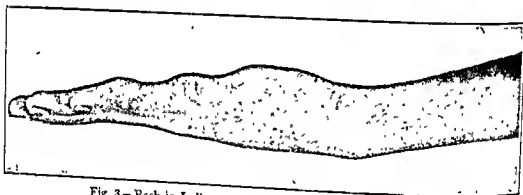


Fig. 3.—Rash in Indian typhus (after Heilig and Naidu, 1941).

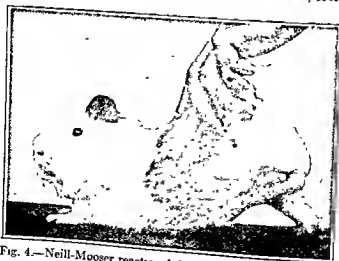


Fig. 4.—Neill-Mooser reaction (after Heilig and Naidu, 1941)

A second report was from a military hospital (personal communication from Lieut-Colonel T A A Hunter, R A M C). The patients were eleven British soldiers who had been in camp near Bombay during the month of November, the symptoms developed in one case 17 days after arrival at the camp, and in another 10 days after leaving it so that if infection took place in the camp—an almost inevitable conclusion—the incubation period was between 10 and 17 days but there was no history of tick bite in any case. Eight cases occurred in one battalion.

The onset and the course of the disease was very similar to that of the Mysore cases, but the symptoms were exceptionally mild, the fever was also of the same nature and lasted from 13 to 16 days. The rash was also a marked feature in this series but developed within 24 hours of the onset of symptoms in every case and in two was the first evidence of the disease, it developed in the lower extremities first and spread rapidly all over the body except the face. This early development of the rash constituted the only striking difference between the two series.

The Weil-Felix was positive with the OX2 antigen in six cases but in no case was a positive Neill-Moser reaction produced in injected guinea-pigs.

These two series have a number of features common with Boyd's X2 group (see table V), but the difference in the time of appearance of the rash is interesting. There is no clue in either case to the transmission problem.

A third outbreak occurred in Calcutta in the autumn of 1942. The patients were again British soldiers. The symptoms were more severe than is usual in this country, and in sixteen definite cases two deaths occurred. The rash was well developed in nearly all of them. The temperature charts were very like the classical typhus chart, three are shown in figure 85. The majority of these cases showed a significant agglutination reaction with the OXK strain of proteus, but in one case with OX2.

Eight of the patients were from one regiment and were living in a large building in a relatively densely populated part of Calcutta. No clue could be obtained as to the nature of the vector, or to the source of infection, none of the patients was louse-infected.

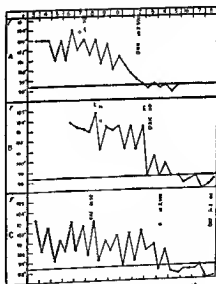


Figure 85. Temperature charts in three Calcutta cases of typhus.

**Conclusion**—The position in India is that we know that the disease exists and that it is widespread. We must endeavour to find out the extent of its incidence and whether or not it can be considered a serious public-health problem, and whether it is increasing. We have the example of the USA where during the last decade endemic typhus has apparently

increased ten-fold and Rocky Mountain fever has spread from the western states to the east coast. We must use the Weil-Felix test to help us to identify the disease but we should be careful not to accept the indications of the test without clinical support or the confirmation of animal experiments. The Weil-Felix test is after all a non-specific test and it is possible that there are certain non-rickettsial diseases caused by organisms with which one or other of the known proteus X strains is antigenically related.

## REFERENCES

- ANDERSON J F and GOLDBERGER J (1912) Relation of so called Brill's Disease to Typhus Fever *Pub Health Rep* 27, 149
- ANIGSTEIN L (1933) Researches on Tropical Typhus *Studies Inst Med Res F M S* No 22 Kyle Palmer and Co Ltd Kuala Lumpur
- BOYD J S K (1935) Fevers of the Typhus Group in India *J Roy Army Med Corps* 66, 289-361
- BRILL N E (1898) A Study of Seventeen Cases of a Disease Clinically Resembling Typhoid Fever but without the Widal Reaction *New York Med J* 67 48 and 77
- BURNET F M and FREEMAN M (1937) Experimental Studies on the Virus of 'Q' Fever *Med J Australia* 11 299
- BYAM W (1923) Trench Fever *Byam and Archibald's Practice of Medicine in the Tropics* 3, 2114 Henry Frowde and Hodder and Stoughton London
- DAVIS G E and COX H R (1938) A Filter passing Infectious Agent isolated from Ticks Isolation from *Dermacentor andersoni*: Reactions in Animals and Filtration Experiments *Pub Health Rep* 53 2259
- DENRICK E H (1937) Q Fever a New Fever Entity Clinical Features Diagnosis and Laboratory Investigation *Med J Australia* 11 281
- DURAND P and SPARROW H (1940) Inoculation Pulmonaire des Virus Typhiques et Bactériennes *Compt Rend Acad Sci* 210 420 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull* 37, 572)
- DYER R E (1941) The Charles Franklin Craig Lecture for 1940 The Control of Typhus Fever *Amer J Trop Med* 21 163
- DYER R E et al (1931) Experimental Transmission of Endemic Typhus Fever of United States by Rat Flea (*Xenopsylla cheopis*) *Pub Health Rep* 48, 2415
- FLETCHER W and FIELD J W (1927) The Tsutsugamushi Disease in the Federated Malay States *Bull Inst Med Res F M S* No 1 John Bale Sons and Danielsson Ltd London
- FLETCHER W and LESSLAR J E (1925) Tropical Typhus in the Federated Malay States *Bull Inst Med Res F M S* No 2 John Bale Sons and Danielsson Ltd London
- GEAR, J (1940) Vaccination Against Typhus Fever *South African Med J*, 14 476
- GERHARD W W (1937) On the Typhus Fever which occurred at Philadelphia in the Spring and Summer of 1836 *Amer J Med Sci* 19 289
- HEILIG R and NAIDU V R (1941) Endemic Typhus in Mysore *Indian Med Gaz* 76 705
- Idem (1942) Further Experiences on Endemic Typhus in Mysore *Indian Med Gaz* 77, 338

- LEWTHWAITE R., and SAVOON S R (1940) Rickettsial Diseases of Malaya Identity of Tsutsugamushi and Rural Typhus *Lancet* i 255 and 305
- MAXCY H F (1926) Epidemiological Study of Endemic Typhus (Brill's Disease) in South Eastern United States *Pub Health Rep* 41, 2967
- MEGAW J W D. (1917) A Case of Fever Resembling Brill's Disease *Indian Med Gaz.* 52, 15
- NAGATO M (1923) .. The Tsutsugamushi Disease or Japanese River Fever *Byam and Archibald's Practice of Medicine in the Tropics* 3 2131 Henry Frowde and Hodder and Stoughton London
- NAFIER L E (1919) The Weil Felix Reaction in a Mild Epidemic of Typhus *Lancet* ii 863
- NICOLLE C., and CONSEN, F (1911) Etologie du Typhus Exanthematique *Ann Inst Pasteur* 25 109
- PINKERTON H (1914) *Clinical Tropical Medicine* Edited by Z T Bercovitz Paul B Hoeber, New York
- RICKETTS H T (1906) The Study of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever (Tick Fever?) by Means of Animal Inoculations *J Amer Med Assoc* 47, 33
- DA ROCHA LIMA H (1916) Beobachtungen bei Flecktyphus-Jausen *Arch Schiffs u. Trop Hyg* 20, 17
- SELLARDS A W (1923) The Cultivation of a Rickettsia-like Micro-organism from Tsutsu-Gamushi Disease *Amer J Trop Med.* 3, 529
- STILLE A. (1839) Table of Comparison between Typhus and Typhoid Fevers Philadelphia
- TOPPING N H (1943) Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever *Med Clin. A Amer Mov*
- WEIGL, R (1924) Active Typhus Immunity *Med Klin.* 20, 1046
- WEIL, E., and FELIX A (1916) Zur serologischen Diagnose des Fleckfiebers *Wien Klin Woch* 29, 33 and 974
- WILDER, R M (1911) The Problem of Transmission in Typhus Fever *J Inf Dis.* 9, 9
- WILSON W J (1909) On Heterologous Agglutinations more particularly those present in the blood serum of Cerebro-spinal Fever and Typhus Fever Cases *J Hyg* 9, 316
- WOLBACH S B (1919) Studies on Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever *J Med Res.* 41, 1
- Idem* (1923) Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever *Byam and Archibald's Practice of Medicine in the Tropics* 3, 2092 Henry Frowde and Hodder and Stoughton London
- Idem* (1925) The Rickettsiae and their Relationship to Disease *J Amer Med Assoc.* 84, 723
- ZINSSER H (1934) Varieties of Typhus Virus and Epidemiology of American Form of European Typhus Fever (Brill's Disease) *Amer J Hyg.* 20 513
- ZINSSER H, WEIL H and FICK-PATRICK F (1937) Agar Slant Tissue Cultures of Typhus Rickettsiae (both Types) *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 37 604

Recent Work in India—Two important observations have been made since the above was written. A rickettsial strain from Mysore has been shown to be identical with the Rocky Mountain spotted fever strain and a sharp outbreak of typhus of the tsutsugamushi type has occurred amongst troops mostly Chinese in the Assam Burma border country and amongst troops exercising in Ceylon



# OROYA FEVER, OR BARTONELLOSIS

DEFINITION	PAGE
HISTORICAL	288
Geographical distribution	288
Geographical distributions	289
Other epidemiological features	289
ÆTIOLOGY	289
The causal organism	289
Transmission	289
Sources of infection	289
PATHOLOGY	290
General—Local—Blood picture	290
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	290
Discussion	290
The febrile attack	290
Incubation period—Onset	291
The mild and asymptomatic types	291
The dermal lesions, or verruga peruana	291
Miliary—Nodular	291
DIAGNOSIS	292
TREATMENT	292
PREVENTION	292
PROGNOSIS	292

**Definition**—Oroya fever, or Carrion's disease, is a febrile disease with a very limited geographical distribution, occurring in certain valleys on the western slopes of the Andes in South America. It is caused by a bacillus-like micro-organism, *Bartonella bacilliformis*, which is probably transmitted from man to man by biting insects. It is variable in its severity, but may develop an acute and serious form in which there is extreme anæmia, a very common secondary manifestation is the granulomatous eruption previously known as verruga peruana.

**Historical**—It is believed that the fatal disease which wrought havoc in Pizarro's army in the 16th century was Oroya fever.

Medical attention was first drawn to it in 1870 when during the building of the railway to Oroya 7,000 deaths occurred amongst imported labour. It was from this that the disease received its name which is a misnomer as it does not actually occur in Oroya.

In 1883 Carrion a medical student inoculated himself from a verruga nodule and developed a fatal attack of Oroya fever. From this time local physicians have assumed that the fever and the subsequent eruption were manifestations of the same disease. The causal organism was identified by Barton in 1909 and his observations were confirmed by Strong and others in 1915.

The ætiological identity of the two conditions was again questioned by the Harvard Commission in 1913 but Noguchis cultural work re-established the claim for their identity and later Mayer Borchardt and Kikuth (1927) produced both the local lesions and the severe febrile disease with anæmia the latter after splenectomy, in monkeys by inoculation of material taken from a case of verruga peruana that arrived in Hamburg. These observations were confirmed by the Harvard Commission of 1937 in this instance cultures were used for producing infections in monkeys.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—It has a limited distribution in South America between 2°N and 13°S. It occurs mainly in Peru but recently indigenous cases have been reported from Bolivia, Ecuador and now Colombia. The area in Colombia is in the basin of the Guatara river, a fertile area with 100 000 inhabitants, the death rate from this disease in the first eight months of 1938 amounted to 1,800 persons.

**Other epidemiological features**—The disease is confined to certain valleys in the Andes, between 1,000 and 12 000 feet above sea level, in which sometimes every individual in the whole community is, or has been, infected. New comers to these valleys almost invariably become infected and suffer the acute febrile attack, and frequently die.

The disease appears after the rainy season when insect life is most abundant and malaria is rife.

Persons of all ages are affected but the disease is much milder in children, and is probably often unrecognized.

### ETIOLOGY

**The causal organism**—*Bartonella bacilliformis* has two forms, a small bacillus like form 1  $\mu$  to 2  $\mu$  in length which may show branching and an ovoid form about 1  $\mu$  in mean diameter. It stains well with Romanowsky stains, taking a blue colour (see plate B F).

It can be grown in Vervoort's medium used for the cultivation of leptospira, but does not grow easily. It is suggested that the different strains of *Bartonella* vary in their ability to grow in culture medium.

They are found in the red cells in the peripheral blood in an acute case, and in the endothelial cells of the capillaries in post mortem or biopsy tissue.

**Transmission**—The mode of transmission is not yet known, but many suggestions, some supported by experimental data, have been made. Sand-flies appear to be the most likely vectors. The disease has been produced in monkeys by the injection of crushed wild sand flies, and sand flies have been infected by feeding on a patient but the complete human experiment has not yet been carried through. *Phlebotomus noguchi* and *P. verrucarum* occur in the endemic areas and are under the gravest suspicion as vectors. Other *Bartonella* species are transmitted by insects e.g. *Bartonella canis* and *muris*, by the dog flea and the rat-louse, respectively.

**Sources of infection**—Man is probably the main source of infection. As bartonellæ are occasionally found in the peripheral blood in the absence of symptoms, or even some time after symptoms have subsided, it does not seem necessary to suggest an animal reservoir. However, rats and certain other wild animals are susceptible to infection and may conceivably act as reservoirs of infection, though none has so far been incriminated.

## PATHOLOGY

The general reaction produced is the result of bartonella invasion of the arteriolar endothelium and reticulo-endothelial cells of the lymphatic tissues, and of the blood destruction, much red cell debris has to be disposed of, and there is very great anæmia

Lymphatic glands are often enlarged, and the spleen usually, and there is a deposition of dark-yellow pigment in most of the organs, which gives the reactions of melanin. There are often petechial hæmorrhages in the mucous membranes and in some of the viscera

The endothelial cells of the arterioles and lymphatic channels are invaded by the bartonellæ, and the lumens of the channels are often blocked, so that necrosis or œdema may occur. Necrotic areas are often seen in the spleen, and also in the liver, in the central part of the lobules

The bone marrow shows a marked hyperplasia, both of the erythroblastic and the leucoblastic elements

In the local lesions, there is blocking and dilatation of the vessels with the production of a hæmangiomatous condition. There is proliferation of the endothelial cells lining these blood sinuses, in these cells, bartonellæ may be found, but they are not numerous. There is much new blood-vessel formation. The lymph channels are also obstructed, and the blocked vessels are surrounded by an area of infiltration, in which lymphocytes, plasma cells, and fibroblasts take part

**Blood picture**—The red cell count may be reduced to less than a million. As is usual in these hæmolytic anæmias, the red cells are on the large side, with the appearance of reticulocytes, the picture will be definitely a pseudo-macrocytic one, and immature cells, such as normoblasts and erythroblasts, will appear in the blood

The leucocytes will be increased, often up to 20,000 per cmm, the proportions of the various types being maintained at about the normal

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Discussion**—The view that Oroya fever and verruga peruana are manifestations of the same infection is now generally accepted. There is considerable parallelism between this disease and kala-azar, a condition in which an acute visceral disease may be followed by a generalized dermal eruption

In Oroya fever, if the patient dies from the acute febrile disease, he naturally does not suffer from the dermal lesions, if he has a very severe febrile attack but recovers, his reactions to the infection may be stimulated sufficiently to knock out the infection altogether, in which case he will not suffer from the secondary dermal lesions, on the other hand, if he has a less severe infection, his resistance will not be stimulated to such an extent, the bartonellæ which are taken up by the reticulo-endothelial cells in the skin and/or subcutaneous tissue will later multiply, and these will give rise to secondary lesions

The initial attack may thus be (a) severe and fatal, (b) moderately severe, (c) mild or (d) asymptomatic. The secondary lesions will follow in (b), (c) and (d), probably in an ascending order of frequency.

Recently, Tyzzer and Weinman (1939) have divided bartonellæ into two genera, *Bartonella* and *Hamobartonella*, both are found in the blood,

but the former produces nodular lesions in animals whereas the latter remains in the blood and produces anaemia but not skin lesions

If this applies in the case of bartonella infection of man, another explanation for the variations in symptomatology can be given namely, that each infection may vary in the genera represented and that one or more strains of each genus are usually present

**The febrile attack** —The incubation period is usually considered to be about three weeks

There is no dramatic onset but the symptoms develop rapidly with malaise, irregular intermittent fever usually rising to between 100° and 102°F, vomiting hiccup and progressive anaemia. There is headache, pains in the joints and bones and great tenderness of the bones, particularly those in which there is active marrow, the sternum, ribs etc., this suggests some association with the observed hyperplasia of the marrow

Most of the other symptoms are the result of the rapidly developing anaemia and need not be detailed here. Haemorrhages into the skin and from mucous membranes and diarrhoea are common terminal symptoms

The course of the disease is very rapid and profound anaemia, with red cells as low as 1,000 000 per cmm, may be produced within a week or even less, death usually results in two or three weeks but may be postponed for several weeks. On the other hand after a week or so the temperature may subside completely the acute symptoms disappear, rapid regeneration of blood may take place, and the patient may recover completely, in such cases the verruga eruptions may or may not follow within a few weeks

**The mild and asymptomatic types** —In the milder type there are malaise, headaches, pains in the bones and joints possibly gastro-intestinal disturbances, and an intermittent fever. The fever usually subsides a few days before the appearance of the eruptions, which may be postponed as long as sixty days

The disease always runs a milder course in children and in them it may be symptomless, it is probably this fact that accounts for the comparative immunity of the local population in endemic areas

Persons with bartonellæ in their peripheral blood may show no symptoms whatsoever. These persons may later develop verruga lesions

**The dermal lesions or verruga peruana** —There are two types of lesion, (i) the military granulo angiomatous eruption, and (ii) subcutaneous nodule

The 'military' lesions start as small sessile papules usually on the sites of petechial spots and increase in size up to that of a split pea, becoming almost pedunculated in some cases, they appear in crops so that there will be lesions of all sizes present at one time. In colour, the lesions vary from a dull pink up to a bright red the latter in a few cases in which development has been exceptionally rapid. In consistency, they are at first soft, but in time they become softer, and when they are retrogressing they become wrinkled. They occur in almost any part of the skin surface, but they are particularly prevalent on the extensor surfaces of the arms and legs, and on the face and neck, less frequently on the trunk and genitals, and very seldom on the palms and soles. They may be scanty, or very numerous so that in places they may coalesce

When they are developing they cause a pricking sensation. They are not actively painful, but are easily damaged and are inclined to bleed so that they will often have black scales of dried blood over them. When they shrink they may become very irritating

The eruption may last for four or even six months, and a few cases have been reported in which they lasted as long as two years. When they disappear they leave no mark.

The nodular lesions have very much the same consistency as the papules but usually they are softer. They may grow to the size of a pigeon's egg. The commonest sites are on the extensor surfaces of the extremities. The skin is stretched over the nodule, this may be normal in colour, but, if taut, it usually has a pinkish colour.

When this nodule is on or near the knee, or on some other place where it is likely to be damaged, it may ulcerate and form what is known as a 'mular' lesion (apparently for the rather naive reason that mules suffer from a similar lesion), the mular lesion is a nodule with a fungating cap, like the crater of a volcano, and it is very liable to secondary hæmorrhage.

**Diagnosis**—This presents few difficulties even from a clinical point of view, and is easily confirmed by finding the bartonella infection in the red cells in the febrile stage or in the reticulo endothelial cells of the dermal lesions. In the latter parasites are always present, but are not abundant. Escomé (1938) advocates cultural methods as being more certain.

**Treatment**—There is no specific treatment that has any established reputation. An arsenic-antimony preparation, Bayer 386B, is apparently effective in the treatment of rats infected with bartonella, in these animals, it is given in doses of 0.2 mg. per kilo. It is said to have been used with success in 14 cases of the disease in man.

Treatment in the past has mainly been aimed at maintaining the patient's strength, and providing all the necessary materials for blood regeneration. From the nature of the blood picture and from the fact that there is no actual loss of hæmoglobin outside the body, liver extract will obviously be more valuable than iron for this purpose.

**Prevention**—In the absence of exact knowledge of the ætiology, no general preventive measures have been adopted in the endemic areas. From a personal point of view, the first important measure of prevention is to avoid spending a night in a known endemic area. If this is not possible then, since the disease is almost certainly transmitted by a biting insect, protection at night by a sand fly net must be provided.

**Prognosis**—Inhabitants of infected villages seem to acquire an immunity, but probably many die in childhood from the infection.

In foreign visitors to such a village infection appears to be almost certain and the death rate amongst those infected is of the order of 50 per cent.

## REFERENCES

- BARTON A. L. (1909)  
 ESCOMÉ E. (1938)
- MAYER M. BOSCHAERT W. and KIKUTH W. (1927)
- STRONG R. P. et al. (1915)
- TYZZER E. E. and WEINMAN D. (1939)
- Cron Med Lima* 28, 7
- La Maladie de Carrion ou Verruga du Pérou les Dernières Acquisitions *Bull Soc Path Exot* 31, 536
- Die durch Milzextirpation auslosbare infektiöse Rattenanämie *Behefte Arch Schiffs- u Trop-Hyg*, 31, 291
- Rep First Expedition, South America 1913* Harvard University Press Cambridge Mass.
- Hæmobartanella* N. G. (*Bartonella* Olim. Pro Parte) H. Microti N. Sp. of the Field Vole *Microtus pennsylvanicus* *Amer J Hyg* 30, 141

# YELLOW FEVER

	PAGE
DEFINITION	294
INTRODUCTION	294
<i>India's problematical safeguards</i>	295
HISTORICAL	295
EPIDEMIOLOGY	296
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	296
<i>Epidemic features</i>	297
<i>Season and altitude—Sex age and race</i>	297
ÆTIOLOGY	298
<i>Historical</i>	298
<i>The virus</i>	298
<i>Tropism—Susceptible animals</i>	298
<i>Transmission</i>	299
<i>Factors determining incidence</i>	299
<i>Immunity</i>	299
<i>Mouse-protection test</i>	299
PATHOLOGY	299
<i>Morbid anatomy</i>	300
<i>Blood picture and blood chemistry</i>	301
<i>Urine</i>	301
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	301
<i>Clinical types</i>	301
<i>Incubation period—Onset—Course of the disease—Termination—</i>	301
<i>Fever—Pulse—Skin—Other symptoms</i>	302
DIAGNOSIS	302
A <i>Clinical diagnosis</i>	303
B <i>Laboratory diagnosis</i>	303
<i>Tests for the presence of yellow fever virus—Tests for the presence of</i> <i>immune bodies</i>	303
C <i>Post mortem diagnosis</i>	304
<i>Viscerotomy—Technique</i>	304
<i>Differential diagnosis</i>	304
<i>Precautions</i>	

	PAGE
PREVENTION	
<i>Aedes control</i>	305
<i>Prophylactic inoculation</i>	305
History of yellow fever vaccination	305
<i>Special measures in India</i>	306
TREATMENT	307
PROGNOSIS	308

**Definition** —Yellow fever is an acute specific fever of varying severity, but characteristically one of great intensity and associated with toxic jaundice and albuminuria it has a limited tropical distribution, and is caused by a filtrable virus which in the urban, either epidemic or endemic, form of the disease is transmitted from man to man by *aedes* mosquitoes, and in its jungle form is transmitted from its jungle reservoir to man by other means

**Introduction** —The importance of yellow fever to India and countries further east lies in the fact that though the disease has up to the present never appeared in these countries there seems to be no explainable reason why it should not invade them at some near or distant future date. The history of this disease shows that it is capable of geographical extension, and, in the American continent from time to time it has invaded countries which were previously free from it. In India, the stage is apparently set for an explosive epidemic should the virus ever be let loose here. It is therefore essential that we in this country should take every precaution to prevent this catastrophe and if this invasion ever occurs, we should be ready to deal promptly with any isolated case that appears in order that we may stamp out the disease before it gets a firm footing.

In this matter, India has not only herself to consider but she has a special mission in being in the front line in the defence of the rest of Asia, she has not only her hundreds of millions of inhabitants to protect, but the thousand million or so in China and the Far East for, if yellow fever were to gain an effective hold in this country, it is almost inevitable that it would sweep through the rest of tropical Asia and in these sanitariously backward countries there would be little hope of controlling it until it had run its course and decimated the populations of this and other eastern tropical countries.

Whilst yellow fever is a disease that has from time to time extended its domain, it is, on the other hand one that has been very effectively controlled in many countries where it was firmly established and had become a serious menace to the community. Yellow fever has always been held up as an example of how, medical research having shown the way, sanitary organization has put into effect measures that have been brilliantly successful, these measures were so successful that at one time the hope was cherished that eventually man might completely triumph over this disease and finally banish it from the world. However recent investigations have brought to light facts which show that this hope is vain. The discovery of the 'jungle' form of yellow fever, the virus of which, if not identical with that of the classical urban yellow fever, is capable of urbanization has shown that there is a reservoir of yellow fever which may be limitless and over which man may never be able to exercise effective control.

Figure 86 shows graphically the data upon which these hopes were founded and then shattered.

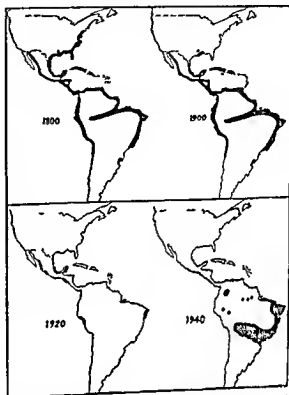
India's problematical safeguards—It was at one time suggested that there are probably minor differences in the *aedes* mosquitoes of this country, which make them incapable of transmitting yellow fever this has been shown not to be the case, for *aedes* collected in India have been used in transmission experiments and have been shown to be capable of transmitting the infection

Figure 86 demonstrating three phases in the history of yellow fever in the American continent

Phase 1.—Between 1800 and 1900 the disease almost entirely disappeared from the United States largely as a result of general sanitary improvement

Phase 2.—The complete disappearance from the United States and the reduction in Central and South America between 1900 and 1920 was due to the application of the knowledge that the mosquito *Aedes aegypti* was the main transmitter and to measures directed against this insect

Phase 3.—The apparent extension of the disease between 1920 and 1940 is really an extension of our knowledge of the disease with the discovery of jungle yellow fever



A second hope namely that dengue or some other similar widespread infection might have produced immunity to yellow fever in our populations has also been abandoned after the discovery that of the many hundreds of samples of blood collected in various parts of India none showed any evidence of immune bodies

We are thus thrown back on the vague hope that as yellow fever has not appeared hitherto there must be an unknown factor some special local condition which prevents its gaining a footing

It is not necessary to introduce this 'unknown factor' for the explanation may be that the virus has never arrived in this country either in an infected individual or in a transmitting mosquito but because this has not happened in the past there is unfortunately no guarantee that it will not happen now or at some future date This danger is vastly increased by the enhanced speed of transport generally, and particularly by the increase in aerial communications between the yellow fever areas and the rest of the world The only safeguard then is increased watchfulness to prevent either an infectious patient or an infected mosquito from arriving in this country the measures that are in operation to effect this will be described below

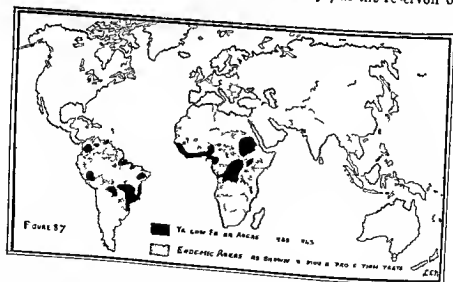
**Historical**—There is evidence that the disease has existed on the American continent from the time of Columbus, a serious epidemic is reported as early as 1493 in San Domingo There are many early references to a disease that was undoubtedly yellow fever, from this date onwards, and in the eighteenth century it was so well known that quarantine regulations were introduced in connection with it It was endemic over a much wider area in earlier days, but it had disappeared from many old endemic areas, even before the exact mode of transmission was known,



presumably as a result of the introduction of general sanitary measures. In America, epidemics were reported as far north as New York and Philadelphia, but during the last fifty years only one epidemic of any importance the epidemic in New Orleans in 1905, has occurred in the United States. In its eastern sphere it was at one time apparently rife in Spain, including Gibraltar in the Canary Islands, and all along the west African coast. The disease played an important part in naval and military history in the sixteenth century Drake's fleet was badly infected after calling at West Coast and Spanish ports, and in 1800 a Napoleonic army that landed in the West Indies was almost completely destroyed by yellow fever.

In 1881 Carlos Finlay, a Cuban of Anglo French parentage, suggested that the disease might be transmitted from man to man by mosquitoes, and carried out experiments to demonstrate this. However, this means of transmission was not generally accepted until Ross' work on malaria having led to a reconsideration of Finlay's theory, the historical experiments were carried out in 1900 by the American yellow-fever commission consisting of Walter Reed, James Carroll, Jesse Lazear, and Aristides Agramonte. They demonstrated the *Aedes* transmission, and further showed that yellow fever was not transmitted by contact or other means. Lazear died of yellow fever, and Carroll developed yellow fever after being bitten by an infected mosquito in an experiment but recovered. As a result of these observations control measures were instituted against *Aedes* mosquitoes in Central and South America, and by 1920 the incidence of the disease had been reduced almost to vanishing point (vide figure 86).

*Aedes aegypti* was first the only mosquito incriminated, later, other *Aedes* were shown to be potential transmitters, then followed the discovery of 'jungle' yellow fever, with its tremendous implications. Jungle mosquitoes, notably *Haemagogus capricornis*, were incriminated as transmitters, with some jungle animal possibly monkeys, as the reservoir of the virus.



#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Geographical distribution—Yellow fever is now confined almost entirely to the tropics. Most of the endemic areas are on the Atlantic sea-board, though in South and Central America some parts of the Pacific coast are included and in Africa the endemic areas extend from the west coast for some thousands of miles inland.

In the Americas, only one outbreak of urban yellow fever has occurred since 1934 and that started as a jungle epidemic, but there are jungle foci of infection in Brazil, Colombia, Venezuela, Peru and Bolivia. No case has been reported in Mexico or Central America since 1924, and recent surveys confirm the absence of the disease north of Panama (Kumm *et al.* 1943).

In Africa, it occurs on the west coast from latitude 15°N to 10°S, from Senegal down to Angola and inland as far east as the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, Uganda, and Tanganyika and even into Abyssinia. An epidemic in the Nuba Mountains in the Sudan, which has been recognized as a 'silent area' for some years, has recently occurred (*vide infra*).

There are no endemic areas on the east coast of Africa, nor anywhere in Asia.

**Epidemic features**—From an epidemiological point of view, there are two forms of the disease, the urban and the jungle. The urban form is usually endemic, but it may be epidemic especially when new territory is invaded. The jungle form is usually sporadic, but may also become epidemic.

It is suggested that, in its original form, yellow fever was a disease of some jungle animal, that it was transmitted to man sporadically by jungle mosquitoes, and that it was then conveyed by man to the towns where, transmitted by house mosquitoes it becomes at first epidemic and then endemic.

The epidemiology of the disease has recently been studied in two ways, by viscerotome surveys, and by the mouse-protection test (see p. 299).

The viscerotome is an instrument which has been designed for removing pieces of liver without a full post-mortem examination, in all cases of death through an uncertain cause, a specimen is taken and examined microscopically (*vide infra*). The mouse-protection test is a test to show the presence of protective antibodies in the blood, and a positive result indicates that the patient has at some time suffered from yellow fever. These two methods have shown the existence of the disease in many parts of South America and Africa where its presence was hitherto not suspected, and the findings have usually been confirmed later by the discovery of clinical cases. In Africa, in certain areas in the Sudan for example, many 'protected' individuals have been discovered, though the disease has never been reported. These have been called 'silent' areas and, recently, in one such area in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, i.e. in the Nuba Mountains near Malakal, the 'silence' has been broken by an explosive epidemic. In known endemic areas where the disease has not appeared in epidemic form for many years, children born after the last epidemic have not shown positive protection tests, whereas older children in the same area have provided a large percentage of positives and, finally, in Asia and places distant from the yellow-fever areas, no evidence of antibodies has been found in the blood of the inhabitants.

**Season and altitude**—High temperatures, 75°F and above, and high humidity favour the spread of the disease. It is therefore confined mainly to coastal areas in the true tropics, and its highest peak of incidence is in the hot damp months of the year. It seldom occurs much above sea level, though it has been reported from Sao Paulo (2500 feet).

Both sexes are equally susceptible, but the disease appears to occur more frequently in men, this applies in particular to the 'jungle' form of the disease which is almost entirely confined to forest workers. Persons of all ages are attacked, but in children the disease takes a milder form, and in old people and in alcoholics it is particularly fatal. All races seem equally susceptible but the disease is usually more severe in foreigners in endemic areas than in the indigenous inhabitants (*vide supra*).

### ÆTIOLOGY

**Historical**—Many organisms have been isolated from patients and presented as the cause of yellow fever, but the classical mistake of Noguchi is the only one worth recording as Professor Noguchi was a brilliant worker who was led down the wrong path by a clinical mistake—not his own, for he was not a doctor. He isolated a leptospira from cases presented to him as yellow fever, and named it *Leptospira icteroides*. It was in fact *Leptospira ictero-hæmorrhagiae*, the causal organism of Weil's disease, which was the disease that these patients were really suffering from. Noguchi died of yellow fever whilst carrying out experiments in West Africa where dealing now with true yellow fever he had entirely failed to confirm his earlier findings—a tragic sequel to perhaps the first mistake of a brilliant investigator.

Meanwhile Adrian Stokes (who later died of yellow fever) Bauer, and Hudson infected Indian monkeys with yellow fever by means of blood filtrates of patients and thus proved that the disease was caused by a filtrable virus. They further demonstrated that very small quantities of the serum of yellow fever convalescents protected a monkey.

**The virus**—This is a filtrable virus, of the size of about 18 to 27 micro-microns ( $\mu\mu$ ) it is killed at 60° to 65°C, but survives freezing in vacuo for many years. It also withstands the action of some strong disinfectants, such as phenol 1 in 150 at 30°C, but is inactivated by the photodynamic action of methylene blue—1 in 100,000. Like other filtrable viruses, it will not multiply except on living tissues.

**Tropism**—The virus may be, (i) viscerotropic (or pantropic)—as in the patient with yellow fever or in animals inoculated subcutaneously or intra-viscerally from such a patient, (ii) neurotropic—after serial inoculation in mouse brain, or (iii) atropic, i.e. free from any organotropism—after serial cultivation on nerve-free chorio-allantoic membrane. There is some evidence that the neurotropic virus may possibly revert to the viscerotropic phase under certain conditions, but there is no evidence that egg-grown virus can re-acquire its viscerotropic or neurotropic tendency.

**Susceptible animals**—The rhesus monkey and the mouse are most susceptible to infection. *Silenus rhesus*, the common monkey of the Indian plains, is probably the most susceptible animal after man, but other Asiatic, African and South American monkeys and apes are susceptible, and certain species of these may form the reservoir of the jungle form of yellow fever (*vide infra*).

The European hedge-hog also is susceptible to the virus.

**Transmission**—Infection is very easily acquired in the laboratory, and many workers have become infected by contact with the blood of a patient or with infectious morbid material from experimental animals, before the introduction of prophylactic inoculation, nearly every member of the staff of the Rockefeller Foundation yellow-fever laboratory developed yellow fever.

The mosquito *Aedes aegypti* is the important transmitter of the urban form of yellow fever from man to man, other mosquitoes have been shown to transmit it under laboratory conditions, e.g. *Aedes luteocephalus*, *stokesi*, *vittatus*, *africanus*, and *simpsoni*, *Culex thalassus* and *Mansonia africana* in Africa, *Hæmogogus capricornis*, *Aedes scapularis*, *fluviatilis*, and *leucocelanus*, in South America, and *Aedes albopictus*.

The mosquito becomes infected if it 'bites' a patient during a period from the appearance of the first symptoms (and probably even earlier, as in the monkey the virus can be demonstrated within 12 hours of inoculation) up to the end of the third, possibly the fourth, day of the disease, the virus infection develops in the mosquito for some days before the latter becomes infectious, the time varying between four and twenty-eight days according to the temperature at which the mosquito is kept, under natural conditions in the endemic areas, the average latent period is about twelve

days, and from this time onwards and for the rest of its life the mosquito may be infectious, the infection is transmitted by the 'bite'

The method of transmission of 'jungle' yellow fever has not been established. Certain jungle species of mosquitoes, *eg* *Hamogogus capricornis* that live and breed in tall jungle tree-tops, and *Aedes simpsoni*, have been found infected in nature, and shown to be potential transmitters. In this form of the disease, transmission to man is probably an accident in an epizootic cycle, the disease being normally transmitted from animal to animal by the same, or some other, insect vector, as the animal reservoir, monkeys are suspected, because in jungles where the disease occurs sporadically, monkeys have been shown to carry antibodies in their blood.

**Factors determining incidence**—The incidence of the disease is conditioned by (a) the number of the vector mosquitoes (b) the supply of the virus, and (c) the extent of the susceptible material.

*Aedes* is a domestic mosquito and thrives best in towns. In the urban form, man is the only source of infection, and it is probably mild and unrecognized cases of the disease that are the most important source of the virus. The highest concentrations of (a) the transmitter, (b) the source of infection, and (c) susceptible individuals are found in towns, and it is therefore here that the epidemics usually occur.

**Immunity**—There is no natural immunity to this infection. Populations in endemic areas subjected to frequent infection appear to acquire a degree of immunity, for the death rate amongst indigenous inhabitants is very much lower than amongst foreigners.

One attack confers complete immunity—no authentic second attack has ever been reported, and antibodies have been demonstrated in an individual 75 years after the disease. The immunity of natives is due to infection in earlier life, when the symptoms may be overlooked. The presence of immune bodies in the blood can be measured by the mouse protection test (*vide infra*), the test is of little value as an individual diagnostic measure, but is an invaluable procedure for obtaining retrospective information regarding the past history of a population, *vis à-vis* yellow fever.

Immunity can be conferred by vaccination, such immunity is effective about ten days after the inoculation, and lasts for at least two years.

**Mouse protection test**—When a population is to be tested at least 25 adults and 25 children should be chosen at random. Ten to fifteen c.c.m. of blood is taken from each and the serum separated. Three c.c.m. of the serum to be tested is mixed with 1.5 c.c.m. of a 20 per cent emulsion of the brain of a mouse infected with the neurotropic virus. Of this mixture 0.5 c.c.m. is then injected intraperitoneally into six mice which have previously had an intracerebral injection of 0.03 c.c.m. of 2 per cent sterile starch solution.

Observe for 10 days, if more than three survive the test is positive but if four or more die it is negative that is no immune bodies are present.

By diluting the serum further an exact quantitative test is possible which can be used to demonstrate a rising titre for diagnostic purposes.

An intermediate result that is one in which three survive and three die is a doubtful result and the test should be repeated. This will necessitate the use of more serum and for this reason some workers advocate taking a larger quantity of blood in the first instance.

## PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy**—The typical post mortem picture includes the olive discoloration of the skin (in the fair skinned races) and of all the organs and tissues, ecchymoses all over the body especially at pressure points, petechial hæmorrhages in the mucous membranes sometimes extensive hæmorrhages into the stomach muscles, and other tissues, a yellow nutmeg liver, fatty degeneration of the heart petechial hæmorrhages in the brain, and occasionally extensive hæmorrhages into the ventricles.

Histological examination of sections of the liver shows characteristic changes that are usually far more extensive than the gross appearance of the organ suggests. The parenchyma cells of the liver undergo a progressive degeneration. These changes are essentially non-inflammatory, the main ones are cloudy swelling fatty degeneration, and a characteristic hyaline necrosis of the liver parenchyma cells, without interstitial changes.

One of the earliest changes is a finely granular appearance of the cytoplasm with some oedema, so that the hexagonal shape of the liver cells is lost. The fatty changes are the most constant, and are a *sine qua non* in yellow fever, in the early stages there are fine droplets of fat which coalesce so that as the degeneration progresses, large droplets appear. The fatty changes appear to be complementary to the necrosis, being more apparent in the non-necrotic portions of the liver.

The cytoplasm undergoes coagulative necrosis, it may become vacuolated, and hyaline eosin-staining areas appear, chromatolysis occurs in the nuclei, which are usually rounder and smaller than normal, there is at first margination of the chromatin material and then red acidophil bodies appear, Kupffer's cells show hyperplasia increasing in size and number.

Starting in the mid-zonal areas there is eventually complete disorganization of the normal histological picture of the liver. The full range of changes will not be found in all cases, but the most characteristic finding is the 'Councilman cell' which is a parenchyma cell, now globular in shape, in which the full range of hyaline necrotic changes has taken place, the nucleus has undergone chromatolysis, and the cytoplasm contains 'punched out' hyaline acidophil bodies.

In cases in which death is unusually delayed—that is, beyond the tenth day—the Councilman cells undergo a further degenerative change, and ochre bodies appear.

The extent of the parenchyma involvement will vary from 5 to 95 per cent, in the latter case only a few areas around the portal sheaths at the periphery of the lobule and around the central vein remain intact, and even these usually show some cloudy swelling under such conditions.

These changes account for the toxic jaundice and hæmorrhages in the kidneys there is cloudy swelling and fatty degeneration, more apparent in the convoluted tubules than in the glomeruli, there are hæmorrhages into Bowman's capsule and in the cortex, and the tubules are blocked with epithelial debris. These changes readily explain the albuminuria and the eventual anuria.

The spleen shows few macroscopical changes but microscopically there is evidence of endothelial proliferation at the expense of the lymphoid tissue. In the heart granular and fatty changes of the myocardial musculature are constant in fatal cases and hyaline degeneration is found in a few cases, the low blood pressure and pulse rate, and the venous congestion that appear in the second, toxæmic stage, can be accounted for by these changes.

The liver changes are the most constant and characteristic, but in some cases one of the other vital organs, the kidney and the heart, will appear to bear the brunt of the attack.

The pathology in the jungle form of yellow fever is apparently identical with that of the classical form.

Blood picture and blood chemistry.—There is a leucopenia during the early stages up to the fifth or sixth day, after which there may be a slight leucocytosis. During the first few days there is a lymphopenia which gives place to a granulopenia. Later, there is a relative increase of large non-nucleated cells.

Very early there will be an increase in hæmobilirubinæmia (indirect van den Bergh test positive), and later, when jaundice develops, bili-

cubinæmia (direct van den Bergh test positive), there is a lowered fibrinogen content and consequently increased clotting time and hypoglycæmia. All these findings indicate gross liver dysfunction. There is also an increase of guanidine in the blood, a condition which in animals has been shown to be associated with the occurrence of hæmorrhages.

**Urine**—A cloud of albumin may appear in the urine early but by the third or fourth day there is usually a very heavy cloud amounting to 0.3 to 0.4 per cent in severe cases. With the development of jaundice bile will appear, and in severe cases there will be hæmaturia. The urine is often scanty, and the urea and uric acid excretion may be low.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Clinical types**—All degrees of severity will be encountered and division into types is artificial but will perhaps facilitate description.

(i) *The abortive attack*—There is a mild febrile attack lasting from a few hours up to a day in which there is malaise and headache. This type of attack may be mistaken for a mild influenza but the disproportionate severity, the presence of albumin in the urine and the slowing of the pulse in convalescence should raise suspicion as to its true nature.

During an epidemic, e.g. the Nuba Mountains outbreak there is often evidence that about 70 per cent of the attacks are apparently subclinical but it is probable that if those natives who showed a positive mouse protection test could have been observed closely the majority would have shown a mild febrile attack of this kind.

(ii) *Incomplete attack*—There is a sharp rise of temperature with severe headaches, pains in the body and possibly vomiting. The temperature shows the usual fall on the third day and may even rise again. The pulse is characteristically slow, but there is no jaundice nor any of the other severe symptoms. However, in such cases a considerable degree of albuminuria with cylindrical casts may develop from the third to the fifth day.

(iii) *The classical attack*—This is described below in more detail.

**Incubation period**—This is usually from three to six days in the natural infection, but in the case of laboratory infection instances where the interval was as long as twelve days have been reported.

**The onset**—In the typical severe case of yellow fever the onset is sudden, with fever and possibly rigor, and a rapid full and bounding pulse, very severe frontal headache with pains in the eyeballs and photophobia, pains all over the body but particularly in the loins and bones, an intense burning sensation and dryness of the skin, a furred sharp pointed tongue with a pink tip and edges, a red and swollen face with the eyes bloodshot and 'beady', anorexia and severe prostration.

**The course of the disease**—As the infection subsides this febrile congestive stage may be followed by a short interlude when the temperature is normal or subnormal and the pulse rate drops but this period of calm is rapidly succeeded by a stage of intense toxæmia, the blood pressure falls and, though the temperature usually rises again, the pulse rate remains low. The toxæmia increases, there is nausea and vomiting, jaundice appears and increases, there are hæmorrhages from mucous membranes into serous cavities, and subcutaneously especially into the scrotum and vulva and at pressure points and eventually there may be anuria.

In fulminant cases the early febrile stage will merge into the toxæmic stages without the characteristic interlude.

**Termination**—Death may occur in the febrile stage from hyperpyrexia with delirium or in the 'period of calm' and be associated with profuse hæmorrhages from all mucous membranes with black vomit, melæna and hæmaturia, the patient passing into a comatose state. Death seldom occurs

before the third day or after the eleventh, and if the temperature is down by the seventh day the prognosis is good

The fever—The temperature rises sharply, reaching  $103^{\circ}\text{F}$  or higher in 24 hours and remains high for three or four days, it then falls, usually rather rapidly and may become sub-normal for 24 hours—the 'period of calm', but it may rise again to  $101^{\circ}$  or  $102^{\circ}\text{F}$  for another two or three days or more (see charts figure 88)

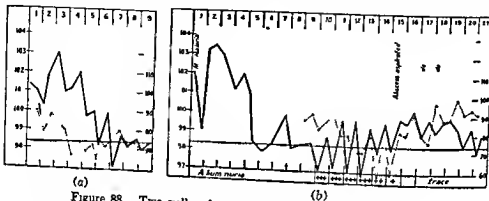


Figure 88 Two yellow fever temperature and pulse charts  
(a) A relatively mild case  
(b) A case complicated with malaria and abscess formation (Kirk *et al* 1941)

The pulse—This is rapid full and bounding at first, but the pulse rate tends to fall before the temperature it may drop to 50 per minute or even lower during the 'period of calm', and it seldom rises beyond the normal level during the second febrile period. A steady pulse with a rising temperature, or a falling pulse with a constant temperature constitutes *Faget's sign* which is a point of diagnostic importance.

Jaundice appears on the third or fourth day and is progressive—up to a dark-brown colour in severe cases. Its earlier appearance suggests a bad prognosis. It is a common but not a constant sign, and even in moderately severe cases it may not be prominent. It is naturally associated in severe cases with bile in the urine and a bi-phasic van den Bergh reaction.

Petechial hæmorrhages may appear, and a characteristic erythema of the scrotum or vulva is common. In severe cases large purpuric patches appear.

Other symptoms—Insomnia and restlessness are constant, but delirium is rare except as a terminal condition. Vomiting may occur with the onset of the fever, as with any high fever, but the characteristic severe vomiting occurs from the third day onwards and may assume a coffee-ground character, the typical 'black vomit' of yellow fever, which always portends a grave issue.

### DIAGNOSIS

A. The clinical diagnosis—The clinical diagnosis of a typical case presents little difficulty. The sequence of events is very characteristic, there are two distinct stages in the attack, the early febrile congestive stage and the subsequent intense toxæmia with a falling blood pressure, a disproportionately slow pulse, increasing jaundice, and possibly hæmorrhages. The early appearance in the urine of albumin, which increases rapidly in amount until anuria supervenes, will almost make the picture diagnostic.

Even if jaundice is slight during the course of the disease, it will in every fatal case be marked at the time of death.

During the presence of a recognized outbreak, the occurrence of mild fever of two or three days' duration associated with a disproportionate degree of headache and the presence of albuminuria will lead to a suspicion

of yellow fever. In an isolated case of the mild type it will be almost impossible to make a clinical diagnosis.

**B Laboratory diagnosis** Tests for the presence of yellow fever virus.—The rhesus monkey is a susceptible animal and can be infected by the blood taken from a patient during the first three days of the disease, the monkey will die of acute yellow fever within a few days.

Similarly, intracerebral inoculation into mice will cause an encephalitis, within seven to fourteen days but as other virus infections also cause an encephalitis it is essential that such tests should be controlled by protection tests with known immune (yellow fever) serum. Blood taken for such tests will not retain its virulence even in the ice chest more than a few hours, but it will in the frozen and dry state. It is therefore important to take the blood at the earliest possible date in a case of suspected yellow fever, and either to carry out the tests immediately, or to freeze and dry the material until the test can be done, in the latter case the results will be less certain.

**Tests for the presence of immune bodies**—When, in the later stages of the infection, antibodies develop their presence can be demonstrated by the mouse protection test. If the patient's serum after being mixed with the virus and injected into a mouse protects that mouse from the effects of the injected virus, this is presumptive evidence that the patient has at some time or other suffered from yellow fever. Although these antibodies appear in the blood at an early date and neutralize the virus in the patient's blood, so that mosquitoes are not usually infected after the third day of the disease for purposes of the mouse protection test the antibodies are seldom present in sufficient quantity to ensure a positive result before about the twenty-first day, the diagnostic value of this test is thus limited. (For technique see p. 299.)

The test with the neurotropic virus cannot be carried out in India as the importation of neurotropic or pantropic virus is forbidden by law. The value of an intracerebral test in white mice in which the 17D virus (the vaccine virus) is used is under study, and this may be found applicable in India and other eastern countries which are at present free from yellow fever.

**C Post-mortem diagnosis**—The characteristic changes in the liver enable a post-mortem diagnosis to be made by naked eye and histological examination.

Portions of the liver can be taken for the purpose by carrying out a full post-mortem examination or, when this is not permitted by removing a piece by means of the viscerotome the instrument devised for removing small pieces of tissue without opening the abdomen. The tissue removed is placed in Zenker's fluid and histological sections are cut. The histological picture in yellow fever is characteristic (see p. 300).

**Viscerotomy**—The viscerotome is essentially a long metal box with one end closed and the other consisting of four cutting blades, one of which is flexible and movable (figure 89). When the instrument is thrust into

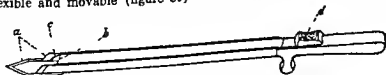


Figure 89.—The viscerotome

- a Cutting edges for introducing viscerotome
- b Sliding gullotine blade
- c Groove for sliding gullotine blade
- d Thumb grip for closing the sliding gullotine blade



a solid organ, the three fixed blades make a deep U-shaped incision, the flexible blade is moved forward, completes the open side of the U to make a more or-less square incision and then, dipping downwards behind the rectangular block of tissue to meet the lower blade, it severs a piece from the rest of the organ and encloses it in the viscerotome, the instrument is then withdrawn, opened, and the contained piece of organ removed.

**Technique**—The entry point of choice is in the epigastrium just below the ensiform cartilage and close to the costal margin on the right side. The direction of the thrust is at an angle of about  $10^{\circ}$  with the horizontal and about  $20^{\circ}$  with the body surfaces from left to right (figure 90). The instrument which must be closed (figure 91a) is pushed through the skin and the abdominal wall with a sharp thrust. When the lower fixed blade has penetrated the liver the flexible blade is opened about an inch the instrument is thrust further into the organ for about half an inch and then the flexible blade is pushed forward again and held firmly in this position while the viscerotome is withdrawn from the body. The flexible blade is withdrawn and the piece of liver removed and placed in solution for subsequent sectioning.

The hole made by the instrument is now plugged with cotton wool to prevent oozing and the skin wound is sewn up if this is considered necessary. The warning may seem superfluous but it must be emphasized that this viscerotomy is only a *post mortem* procedure.

**Differential diagnosis**—The most constant and prominent symptoms of yellow fever are fever and jaundice, therefore the diseases with which it is most likely to be confused are severe malaria of the 'bilious remittent' type blackwater fever, Weil's disease infective hepatitis and catarrhal jaundice. Certain fatal liver conditions such as acute yellow atrophy and carbon tetrachloride poisoning might be mistaken for yellow fever, in the latter the hepatic necrosis is central. The milder forms of yellow fever might be confused with relapsing fever dengue or influenza.

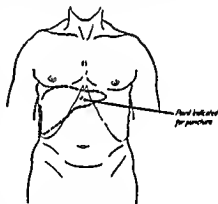


Figure 90 Showing point of entry and direction of thrust of the viscerotome

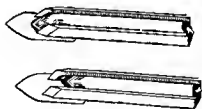


Figure 91 Viscerotome (a) shut and (b) open

In the malarial fevers the parasite (a) should be easy to demonstrate, while the jaundice appears earlier and tends to improve, in blackwater fever parasites may not be found, but the hæmoglobinuria of this condition should not be mistaken for the hæmaturia of yellow fever. Similarly, in relapsing fever the spirochæte is usually found in the peripheral blood. The saddle back temperature of dengue is not unlike that of yellow fever when present is characteristic, and

yellow fever but the dengue rash when present is characteristic, and jaundice does not occur.

The only real difficulty that is likely to arise is in differentiating Weil's disease, and in this case we have the precedent of Noguchi's classical mistake (For the exclusion of Weil's disease see p. 251).

**Precautions**—If there seems to be a serious possibility that the case is yellow fever, the utmost precautions must be taken immediately and the patient kept rigidly under a mosquito net day and night. Also it should be remembered that the virus is present in the patient's blood and is

unneutralized by antibodies for at least three and in some cases up to four days, and that therefore every care should be taken to prevent his blood touching anyone's unprotected skin during the process of blood withdrawal (In most countries immediate notification to the health authorities is imperative)

### PREVENTION

For the disease to be spread, there are three requirements—the virus, the transmitting mosquito, and the susceptible population

The main successes in yellow fever prevention in the endemic areas have been achieved by aedes control. Aedes is a mosquito which is very local in its habits, it bites during the day, so that thorough spraying of offices, and other living rooms as well as bedrooms is necessary. It breeds in small local collections of water, in old tins, broken utensils and formicas, hollow tree trunks, etc., and is therefore easily controlled by general sanitary and water tidiness. In dock areas the fresh water supplies of small country boats is often a source of breeding and receptacles in which the water is stored must be kept covered. Where one is dealing with an undisciplined population, very careful inspection at frequent but irregular intervals is essential. It has been found that provided the aedes index is reported below 2 per cent (that is only 2 per cent of houses inspected show aedes breeding places), yellow fever will not spread.

Aedes seldom flies more than a few hundred yards from its breeding place, and therefore control for an area of four hundred yards around a house, or aerodrome, is usually considered sufficient. Similarly, if ships are moored a quarter of a mile from the shore in a yellow fever port, they are considered to be safe, but this does not take into account the danger of mosquitoes being brought from the shore in small visiting craft or in coal or other lighters.

It is beyond the scope of this book to describe in any detail the procedures that should be adopted against these mosquitoes, but besides the elimination of breeding places and other anti-larval measures and the destruction of the adult mosquitoes by spraying (*vide* p 115), for personal protection some deterrent application should be smeared on the ankles, wrists, neck and other exposed parts of the body. For this purpose the following makes an effective cream (*see also* p 119) —

Citronella oil	8 parts	Soft paraffin	57 parts
Camphor	1 part	Hard paraffin	29 parts
Liquid extract of pyrethrum	5 parts		100 parts

Another measure that is now being adopted with increasing frequency in several countries is the reduction of the susceptibility of the population at risk by prophylactic inoculation.

**History of yellow fever vaccination** —Hindle in 1923 suggested prophylactic inoculation and Sawyer *et al* (1931) introduced vero-vaccination which consisted in giving an emulsion of the liver of an infected monkey in combination with convalescent serum. The latter prevented the development of the disease but allowed antibodies to develop. In 1930 Max Theiler produced a neurotropic virus and by 1934 vaccination with neurotropic virus plus immune serum was a well-established method of yellow fever control. More recently Findlay and McCallum (1937) and others have grown the virus *in vitro* on chorio-allantoic chick membrane from which nerve tissue has been removed and produced a virus that has lost not only its viscerotropic but also its neurotropic whilst still retaining its antigenic properties. With this virus vaccinations numbering millions have now been carried out.

The vaccine is made from a strain which was originally a virulent pantropic virus that had been passaged some hundreds of times on mouse-embryo tissue culture medium until it completely lost its viscerotropic

qualities and became a neurotropic virus then it was passaged, again some hundreds of times, on chick embryo from which the brain and spinal cord had been removed, so that it lost its neurotropic qualities. The first virus thus made caused no serious trouble, but an appreciable percentage of those inoculated suffered from jaundice, this was possibly due to an accidental contamination with some other virus. The present strain is entirely innocuous, the injection is not followed by any local or general reaction\*, only one injection of 0.5 c cm (1,500 mouse-protection units) is necessary, and it produces an immunity which is protective from the tenth day and lasts for a considerable time—there is some diminution in the protective power of the blood at the end of four years, and revaccination is recommended after this interval.

All persons dealing with yellow-fever patients or infected animals, their blood or excreta, or the preparation of vaccines, should be inoculated. In South America and Africa, wholesale inoculations are being carried out, especially in areas where the jungle form of yellow fever occurs, as there is no other measure of control that can, in our present state of knowledge, be used in these circumstances.

**Special measures in India**—In this country, the susceptible population and the transmitting mosquitoes are abundant and relatively uncontrollable, so that the main preventive activities must be aimed in the third direction. The virus has not yet arrived in India and our first consideration must be its exclusion from this country.

Towards this end a very great deal is being done. Air traffic has introduced a new source of danger and it is on this that most attention is now being centred, though other possible channels of entry, *e.g.* via Bombay and other west coast sea ports where for many years precautionary measures have been in force are not being forgotten.

We must first return to Africa. The planes from Lagos on the West Coast, after passing through active yellow-fever areas, join the Cape-to-Cairo route at Khartoum. There is a considerable amount of air traffic from Lagos to Khartoum and thence to Cairo. It is thus obvious that a person could get on board a plane at Lagos in the early stages of the incubation period of yellow fever, change at Khartoum, again at Cairo, where he could pick up the regular service plane from Europe to India, and reach Karachi even before symptoms had developed. Further, Malakal, an aerodrome in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan on the Cape-to-Cairo route, has long been recognized as a 'silent' yellow-fever area, for a large percentage of the population have antibodies in their blood, as shown by the mouse-protection test, and from time to time suspicious cases have been reported. Such 'silent' areas are potential dangers, and from them an infected person might arrive in India at an even earlier stage. It was therefore laid down by the International Sanitary Convention for Aerial Navigation that, for purposes of this convention, 'silent areas' shall be treated as yellow-fever areas.

Notification is cable from Khartoum to Karachi whenever a passenger from an endemic area leaves for India, so that all necessary precautions may be taken. In addition to this no planes are allowed to come to

\* Recently, an infective hepatitis has occurred amongst U.S.A. troops that had received prophylactic injections from certain batches of yellow fever vaccine. The first symptoms appeared between 40 and 100 days after vaccination and the resultant invalidism averaged two months. Official figures are naturally not yet available but many thousands of soldiers were affected. Deaths occurred but the mortality was only two per thousand of hospital admissions. The cause was not the yellow fever virus but a contaminating virus that was introduced in human serum used in the preparation of the infected batches. The vaccine is now made without any human serum, and the accident is not likely to recur.

Karachi from the endemic or 'silent' areas unless they have passed through either Khartoum or Cairo, which are anti-amaryl aerodromes, [that is to say, especially equipped for anti-amaryl (anti yellow fever) measures, which include local control of *aedes* mosquitoes and 'disinsectization' of the aeroplanes before they leave], and unless they carry a certificate of disinsectization from a competent authority in one of these two places. For disinsectization 'pyrocid 20' a pyrethrum spray with a kero ene base, has been used, but there are similar preparations with watery bases which are safer and almost, if not quite, as effective (see p 116).

In India, the further precautions that are taken include the following —

(a) Another thorough spraying of the inside of the plane is carried out before the passengers disembark or the luggage is removed.

(b) If the aircraft arrives without a disinsectization certificate it will be 'disinsectized' on arrival in India and all persons on board other than those who have been protected against the disease by a previous attack or by satisfactory inoculation will be subjected to isolation for a period not exceeding nine days from the time of arrival of the aircraft.

(c) A person coming from an area infected with yellow fever is not allowed to enter India unless a period of nine days (six days incubation period plus three days when even in a symptom free patient the virus may be present in the blood) has elapsed between the dates of his departure from that area and his arrival in India. If he arrives in India before the nine days have elapsed he will be subjected for the balance of that period to isolation in a mosquito-proof ward to which he is conveyed in a mosquito-proof ambulance. Unrestricted admission to India from a yellow fever infected or a 'silent' area is however allowed to a person who is protected against the disease by a previous attack or by satisfactory inoculation. By satisfactory inoculation is meant that he must have been inoculated—

(i) not less than 14 days before his arrival in the yellow fever infected area or in the alternative not less than 23 days before his arrival in India and

(ii) not more than two years before his departure from the yellow fever infected area.

(d) Finally aircraft are prohibited from entering India from the west except at Karachi where the organisation for carrying out these measures exists.

The sanitary authorities in India have had a great fight with the international authorities to get these measures enforced in other countries but they insisted on certain minimum requirements which were eventually acceded to, and have been in operation for some years without much interference with international air traffic. These precautions do not provide an impassable barrier to the entrance of yellow fever but they constitute a very effective one, and it is probably on them that India's immunity, up to the present, has depended.

It should perhaps be repeated that in no circumstances is one permitted to import yellow-fever virus into India, for any purpose whatsoever.

*Aedes aegypti* also transmits dengue, and the rapidity with which this infection spreads gives one some idea of how yellow fever would spread if it once gained a footing in India. Special measures are taken at aerodromes and in dock areas to control this species, as an extra precaution against yellow fever. In the event of an invasion by yellow fever, *aedes* control would have to be given priority over all other sanitary measures throughout the whole country.

Many people who are coming out to the East, including some coming to India, get inoculated in London before leaving but wholesale inoculation has not been practised in India yet though large stocks of vaccine are being held in readiness for an outbreak.

### TREATMENT

There is at present no recognized specific for this disease so that the treatment is essentially symptomatic. The extreme variability in the

severity of the disease accounts for the innumerable specifics that have gained local reputations

The patient must be kept in a mosquito-proof room or under a net night and day during the first three days, and attendants must be inoculated. He should be confined to bed throughout the disease and for some days during convalescence. During the height of the fever the diet should be low and consist mainly of lime-whey, albumin water and barley water. Plenty of alkaline fluid should be given, sodium citrate or bicarbonate, by mouth, if possible otherwise per rectum. Glucose should also be given liberally by mouth and intravenously a pint of 5 per cent solution together with one mg of Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> to counteract the tendency to hypoglycaemia.

The following prescription which is designed to reduce gastro-intestinal acidity is looked upon by some workers as a specific —

R. *Liquoris hydragryi perchloridi*  
*Sodii bicarbonatis*  
*Aquam*

min xii  
 gr vi  
 ad 3i

Take hourly

Early purgation is recommended  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain doses of calomel half-hourly up to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grains but later purgatives should be avoided.

Mouth hygiene is important to prevent stomatitis and parotitis, hydrogen peroxide is a useful mouth wash.

Other treatment is symptomatic —

**Vomiting** — Ten minims of adrenaline (1 in 1000) by mouth, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain of cocaine in an ounce of water.

**Black vomit** — *Liquor ferri perchloridi*  $\mathfrak{m}\mathfrak{x}\mathfrak{i}$ , to be repeated.

**Hyperpyrexia** — This should be treated by hydrotherapy rather than antipyretic drugs.

**Restlessness** — Phenobarbitone gr 1 to 3 by mouth or gr 1 intramuscularly.

**Anuria** — Dry cupping to loins, warm colon wash and warm citrate saline bladder wash in addition to glucose and sodium bicarbonate intravenously.

Stimulants may be required in the later stages, especially during the 'period of calm' when collapse is not infrequent.

Convalescents should be treated cautiously, especially with reference to diet which should be increased very slowly, indiscretion may have serious consequences.

### PROGNOSIS

The disease was at one time considered to be nearly 100 per cent fatal, but later it was realized that in indigenous populations in particular, the infection often produced sub clinical attacks, and that even Europeans in Africa suffer from mild attacks which may not be recognized. In most endemic areas, about 30 per cent of Europeans suffering from definite clinical attacks of yellow fever die, amongst others the death rate will vary considerably according to circumstances, but in semi-immune populations, it is undoubtedly sometimes a very mild disease comparable to dengue both in its severity and in its clinical manifestations. In the recent epidemic in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, the mortality is reported to have been 10 per cent.

It is, however, an alarming disease when it occurs in epidemic form and their utter helplessness to assist in any way the patient with a severe attack leaves a lasting and horrifying impression on the mind of physicians who have been through an epidemic.

\* Recent work has shown the liver protecting value of a high protein diet with choline. It seems possible that the parenteral administration of the amino acids cystine and methionine might be even more advantageous than glucose in this disease.

Addendum—No outstanding observations have been made during the last two years but the recent work on the reservoir of infection of jungle yellow fever has clarified the position (Bugher *et al*, 1941)

As well as *Haemagogus copricornis*, the most important jungle vector, *Aedes leucocelaenus* and *Aedes simpsoni* have been found infected in nature. No jungle animal has yet been found actually infected, but monkeys and opossums caught in South America have given positive mouse-protection tests. It has been shown that several species of both monkeys and opossums are susceptible, but that as in man the virus only circulates in the blood for a few days (maximum 7 days in opossums). This means that, as in the case of the urban outbreak in man, the maintenance of the jungle infection depends on a continuous supply of fresh susceptible material. In urban yellow fever in the endemic areas this was supplied by visitors and newly-born infants and therefore the infection only survived in large population groups where a continuous supply of fresh fuel was maintained. In the jungle this is supplied by migrating mammals and marsupials as well as by the newly born, and it has been shown that jungle foci of infection tend to move from place to place.

The infected jungle mosquitoes will survive for several months so that they are more truly the reservoirs of infection. They may also migrate into coffee plantations where they come into closer contact with man and may become the vectors in a small localized epidemic. The greater danger is that a man who is sporadically infected in the jungle as frequently happens when tall jungle trees are cut down and the tree-top dwelling *Haemagogus copricornis* swarm around the woodmen will go into a town during the incubation period and start an *Aedes* born epidemic.

## REFERENCES

- BUGHER JOHN C, BOSHELL-MANRIQUE JORGE, ROCA GARCIA, MANUEL and OSORNO-MESA, ERNESTO (1941) Epidemiology of Jungle Yellow Fever in Eastern Colombia. *Amer J Hyg*, **39**, 16
- FINLAY, C (1881) *Ann Acad Ciencias*, **18**, 147
- FINDLAY, G M, and MACCALLUM F O (1937) Vaccination contre la Fièvre Jaune au Moyen du Virus Pantrope Attenué Employé Seul. *Bull Office Internat Hyg Pub*, **29**, 1145
- HINDLE, E (1928) .. A Yellow Fever Vaccine. *Brit Med J*, **1**, 976
- KIRK, R, CAMPBELL, R T, and CHARLTON, R (1941) Yellow Fever Infection as Observed in Europeans in the Nuba Mountains, Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. *Ann Trop Med and Parasit*, **35**, 113
- KIMM, HENRY W, and CRAWFORD, PORTER J (1943) The Recent Distribution of Endemic Yellow Fever in Central America and Neighbouring Countries. *Amer J Trop Med*, **23**, 421
- SAWYER, W A, KITCHEN, S F, and LLOYD, W (1931) Vaccination of Humans against Yellow Fever with Immune Serum and Virus fixed for Mice. *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med*, **29**, 62
- THEILER, M (1930) .. Studies on the Action of Yellow Fever Virus in Mice. *Ann Trop Med and Parasit*, **24**, 219

# RIFT VALLEY FEVER

DEFINITION	PAGE
DISCUSSION	310
HISTORICAL	310
EPIDEMIOLOGY	310
ÆTIOLOGY	310
<i>Transmission</i>	310
IMMUNITY	311
PATHOLOGY	311
<i>Blood picture</i>	311
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	311
DIAGNOSIS	311
PREVENTION	311
TREATMENT	311

**Definition** — Rift valley fever is an epizootic hepatitis with a limited geographical distribution in certain circumstances, it is transmitted to man in whom it causes a mild febrile disease

**Discussion** — The importance of this disease lies on the fact that it may be mistaken for mild yellow fever because of its African distribution and because of the hepatitis. It is an example of a mild hepatitis caused by a specific filtrable virus, of which there are probably many other examples that have not yet achieved the distinction of a specific name

**Historical** — Though a very similar disease was encountered in this locality and described by Montgomery in 1913 the disease as it is now known was described by Daubney Hudson and Garham in 1931

The epizootic was first recognized in 1912 the disease in man was common amongst the natives working with sheep and cattle and it also occurred amongst the European veterinary personnel investigating the cause of the epizootic. The virus was brought to London where all the laboratory workers handling it developed the disease and in New York a laboratory assistant is said to have died of the infection

**Epidemiology** — The disease is so far confined to the Rift valley in Kenya and to those coming in contact with the infected cattle or sheep or with the virus in the laboratory

**Ætiology** — The disease is caused by a filtrable virus, 23 to 35  $\mu$  in size, which is found in the plasma and is attached to the red cells, it is present for six days after the onset of the attack after which it is neutralized by antibodies that appear in the blood. The virus has an affinity for the nervous system. It does not appear in the urine

It is transmitted through the mucous membranes or the scarified skin. Mosquitoes of the genus *Ansonia*, especially *Ansonia fuscopennata*, are suspected as carriers of the infection in nature.

**Immunity**—There is immunity after an attack, which lasts for some years, certainly six, but is probably not permanent. In animals it lasts only about six months.

**Pathology**—The morbid anatomy has been studied in animals. The most characteristic feature is a focal necrosis in the liver, at first discrete but eventually coalescing. There is a hyaline degeneration of the cytoplasm of the liver cells, and oxychromatic degeneration of the nuclei.

**Blood picture**—There is a leucocytosis during the first 24 hours of the attack and this is followed by a leucopenia with a relative increase in lymphocytes.

**Symptomatology**—The incubation period is from four to six days, the onset is sudden, with rigors (often), malaise, nausea, headache and photophobia; backache, and a feeling of fullness in the liver region. The face is flushed, the tongue furred, and there is constipation. The temperature rises to 102° F or higher, and falls rather suddenly about the fourth day, with profuse sweating. The disease runs a benign course, the mortality being almost nil, but there is marked weakness and a tendency to sweating during convalescence.

**Diagnosis**—A diagnosis can be made by inoculating the blood during the first few days into mice, 0.1 ccm being given intraperitoneally, the mouse will develop an encephalitis in 48 to 72 hours. As many other viruses kill mice, the identity of this infection must be ascertained by including a control experiment in which the patient's blood is mixed with convalescent serum before injecting it into a mouse, the control mouse will not die if the virus is that of Rift Valley fever.

A retrospective diagnosis can be made by the mouse protection test (cf. YELLOW FEVER), or by a complement deviation test, which remains positive for at least six months.

The disease has to be differentiated from influenza, dengue, sand fly fever, other forms of hepatitis, and mild yellow fever.

**Prevention**—A vaccine made from a fixed neurotropic virus has been used with success in prophylaxis in sheep.

**Treatment**—No specific treatment for the condition has yet been discovered. The symptomatic treatment consists in giving glucose freely by mouth and intravenously. Convalescent serum is reputed to cut short an attack.

#### REFERENCES

- DAUDNEY, R. HUDSON, J. R., and Enzootic Hepatitis or Rift Valley Fever  
*J. Path. and Bact.* **34**, 545  
 GARNHAM, P. C. (1931) *Ann. Rep. Vet. Dep. Kenya Colony* 1912-13  
 MONTGOMERY, R. E. (1913) *Nairobi*



# DENGUE SAND-FLY GROUP

INTRODUCTION	I AGF
	313
DENGUE	
DEFINITION	313
HISTORICAL	313
EPIDEMIOLOGY	314
<i>Geographical distribution—Epidemic features—Seasonal incidence—Age sex and race</i>	314
ÆTIOLOGY	314
<i>The virus—Transmission—Immunity</i>	314
PATHOLOGY	314
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	315
<i>Incubation period—Onset—Fever—Pulse—Rashes</i>	315
<i>Complications and sequelæ</i>	316
<i>Variations in the symptomatology</i>	316
DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS	316
PREVENTION	316
TREATMENT	316
PROGNOSIS	317
SAND FLY FEVER	
DEFINITION	317
HISTORICAL	317
EPIDEMIOLOGY	317
ÆTIOLOGY	317
<i>The virus—Transmission—Immunity</i>	317
PATHOLOGY	317
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	318
<i>Incubation period—Onset—Fever—Pulse</i>	318
<i>Complications</i>	318
DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS	318
PREVENTION	318
TREATMENT	319
PROGNOSIS	319
COMPARABLE FEATURES OF DENGUE AND SAND FLY FEVER	319

**Introduction.**—The two main clinical syndromes of this group are the mosquito-borne dengue, and the sand-fly-borne sand fly fever. Both diseases are caused by filtrable viruses, are clinically characterized by short fever, a rash, severe pains in the joints and back, and headache, and are diseases of very low mortality. Megaw, who was one of the first workers to insist on the recognition of this group as a group—a procedure which provides, in the writer's opinion, a logical classification—tended to stress the similarities between the two and minimized the differences, and considered that there was some evidence for the identity, or at least the common origin, of these two viruses which, he suggested, might have acquired certain special characteristics by being transmitted by insects of different species.

Most workers, however, who have had experience of both diseases, recognize the clear differences in the syndromes, and consider the two as quite separate diseases, probably caused by two distinct viruses. Admittedly, it may be very difficult in any one particular case to be dogmatic and say this is definitely a case of sand-fly fever or of dengue, but, given half-a-dozen cases of each disease, it will usually be possible to say, quite definitely, which set is dengue and which sand fly fever. Further, there is no evidence of the existence of any cross immunity.

Megaw postulates a third member of this group—dengue of unknown vector. Our knowledge of the short fevers of the tropics is certainly far from complete, and a possible example of another disease of this group is so called Colorado tick fever, a dengue-like disease of virus origin which, mainly on epidemiological evidence, is thought to be transmitted by a tick

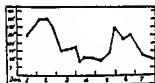


Figure 92 Temperature chart of Colorado tick fever (Topping *et al.*, 1940)

*Dermacentor andersoni* (Topping *et al.*, 1940). The dengue-like nature of this disease (*vide* figure 92) seems to be more certain than its suggested mode of transmission. We must realize that the future may add more members to this group, and it is more than justifiable to keep the classification an open one, but the inclusion at the present date of this entity 'dengue of unknown vector' in our classification will serve no useful purpose, and might imply the recognition of a single specific clinical syndrome whose full aetiology was unknown.

## DENGUE

**Definition**—Dengue is a short febrile disease of about 7 days' duration, characterized by severe pains all over the body, rashes, and a terminal rise of temperature. It occurs endemically and epidemically in the coastal areas of many tropical and sub-tropical countries. It is caused by a filtrable virus, and is transmitted from man to man by *Stegomyia* (aedes) mosquitoes.

**Historical**—Dengue has been recognized in various countries as a distinct disease for many years: an epidemic was reported in Cairo in 1779 but the disease was first described by Rush of Philadelphia as 'break bone fever', in 1780. Many epidemic outbreaks were reported during the next century and the name 'dengue' was applied to it. The word is of Spanish origin from *denguero*, an affected or dandified person, indicating the characteristic stiff or unnatural gait of the sufferer.

In 1903 Graham transmitted the disease by the agency of mosquitoes which he described as *Culex*. In 1907 Ashburn and Craig transmitted dengue in blood that had been passed through a filter. They experimented with *Culex* and claimed one transmission by this means. In 1918 Cleland Bradley and McDonald conveyed the disease by aedes mosquitoes. A few years later Siler Hall and Hitchens (1924) in Manila confirmed these observations and demonstrated the whole transmission cycle (*vide infra*).

# EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—It has a wide, tropical and sub-tropical distribution in the four major continents, and it occurs in Queensland in Australia. In America, except for a few isolated epidemics, *eg* the Philadelphia epidemic, its zone of activity extends from Charleston in South Carolina to São Paulo in Brazil.

Its incidence is conditioned by the distribution of aedes, and it is therefore confined mainly to coastal areas.

**Epidemic features**—It is a disease of towns rather than country areas. It does not occur at an altitude of more than 6,000 feet and it is confined to the plains in the sub-tropical regions. In the tropics, it is endemic but subject to cyclical and seasonal exacerbations, in the sub-tropical and temperate zones it is usually epidemic (*eg* the epidemics in Dallas in 1897 and in Athens in 1927 when at least half the inhabitants suffered and the public services were temporarily dislocated).

**Seasonal incidence**—In the sub-tropics, it is a late summer and autumn disease. In the tropics it is variable and again dependent on aedes activity, in many places it is perennial, but it tends to show a monsoon rise and in Calcutta the highest incidence is in August and September.

**Age sex and race**—All ages and both sexes are susceptible but the disease is less prominent in children. All races are equally susceptible but the local inhabitants nearly always enjoy some if not complete immunity through previous infection. It is always the visitors who are attacked. Every year we have half a dozen or more cases amongst our post-graduate students, and the patients are always the visitors to Bengal though such students represent only a small percentage of the class.

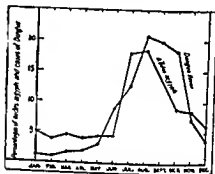


Figure 93 Seasonal curves of aedes and dengue in Calcutta

# ÆTIOLOGY

**The virus**—This is filtrable it will pass through  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  Chamberland filter candles. It circulates in the blood for the first three days of the disease, after which it is neutralized by antibodies.

**Transmission**—It is transmitted by *Aedes aegypti* (previously known as *Stegomyia fasciata*) which becomes infectious after biting a patient within the first three days of the fever. The virus undergoes development in the mosquito, which is capable of transmitting after the 8th day and remains infectious for the rest of its life. *Aedes* alone transmits not *Culex*. In the Philippines *Aedes albopictus* is the transmitter.

**Immunity**—An attack causes a certain amount of immunity, but not complete immunity. The first attack is usually a bad one, the second is a mild one and the subsequent ones are usually abortive, amounting to little more than a feeling of malaise for 24 hours or less and possibly being unnoticed. Recent work shows that there is no cross immunity with sand fly fever or yellow fever.

# PATHOLOGY

Dengue is not a fatal disease so that little is known about the morbid anatomy.

The blood picture has certain characteristic features, there is marked leucopenia, which is a granulopenia. The Arneth count shows a marked

shift to the left. There may be a distinct leucocytosis following the attack with the Arneth count still maintaining its leftward shift.

There is nothing characteristic in the urine: it is highly coloured and there is usually a trace of albumin.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period is usually 4 to 7 days. In extreme cases it may be from 2 to 15 days.

The onset is sudden, the temperature rising rapidly to 103°F. Although the temperature is very high there is seldom a typical rigor. There is severe headache and pains in the eyeballs with marked photophobia, pain in the back in the bones, and all over the body, causing the patient to assume a characteristic stiff gait when walking and to toss from side to side in his bed. The tongue is furred and red at the tip. The face is flushed and the eyes are suffused. There is very often general glandular enlargement.

Other symptoms include constipation or a critical diarrhoea accompanying the second rise of temperature.

The fever varies considerably from case to case and from epidemic to epidemic but there is a tendency for one type to predominate in each epidemic or seasonal exacerbation. The seven days' temperature is the classical form. The temperature remains high for two or three days, coming down slowly to about 99° and then rises suddenly on the 6th or 7th day and drops to normal again.

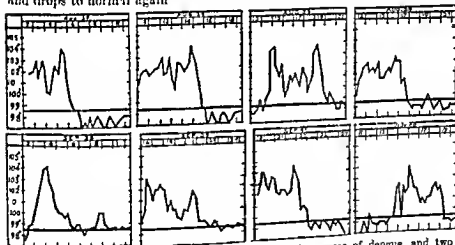


Figure 94. Showing temperature charts of six consecutive cases of dengue and two additional charts, the last being a hospital infection.

In the continued type the fever maintains a high remittent character for the full seven days and then drops suddenly. Sometimes there is quite a definite fall with a few days of normal temperature before the final rise—the two phase type of temperature chart.

In milder epidemics there is only a single rise of temperature, a sharp rise for two days which then fades away. In this one phase or abortive type the second rise of temperature may be so slight that it is not noticed or it may not occur at all.

In exceptional cases the second rise is higher than the first one, there is a three phase temperature, or there is a late relapse about the 15th day.

The pulse is usually rapid during the first few days of fever but it may fall before the temperature falls and after the attack it is often very low indeed, down to 40 per minute.

**Rashes** — There are two distinct rashes, the primary rash which occurs at the onset is a transitory erythematous rash on the neck, face, shoulders and chest, and the secondary rash which appears about the fifth day or even after the fall of temperature on the 7th or 8th day. The latter is a macular or scarlatiniform rash, usually commencing on the hands and wrists or legs and extending to the chest, not usually to the face, but otherwise all over the body. It may be very irritating and in severe cases there is later marked desquamation.

**Complications and sequelæ** — There are not usually any complications. The following are occasionally encountered: hyperpyrexia, hæmorrhages, diarrhoea, orchitis, and albuminuria. The sequelæ are not unimportant, though they are not common. They include acute depression amounting to definite inelancholia, multiple joint pains, pain in one or two joints which may be very troublesome and last for two or three months or even longer, and a tendency to faint.

**Variations in the symptomatology** — The different temperature charts that are encountered are discussed above, other symptoms, especially the rashes, show the same characteristic tendency to vary from epidemic to epidemic. That is to say, there are epidemics when rashes will appear only in 10 per cent of the cases, and others where they occur in 95 per cent, in some epidemics, pains are the most prominent symptom, whereas in others, they are only of secondary importance, and in some epidemics that troublesome sequel, arthralgia, is the rule whereas in others it never occurs.

### DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis must be made on the clinical evidence and by a process of exclusion, there are no positive laboratory tests. The short fevers that have to be excluded include sand fly fever (*vide infra*), malaria—definite rigor, periodicity, and the finding of parasites, influenza—catarrhal symptoms and absence of rash, measles—catarrhal symptoms and Koplik's spots, scarlet fever—not common in tropics, sore throat, relapsing fever—(leptospiral). The more serious conditions include yellow fever—usually of greater intensity with much albuminuria and jaundice, Weil's disease, small-pox, and typhus.

The severe pains might simulate rheumatic fever, and the rash, which is sometimes very intense, secondary syphilis.

### PREVENTION

The only practical measure of dengue prevention is the control of *Aedes*. *Aedes* have a very limited flight, so that the elimination of their breeding places does not present very great difficulties, if properly organized. Spray-killing of the adult mosquito should also be undertaken, in both day and night quarters. Other measures should include screening and/or the use of mosquito nets, and the application of repellent substances to the ankles, wrists and other exposed parts of the body (*vide supra*, pp 119 and 305).

### TREATMENT

There is no specific treatment.

A salicylate mixture should be prescribed, and a brisk purgative, for example,  $\frac{1}{4}$ -gram doses of calomel every half hour up to six doses followed by salts in the morning. Aspirin may be given in addition for the pains, and bromides or phenobarbitone for the sleeplessness. For persisting joint pains, local analgesic ointments or liniments, such as oil of wintergreen should be applied, and a mixture containing tincture of belladonna and tincture of colchicum given.

**Prognosis**—This is always good. In extensive epidemics, the death rate has been placed at about 0.2 per cent, the deaths occurring amongst old and debilitated persons.

### SAND-FLY FEVER

**Definition**—Sand-fly or phlebotomus fever is a fever of short duration characterized by headache, pain in the eyeballs and all over the body, and often by great prostration. It is caused by a filtrable virus which is transmitted from man to man by sand-flies.

**Historical**—It has been recognized for a long time particularly in India. It was known as febricula pyrexia of unknown origin (P.U.O.) climatic fever, and by various other names. Pym (1934) described it as a separate entity. In 1909 Doerr, Frana and Taussig showed that—(a) it was a blood infection and that the virus was present during the first day only; (b) the virus was filtrable and (c) *Phlebotomus papatasi* was the transmitter. In 1908 Birt showed that sand-flies cannot transmit for 7 days after the infecting bite. Shortt and others (1934) have shown that blood is infective on the second day of the fever.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

It has a wide geographical distribution in tropical and sub tropical regions, but mainly in the latter, it occurs in the Mediterranean littoral including north Africa, Egypt and Palestine, in Syria, Iraq, Iran, north-west India, and central and south America.

It does not usually occur above 4000 feet, and never above 7,000 feet.

It usually occurs in late summer and autumn (vide figure 95), but the incidence curve will vary in different localities. The sand-fly season in north-west India starts in April or May and lasts until October.

### ÆTIOLOGY

**The virus**—The virus is filtrable and passes through  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  Chamberland filters. It circulates in the blood one day before and during the first two days of the attack.

Monkeys can be infected.

**Transmission**—It is transmitted by *Phlebotomus papatasi*, the golden-coloured sand-fly. The virus undergoes a stage of development in the sand-fly, during which it is not transmissible. Transmission will occur on the seventh day after the infecting feed, and the sand-fly remains infectious for the rest of its life. The virus is said to be transmitted to the next generation, possibly the larvæ become infected by feeding on the bodies of dead adults.

**Immunity**—It is generally considered that immunity is complete, but in some places second attacks have been reported, even in the same season. There is no cross immunity with dengue or yellow fever.

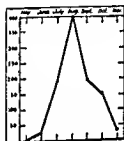


Figure 95 Seasonal distribution of sand fly fever in Palestine (Walker and Dods 1941)

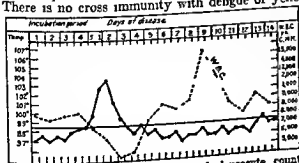


Figure 96 Temperature chart with leucocyte count records in sand fly fever (Whittingham, 1933)

**Pathology**—The main change is an increase in the permeability of the blood tissue barrier especially of the blood-brain barrier, though apparently the virus does not pass the latter.

The blood picture shows a sharp leucopenia associated with an absolute increase in immature granulocytes during the fever often followed by a leucocytosis (see figure 96).

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period is from 4 to 10 days, usually about 6 days. The onset occurs with chill. The average duration of the fever is 3 to 4 days, but it may be longer. A secondary rise is comparatively rare. The pulse is strikingly slow, often from the second day of the fever.

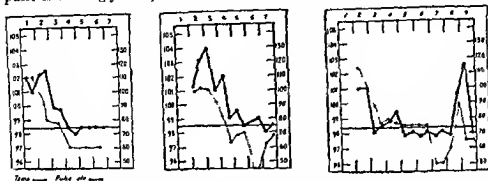


Figure 97 Three sand fly fever temperature charts, the first two are typical, and the last is unusual and shows a terminal rise suggestive of dengue (Walker and Dods loc cit)

There is a general puffiness, and uniform flushing of the face, the conjunctivæ are congested, there is restlessness, insomnia, and general prostration. The tongue is furred and there are often vesicles, unaccompanied by any inflammatory reaction of the mucous membranes, on the palate, but the fauces are congested. There are pains all over the body, very much the same as in dengue, but headache, photophobia, and tenderness and pain on movement of the eyeballs are probably relatively more intense. There is, in some epidemics, a sensation of an intense band-like restriction round the liver region, which suggests hepatitis, or severe hepatic congestion.

A rash is exceptional.

There may be general hyperæsthesia of the skin of the face, head and trunk, and absence of the biceps and supinator reflexes.

Papilloedema has recently been reported as constantly present in this disease in a severe epidemic in British soldiers (Shee, 1942).

Complications.—There are not very many complications, but a condition suggesting benign lymphocytic meningitis has been reported.

Diagnosis and differential diagnosis.—This is clinical and by a process of exclusion. The disease has to be distinguished mainly from malaria, dengue, and influenza, the complete absence of catarrhal symptoms helps in the last named. The author has seen a case diagnosed as small-pox, the

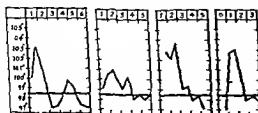


Figure 98 Sand fly fever temperature charts from Peshawar (Anderson 1941)

sand fly bites on the forehead and wrists providing the characteristic sbotty feeling.

The muscular pains and more especially the band-like pain around the lower part of the thoracic cage suggest Bornholm disease. Sand fly fever can be distinguished from benign lymphocytic meningitis, which it may simulate, by the low lymphocyte count in the cerebrospinal fluid in the former.

## PREVENTION

Preventive measures are all aimed at the sand fly. They can be summarized as follows —

- (a) The avoidance of localities that are heavily infested with sand flies or from the nature of the terrain likely to be so infested at the favourable season
- (b) The elimination or treatment of their breeding places
- (c) The elimination or treatment of the resting places of the adult fly
- (d) Personal preventive measures against the bites of sand flies

(a) Much can be done by the proper choice of a camping ground especially by the avoidance of a cool river bank moving a bed or tent even a hundred yards may make all the difference. Top floors are preferable to ground floors and open airy rooms to shut-in ones.

(b) The sand fly requires for its breeding place darkness and protection from air currents a comparatively even effective temperature moisture which also helps to maintain this temperature and food in the form of some decaying animal or vegetable matter.

It has a very limited flight so that it is only necessary to control the breeding places for a small area around the house or camp. A provisional figure of 120 yards is usually accepted for this. They breed in heaps of brick rubble in old and dilapidated buildings in the banks of rivers streams or ditches in the internal or external cracks in any form of building in disused fireplaces and chimneys and even in the cracks in the dried earth.

Inhabited buildings should therefore be kept in repair and all cracks filled up before the sand fly season. Where this is not possible for any reason they can be treated with a mixture consisting of 10 per cent of naphthalene dissolved in kerosene—four pounds of naphthalene balls added to a 4 gallon drum of kerosene and allowed to dissolve for three days.

(c) Resting places for the adult flies should be reduced to a minimum by removal of curtains pictures superfluous furniture and collections of clothes and the elimination of all dark corners. Rooms should be fumigated or sprayed with any suitable anti-malarial fumigant or spray (v.s.) in the evening and closed for half to one hour after the fumigation. Unused fireplaces should have paper burnt in them nightly. Closed drains and culverts should be fumigated periodically with sulphur.

(d) Personal protection will include the use of nets of sufficiently fine mesh to keep out sand flies—for this purpose the nets must be 45/46 mesh (*vide p 119*) or electric fans where these are available the wearing of suitable protective clothing in the evenings protection of the ankles by means of mosquito boots and the application of repellent creams to the ankles and exposed parts of the body (*vide pp 118 and 119*).

Treatment—This is mainly symptomatic. Aspirin phenacetin and caffeine or phenobarbitone in more severe cases should be given for the pains and headaches. Dover's powder is useful and Manson Bahr considers that opium is a specific recommending doses of 30 minims of the tincture.

Prognosis is uniformly good.

## COMPARABLE FEATURES OF DENGUE AND SAND FLY FEVER

Common—They are short fevers with many common clinical features are caused by filtrable viruses and are transmitted by insects. The virus is present in the patient's blood for 3 days and takes about a week to develop in the insect.

Distinguishing—These can be best shown in the form of a tabular statement —



## Dengue

## Sand-fly fever

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Virus present for first 3 days of fever   | Virus present day before fever and for the first 2 days after onset |
| 2 Transmitted by <i>Aedes aegypti</i>   | Transmitted by <i>Phlebotomus papatasi</i>                          |
| 3 Eight days' development in mosquito   | Seven days' development in sand-fly                                 |
| 4 Mainly tropical   | Mainly sub-tropical   |
| 5 Fever lasts 5 to 7 days usually, sometimes less   | Fever lasts 3 to 4 days usually, sometimes longer                   |
| Secondary rise of temperature occurs in 25 to 80 per cent of cases in different epidemics | Rare  |
| 6 Primary rash occasionally, secondary rash all over the body, in most epidemics          | Rare  |
| 7 Immunity is variable and tends to be short  | Immunity is usually complete  |

## REFERENCES

- ANDERSON, W M E (1941) . Clinical Observations on Sandfly Fever in the Peshawar District *J Roy Army Med Corps* **77**, 225
- ASHAURN, P M, and CRAIG C F (1907) Experimental Investigations regarding the Etiology of Dengue Fever, with a General Consideration of the Disease *Philippine J Sci* **2**, 93
- BIRT, C (1908) . Experimental Investigation of 'Simple Continued Fever' *J Roy Army Med Corps*, **11**, 566
- CLELAND, J B BRADLEY B, and McDONALD W (1916) On the Transmission of Australian Dengue by the Mosquito *Stegomyia fasciata* *Med J Australia*, **11**, 179 and 200
- DOERN R, FRANZ K, and TAUSCH S (1909) Das Pappataci-feber Franz Deuticke, Leipzig
- GRAHAM, H (1903) The Dengue A Study of Its Pathology and Mode of Propagation *J Trop Med and Hyg*, **6**, 209
- SHEE J C (1942) A Clinical Sign in Sandfly Fever *Indian Med Gaz*, **77**, 732
- SHORTT H E, POOLE L T, and STEPHENS E D (1934) Sandfly Fever on the Indian Frontier *Indian J Med Res* **21**, 775
- SILVER J F, HALL M W, and HITCHENS, A P (1925) Results obtained in the Transmission of Dengue Fever *J Amer Med Assoc* **84**, 1163
- TOPPING, N H, COLLYFORD J S, and DAVIS, G E (1940) Colorado Tick Fever *Pub Health Rep*, **55**, 2224
- WALKER A S, and DOOS, L (1941) Clinical Impressions of an Epidemic of Sandfly Fever in Palestine during 1940 *Med J Australia*, **1**, 345
- WHITTINGHAM, H E (1938) .. Phlebotomus Fever *British Encyclopaedia of Medical Practice*, **9**, 583 Butterworth and Co, Ltd, London
- Addendum—Several outbreaks of short fever of unknown etiology have been reported from army camps in the United States and Australia, e.g. 'Bulls fever', a dengue-like tick borne (*Amblyomma americanum*) fever of Texas 'pretibial fever' of Fort Bragg North Carolina a dengue like disease but in the absence of *Aedes aegypti*, and epidemic polyarthritis a short febrile disease somewhat similar to Haver hill fever that occurred near Darwin It seems possible that these are examples of Megaw's third group (see p 313)

# PLAGUE

	PAGE
DEFINITION	322
HISTORICAL	322
EPIDEMIOLOGY	323
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	323
<i>Epidemic features</i>	324
<i>Seasonal and year to year incidence</i>	325
<i>Age sex, and race incidence</i>	325
ÆTIOLOGY	326
<i>The causal organism</i>	326
Historical—Morphology and staining—Culture—Distribution in the body and routes of escape—Susceptible animals	326
<i>Toxins</i>	326
<i>Transmission</i>	326
Historical	328
<i>Essentials for transmission of bubonic plague</i>	328
1 Plague bacillus	328
2 The rodent	
Species The rat factors determining incidence—The development of conditions for an outbreak of plague in man	331
3 The flea	
The mechanism of transmission—The flea factors determining incidence (i) Species—(ii) Environmental (climatic) conditions	332
4 Man and his environment	332
<i>Spread of infection outside endemic areas</i>	333
PATHOLOGY	333
<i>General reaction to infection</i>	333
<i>Morbid anatomy</i>	334
<i>The blood picture</i>	334
<i>Urine</i>	334
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	334
<i>Clinical types</i>	334
<i>Bubonic and septicæmic plague</i>	
The course of the disease—The buboes—The cellulocutaneous lesions—Complications	336
<i>Pneumonic plague</i>	

	PAGE
DIAGNOSIS	336
Clinical	336
Bacteriological	336
Ambulant— <i>Pestis minor</i> —Bubonic—Septicemic—Pneumonic plague	
Outline of technique	336
Smears—Culture—Animal inoculation	
The agglutination test	337
Differential diagnosis	337
PREVENTION	337
A The prevention of the introduction of plague into a non endemic area	337
B The control of plague in an endemic area	338
1 Isolation and treatment of the sick	338
2 Measures against rats or other rodents	338
Rat destruction—Rat traps—Rat poisons—Gassing—Protection of ships against rats	
3 Measures against fleas	340
4 Protection of man from rats and fleas	340
5 Prophylactic inoculation	341
Historical	
TREATMENT	342
A Symptomatic treatment	342
B Local treatment	342
C Specific treatment	342
PROGNOSIS	343
GROSS PATHOLOGY	344

**Definition.**—Plague is a sporadic disease that frequently develops epidemic proportions and spreads widely the causal organism is the plague bacillus *Pasteurella pestis* an organism that produces a severe epizootic amongst certain rodents from which the infection is transmitted to man by the agency of fleas, the clinical picture is characterized by high fever adenitis a rapid course and a high mortality or the disease may take an epidemic pneumonic form which is transmitted directly from man to man

**Historical.**—Plague is a disease of great antiquity It has apparently been endemic for many centuries in certain areas of Asia Kumaun and Garhwal in India, the Hunan province of South China and the hills of South Arabia are considered endemic areas of very long standing

Regarding the ancient history of plague in Asia relatively little is known but it is considered that ancient, as well as the more recent pandemics arose in Asia In Europe more is known of its history Homer describes plague as occurring at the siege of Troy in the 12th century B.C. The cause was thought to be the wrath of Apollo at the untidiness of the camp and when Agamemnon ordered all the rubbish to be collected and thrown into the sea Apollo's wrath was appeased and the disease disappeared.

Plague was described by various writers in the classical period as occurring in the countries around the eastern Mediterranean The Justinian pandemic of 543 A.D. is said to have reached Europe from Egypt and spread throughout the Roman Empire along the lines of human communication The greatest European epidemic, however, was the Black Death starting in 1346 A.D. It is reported to have reached Europe from the near east it spread all over Europe and

adjacent countries and killed we are told one-quarter of the population of the then known world. References to this great outbreak occur in the histories of many countries. Another European epidemic occurred in the ten years following 1664 and in London about one-sixth of the population is said to have died in the first two years. These were only the great visitations of plague and actually plague was never absent from Europe between the 14th century and the beginning of the 19th century in the years between the great pestilences many minor outbreaks occurred.

The third great pandemic of the present millennium started in 1894 and is now apparently drawing to its close. It originated in Yunnan province in China and rapidly spread to Hong Kong, Japan and the Philippine Islands. In 1896 it appeared in Bombay which had been free from plague for nearly two hundred years and thence it spread over most of India. From India it spread to Africa and to Australasia (1899), Hawaii, Central and South America (1899) to the United States (San Francisco 1900) and to a limited extent to Europe. This pandemic involved almost the whole world, India however suffered most. In some of the early years of this century the deaths from plague in India numbered over a million and in 1907 they reached a peak of nearly 1½ millions since when they have steadily declined.

In the United States on the other hand from the time of the first introduction of the disease in 1900 to 1941 only 501 cases with 315 deaths have been reported. These cases have occurred in eight states the first appearance of the disease was as follows—California 1900, Washington 1907, Louisiana 1914, Florida 1920, Texas 1920, Oregon 1934, Utah 1936 and Nevada 1937. Up to January 1942 the last two human cases reported occurred in Siskiyou County, California in June 1941.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution.**—Plague is now endemic in India, Burma, Ceylon, Java, China and Madagascar in South Central and East Africa including Uganda and Kenya and in Senegal, sporadic in Iraq, Iran, Siam and French Indo-China. In South America in Ecuador, Bolivia, Peru and Argentina there are endemic foci. In California and certain other western states, epizootics are common but few human cases have occurred. In Europe including Great Britain, local rat epizootics have occurred in ports from time to time during the last forty years occasionally with a few secondary human cases.



Figure 99 World plague situation in 1937-38

- A Active foci of human plague
  - B Active foci of sylvatic plague with occasional human cases
  - C Important foci of sylvatic plague apparently quiescent at present.
- (Reproduced from League of Nations' *Epidemiological records*)

In China, it is now mainly confined to western Shansi province where the Yellow River flows between this and Sbeni province, in which some foci of infection are also present, to Fukien province where in the mountainous areas pneumonic plague also occurs, and to Manchuria. In the first two areas the rat is the main reservoir, whereas in Manchuria other rodents, the marmot or tarabagan, are responsible and the disease is more sporadic, but very liable to develop into a pneumonic epidemic.

In India, it is still endemic in the Bombay Presidency, in Hyderabad and Mysore States, in the Madras Presidency, in Bihar, the United Provinces and in a few other localities in central and northern India. In Bengal and Assam, no plague has occurred for many years, and in the eastern and southern parts of Madras it is comparatively rare.

**Epidemic features**—Recent studies in plague have shown that there are two main epidemiological groups, (a) urban and domestic plague and (b) selvatic plague, and that in each of these epidemiological groups the disease may develop from the bubonic to the pneumonic form, when its epidemiology will undergo a corresponding change.

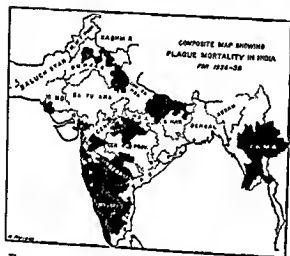


Figure 100 In the black areas the annual plague mortality was over 01 per mille during at least one of these years

The urban and domestic form (transmitted from rats) occurs in densely populated areas, and spreads along trade routes and overseas in ships. It is primarily bubonic and sporadic, but bubonic plague may assume epidemic proportions and spread like an epidemic disease, though, as will be shown below, it is not a truly epidemic disease\*.

In certain circumstances, probably connected mainly with the atmospheric temperature as it occurs most frequently in cold countries, pneumonic forms appear and the disease takes on a truly epidemic

form, being transmitted directly from man to man

\*The author is aware that here he is endowing the word *epidemic* with a special meaning that it does not always convey. The *Oxford Dictionary* quoting from the *Sydenham Society Lexicon* gives the meaning as 'Prevalent among a people or a community at a special time, and produced by some special causes not generally present in the affected locality'. This admittedly allows a wider meaning, but if one goes back a little further to its earliest use (according to the *Oxford Dictionary*) one finds a more restricted meaning. Bacon (1622) 'It was conceived not to be an epidemic disease but to proceed from a malignity in the constitution of the air'. Language is a living thing, and it must be continually growing and changing. Bacon's conception of an 'epidemic' disease as being possibly a divine punishment, a curse or a spell upon the people, entirely independent of environment, could not be upheld and the *Sydenham Society* gave the word a wider meaning. To-day our knowledge about epidemic disease is more precise but the word *epidemic* has lost its precision, its meaning certainly goes far beyond that given to it by the *Sydenham Society*, for we have epidemics of malaria in countries where the disease has occurred continuously for a thousand years. We must therefore invent a new word or define and restrict the meaning of the old one.

Sylvatic plague (transmitted from wild rodents) that occurs in rural areas and amongst workers in the woods and fields is primarily a sporadic bubonic plague, but is even more apt to develop into the pneumonic form, when it may be the starting point of a serious pneumonic epidemic (e.g. the Manchurian epidemics of 1910-11 and 1920-21 in which there were about 50,000 and 10,000 deaths, respectively)

**Seasonal and year to year incidence**—Temperature and humidity have a marked influence on the spread of plague. A moderate temperature, 60°F, and a moderately high relative humidity indicated by a saturation deficiency of less than 10 millibars (= relative humidity of over 60 per cent at 70°F, over 71 per cent at 80°F, over 79 per cent at 90°F and over 85 per cent at 100°F), are the most favourable. Consequently the disease will tend to occur in the summer months in cooler climates (all the classical plagues in England reached their peaks in August) in the spring months in hot dry climates in the sub tropics (see Punjab seasonal curve) and in tropical countries in which the temperature is more constant throughout the year, the plague incidence curve will follow the humidity curve (see Bombay seasonal curve figure 101)

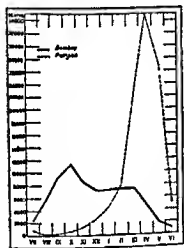


Figure 101 Monthly plague incidence 1898-1931

As well as the periodic epidemic like waves of plague in the production of which many factors are involved there are in the endemic areas from year to year considerable variations in the incidence which are associated with climatic variations and Rogers (1933) has shown that, by studying the past meteorological data it is possible to forecast whether it will be a good or bad plague year, long spells of abnormally hot and dry weather tend to reduce the incidence during the next plague season and vice versa.

**Age sex and race incidence**—In the urban and domestic bubonic form, persons of all ages and both sexes are equally susceptible and there does not seem to be any racial immunity. In the pneumonic form, adults both men and women who attend the sick, and in the sporadic sylvatic form men who are more likely to come in contact with the sources of infection, are most frequently attacked.

The definition of an epidemic (*trans* upon the people) that the writer has adopted for his own use is an outbreak of a disease that is transmitted *from man to man* directly or indirectly but in the transmission of which *man forms an essential link*.

Application of this restriction on the meaning of the word epidemic does not entail interference with established nomenclature of disease since diseases to which the word epidemic is regularly attached in a defining sense e.g. epidemic typhus are epidemic diseases in the restricted sense and so called epidemic diphtheria is a misnomer already overdue for renaming which is only awaiting a definite decision regarding its aetiology.

It would be rational to define endemic (*trans* in or amongst the people) on the same lines and to use the word sporadic when the disease did not comply with the restriction that man forms an essential link. But the word endemic is already so deeply involved in disease nomenclature e.g. endemic typhus which is not an endemic but essentially a sporadic disease according to the suggested definition that it will be difficult to drop it.

All these epidemiological observations are explainable on the grounds of the known aetiology of the disease which is discussed below.

### ÆTIOLOGY

**Historical.**—The causal organism, *Pasteurella pestis*, was first isolated by Yersin who was working in Hong-Kong, in 1894.

**The causal organism. Morphology and staining.**—*Pasteurella pestis* is a small straight ovoid organism 0.7 by 1.5  $\mu$ , which shows a high degree of pleomorphism, it is non-motile, non-sporing, gram-negative, and shows bipolar staining.

**Culture.**—It is an aerobe and a facultative anaerobe. It grows easily on ordinary culture medium, producing very small round colourless transparent granular colonies in 24 hours at 37°C, increasing to large (4 mm) raised opaque but translucent granular colonies in 5 days.

In broth it produces little or no turbidity in 24 hours, but later a flaky deposit; a delicate surface pedicle forms, and, if sterile oil is floated on the surface, 'stalactites' grow down from the under-surface of the oil globule.

There is no hæmolysis on blood agar.

**Resistance.**—These organisms are killed by drying at room temperature in a day or two, by heat at 55°C in 5 minutes, and by 0.5 per cent phenol in 15 minutes. They survive in the cold almost indefinitely.

**Distribution in the body and routes of escape.**—Plague bacilli invade the skin, causing vesicular or pustular lesions, the local lymphatic system, causing buboes, and the blood stream, in this order; the infection does not, however, reach and persist in the blood in every case, but when it does the bacilli can naturally be found in every organ in the body. Under certain conditions, the lungs become the site of an intensive infection.

In the ordinary septicæmic infection the bacilli do not escape from the body in any of the normal secretions or excretions, but in the pneumonic form they escape in droplets during forced expiration.

**Susceptible animals.**—Man and both laboratory and wild rodents, and also monkeys are very susceptible, dogs, cats, cattle, sheep, goats and horses are difficult to infect, but most birds are immune.

**Toxins.**—No true exotoxin is formed, but bacillary filtrates cause severe toxic reactions and immune serum can be prepared by injecting animals (horses) with killed or living cultures.

### Transmission

**Historical.**—In the historical records of plague epidemics in many countries, it was noted that rats began to die before human beings were affected, and the outbreaks in rats and in man were regarded as being intimately connected. The early investigators at the end of the last century failed to follow up this obvious lead and the first Indian Plague Commission (1901) went so far as to state categorically that there was no evidence that the disease was carried by infected rats in ships. In 1897, however, Ogata suggested tentatively that the flea might play a part in transmission, and in 1898 Simond working in Bombay enumerated the main facts about the transmission, epidemiology and control of plague which have remained practically unmodified, to the present day.

Lowe (1942) summarizes Simond's contribution to the transmission problem, as follows:—

'He stated that the introduction of plague-rats into a healthy area was generally followed by an epidemic of plague in man, but that introduction of an infected man into a healthy area was often not followed by an epidemic. He found that the epizootic preceded the epidemic, that it was usually localized in one area of a town to begin with, and that human plague later started in that particular area.

He noticed that in about 5 per cent of human cases a primary lesion in the form of a blister containing plague bacilli was seen, and recorded the site in the body of many of these blisters and found that they were most common on the

foot and leg. He considered that the blister was probably at the site of the bite of the transmitting insect. (This is the only observation for which he is usually given credit.)

He then went on to study the parasites of the rat. He found that a plague-rat free from parasites could not transmit the disease to healthy rats kept in the same cage but that a plague-rat infested with parasites could and usually did transmit the disease to healthy rats. He studied the parasites of the rat, the flea and the louse, and he found that these particularly the flea, contained numerous ingested plague bacilli in their intestinal tracts. He crushed infected fleas and injected the material into rats and produced the disease. He therefore considered that the mode of transmission of plague was from rat to rat and rat to man by an infected parasite, most probably the flea. He found that infected fleas, while feeding, passed plague bacilli in their excreta and considered that the infection might be introduced at the time of the bite and into the site of the bite. [According to Nuttall (1899), one of his severest critics he 'does not directly claim that the fleas inoculate the bacilli by means of their proboscides but he certainly implies it'.] The only point he did not record was the phenomenon of the blockage of the proventricular valve with regurgitation of infected blood in attempts to feed, which was actually not recorded until sixteen years later by Bacot and Martin (1914).

He found that fleas remained infected for a considerable period and suggested that this fact might help to explain the carrying over of plague from one season to another. He found that, in cities where plague had been present, rats showed a relatively high degree of immunity to plague. He also suggested that variations in the rat population and in their susceptibility to plague played an important part in causing the periodicity of plague. He ascribed the decline and disappearance of the infection in an area to the death of a large part of the rat population in migration of others, and to a high degree of immunity of the remaining rats and thought that repopulation of the area by new strains of susceptible rats might cause recrudescence. He also believed that plague might continue to linger among rats in a benign form in the period following an epidemic and that sporadic cases in man might thus be explained.

He stated that the prophylaxis of the plague must be based on the destruction of rats and also of their parasites and on the prevention of the access of rats to human habitations by proper construction or reconstruction. He stated that the conveyance of plague from one country to another on ships could be prevented by the destruction of not merely the rats but of the rats' parasites in ships and advocated the use of poison gas for this purpose.

Gauthier and Raybaud (1902) narrowed down the issue and transmitted plague from rat to rat by means of the bite of fleas.

Simonds' work was confirmed by the Plague Investigation Commission (1904 to 1913), these workers amplified Simonds' work but added little of basic importance to it.

The primary transmission cycle of infection is rat-flea-rat. The flea becomes infected from the blood of an infected rat, and transmits the infection to another rat by its 'bite'. There are a number of other rodents that are capable of playing the part of the rat in the transmission cycle.

The infection of man is an off-shoot from this primary cycle, and normally, from the bacillus's point of view, man constitutes a *cul-de-sac*. Man is capable of constituting a link, but, as only very rarely are bacilli present in human blood in sufficiently large numbers to infect fleas that ingest his blood, and, as the fleas that normally infest man, e.g. *Pulex irritans*, are not good transmitters of plague bacilli, man constitutes a very weak link in the mammal-flea-mammal cycle of bubonic plague transmission. Bubonic plague is thus never truly epidemic though the disease may assume epidemic proportions (see footnote pp 324 and 325).

In certain circumstances, probably mainly associated with climatic conditions or other prevalent infections, plague bacilli become localized in the lungs and produce a pneumonia, when this has once occurred the *Pasteurella pestis* strain involved appears to acquire a pneumotropism, and a subsequently droplet infection from man to man will take place and a true epidemic occurs. Primary pneumonic plague has in some localities been attributed to inhalation in dust of the faeces of infected fleas.



Infection may also take place via the alimentary tract, e.g. in Manchuria infection has been caused by the eating of under-cooked infected marmots, and in South America in certain tribes it is the practice to kill fleas by biting them between the teeth, whilst other primitive people kill rodents by biting off their heads, in both these cases infection may be acquired but such exotic means never play any significant part in the epidemiology of the disease

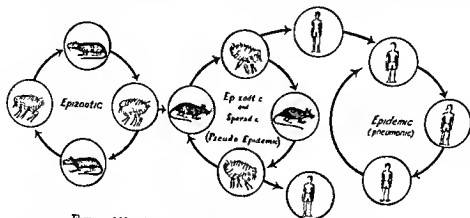


Figure 102 The transmission cycles in plague infection  
 Left hand cycle Brown rat—flea epizootic cycle  
 Middle cycle Black rat—flea epizootic cycle from which man is infected sporadically  
 Right-hand cycle Man to man epidemic cycle of pneumonic plague

Infection has been acquired at a post mortem examination and in the laboratory

Finally, the bacillus has been injected with homicidal intent, such an instance occurred in Calcutta in 1933 when two accused, including one doctor, were convicted of murder

#### Essentials for transmission of bubonic plague

The four essentials for the transmission of bubonic plague are thus —

- 1 The plague bacillus
- 2 The rat or other rodent—the natural host and reservoir of infection
- 3 The rat flea or other flea vector
- 4 Man the alternative host and his association with rats and fleas

Given plague infection (1), the incidence of the disease will depend on variations in the other three factors with regard to density of population (of 2 and 3) susceptibility (mainly of 2 and 3), and environment and habits (of 2 3 and 4)

1 *Plague bacillus*—*Pasteurella pestis* as far as present-day knowledge goes, appears to be a comparatively homogeneous bacillus with regard to virulence, and the variations in the severity of epidemics can usually be attributed to other factors. It is however noticeable that in places where the disease is transmitted from rodents other than the rat e.g. the marmot, it is often more severe and is more apt to develop into the pneumonic form, but in the determination of pneumotropism, the climatic factor cannot be excluded since these places are nearly always cold ones. An exception to this rule was the Los Angeles outbreak in 1924–25 when there were 33 pneumonic cases with 31 deaths the reservoir was certainly the ground squirrel, but even here the epidemic occurred in mid winter

2 *The rodent* Species—There are two main groups of rodents involved in plague transmission (i) rats which in a general way, live in close association with man—though some species live in closer association than others—and are the rodents responsible for the epidemic-like

outbreaks, as well as being capable of maintaining endemicity, and (ii) wild rodents which are the reservoirs of infection in selvatic plague.

(i) The two species of rat most frequently involved in plague epizootics are the black domestic rat, *Rattus rattus* and the large brown (grey) sewer rat, *Rattus norvegicus*. Rats of other genera, *Gunomys* and *bandicoots*, are also susceptible but from their habits are a less important menace to man.

(ii) The tarabagan or marmot (*Arctomys bobac*) and several species *Citellus* (Susliks) in the Caucasus, Siberia and Manchuria, the jerboa in southern Russia, the gerbille and the multimammate mouse *Mastomys coucha*, in Africa, and the ground squirrel (*Citellus beecheyi*) in California, are the most important reservoirs of selvatic plague.

The rat-factors determining incidence these are—

(a) *Susceptibility and immunity*, natural and acquired, for the rodent to be an effective reservoir, the plague bacillus must be present in relatively large numbers in its blood. The degree of septicaemia will vary according to the susceptibility of the rat which will depend on the species and past experience of the rat population.

(b) *Habits*, the reservoir of infection must come into close association with man, by natural inclination and/or by opportunity. This factor will depend on the species again, and on the environment.

(c) *Density of the rat population* the disease will not assume epidemic proportions unless there is a sufficient number of susceptible rats living in close contact with man. The rat index calculated from the number of rats caught in a given time in one hundred standard traps, must be at least 50. The rat index will depend on environment and food supply.

The development of conditions for an outbreak of plague in man—The usual sequence of events is as follows—The grey rat, which infests docks and generally from his habits makes more contacts with the outside world, is the first to become infected, one such rat acquires plague and dies, its fleas leave the dead body and parasitize other rats to whom they transmit the infection, and so a grey rat epizootic develops. In time a certain number of fleas from the plague infected grey rats infest the more venturesome amongst the black rats and the epizootic spreads to the domestic-rat population. Infected fleas are thus brought into man's habitations, and, when the rat population becomes reduced, the fleas from a dead rat, failing to find another rat, begin to infest man, and when this incident is repeated many times an outbreak, which assumes epidemic proportions, occurs amongst the human population (see figure 103).

In course of time a point arrives when the whole rat population has been infected a large number have died and the rest have recovered and are immune, so that the epizootic and the human outbreak come to an end. Epizootic conditions cannot arise again until a new generation of non-immune rats grows up. However, over a period of years, the rat population acquires a considerable degree of immunity, at one time it was suggested that this was effected by passing the immunity on to the next generation, but this is not usually accepted as possible, and it is thought

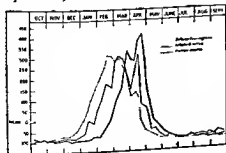


Figure 103 The development of a plague outbreak in man

to be by a process of elimination of the more susceptible members of the community

Unless there is a considerable population of *R. rattus*, plague is never transmitted to man to any serious extent, and it is suggested that the replacement of the *R. rattus* population by *R. norvegicus* in many European countries, which started in the 17th century, accounts for the failure of plague to establish itself in these countries during the last two centuries, though it has been widespread in other countries where *R. rattus* still abounds. Again, in Bengal the predominant rat is not *R. rattus* (13 per cent), but *Gunomys varius* (28 per cent) and the bandicoot that are not so susceptible to plague, nor do they live inside houses, consequently plague is rare.

Another theory regarding the relative immunity of the Bengal rats to plague infection is that they have in the recent past suffered another pasteurella epizootic which was less fatal than *Past. pestis*, and that this pasteurella has to its autogenic structure some elements common with *Past. pestis*.

The most effective method of control of plague is by reducing the rat population, but this presents considerable difficulties as it has been reported that a single pair of rats can produce 858 progeny in 16 months.

The important factors here are harbourage and food supply, where houses are built so as to exclude rats, and all sources of food supply are kept out of their reach, the domestic-rat population will be low, and, conversely, where houses are mainly constructed of wood or some other soft material and where domestic garbage is thrown out without regard to sanitary and domestic tidiness, as in many Indian towns and villages, conditions are ideal for rat multiplication and the stage is set for the type of explosive outbreak that occurred in the early years of the present century (cf the history of plague in India and the United States, p. 323).

Bengal owes her relative immunity from rat infestation, not to sanitary tidiness (far from it), but to the periodic flooding of large tracts of country and to the high sub-soil water level which prevents rats burrowing deeply into the ground, as well as to the innumerable competitors for garbage, some of which are the rat's natural enemies, e.g. crows, cats, jackals, and pariah dogs, which abound in all towns in Bengal.

In Manchuria, where the marmot is the wild rodent concerned, this rodent is not killed by plague infection, and, though it may infect a large number of fleas, it does not die, and the fleas do not leave it, so that by this means the infection does not spread rapidly and acquire epidemic proportions, but remains endemic. Further, this rodent does not normally come into close association with man. However, sporadic infections thus acquired are apt to be grave ones and frequently develop into pneumonic plague, and as such may be passed rapidly from man to man and constitute an epidemic.

A third set of conditions exists in California where the ground squirrel suffers epizootic visitations of plague, yet little human plague has occurred, there have only been 8 cases in the last 10 years.\* The danger here is

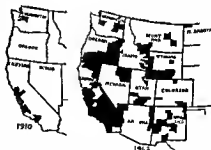


Figure 104 Showing extension of known areas of plague infection in the western states of the U.S.A.

\* Later, in 1943 one human case of plague was reported from Siskiyou County, California whereas in 90 instances *P. pestis* was isolated from pools of fleas collected on rodents or from rodent tissues from California (62), Colorado (3), Montana (9), New Mexico (8), Oregon (4), Washington (1), and Wyoming (3) (*Pub. Health Rep.*, 1944 69, 911). The first infected rodent was reported from Oklahoma in June 1944.

that fleas from these squirrels should be taken into the houses by other rodents, which are themselves perhaps not susceptible or by domestic animals, or that an epizootic should arise amongst rodents that do frequent human habitations. For these reasons large sums of money have been spent on rodent destruction in that country.

3 *The flea* The mechanism of transmission.—The flea ingests the blood of an infected rat (its capacity is about 0.5 cmm and this amount of blood may contain thousand of *Past. pestis*), and the plague bacilli multiply in its mid-gut, bacilli are passed in the faeces of the flea, and these may get scratched into the wound but as the bacilli are susceptible to drying it is improbable that dried faeces disseminate the infection in dust. The infection in the flea's gut also passes forwards and eventually a massive infection may block the pharynx of the flea. When the flea attempts to take another blood meal the blood will not pass this plug of bacilli which have to be ejected by a regurgitatory effort, and the bacilli are thus injected via the flea's proboscis into the new host. A third method by which the flea transmits the infection is by contamination of its mandibles whilst feeding on an infected host and direct transference of the *matrices morbi* to another host. Of these three methods, the second is almost certainly the most important.

Only a comparatively small percentage of fleas feeding on an infected rat will become infected and of those that become infected only a small percentage will transmit the infection, the percentages vary according to circumstances.

The flea factors determining incidence these are—

(a) *Efficiency of the flea as a transmitter*, which will vary according to (i) species and (ii) environmental (climatic) conditions under which it lives.

(b) *Longevity of the flea and maintenance of infection*, which is again a matter of climate and environment, in certain circumstances the flea will live at least 45 days and will maintain plague infection for this period.

(c) *Feeding habits of the flea, zoophilic or anthropophilic*, to which theoretically important factor not much significance seems to have been attached, probably because little difference in the various species has been demonstrated, most fleas being zoophilic but prepared to feed on man in the absence of a better source of food.

(d) *Density of flea population* which will depend on the climate and the rat population varying directly with the latter, this is measured by a flea index, which gives the average number of fleas on each trapped rat, a cheopis index of at least 3 appears to be necessary for epizootic conditions.

(i) *Species*—The most important transmitter of rat-borne plague in the tropics is *Xenopsylla cheopis*. Another rat flea *Xenopsylla astia*, which is also common in the tropics is capable of transmitting plague but is a relatively poor transmitter, and when this flea predominates plague seldom reaches epidemic proportions. Further, it does not sustain the infection for long so that in endemic areas the disease is not carried over to the next season. Another relatively poor transmitter is *Xenopsylla brasiliensis*. (The low incidence of plague in Madras is attributed to the low cheopis index *X. astia* being the common flea).

In temperate countries, *Nosopsyllus fasciatus* and *Leptopsylla segnis* are the important transmitters.

*Pulex irritans*, the flea that commonly infests man, is capable of transmitting the infection (*vide supra*), as are many other fleas such as the dog and the cat fleas, *Ctenocephalus canis* and *Ctenocephalus felis*.

The other rodent carriers have their various fleas, most of which will in special circumstances bite man and are capable of transmitting plague.

For example, *Ceratophyllus tesquorum*, of the marmot will show the 'blocking' phenomenon if fed on an infected animal, *Dinopsyllus typhus* and *Xenopsylla eridos* of the gerbille and other small African rodents, and *Diamanus montanus* of the Californian ground squirrel are potential transmitters

(ii) **Environmental (climatic) conditions**—These have a marked effect on the flea. *X. cheopis* breeds best at a temperature between 68°F and 77°F, and in the presence of a high degree of humidity. Above 85°F, not only does breeding slow down, but this high temperature adversely affects plague-infected fleas, so that, as the temperature rises, transmission decreases and eventually ceases. Humidity is also an important factor, and in the tropics a saturation deficiency of less than 10 millibars is necessary for effective transmission under dry conditions. 'Blocked' fleas rapidly die. Thus, high temperatures and humidities, through their effect on the flea, are inimical to plague—a fact that influences its distribution and seasonal incidence. However, the surface atmospheric temperature is not always the important one, and it has been shown that, in deep rat burrows, temperature and humidity may remain suitable for flea survival and transmission of infection long after the surface atmosphere has become quite inimical to both. It is believed that it is by this means that infection survives the hot dry season in some places (George and Webster, 1934). Conversely, in cold countries, fleas may find micro climates, e.g. in houses and in ships, which are warm enough for them.

Where other fleas are the transmitters, the ranges of temperature and humidity ideal for propagation and to some extent for transmission may be different, but the same general principles will apply.

4 **Man and his environment**—There is little evidence of any differences in the susceptibility of different populations.

The density of the human population will of course influence the actual number of cases in a particular area, but overcrowding will only lead to an arithmetical, and not a geometrical, increase as would be the case in a truly epidemic disease (see footnote, p. 324). As, however, overcrowding is usually associated with insanitary conditions in which rats are likely to flourish, it may indirectly assist transmission. If man's environment is such as to provide harbourage and food for rats, and to encourage a close association between rats and man, the conditions will be favourable for a plague outbreak should the infection be introduced.

**To summarize**—Plague will be maximal when the infection is introduced into a locality where conditions are most favourable, that is, where *R. rattus* is the predominant rat and is abundant, where *X. cheopis* is the predominant flea and climate conditions favour its rapid propagation and longevity, and where the human population lives crowded together in towns under very insanitary conditions, it will be sub maximal when any of these sets of conditions is unfavourable, and it will probably be absent when any one of them is very unfavourable, and will certainly be absent if all of them are unfavourable.

### **Spread of infection outside endemic areas**

This is effected by either rat or flea migration, human migration *per se* plays no part in the spread of infection.

*R. rattus* seldom migrates any distance voluntarily, but may be carried by sea, rail, river, or road transport in merchandise. *R. norvegicus* is a more ready traveller. Wild rodents are believed to migrate long distances.

The ability of the flea to survive in grain bags, gunnies, etc., for long periods, even under unfavourable external atmospheric conditions, has only recently been fully appreciated and it is believed that this mode of

transfer of infected fleas plays an important part in carrying infection from place to place

### PATHOLOGY

**General reaction to infection**—There are three lines of defence against the invading bacillus (a) the skin (b) the lymphatic glands and (c) the humoral antibodies in the blood. If the bacilli are held up at the first barrier there will be evidence of the local resistance in the form of a vesicle or pustule, from which pass red lines radiating the inflammatory reaction in the proximal lymphatic channels caused by the toxins not the bacilli themselves. If the bacilli pass this barrier but are held up at the second line of defence namely the first group of lymphatic glands to which the lymphatic vessels pass the glands will be enlarged. If the bacilli pass the second line they reach the blood stream in small numbers at first and are distributed widely in the body where exercising their affinity for lymphatic glands they affect these mainly causing a general adenitis the infection may be overcome by the humoral antibodies in the blood and the bacilli will reappear in the blood only as temporary showers. If on the other hand, they overcome the humoral antibodies in the blood they will cause a septicæmia.

The invasion of the lung parenchyma is also probably a matter of local resistance, as well as of some natural or acquired intrinsic quality in the bacilli themselves but this appears to the writer to be an incident outside the natural sequence of invasion.

The local lesions are the clinical manifestations of an acute inflammatory reaction, and a rapid passage of the defences indicates a failure of the local resistance. Hence the local vesicle or pustule is more commonly seen in ambulant cases or in cases of *pestis minor*, and clinical buboes are usually absent in the severe septicæmic cases though at post-mortem examination the glands will be found slightly enlarged.

**Morbid anatomy**—There is usually a post mortem rise of temperature and early decomposition there may be ecchymoses all over the body and submucous hæmorrhages.

The plague toxin has a particular affinity for the endothelial cells of arterioles and lymphatics in these it causes degenerative changes which lead to extravasation of blood into the tissues. All the organs are congested and there are numerous hæmorrhages in the solid viscera into the lumina of the hollow viscera and into serous cavities.

In bubonic and septicæmic plague the lymphatic glands are enlarged red and congested and surrounded by a hæmorrhagic œdema. Histological sections show a hyperplasia, invasion by large numbers of bacilli which are multiplying small necrotic areas into which hæmorrhage has taken place and often small abscesses. The spleen is enlarged it is congested and there are hæmorrhagic foci throughout the organ. The liver is congested the parenchyma cells show degenerative changes. The kidneys are congested and there may be hæmorrhages into Bowman's capsule there are often hyaline fibrin thrombi in the Malpighian tufts. There may be hæmorrhages in the brain substance into the ventricles or into the subarachnoid space. The right side of the heart is dilated and there may be hæmorrhagic extravasations into the myocardium and a hæmorrhagic pericardial effusion.

In pneumonic cases there is a hæmorrhagic pleurisy and the alveoli are filled with a hæmorrhagic exudate. The inflammatory condition extends to the bronchioles the bronchi and even the larynx and trachea and the bronchial lymphatic glands are involved. It is usually a central pneumonia.

The blood picture—There is never any anæmia except in the chronic suppurative stages of the infection, on the contrary, the great dehydration in the early stages may lead to polycythæmia. A leucocytosis is almost invariable, except in the very severe pneumonic cases when paradoxically it may be absent. The count often rises to 20 to 25 thousand leucocytes per cmm, or even higher with an increase in the percentage of lymphocytes, and a decrease in large mononuclears, at first, but later there may be a relative as well as an actual granulocytosis.

In severe septicæmic cases, bacilli may be present in the blood in sufficiently large numbers to make it possible to find them in an ordinary blood smear.

The urine—This is scanty and highly coloured. It usually contains an appreciable amount of albumin except in very mild cases. The urea, uric acid and chloride excretion are reduced. A few red blood cells are commonly seen, and there may be obvious hæmaturia.

Suppression of urine may occur in severe cases, when there is much dehydration and a low blood pressure.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Clinical types—These have been foreshadowed in the preceding paragraphs, there are five main clinical types—

- (i) *The ambulant* in which there is only a vesicle at the site of invasion with a little local lymphangitis and no constitutional symptoms.
- (ii) *Pestis minor*, in which there is a single gland or a single group affected and only mild constitutional symptoms.
- (iii) *Bubonic plague* in which the local group of glands mainly but also other glands in different parts of the body are affected and there are usually grave constitutional symptoms.
- (iv) *Septicæmic plague* in which there is an established virulent septicæmia and usually a rapidly fatal course.
- (v) *Pneumonic plague*.

The so called cellulæ cutaneous type, which is now relatively rare but from historical records appears to have at one time been the common form, may occur in either the bubonic type, in which the local cellulæ-cutaneous lesion corresponds to the bubo, or in the septicæmic type, it is probably more common in the latter.

It should perhaps be emphasized that there is no sharp line of distinction between the bubonic and the septicæmic types, if there is a general adenitis, there must at some time have been a bacillary shower in the blood. In the severe bubonic type these showers are probably repeated frequently, it is only when the bacillary invasion overcomes though perhaps only temporarily, the humoral antibodies in the blood that a septicæmia is established.

The first two types need no further description.

### *Bubonic and Septicæmic Plague*

The incubation period is from two to eight days, rarely longer, the average is about four days.

There are sometimes prodromal symptoms for a day or two with malaise, anorexia, apathy, headache and possibly aching pains in the groin, or elsewhere at the site of the subsequent buboes. Usually however the onset is sudden, with a rigor and a temperature rising to



Figure 105 Temperature chart in a case of bubonic plague

103° or higher in the first 24 hours the pulse is rapid and the respirations are increased. There is a severe frontal headache the mental state is confused and the speech slurred there are tremors of the tongue and twitchings of the face muscles and the gait is very unsteady. There may be severe pains in the back and at the sites of the commencing buboes. The skin is hot and dry, the face bloated and the conjunctivæ injected. The tongue is swollen and furred, it is very dry and tends to be dark in the centre at first, and then all over (parrot tongue). Vomiting is common. The throat is parched and the patient is very thirsty. The urine is scanty. Prostration becomes extreme within 48 hours of the onset. The temperature may rise higher and the apathy and dullness change to excitement and eventually sometimes to a maniacal state.

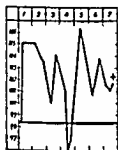


Figure 100 Temperature chart in a fatal case of septicæmic plague

The course of the disease.—The temperature continues as a high remittent fever for two to five days and then may fall suddenly, or gradually. The sudden drop is sometimes a prelude to collapse and death but it does occur in non fatal cases. In the more favourable cases the temperature comes down gradually reaching normal within five or six days. The fall of temperature is usually synchronous with the full development of the buboes but the temperature may rise again if and when the buboes suppurate.

The buboes.—These begin to appear about the second day. In the severe septicæmic case they can usually be felt but death follows before any further development takes place. In the bubonic case they develop rapidly they are red swollen and tender the discrete glands cannot be felt as they are matted and

surrounded by oedematous cellular tissue. They are very painful and the patient lies with his knees flexed and/or arms extended to relieve the pressure.

The site of the invasion determines which are the main glands affected. The bare footed Indian is usually bitten on the toe so that in India 70 per cent suffer from glands in the groin with 20 per cent in the axilla and 10 per cent elsewhere. But this proportion is not maintained in all populations and in Ecuador in certain primitive tribes who kill rodents by biting off their heads the submaxillary group of glands is usually affected (vide *supra*).

In bubonic cases the glands eventually suppurate and may become secondarily infected.

In septicæmic plague the lymphatic glands are only slightly enlarged in the fatal cases but if the patient recovers or if death is postponed beyond the usual four or five days some enlargement may be noticed and in the former cases suppuration may even occur.

The cellular cutaneous lesions.—These may take the form of carbuncles surrounded by a ring of vesicles which later coalesce or, at the site of a purpuric patch the skin becomes moist and necrotic and the surrounding skin is red and indurated eventually the necrotic centre breaks down and an indolent ulcer forms.

Complications.—The commonest complications are associated with the buboes. These may suppurate point towards the surface and eventually burst if they are not opened or they may involve the underlying vessels and cause profuse and fatal hæmorrhage. When they do burst they may form chronic sinuses which become secondarily infected and the patient may die some weeks later from sepsis exhaustion or amyloid disease. Or chronic ulcers may form.



Another complication is septic pneumonia, which will often develop in a debilitated patient with open sinuses, this condition should not be confused with pneumonic plague

### *Pneumonic Plague*

The onset is usually very sudden and most of the symptoms described above occur, but after 24 hours the patient begins to cough, bringing up a watery sputum which is at first clear, but soon becomes blood-stained, and eventually develops the classical 'prune-juice' colour and consistency. The patient has an anxious expression. There is not usually much pain in the chest, but the patient is cyanotic and some dyspnoea develops early. The physical signs are not characteristic of pneumonia, there is little impairment of percussion note and the vocal resonance is unchanged, but there may be fine rales at the bases.

The heart dullness often extends to the right of the sternum and the heart sounds are feeble. The blood pressure is low. The pulse rate becomes rapid early, increases, and eventually becomes uncountable. Death sometimes occurs within 48 hours from the onset, and it is seldom deferred beyond the fifth day, the condition is always fatal.

Hæmorrhages are frequent, they may take the form of submucous hæmorrhages, purpuric spots, epistaxis, hæmoptysis, hæmatemesis, hæmaturia, and/or melæna.

### DIAGNOSIS

**Clinical**—A typical case of severe bubonic or septicæmic plague presents a characteristic picture, the sudden onset, high temperature, rapid pulse, great prostration, bloated appearance and conjunctival suffusion, the slurred speech and staggering gait, the apathy and mental confusion, and eventually the buboes, in the former, are not likely to be confused with any other condition, except possibly typhus, if the buboes are late in developing. However, bacteriological confirmation will be desirable.

**Bacteriological**—The methods that can be employed are (i) direct examination of a stained smear, (ii) culture, and (iii) animal inoculation.

From the primary vesicle of the ambulant case, or the bubo of pestis minor, material can be obtained, by gland puncture in the latter case, for direct examination or culture, animal inoculation will usually be unnecessary as the organism will in most instances be uncontaminated by other organisms. In the early stages of bubonic plague, the same remark applies, but later when the glands suppurate it will often be necessary to resort to animal inoculation to confirm the diagnosis.

In septicæmic plague—and it must be remembered that all bubonic cases are potentially septicæmic—the organism can be obtained from the blood, rarely by direct examination but always by culture and animal inoculation.

In pneumonic plague the plague bacilli are present in large numbers in the sputum, they can be recognized in a direct smear, but it will be advisable to confirm the finding by animal inoculation, whenever possible, as culture will be more difficult on account of contamination.

**Outline of technique**—(i) Smears should be stained with Gram's stain and methylene or thionin blue. *Pasteurella pestis* is gram negative and the characteristic bipolar staining will be easily recognized but confirmation of the identity of the organism should always be obtained if possible, this is essential where one is dealing with an isolated case.

(ii) To obtain a culture, inoculate blood sugar plates (pH 6.8 to 7.2) and broth tubes with gland juice. Blood from the finger may be inoculated directly on to a plate, or 5 ccm from a vein into 100 ccm broth flask. The broth and plates should be kept at 22°C. or at room temperature, except in very hot or

cold climates. On the plate delicate translucent dew-drop colonies appear, these are sticky and can be pushed along the surface of the plate. The broth should show a pure growth.

The certain identification of the culture is complicated by the fact that the plague bacillus is difficult to emulsify so that serological identification is almost impossible. Animal inoculation is usually considered essential.

(iii) For animal inoculation it is best to use two white rats and two guinea-pigs. Some of the material should be inoculated subcutaneously into the groin and some rubbed into a shaved area on the abdomen of one of each species. The latter procedure is important because if the material is inoculated subcutaneously the contaminating organisms may kill the animal before the plague infection develops. In a positive case the animals will die of plague septicaemia within 3 to 5 days. (Animals must be kept in insect-proof cages during these tests.)

The animal dying of plague will show general subcutaneous congestion and a fibrinous exudate in the peritoneum and locally necrosis of the tissues haemorrhagic oedema and the lymphatic glands enlarged and buried in haemorrhagic oedema. At the site of the percutaneous inoculation i.e. the shaved area there may be umbilicated pustules. In the guinea-pig milium necrotic nodules will be seen on the surface and throughout all the organs. Pure cultures of plague bacilli will be obtainable from most of these sites.

For the identification of the cultures of *Pasturella pestis* 0.1 ccm of a 24 hour broth culture should be inoculated intraperitoneally the animal will die in two or three days.

**The agglutination test**—This test is of no value in the diagnosis of plague for the reason stated above namely, the difficulty of obtaining a bacillary emulsion, because the agglutinins appear late, the titre is low, and bacteriological diagnosis is relatively easy.

**Differential diagnosis**—One has to consider any febrile condition either severe or mild, and the various venereal buboes e.g. syphilis and lymphopathia venereum, other causes of local, e.g. sepsis, and general lymphadenitis, e.g. glandular fever, it will not be possible to review these in detail here.

As mentioned above, a septicæmic or a severe attack before the buboes develop may be mistaken for typhus and of course any other severe toxæmic condition, the typhus rash should be looked for, but it appears too late to be of any real value.

## PREVENTION

Prevention has to be considered under two main headings —

(A) *The prevention of the introduction of plague into a non-endemic area*

(B) *The control of plague in an endemic area*

The reader is referred back to p. 328 where the transmission cycle is discussed.

**A. The prevention of the introduction of plague into a non endemic area**—The essentials for plague to occur are shortly, the plague bacillus, the flea vector, the rodent reservoir, and susceptible man living in a suitable environment. Except the plague bacillus, in most countries the other essentials are present and suitable to a greater or lesser degree for plague to occur, the introduction of the plague bacillus would be likely to start an outbreak. The bacillus may be introduced in its rodent reservoir or in a flea vector. Theoretically it could also be introduced in an infected man, but this is probably a negligible danger.

It would lead to much duplication to discuss the preventive measures under the two headings separately. All the measures that are used to control plague in an endemic area could be applied in a potentially endemic area, as safeguards in the event of the introduction of the bacillus but how far it will be profitable to employ them will depend on the extent of the danger, and this will depend on the proximity of an endemic area and on

other factors. For example, it will always be worth controlling the rats in dock areas in any country, but on the other hand prophylactic inoculation of the population where plague has not yet occurred would be a waste of energy.

References will be made in appropriate places to the prevention of rat and flea migration, for it will be mostly in the endemic areas themselves that the measures to prevent introduction of infection into new countries will have to be made.

**B The control of plague in an endemic area**—If this cycle can be broken at any point, plague will not occur, if it can be weakened, plague will be reduced.

In pneumonic plague the infection is passed from man to man (see figure 102, p. 328, right-hand cycle), isolation of the sick is therefore essential to protect the general population, doctors, attendants, and nurses must be protected from droplet infection by masks and other measures, and the community as a whole should be protected against the effects of infection, by prophylactic inoculation.

In the transmission of bubonic plague, man does not constitute an essential link (see figure 102, middle cycle) and, in an outbreak, infected man is an almost negligible factor as a reservoir of infection, for the reason that the septicaemia seldom reaches the degree necessary for transmission, and that his fleas are poor transmitters. Isolation and treatment of the sick alone will therefore achieve nothing in the way of checking an outbreak of bubonic plague, though the possibility of the development of pneumonic plague during a bubonic plague outbreak will make such a measure a reasonable precaution.

If, however, the rodent-flea-rodent cycle is broken, by attacking the rodent-flea or the rodent, or both, the epizootic will cease and the sporadic infection of man will no longer occur.

If it is not possible to break the epizootic, man can to some extent be protected from infection by excluding rats from his habitations and protecting his person from the bites of rat-fleas.

Finally, man can be protected from the effects of infection by increasing his immunity by inoculation.

Prevention must therefore be considered under the following headings—

- 1 *Isolation and treatment of the sick*
- 2 *Measures against rats or other rodents*
- 3 *Measures against fleas*
- 4 *Protection of man from rats and fleas*
- 5 *Prophylactic inoculation*

1 *Isolation and treatment of the sick*.—There is little more that need be said here under this heading, except it must be remembered that it is mainly against droplet infection in pneumonic plague that protection has to be given to attendants, so that the hospital rooms should be light and airy and wherever possible some form of screen protection should be provided for the personnel.

2 *Measures against rats or other rodents*.—These measures will constitute insurance against plague infection in any country, but they are naturally more important in an endemic area, and they must be intensified in the presence of an outbreak or when an outbreak is threatened.

A plague epizootic amongst the local rat population, or a high infection rate amongst fleas, is the danger signal, and an efficient public health department will, so to speak, keep its finger on the pulse of the rat and flea populations, so that where and when conditions are most favourable for an outbreak the measures may be concentrated.

A large number of deaths amongst rats or of 'rat falls' as they are called is a warning signal that has been known to the inhabitants of plague infected countries for a thousand years and the modern health officer should aim at getting his information ahead of this.

The rodent factors that determine incidence (see p 329) are susceptibility and immunity habits and density of population. The former two are dependent largely on species and though it is true that the natural replacement of one species by another has probably influenced the incidence of plague it will not be possible to do this artificially so that measures against rats amount to the reduction of rat population and the prevention of rat migration.

Rats will only multiply as long as they are provided with harbourage and food and the construction of rat proof buildings and particularly rat proof grain stores is an important measure of prevention of plague. Other general measures include the proper disposal of refuse the provision of covered receptacles for household garbage and the rat proofing of the sewage system.

The domestic cat is a valuable assistant in keeping down the rat population in warehouses ships etc.

Rat destruction will of course form an important part of the programme. There are many methods these include trapping poisoning infecting with Danysz virus and gassing. The last named is by far the most effective.

There are many forms of rat trap some kill the rats others capture them alive. It should be remembered that the fleas leave a dead rat therefore during a plague epizootic it is advisable to use traps which keep the rats alive or which destroy the fleas as well. Rats must then be killed in such a way that their fleas are also killed or the body should be immediately plunged into strong phenyl or other disinfectant. The dead rat is a grave danger and should be handled only by specially protected personnel.

If the rat flea population is to be investigated it will also be necessary to capture the rats alive. They are then chloroformed or placed in a gas chamber this will kill the fleas also. The fleas are then combed out counted and identified.

There are innumerable rat poisons. These again should not be used during an epizootic. Many of them are dangerous to cattle and other animals and are therefore of limited use. Barium carbonate is however a useful poison because one to two grains will kill a rat which usually goes into the open—in search of water—to die whereas dogs can take up to 100 grains and cats and chickens from 10 to 15 grains without harm. Small pellets of a mixture of three parts of barium carbonate and four parts of dough are made and are left in suitable places. It will be as well to vary the excipient and tallow is also a useful one.

Gassing has to be carried out by trained squads but it is by far the most effective. Some form of cyanogen gas is the best as it kills both rats and fleas. In ships it is introduced by an elaborate system of tubes which are carried to all the corners of the holds of ships and then gas is fed from a central cylinder or generator where it is produced by the action of acid on potassium cyanide. After sufficient time has elapsed the gas is drawn out again or blown out by pumping in air there is danger from pockets of gas remaining in the holds. The gas is sometimes mixed with some pungent gas that acts as a warning of the presence of the scentless hydrocyanic acid gas. Half an ounce of potassium cyanide will produce enough gas to fumigate 100 cubic feet of hold or warehouse.

For rat burrows an easier way is to apply the cyanogen gas in the form of a powder from which the gas is given off either slowly or rapidly.

Cymag is such a powder made by Imperial Chemical Industries. It contains 20 per cent hydrocyanic acid, and the gas is given off slowly. Another form is 'calcid brickettes' which are ground up into a powder and blown into the holes. In these cases, all the holes must be effectively blocked up before the gas or powder is pumped in, or the rats escape, this applies particularly to the powders that give off the gas slowly.

In India, the *neem-batti*, which can be made locally with the addition of simple chemicals, is used widely. Potassium chlorate—grains 120, potassium nitrate—grains 90, and sulphur—grains 120, powdered and mixed with 5 drachms of mustard oil are made into a paste, to this a drachm of pepper and a handful of neem leaves are added, this is rolled into the form of a candle, and a cloth wick that has been dipped in saturated potassium chlorate solution and dried is attached. The whole candle is dried thoroughly. For use the wick is lighted and the *batti* is then thrust into a rat hole and the hole closed behind it. The *neem-batti* gives off sulphur dioxide which kills rats, but it not so effective against fleas.

The measure to be adopted against other rodents will naturally depend on the rodent concerned.

In the United States a very elaborate system of investigation of wild rodents and their fleas is in operation, so that, as in the case of rats, the danger may be met when and where it arises. It is probably this vigilance that has kept the country free from plague in the past (*vide supra*).

**Protection of ships against rats**—Inter-country movements of rats is almost entirely on ships, and international quarantine regulations are rightly aimed mainly at the 'deratization' of ships. The effect of such regulations is shown in the fact that the U S Public Health Service report that, whereas 50 per cent of ships arriving at Atlantic ports were rat-infested between 1925 and 1927, the percentage had dropped to 8.4 per cent in 1937.

The danger is from shore-rats going on board at the infected ports, and ship-rats going ashore at uninfected ports. Therefore, ships lying alongside in plague-infested ports should be at least four feet from the dock, all hawsers should be provided with efficient rat-guards, i.e. metal discs at least three feet in diameter, properly adjusted i.e. fixed at right-angles to the hawsers, and all gangways should be protected by a band of fresh tar and should be raised at night when not in use.

**3 Measures against fleas**—Most of the gassing measures are as effective against fleas as against rats, and there are few measures that are designed to destroy fleas independently of their rat hosts, as suggested above, care should be taken, when rats are killed, that their fleas perish with them, and both trap and rat should be placed in disinfectant.

The floors and particularly the corners of rooms where rats have been found should be pyrethrum sprayed, the strength used for mosquitoes (*qv*), namely, a one-in-twenty dilution in kerosene of the usual concentrated pyrethrum extract, will be suitable.

Clothes and bedding that are suspected of harbouring fleas can also be sprayed with this.

Fleas are likely to be carried from place to place and country to country in grain bags, cotton and jute bails, gunny rolls, etc., and suitable disinfection of any such material coming from an active endemic area should be carried out.

**4 Protection of man from rats and fleas**—The building of rat-proof houses is much easier than the rat-proofing of existing houses. The main points in a rat-proof house are that the lower walls and floors should be of hard brick and concrete, respectively, and that the former should

sink at least two feet into the ground to prevent rats burrowing under it. All ventilators and drains must be protected by iron gratings.

During a plague epidemic, evacuation of all infected houses, as indicated by 'rat falls' as well as by human cases, is an important measure. The occupants should not return for several months, and then only when the house has been shown to be plague-free by placing caged guinea-pigs in the house for several nights, if they survive the house is probably free from infection.

For those working in a plague-infected area and especially those employed on plague duty, the clothing should be carefully selected. White is preferable, as fleas can be seen easily and picked off. Fleas can, but do not, as a rule, bite through clothes. The clothes should be such that fleas cannot get inside them, therefore trousers and shorts are unsuitable and should be replaced by knee breeches or 'jodhpurs'. Gum-boots give good protection but the tops should be closed, the sleeves must be tightly bound round the wrists and those handling rats must wear leather or rubber gloves, and an open neck is also a danger, as fleas may fall from the roof.

### 5. Prophylactic inoculation —

**Historical**—Haffkine introduced the inoculation against plague at the end of the last century during the last great pandemic. This was the first occasion on which a vaccine had been used on a large scale as a public health measure. He used a six weeks-old heat-killed ( $65^{\circ}\text{C}$  for one hour) culture of *Pestis pestis*. In broth to which 0.5 per cent phenol had been added and gave 4 c.c.m. to an adult. Figures collected by the Plague Commission suggested that this inoculation caused an 80 per cent reduction in the infection rate and an 80 per cent reduction in mortality amongst those infected. Since this date many millions of doses of this vaccine have been given in India and elsewhere but the statistical value of some of the data that was collected by the Plague Commission and later has been questioned.

In 1907, Strong, working in the Philippines, used a live avirulent strain of plague as a vaccine but this vaccine did not come into general use until 1935 when de Vogel and Otten re-introduced vaccination with an avirulent living culture of plague; it has been reported that the immunity produced by this live strain is much higher than that produced by a dead virulent culture. This live avirulent strain has now been used in Java for some years and over two million doses given without ill-effects.

Although it is not yet finally settled which is the more effective, the modified Haffkine vaccine now used in India, or the live avirulent vaccine of Otten now used exclusively in Java, Madagascar, and elsewhere, at present the indications outside India are all in favour of the latter, whilst in India the policy at present is to trust a well-tried friend. This policy has been influenced by the fact that avirulent live vaccines tend to deteriorate rapidly, so that there would be great difficulties in the way of maintaining stocks, and distributing the vaccine in India.

Certain modifications in the original Haffkine vaccine have been made, e.g. it is now grown for 48 hours at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$  on agar, and a saline suspension is made, this is killed by heating at  $54^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 15 minutes, 0.5 per cent phenol is added, and it is standardized to contain 1000 million organisms per c.c.m. The antigenic properties of this vaccine have been shown to be much higher than those of the old vaccine, mice are used for these tests.

The vaccine is best given in two doses, 0.5 c.c.m. for the first dose and 1.0 c.c.m. a week later. The reactions produced by the earlier vaccines were very severe, but with the modern vaccine they are less, though still more severe than with most vaccines. The vaccine provides protection for six to eight months.

## TREATMENT

Good nursing will play a very important part in determining the recovery of the patient. He should be confined strictly to bed and not be allowed to do anything for himself, he will want plenty of fluid, possibly drip-feed intravenous glucose, and frequent fomentations to the buboes. Further, such possible emergencies as hæmorrhage from septic erosion of large vessels may have to be met.

The treatment may be considered under the headings, (a) *symptomatic*, (b) *local*, and (c) *specific*.

**A Symptomatic treatment**—The treatment is that for any asthenic febrile disease, for hyperpyrexia, hydrotherapy should be employed, and antipyretic and depressant drugs avoided, the diet should be fluid but nourishing, but since the disease is a short one, it is not necessary to force the calories though the patient should be encouraged to drink freely, imperial drink, barley water, or glucose water. Intravenous glucose, 5 per cent, can be given fairly rapidly if there is a lowered blood pressure, but otherwise by the drip-feed method almost continuously.

For the generalized pain and restlessness, phenobarbitone should first be tried and, if this fails, morphia may be given judiciously. Digitalis and strophanthus are recommended as a routine prescription, caffeine is a useful stimulant and probably better than alcohol in this condition. Collapse should be met by intravenous therapy and subcutaneous ether, camphor in oil, or cardiazol.

**B Local treatment**—The buboes may play an important part in the symptomatology, and they may require vigorous local treatment. The fever is likely to remain high until the buboes develop, and these may cause a secondary rise when they suppurate. There was an old teaching that it was good practice to relieve the tension by opening the buboes early to prevent the infection disseminating, such a procedure was entirely opposed to modern surgical teaching, and was much more likely to cause a septicæmia, which in fact it often did, than to prevent it.

In the early stages, the buboes may be painted with liniment of iodine, or, if they are very painful, with glycerine and belladonna, fomented frequently, or the infra-red lamp applied to them. On no account should the buboes be opened until they are definitely pointing, when it will be permissible to put in a scalpel to relieve the pressure and pain. When they are opened, they should be allowed to drain, sulphonamide or sulphapyridine powder should be put on and a dry dressing applied, or, if there is any surrounding inflammation, hot fomentations might be continued. Sulphapyridine in full therapeutic doses by mouth at this stage is also useful. If these sinuses are allowed to become secondarily infected, the course of the disease may be prolonged for weeks or even months.

**C Specific treatment**—The present indications are that serum treatment is likely to be replaced entirely by chemotherapy in the near future. Serum treatment—Yersin's serum has no direct action on the *Pasteurella* infection, nor is it antitoxic, but is described as 'anti-infectious' (Strong, 1942), that is, it prevents the establishment of infection in an infected person, and therefore it must be given early. Even after excluding a group of cases for various reasons, a procedure which is always open to suspicion, it has seldom been possible to show more than about a 10 per cent improvement in death rate, e.g. from 74 per cent in 200 controls to 63.5 per cent in serum-treated cases. Recently, Sokhey (1936) has produced an anti-serum which has proved more efficacious, and in several series the death rate has been of the order of 25 per cent, with the control series showing about a 50 per cent death rate.

The initial dose recommended is usually for 50 to 100 c cm, and this must be repeated daily, until the temperature is normal

**Chemotherapy**—Prior to the introduction of the sulphonamide drugs, many drugs had been tried without any conspicuous successes, e.g. intra-venous iodine, mercurochrome, germanin

Schütze (1939) demonstrated the efficacy of sulphapyridine in plague-infected rats and mice, and Wagle *et al* (1941) obtained good results in human plague with both sulphapyridine and sulphathiazole, their death rates were 52 per cent in controls, 28 per cent in serum treated patients, 24 per cent with sulphapyridine and 15 per cent with sulphathiazole

These workers gave 1 gramme *statim* and 0.5 gramme four hourly, it is possible that better results might have been obtained with full therapeutic doses, and there is an obvious possibility that some of the newer compounds, e.g. sulphadiazine, may prove more efficacious

### PROGNOSIS

This of course will depend on treatment to a large extent

The pneumonic form is always fatal

In published series of treated cases the control series always have death rates between 50 and 75 per cent. In such series, ambulant cases and cases of pestis minor will probably not be included, so that the gross death rate is probably less

The prospects of the patient depend on his resistance, and can be measured by the degree of septicæmia from which he suffers. In cases with uncontrolled septicæmia and large numbers of bacilli in the blood, the death rate is probably 100 per cent, but, in bubonic cases with only bacillary 'showers', it is between 25 and 50 per cent

In the septicæmic case, the patient usually dies within the first five days. However, the prognosis should always be guarded, as recovery sometimes takes place in the most desperate cases, whereas a patient who appears to be getting on well may suddenly fall back dead

Death may take place after several weeks from septic complications

### REFERENCES

- BACOT A W., and MARTIN, C J. *Observations on the Mechanism of the Transmission of Plague by Fleas* *J Hyg., Plague Supp.* III 423
- GAUTHIER J C., and RAYBAUD A. *Sur le rôle des Parasites du Rat dans la Transmission de la Peste bubonique* *Compt Rend Hebd Soc Biol* 54, 1497
- GEORGE P V., and WEBSTER, W J. *Plague Inquiry in the Cumbum Valley, South India* *Indian J Med Res* 22 77
- HAMPTON B C (1940) *Plague in the United States* *Pub Health Rep.* 55, 1143
- LOWE J (1942) .. *Note on the Work of Dr P L Simond on the Transmission and Epidemiology of Plague* *Indian Med Gaz* 77, 418
- NUTTALL G H F (1899) *On the Role of Insects Arachnids and Mynopods as Carriers in the Spread of Bacterial and Parasitic Diseases of Man and Animals. A Critical and Historical Study* *Johns Hopkins Hosp Rep* 8 154
- OGATA M (1897) .. *Ueber die Pestepidemie in Formosa* *Centralbl Bakt.* 21, 769
- OTTEN, L (1935) .. *Pest vaccine op Java* *Geneesk Tydschr Nederl Indie* 75 1850 (Abstract—*Trop Dis Bull* 1936 33, 365)
- ROGERS L (1933) .. *Notes on Making Epidemic Forecasts* *Indian Med Gaz* 68, 125
- SCHÜTZE H (1939) .. *Chemotherapy in Plague Infection* *Lancet* : 266



- SIMOND, P L (1898) .. La Propagation de la Peste. *Ann. Inst. Pasteur*, **12**, 625.
- SOKHEY, S S (1936) .. Un Nouveau Sérum Antipesteux. *Bull. Office Internat Hyg. Pub.*, **28**, 1097.
- STRONG, R P (1907) .. Studies in Plague Immunity. *Philippine J. Sci.*, **2**, 155.
- Idem* (1942) .. Plague. *Stall's Tropical Diseases*, **1**, 651.
- DE VOGEL, W (1935) .. H K Lewis and Co., Ltd, London
- .. Vaccinations antipesteuses avec un virus vivant aux Indes Néerlandaises. *Bull. Office Internat Hyg. Pub.*, **27**, 1542 (Abstract—*Trop. Dis. Bull.*, 1936, **33**, 364)
- WAGLE, P M., SOKHEY, S S, CHEMOTHERAPY IN PLAGUE. *Indian Med. Gaz.*, **76**, 29
- DIKSHIT, B B, and GANAPATHY, K (1941)

### GROSS PATHOLOGY OF PLAGUE IN NATURALLY INFECTED RODENTS \*

The gross pathology of plague in rodents is of importance from the information which it gives on the extent and geographical distribution of the infection among the rodent population. The importance of the gross pathology has diminished somewhat in recent years since it has become a practice to collect ectoparasites from rodents and or their habitats, which ectoparasites are pooled and inoculated into laboratory animals. This procedure often appears to be more effective in detecting infection than the post-mortem examination of the rodents themselves.

*In rats*—Natural plague infection in rats may occur without recognizable gross lesions but usually well marked pathological changes are present. The appearances in acute plague usually are some combination of two or more of the following:

- (i) Diffuse, dusky subcutaneous congestion
- (ii) A bubo, usually in the cervical or inguinal region and showing some evidence of necrosis
- (iii) Numerous small necrotic foci or yellowish granules in the liver.
- (iv) A much enlarged firm, dark spleen
- (v) Serous, often blood-stained pleural effusion

Residual 'chronic' or 'subacute' plague may be manifested by purulent foci in the lymphatic glands or viscera or adhesions between organs.

*In the ground-squirrel*—In the acute form the essential gross lesion is a haemorrhagic and necrotic bubo, or more than one of these. In addition, enlargement of the spleen is sometimes present. In the less acute type, there is a caseous bubo without haemorrhage, but with necrotic foci in the lungs, liver, or spleen or in one of these organs, necrotic foci may be present in the viscera without detectable pathology of the peripheral glands. Other rodents show nothing beyond purulent foci in an enlarged lymph node lesions that have been called residual buboes or chronic plague. These subacute and chronic lesions doubtless in some instances at least represent examples of recovering infections. The gross lesions of plague in the ground-squirrel are very similar to those of tularemia, indeed usually they cannot be distinguished except by bacteriological investigations.

\* This note was very kindly prepared by Dr George W McCoy, Medical Director (retired), United States Public Health Service, at my request. L E N

# TULARÆMIA

	PAGE
DEFINITION	345
HISTORICAL	345
ÆTIOLOGY	346
<i>The causal organism</i>	346
<i>Pathogenicity in animals</i>	346
<i>Transmission</i>	346
Sources of infection—Agents of transmission—Route of entry	346
<i>Immunity</i>	346
EPIDEMIOLOGY	346
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	347
<i>Epidemic features</i>	347
<i>Seasonal incidence</i>	347
<i>Age, sex, and occupational incidences</i>	347
PATHOLOGY	348
<i>Blood picture</i>	348
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	348
<i>Clinical types</i>	348
<i>The clinical course</i>	
The incubation period—Onset—Fever—Glandular enlargement—Rash—Pneumonic form	349
<i>Complications</i>	349
DIAGNOSIS	
Clinical—Bacteriological—Agglutination test—Intra dermal test	350
PREVENTION	350
TREATMENT	350
PROGNOSIS	

**Definition**—Tularæmia is an acute febrile disease of moderate severity, with a tendency to pneumonic complications caused by *Bacterium tularensis* which is transmitted to man from rabbits and other wild life in many ways—for example by the bite of insects such as *Chrysops discalis* and by direct contact with infected animals—and which usually causes a primary lesion at the point of entry

**Historical**—*Bacterium tularensis* was first encountered as a plague-like infection in a ground-squirrel in Tulare county, California by G. W. McCoy in 1911 and was later identified as the causal organism of deer fly fever in man in the state of Utah. The disease was given the name tularæmia by Francis in 1921

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism—*Bacterium tularensis* (or *Brucella tularensis*) is a very small gram-negative cocco-bacillus, 0.2 to 0.7 $\mu$  by 0.2 $\mu$ , in specimens stained with weak carbol-fuchsin or aniline gentian violet, it is surrounded by a clear area that probably represents a capsule. It grows on glucose blood agar to which a piece of rabbit's spleen has been added. It is killed by heat (60°C for 10 minutes), but survives drying, and possibly for this reason it is readily transmitted to laboratory workers.

Pathogenicity in animals—While some 24 small wild animals have been found infected in nature, a number of others, as well as birds, have been shown to be susceptible. Most laboratory animals are very susceptible, but the guinea-pig is the most satisfactory experimental animal and the rat the least. The guinea-pig dies with a generalized infection three to five days after inoculation, and shows lesions similar to those caused by plague. Attenuated cultures however may produce a non-fatal infection.

### TRANSMISSION

Sources of infection—Up to 1940, twenty-four species of wild-life had been found infected in nature, but wild rabbits and hares are by far the most important source, and 90 per cent of the cases occurring in the United States can be traced directly or indirectly to these animals.

Agents of transmission—There is no disease that has such a variety of modes of transmission as tularemia, it may be transmitted to man by contaminated drinking water, or by his eating undercooked infected animals, it is known to be transmitted to man by a variety of blood sucking insects, including *Chrysops discalis*, *Dermacentor andersoni*, *variabilis* and *occidentalis*, and *Haemaphysalis leporispalustris*, others, including mosquitoes, have been suspected, and it is perhaps most commonly transmitted directly by the handling of infected animals and birds. In the transmission from animal to animal, innumerable animal parasites are involved.

Route of entry—The organism may enter through the skin, at the site of an abrasion or possibly through the intact skin, through external mucous membranes, e.g. the conjunctiva, via the intestinal tract, and possibly via the respiratory tract, or it may be injected into the deeper layers of the skin by a biting insect.

Immunity—There is evidence that immunity is complete and lifelong. No true second attack has been reported.

Agglutinins appear usually in the second week, but their appearance may be delayed until the third week. A titre of 1 in 80 is considered diagnostic, but the titre may rise to 1 in 5000, agglutinins usually persist for many years, if not for life, and in one case they are believed to have persisted for 33 years (Forsay, 1940). There is some slight degree of cross-immunity with (other) brucella, but none with pasteurella infections.

An anti serum has been produced, but its therapeutic efficacy seems questionable. On the other hand, some definite immunity appears to be conferred by vaccination with killed cultures.



Figure 107  
*Chrysops discalis*

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Geographical distribution—All the earlier studies of this disease were conducted in the United States and it has now been reported from every state in the Union. It has also been reported from Japan (1925), Russia (1926),

Norway (1929), Canada (1930), Sweden (1931), Austria (1935), and more recently from Turkey, Asia Minor, and North Africa

The disease can lay little claim to being tropical but as it has certain features common to many tropical diseases especially in regard to its etiology, a short description of it is included in this book. The disease is probably more widespread than our present information on this subject indicates and with the dissemination of the knowledge of the clinical picture of the methods of diagnosis and of the various modes of transmission amongst medical men in other countries, it seems very probable that it will be found to have a much wider distribution.

**Epidemic features**—The disease may appear in epidemic form when a water-supply is contaminated, when a number of persons take an infected meal, or when, in special circumstances, they are subjected to bites by infected insects, such an incident occurred in Utah when 30 boys in a camp of 170 were infected by the bites of *Chrysops discalis* on their uncovered backs. Nevertheless tularemia is essentially a sporadic disease, it is doubtful if the infection is ever transmitted from man to man, directly or indirectly.

**Seasonal incidence**—Man may be infected at any time of the year, and the season of incidence will depend on the mode of infection. This is very well illustrated in figure 108 which shows the season of incidence in 347

cases occurring over a period of 12 years, in the United States, arranged according to their probable mode of infection. Transmission by the dog tick, *Dermacentor variabilis*, occurs in nearly any month in the year, but mostly in the spring, transmission by *Dermacentor andersoni*, the wood tick, occurs during the late spring and summer when the insects are most active, transmission by *Chrysops discalis* is confined strictly to the summer months with a marked peak in July, and transmission from the handling of dead rabbits is essentially a winter incident.

**Age, sex and occupational incidences**—These again are entirely dependent on the mode of infection. Hunters and campers, housewives, butchers, and laboratory workers are amongst those most commonly infected.

## PATHOLOGY

The organism first produces a local lesion at the site of entry but there is

rapid generalization of the infection, via the lymphatic and blood stream, if the patient's natural resistance is high, only a temporary bacteremia occurs, otherwise a septicemia.

The proximal lymphatic glands are first infected, and later there may be a generalized lymphadenitis, the lymph nodes become inflamed and may eventually break down and form abscesses.

Post-mortem, small necrotic foci are found in the spleen, both under the capsule and in the parenchyma, in the liver, and in the lungs.

In the primary pneumonic infections there is a pneumonitis, usually involving at least one whole lobe, without the necrotic foci, the pleura is nearly always involved and there is a pleural effusion.

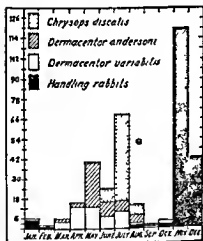


Figure 108 Chart showing seasonal distribution of 347 cases of tularemia infected by different methods occurring in the United States in a period of 12 years ending 31st December 1935 (from data supplied by Francis 1937)

Histopathologically, the local lesion shows a necrotic centre surrounded by an area of polymorphonuclear infiltration, outside which there is some lymphocytic infiltration of the surrounding tissues. A similar change occurs in the affected organs, in the lungs, outside the necrotic focus there is a zone of alveolar exudate, and the inflammatory changes may involve a whole lobe and the pleura and in the liver, the parenchyma cells are invaded and destroyed by *Bact tularensis* and appear as bags of organisms.

More chronic lesions which resemble tuberculosis are sometimes observed. The necrotic centre is surrounded by an area of epithelioid cells and fibroblasts, outside which is a zone of lymphocytic infiltration, scanty giant cells may be found in these lesions.

Blood picture — A moderate leucopenia is the rule, and even in the pneumonic cases the leucocyte count is seldom above 10,000 c mm.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Clinical types — The usual classification refers to the ulcero-glandular, oculo-glandular, glandular and typhoid types, but this classification is neither satisfactory nor comprehensive. In our probably incomplete state of knowledge regarding the scope of *Bact tularensis* infection, it will be unwise to adopt any fixed classification, for, as our experience of this disease widens, a satisfactory one will probably evolve.

The clinical picture shows considerable variation according to the mode of entry of the causal organisms. The most typical symptomatology, and the one that is described below, occurs in those cases in which infection enters through the skin, either through an abrasion or by the agency of an insect, causing a local ulcer and local glandular infection. If it enters through the conjunctiva, this structure is first involved and the clinical picture is that of the so called oculo-glandular type, generally in this type of infection the disease is more severe. However, in either of these cases the local reaction may be slight, and the infection may by-pass the local glands, causing a bacteremia which may be associated with general glandular enlargement, or a septicemia and produce an attack of the so called 'typhoid type'. This latter is also the form that the disease usually takes when the infection is acquired by eating insufficiently-cooked infected rabbits.

Cases have been reported in which meningeal symptoms developed early and the meninges were shown to be infected with *Bact tularensis*.

Finally, there is the clinical type in which pneumonia is a primary manifestation, as distinct from the pneumonia which may develop as a complication in any severe form of tularemia. On analogy with plague, and from suggestive epidemiological reports, it seems possible that in some of these cases there is a primary infection of the lung.

The clinical course — The incubation period is in the large majority of cases from three to four days, the extremes are 24 hours and ten days. The onset is sudden with general symptoms, headache, fever with chilliness, vomiting, prostration, and pains all over the body, very suggestive of influenza or a sub typical dengue. The next day, or sometimes earlier, attention is drawn to the local lesion which now develops into an ulcer, and the proximal lymph nodes become enlarged and painful. The fever rises sharply, often reaching 104°F in 24 hours, after two or three days the temperature falls to the 100° line, or even to normal for one to three days, and then relapses as a high continued or remittent fever (see figure 109), accompanied by fairly profuse sweating, loss of weight and increasing

debility usually for three weeks even in an uncomplicated case the convalescence is very prolonged lasting from two to three months

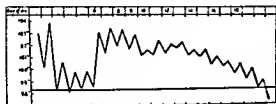


Figure 109 Characteristic chart of uncomplicated tularemia

The glandular enlargement may persist throughout convalescence or at an early date the glands may become necrotic suppurate and eventually break through the skin leaving a sinus that may not heal for many months. Subcutaneous nodules may form along the

course of the infected lymph channels these persist as hard tender movable lumps for some months and occasionally they break down

A rash is sometimes reported but it is not constant nor characteristic either in its time of appearance or form

The spleen may be slightly enlarged

In the primary pneumonic form the onset is usually with a cough pleuritic pain headache general malaise and a sharp fever usually with chills. The temperature continues as a high remittent fever (see figure 110) with periodic chills. The physical signs are sometimes atypical and the pleural effusion marks the x-ray picture so that the diagnosis is frequently postponed until the autopsy. Milder examples of this type are probably very frequently missed but judging from the reported cases one must consider the prognosis very bad

**Complications**—The commonest are those associated with the local lesions and the glandular infections ulcers and the sinuses that result from suppurating glands may become secondarily infected and persist for months. The local eye lesions may lead to the loss of an eye

Of the more severe complications pleurisy and pneumonia are the most frequent in fact pneumonia is such a common complication that it might almost be considered a special form of the disease and there is a tendency in the literature to include it in the classification of the types of the disease (vide supra)

#### DIAGNOSIS

The circumstance may lead one to suspect that a febrile illness is tularemia when for example the patient has been bitten by *Chrysops discalis* in an endemic area during the transmitting season when he has been on a shooting expedition killing skinned and/or cleaning rabbits or when he has been in contact with *Bact tularensis* in the laboratory. On the other hand many cases have occurred in which the mode of infection was completely obscure

Clinically the combination of a local lesion or conjunctivitis with tenderness and enlargement of the lymphatic glands shortly after a febrile influenza like attack that showed an initial sharp rise a temporary remission and a further febrile bout of about a fortnight's duration ending by lysis should arouse suspicion

The pneumonic type will be particularly hard to diagnose clinically except that it is a slightly atypical pneumonia with pleurisy which does not respond to the usual chemotherapeutic agents or to serum

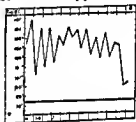


Figure 110 Chart of a fatal case of pulmonary tularemia (Kennedy 1942)

Bacteriological evidence is of course the most desirable, but is not at all easy to obtain. On media inoculated with the blood or gland juice, growth has been obtained, but not readily, and animal inoculation is the surest method. Two to five cubic centimetres of defibrinated blood diluted with an equal amount of normal saline inoculated intraperitoneally into a guinea-pig will produce an infection that will kill the animal within three or four days, with the production of the typical lesions from which *Bact tularensis* can be recovered.

A diagnosis may be made by the agglutination test, but this will mostly be in retrospect, for the titre often only reaches 1 in 80 by the third or fourth week, though it may eventually rise to 1 in 5 000 in convalescence. The titre falls slowly, and agglutinins have been reported to persist up to 33 years. Sometimes the sera will also agglutinate *Br melitensis* and/or *abortus* (*vide supra*).

An intra-dermal test, in which 0.05 ccm of a bacterial suspension produces a wheal five millimetres in diameter in a positive case, has had a few advocates, it gives a positive result at an earlier date, but it is probably less specific than the agglutination test.

### PREVENTION

A study of the methods of infection will immediately indicate a number of ways in which the dangers of infection can be obviated, or at least reduced (*vide supra*).

As there is considerable danger of laboratory infection, very special precautions should be taken with regard to the handling and isolation of inoculated animals, e.g. rubber gloves should always be used.

Prophylactic inoculation has not proved entirely satisfactory hitherto, but recently Foshay *et al.* (1942) have shown that some protection is given by inoculation with dead cultures and that infections in inoculated persons are milder.

### TREATMENT

No really successful specific has yet been found. Serum treatment has been used extensively, and the results of treatment in 600 cases with a similar number of controls have been reported (Foshay, 1938). The results were not very striking, the death rate was 4.2 per cent in the treated cases, but Foshay considered that they demonstrated the value of the serum.

Otherwise, the treatment is symptomatic. Surgical interference with the enlarged glands or the nodules is not to be recommended, open local lesions should be treated with hot saturated magnesium sulphate compresses.

### PROGNOSIS

During 1938 and 1939, there were about 4,300 cases reported in the United States, with a death toll of about 290, a rate of approximately 6.7 per cent.

From the point of view of invalidism, it is a serious disease, as full health is seldom restored under 3 to 4 months, and the average period of hospitalization is often reported as over 100 days. In some cases, chronic sinusitis have persisted for two years.

The cases in which infection was conveyed by eating under-cooked rabbits seem to be more serious, and a 60 per cent death rate is reported in one such series.

Pulmonary complications cause deterioration in the prognosis, it is reported that 30 to 40 per cent of patients with these complications die, and more than half the patients who die are in this group. The death

rate amongst patients with primary lung infections appears to be even higher. Those in which meningitis occurs always die

## REFERENCES

- FRANCIS E (1921) The Occurrence of Tularemia in Nature as a Disease of Man *Pub Health Rep.*, **36**, 1731
- Idem* (1937) Sources of Infection and Seasonal Incidence of Tularemia in Man *Pub Health Rep.*, **82**, 103
- FOSHAY, L (1938) .. Effects of Serum Treatment in 600 Cases of Acute Tularemia *J Amer Med Assoc* **110**, 603
- Idem* (1940) .. Tularemia A Summary of Certain Aspects of the Disease including Methods for Early Diagnosis and the Results of Serum Treatment in Six Hundred Patients *Medicine* **19**, 1
- FOSHAY, L, HESSELBROCK W H Vaccine Prophylaxis against Tularemia in Man  
WITTENBERG H J., and RODEN *Amer J Pub Health* **32**, 1131
- BERG A H (1942) Pulmonary Tularemia *J Amer Med Assoc* **118**, 781
- KENNEDY, J A (1942) A Plague-like Disease of Rodents *Pub Health Bull.*, No 43 United States Treasury Department Washington
- McCoy, G W (1911)

Recent work.—Infection of water supplies has been reported from time to time and recently a stream near Hamilton Montana was found to be infected continuously over a period of many months. The source of contamination was not traced and no human infections were attributed to drinking the water from the stream



## THE UNDULANT FEVERS

	PAGE
DEFINITION .. .. .	353
HISTORICAL .. .. .	353
DISCUSSION .. .. .	353

### MALTA FEVER

DEFINITION .. .. .	353
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	354
<i>Geographical distribution</i> .. .. .	354
<i>Epidemic features</i> .. .. .	354
<i>Season—Age—Occupation</i> .. .. .	354
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	354
<i>The causal organism</i> .. .. .	354
Culture—Resistance—Pathogenicity for laboratory animals—Distribution in the body, secretæ and excreta	
<i>Portals of entry</i> .. .. .	355
<i>Differentiation of Brucella species</i> .. .. .	355
<i>Immunity</i> .. .. .	356
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	356
<i>Morbid anatomy—Blood picture—Urine</i> .. .. .	356
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	357
<i>The incubation period—Onset—Fever—Other symptoms</i> .. .. .	357
<i>Complications</i> .. .. .	357
<i>Clinical types</i> .. .. .	358
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	358
<i>Discussion</i> .. .. .	358
A. <i>Clinical</i> .. .. .	358
B. <i>Bacteriological</i> .. .. .	358
Blood culture—Urinary culture.	
C. <i>Specific antibody tests</i> .. .. .	358
(i) Agglutination—(ii) The intra-dermal test—(iii) The opsonocytophagic test—Outline of technique and interpretation of results.	
<i>Differential diagnosis</i> .. .. .	359

PREVENTION	PAGE
TREATMENT	360
Discussion	360
General, dietary, and symptomatic	360
Vaccine therapy—Serum therapy—Non specific protein therapy—Chemotherapy	361
PROGNOSIS	362

## ABORTUS FEVER

DISCUSSION	362
ÆTIOLOGY	362
EPIDEMIOLOGY	363
Geographical distribution	363
Epidemic features	363
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	363
DIAGNOSIS	364
Guinea pig inoculation	364

**Definition** —The undulant fevers or brucelloses, are a group of diseases, characterized by long continued fever which sometimes adopts an undulant periodicity, caused by bacteria of the genus *Brucella* and transmitted to man from animals by various means.

**Historical** —The earliest attempt to separate the first recognized form of this disease from other long continued fevers was made by Marston in 1881, he described a disease that occurred in British troops in Malta. David Bruce isolated the causal organism in 1887. In 1897 Hughes wrote an important monograph on the subject and suggested the name undulant fever. It was however at this time generally known as Malta or Mediterranean fever. In 1904 the Mediterranean Fever Commission was sent out under the auspices of the British Government to investigate the means of spread of the disease. They discovered that goats were the reservoir of infection and that the disease was spread mainly by the agency of goat's milk.

Contagious abortion was recognized as a disease of cattle early in the 19th century in Great Britain. In 1897 Bing isolated the causal organism of this cattle disease and in 1914 Traub isolated a similar organism from pigs. In 1918 Alice Evans demonstrated the close antigenic relation between the causal organism of Malta fever now known as *Brucella melitensis* and the causal organisms of contagious abortion in cattle and in pigs now known as *Brucella abortus* and *Brucella suis* respectively and in 1920 the generic name *Brucella* was adopted.

Shortly afterwards Bryan in Rhodesia and Keefer in America recognized certain of the undulant fevers in man in these two countries as abortus fever transmitted from cattle and pigs respectively.

**Discussion** —In our present state of knowledge it seems justifiable to separate this group into the original Malta fever caused by *Br. melitensis*, and abortus fever caused by *Br. abortus* and *Br. abortus* var *suis* (or *Br. suis*), as there are epidemiological and clinical differences between the two diseases.

## MALTA FEVER

**Definition** —Malta fever is a specific disease characterized by fever which may run a prolonged undulant course effusion and pains in the

joints, and an enlarged spleen, it is caused by *Brucella melitensis*, and it is conveyed to man in the milk of goats, amongst which the infection is enzootic, and by other means

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—Malta fever has a wide distribution and will be encountered in all the zones, except possibly the arctic, but the largest numbers of cases occur in the sub-tropics

It is rife in the islands of the Mediterranean and in all the countries of the Mediterranean littoral, and it occurs in many other European countries. It occurs in the southern states of America, in Mexico, and in South America, in South Africa in Iraq, Iran and northern India, in China, the Dutch East-Indies, and the Philippines, and in northern Australia

**Epidemic features**—The infection is an enzootic affecting goats and to a less extent other animals, and is transmitted sporadically to man by the ingestion of goat's milk or goat's milk products, and possibly by other means. Malta fever is therefore always likely to be present wherever goats supply the bulk of the milk to the population, and in Malta, until the means by which the infection is spread was discovered, the annual incidence amongst the British troops was often as high as 50 cases per 1,000. Thereafter it fell to a negligible figure, but from time to time for no obvious reason it has shown a tendency to rise again. The indigenous population also suffered, but they were usually affected in childhood when the disease is likely to be milder

An incident in which 80 students in a hostel were infected, apparently by drinking-water, was recently reported from Michigan, there was in the building a bacteriological laboratory that handled large numbers of brucella cultures

The incidence varies from year to year and is very definitely seasonal. In Malta it occurs in the hot dry months of the year, June to September (see figure 111). This seasonal incidence, which is also noted in other endemic areas, e.g. south-east France, where it is a little earlier in the year, is explained on the grounds that it corresponds with the kidding or lambing seasons, but there are other possible explanations (*vide supra*)

Persons of all ages are affected and the highest incidence is between the ages of six and thirty. Men are said to be most affected, but this may be due to the occupational factor

The disease has an occupational distribution and is common amongst goat-herds and dairy and farm workers

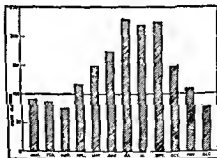


Figure 111 Seasonal distribution of Malta fever (Huddleson 1939)

### ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal organism**—When first described by Bruce, the causal organism was named *Micrococcus melitensis*, but later when its relation to the other organisms causing undulant fever was recognized (*vide supra*), the genus *Brucella* was created and this organism was renamed *Brucella melitensis*

*Br. melitensis* is a coccobacillus  $0.3\mu$  to  $0.5\mu$  in diameter with oval or even bacillary forms which may be as much as  $2.0\mu$  in length. It is non motile non-sporing and occurs singly in pairs or even in short chains. It is gram negative.

Culture.—It grows on ordinary nutrient agar but very slowly, it will grow better but still slowly on liver-extract agar or serum (5 per cent) agar at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$ , and even at  $20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . It has a rough variant that has different antigenic properties and was at one time thought to be a different organism (*Br. paramelitensis*).

Resistance.—It is killed at  $60^{\circ}\text{C}$  but resists drying for two or three months. It will survive for many months in laboratory medium. Laboratory infections are relatively common.

Pathogenicity for laboratory animals.—*Br. melitensis* readily causes infection in monkeys but not always in guinea pigs whereas *Br. suis* is very virulent in the latter, *Br. abortus* is very variable in its pathogenicity, but falls between the other two species in its pathogenicity in guinea-pigs.

Distribution in the body, secretæ and excreta.—The organisms are present in the blood during the fever. They occur in large numbers in the spleen from where they can be recovered during life by spleen puncture, or after death. They occur in the urine in about 10 per cent of cases and the urinary infection may persist for some months. They have been isolated from human milk. They can also be demonstrated in the faeces by a special technique.

Portals of entry.—The usual means of infection is by the gastrointestinal tract, but the organisms can also enter with comparative ease through the conjunctival, nasal, or naso-pharyngeal mucous membranes, and also through the skin, but in the latter case, entry is probably effected through small abrasions. Laboratory infections are very common, and recently in the United States 57 laboratory infections were reported from 17 laboratories. The persistence of the infection in the British army and navy in Malta even after all consumption of goat's milk had been stopped, the higher incidence in the dry dusty season, the ability of the causal

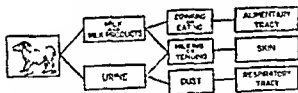


FIGURE 112 Scheme showing the origin, media and mode of transmission and route of entry of the infecting organisms in Malta fever.

organisms to resist drying, and the fact that goats pass them in their urine all suggest the possibility that entry through the nasal and respiratory mucous membranes may play an important though secondary, part in the epidemiology of the disease.

Differentiation of *Brucella* species.—There are two antigenic elements present in different proportions in the three allied organisms, the antigenic structures are shown diagrammatically in figure 113.

Thus the organisms cannot be separated by straight agglutination but *Br. melitensis* can be separated from the *abortus suis* group by absorption of agglutinations. The brucellæ can also be differentiated by means of their growth in the presence of certain dyes, the following table, which is taken

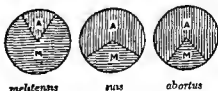


Figure 113 Diagram indicating the proportions of the antigenic elements M and A in the three recognized species of *Brucella*.

with minor modifications from Topley and Wilson (1936), summarizes the means of differentiation —

Type	Usual habitat	Grown in absence of extra CO <sub>2</sub>	GROWTH IN PRESENCE OF				H <sub>2</sub> S formation	Anti-genically
			Basic fuchsin 1 in 25 000	Thionin 1 in 50 000	Methyl violet 1 in 100 000	Pyronin 1 in 200 000		
<i>melitensis abortus</i>	Goats sheep Cows horses, dogs	+	+	+	+	+	—	<i>melitensis abortus</i>
American suis	Pigs	+	—	+	—	—	+	<i>abortus abortus</i>
Danish suis	Pigs	+	—	+	—	—	—	<i>abortus abortus</i>

**Immunity** — One attack does not appear to confer complete immunity against a subsequent attack, but the second attack will be mild.

The fact that the organisms circulate in the blood for a number of days does not suggest the early formation of immune bodies, agglutinins usually appear, but they may be of low titre and are not constantly present.

No satisfactory immunity can be produced by inoculation of dead cultures.

#### PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy** — No clear-cut description of the pathological changes has been given, there are probably two reasons for this, namely, that there are few deaths and therefore few post mortem examinations, and that such deaths as do occur are usually due to some complicating infection which clouds the true picture.

The spleen is nearly always enlarged, it is soft and hyperæmic. Occasionally, there are small hæmorrhages and infarcts.

Histologically, the sinuses are dilated, there is proliferation of the reticulo-endothelial cells, and a hyperplasia of the lymphoid tissue.

There is often slight enlargement of all the lymphatic glands, but especially those of the mesentery. In the intestines, there is sometimes slight congestion of a few Peyer's patches, but there is neither ulceration, nor even any other constant changes in the intestinal lymphoid tissue.

The sigmoidoscope sometimes shows a granular colitis. This causes a watery diarrhoea that appears to respond to specific vaccine therapy.

**Blood picture.** — There is usually anæmia, and this tends to be progressive, red cell counts are sometimes below 3,000,000, but seldom if ever below 2,000,000 per cmm in an uncomplicated case. There is a slight tendency towards a leucopenia, but this is neither marked nor constant, however, the count in an uncomplicated case is never above 10,000 per cmm and sometimes as low as 4,000 per cmm. The differential count is more characteristic, the lymphocyte count often amounts to 50 per cent of the total leucocytes, and there is a fairly constant large mononuclear increase, so that there is a relative, as well as an actual, granulopenia.

The urine does not show any special features beyond the usual febrile changes, it is high-coloured and scanty and may contain a trace of albumin. As noted above, brucellæ can be isolated from the urine in about 10 per cent of samples.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period is from 10 to 15 days, the extremes being from 5 to 17 days, as a general rule, but in exceptional cases it may extend to 40 days.

There are mild prodromal symptoms, malaise and headache, followed by a slow onset of fever, increasing in astute and inability to concentrate, pains all over the body and particularly in the joints, pains in the eyes on lateral movement, anorexia, insomnia, and irritability. The fever increases step-ladder-wise, as in typhoid, and reaches 102° or 103°F in five or six days. Headache may be intense, there is usually profuse sweating, and when the fever rises in the evening there may be a sensation of chilling, if not an actual rigor. The pains tend to move from joint to joint and the mandibular joint is very commonly affected, there is quite often a non-inflammatory hydrarthrosis of the painful joints. Mild abdominal symptoms may develop congestion and discomfort usually with constipation, but occasionally with watery diarrhoea, the tongue is very furred. The pulse is soft, rapid, and irregular. Bronchial symptoms are common. The spleen may in time become enlarged, it is usually soft and tender. There is increasing toxæmia in severe cases, but in the average case the patient does not feel particularly ill, finds bed irksome, and is very irritable.

The fever reaches its highest point in about a week, it remains as a high remittent or continuous temperature for possibly another week, and then step-ladders down, reaching normal usually within three weeks, it

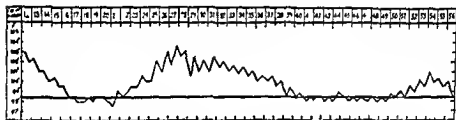


Figure 114 Temperature chart of a case of Malta fever (orig)

may remain normal for a day or two, and then it starts to rise again. The waves are not usually regular but on the average they maintain about a three-week periodicity. With the relapse of the fever, the symptoms tend to return but not usually in such a severe form, though sweating and fleeting joint pains are the rule.

Other symptoms are orchitis or mastitis, neuritis, e.g. facial and intercostal neuralgia, sciatica, and lumbago and more rarely temporary paralyses. Sometimes there is blurring of the vision and vertigo. In the long-continued cases, loss of weight and even emaciation will be an important symptom.

In severe cases there may be purpuric spots, oozing from the mucous membranes, and even profuse bleeding into the stomach, intestine, or bladder.

Complications.—Pulmonary complications are so constant that they can almost be considered a part of the syndrome. In fact the disease was at one time known as 'Mediterranean phthisis'. There is however no reason to believe that Malta fever does predispose the patient to pulmonary tuberculosis. The usual lung complication is bronchitis, but bronchopneumonia is not uncommon. Other complications are parotitis, suppurative orchitis, and arthritis, pregnant women usually abort.

**Clinical types**—As in most other diseases, the individual's response to the infection will vary. The following clinical types can be recognized—

(i) *The ombulant*—In this type the patient is unaware of any illness, though in some cases if pressed, he may admit to a little malaise. In any population subject to special risk, a serological investigation will bring to light some apparently healthy persons whose sera show a high agglutination for brucellæ.

(ii) *The mild*—In this type there is only a single bout of fever lasting perhaps a fortnight, or a mild bout and one short relapse.

(iii) *The classical*—The attack of moderate severity, as described above, with repeated relapses lasting several months.

(iv) *The chronic*—The disease may start as an ordinary or mild attack, or in some cases there is no history of any acute febrile attack, and then a low irregular febrile state develops, there is little sign of the usual undulations in the temperature chart, but joint pains and sweating occur.

(v) *The toxic undulant or intermittent*—In this type the patient develops a hectic type of temperature, he is much more toxic than in the ordinary case, and the temperature continues for weeks or months without the usual afebrile periods, though there are still some traces of the undulating character of the chart.

(vi) *The fulminant*—There is early development of marked toxæmia, a high continuous or intermittent temperature running a typhus-like course, and sometimes death in as short a time as five days.

#### DIAGNOSIS

**Discussion**—It is justifiable to make a provisional diagnosis on clinical grounds, and in certain circumstances it may be permissible to maintain it without confirmation from the laboratory, but, obviously, confirmation should be obtained whenever possible.

With proper laboratory facilities it should be possible to isolate the causal organism in half to three quarters of the cases seen early in the disease, in the remaining cases and in those first coming under observation late, the specific tests will have to be relied upon. Of these, the agglutination test is the most reliable, the intra-dermal test should certainly be done in all suspected cases in which the agglutination test is negative and the opsono cytophagic test may be used as the third or as a confirmatory method.

**A Clinical**—The principal points are—high fever with little prostration and with delay in the appearance of debilitating symptoms, profuse sweating and the maintenance of a moist skin during the height of the fever, and pains that pass from joint to joint. In retrospect, the undulant character of the temperature chart will be apparent.

**B Bacteriological**—A positive blood culture can often be obtained at almost any stage, but it is more certain in the early stages. Five cubic centimetres of blood should be taken into a flask containing 250 c.c. of liver broth (pH 7.2), the air in the flask is displaced by CO<sub>2</sub>, and a rubber cap put on, the growth is slow, and, though in some cases a positive culture may be obtained in about five days, a culture should not be discarded as negative for at least 12 days.

The urinary culture is said to be positive at some stage of the disease in 75 per cent of cases, but the general experience is that 10 per cent of specimens of urine will give a positive culture, the statements are not incompatible.

**C Specific antibody tests**—(1) *Agglutination*—This is considered the most reliable of the specific tests, other than the isolation of the causal

organism, in most cases the agglutinins appear in the blood between the fifth and tenth days, and remain for a long but variable time, for many years in some cases and for one year in the majority. Agglutinins are not however, constantly present even in the acute stages of the disease and many cases have been reported in which they do not appear until the fourth or fifth week, so that a negative reaction does not exclude brucella infection.

A titre of 1 in 40 is usually considered to indicate infection past or present but the titre usually rises to over 1 in 1 000, so that a rising titre should be expected.

The agglutination test is not species specific and there is usually no significant difference between the titres obtained with *Br. melitensis* and *Br. abortus* emulsions, but after the minor agglutination (see figure 113) has been absorbed, agglutination will occur with the specific antigen with little reduction in titre.

(ii) *The intra-dermal test*—The difficulty in this test is to prepare or to obtain a standardized antigen (or allergin). 'Brucellergin', as prepared by Huddleson (1934), is probably the best, but if neither this nor any other standardized preparation is obtainable one can be made from a heat-killed fat-free bacillary emulsion. Reactions are apt to be sharp and there may even be constitutional symptoms, so that a 1 in-100 dilution of the standardized 'brucellergin' should be used first, and later, if a negative result is obtained a 1-in-10 dilution.

A positive reaction varies from a 'weak reaction' in which there is an area of hyperæmia and slight œdema of half an inch in diameter to a 'strong' reaction' in which there is an area of three inches or more of severe hyperæmia and œdema, this disappears in a few days leaving a small necrotic area in the centre, that may persist for months.

The injection is given intra dermally, not more than 0.1 c.c.m., and the result should be read after 24 and 48 hours since a late reaction sometimes occurs.

A positive reaction may appear as early as the 7th day of the disease, and may be expected for many months after all symptoms have subsided. A higher percentage of positive reactions will occur with this than with the agglutination test, but occasionally 'false positive' reactions are obtained.

(iii) *The opto-cytophagic test*—This test is a relatively simple one, but the interpretation of the results is somewhat complicated, it is the least valuable of the specific tests but it is used also as a means of estimating response to specific treatment.

*Outline of technique and interpretation of results*—To 5 c.c.m. of blood 0.2 c.c.m. of 20 per cent sodium citrate is added. A bacillary emulsion of 6 000 million organisms (or equivalent to a suspension of 300 parts per million of silica) in normal saline is made. One cubic centimetre of each of these two is mixed in a test tube which is put into an incubator at 37°C for one hour. The sedimented deposit is removed and smears are made on clean slides. These are dried rapidly, the red cells hemolyzed and then the smear is fixed and stained. The slide is examined under the microscope and the number of polymorphonuclears that have taken up the brucellæ counted.

*The suggested interpretation is as follows*—

If less than 40 per cent have taken up brucellæ the patient is susceptible.  
If from 60 to 100 per cent have taken up brucellæ the patient is immune.  
A reading between these two indicates that immunity is developing and that the patient is therefore infected.

*Differential diagnosis*—The disease may simulate any of the long-continued fevers of temperate or tropical climates.

The cosmopolitan diseases include—tuberculosis especially of the lungs and intestinal tracts, the enteric fevers, rheumatic fever and rheumatism, *Bacillus coli* infections and the Pel-Ebstein syndrome in Hodgkin's disease.



Amongst tropical diseases, kala-azar is the most likely to lead to confusion, there are many points of similarity the long-continued undulating temperature—though in kala-azar the bouts of fever are usually of longer duration the enlarged spleen—but this is usually more pronounced in kala-azar, the absence of prostration and the slow establishment of debility, and the granulopenia—which again is more marked in kala-azar. Untreated malignant tertian or relapsing benign tertian malaria, and also amoebic hepatitis with abscess formation may simulate Malta fever, but in both these diseases the therapeutic test should clear up matters, and in liver abscess there is *usually* a leucocytosis.

### PREVENTION

The following are the three main lines along which attempts at prevention should be made —

(i) The elimination of the source of infection primarily in goats sheep and cattle

(ii) The prohibition of the use as food or the sterilization of the medium of infection

(iii) The protection of susceptible and exposed persons *e.g.* by education and if necessary regulation and by inoculation

(i) *The elimination of the source of infection*—The destruction of the infected animals and the maintenance of disease-free herds is obviously out of the question in view of the conditions that exist in most of the endemic areas. Protection of herds by vaccination would also be difficult to enforce, and up to the present this method even when it has been put into operation, has not proved very successful but this is a matter for further veterinary research.

It is probably very seldom that an infected person is a serious source of infection to others nevertheless viable bacteria may be passed in the urine and faeces, and the proper disposal of excreta is a preventive measure that should not be neglected.

(ii) *The prohibition of the use as food, or the sterilization, of the medium of infection*—The prohibition of the consumption of milk or milk products, or the enforcement of pasteurization will be successful only if the consumption of infected milk is the sole or main means by which infection is acquired. Even in Malta there is some doubt on this point, though prohibition of the use of goats milk and goat's milk products by army and navy personnel appeared to be completely successful for some years. In other places, *e.g.* the south of France, where the disease occurs mainly amongst dairy workers there are obviously other channels of infection.

Pasteurization will kill the brucellæ, and, if this procedure can be enforced, this means of spread of the disease will be effectively controlled.

(iii) *Protection of susceptible and exposed persons*—Dairy and other workers should be warned to wash their hands before taking food and to keep their hands free from abrasions.

The results of experimental inoculation with killed cultures of brucellæ have been contradictory, but on the whole very disappointing. More work will have to be done along these lines before this measure can be recommended as a routine.

### TREATMENT

*Discussion*—The state of the treatment of Malta fever is at present far from satisfactory. The introduction of the sulphonamide preparations raised hopes that a specific might be found for this infection, and many enthusiastic reports appeared in the medical press, these early reports were soon followed by cautionary, and eventually by frankly condemnatory

ones. As a new chemotherapeutic drug appears almost monthly, it is impossible to keep up to date, and it would be foolish to be dogmatic on this subject and to dismiss them all, further one hopes that some day a specific of this nature will be found. Meanwhile, it will be necessary to describe older, tested, though not uniformly successful, methods.

**General dietary, and symptomatic**—Even here it is not possible to be precise, since one has to deal with a wide range of clinical states. In the febrile stages, the patient should be kept in bed, and careful nursing should, if possible, be provided, the sweating will necessitate frequent changing of clothes, the bowels are usually confined and frequent enemata may be necessary, considerable trouble must be taken with mouth hygiene, the patient should be encouraged to take food in reasonable quantities and this will have to be presented in an attractive and palatable form, the joint pains will require local applications and in the later stages massage to the wasted limbs will be helpful.

After a severe febrile bout, the patient should be kept in bed for four or five days after the temperature has fallen to normal, especially in a cold or temperate climate where chills are likely, later, when the disease enters on its more chronic stages, it will usually not be possible to maintain this routine, and it is questionable if it is necessary to limit activities, except during the febrile attacks. (Some writers recommend long continued confinement to bed 'to obviate relapses'. In view of the very great variability in the clinical course of the disease, a controlled series of some hundreds of cases would have to be observed before the efficacy of this procedure could be proved. It does not sound reasonable to the writer and he has never advocated it.)

The diet should be as liberal as possible, but naturally during the height of the febrile attacks it should be fluid, at other times it will have to be carefully selected for easy digestion, and it may have to be modified to meet such conditions as tympanites and diarrhoea.

Depressing drugs should as far as possible be avoided, especially antipyretics, for fever above 103°F hydrotherapy should be employed. For headaches, aspirin, phenacetin and caffeine powders are permissible, now and then a good night's rest should be ensured by giving phenobarbitone, and small doses of bromide may be given to soothe the patient's restlessness and irritability. Purgatives should be of the mild vegetable variety or liquid paraffin, supplemented by enemata on alternate days if the bowels are not opened. Joint pains should, as far as possible, be treated with physiotherapy (e.g. infra-red and local applications).

In acute toxæmic cases a pint of 5 per cent glucose may be given intravenously every day, this will combat dehydration, assist detoxication, and provide nourishment.

**Vaccine therapy**—On the whole vaccine therapy seems to have produced the best results, especially in chronic cases. The aim should be to produce little or no general reaction, and to grade the doses very carefully with this in view. Mixed stock vaccines may be used at first, but as soon as possible an autogenous vaccine should be prepared. The vaccine should be made from a 'smooth' recently-isolated human strain, and standardized so that 0.1 c.c.m. given intra-dermally causes a sharp but not severe local reaction in an infected person. After an initial dose of 0.1 c.c.m. given intra-dermally, the subsequent doses should be given subcutaneously every three or four days the dose rising from 0.2 c.c.m. up to 1.0 c.c.m. or even higher, by increases of 0.1 c.c.m., but the patient's reaction to each dose should determine the next.

Vaccines should not be given during the high febrile stages, nor when toxæmia is marked, and in these stages serum therapy is indicated.

**Serum therapy**—This should be used only in the acute and toxæmic stages, several commercial anti *melitensis* sera are available, doses of 50 to 100 c cm are given, preferably intravenously, in a pint of normal saline or 5 per cent glucose, and the dose repeated if necessary in 24 hours

**Non specific protein therapy**—TAB vaccine or milk injections have been used This treatment is indicated in the chronic low-febrile cases when joint pains are troublesome, good results have been claimed, particularly in relieving some of the tiresome symptoms

**Chemotherapy**—Dyes have been used for some time with varying results Some success has been claimed for acriflavine, a maximum dose of 10 milligrammes per kilogramme body-weight, i.e. 0.7 gramme for the average adult was given intravenously

Trypaflavin has also been used, 10 c cm of a 2 per cent solution is given intravenously, once a week A special precaution is that patients must be kept in a darkened room, as during this treatment they become very sensitive to light Good results have been claimed with these dyes, but their administration is not entirely without risk

Many of the new 'sulpha-' preparations have been tried, but so far, as stated above without any uniform success The writer has used sulphapyridine and sulphathiazole, without very convincing results The chart of one case recently treated is shown (figure 115), it seems possible

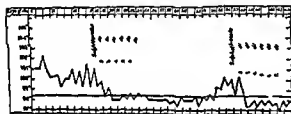


Figure 115 Temperature chart in Malta fever. Sulphapyridine appeared to control the fever, but a relapse occurred which again appeared to respond to sulphathiazole

that the sulphathiazole controlled the fever, but our experience here is that a spontaneous cure often occurs after one or two bouts Recent reports on sulphapyridine suggest that the history of the early reports on sulphonamide (vide supra) is being repeated The writer has seen no reports on treatment with sulphadiazine

Neither sulphanilyl guanidine nor succinyl sulphathiazole, which are so useful in the dysenteries, is likely to be useful in this disease on account of their low absorption

### PROGNOSIS

The average duration of the illness in frank clinical cases is at least two months but durations up to two years have been reported

The death rate amongst such cases is from 2 to 5 per cent

Published mortality percentages are open to the criticism that mild and ambulant cases are usually excluded A comparison between the published death rates for Malta fever and the abortus fevers might indicate that the diseases were of equal severity, whereas Malta fever is undoubtedly the most serious, *Br suis* the next, and *Br abortus* the least serious of the three

### ABORTUS FEVER

**Discussion**—As abortus fever is so closely related to Malta fever, only the points of distinction will be dealt with here

**Ætiology**—*Brucella abortus* and *Br suis* (or *Br abortus* var *suis*) are morphologically identical with *Br melitensis* the cultural differences and certain other points of distinction are shown in the table on page 356

*Br abortus* and *Br suis* cause enzootic infections in cattle and pigs, respectively, cross infections, i.e. *Br suis* in cattle and *Br abortus* in pigs, are however possible and have been reported in nature, and other domestic animals, e.g. horses, are sometimes infected.

There is some suggestion on experimental grounds that *Br suis*, unlike *Br melitensis*, gains entry into the body more easily through the skin and mucous membranes than *via* the gastro-intestinal tract, this observation is supported by epidemiological evidence (*vide infra*).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—Abortus fever has a much wider distribution than Malta fever, especially in temperate climates, it occurs in Great Britain, especially in Scotland, where Malta fever is unknown, and is very common in the United States, where the latter disease is relatively rare, there are few countries in the world, where the subject has been properly investigated, that can claim freedom from this infection.

**Epidemic features**—Infection is transmitted from cattle and pigs to man in a number of ways, which are best shown diagrammatically, see figure 116 below.

Abortus fever has an even more definite occupational distribution than Malta fever, and is very prevalent amongst meat packers who handle pig carcasses, amongst stockyard workers, butchers, and veterinarians, as well as amongst farm and dairy workers.



Figure 116

It is obvious that man is not very susceptible to *Br abortus* infection, especially *via* the gastro-intestinal tract, as in both Scotland and America the infection rate in mixed samples of milk has been found to be over 30 per cent. In such circumstances one would expect the entire community to be infected, yet the reported cases number only some hundreds, in the former country at any rate. Further, this low morbidity rate cannot be altogether explained on the grounds of 'inapparent' infections, since there is no evidence of a high agglutination in the general population though there is amongst certain communities.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

On the whole, the disease tends to run a much more benign course than Malta fever, this applies particularly to *Br abortus* infections. The vast majority of cases fall into clinical groups, (i) ambulant, (ii) mild, and (iii) chronic (see p. 358), the more severe clinical types are rare but are encountered, and the death rate though low is not negligible.

The onset is slow and ill defined. The commonest symptoms are malaise, headache, sweating, a marked tendency to lassitude and fatigue, vague body pains, rigors, constipation, and anorexia, more or less in that order of frequency, from 100 per cent down to about 60 per cent in frank cases. The spleen is sometimes enlarged but less frequently than in Malta fever, and joint pains are less constant.

The fever is usually low and irregular throughout, but may be of long duration, in a relatively mild series of cases in Scotland the average duration of the illness was ten weeks, but it is frequently longer, and durations up to two years are sometimes reported.

*Br suis* infections are on the whole much more severe than *Br abortus* infections, *Br abortus* infections acquired in the laboratory seem to be much more severe than those acquired naturally. All *Br suis* infections and laboratory infections with *Br abortus* are nearly always acquired through the skin or mucous membranes, whereas natural *Br abortus* infections are acquired via the gastro-intestinal tract. It seems possible therefore that the route of invasion has some effect on the severity of the infection.

The prognosis is distinctly better in *Br abortus* infections than in Malta fever and *Br suis* comes between the two.

#### DIAGNOSIS

Under this heading, there is little to be added to what has been written above. However, a bacteriological confirmation of diagnosis is more difficult to obtain. On the other hand, the greater susceptibility of the guinea-pig to this infection can be taken advantage of, and guinea-pig inoculation should be added to the bacteriological methods.

**Guinea pig inoculation**—Two to five cubic centimetres of citrated blood should be inoculated intraperitoneally into a young guinea pig or the sediment from the centrifuged urine can be given subcutaneously into the flank or groin.

After four or five weeks the agglutination test is performed on the guinea-pig's blood and if the result is positive the animal is killed and from the organs particularly the spleen smears and cultures are made.

*Br abortus* infection in milk can usually be detected only by animal inoculation. 2 to 5 ccm of separated cream is injected into each groin.

#### REFERENCES

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| BANG B (1897)                         | The <i>Ætiology of Contagious Abortion</i><br><i>Zeitschr Tiermedizin</i> 1, 241                        |
| BRUCE D (1887)                        | Note on the Discovery of a Micro organism in<br>Malta Fever <i>Practitioner</i> , 39, 161               |
| EVANS A C (1918)                      | Further Studies on <i>Bacterium Abortus</i> and<br>Related Bacteria <i>J Infect Dis</i> 22, 580         |
| HUDDELESON I F (1939)                 | <i>Brucellous in Man and Animals</i> The Common<br>wealth Fund New York                                 |
| HUGHES M L (1897)                     | <i>Mediterranean Malta or Undulant Fever</i><br>Macmillan and Co Ltd, New York                          |
| MUNSTON J A (1861)                    | Report on Fever (Malta) <i>Army Med Rep</i><br>London 3, 468  |
| TOPLEY W W C and WILSON<br>G S (1936) | <i>Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity</i><br>Edward Arnold and Co London                           |
| TRALM J (1914)                        | <i>Annual Report of the Chief, Bureau of Animal<br/>Industry</i> U S Department of Agriculture,<br>p 30 |

## MELIOIDOSIS

	PAGE
DEFINITION	365
DISCUSSION	365
HISTORICAL	365
ÆTIOLOGY	365
EPIDEMIOLOGY	366
Geographical distribution—Epidemic features	366
PATHOLOGY	366
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	366
DIAGNOSIS	366
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	367
PROGNOSIS	367

**Definition**—Meliodosis is a fatal disease of protean symptomatology, caused by a glanders-like bacillus, *Pfeifferella whitmorei* (pseudo mallei), which is transmitted to man sporadically from rats, amongst which it is epizootic, in certain eastern tropical countries.

**Discussion**—The excuse for the inclusion in this book of a disease of which only about a hundred cases have been reported in the 30 years since it was first described, is that there are reasons to believe that it is much more widespread than our present knowledge appears to indicate.

**Historical**.—Whitmore and Krishnaswami (1912) described a disease that they had diagnosed post mortem in vagrants sent to the Rangoon mortuary. Attention was drawn to the disease again by an epizootic that occurred amongst the experimental animals at Kuala Lumpur. Its importance was finally established after the publication of a comprehensive report on the disease by Stanton and Fletcher (1937). These writers reported 53 cases of which 38 had been found in Rangoon and 14 had been diagnosed during 3063 autopsies in Kuala Lumpur. This indicated a much higher percentage incidence than had previously been suspected or has subsequently been observed elsewhere. Since then only sporadic cases have been reported and, in fact the disease has not really lived up to its early promise of establishing itself as a disease of public health importance.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism *Pfeifferella whitmorei* (or *Bacillus pseudo mallei*) is a motile gram positive slender rod 1 to 2 $\mu$  long by 0.4 to 0.5 $\mu$  broad which shows a tendency to irregular or bipolar staining. The organisms grow well on ordinary solid laboratory media at 37°C and on peptone agar producing a luxuriant growth in 24 hours and form a pellicle in broth. They are killed easily by heat (at 56°C within 10 minutes), but survive in water, faeces, and dried earth for a month or more.

In most laboratory animals, they produce a fatal septicæmia as well as a local abscess when injected. In the guinea-pig a small dose given intraperitoneally will cause a painful swelling of the testicles in two days (Straus's reaction), a large dose will kill the animal before this reaction has had time to occur.

Infection of animals will also occur after oral administration. The organisms are excreted in the faeces and urine of infected animals.

In man, it produces a septicæmia and/or a pyæmia, and can be recovered from most tissues of the body after death.

Transmission takes place mainly by the oral route, it is believed, by contamination of food by rat's faeces and/or urine.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—The disease has been reported in Rangoon, Ceylon, Malaya, the Netherlands Indies and Indo-China.

**Epidemic features**—It is a sporadic infection and little association between cases has been established, the exception being in Rangoon, where an outbreak occurred amongst a group of morphia addicts (injectors). It has been suggested (Stanton and Fletcher, *loc cit*) that this was a coincidence and did not indicate a parenteral route of infection in these subjects, though this deduction is the obvious one.

With few exceptions the patients have been vagrants or persons of the poorest classes, living under conditions of close association with rats.

#### PATHOLOGY

The essential pathological lesion is a nodular focus similar to miliary tuberculosis with a central area of necrosis that eventually forms an abscess. These occur in any organ or tissue except the central nervous system, however, in one case the organism was recovered from the cerebrospinal fluid. The main site of the lesions varies and in some cases they are confined entirely to the lungs, in others, only liver abscesses, very similar to amœbic abscesses, will be found.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Very few cases have been diagnosed ante mortem, and in these the symptomatology has shown wide variations. The earliest reported cases had cholera like symptoms—a watery diarrhoea, vomiting and collapse with death within two or three days, other cases have shown pneumonia-like symptoms and death has been postponed by several days, and in yet others a pyæmic condition has been reported, with subcutaneous abscesses or even a cutaneous eruption simulating smallpox. In this last group, the patients usually survive for two or three weeks, in some cases death has occurred after two months, and two patients have eventually recovered completely, these are the only non-fatal cases reported.

Other cases have simulated plague or typhoid.

**Diagnosis**—Clinical diagnosis of a disease with such a varied symptomatology is out of the question. Bacteriological diagnosis presents no difficulties as the organism grows well in ordinary laboratory medium. Cultures can be obtained from the blood or from pyæmic abscesses. Where contaminating organisms are likely to be present, the material should be rubbed into a shaved area on the abdomen of a guinea-pig, this latter method will usually prove successful even with material taken from decomposed bodies.

A specific antibody that caused agglutination in a dilution of 1 in 3 000 was reported in the blood of one surviving patient. This method may prove of use for making a diagnosis in less acute cases.

Prevention and treatment —In our present state of knowledge no preventive measures other than the destruction of rats and the protection of food from contamination by these rodents can be advocated

Treatment is entirely symptomatic Obviously, the new chemotherapeutic agents should be given a trial

Prognosis —Only two patients have been known to survive

#### REFERENCES

- STANTON A. T., and FLETCHER W. (1932) *Mehosdoos Studies, Inst Med Res, F M S., No 21 John Bale Sons and Danielsson Ltd., London*
- WHITMORE A., and KRISHNASWAMI C. S. (1912) An Account of the Discovery of a Hitherto Undescribed Infective Disease occurring among the Population of Rangoon *Indian Med Gaz.*, 47, 262



## THE INTESTINAL FLUXES

**Introduction**—The treatment of fever and the intestinal fluxes forms at least 90 per cent of the daily routine of the practitioner in the tropics, in malarious districts, fever will probably claim the greater share of his attention, but even here the fluxes will come a close second, in other districts, they will be an easy first. The causes of diarrhoea are numerous and varied, and they may have their origin as far away from the intestinal tract as an examination paper. Diseases of nearly every organ in the body may lead to diarrhoea, as an important or an unimportant symptom. A number of cosmopolitan diseases, such as cancer, syphilis, and tuberculosis, as well as certain conditions of less well-defined ætiology, such as diverticulitis and regional ileitis (Crohn's disease), and mechanical irritation, may cause an ulcerative condition of the bowel which will produce the dysentery syndrome. No general classification will therefore be attempted, but here will be enumerated the more important forms of intestinal flux that have some special association with the tropics, most of these have a specific and recognized ætiology.

### CLASSIFICATION AND DEFINITIONS

**A. Cholera**—An acute specific diarrhoea caused by *Vibrio cholera*, in which the small intestine is mainly involved.

**B. Dysentery**—A clinical condition in which frequent stools containing blood and mucus are passed, with tormina and tenesmus. Ætiologically, dysentery can be placed under a number of headings—

#### I. Caused by bacteria

(i) **Shiga dysentery**—A very severe dysenteric condition, always acute in its early stages, caused by *Bacterium dysenteriae* Shiga.

(ii) **Flexner group dysentery**—A dysenteric condition, sometimes severe, and usually acute in its early stages, caused by a group of organisms of the type *Bacterium dysenteriae* Flexner.

(iii) **Sonne type dysentery**—A dysenteric condition, usually of a milder type, occurring in the tropics but common in non-tropical countries, caused by *Bacterium sonnei*, and other allied organisms.

(iv) **Diarrhoea and vomiting suggestive of food poisoning** occasionally followed by dysenteric symptoms, associated with infections of the *Salmonella* group, *Salmonella paratyphosus-B*, *enteritidis*, and *typhimurium*.

#### II. Caused by animal parasites

(a) **Protozoal dysentery** (i) **Amœbic dysentery**—Primarily a dysenteric condition, usually with an insidious but occasionally an acute onset, which is frequently followed by other acute and chronic conditions involving other parts of the body, caused by *Entamœba histolytica*.

(ii) **Flagellate dysentery**—A diarrhoeal and occasionally dysenteric condition, more common in children, caused by flagellate protozoa, *Giardia enterica* (or *lamblia*) which infests the duodenum and small intestine, and *Trichomonas hominis* and *Chilomastix mesnili* which infest the cæcum and large intestine.

(iii) **Ciliate dysentery**—A rare but serious dysenteric condition caused by *Balantidium coli*, a ciliate common in pigs.

(iv) *Coccidiosis*—A rare diarrhoeal or dysenteric condition caused by *Isospora hominis*

(v) *Malarial dysentery*—A dysenteric condition associated with an intense *Plasmodium falciparum* infection

*Leishmanial dysentery* is often included under this heading but the evidence is against there being any such specific condition. In experimental animals and to a less extent in man the mucous membrane of the intestine is often heavily infiltrated by leishmaniae but histologically there is no tendency towards ulceration. The ulceration that occurs as a complication often a terminal one is due to some other infection and/or to malnutrition

(b) *Metazoal dysentery* (i) *Bilharzial dysentery*—A dysenteric condition caused by the eggs of helminths of the genus *Schistosoma* (*Bilharzia*)

(n) *Other helminthic dysenteries*—Diarrhoeal and dysenteric conditions caused by helminths of the genera *Esophagostomum*, *Heterophyes*, *Fasciolopsis* and *Strongyloides*

(c) *Viral dysentery*—In *lymphopathia venereum*, proctitis which may develop into a severe ulcerative condition of the rectum or sigmoid often occurs. This ulcerative condition is usually above a stricture but it may follow or precede stricture formation

C *Chronic ulcerative colitis*—A chronic non specific ulcerative condition of the colon that is very frequently the sequel to one or other of the acute specific dysenteric conditions classified above. This is a condition that is well known in temperate countries but is far more common in the tropics

D *Diarrhoeal diseases that are probably dietetic in origin*

(i) *Sprue*—A disease of disordered metabolism in which the passage of frequent frothy and fatty stools is a very prominent symptom usually occurring in Europeans living in a tropical country under abnormal dietetic conditions

(ii) *Para sprue*—A diarrhoeal disease due to multiple often self imposed dietary deficiencies associated with anaemia and disordered carbohydrate metabolism and common amongst residents—indigenous and otherwise—of tropical countries but not peculiar to them

(iii) *Other nutritional diarrhoeas*—Diarrhoeas that are important but not the main symptom of other nutritional diseases e.g. pellagra (qv)

E *Diarrhoeas of special environmental conditions*

(i) *Hill diarrhoea*—A disease of mixed aetiology but possibly associated with the atmospheric conditions at high altitudes

(ii) *Gippy tummy and allied conditions*—A diarrhoeal condition probably mainly of bacterial origin precipitated by local chilling occurring in dry tropical and sub tropical countries (e.g. Egypt) where there is a high diurnal range of temperature. (No further reference will be made to this condition about which there has been much correspondence in the medical press recently. The general opinion is that it is usually caused by one of the recognized dysentery organisms and precipitated by sudden chilling.)

# CHOLERA

	PAGE
DEFINITION .. .. .	371
HISTORICAL .. .. .	371
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	373
Classification of vibrios .. .. .	373
<i>The cholera vibrio</i> . .. .. .	373
Morphology and cultural characteristics—Biochemical reactions—Resistance—Bacteriophage—Pathogenicity—Toxins—Distribution in the body—Mode of escape from the body—Route of invasion	
<i>Media of infection</i> .. .. .	375
<i>Active agents of infection</i> .. .. .	375
<i>Immunity</i> .. .. .	375
<i>Predisposing factors</i> .. .. .	376
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	376
<i>Endemic centres</i> .. .. .	376
<i>Origin and maintenance of infection</i> .. .. .	377
<i>Epidemic extension</i> .. .. .	377
In India—Outside India	
<i>Climate and cholera</i> .. .. .	379
<i>Seasonal incidence</i> .. .. .	379
Endemic areas—Epidemic areas	
<i>Variations from year to year</i> .. .. .	379
Forecasts	
<i>Race, sex, and age distribution</i> . .. .. .	380
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	380
<i>Morbid anatomy</i> .. .. .	380
<i>The blood</i> . .. .. .	381
<i>Dehydration</i> . .. .. .	381
<i>Renal failure</i> .. .. .	381
<i>The urine</i> .. .. .	382
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	382
<i>Incubation period, onset, stage of copious evacuations; stage of collapse, stage of reaction, convalescence</i> .. .. .	382
<i>Complications</i> .. .. .	383
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	383
<i>Differential diagnosis; table</i> .. .. .	384

					PAGE
PREVENTION	..	..	..	..	385
<i>Grand strategy</i>	..	..	..	..	385
<i>Prevention of epidemic extension</i>			..	..	386
<i>Control in the endemic areas</i>	..	..	..	..	386
<i>Water supplies</i>			..	..	386
<i>Control in hospitals or institutions</i>			..	..	387
<i>Personal prophylaxis</i>	..	..	..	..	387
<i>Special measures</i>	..	..	..	..	388
<i>Inoculation—Oral vaccine—Bacteriophage—Disinfection of water supplies</i>					
TREATMENT	..	..	..	..	390
<i>Historical</i>	..	..	..	..	390
<i>A. Specific treatment</i>	..	..	..	..	390
(i) <i>Destruction of the vibrio</i>	..	..	..	..	390
<i>Bacteriophage—Essential-oils mixture—Sulphandyl-guanidine</i>					
(ii) <i>Neutralization of the toxin</i>	..	..	..	..	391
<i>B. Maintenance of biochemical equilibrium</i>				..	391
<i>Rogers' treatment—Modified procedure—Indications—Method—Apparatus and technique—Rate and temperature of administration—Other routes of administration</i>					
<i>C. Symptomatic</i>	..	..	..	..	395
<i>Collapse and shock—Anuria—Acidosis—Hyperpyrexia—Vomiting—Muscular cramps</i>					
<i>Diet and nursing</i>	..	..	..	..	396
<i>Summary of treatment</i>	..	..	..	..	396
<i>Some reported results—Conclusion</i>					
PROGNOSIS	..	..	..	..	397

**Definition.**—Cholera is an acute specific often-fatal disease, characterized by very copious watery and colourless stools, vomiting, and symptoms attributable to fluid loss and toxic absorption, notably collapse, muscular cramps, and suppression of urine; it is caused by the cholera vibrio, and occurs endemically in certain localities in India and China and may spread as an epidemic throughout the world.

**Historical.**—The antiquity of cholera is doubted by many historians, and certainly there is little evidence that any of the early historical 'plagues' that fell upon countries and wiped out armies were cholera. In ancient Indian medical writings, Susruta described a condition that might well have been cholera, but the *cholera* of Hippocratic writings was not this disease as the word literally means a flow of bile.

One of the earliest historical references to the disease is a reference to the destruction of Ahmed Shada military force by cholera in 1433. Bontius described it in Batavia in the Dutch East Indies in 1629. Chinese writers have claimed that cholera reached China from India in about 1669, but there is a school of thought which claims that both Bontius and the early Chinese writers were describing dysentery.

The first and worst historical pandemic started in India in 1817 and spread in a number of directions—(a) by land to China (1818), (b) to Ceylon (1819) and thence by sea to Mauritius and East Africa (1820), to the Philippines, China and Japan (1822), (c) by land to Iran (1822) and Arabia, and thence to Russia (Astrakhan, 1823), but this epidemic wave did not reach Europe. A second epidemic wave started in India in 1826, and followed a similar course, but on this occasion it spread further. It reached European Russia from two directions, *via* China, Manchuria and Mongolia, and *via* Astrakhan, and it reached Moscow in

September 1830, from there it spread to Leningrad (June 1831), Berlin (August), Hamburg (October) and thence across the North Sea to Sunderland in Great Britain, and it reached Edinburgh in June 1832. Later, it crossed to America.

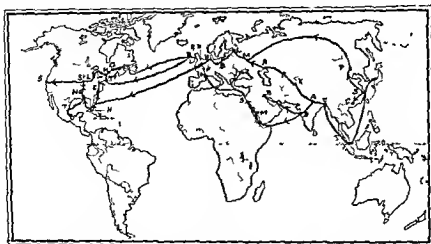


Figure 116a Routes taken by cholera two pandemics starting from Calcutta (C) in 1817 and 1842

A	Astrakan	1830	July 20	1847, June
M	Moscow	"	Sept	"
L	Leningrad	1831, June 16	1848 June	"
B	Berlin	"	Aug 31	"
H	Hamburg	"	October	"
S	Sunderland	"	Oct 24	Sept
E	Edinburgh	1832 Jan 22	"	Oct 4
Q	Quebec	"	April	"
NY	New York	"	June	"
NO	New Orleans	1833 Jan	"	Nov 9
				Dec 8

1865 pandemic starting from Hindu Kumbh mela reached Bombay thence to Mecca by Mohammedan pilgrims

B	Bombay	1865, April
M	Mecca	"
S	Suez	"
M	Marseilles	"
P	Paris	"
E	England	"

NY New York 1866, May

The pandemic of 1810 to 1849 also had its origin in India, and reached Europe overland, there were over a million deaths in Europe including 50,000 in Great Britain. The pandemic of 1863-66 travelled to Europe via Mecca and Egypt, this was used as an argument to oppose the Suez canal project which was at this time well under way. The next pandemic, that of 1884, was carried to Europe through the canal, and the 1892-94 pandemic taking this route reached Europe within five months. The last epidemic in America occurred in 1873.

Cholera has been described as the sanitarian's best friend. Its dramatic suddenness and obvious preventability disturb the complacency of the layman, and, just as the outbreak in England assisted Edwin Chadwick to get his Public Health Act of 1845 into the statute book, so in India the frequent epidemics of this disease have led to the strengthening of the sanitary services. In international sanitation, the successful control of cholera has done much to justify in the eyes of the public the strict and often very expensive and troublesome procedures which have been enforced, and which control the spread not only of cholera but of many other important diseases whose seriousness it is not so easy to demonstrate.

Throughout the greater part of the 19th century, from the time of the first pandemic in 1817 to 1883 when Koch discovered the vibrio, much controversy raged round the aetiology of cholera. The general view held was that cholera was caused by 'a poison of eastern origin', that certain climatic conditions were essential for its spread, and that it would only become established if the inhabitants of any particular locality were predisposed. General unsanitary conditions were recognized as helping to generate the right atmosphere for cholera, but the theory of transmission by air was most favoured. Later, however, the Broad Street pump (1854) and the Newcastle epidemics fixed more and more attention on water as the source of the poison.

The idea of the micro-organismal origin of cholera had long been smouldering, Pouchet reported finding vibrios in the stools of cholera patients as early as 1849 (Scott, 1939). In 1883, Koch discovered the vibrio in the stools of cholera patients in Egypt, and later he came to India where at the Medical College in Calcutta he confirmed his theory by finding the same vibrio in the stools of every case of cholera that he examined. His theory was not accepted by everyone,

even in a scientific world ripe for the acceptance of any new bacteriological discovery. Some of the bacteriologists of the day seemed to think that Koch had displayed rather bad taste in introducing a curved organism where they had expected a straight one. His theory however soon received general credence and the matter was left where it stood for some years. The application of the agglutination test and Pfeiffer's phenomenon at first seemed likely to clarify the problem but it only gave scientific support to conclusions that were subsequently shown to be wrong for, though it narrowed down the number of suspected vibrios it brought under stronger suspicion a large group of innocuous ones—namely those now classified as group A vibrios other than sub-group I (*vide infra*) and at the beginning of the century the apparently harmless *El Tor* vibrio came to the fore to remain a thorn in the flesh of bacteriologist and sanitarian for over thirty years. Confusion reigned and held up all real progress in the epidemiological study of the disease the position was further complicated by much imperfectly controlled experimentation demonstrating mutations and by the advent of the bacteriophage which threatened to lyse the whole science of bacteriology.

In this confused atmosphere, the Health Organization of the League of Nations constituted a cholera commission and the Indian Research Fund Association decided to devote a considerable sum to cholera investigations. Bacteriological investigations in the Standards Laboratory at Oxford (Gardener and Venkatraman 1935) and the National Institute of Medical Research at Hampstead with the collaboration of field workers in India have led to a considerable clarification of the position as it stands to-day (*vide infra*).

## ÆTIOLOGY

**Classification of vibrios**—There are two main groups, group A—cholera and 'cholera-like' vibrios, and group B—other vibrios. The vibrios in these two groups are morphologically similar but biochemically and serologically very distinct, those of group B being far less active fermentatively. Group A vibrios are biochemically comparatively homogeneous, and they have a common H-antigen, but a number of O-antigens that divide this group into many sub-groups, the important one is O sub group I, which includes the true non-hæmolytic cholera vibrio and the hæmolytic *El Tor* vibrio. Of the true cholera vibrios there are two sub-types, 'Inaba' and 'Ogawa'.

Thus, the true cholera vibrio is a non-hæmolytic vibrio that is agglutinated by pure O antisera prepared by means of the dried heat-stable O-antigens of the Inaba and Ogawa sub-types of O sub group I. The position of the hæmolytic *El Tor* strains of sub group I is still uncertain, in India they have not been associated with any typical outbreak of cholera, and have been found in the absence of cholera, though in other countries, Celebes in particular, they have been the predominant and the only suspected organism isolated in epidemics that had all the clinical features of classical cholera.

**The cholera vibrio** Morphology and cultural characteristics—*Vibrio cholera* is a motile, comma-shaped organism, 1.5 to 4  $\mu$  long by 0.2 to 0.4  $\mu$  in thickness with a single polar flagellum staining easily with weak carbol fuchsin, gram-negative, and growing easily on ordinary bacteriological media at 37°C (see plate B).

On agar plates, the colonies are 'round, 1 to 2 mm in diameter, low convex, translucent, greyish yellow with a smooth or finely granular glistening surface and entire edge, of amorphous or finely granular structure of the consistency of butter, and easily emulsifiable'. On horse-blood agar plates, after 24 hours at 37°C there is an abundant growth, and the colonies are surrounded by a 2-mm zone of hæmolysis, there is however no true hæmolysis on sheep- or goat-blood agar.

**Biochemical reactions**—Heiberg suggested a classification of the vibrios on the basis of the production of acid in the three sugars mannose, arabinose and saccharose. He observed that all vibrios of the serological sub group I fall into this type I, namely, mannose +, arabinose — and saccharose +. However, many non cholera vibrios also fall into this group.

The cholera-red\* reaction is constantly positive with the true cholera vibrio if the peptone is of the right kind, but this also is not a specific test.

The modified Voges-Proskauer† test is with few exceptions negative with true non-haemolytic cholera vibrios.

By carrying out these three tests, strong, though still presumptive, evidence is obtained regarding the identity of a true cholera vibrio, that is to say, with very few exceptions a true cholera vibrio will belong to Heiberg's type I, and will give a positive cholera-red and a negative Voges-Proskauer reaction, and if it does not conform with these criteria, it is probably not a true cholera vibrio.

**Resistance**—The cholera vibrio has no resistant phase, it survives on clothes from one to three days in a moderately moist atmosphere, but is easily killed by drying. It dies in sewage within 24 hours. In pure water it dies rapidly, but in some 'potable' waters it will survive for a considerable time.

For the survival and multiplication of the cholera vibrio, salt and organic matter are necessary in the water, the higher the concentration of the former the lower need the latter be, and *vice versa*. The limits for multiplication are 1 per cent salt (sea salt) with 1 in 500,000 peptone, and 0.1 per cent salt with 1 in 500 peptone, for survival the range is distinctly wider, for example vibrios will survive for some weeks in 0.02 per cent salt and 1 in 5,000,000 peptone. The hydrogen-ion concentration limits are pH 6.0 and pH 9.4 the optimum is about pH 9.0.

Many natural waters in Bengal have an organic matter content equivalent to 1 in 5,000 to 1 in 300,000 peptone, and a salt content from 0.05 to 0.1 per cent.

It is killed at 55°C in 15 minutes, in 0.5 per cent phenol in a few minutes, and in 1 in 500,000 potassium permanganate in 15 minutes.

**Bacteriophage**.—Up to the present, about 13 races of bacteriophage that lyse the cholera vibrio have been isolated, these are numbered from A to N. Two of these, A and N, are selective in their action, and act on the true cholera vibrio only.

**Pathogenicity**.—The cholera syndrome does not occur naturally in any animal species other than man, though a similar disease can be produced in very young guinea-pigs and rabbits, small laboratory animals are susceptible to the toxic action of the vibrios and to the products of their metabolism when morbid material is injected intraperitoneally or given by mouth in large quantities, but on subculture the toxicity is rapidly lost.

Laboratory infections have occurred and have been fatal, but they are comparatively rare and it is obvious that the organism loses much of its pathogenicity in culture.

Personal susceptibility also plays an important part, Macnamara reported an incident in which 19 persons ate a meal heavily contaminated by a cholera stool and only 5 developed classical cholera. An incident

\* **Cholera-red reaction**. Ten cubic centimetres of peptone broth (peptone—1 per cent, sodium chloride—0.5 per cent in distilled water adjusted to pH 8.0) is inoculated with the vibrio culture to be identified, and incubated for 24 hours at 37°C. Four to eight drops of pure sulphuric acid are added. The development of a pink colour indicates a positive result. After the addition of four drops, the pink colour usually develops, but eight should be added before the reaction can be considered negative.

† **Barritt's modification of the Voges-Proskauer test**. Inoculate glucose-phosphate tubes rather heavily and incubate for three days. Add to 1 c.c.m. of this culture 0.6 c.c.m. of 5 per cent alcohol solution of  $\beta$ -naphthol and then 0.2 c.c.m. of 40 per cent potassium hydroxide, shake well. A positive result is indicated by a pink colour that deepens and spreads throughout the mixture, read again in 4 hours.

**Note**—It is essential that the  $\beta$ -naphthol should be of the correct brand and this must be tested with organisms of known identity. This precaution also applies to the peptone used for the cholera red reaction.

happened in the writer's personal experience when cholera infection was introduced into the children's ward of a hospital, in so-called skimmed milk—probably milk diluted with dirty water—that he had ordered for a child with infantile cirrhosis of the liver. There were six children in the ward, two died of cholera, two had a mild diarrhoea, and two had no symptoms at all. From the stools of all six patients, cholera vibrios were isolated.

**Toxins**—This is always a controversial point. The general opinion is that there is no true soluble exotoxin secreted, but that there is an endotoxin liberated by the disintegration of the vibrios on their death in the intestinal canal or when lysed by the cells of the body. It has not been possible to isolate this endotoxin in sufficient quantities to produce a satisfactory anti-serum. It is possible that, although the vibrio does not produce an exotoxin *in vitro* it may do so *in vivo*.

**Distribution in the body**—The vibrios are confined almost entirely to the gastro-intestinal canal mainly to the lumen, and they are usually found in large numbers throughout its whole length. They do not penetrate further than the submucosa. The gall-bladder and biliary passages are sometimes infected, and the vibrios have been isolated from pneumonic patches in the lungs.

**Mode of escape from the body**—Vibrios escape from the body in the stools and in the vomitus, but recent investigations have shown that they cannot be isolated from the urine, if measures are taken to avoid faecal contamination of the urine (Chatterjee and Malik 1938). The patient does not usually pass true cholera vibrios in the stools for more than five days from the time of first infection, this is also true in the sub-clinical (or contact) case of cholera infection. In a few instances, 'carriers' have been detected who passed cholera vibrios up to two weeks, but it is very doubtful if there is a true carrier state in cholera as there is in typhoid (Taylor, 1941), in this connection, reports previous to 1935 must be discounted on account of the doubt that exists regarding the true identity of the organisms passed. The human source of cholera infection is thus cases and contacts (sub-clinical cases).

**Route of invasion**—Infection always occurs by the oral route. There is no reason to believe that the vibrio is capable of establishing itself after entry by any other route. This means that there is no danger from attending cholera patients if food is not taken until the attendant has washed his or her hands and changed his or her clothes.

Gastric acidity is apparently an important factor in determining the establishment of infection when the vibrio is ingested (Napier and Gupta, 1942), vibrios are killed immediately in undiluted gastric juice of normal acidity.

**Media of infection**—The commonest medium of infection is water. Other fluids also, particularly milk, will carry the infection. Uncooked foods and any food allowed to remain uncovered are common media of infection, especially during an epidemic, e.g. fruit and vegetables which may have been sprinkled with water taken from any wayside source, to keep them fresh, food exposed for sale in the open bazar and by itinerant sweet meat vendors, and food, cooked or otherwise, remaining over from one meal and left exposed before being eaten without further cooking, at the next.

**Active agents of infection**—The domestic fly is by far the most, and probably the only, important active agent, though the cockroach and the rat should not be entirely excluded as possible mechanical conveyors of morbid material.

**Immunity**—There is evidence that, in man, some—though possibly not complete—natural immunity exists. It has been claimed that new-



comers to an endemic area are more susceptible than the indigenous inhabitants but in this disease there is much less evidence of acquired herd immunity in the endemic areas than there is in the case of many other endemic diseases, for periodic exacerbations frequently occur with very high incidence and death rates

One attack does not give protection against a subsequent attack. Though a second attack within a few years is uncommon, the author knows of two instances in which patients had three attacks of cholera within 16 and 10 years respectively, in the former case, two of the attacks were bacteriologically proven, and in the latter, one attack was bacteriologically proven but all three were typical severe attacks and the second was the most severe

Active immunity can be induced by inoculation, but it is very short-lived and lasts only for six months at the outside

Active immunity can be induced in animals by the injection of killed cultures of the vibrio, with this active immunity a specific agglutinin appears in the blood. Rabbits are the most suitable animals for the preparation of the specific agglutinating sera that are used in the serological identification of vibrios

On account of the lability of the agglutinin, standardization is maintained by the preservation of standard O-antigens in the dried state. These are prepared at the Standards Laboratory, Oxford and are issued to workers in various countries. From these O-antigens, agglutinating sera are prepared by a standard method

**Predisposing factors**—Individual susceptibility is an important factor, though probably few people enjoy complete immunity. What is the determining factor in infection is not of course certain but it has been shown that gastric acidity is very important. When this is high, the vibrios are killed almost immediately, whereas in achlorhydric gastric juice they survive for a considerable time. It is probably for this reason that water is such a common medium of infection, as it dilutes the gastric juice and passes rapidly through the pylorus. Starvation, exhaustion, and debility from other infections in a population are important factors in determining the severity of an epidemic, but healthy and strong individuals will also be attacked. Gastro-intestinal disturbances, alcoholism, and excessive purgation are usually considered to predispose to infection

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Endemic centres**—The most important epidemic centre of cholera in the world is undoubtedly in Bengal, the origin of most epidemics in India, some of which have become pandemics, can be traced to Bengal, but there is evidence that there are, now at least, several subsidiary centres from which cholera is capable of originating. In India, there is apparently another endemic centre in central and south Madras. The frequent outbreaks that occur in China, only a few of which could be traced to India make it certain that there are endemic areas in that country, but these appear to be confined to the Yangtze valley. Recent investigations have suggested that there are endemic areas in Burma and the Philippines, but Indo-China and Thailand, which were at one time under suspicion, have recently been exonerated.

In Bengal, the endemic area is not as extensive as was previously supposed, and to date only the districts of Khulna, 24 Parganas, Midnapore, Howrah, Hooghly, Bankura and Burdham are definitely known to be endemic. These districts are all located on the banks of the Hooghly river. The criteria of endemicity that the sanitarians have adopted are—that in a period of 32 years cholera should not have been absent for more

thao thirty months, or, during the whole of this period for five consecutive months. This statistical test has not yet been applied to all the districts in Bengal and Madras where endemicity is suspected. Figure 117 gives only a rough indication of the endemic areas, and in time will have to be revised.

It should be appreciated that in any particular year, the incidence of cholera in an epidemic area may far exceed that in the endemic area from which the infection originated.

The origin and maintenance of infection—Cholera is an eminently preventable disease, because, as far as is known the origin of infection is invariably a human being. Although the alliterative

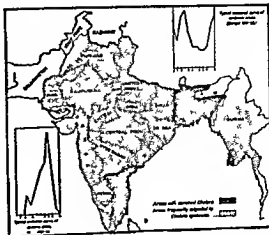


Figure 117

trinity, the case, the contact and the carrier, is always mentioned so the tenets of belief of the sanitarian, they are not in fact three sources but one source, for the contact is a sub clinical case of cholera and the carrier is only a prolonged one. There is no known animal source of infection and the true vibrio has not been isolated from any natural source in the absence of cholera for more than a few weeks.

The maintenance of the infection in the endemic areas has always interested bacteriologists and epidemiologists. Survival and multiplication in village water supplies for many weeks is possible (*vide supra*), but the present opinion is that there is no other residual source of infection in the endemic areas except cases and that infection is maintained mainly by case-to-case passage of virulent non-haemolytic O sub group I vibrios. In the vast majority of the villages in the endemic areas the sanitation is of the most primitive nature, there are no latrines and no protected water supply. The people use the open fields and frequently the banks of tanks (reservoirs) for defecating. Open tanks are their only water supply, and they will bathe in the tanks, wash out their mouths, and even drink the water at the same time.

**Epidemic extension**—The source always being human, the spread of infection must necessarily be along lines of human communication, and the speed with which the disease has spread in the past has always been controlled by this fact. The early pandemics spreading overland to Europe took four to five years in their journeys from the banks of the Hooghly to those of the Clyde, the St. Lawrence and eventually the Mississippi, whereas in the later pandemics when the infected persons passed through the Suez canal the infection only took as many months to reach northern European ports (*vide supra*). In days, were other conditions favourable to cholera spread we could expect pandemics to spread through the world within a week or so.

**In India**—With the very great increase in facilities for travel the chances of spread of cholera from the endemic areas to other parts of India are considerable but it has been found that normal railway travel on business or pleasure does not tend to spread the disease to any great extent on account of the control that can be exercised over passengers, and

that, though the sanitary arrangements are far from perfect, especially at the small stations, there are latrines and a safe water supply. Such travellers of course come from all grades of society, but even the poorest are seldom destitute, and the fact that they are travelling usually indicates that they can afford the ordinary necessities of life.

By far the greater danger comes from pilgrims going to holy places, *e.g.* Benares and Puri, often many hundreds of miles away from their homes, and from the visitors to the religious *melas* (fairs) that are held from time to time in certain places. The people who attend these are often extremely poor, and such money and food as they have when they leave their homes are soon finished, so that they arrive in an ill-nourished and exhausted state. Further, it is difficult to make satisfactory sanitary arrangements for the literal millions that attend some of these *melas*, *e.g.* the Kumbh mela at Hardwar, at which the attendance has been estimated at over a million on certain days. Those pilgrims who come from the endemic areas, and others who travel through such areas, take the infection with them and spread it widely amongst other pilgrims, who in due course take back the infection with them, and, returning to their homes all over India, leave trails of cholera throughout the country as they go. As recently as 1930, an epidemic which caused 140 000 deaths in Bihar and the United and Central Provinces followed the Kumbh mela at Allahabad.

The extension of epidemics outside India has in recent years been almost entirely by the sea routes, and with improved port sanitation and sound quarantine regulation this extension has been largely controlled. Here again, pilgrim traffic has been the main difficulty, and the Mecca pilgrimages are, probably rightly thought to have been the most potent factor in carrying the infection to Europe, here devout Muslims from India live in close contact with those from Egypt and Turkey, and the danger of the infection being carried back to the countries would be considerable unless special precautions were taken.



Figure 118 Geographical distribution of Cholera in Asia 1930-1938 (*League of Nations' Weekly Epidemiological Record*)

- A Disease reported in 1937  
 B Disease reported in 1938  
 C The dates shown on the map for the various territories correspond to those of the latest occurrence of the disease

**Climate and cholera**—The importance of climate in determining cholera endemicity is obvious from the similarity of the climates in all the endemic areas, but it is also obvious that climate is not the only factor. The endemic areas are all areas of high humidity and relatively high temperature throughout the whole year. Humidity appears to be the more important factor, for it determines the epidemic spread of the disease as well, temperature appears to be less important in this respect, for cholera spreads rapidly in cold countries. Attempts to delimit the endemic areas on climatic criteria alone have not been entirely successful. Rogers' criterion of an absolute humidity of 0.400 inches of vapour pressure throughout the year can be accepted only in that this constant high humidity is a common feature of all the true endemic areas, but it is not correct to suggest that all areas with this degree of humidity are endemic areas, even in India.

**Seasonal incidence**—The factors that determine this are different in the endemic and epidemic areas.

In the endemic areas temperature and absolute humidity are the main determining factors, in Bengal, for example, in January, when the absolute humidity is low and the temperature relatively so cholera, though present, is at its lowest incidence. As the temperature of the air rises so does its water-carrying capacity, cholera incidence rises steadily until May or June when the monsoon sets in, the humidity rises but the temperature falls and obviously some other factor also comes into operation, for cholera incidence declines, this other factor is probably the mechanical flushing of contaminated water supplies and the alteration in their chemical and physical character. Cholera incidence shows a rise in October as the monsoon subsides, and it falls again at the end of the year when temperature and both relative and absolute humidity fall.

In the epidemic areas on the other hand, the cholera incidence curve follows the absolute humidity curve throughout the year, reaching its peak in the monsoon months, July to October (figure 117).

**Variations from year to year forecasts**—In both the endemic and epidemic areas there are considerable variations in the incidence from year to year, more especially in the latter, the factors bringing about these variations are not solely climatic, but where and when other factors, e.g. the social and economic, are fairly constant, the cholera incidence follows closely certain climatic occurrences, and it is possible to foretell with a considerable degree of accuracy the probability of an epidemic occurring some time ahead of the actual event. For example when an early rise in humidity in the epidemic areas occurs and precedes the monsoon decline in the cholera curve in the neighbouring endemic area, an epidemic is likely to follow. Also the failure of the monsoon in one year is likely to be followed by an epidemic in the next year, and after two such successive failures, an epidemic is even more certain.

The importance to the local sanitary staff of knowing what the chances are of cholera occurring in the epidemic areas, or of the incidence being abnormally high in the endemic areas, is obvious, and has led to a very serious study being made of the cyclical incidence of cholera and of the climatic and other factors that influence it. A number of methods of forecasting have been devised, but on the whole Rogers' (1933) method has been the most successful, it also has the advantage of not requiring such a high degree of knowledge of statistical methods. Another method of forecasting that depended on the observation of the cholera incidence in the last few weeks of the year as indicating the probable incidence in the following year, has been successful in a number of districts in the endemic and sub-endemic areas in Bengal. The subject however is too technical to be

undertaken by the average practitioner, as well as being outside his sphere (Russell, 1925, Lal, Raja and Swaroop, 1941)

**The natural subsidence of an epidemic.**—This may be due to the favourable development of the climate, to some change in the water-supply as a direct result of this, to the exhaustion of one water-supply or the availability of another from any cause, or to the exhaustion of the clinical material. It has also been claimed that it is effected by the development of bacteriophage in the water-supply.

Towards the end of an epidemic there is usually a decrease in the severity of the disease and a lowering of the mortality.

**Race, sex, and age distribution.**—There appears to be little difference in the susceptibilities of the different racial elements in the population, and, even in the highly endemic areas the indigenous inhabitants are very susceptible. Men are said to be more frequently affected than women, but it seems possible that there has been a selective tendency in the data on which the statement is based. There are also relatively fewer children than adults amongst hospital patients admitted with cholera, but children are susceptible and in them the disease will usually run a severe course, an infant aged two months with cholera was recently admitted to a Calcutta hospital.

## PATHOLOGY

**Pathogenesis.**—The vibrios do not invade the tissues, and do not apparently produce any exotoxin. The endotoxin that results from the death and destruction of vibrios within the bowel lumen cause a superficial denudation of the epithelium and increase its permeability, so that there is a great outpouring of water and electrolytes with resultant loss of fluid from the tissues and blood. The tissue changes observed are usually attributed to the absorption of this toxin, but could probably be explained by the dehydration of the tissues themselves and by the hæmo-concentration and low blood pressure which results in temporary ischæmia.

**Morbid anatomy.**—The body is dehydrated, though usually well-nourished as the illness is a short one. There is marked early post-mortem rigidity, in some cases the stiffening of the limbs is almost ante-mortem. The muscles are dehydrated, dark red, and firm, and show curious post-mortem contractions which in some cases are so marked that they have been known to cause a body to fall off the post-mortem table.

In the abdominal cavity the omentum will be found as a sticky curled-up mass, the serosa, especially of the stomach, duodenum and small intestine, are pink, the lymph follicles are slightly enlarged, and the contents of the bowel are the typical rice watery alkaline fluid in which there are flakes of mucus and sometimes streaks of blood. The mucous membrane of the stomach, the small intestine and often the large intestine are congested, and there may be petechial hæmorrhages.

The liver is congested and full of dark viscid blood, there may be some toxic degenerative changes in the parenchyma cells, especially if death took place in the later stages. The gall-bladder is full, and the viscid bile will not pass along the ducts even when the gall-bladder is squeezed. The spleen is usually small and contracted. The pericardium often shows petechial hæmorrhages, the right heart and the large veins are full of dark tarry blood. The lungs are usually shrunken and anæmic, but, if death occurs in the later stages, especially when the intravenous saline therapy has failed, they may be œdematous.

The kidneys may show intense congestion, with effusion and occasionally hæmorrhages into Bowman's capsule and between the tubules the latter being filled with a colloidal hyaline material. Focal necrosis in the glomeruli has been reported.

On the other hand, in many cases, the kidneys show no apparent pathological changes, and there is a strong suggestion that the kidney failure is mainly extra-renal in origin (*vide infra*).

The kidney changes are more in the nature of a nephrosis than a nephritis and complete and rapid recovery of kidney function may be expected in non-fatal cases, on the other hand, previous damage to the kidneys adds very considerably to the gravity of the prognosis so that some of the changes in the kidneys that are reported may be due to causes other than the infection that caused the death of the patient.

The above is the characteristic picture, but in some cases there are no apparent changes in any of the organs, and in others in one or two organs only, the most constant changes are those due to dehydration.

**The blood**—On account of the dehydration there is often a polycythæmia, the red cell count not infrequently rising to 7,000,000 per cmm or more. There is a disproportionate leucocytosis often up to 20,000 per cmm with a relative large mononuclear increase. The red cell volume percentage which is normally 45 to 48 may rise to 65.

The sedimentation rate is increased in the majority of cases but not markedly, it would appear that there are two opposing influences, because it is mainly in the serious cases in which the specific gravity of the blood is high that the sedimentation rate is within normal limits (deMonte and Gupta, 1941).

With the suppression of urine, the non-protein nitrogen and urea are raised considerably, but it returns to normal comparatively rapidly, usually within a week after the urinary flow has started again.

As pointed out by Rogers (1911) in his early investigations that led to the adoption of the hypertonic and alkaline saline treatment, there is a great reduction in the alkaline and the chloride reserve, with resultant acidosis and retention of nitrogenous waste products that will further increase the renal failure. Banerjee (1941) has shown that, in an average case, 10 grammes of sodium chloride may be lost in the vomitus and 35 grammes in the stools in 24 hours. Rogers also claims that the chloride combines with and neutralises the 'cholera toxins'.

**Dehydration**—In the severe case of cholera the symptoms are mainly due to dehydration and loss of chlorides and alkalis (*vide supra*). The similarity between a patient with cholera and one in shock, e.g. from a burn is very great but not complete, for, in the latter, there is loss of all the plasma elements and not just fluid and electrolytes as in the former (see figure 119).

The best measure of dehydration is the specific gravity of the blood, the 'normal' specific gravity of the blood is given by Scudder (1940) as 1.0566 in men and 1.0533 in women. In Indians, we usually consider 1.054 as normal, in cholera it may rise to 1.064 but very seldom higher.

**Renal failure**—It is easy to understand how hæmo-concentration circulatory failure through loss of blood volume, and some degree of toxic vasomotor paresis with resultant hæmostasis will lead to failure of the renal circulation and therefore of renal secretion, until the blood pressure improves and/or the specific gravity of the blood is lowered by saline infusions. When the renal

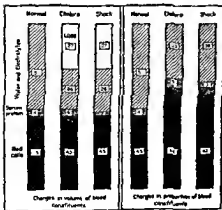


Figure 119

inertia is of long standing this is not readily overcome and it seems very possible that the temporary ischaemia during the period of circulatory failure will have caused irreversible changes in the kidney that may not be apparent histologically.

**The urine**—The urine, prior to suppression, will be highly coloured, have a specific gravity above normal, and show a distinct cloud of albumin.

After suppression, the first urine passed will contain a high percentage of albumin and hyaline, granular and epithelial casts. The specific gravity will be within the normal range, between 1.010 and 1.020. The chloride content may be as low as 0.1%. This first 24 hours' urine will be small in quantity, and its urea content very low, as the kidney is not yet able to concentrate urea. During the next few days, with the rapidly increasing efficiency of kidney function, more urine will be passed and the urea content may rise above normal. Subsequently, with more fluid intake, the urinary output will increase further and the urea percentage again drop.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

As has been shown above, there are many instances of cholera in which there are no clinical symptoms, such instances (contact carriers) are important from an epidemiological point of view (*vide supra*). From a clinical point of view, cholera infection may produce any one of three types of cholera—

(a) *Mild*—choleraic diarrhoea

(b) *Typical severe cholera*, with purging and vomiting

(c) *Cholera sicca*, a comparatively rare, very severe form of cholera in which the toxæmia is extreme, causing paralysis of the bowels so that the patient dies within a few hours, after some vomiting but no diarrhoea, the bowels are found distended with rice-water fluid, laden with vibrios.

It will be appreciated that there is no sharp line of distinction between these three types, and it will be sufficient to describe the typical attack.

The incubation period is short, it is probably never longer than five days, usually less than three, and sometimes the first symptoms appear within 24 hours.

The onset may be with a moderate diarrhoea which develops in severity, but it is much more frequently sudden with violent purging and vomiting. After the lower bowel has been emptied of faecal matter at the first few purgings, the stool takes on the typical rice-water appearance, a non-offensive whitish fluid with flakes of mucus and occasionally streaks of blood. The diarrhoea is profuse and painless—described alliteratively as pints of pale fluid painlessly pouring away. The diarrhoea is shortly followed by profuse watery vomiting. This constitutes the first stage, or stage of copious evacuations, and its duration will vary inversely with the severity of the symptoms.

The patient then passes into the second stage, the stage of collapse. The purging and vomiting continues, the former becoming a continuous process and the latter being uncontrolled and often precipitate. The classical cholera facies are assumed—the eyes sunken and cheeks hollow, the skin cold and clammy to the touch and cyanotic, the fingers shrivelled (washer-woman's fingers), the voice husky, and the expression anxious, the patient complains of extreme thirst, and becomes very restless, the blood pressure falls and the pulse cannot be felt at the wrist, the surface temperature may be as low as 95°F, the rectal temperature at the same time may however be normal, or even slightly raised, there are severe cramps in the muscles, particularly of the legs, and the urine will be suppressed. Death may occur in this collapse stage from circulatory failure, or from asthenia, the mind usually remains clear until the end.

If the duration of this algid stage has only been a few hours, the third stage, or the so-called stage of reaction, will be the stage of recovery, the purging and vomiting having stopped, the blood pressure and the temperature will rise to normal, urine will start to flow again, and the patient will slowly recover. But if the algid stage continues for long, the 'stage of

reaction' may be as serious as the earlier stages. The usual explanation of this reaction is that the recovery of the circulation means more blood flowing through the intestinal blood vessels, and more absorption of toxins. However, if the kidney failure has been long continued and/or there has been organic damage to the kidney parenchyma, caused by the ischæmia, or by the problematical toxin, the urine may not start to flow again, and a cholera-typhoid state may supervene. In rare cases the temperature rises very high, and this necessitates hydrotherapy. Cholera has been described as a disguised febrile disease, the fever being suppressed in the collapse stage, the writer questions this interpretation, and doubts whether the early rise of temperature that may occur is really part of the cholera syndrome. He has seldom seen any febrile reaction in an uncomplicated case that could not be accounted for by the infusion of pyrogen-containing saline. The charts of ten consecutive cases are shown in figure 120, in one case the rectal temperature was high on admission, but in no case was there any reaction rise. Later rises in severe cases are more easily explained.



Figure 120 Temperature charts of ten consecutive cases of cholera (broken line = rectal temperature). Only in cases 8 and 9 was there any fever at the time of admission, and none had any fever up to the time of discharge (usually 7th to 10th day) except when saline was given, this was not made with pyrogen-free water.

patient will once more become anuric. When, however, the patient passes as much as two pints of clear urine in 24 hours, the danger of relapse has usually passed. The toxæmia of cholera appears to be comparable to that following ischæmia in crush injury when blood again flows through the injured limb.

Convalescence is usually comparatively rapid, but great care should be exercised, as sudden heart failure as the result of slight exertion is not uncommon.

Complications — Enteritis and diarrhoea, pneumonia, parotitis, sloughing of the cornea, cholecystitis, and abortion in pregnant women are amongst the common complications, pneumonia is common in cold countries but comparatively rare in the tropics. Gangrene of the extremities penis and scrotum are mentioned in the textbooks as being the result of long continued collapse, but are seldom seen in these days.

#### DIAGNOSIS

In the large majority of cases, and especially during an epidemic, it will be possible to make a clinical diagnosis with a considerable degree of certainty. In fact, during an epidemic, all suspected cases should be treated as cholera, and all contacts as potential cases of cholera and as probable

Death may occur in this stage from toxæmia, azotæmia, hyperpyrexia, or from one of the various complications that may appear (*vide infra*). Anuria will usually result in death within four or five days, but there have been instances in which the patient has passed into a semi-comatose state and died on the 9th day of the anuria, recovery has been reported after anuria for four days.

The recovery may be temporarily accompanied by the passage of a little concentrated urine with a high percentage of albumin and many hyaline and granular casts, when the blood pressure falls again, the



cases of vibrio infection. The diagnosis of the isolated case is more important from a public health point of view than from the patient's, for, when there is severe purging and vomiting with consequent dehydration, the intravenous saline treatment is indicated whatever the aetiology.

Even without full laboratory facilities, a provisional bacteriological diagnosis can be made by examining wet and dry films under the microscope, the latter is made by taking a shred of mucus from the stool, making a smear on a slide, and staining with weak carbol-fuchsin. In the wet film, the large number of the organisms, their uniform character, and their very rapid rotatory movements, will lead one to suspect cholera, in the stained film, the characteristic comma-shaped vibrios and their 'fish in stream' arrangement will add to the suspicion.

Whenever possible the diagnosis should be confirmed by the following bacteriological procedures —

- (i) Inoculate several loopfuls of stool into a tube of peptone water (1% peptone 0.5% NaCl adjusted to pH 8.4), incubate for 8 hours, take a loopful from the surface and examine fresh and stained. If they are gram negative motile vibrios—
- (ii) Take a loopful from the peptone culture and streak on (a) Vedder and Van Dam (haemoglobin peptone glycerin and KOH—pH 8.4), (b) Dieudonne, or (c) Aronson plates, and incubate for 12 hours. Pick out greenish (in a and b) or red (in c) colonies and examine to confirm that they are vibrios.
- (iii) Carry out a slide agglutination test with standard high-titre anti-O subgroup I cholera serum to exclude all but the El Tor and the true cholera vibrio.
- (iv) In order to show whether haemolytic (El Tor) or nonhaemolytic (true cholera vibrio), to a 5% sheep blood corpuscular suspension in saline add an equal quantity of vibrio emulsion, incubate at 37° C. and read after two hours and again after 8 hours.

**Differential diagnosis.**—Cholera will have to be distinguished from, amongst others, the following conditions —

(a) *Fulminant bacillary dysentery*, the diagnosis will be bacteriological but it is unnecessary to wait for this, as intravenous saline treatment is indicated in either case, though in a case of Shiga dysentery the early administration of anti-serum would probably improve the prognosis.

(b) *The algid and choleraic forms of malaria*, the differential diagnosis here is very important, for, though the administration of intravenous saline would do the malaria patient no harm and probably some good, the withholding of specific anti-malarial treatment might easily be fatal, if there is any doubt, a blood film should be examined immediately.

(c) *Trichinosis*, the acute gastro-intestinal onset of a heavy infection of *Trichinella spiralis* may simulate cholera, and later the muscular cramps might be a confusing element. The exclusion of this diagnosis will be difficult, and a positive diagnosis of cholera must be sought. This infection, however, is rare in India, the main home of cholera.

(d) *Food poisoning*—staphylococcal or streptococcal, mushroom, etc.

(e) *Arsenic or antimony*

The distinguishing features of the last two are shown in the table following —

TABLE VI (*Differential diagnosis of cholera*)

	Cholera	Food poisoning	Arsenic (and antimony) Poisoning
<i>Epidemiology</i>	Associated with other cases in neighbourhood	Often single group of persons who shared meal no secondary cases	Often one person only
<i>Incubation</i>	24-72 hours	4-24 hours	4-2 hours
<i>Onset</i>	With purging	With vomiting	With burning in throat followed by vomiting
<i>Nausea and retching</i>	None	Yes	Yes retching marked
<i>Vomiting</i>	Precipitate watery, rarely blood Continuous	Often single severe vomit mucus blood streaked	Violent continuous mucus often freely streaked with blood
<i>Evacuation</i>	Early Continuous pouring out of pints of watery fluid, inoffensive	Frequent Usually follows vomiting faecal plus blood and mucus, often offensive	Delayed Single massive followed by frequent passing blood and mucus
<i>Tenesmus</i>	None	Yes	Very marked
<i>Abdominal tenderness</i>	None	Marked All over abdomen	Very marked
<i>Dehydration</i>	Very marked	Distinct	Slight
<i>Muscular cramps</i>	Constant and severe	Less constant Extremities only	Severe
<i>Surface temperature</i>	Subnormal	Often up to 100-102°F	Normal or subnormal
<i>Headache</i>	None	Often	Often
<i>Urine</i>	Suppressed	Seldom suppressed	Sometimes suppressed later
<i>Blood</i>	Leucocytes mononuclear increase	Normal	Slight leucocytosis Normal differential

## PREVENTION

**Grand strategy**—No cholera pandemic has occurred since 1884 and in fact for the last thirty years the disease has been confined to its Asiatic homes and to other Asiatic countries in their immediate vicinity. This however has been achieved only by very elaborate quarantine organizations in a large number of countries and at a considerable cost, both directly to those countries which have to maintain these organizations and indirectly to the shipping companies whose ships are very frequently delayed. Quarantine regulations are directed against other diseases besides cholera but nevertheless cholera is probably the most important of all 'quarantinable' diseases. This matter therefore seemed a suitable subject for the League of Nations Health Organization to take up and at a meeting of the Office Internationale d'Hygiène Publique in 1930 they drew the attention of the Indian representative to the fact that India was the main source of origin of previous pandemics, and suggested that investigations should be initiated

in this country with a view to stamping out the disease in the endemic areas

In 1931, the Indian Research Fund Association made cholera one of their main subjects of research, with some of the results reported above. The Indian workers, in collaboration with others in England, established the identity of the true cholera vibrio, showed that the cholera case was the only source of infection, and defined the true endemic areas in India, thereby they opened the way for a definite policy of control. This policy, which is a long-term one consists in a sustained sanitary drive in the true endemic areas. This will be expensive, and it is hoped that, as all provinces in India will benefit by any results, assistance will be given to those provinces in which the endemic areas exist.

**Prevention of epidemic extension**—In all countries there are strict quarantine regulations for all ships coming from infected ports, and certain large ports in the endemic areas, e.g. Calcutta, are more or less permanently classed as infected. The actual procedure and the measures taken vary in different countries but in some cases the authorities have gone as far as to provide for anal swabs being taken from all the lower-class passengers. Pilgrim ships going to Mecca have been submitted to the strictest quarantine regulations, and these have included the inoculation of all pilgrims prior to embarkation.

Within countries control measures are more difficult to carry out, and have on the whole been less successful but during the last few decades special efforts have been made to prevent epidemic extension as a result of religious melas. At the sites of these melas latrine arrangements, anti-fly measures and protected water supplies have been instituted. Provision has been made for the immediate treating and isolation of the sick. Similar arrangements have been made at various points on the roads and railways leading to and from these melas, and during the last few years, systematic inoculation of pilgrims has been carried out. Besides these special precautions in connection with melas at the height of the epidemic seasons, provision is made at the large railway stations for detaining and detaining in the railway hospital any passenger showing suspicious symptoms. Epidemic staffs are employed for visiting any village where a case has been reported, medical aid is given to the sick, disinfection of the water supplies carried out, and often inoculation of the whole community undertaken. Attempts are also made to control the movement of the population to prevent extension of the epidemic to other villages.

In the matter of disinfecting wells, discrimination should be observed and only suspected sources of infection treated at first, for, if all well water is made undrinkable, the inhabitants will be compelled to find other waters which may be even more contaminated. *vide infra* chlorination of water supplies.

**Control in the endemic areas**—Here the public health policy to be adopted is somewhat different from the above. One of the main differences is that all measures should as far as possible be of a permanent nature, and, further, should be in force practically the whole year.

If all the inhabitants of these areas could be provided with a protected water supply, it seems very probable that cholera could be stamped out (*see footnote on water supplies*\*) Though the habit of indiscriminate

---

\*Water supplies—A local water supply from wells depends upon the depth of the water table and character of the water-bearing soil sand and gravel of course being ideal. Although a deep tube well 750-1000 feet should be able to produce water of greater quantity and perhaps of greater notability such wells are expensive and in nearly all parts of the Ganges alluvial plain for example shallow tube wells 30 to 150 feet deep will yield sufficient water for a household. The depth will vary, as it is

defecation in the open fields around the village that is general in most Indian villages probably helps to spread infection during exacerbations of endemic cholera, it is almost certainly not the main factor, except that it may lead to the contamination of water supplies, for there is little evidence of correlation between the fly population curve and cholera incidence in the endemic areas in India.

Another important measure is making arrangements for the immediate isolation and treatment of all recognized cases and the segregation of contacts. Some form of compulsory notification is an essential prelude to this. Inoculation is practised as a palliative measure in the endemic areas, but it is unlikely to achieve success and in the writer's opinion, is not to be recommended because though it may prevent the full development of symptoms it is unlikely to preclude infection completely, such an infection, which will result in the passage of virulent vibrios for a few days, by an unsuspected individual is a greater source of danger than a frank case of cholera.

In some endemic areas widespread bacteriophage treatment of water supplies has been carried out, with questionable success.

**Control in hospitals or institutions.**—The sick and contacts should be isolated, any suspected water supply should be disinfected, special measures should be taken to add a strong disinfectant e.g. chloride of lime, immediately to all stools and vomitus and to allow it to act for a sufficient time to destroy all the vibrios before the stool is allowed to pass into the common drain, all linen from the patients should be placed in disinfectant, the clothes of the attendants should be discarded when they leave the ward and these should likewise be placed in disinfectant, the staff should not be allowed to take any food on the premises or to smoke, flies should be excluded rigidly from the wards and latrines, and all those who come in contact with cholera patients should be inoculated, preferably a week or more before they come on duty in the cholera wards, but otherwise at the earliest date possible. There is little evidence of a negative phase.

**Personal prophylaxis.**—Inoculation causes little or no reaction and is therefore worth having done once every year, at least. All water and milk must be boiled, and uncooked vegetables avoided, no soda water or ice should be used unless it is known to have been made from boiled water, and no cut fruit or food cooked the previous night and left standing should be eaten. These are the standard rules to avoid bowel disease. They should always be

necessary for the well strainer to be in a sand stratum which is below the water table height during the dry season. The water, although hard is usually of high purity.

Open wells have a greater yield than shallow tube wells in that they also serve as a reservoir. However it is harder to maintain purity even when the wells are protected by a proper apron and parapet wall. The purity can be maintained if the well is covered and a pump installed.

When the water supply is from a *doba* or stream it must be pumped into a reservoir where proper disinfection can be carried out.

There is still a mistaken idea of the danger of sub-soil pollution of a well. Nearly all well pollution is from the surface. In a limestone formation or where there are fissured rock formations pollution may travel quite long distances but in other formations the extension of pollution from a source depends upon the texture of the soil, the height of the water table, the slope of the water table and the direction of the flow.

The old theory that a well must be 50 or 100 feet from a latrine is incorrect. In rare cases the pollution may travel 400 feet and in others only 5 feet. In the Southern United States, Caldwell found that the *Bacillus coli* travelled a little over 10 feet in the direction of flow. Dyer (1911) found that in the Punjab *B. coli* only travelled a little over 15 feet in 9 months and in Bengal 5 feet in 8 months. Therefore in planning a latrine it should be below the well. The direction of the ground water flow can be roughly estimated by the topography of the ground.

followed in the tropics, but they must be observed with religious formality during a cholera epidemic. There is little danger of direct infection of personal attendants on the sick, provided that they avoid a precipitate vomitus splashing into their faces and never take food on the premises or until they have changed their clothes and washed their hands.

### Special measures of prevention

**Inoculation**—Haffkine, who was a student of Pasteur, carried out experiments in Paris in 1892 and applied them in India. He used live avirulent cultures followed by virulent cultures. Kolle showed that killed cultures were equally efficacious, and killed cultures have been used since. Cholera vaccine has been used very widely for a quarter of a century. Recent evidence of its value rests mainly on one statistically designed and executed investigation conducted under the auspices of the Indian Research Fund Association (Russell, 1927). The figures were as follows:—

	Persons	Cases	Deaths
Two doses of vaccine by injection	8 485	31	2
Three doses of oral vaccine	4 982	18	4
Controls	40 258	711	277

It is usual to give two doses, but in many wholesale inoculation schemes it has only been practicable to give one, and the results have not been much inferior. This fact, and the apparent equal success of the oral vaccine, about which many workers are very doubtful, has led the sceptics to question the value of cholera vaccine altogether.

The vaccine should be prepared from recently isolated strains of non-hæmolytic O sub group-1 cholera vibrios. The vaccine should be formalin-killed and contain 4,000 million organisms per c cm in 0.5% phenol, the usual dose is 1 c cm, followed a week later by a second dose of 2 c cm.

Immunity is said to last from 3 to 6 months, and there does not appear to be a negative phase.

**Oral vaccine**—Bestedka's oral bilvaccine has been used more extensively in cholera than in any other disease. Its value was investigated by Russell (*loc cit*) who reported favourably on it (*vide supra*).

**Bacteriophage**—In Bihar and Assam, extensive trials were carried out in which bacteriophage was distributed for the treatment of their water supplies to a large number of villages in the areas where cholera occurs frequently. The results appeared satisfactory, but would not survive statistical criticism. In later years, the trials were repeated with disappointing results.

**Disinfection of water supplies**—**Chlorination**—For filtered water supplies, the usual rule is one part in five million, that is one part of chlorine, or if the chlorine content of the bleaching powder is 33½ per cent, 3 parts of bleaching powder, this works out at 6 lb of bleaching powder per million gallons of water. But, as the chlorine content of bleaching powder varies from sample to sample, and as the chlorine fixing power of different water supplies also varies, no rule of thumb can be adopted and the amount to be added must be calculated for each well or cistern.

The following is a standard method of calculating the amount of bleaching powder to be added.

Three standard solutions made with distilled water are necessary:

- (a) 1 in 1,000 solution of the bleaching powder to be used
- (b) 10 per cent potassium iodide solution
- (c) 1 per cent starch solution

The volume of water to be chlorinated must first be ascertained. For wells, this can be calculated from the depth of the water and the diameter of the well, by the formula  $\pi r^2 \times \text{depth}$ , where  $r$  is the radius (half the diameter) of the well. The capacity of tanks and cisterns is calculated by multiplying the length

by the breadth by the depth of the water One cubic foot of water is equivalent to  $6\frac{1}{2}$  gallons

*Example* A well is 10 feet deep and has a diameter of 6 feet Therefore it contains  $\pi r^2 \times 10 \times 6\frac{1}{2} = 7 \times 9 \times 10 \times 7 = 1768$  gallons

Take five white bowls or flasks and in each place 500 ccm of water to be treated

Take a clean graduated 1 ccm pipette and wash it thoroughly with distilled water With this pipette add varying quantities of the 1 in 1000 bleaching powder solution to the water in the five vessels 0.5 ccm 0.7 ccm 0.9 ccm, 1.1 ccm, and 1.3 ccm to the first second third fourth and fifth bowl, respectively

Stir the mixture in each bowl with a clean glass rod, beginning with the bowl containing the least amount of chlorine solution and going to the one containing the next smallest and so on

Allow them to stand for at least an hour Then test for free chlorine by adding to each bowl about 1 ccm of 10 per cent potassium iodide solution and 1 ccm of freshly prepared starch solution Mix well and note the first bowl that gives a faint blue colour Note the amount of bleaching powder solution that was added to that particular bowl and multiply by 20 The result gives the number of pounds of bleaching powder required for one million gallons of water to this figure add 3 lb which if the bleaching powder is approximately 30 per cent is the usual safety margin allowed for one million gallons of water Now calculate the amount of bleaching powder that should be added for the amount of water already ascertained to be present in the well or cistern that is to be chlorinated

*For example* say the third bowl is the first to give the faint blue colour then  $0.9 \times 20 = 18$  lb and 3 lb making 21 lb

In the case of the hypothetical well mentioned above which contained 1768 gallons of water the amount of bleaching powder required would be  $1768 \times (18 + 3) \text{ lb}$

$$\frac{1\,000\,000}{1768 \times (18 + 3)}$$

$$= 0.037128 \text{ lb}$$

$$= 260 \text{ grains (or about 17 grammes)}$$

*Alternative method* If centimetre pipettes are not available a rough method of titrating may be adopted as follows —

Place a pint of water in each of the 5 bowls and add 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 drops respectively of bleaching powder solution from a dropper stir very thoroughly, as explained above and after the usual interval add the potassium iodide and starch solutions

The calculation is made as follows

Minimum number of drops of bleaching powder solution added to the first bowl in which the blue colour was distinct

Number of drops from the dropper that make a drachm

$\times 0.44 + 0.021 =$

Grains per gallon of water to be treated

*Example* If the fourth bowl was the first to give the blue colour then  $25 \times 0.44 + 0.021 = 0.1585$  grains per gallon

$$= 158 \text{ grains per 1000 gallons}$$

or in the case of the example given above

$$\frac{1}{1000} \times 158 = 280 \text{ grains (or about 18 grammes)} =$$

**Potassium permanganate** — This has been a very popular disinfectant for wells Its main advantage lies in its extreme simplicity of application its action on cholera vibrios in high dilution appears to be specific The usual criterion of adding permanganate namely, until the water is a slight pink colour is not a safe one, if there are likely to be other faecal pathogens present A dilution of 1 in 500 000, which produces a faint purple colour in filtered water, kills cholera vibrios in a very short time, but it will not kill all coliform organisms even in 24 hours

This dilution is obtained by adding  $\frac{1}{2}$ th grain of permanganate to each gallon of water, or roughly one pound to each 50,000 gallons

In our hypothetical well which contained 1768 gallons the amount of permanganate required would be a little over half an ounce

Neither the permanganate nor the bleaching powder should be thrown into the well, but should be mixed in a bucket, the supernatant fluid being

followed in the tropics, but they must be observed with religious formality during a cholera epidemic. There is little danger of direct infection of personal attendants on the sick, provided that they avoid a precipitate vomitus splashing into their faces, and never take food on the premises or until they have changed their clothes and washed their hands.

### Special measures of prevention

**Inoculation**—Haffkine, who was a student of Pasteur, carried out experiments in Paris in 1892 and applied them in India. He used live avirulent cultures followed by virulent cultures. Kolle showed that killed cultures were equally efficacious, and killed cultures have been used since. Cholera vaccine has been used very widely for a quarter of a century. Recent evidence of its value rests mainly on one statistically designed and executed investigation conducted under the auspices of the Indian Research Fund Association (Russell, 1927). The figures were as follows:—

	Persons	Cases	Deaths
Two doses of vaccine by injection	8 485	31	2
Three doses of oral vaccine	4 982	18	4
Controls	40,258	711	277

It is usual to give two doses, but in many wholesale inoculation schemes it has only been practicable to give one, and the results have not been much inferior. This fact, and the apparent equal success of the oral vaccine, about which many workers are very doubtful, has led the sceptics to question the value of cholera vaccine altogether.

The vaccine should be prepared from recently isolated strains of non-hæmolytic O sub-group-I cholera vibrios. The vaccine should be formalin-killed and contain 4 000 million organisms per c cm in 0.5% phenol, the usual dose is 1 c cm, followed a week later by a second dose of 2 c cm.

Immunity is said to last from 3 to 6 months, and there does not appear to be a negative phase.

**Oral vaccine**—Besredka's oral bilvaccine has been used more extensively in cholera than in any other disease. Its value was investigated by Russell (*loc. cit.*) who reported favourably on it (*vide supra*).

**Bacteriophage**—In Bihar and Assam extensive trials were carried out in which bacteriophage was distributed for the treatment of their water supplies to a large number of villages in the areas where cholera occurs frequently. The results appeared satisfactory, but would not survive statistical criticism. In later years, the trials were repeated with disappointing results.

**Disinfection of water supplies**—**Chlorination**—For filtered water supplies, the usual rule is one part in five million, that is one part of chlorine or if the chlorine content of the bleaching powder is 33½ per cent, 3 parts of bleaching powder, this works out at 6 lb of bleaching powder per million gallons of water. But, as the chlorine content of bleaching powder varies from sample to sample, and as the chlorine fixing power of different water supplies also varies, no rule of thumb can be adopted and the amount to be added must be calculated for each well or cistern.

The following is a standard method of calculating the amount of bleaching powder to be added.

Three standard solutions made with distilled water are necessary:

- (a) 1 in 1 000 solution of the bleaching powder to be used
- (b) 10 per cent potassium iodide solution
- (c) 1 per cent starch solution

The volume of water to be chlorinated must first be ascertained. For wells this can be calculated from the depth of the water and the diameter of the well by the formula  $\pi r^2 \times \text{depth}$  where  $r$  is the radius (half the diameter) of the well. The capacity of tanks and cisterns is calculated by multiplying the length

by the breadth by the depth of the water One cubic foot of water is equivalent to 6½ gallons

*Example* A well is 10 feet deep and has a diameter of 6 feet Therefore it contains  $\pi r^2 \times 10 \times 6\frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \times 9 \times 10 \times \frac{1}{2} = 1768$  gallons

Take five white bowls or flasks and in each place 500 ccm of water to be treated

Take a clean graduated 1 ccm pipette and wash it thoroughly with distilled water With this pipette add varying quantities of the 1 in 1000 bleaching powder solution to the water in the five vessels 0.5 ccm 0.7 ccm 0.9 ccm 1.1 ccm and 1.3 ccm to the first second third fourth and fifth bowl respectively

Stir the mixture in each bowl with a clean glass rod, beginning with the bowl containing the least amount of chlorine solution and going to the one containing the next smallest and so on

Allow them to stand for at least an hour Then test for free chlorine by adding to each bowl about 1 ccm of 10 per cent potassium iodide solution and 1 ccm of freshly prepared starch solution Mix well and note the first bowl that gives a faint blue colour Note the amount of bleaching powder solution that was added to that particular bowl and multiply by 20 The result gives the number of pounds of bleaching powder required for one million gallons of water to this figure add 3 lb which if the bleaching powder is approximately 30 per cent is the usual safety margin allowed for one million gallons of water Now calculate the amount of bleaching powder that should be added for the amount of water already ascertained to be present in the well or cistern that is to be chlorinated

*For example* say the third bowl is the first to give the faint blue colour then  $0.9 \times 20 = 18$  lb and 3 lb making 21 lb

In the case of the hypothetical well mentioned above which contained 1768 gallons of water the amount of bleaching powder required would be  $1768 \times (18 + 3) \text{ lb}$

1 000 000

$= 0.037128 \text{ lb}$

$= 260 \text{ grains (or about 17 grammes)}$

*Alternative method* If centimetre pipettes are not available, a rough method of titrating may be adopted as follows —

Place a pint of water in each of the 5 bowls and add 10 15 20 25 30 drops respectively of bleaching powder solution from a dropper stir very thoroughly as explained above and after the usual interval add the potassium iodide and starch solutions

The calculation is made as follows

Minimum number of drops of bleaching powder solution added to the first bowl in which the blue colour was distinct

Number of drops from the dropper that make a drachm

*Example* If the fourth bowl was the first to give the blue colour then

$40 \times 0.41 + 0.021 = 0.1585 \text{ grains per gallon}$

$= 158 \text{ grains per 1000 gallons}$

or in the case of the example given above

$1585 \times 158 = 280 \text{ grains (or about 18 grammes)}$

**Potassium permanganate** — This has been a very popular disinfectant for wells Its main advantage lies in its extreme simplicity of application its action on cholera vibrios in high dilution appears to be specific The usual criterion of adding permanganate namely, until the water is a slight pink colour is not a safe one, if there are likely to be other faecal pathogens present A dilution of 1 in 500 000 which produces a faint purple colour in filtered water, kills cholera vibrios in a very short time but it will not kill all coliform organisms even in 24 hours

This dilution is obtained by adding  $\frac{1}{16}$ th grain of permanganate to each gallon of water, or roughly one pound to each 50 000 gallons

In our hypothetical well which contained 1768 gallons the amount of permanganate required would be a little over half an ounce

Neither the permanganate nor the bleaching powder should be thrown into the well, but should be mixed in a bucket, the supernatant fluid being



poured off and renewed until the whole amount has gone into solution. Then, the water in the well should be thoroughly mixed by repeatedly lowering and raising the bucket.

### TREATMENT

**Historical**—Charm<sup>a</sup> amulets and magic were credited with playing important parts in the treatment of cholera during the last century, and they still held their own even at the beginning of this, amongst less educated communities. This is not surprising, as the methods of treatment of cholera that were employed by the practitioners of scientific medicine during the whole of last century were scarcely better. The earliest drugs that were used include calomel, a drug that appears to have been predominant at all periods and is still in use, in doses of 1 to 2 grains every quarter of an hour until the patient recovered—or, which was more frequently the case, died—opium, *Cannabis indica*, sulphuric and nitrous acids, quinine, strychnine, arsenic, iron, and in fact almost every drug in the pharmacopœia, and many that were not in it. The multiplicity of drugs suggests very strongly that none was of any real value. Other methods employed were venesection, blistering, cupping, wrapping in cold sheets, hot baths, 'electro-magnetic insulation', and a number of other procedures.

With the advent of bacteriology and Koch's discovery of the vibrio, the intestinal antiseptics naturally had a phase, but the value of none was established.

Saline injections were used nearly a hundred years ago in England. The immediate result was said usually to be good, but as emphasis is laid on the word *immediate*, one must assume that the final results were disappointing, and this assumption is strengthened by the fact that this method of treatment was abandoned. Intravenous injection of saline was used in Shanghai in 1875 and in India between 1906 and 1908, there is little evidence that it materially affected the appalling prognosis in this disease. The following year Rogers introduced his hypertonic saline, this constituted the first really decisive advance in the treatment of cholera, and the last thirty odd years has seen very little change in the standard treatment which remains much as he formulated it. If the results of treatment are now better than they were thirty years ago, it is because the technique is better understood and more promptly put into operation.

**Introduction**—Treatment must be considered under three headings:—

A Specific

B Maintenance of biochemical equilibrium

C Symptomatic

Hitherto the failure of specific treatment has led to an emphasis on the other two aspects of treatment. The complete success of efficient biochemical-maintenance treatment in a large percentage of cases indicates that, even in those cases in which the natural immunity fails to prevent the establishment of infection, immunity is rapidly developed and soon overcomes the infection. Nevertheless, it is obvious that if the infection could be overcome and/or its 'toxin' neutralized earlier, the treatment to maintain biochemical balance might be reduced, or even omitted in some cases, without endangering the life of the patient.

A **Specific treatment**—There are two objectives.—

(1) The destruction of the vibrio—All the various intestinal antiseptics that have been used in the past have failed to influence the course of the disease in the case of cholera.

The advocates of bacteriophage have claimed an earlier disappearance of the vibrios after 'phage administration'.

Bacteriophage should not be given to the exclusion of other treatment, but in addition to it, no other 'specific' should, however, be given by mouth with the 'phage'. A good 'phage', active against the local strain of cholera, is essential. One ampoule containing about 3 c cm. of 'phage' is given every two hours, or large doses at longer intervals for at least two days.

The essential-oils mixture that has been advocated by some workers is presumably supposed to act as a disinfectant. The essential-oils mixture consists of:—

R. Olei caryophylli	}	m℥
"  caruputa		
juniperi		
Acidi sulphurici dil		℥℥℥
Spiritus ætheris		℥℥℥℥

Half a drachm of the mixture is given in an ounce of water every 15 minutes, up to a maximum of 16 doses

It is not a treatment that the writer can recommend except as a gesture of despair when no other treatment is available

The advent of the sulphanilamides has once more raised our hopes of finding a drug that will act directly on the vibrio, and the recent success with sulphanilyl-guanidine has suggested that the long sought specific may possibly be a drug of this class, of which the bacteriocidal and bacteriostatic properties are high and the absorptum coefficient low

Sulphanilyl-guanidine is tolerated in very large doses. The dose recommended is 0.1 gm per kilogramme of body-weight immediately followed by 0.05 gm every four hours. This is to say, a patient of moderate size, 50 kilogrammes or 110 pounds, should receive an initial dose of 5 grammes followed by 2.5 grammes every four hours until symptoms subside. Up to date, our experience in Calcutta has been very promising, in a series of over sixty cases in which this dosage was given, we have lost no case, against a death rate of about 6 per cent amongst patients treated with saline infusions only (Napier *et al* in press). Reports from elsewhere have not been so satisfactory

(ii) The neutralization of the toxin—No great success has been achieved in this direction. Potassium permanganate has been most disappointing in the writer's experience, and, in the large doses advocated, it appears to cause gastro-intestinal irritation very frequently. It seems very questionable whether its *in vitro* toxin oxidizing properties are reproduced *in vivo*. The dose recommended is two enteric coated pills, of 2 grains each, every 15 minutes for the first two hours and then every half hour until the acute symptoms have subsided or 80 pills have been taken.

Kaolin as an adsorbent has also been very disappointing, the dose recommended is one pound in a pint of water, to be taken *ad lib*

**B The maintenance of biochemical equilibrium**—The objectives are—

- (i) the replacement of fluid
- (ii) the maintenance of the blood and tissue chlorides at their normal level, and
- (iii) the counteraction of acidosis

All three can be achieved by suitable intravenous therapy, for example, by the hypertonic and alkaline saline treatment recommended by Rogers. The procedure that he suggested was as follows—

**Rogers' treatment**—Two solutions are prepared—

- (a) the hypertonic saline consisting of  
sodium chloride—120 grains  
calcium chloride—4 grains  
pure or distilled water up to a pint

this solution is autoclaved or boiled to ensure sterility,

- (b) the alkaline saline which is prepared as follows—  
sodium chloride—90 grains  
pure or distilled water 1 pint

this solution is autoclaved to ensure sterility, and to it is added, from a previously sterilized packet containing the exact amount, 160 grains of bicarbonate of soda\*

\* Sodium bicarbonate is converted to carbonate if a solution of it is heated for any length of time

ascertained by estimating the specific gravity of the blood and taking the blood pressure. If the systolic blood pressure is below 80 mm of mercury, or the specific gravity of the blood 1058 to 1060,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  pints are prescribed, if 1060 to 1062, two to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  pints and if 1062 to 1064 up to three pints. It is seldom wise to give more than three pints in the first instance, at any rate in the low-weight type of Indian but, if circumstances permit, the perfusion should be continued by the drip feed method.

**Method**—The specific gravity of the blood is estimated under clinical conditions by adding drops of blood to a series of bottles of glycerine diluted with distilled water to make the specific gravities 1050 1052 1054 and so on up to 1070 for practical purposes it is usually sufficient to have bottles from 1054 to 1064. If the specific gravity of the blood is greater than that of the glycerine in the bottle the drop will sink, if it is less it will come to the surface. The bottles can be used for some time if they are carefully corked, if they are not kept closed the glycerine will absorb moisture from the atmosphere and the specific gravity will fall in the humid climate of the endemic areas or will rise as a result of evaporation in the drier climates.

**Technique**—Blood is taken from the finger or ear into a Wright's pipette. The tip of this is placed just below the surface of the glycerine in the bottle of the highest specific gravity and a small drop is squeezed out which will probably rise to the surface. This is repeated in each bottle until the extruded drop either remains stationary or falls to the bottom of the bottle. The specific gravity of the bottle in which it remained stationary is the specific gravity of the blood. If it rises in one and falls in the next the specific gravity may be taken as between these two.

As dehydration and loss of chlorides are the first pathological processes to be counteracted hypertonic saline and alkaline saline should be given in the proportions 2 to 1 within the first 24 hours of onset. Later, acidosis develops, and during the next 24 hours, that is from 24 to 48 hours from the onset, the proportions should be reversed and 1 part of hypertonic saline with 2 parts of alkaline saline given. After 48 hours, acidosis will probably be the most prominent feature, and hypotonic alkaline saline should be given. If however the specific gravity of the blood is not much increased but nevertheless the patient is suffering from acidosis, then the bicarbonate solution only is required and about half a pint of this should be given.

It will very often be necessary to repeat the infusions sometimes as many as half a dozen times if the fluid evacuation continues, if the patient collapses again, or if the dehydration is re-established (evidenced by a rise in the blood specific gravity).

Recent work on shock suggests that human serum or plasma is likely to remain longer in the circulation than the saline infusions and the procedure of running in two pints of hypertonic saline and following this by a pint of plasma to keep it there, so to speak has been adopted in a few cases apparently with complete success, but as it will be seen from figure 119 there are not the same indications for giving plasma in cholera as in shock.

**Apparatus and technique** Fluid may be introduced into a vein directly or by the open method. The special apparatus required includes a graduated glass reservoir with at least six feet of rubber tubing attached in the length of which a drip-feed apparatus may be interposed a foot below the reservoir.



Figure 121 Apparatus for giving saline with the drip-feed apparatus incorporated in the tube (in this figure the length of the tubing between the drip-feed and the needle is shorter than it would be in practice)

ascertained by estimating the specific gravity of the blood and taking the blood pressure. If the systolic blood pressure is below 80 mm of mercury, or the specific gravity of the blood 1058 to 1060,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  pints are prescribed, if 1060 to 1062, two to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  pints and if 1062 to 1064 up to three pints. It is seldom wise to give more than three pints in the first instance at any rate in the low-weight type of Indian but if circumstances permit, the perfusion should be continued by the drip feed method.

**Method**—The specific gravity of the blood is estimated under clinical conditions by adding drops of blood to a series of bottles of glycerine diluted with distilled water to make the specific gravities 1050 1052 1054 and so on up to 1070 for practical purposes it is usually sufficient to have bottles from 1054 to 1064. If the specific gravity of the blood is greater than that of the glycerine in the bottle the drop will sink; if it is less it will come to the surface. The bottles can be used for some time if they are carefully corked; if they are not kept closed the glycerine will absorb moisture from the atmosphere and the specific gravity will fall in the humid climate of the endemic areas or will rise as a result of evaporation in the drier climates.

**Technique**—Blood is taken from the finger or ear into a Wright's pipette. The tip of this is placed just below the surface of the glycerine in the bottle of the highest specific gravity and a small drop is squeezed out which will probably rise to the surface. This is repeated in each bottle until the extruded drop either remains stationary or falls to the bottom of the bottle. The specific gravity of the bottle in which it remained stationary is the specific gravity of the blood. If it rises in one and falls in the next the specific gravity may be taken as between these two.

As dehydration and loss of chlorides are the first pathological processes to be counteracted hypertonic saline and alkaline saline should be given in the proportions 2 to 1 within the first 24 hours of onset. Later, acidosis develops and during the next 24 hours that is from 24 to 48 hours from the onset the proportions should be reversed and 1 part of hypertonic saline with 2 parts of alkaline saline given. After 48 hours, acidosis will probably be the most prominent feature and hypotonic alkaline saline should be given. If however the specific gravity of the blood is not much increased but nevertheless the patient is suffering from acidosis then the bicarbonate solution only is required and about half a pint of this should be given.

It will very often be necessary to repeat the infusions sometimes as many as half a dozen times if the fluid evacuation continues if the patient collapses again or if the dehydration is re-established (evidenced by a rise in the blood specific gravity).

Recent work on shock suggests that human serum or plasma is likely to remain longer in the circulation than the saline infusions, and the procedure of running in two pints of hypertonic saline and following this by a pint of plasma to keep it there so to speak has been adopted in a few cases apparently with complete success but as it will be seen from figure 119 there are not the same indications for giving plasma in cholera as in shock.

**Apparatus and technique.** Fluid may be introduced into a vein directly or by the open method. The special apparatus required includes a graduated glass reservoir with at least six feet of rubber tubing attached in the length of which a drip-feed apparatus may be interposed a foot below the reservoir.



Figure 121 Apparatus for giving saline with the drip-feed apparatus incorporated in the tube (in this figure the length of the tubing between the drip-feed and the needle is shorter than it would be in practice)

and 3 inches of glass tubing to act as a 'window' a short way from the lower end. At the lower end of the tube, a record needle adapter, preferably with a stop-cock, is inserted, and a serum syringe needle fitted (see figure 121). For giving by the open method, the needle adapter is replaced by a special intravenous cannula, again preferably with a stop cock (see figure 122).

A suitable vein, usually in the ante-cubital fossa, is chosen, failing this, a vein in front of the internal malleolus or even on the dorsum of the hand may be used.

The patient is placed in the recumbent position under a good light, the whole of the arm is exposed and is supported at a convenient angle with the body, in complete extension, with the palm upwards, resting on a pad placed under the elbow, and the operator sits facing the elbow.

A sphygmomanometer cuff or a tourniquet is applied to the arm, compression of the deeper arterial supply is avoided, if necessary, the patient should be made to open and close the hand, or to bend and extend the elbow, several times in order to fill the veins.

The selected area is painted with tincture of iodine, and then washed with alcohol. Local anaesthesia of the skin may be produced by injecting a few drops of 2 per cent novocain solution (or some suitable substitute) with a fine hypodermic needle to form a wheel over the selected vein. The arm must be held firmly, so that the patient cannot pull it away or move it.

Next, with all aseptic precautions, a needle, connected with the infusion apparatus is filled with saline solution so that all the air is expelled. The needle must be sharp and have a short bevel. It is then held at a very acute angle with the point touching the skin and is thrust through the skin into the vein. Some workers prefer to make a preliminary nick in the skin. To the experienced hand, the entrance of the needle point into the vein is indicated by a sudden failure of resistance. The reservoir should be held by an assistant at about, or just below, the level of the patient so that when the stop-cock is opened, blood will flow into the tube and be visible at the window. The tourniquet is now released and the reservoir raised and the flow will be reversed. The reservoir should be attached to a stand, about 3 to 4 feet above the level of the patient.

A very convenient refinement is a serum syringe with a side nozzle to which the lower end of the tubing from the reservoir is attached. The adapter being discarded, the needle is attached in the usual position. With the aid of this syringe, the operator has perfect control of the needle whilst inserting it into the vein. The piston is slowly withdrawn, when blood will appear. The tourniquet is released, and the side stop cock opened to allow the saline to flow.

When the veins are collapsed, the open method is employed. A tourniquet is applied as before. Under a local anaesthetic a small incision is made, the skin being steadied by the index finger and thumb of the left hand. The vein is isolated by forceps dissection. The closed forceps, or an aneurysm needle, are then passed under the vein, and a double strand of sterilized catgut is drawn



Figure 122 Cannula for inserting into vein

under it. The catgut is divided to provide two ligatures. The distal piece is drawn down under the exposed vein and is tied the ends being left long. The proximal one is drawn up under the vein to the upper end of the wound.

The fluid is now allowed to flow through the cannula until all air is expelled\*. The vein being steadied by the lower ligature a nick is made into it with a pair of fine scissors. The cannula is inserted into the vein, the other ligature being single-knotted and drawn around the vein with the cannula inside. The flow of saline is then started.

When the infusion is completed the cannula is withdrawn, but the ligature is not knotted or cut, in case a later transfusion is required, the wound is closed temporarily with a single stitch, and a light dressing is applied.

A modification of this method is to use a needle, as in the direct method and to push the needle into the exposed vein. Afterwards, the needle is withdrawn and the wound is not closed, but simply dressed, so that the same vein may be used again.

**Rate and temperature of administration**—At first, while the patient is pulseless, the infusion can be given briskly, at about 4 ounces per minute,

\* As bicarbonate solution will cause pain and a sharp local reaction if even a small amount is allowed into the subcutaneous tissues, a small amount of isotonic saline should always be placed in the reservoir first, until the cannula is in situ and a satisfactory flow has started.

but when the pulse recovers or the patient complains of an oppressive pain in the chest, the rate should be decreased considerably and the remaining infusion given at the rate of about a pint in 15 to 20 minutes. If the pain or feeling of oppression in the chest returns or if there is a very severe headache it may be necessary to reduce the rate still further. Rigors may interfere with the giving of the infusions but if pyrogen free water is used these will be much less frequent. These difficulties should as far as possible be met by reducing the rate of flow rather than by abandoning the procedure. After three pints have been given the infusion may be continued at a very much slower rate 40 or even 20 drops per minute (1 pint in four or eight hours).

If the rectal temperature is 101°F or above all intravenous infusions should be given with caution as a sharp reaction possibly ending in hyperpyrexia is likely to occur. The temperature of the fluid must certainly not be higher than room temperature. If the rectal temperature is also low, it may be advisable to warm the saline up to body temperature especially in cold climates but in the hot weather in most endemic areas this is a very unnecessary complication of administration.

**Other routes of administration**—In children and when it is not possible to find a vein hypertonic saline may be administered subcutaneously intramuscularly into the sternum or tibia or into the peritoneal cavity. Alkaline saline cannot be given by these routes. In mild cases alkaline isotonic saline can be given per rectum but if there is much purging little will be absorbed. After administration of salines intraperitoneally the foot of the bed must be raised as the absorption from the pelvic peritoneum is very poor.

**C Symptomatic treatment**—The intravenous therapy will play an all important part in the treatment and prevention of collapse and of many other serious complications such as anuria but other measures may also have to be adopted.

**Collapse and shock**—The administration of atropine sulphate 1/70th grain when the patient is first seen to be repeated after about 12 hours if the patient is still collapsed was first suggested by Lauder Brunton and is recommended by Rogers. Atropine reduces all secretions except renal secretion it therefore helps to conserve fluid and at the same time to reduce the tendency to oedema of the lung when saline is given. It also reduces irregular peristalsis and is a cardiac stimulant. This appears to have some effect in reducing the shock. Pitressin 1 c cm (pituitary extract—posterior lobe) or if not available disoxycorticosterone acetate 20 c cm (synthetic suprarenal cortical extract) will often help towards the recovery of the pulse during the collapse stage. Other routine measures for the treatment of shock hot water bottles massage etc may have to be resorted to.

**Anuria**—With the recovery of the blood pressure the kidneys will usually start to secrete urine again but if hypertonic saline alkaline saline bicarbonate solution and injection of pitressin and disoxycorticosterone acetate fail glucose 5 per cent (1 pint) intravenously strophanthin gr 1/100 caffeine and sodium benzoate gr iv intramuscularly hot fomentations to the loins dry cupping hot colonic washes intravenous sodium sulphate (18.9 per cent) by the drip feed method and finally distension of the bladder with warm citrate saline (2 per cent citrate in normal saline) could be tried in succession. Injections of salyrgan 1 c cm have been reported on very favourably in a few cases.

When once re-established a careful watch should be kept on the urinary output and if it falls below 1 pint in 12 hours the various measures should be repeated.

In the reaction stage there may be hyperpyrexia, this should be treated very cautiously with hydrotherapy.

Vomiting and hiccough may be persistent and are very tiring this will often be relieved by a belladonna plaster or it will respond to  $\frac{1}{4}$  gr doses of calomel repeated at half hour intervals up to six doses followed by a dose of bismuth subcitrate. The following prescription will be found useful —

R Calomel	gr $\frac{1}{2}$
Chloretone	gr 2
Menthol	gr $\frac{1}{4}$
Sod. m. bicarbonate	gr 2 $\frac{1}{2}$

Muscular cramps should respond to the hypertonic saline treatment, but if they persist and are very painful, self administered whiffs of chloroform will often meet the case.

Morphia and alcohol should be avoided at all stages of the disease. Rogers considered that the early administration of morphia definitely affected the later prognosis making both suppression and acidosis much more likely to occur.

**Diet and nursing** — As the disease is a short one diet can be reduced to a minimum. The patient should have at hand a free supply of glucose water flavoured with lime or barley water. If it is obtainable *dab* (green coconut water) will probably be the best drink. If glucose is not retained by the stomach or the rectum it should be given intravenously as a 5 per cent solution up to a pint.

Later arrowroot, albumin water, milk, whey, milk fruit juices, meat extract and lightly boiled eggs may be added gradually. The hydrochloric acid content of the gastric juice is always low so that a mixture containing dilute hydrochloric acid and pepsin may help the digestion. In a week or so the patient may be allowed to return to a full diet.

Careful nursing will be very necessary to save the patient from exhaustion in the early stages of the attack and later a careful watch for returning anuria and other complications will have to be kept. During convalescence great care must be taken not to allow the patient to do too much for himself, as sudden heart failure is not uncommon. However on the whole, convalescence is very rapid once the acute symptoms have subsided.

**Summary of treatment** — The fate of the patient will depend on the skill of the physician, on the facilities that the latter has at his disposal, and on the energy that he devotes to the case. Of the specific treatments only choleraphage and sulphanil guanidine in large doses are worth trying; they should not be used together. Neither of these should be used to the exclusion of the intravenous infusion treatment which will nearly always be necessary in a bad case though it is probable that if they are successful they will reduce the necessity for, or the duration of, the infusion treatment. Therefore as a routine intravenous infusion of saline as indicated above, should be immediately instituted and  $\frac{1}{7}$ th grain of atropine sulphate given. The symptomatic treatment must be given as the condition of the patient indicates. Convalescence should not be hurried.

**Some reported results** — In 1936 Pasciella deMonte and O Flynn carried out a large series of treatments to appraise the value of choleraphage in the treatment of cholera, the crude results were as follows —

	Treated with phage	Treated without phage
Total number of cases	681	685
Total deaths	92	114
Percentage mortality	13.5	16.6

Further analysis of the data suggested that the difference between the phage-treated cases and the others was greater than the crude figures indicated.

In a second series, three years later, Pasricha, deMonte, Chatterjee and Mian (1939) compared a number of forms of treatment. After excluding all patients who died within three hours of admission and the very old and very young, the results were as follows —

Treatment	Number of patients	Number of deaths	Percentage mortality
Calomel	75	9	12.0
Potassium permanganate	35	4	10.8
Essential oils	46	4	8.7
Sulphapyridine	43	4	9.3
Cholera phage	43	1	2.3
	241	22	9.0

In this series the phage was prepared by a different method. The cases were taken strictly in rotation but by a mistake two patients were put on calomel to each one put on each of the other treatments.

In 1941, Chopra, deMonte, Gupta and Chatterjee reported the results of treatment with small doses of sulphanilyl guanidine as follows —

	Number of patients	Number of deaths	Percentage mortality
Sulphanilyl guanidine	463	26	5.6
Controls	87	6	6.9

If only bacteriologically proven cases were taken, the results were more in favour of sulphanilyl guanidine. The dosages of sulphanilyl guanidine in this series were very small, later they were increased but were still far below the maximum safe dosage. It is significant that the percentage recovery rate was higher with the large dosage.

**Conclusion** — In all these series all the patients were subjected to the routine saline infusion treatment. The results appear to indicate that cholera phage has a definite beneficial effect. They also indicate a progressive improvement in the routine treatment for cholera in the hospital in which this was carried out, or possibly a decrease in the virulence of the disease, there is little external evidence to support the latter interpretation.

## PROGNOSIS

This is intimately associated with treatment and the reader is referred to the previous paragraphs.

Prior to the introduction of the saline infusion treatment, the reported death rate was usually above 60 per cent, in the decade ending 1908 Rogers reports the deaths as 54.2 per cent amongst Indian troops, 62.3 per cent in jails, and 78.5 per cent in the British army. In the early days of this treatment, it was reduced to about 20 per cent. Rogers quotes 20.8 per cent in Calcutta hospitals from 1915–1919 under his personal supervision. Under



sub-ideal hospital conditions at the present day, it is seldom above 10 per cent. It must be remembered that results of treatment in hospital will *always* be better than in the 'field', because, in the worst cases, death occurs before the patient can reach hospital, and therefore not only are conditions better, but the population is a selected one. In cholera epidemics it is usually found that the death rate is much higher at the beginning than at the end of the epidemic.

## REFERENCES

- BANERJEE, D N (1941) Hypochloremia in Cholera *Indian Med Gaz*, **76**, 345
- CHATTERJEE D N, and MALIK, K S (1938) The Bacteriological Examination and the Hydrogen Ion Concentration of the Urine of a Series of 122 Cholera Patients *Indian Med Gaz*, **73**, 612
- CHOPRA R N, DEMONTE A J H, GUPTA, S K, and CHATTERJEE, B C (1941) Sulphanilylguanidine in Cholera *Indian Med Gaz*, **76**, 712
- DEMONTE A J H, and GUPTA, S K (1941) Erythrocyte Sedimentation Rate in Cholera *Indian Med Gaz*, **76**, 213
- DYER B R (1941) Studies of Ground Water Pollution in an Alkaline Alluvium Soil *Indian J Med Res*, **29**, 867
- GARDNER, A D, and VENKATRAMAN, K V (1935) The Antigens of the Cholera Group of Vibrios *J Hyg*, **35**, 262
- LAL, R B, RAJA K C K E, and SWAROOP, S (1941) Statistical Enquiry into the Epidemiology of Cholera in Bengal *Indian J Med Res*, **29**, 425
- NAPIER L E, and GUPTA, S K (1942) Survival of *Vibrio cholerae* in Gastric Juice *Indian Med Gaz*, **77**, 717
- PATRICK, C L, DEMONTE A J H, CHATTERJEE, B C and MIAN A S (1939) Treatment of Cholera (A Note on the Results of Treatment by Different Methods) *Indian Med Gaz*, **74**, 400
- PATRICK C L, DEMONTE A J H and O'FLYNN E G (1936) Bacteriophage in the Treatment of Cholera *Indian Med Gaz*, **71**, 61
- ROGERS, L (1911) *Cholera and Its Treatment* Henry Frowde and Hodder and Stoughton, London
- Idem* (1933) Notes on Making Epidemic Forecasts *Indian Med Gaz*, **68**, 125
- RUSSELL, A J H (1925) The Epidemiology of Cholera *Indian J Med Res*, **13**, 437
- Idem* (1927) *Cholera Bivaccine and Anti-Cholera Vaccine. A Comparative Field Test League of Nations Health Organization Geneva*
- SCOTT H H (1939) *History of Tropical Medicine*, **2**, 649 Edward Arnold and Co, London
- SLODGER J (1940) *Shock Blood Studies as a Guide to Therapy* J B Lippincott Co Philadelphia
- TAYLOR J (1941) *Cholera Research in India, 1934-1940 under the Indian Research Fund Association* The Job Press, Cawnpore

# BACILLARY DYSENTERY

	PAGE
DEFINITION	400
HISTORICAL	400
EPIDEMIOLOGY	401
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	401
<i>Epidemic features</i>	401
Season—Sex—Age	
ETIOLOGY	401
<i>The causal organisms</i>	401
Classification—Staining morphology and biochemical reactions—Resistance—Toxins	
<i>Distribution in the body and the recovery of the organism</i>	403
<i>Carriers</i>	403
<i>Source and dissemination of infection</i>	403
<i>Routes of invasion</i>	403
IMMUNOLOGY	404
<i>Antigenic structure</i>	404
<i>Agglutinins</i>	404
<i>Immunity</i>	404
PATHOLOGY	405
<i>Morbid anatomy</i>	405
Sites of the lesions	
<i>Histopathology</i>	406
<i>The stools</i>	
Microscopically	406
<i>Blood picture</i>	406
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	407
<i>The incubation period—Onset—Fever—Progress</i>	408
<i>Clinical types</i>	
Latent—Mild—Fulminant—Choleraic—Typhoid—Recurring or relapsing bacillary dysentery—Chronic (bacillary) dysentery	
<i>Complication and sequela</i>	409
Eye complications—Acute parotitis—Intussusception—Neuritis—Achlorhydria—Nutritional disorders—Terminal	
DIAGNOSIS	410
<i>Stool examination</i>	412
Macroscopic and microscopic examination—Bacteriological examination	
<i>Serum agglutination</i>	412
<i>Sigmoidoscopy</i>	
Technique	

PREVENTION	PAGE
Rural sanitation .. .. .	412
Bored hole latrine—Construction—Squatting plates—Superstructure ..	413
TREATMENT	
Introduction .. .. .	415
Procedure .. .. .	415
Anti-dysenteric serum—Desensitizing doses .. .. .	416
Intravenous therapy .. .. .	417
Bacteriophage .. .. .	418
Symptomatic .. .. .	418
Diet—Special diets .. .. .	418
Treatment of recurring bacillary dysentery .. .. .	419
Vaccines—Diet .. .. .	419

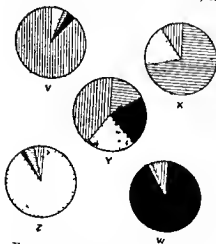
**Definition**—This is a dysenteric affection, that is, a condition characterized by ulceration of the large bowel and the passage of numerous stools containing blood and mucus. It is acute in its early stages, it is caused by bacilli of the groups *Bacterium dysenteriae* Shiga, *Bacterium dysenteriae* Flexner, and certain other allied organisms.

**Historical**—Modern, ancient and even hieroglyphic and traditional histories are rich sources of evidence as to the existence of clinical dysentery at all periods to which they refer. The first bacterium definitely incriminated as the cause of dysentery was the organism isolated by Shiga in 1898 from 34 out of 36 cases of dysentery. He showed that it was a very toxic organism in that, when injected subcutaneously in the form of a killed culture, it caused a very sharp reaction, he also showed that the infected patients had specific agglutinins in their blood against this organism. Two years later, Kruse isolated a dysentery bacillus in Germany, this was shown subsequently to be identical with Shiga's bacillus. During the same year Flexner, and Strong and Musgrave isolated dysentery organisms in the Philippines, and a year or so later Hiss and Russell associated the so called 'Y' organism from patients with dysentery in the United States, these latter organisms have been shown to belong to a closely inter related group of bacteria which are now usually known as the 'Flexner group'. Sonne isolated a dysentery organism that had been responsible for an epidemic in Denmark in 1915.

The first serious attempt at classification of the heterogeneous Flexner group was made by Andrews and Inman (1919). They showed that there were four antigenic components each of which predominated in one of four different Flexner types (V, W, X and Z), and were more or less evenly represented in a fifth (Y), which was probably identical with the original Y of Hiss and Russell. This classification is diagrammatically represented in figure 123.

Figure 123 Showing diagrammatically the antigenic structure of the five Andrews types of *Bact. dysenteriae* Flexner

Later, Boyd (1940) reclassified this group added to it and differentiated another group, the representatives of which mainly occur in India. This group he called *Bact. dysenteriae* India, but it is now usually known as *Bact. dysenteriae* Boyd.



## EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—The disease has a world wide distribution, but is far more common in the tropics and sub tropics than in the temperate zones, this is to some extent due to backward sanitation in the former areas though the climatic factor also has some importance.

Without accurate investigation of this particular point, the writer's impression is that Flexner dysentery is the predominant type in all zones. Shiga is mainly subtropical and Sonne mainly temperate in distribution.

**Epidemic features**—In temperate climates bacillary dysentery is an epidemic disease occurring (a) under conditions where for any reason a high sanitary standard is difficult to maintain, or (b) when in special circumstances there is a sanitary breakdown. It is therefore likely to occur in orphanages, mental asylums, concentration camps and jails on the first count, and is associated with wars, pilgrimages and migrations on the second. It was at one time known as asylum and jail dysentery but for many years, in Great Britain at any rate, it has been comparatively rare in these institutions.

In the tropics and sub-tropics it is endemic, but it is still very likely to take on an epidemic form when the circumstances are particularly favourable. In most tropical countries, it is far more common than amœbic dysentery, although until recently the latter was popularly supposed to be the more common.

In temperate climates it is a seasonal disease and almost always associated with the summer or early autumn. In sub tropical countries,

such as Egypt, it is still a hot weather disease but in very hot countries, such as Iraq, epidemics stop dramatically in the hottest weather when the flies disappear, to reappear for a short time when it cools down again. In the true tropics, its seasonal distribution tends to disappear to some extent, and such undulations in the incidence curve as there are, tend rather to follow the fly curve rather than the thermometer.

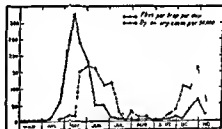


Figure 124 Showing the role of the fly in the spreading of dysentery (Taylor 1919)

There is no difference in the sex incidence, and people of all ages are liable to suffer from bacillary dysentery. In dysentery epidemics in temperate climates, children figure most prominently, and the disease is also an important cause of infantile and child mortality in the tropics (cf amœbic dysentery which is uncommon in children).

## ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal organisms. Classification**—The present position of the dysentery organisms is as follows—

(i) *Bacterium dysenteriae* Shiga, also called *Bacterium shiga*, a biochemically and antigenically distinct organism, usually associated with the severest forms of dysentery in tropical countries.

(ii) *Bacterium dysenteriae* Flexner, also called *Bacterium flexneri*, a biochemically similar but not identical group of organisms, of which there

\* The generic name *Shigella* is now accepted by bacteriologists and the word is coming into general use in America but as it is at present a little confusing for clinicians it has been avoided here.

are at least nine antigenic strains recognized. It occurs in tropical and non-tropical countries, and in the former causes at least 50 per cent of the bacillary dysenteries, which may be mild or severe.

(iii) *Bacterium sonnei*, isolated in a small percentage of dysentery cases in the tropics, but more frequently associated with epidemics of infantile and adult diarrhoea in temperate countries.

(iv) Other rarer organisms, eg *Bacterium ambiguum* Schmitz, and organisms of doubtful pathogenicity, eg *Proteus morgani*, *Bacterium alkalescens*.

**Staining morphology, and biochemical reactions**—The dysentery bacilli are all gram negative non-motile (with the possible exception of the Newcastle bacillus) rods 2 to 3 $\mu$  by 0.6 $\mu$  that grow readily at an optimum temperature of 37°C, on ordinary laboratory medium, forming clear semi-translucent colonies: they are aerobes and facultative anaerobes. They are all lactose non-fermenters except *Bacterium sonnei* which is a late lactose fermenter, they reduce nitrates to nitrites, and they give a negative Voges-Proskauer reaction, the differential biochemical characteristics are shown in table VII.

**Resistance**—Dysentery bacilli are killed at a temperature of 55°C in one hour, by 0.5 per cent phenol in 6 hours and by 1 per cent phenol in 15 to 30 minutes. They resist drying for 20 to 25 days. They survive in water and milk for a few days only, but in the latter they will survive for 17 days if the alkalinity is maintained, and in soil they live up to 100 days.

TABLE VII

*Shows sugar reactions of dysentery bacilli (after Topley and Wilson, 1936)*

	Glucose	Mannitol	Lactose	Saccharose	Dulcitol	Rhamnose	Sorbitol	Litmus milk	Indole
<i>Bact. dysenteriae</i> Shiga	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	sl A	—
<i>Bact. ambiguum</i> Schmitz	A	—	—	—	—	A	A $\pm$	sl A	+
Newcastle bacillus	A g	A (g)	—	—	A (g)	—	—	sl A sl alk	—
<i>Bact. dysenteriae</i> Flexner	A	A	—	A $\pm$	—	A $\pm$	A $\pm$	sl A sl alk	$\pm$
<i>Bact. sonnei</i>	A	A	(A)	(A)	—	A	A	A (clot)	—
<i>Bact. alkalescens</i>	A	A	—	—	A	A	A	alk	+
<i>Proteus morgani</i>	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	N alk	+

A = acid  
alk = alkaline  
g = a little gas

$\pm$  = sometimes  
 $\pm$  = usually  
sl = slight

Brackets indicate late formation

All are non motile except *Proteus morgani* and possibly the Newcastle bacillus all reduce nitrates to nitrites and are Voges Proskauer negative

**Toxins** — The only dysentery organism that gives rise to a soluble toxin is the Shiga bacillus. Though possibly an endotoxin, this toxin has some of the more important characters of an exotoxin, and when suitably injected it gives rise to a powerful antitoxic serum. Injected into rabbits it causes diarrhoea, collapse, and paralysis. The ground-up bodies of the Flexner group and Sonne bacilli injected into laboratory animals are toxic, but only in much larger doses (about 20 times) than in the case of the Shiga organism. They do not give rise to very efficient antitoxic sera.

**Distribution in the body and the recovery of the organism** — The organisms are confined to the intestinal tract, to the mucosa and submucosa, and the intestinal lymphatic glands, occasionally they will be found in the liver and spleen post mortem. They are recoverable from the stools, the frequency with which they are isolated will depend to some extent on the technique of the bacteriologist and the time that elapses between the time that the stool is passed and the medium is inoculated, but mainly on the nature of the stool and the stage of the infection, for example, stools containing blood and mucus will give a positive result in 60 per cent of cases, those containing mucus only in 20 per cent, and simple diarrhoeal stools in 4 per cent, according to one report in which over 3,000 stools were examined. Another report showed that 63 per cent positive cultures were obtained during the first five days of the disease, 17 during the second five, and only 6 per cent during the third five days. With the new media now in use, much higher percentages should be obtained. The organisms are never isolated from the blood or urine.

**Carriers** — It is not uncommon for a patient to continue to pass dysentery bacilli for a considerable time after the acute symptoms have subsided. In one large-scale investigation during the 1914-18 war, it was shown that 7.59 per cent of patients became carriers, and that 2.78 per cent were 'persistent' carriers, that is, they continued to pass bacilli for three months or more. Shiga carriers are less common than Flexner carriers, but the carrier state persists longer in the former, and they pass the bacilli regularly, whereas the Flexner carrier is more intermittent, passing bacilli for two or three days, then, after a clear interval of a month, again passing bacilli for a few more days. Sonne carriers are usually very transient.

**New media** (*vide infra*) for the isolation of dysentery bacilli have thrown new light on the carrier problem, particularly with regard to the symptomless (or contact) carrier. In some institutions in the United States, it has been shown that ratio of the clinical cases to the symptomless carriers is on the average 1 to 3 or 4, and in one institution it was 1 to 7 in the case of Flexner infections and 1 to 24 in the case of Sonne infections.

**Source and dissemination of infection** — Man is the sole source of infection, the infection is spread by cases and carriers. The organisms are excreted only in the stools, and transferred by (a) direct contact—in the case of children, mental patients, and other persons with insanitary habits, (b) through the contamination of food or drink, by patients or more usually carrier food-handlers, and (c) by flies, in conjunction with bad sanitation.

**Epidemics**, other than those in institutions, in sanitariously advanced European countries are usually traced to a carrier employed in the preparation of food, but in the tropics, while flies are probably the commonest agents of infection, a number of epidemics have been traced to unsatisfactory water supplies.

**Routes of invasion** — Invasion is always by the oral route. As in cholera, low gastric acidity probably helps to allow the bacilli to pass through the stomach and invade the bowel.

## IMMUNOLOGY

**Antigenic structure**—The antigenic structure of the dysentery bacilli is an interesting study, that of the Shiga bacillus is homogeneous, and, though there is some cross-agglutination between it and the Schmitz bacillus, there is no cross-absorption. The Sonne bacillus is also homogeneous and distinct, but the antigenic structure of the Flexner group is heterogeneous, there are at least four distinct antigenic components, which are capable of making a considerable number of combinations. There are however six main antigenic types now recognized, three of the original five Andrewes types, V, W, and Z, and Boyd's 103, P119, and 88, the last probably being identical with the 'Newcastle' bacillus which shows rather different biochemical reactions from the other members of the Flexner group (the X type of Andrewes seems to have disappeared). The polyvalent Flexner agglutinating sera are issued by the Standards Laboratory, Oxford, no I will agglutinate types V, W, and Z, and is practically identical with the agglutinating serum prepared from the original Y strain of Hiss and Russell, and no II agglutinates the other three strains. Monovalent agglutinating sera are also available for each separate strain.

Boyd\* has also shown that there are, in India at least, other pathogenic types, and monovalent sera have been prepared for three types now designated *Bact. dysenteriae* Boyd, 170, P288, and D1.

**Agglutinins**—These appear in the blood between the 6th and 12th days of the disease, but the titre declines rapidly after convalescence, and has often returned to normal levels at the end of three months. In a normal individual, the Shiga titre may be as high as 1 in 20, and in an infected patient it seldom rises above 1 in 500. The Flexner agglutinins may be as high as 1 in 150 in a normal individual, but they usually rise higher than this in a patient. In a patient with Shiga dysentery, the Flexner agglutinins may reach 1 in 800, but the reverse is not true. In Sonne dysentery, the specific titre may reach 1 in 1,000, but often fails to rise above 1 in 100, and the normal person may show an agglutination of 1 in 50.

**Immunity**—There is little evidence of the existence of any natural immunity in man. The accurate information on acquired immunity is very sparse, but there is clinical evidence that a considerable degree of immunity to local strains is acquired by a succession of mild infections during residence in a locality.

Little success has attended attempts to produce active immunity by inoculation and, though vaccines are used in treatment especially of chronic Flexner dysentery—the Shiga organism being too toxic—any good results that have followed are probably due to the non specific action of the vaccines. Passive immunity that lasts a few months can be produced by means of anti serum in the case of Shiga dysentery but it is not a practical measure. The antitoxic value of this anti serum is however very well established (*vide infra*).

\* In a recent paper Boyd (1940) has attempted to simplify the classification of the large (and enlarging) Flexner (mannitol fermenting) group. His proposal which is receiving general acceptance at least in the British army is as follows—

Name	Old name
<i>B. dysenteriae</i> Flexner I	Andrewes and Inman V
II	W
III	Z
IV	Type 103
V	P119
VI	88-Newcastle Manchester group
<i>B. dysenteriae</i> Boyd I	Type 170
II	P288
III	D1

## PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy**—Except that in the acute toxic cases there is marked congestion of the solid organs especially the liver kidneys and suprarenals in which there may be some toxic necrosis of the parenchyma cells the lesions are confined entirely to the large bowel the ileo caecal valve and the last few feet of the small intestine beyond congestion there is usually little evidence of the disease on the peritoneal surface of the intestine except possibly in the chronic ulcerative stage where there may be some signs of cicatricial contraction

The post mortem picture that is encountered will depend on the severity of the infection and the stage at which death occurs In the case of Shiga or severe Flexner infection the following pictures may be encountered (i) In a very severe case where the toxæmia was intense and death occurred early the whole or a greater part of the large intestine and lower end of the ileum is lined with a white or yellow (bile tinged) fibrinous membrane suggestive of a diphtheritic membrane (ii) When death occurs at a slightly later stage in an acute attack the mucous membrane is intensely red and is covered by strips of dark greenish grey necrosed mucous membrane that are separating particularly along the tops of the ridges of the mucous membrane It is possible if great care is exercised to see the condition at this stage *in vivo* by means of the sigmoidoscope (iii) At a later stage still the whole mucous membrane is still red congested and œdematous and covered with a mucous exudate in it are a number of greyish areas of deeply necrosed mucous membrane which may have separated and left an ulcer These ulcers are relatively shallow but may appear deeper on account of the congestion and œdema of the surrounding mucous membrane The ulcers are usually but not always transverse they are irregularly shaped and they are often confluent or perhaps only separated by a thin strip of mucous membrane from other adjoining ulcers The condition at this stage can be seen by means of the sigmoidoscope but the bowel is very sensitive (iv) The next stage is that in which all the sloughs have separated and there are numerous shallow ulcers scattered throughout the large bowel the rest of the mucous membrane is still unhealthy looking but it shows a tendency to heal The condition is well seen by means of the sigmoidoscope (v) The last phase may be (a) the stage of healing seen through the sigmoidoscope or post mortem in patients who have died from other causes In this stage there will be shallow healing or healed ulcers with little or no signs of cicatricial contraction the rest of the mucous membrane is now healthy but may show polypoid thickenings in places which mark the position of retention cysts or (b) a stage of chronic ulceration in which secondary infection is playing the major part and the ulcers have lost their specific character the condition has now merged into that of chronic ulcerative colitis It is at this stage that sigmoidoscopic examination is most useful

In mild Flexner or in Sonne or Schmitz infections the mucous membrane will be red and inflamed and in places there may be small abrasions of the surface or even shallow ulcers Only very rarely or by accident will such cases come to the post mortem table but this condition can be seen with the sigmoidoscope

**Sites of the lesions**—In severe attacks the whole extent of the large bowel and the last few feet of ileum are involved however the main sites of involvement are the sigmoid and rectum in contrast to amœbic infections in which the caecum is the most common primary focus of infection

**Histopathology**—In the milder cases there is a catarrhal inflammation and thickening of the mucous membrane with œdema polymorphous nuclear infiltration minute hæmorrhages and a considerable amount of



mucus and sometimes a little fibrinous exudation. In the severer forms, there is an extension of the inflammatory processes to the submucosa, where the lymph follicles are the most important centres of inflammatory activity. There is in these cases considerable thickening of both the mucous and submucous layers, the inflammatory oedema leads to thrombosis of the veins, with numerous hæmorrhages in the submucosa, and coagulation necrosis causes the death and separation of the mucous membrane. There is sometimes a certain amount of round-celled infiltration of the superficial muscular layers, but the deeper layers and the serous coat are practically never involved. With the loss of the mucous membrane, there is formation of granulation tissue at the base of the ulcer, and new blood vessels develop in the submucous layer, in the healing process, columnar epithelial cells grow in from the edges to cover the base of the ulcer. During the inflammatory processes, even if the mucosa is not destroyed altogether, there is a considerable interference with its architecture, and in the healing process, fibrous changes cause blocking of the mouths of the crypts of Lieberkuhn with the formation of mucous retention cysts. Active dysentery bacilli often remain behind in these cysts, which eventually burst through the mucous surface into the lumen of the gut, these cysts are responsible for the intermittent carrier state that occurs in this disease.

**The stools**—The typical bacillary dysentery stool is very characteristic, both macroscopically and microscopically. In the first few stools, the normal bowel content will be emptied, after this the patient passes very little faecal matter, but a whitish gelatinous mucus flecked with blood, and later, bright-red gelatinous mucus, which has exactly the appearance of red-currant jelly, is very viscid, and adheres to the bed-pan, in a background of brown watery fluid. The stool has an albuminous smell and an alkaline reaction.

**Microscopically**, it is a very cellular picture, with very few bacilli and little debris to be seen, the cells are (a) polymorphonuclears showing little degenerative change, (b) red cells lying singly or in small rouleau formations, but never clumped, (c) columnar epithelial cells, and (d) large macrophages that simulate amœbæ as they often contain red cells and may even show slight amœboid movement.

**Blood picture**—There is nearly always a slight but distinct leucocytosis, which does not however usually rise above 15,000 per cmm, there is a relative increase in polymorphonuclears. This leucocytosis is absent in the later stages, and there may even be a slight leucopenia. In the acute choleraic attacks of Shiga dysentery, there will be some polycythæmia on account of the fluid loss and consequent concentration of the blood, and in the later stages, there is often a distinct anæmia, probably of toxic origin. In chronic dysentery there is very frequently a macrocytic anæmia of nutritional origin.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The clinical attacks caused by the specific dysentery organisms vary from a mild diarrhoea, in which the patient is scarcely inconvenienced at all, to a very severe toxæmic attack which simulates a severe attack of cholera, in neither of these extreme cases does the true dysentery picture appear. The fully developed syndrome also shows a wide range of variations, from the case in which blood and mucus are passed for a few days only, with little or no constitutional disturbances, to the severe case in which the patient passes countless stools of pure blood and mucus for several days, at first with a severe febrile reaction and later with exhaustion and collapse.

There is no absolute correlation between the type of infecting organism and the clinical attack. Though the pathological potentialities of the various organisms have been indicated above, it is perhaps worth repeating here that the severe toxæmic forms are nearly always caused by the Shiga organism, the milder forms by the Sonne, Newcastle, and Schmitz organisms, whereas the Flexner group may cause anything from a mild diarrhoea to a severe dysenteric attack.

The division into different clinical types is really artificial, as there is an infinite variety of types of all degrees of severity, and it seems more important that the physician should appreciate this fact than that he should learn to apply certain names to arbitrarily selected types, e.g. the latent, the mild, the acute, the fulminant, the choleraic, the typhoid, the relapsing, and the chronic, though all these types are clearly recognizable, there are many intermediate types that will defy accurate classification.

The clinical picture, in what might be called the acute type of Flexner or Shiga dysentery, is described.

The incubation period may be as short as 24 hours but it is usually found to be between three and seven days, it is seldom longer, in contrast to the incubation period in amœbic infection which is often very long.

The onset is usually sudden with fever and severe diffuse griping pains in the abdomen, this is soon followed by the passage of a loose stool which does not relieve the pains. The interval between stools rapidly decreases, the pain in the abdomen continues but becomes more localized to the left lower quadrant, and the passage of the stools is accompanied by tenesmus. The nature of the stools also undergoes a rapid change, the lower bowel having been emptied of all faecal matter, the stools consist of a brown watery fluid in which there is much blood-flecked mucus. Meanwhile, the general constitutional condition of the patient rapidly deteriorates, the fever which in some cases precedes the onset, may rise to 103°F or higher, but the temperature chart is usually a very irregular one at a slightly lower level. Symptoms develop, and eventually the patient is passing nothing but blood and mucus and is more or less continuously on the bed-pan, it may, in fact, be worth arranging this in such a way that the patient does not have to be repeatedly disturbed and can pass his stools as he lies. The most distressing symptom is usually the tenesmus, which may be almost continuous and helps to exhaust the patient as much as any other symptom, there will often be vesical tenesmus or even strangury which is also very distressing.

The fever will usually continue throughout the attack, and, provided the patient is not collapsed, it is a good guide to progress. The pulse is usually disproportionately rapid, the tongue is coated, the abdomen is flat, and may be rigid and tender suggesting appendicitis, but the tenderness soon becomes localized to the left side of the abdomen, and the thickened and contracted descending colon can often be felt if the patient has a fairly thin abdominal wall.

Progress.—If no treatment is given, toxæmia and exhaustion develop, and the patient may die, or the condition may pass into the typhoid state with fever and continuous dysenteric stools which, even if the patient recovers eventually, will lead to a chronic dysenteric condition with permanent damage to the mucous membrane of the large intestine that will affect the patient's health for the rest of his life. In the moderately severe attacks in which ordinary treatment is given, the disease runs a course of 7 to 14 days before all the acute symptoms subside, but naturally much will depend on the virulence of the organism, the resistance of the patient, and the treatment given.

In severe Shiga infections, the onset may be with a mild diarrhoea and very little fever, the condition becomes rapidly worse, with the development of fever and the passage of innumerable stools consisting of pure blood and mucus, exhaustion follows rapidly, and early death occurs. On the other hand, the symptoms may be mainly due to the toxic action of this organism—cyanosis and later extreme pallor, a fall of blood pressure, abatement or disappearance of abdominal pain and tenesmus, the passage of profuse watery stools, and vomiting, or sometimes abdominal distension and/or acute dilatation of the stomach, conditions suggesting cholera of the classical or of the *sticca* varieties.

**Clinical types**—The term latent is sometimes applied to the sub-clinical infection, and mild may mean nothing more than an acute diarrhoea or the passage of blood and mucus for a day or so, without constitutional symptoms but in either of these cases the patient may continue to pass dysentery bacilli for some time—and thus be a source of infection to others—and at some subsequent date a relapse which may be much more severe than the original attack, may be precipitated by some secondary factor, such as exposure to cold, or a dietetic indiscretion.

The word fulminant is usually applied to the very acute attack with passage of pure blood and mucus, exhaustion, toxæmia, and death in a few days, and for the choleraic type, no further description is needed than the statement that the attack simulates cholera (*qv*). In the typhoid type, after the acute dysenteric symptoms have subsided, the general condition of the patient does not improve, the temperature continues, and a toxæmic state develops.

**Recurring or relapsing bacillary dysentery**—It is very often the experience of new arrivals in a tropical country that they suffer a succession of mild attacks of dysentery, which keep them in a continual state of sub-health, for a period of a year or more. If none of these attacks has been very severe, such persons will eventually settle down and possibly suffer no further from bowel disorders as long as they remain in the country.

These attacks should be classed as recurring rather than relapsing dysentery, as they are almost certainly examples of reinfection with different strains of dysentery bacilli which continue until the individual has acquired a specific immunity to all the common local strains, or a group immunity that is sufficiently well developed to afford protection against all allied dysenteric strains. If a careful bacteriological examination is carried out, it will usually be possible to isolate a Flexner-group bacillus, or more rarely an organism of one of the other species, on each occasion.

Those who are less fortunate will include in their early experiences one or more attacks of a much more severe kind, which will leave their bowel mucosa considerably damaged so that it is never quite one-hundred-per-cent functionally efficient, and possibly with a number of healed ulcers, the bases of which are covered with a thin layer of mucous membrane over scar tissue, that is very liable to break down under any adverse dietetic circumstances. Such individuals will often never have a really formed stool, after breakfast they pass one or two loose stools, but for the rest of the day they may have no further trouble. In these cases, the main dysfunction appears to be failure of absorption in the lower bowel. Periodically, as the result of a chill, a dietetic indiscretion, or some other cause, they will have a relatively mild relapse of their dysenteric condition, with the passage of mucus but probably not blood, abdominal discomfort, and perhaps mild constitutional symptoms. It is sometimes said that on these occasions dysentery organisms will be recovered from the stools, but this is certainly not the rule, and probably it is from the stools of those

patients who are incidentally carriers that the dysentery organisms are recovered, the association of the carrier state with this condition is really accidental, though both conditions have a common cause. These cases are usually classed as relapsing bacillary dysentery but they are really mild forms of chronic ulcerative colitis.

**Chronic (bacillary) dysentery**—The distinction between this group and the previous one is really only a matter of degree. The word bacillary is retained only to indicate the *ætiology* and to distinguish it from the other chronic sub acute ulcerative condition in which there is an amœbic infection still present (*vide infra*). In these chronic ulcerative conditions of the colon there is no specific bacillary infection left, and the condition is best considered under the heading **chronic ulcerative colitis**.

**Complication and sequelæ**—There are few true complications in bacillary dysentery, in contradistinction to amœbic in which there are many. One of the commonest and most troublesome is arthritis. It is very similar to the condition produced by gonorrhœa, the joints affected are the knees, ankles, wrists, elbows, fingers occasionally the sterno clavicular and temporo-maxillary and rarely other joints. One characteristic is the fleeting nature of the arthritis, and its habit of fitting from joint to joint. The frequency of its occurrence varies in different localities, and from epidemic to epidemic in one locality. In some places it is rare and in others it may occur in 10 per cent of patients. The pain is out of proportion to the redness and swelling which may be very slight. On the other hand, hydrarthrosis especially of the knee joints, is not uncommon. The fluid is usually sterile but contains the specific dysentery agglutinins often in relatively high titre.

Arthritis usually appears within the first few weeks of the attack, but on some occasions the onset is postponed for as long as three months. The condition may persist for a month or so but quite frequently it clears up in a few days. Seldom if ever does it produce any changes in the joints or lead to chronic arthritis though the fact that it is apparently more common in rheumatic subjects might mislead one into arriving at this conclusion. It is more common following Shiga but does occur after Flexner infections.

Eye complications are not uncommon, conjunctivitis coming on during the acute attack, or later, during the third to the fifth week, and iridocyclitis or anterior uveitis coming on during convalescence. There is marked tenderness photophobia and blepharospasm.

Acute parotitis is not uncommon and in some epidemics an acute suppurative parotitis has been described.

Intussusception is not uncommon in children and a lookout for a sudden increase of abdominal pain with obstruction should be kept.

Neuritis occurs sufficiently frequently after bacillary dysentery to associate the two conditions, the legs are mainly affected there being loss of knee jerks hyperæsthesia of the calves muscular spasms and cramps paralysis and atrophic changes in the skin, the condition persisting for a month or so.

Achlorhydria has been observed in a large number of convalescents from bacillary dysentery, and the question has arisen here again whether this is the result of the infection or whether it is evidence of the special susceptibility of those persons with naturally low gastric acidity.

**Nutritional disorders**—Megaw was of the opinion that post dysenteric ascites was not uncommon, and suggested that this was due to a toxic peritonitis. The observation is probably correct but the interpretation seems questionable. There are probably a large number of nutritional disorders that follow the extensive damage which the mucous membrane of the bowel suffers, these are not yet fully understood, and the ascites may well

be an indirect sequel due to liver damage Napier and Neal Edwards (1941) considered that there was an association between macrocytic anæmia in pregnancy and bowel disorders, and the writer (Napier, 1939) has frequently associated nutritional macrocytic anæmia with diarrhoea and dysentery

**Terminal**—The patient with relapsing dysentery who does not receive appropriate treatment or who fails to respond to treatment, will usually die of exhaustion and asthenia, but pneumonia as a terminal event is not uncommon in cold climates

### DIAGNOSIS

In the typical attack, the clinical diagnosis of dysentery does not present any difficulty, but it is very important, especially from the point of view of treatment, to distinguish between the amœbic and the bacillary infections, and in the latter case to decide whether the infecting organism is *Bacterium shiga* or one of the other dysentery organisms. Some of the differences between the typical Shiga and typical Flexner dysenteries have been indicated above, but, wherever possible, bacteriological investigation should always be undertaken. A table of the main differences between amœbic and bacillary dysentery is given at the end of this section.

The milder forms of bacillary dysentery may be difficult to distinguish from ordinary digestive upsets, and the fulminant choleraic type from true cholera. In view of the possibilities of more serious development, an accurate diagnosis in the milder types is important to the patient himself, and from a public health point of view, as a signal to tighten up all sanitary precautions. It is even more important that the true nature of such an infection should be revealed. In the choleraic attack of dysentery, the immediate treatment is practically the same as for true cholera (intravenous saline therapy), and anti-dysenteric serum given to a cholera patient will do him more good than harm though there are obviously more economical ways of giving him an effective treatment, but here again the public health point of view demands a bacteriological diagnosis, on account of the far greater powers of rapid dissemination of the cholera vibrio.

**Stool examination**—Macroscopic inspection (*vide supra*) will give very valuable information. In Mesopotamia during the 1914-18 war, the writer knew a competent pathologist who claimed that he could make as accurate a diagnosis by inspection and a piece of litmus paper as with a microscope, however, he only adopted the procedure during the worst rush periods.

**Microscopic examination**—With a platinum loop or any piece of wire or a match stick, a small portion of stool, preferably a piece of mucus if any is visible, should be picked up and placed in a watch glass, normal saline added, the stool broken up or the mucus teased out, and the two well mixed, a loopful is then transferred to a slide and a coverslip placed over it. If the edges of the coverslip are vaselined, the examination will be carried out more comfortably, in a dry climate this precaution is essential.

Strong presumptive evidence that the attack is bacillary in origin will usually be obtained from the typical picture presented and the absence of amœbæ (see table VIII, p. 413).

**Bacteriological examination**—The two most important points for the clinician to remember are that the earlier the stool is sent, the better are the chances of isolating the causal organism and that the specimen must reach the pathologist with the least possible delay after the stool is passed.

The sequence is so often as follows—In the case of a sub-acute attack the physician is not called in for the first few days. He then calls at the patient's house and makes a provisional diagnosis of dysentery but the patient has not

kept his stool the next day the patient passes a stool at 6 a.m. the doctor calls at 11 o'clock takes a specimen which he carries round in his car until 2 o'clock and then sends to the pathologist so that with luck the stool is plated at 3 o'clock. In such circumstances it is not surprising that a positive diagnosis is so seldom made in private practice the wise practitioner will send his patient to the pathologist if he is fit enough and if not arrange for him to send a specimen direct immediately it is passed or he will obtain the suitable medium from the pathologist plate the stool himself and send it to the pathologist for the identification of the organisms.

In sending the specimen to the pathologist, a portion of stool containing mucus should be selected. To plate a stool the specimen should be poured out into a sterile petri dish and, if it is formed or semi-formed a little saline added. After careful inspection, a piece of mucus is selected, this is picked up on a platinum loop and transferred to a watch glass containing sterile saline in which it is washed, the platinum loop is flamed, the mucus is again picked up, and drawn a number of times across the surface of 'plate', or on a series of test-tube slants, of some suitable solid medium. If there is no mucus, a loopful of fluid stool should be 'stroked' across the plate or tubes.

\* There are several new 'selective' media on which the growth of the ordinary saprophytic organisms in the stools is inhibited so that the pathogenic organisms grow and are easily identified. A good example of such a medium is SS (Shigella Salmonella) agar the composition of which is as follows —

'Bacto' beef extract	50 grammes
Proteose-peptone	50
'Bacto' lactose	100
'Bacto' bile salts no 3	8.5
Sodium citrate	8.5
thiosulphate	8.5
Ferric citrate	10 gramme
'Bacto' agar	170 grammes
'Bacto' neutral red	0.025 gramme

To prepare the medium for use suspend 63.5 grammes in 1000 ccm of cold distilled water. Boil for a minute or two to dissolve the medium completely. Do not sterilize in the autoclave. About 20 ccm of the medium should be poured into standard petri-dishes of 90-100 mm diameter. It is very important that the surface of the plates be quite dry when inoculated and this may be ensured by allowing the medium to solidify and to stand for about 2 hours with the covers of the plates partially removed. The final reaction of 'Bacto SS agar is pH 7.0. The main constituents are Difco 'Bacto' products which are not always available in India at least, for this reason Panja and Ghosh (1943) have modified the original SS medium and prepared a medium which also unfortunately has many foreign ingredients. In the writer's personal experience very good results have been obtained with this medium in enteric dysentery and cholera cases.

The constituents are —

Lemco (Oxo Ltd)	0.50 per cent
Peptone (Difco)	0.50 "
Sodium taurocholate	0.85
citrate (Merck)	0.80 "
thiosulphate (Merck)	0.85
phosphate (Merck)	0.75 ,
Ferric citrate	0.30 "
Lactose (Merck)	0.25
Agar	2.50
Neutral red 0.25 per cent (Grubler and Co)	1.5 ccm to 100 ccm

Stock agar prepared from Lemco peptone bile salts and agar 7.0 pH is kept ready in 100 ccm quantities. This is melted and to it sodium citrate sodium thiosulphate ferric citrate and neutral red in the requisite quantities are added. Sodium hydroxide (2 N) 0.5 ccm is then added to make the final pH 7.4, the medium is then boiled for two minutes and poured into plates. These media should be inoculated heavily with a generous sample of stool.

As has been indicated above, the percentage of positive findings will vary considerably in different circumstances, and will depend on the nature of the stools and the stage of the disease (*see p 403*)

**Serum agglutination**—Though suggestive agglutinations will often be obtained (*vide supra*), this method is of little practical value in the diagnosis of bacillary dysentery, on account of the late development and the relatively low titre of the agglutinins, even as a measure of retrospective diagnosis its value is limited on account of the early decline of the agglutinins

As a general rule it may be said that at 1 in 40 standard agglutination of *Bacterium shigæ* is very suggestive, and a 1 in 100 agglutination of *Bacterium flexneri* in the absence of any agglutination with *Bact shigæ* (an agglutination of *flexneri* as high as 1 in 800 has been reported in a pure Shiga infection) is also suggestive, but a rising titre is a more reliable indication in either. Nothing less than 1 in 100 should be considered as indicating a Sonne infection, and, as the titre often fails to rise above this, not much help will be obtained in this infection

**Sigmoidoscopy**—This procedure plays no part in the routine diagnosis of the fulminant forms of dysentery, though some invaluable confirmatory information regarding the pathological changes that take place in the mucous membrane during such attacks has been obtained by this procedure. The condition of the bowel must be deduced from other evidence, as sigmoidoscopy is not only extremely painful, but may be dangerous in the very acute stages of the disease. In the ordinary acute, in the sub acute, and in the chronic types, it may be very valuable as a diagnostic procedure, a guide to treatment, and an indicator of progress under treatment. The general state of the mucous membrane can be seen, the extent and the stage of ulceration and/or the degree of healing of the ulcers ascertained, and the nature of the ulcers identified, by their macroscopic appearance and also by taking swab specimens directly from the ulcerated surface and examining them

In an acute or sub-acute dysentery in which blood and mucus is being passed, if there is no general inflammation of the mucous membrane, bacillary dysentery can usually be excluded, and a diagnosis of amoebic dysentery made

**Technique**—In the preparation of the patient for sigmoidoscopy, it is inadvisable to prescribe a purgative but a light non residue diet should be given on the previous night and a soap and water enema in the morning, this should be followed by an alkaline saline washout. It is essential that the enema and washout should not be retained and the patient must be encouraged to pass them by gentle exercise if possible. Nervous or sensitive patients should be given 1 of a grain of morphia half an hour before the examination. The position of the patient is important but opinions as to which is the best differ. Perhaps the most comfortable for the patient and the operator is obtained by the use of a proper proctoscopy table (e.g. Bine type tilt table) on which the patient lies face down with the trunk forming a right angle with the thighs, and the buttocks are in the air at the apex of the triangle. Others prefer the knee-chest position.

The sigmoidoscope is very cautiously inserted for about 3 inches in the direction of the umbilicus, the bougie is then removed, the lamp inserted and all subsequent advances of the instrument are made under visual guidance with the aid of the inflation apparatus. As each portion of mucous membrane comes into the field it is examined, it may be necessary from time to time to remove mucus by gentle swabbing. The instrument must only be advanced when the operator can see a clear passage which will often have to be created by gentle inflation. By means of sterile swabs specimens can be taken directly from the ulcers for culture and/or microscopical examination.

#### PREVENTION

The application of the general principles of sanitation, especially with reference to water supply, food, faeces disposal, and flies, is the only real

**TABLE VIII**  
*Contrasting bacillary and amœbic dysentery*

	<i>Bacillary dysentery</i>	<i>Amœbic dysentery</i>
<b>EPIDEMIOLOGY</b>	Epidemic in temperate climates endemic and epidemic in tropics Common in children	Endemic and rarely epidemic, mainly tropical
<b>PATHOLOGY</b> <i>Bowel</i>	Depressed serpyginous ulcers often transverse in thickened and inflamed mucous membrane Sigmoid and rectum mainly also lower end ileum	Deep oval or round ulcers with raised undermined edges in healthy mucous membrane all layers affected cœcum and flexures never ileum
<b>Stools</b>	Very frequent scanty viscid mucus non-offensive bright red blood or red currant jelly Alkaline Very cellular polymorphs (not degenerated) columnar epithelial cells and macrophages, RBCs discrete	Less frequent faecal bulky, offensive dark blood and mucus or anchovy sauce Acid Not very cellular degenerated lymphocytes clumped RBCs Charcot Leyden crystals active amœbæ containing red cells
<b>Blood</b>	Leucocytosis only in acute stages subsequently normal or leucopenia	Usually leucocytosis increased with liver abscess
<b>SYMPTOMATOLOGY</b> <i>Incubation</i> <i>Onset</i> <i>Fever</i> <i>Abdominal pain and tenderness</i> <i>Tenesmus</i> <i>Terminal</i> <i>Complications and sequelæ</i>	A week or less Acute Usual Severe localizing to left side Usually severe Tormus and exhaustion Few, polyarthritis	A fortnight to many months More often insidious Rare Variable may be severe localizing to right side Less severe often absent Exhaustion and complications Peritonitis and hæmorrhage hepatitis and liver abscess common Multifarious sequelæ
<b>Stigmata</b>	Not good practice in acute stages red inflamed mucous membrane readily bleeds rigid bowel wall ulcers seldom seen	Permissible in sub-acute attack raised button like ulcers or numerous minute ulcers (mouse-eaten appearance) with red edges in normal mucous membrane
<b>THERAPEUTIC TEST</b>	No response to emetine	Marked improvement with three 1 grain doses emetine on three successive days

preventive measure A marked fall in the incidence of dysentery in a community, such as a tea garden labour force, follows the introduction of a protected water supply a further reduction almost to the point of elimination, will be achieved by the establishment of a satisfactory latrine system when this is possible In institutions and other communities which have common feeding arrangements a careful search for carriers should be made amongst food handlers, and dysentery convalescents should not be employed in this capacity at least for many months and after repeated bacteriological examinations

There is no evidence that prophylactic inoculation is of any value

#### RURAL SANITATION

Rural water supplies and water disinfection have been discussed above (p 386) a reference to rural sanitation would perhaps be appropriate here

Rural sanitation particularly in India is not a problem that is likely to be solved by any single formula, the conditions are far too varied However the



one recent advance in sanitary engineering that has come nearest to providing this solution is the bored hole latrine. Notes on this subject, kindly given to me by Mr B R Dyer, professor of sanitary engineering at the All-India Institute of Hygiene, Calcutta, have been amplified from a paper by Mr G Ghosh (1942) of the same institution, and are given below —

**Bored hole latrine**—The bored hole latrine appears to be the best solution for disposal of rural sewage, but, unfortunately, in the past, there has been, on the one hand over-enthusiasm on the part of the supporters of the bored-hole latrine, and, on the other, the expression of adverse opinions by people little acquainted with soil hydraulics and the mechanism of the contamination of sub-soil water. It is always desirable wherever possible that bored hole latrines should be bored below the water table in order that the latrine may act in somewhat the same manner as the septic tank. In recent extensive experiments it has been shown that pollution of sub soil water is dependent upon the texture and alkalinity of the soil, and on the slope of the water table.

In a very coarse sub-soil it has been found that contamination from a bored-hole latrine may spread, in the direction of the flow of sub-soil water, to an extent of several hundred feet, but, on the other hand in a fine alluvium soil, as in the Punjab, for example, bacteriological pollution only extended to  $7\frac{1}{2}$  feet from the bored hole latrine in the direction of the flow. In a more acid soil and one of a somewhat coarser texture than that in the Punjab, after  $2\frac{1}{2}$  years' observation pollution only extended to 15 feet from the bored-hole latrine in the direction of the flow.

The advantage of the bored-hole latrine is that it is easy to install and very cheap, having a small diameter, the faeces are incorporated quickly in the soil in the bored hole. There is no smell when the surface of the content of the latrine is more than 3 feet from the ground surface, and there is no breeding of flies. It has been shown—by re-boring—that four months after a bored-hole latrine has been abandoned, the faeces are incorporated in the soil. The life of a bored hole latrine for a family of five is usually about one year, after the hole has been filled to within 3 feet of the surface with soil and abandoned, the squatting plate and the superstructure can be moved to another site.

**Construction**—The bored-hole latrine is a round hole bored into the earth with special auger 16 inches in diameter. The depth to which it is bored depends on the sub-soil water level. There should be a minimum of about 3 feet of water during the dry season.

A hole about 6 inches deep and 16 inches in diameter is first dug, and the auger is placed in this hole and rotated in a clockwise direction. When the auger is filled, it is lifted up and the earth is emptied. It is again put back into the hole and the process is repeated until the desired depth is reached.

If the soil is very loose and the hole tends to cave in, it can be protected by putting in a bamboo lining (figure 125)

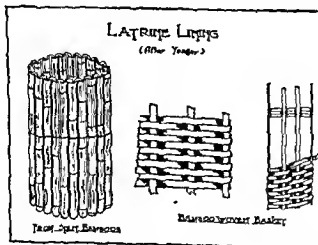


Figure 125

**Squatting plate**—This should be of reinforced concrete. Squatting plates 3 feet by 2 feet 6 inches are made of cement concrete in the following proportions: cement 1 part, sand 2 parts, stone or brick chips ( $\frac{1}{2}$  inch to  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch) 4 parts.

The thickness of the plate throughout is 2 inches. The plate is sloped  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches from edges to centre. The concrete is reinforced with  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch diameter rods (figure 126)

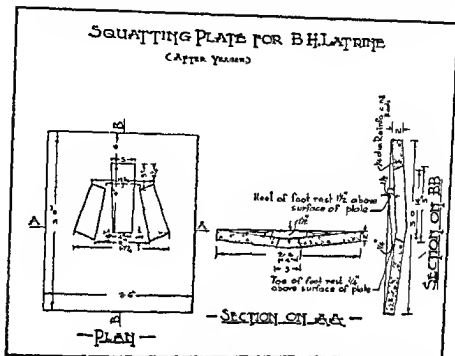


Figure 126

The bare squatting plate with the hole is first cast in a mould. After 24 hours it is removed from the mould and the top surface is smoothed and the foot rests are added.

It should be noted that the face of the hole in the squatting plate is splayed outwards and downwards so as to have the larger area of the hole on the bottom surface of the plate.

Completed slabs should be kept in a cool place immersed under water for a period of ten days when they can be removed and fixed over the latrine.

Superstructure—Any type of superstructure can be constructed. An inexpensive one would consist of side screens of bamboo matting fixed on to bamboo poles.

#### TREATMENT

**Introduction**—Sojourners in the tropics as well as the indigenous inhabitants are apt to take a light view of an attack of diarrhoea or mild dysentery but since at least 75 per cent of chronic ill health in the sojourner can be attributed to malaria or dysentery—and in some places malaria is unimportant—there is every reason why their medical advisers should take great care not to fall into the same error. In the present state of sanitation in the tropics mild attacks of dysentery are probably inevitable, but, if the early attacks are treated properly and cured quickly, the patient stands a very good chance of developing an immunity which will protect him against most subsequent infections, if they are not so treated he will eventually pass through the relapsing and chronic stages to become a permanent semi invalid with periodically recurring ulcerative colitis. Further, the risk of serious development of the initially mild attack must be fully appreciated.

The specific treatment of bacillary dysentery has always been singularly unsatisfactory. Antitoxic serum, which was introduced about

40 years ago, is of undoubted value, and its dramatic effects in certain cases leave a great impression on the minds of those who see these, but it has never really touched the main problem of the treatment of the millions who suffer from this disease. The main reasons for this are that the serum is expensive to produce, it is difficult to keep and has a relatively short life, it is only really satisfactory in Shiga infections which often form only a small percentage of the cases to be treated and cannot readily be selected from cases of other dysentery infections, and, finally, the vast majority of cases have to be treated under conditions where serum treatment would be difficult or impossible, and or are of such a relatively mild nature that an expensive, elaborate, and not entirely danger-free treatment does not seem justified.

With the introduction of the many new synthetic drugs, hopes were again raised that some of these might be of value in bacillary dysentery.

Little success was achieved in this direction until recently, though a few observers are of the opinion that some of the amebicidal drugs, such as iatren and carbarone (*vide infra*), have a specific action in bacillary infection, this view is not generally accepted. The early sulphonamides gave disappointing results, though in some chronic cases they appeared to help towards the eradication of mixed secondary infections.

Rather surprisingly, sulphapyridine was not used in the treatment of bacillary dysentery for some time after its introduction into therapeutics, and the first reports were not very convincing, probably because an insufficient dose was given, but recently a number of workers (e.g. Lapping, 1942) have reported very favourably on it. The drug must be given in maximal doses, and its success probably depends on its reaching the large intestine in sufficient concentration.

The most recent drug of this group is sulphanilyl-guanidine. It is given in much larger doses, and has the special quality that its absorption is low. The results so far reported with this drug, and the writer's own experience, seem to suggest that a really important advance has been made in the treatment of bacillary dysentery. Further, it seems very probable that, in time, other drugs of this group will be produced which will be even more satisfactory.

**Procedure**—In a severe dysenteric attack, the main dangers come from toxæmia, ulceration, and exhaustion, and these three processes should always be kept in mind in the treatment of the disease.

Whenever possible the patient should be confined to bed and in any thing but the mildest attacks he should not be allowed to leave his bed to defæcate but should be given the bed-pan. In the serious case, this precaution may well make the difference between death and recovery, though of course very frequently circumstances are such that it cannot be observed. At first, practically no food should be given, but a free supply of glucose water or plain water, and, later albumin water, lime whey, and chicken broth may be allowed.

In the mild non-toxæmic case, 60 grains of sodium sulphate should be given in half a glass of water every two hours during the first 24 hours—except when the patient is asleep at night—and every 4 hours subsequently until the main symptoms subside, that is, until the temperature falls to normal, the pain is relieved, and the stools are reduced in number and are more or less free from mucus, then, if by this time the sodium sulphate has been given for at least 72 hours, a drachm of bismuth carbonate, should be given every three hours, or kaolin, a pound in a pint of water, should be placed by the patient's bed and he should be encouraged to sip it frequently.

In the more severe cases, sulphanilyl-guanidine should be given. This must be given in full doses, 0.10 gramme per kilogramme body-weight of

patient for the initial dose, and 0.05 gramme for subsequent doses, every four hours, until the stools are reduced to three or four a day, after which the drug is given every six hours for another two or three days. For an average man of 70 kilogrammes this will mean 28 grammes during the first 24 hours and 21 grammes during each subsequent 24 hours, until the dosage is reduced to 14 grammes a day. No other treatment is given except for intravenous glucose saline if this is necessary to combat dehydration.

An alternative to sulphamyl guanidine if this is not available, sulphapyridine or sulphathiazole is given. The dosage of these must be much lower, two grammes as an initial dose and one gramme three-hourly, in an adult will usually be sufficient.

Even in the most severe cases, this treatment will usually be indicated but if the patient is very toxic or cyanosed or if there is evidence that it is a Shiga infection, anti-dysenteric serum should also be given, and, or, if choleraic symptoms develop intravenous therapy.

Many physicians still adhere to the old established treatment of an ounce of castor oil with half a drachm of tincture of opium, there is much to be said for this treatment in mild cases but the writer believes that better results are obtained with sodium sulphate. Further, the oil will make subsequent examination of the stools for confirmation of the diagnosis very difficult, and finally if there is any doubt about the diagnosis it must be remembered that opium is definitely contra-indicated in cholera.

**Anti-dysenteric serum**—Shiga antitoxin serum as opposed to the so-called polyvalent serum should be used, for a number of reasons, the Flexner organism gives rise to a serum of very low antitoxic quality, Flexner infections seldom need antitoxic serum treatment, and, when serum is given they seem to respond as well to anti-Shiga as to the polyvalent serum.

The antitoxic serum that is usually available to day is concentrated and contains about 5,000 antitoxic units to the cubic centimetre. An initial dose of 100,000 units may be looked upon as maximum and very often 50,000 units will be sufficient. A dose of 50,000 units should be given on the following day, and possibly a third dose, if it appears to be indicated. Whenever possible the antitoxic serum should be given intravenously in half a pint of 5 per cent glucose in normal saline. In a cold climate the glucose saline should be warmed to body temperature before the serum is added as severe reactions may follow the administration of overheated serum. The temperature should be tested very carefully. Intramuscular or subcutaneous injections are less satisfactory, as the serum is absorbed slowly and may cause a local reaction. The modern serum is treated with a proteolytic enzyme so that the danger of anaphylaxis is considerably reduced if not eliminated but in patients who have previously received any form of serum treatment, and if time permits it may be advisable to precede the intravenous injections by the desensitizing course mentioned below.

There is usually some reaction to the serum treatment, after about 12 hours, in the form of flushing of the face, a slight rise of temperature and temporary exacerbation of symptoms but these rapidly pass off and general improvement is soon noted.

If the concentrated serum is not available it is usually of little use giving less than 60 ccm to 80 ccm of ordinary antitoxic serum as an initial dose to be repeated if necessary and in this case it will always be advisable to precede the main dose by a series of desensitizing doses of 0.1, 0.25 and 0.5 ccm of serum at 20 minutes intervals.

The reaction that follows the giving of antitoxic serum must not be confused with (a) the anaphylactic phenomena that may follow the serum injection if the desensitizing procedure is not adopted. These include cardiac pain, vomiting and

collapse and they should be countered by injections of adrenaline and pituitrin, or (b) the later serum sickness that may come on six to ten days after the serum is administered with local pain at the site of the injection fever, joint pains and urticaria. A daily dose of calcium lactate will reduce the chances of both these reactions occurring.

**Intravenous therapy**—In severe cases, whether of the choleraic type or not, this will often be indicated, and it is useful as a vehicle for the antitoxic serum. Glucose added to physiological saline (25 grammes to 500 c cm, or about a pint) is the best for the ordinary severe case, but, for the choleraic type of attack, hypertonic saline will probably be more effective. Where there is not very marked dehydration, the drip-feed method will be the best for administering the saline, by this method a pint should be given in about half an hour. When antitoxic serum is not available, normal serum or plasma—a pint added to a pint of glucose saline—may be used with advantage.

**Bacteriophage**—There is unanimity of scientific opinion on the fact that, *in vivo*, bacteriophage does not act as it does *in vitro*, and lyse the dysentery bacilli in the tissues. The explanations of its action—if it has any action—that seems most feasible are that it converts pathogenic bacilli into non-pathogenic or less pathogenic organisms, or that the lysate, of those organisms that it does lyse, acts as a vaccine. The writer has never been convinced from his own experience that bacteriophage has any specific action but it is impossible to ignore the opinion of many experienced practitioners who claim that it is of definite value. Some of these say that it cuts short the attack when given in doses of one ampoule (about 2 c cm) every 4 hours, others claim that it is useless in these small doses, and that to obtain any results at all it must be given in large doses, 4 to 6 ampoules every two hours.

To summarize world scientific opinion is still very sceptical regarding the therapeutic value of bacteriophage in this disease, the writer however recommends that if it is given, it is given in large doses, even the sceptic's consolation 'at least it is harmless', is not universally applicable to bacteriophage, but the writer believes that it applies in this case.

**Symptomatic**—For the relief of abdominal pain, opium may be given but only in the early pre-exhaustion stage. hot water bags and hot fomentations will help. Tenesmus if it persists will be relieved by bowel washes, plain water, normal saline or bicarbonate (60 grains to the pint), followed by six ounces of normal saline to which 20 c cm or more normal serum has been added, to be retained as long as possible, as an alternative to this, six ounces of kaolin suspension should be retained.

It may be more convenient to use a suppository, the following will be found useful though as opium has no direct effect on the mucous membrane, it is not clear how it acts —

R Extracti opii sicc	gr 11
belladonnae sicc	gr 1
Cocobutter	ad gr 12

**Vesical tenesmus** and strangury will be assisted by a belladonna and alkali mixture —

R Potassi bicarbonatis	gr xx
linctura belladonnae	℥ xx
hyoscyami	3jss
Infusum buchu	ad 3jss
	4 times daily

This will also be relieved by the suppositories and warm rectal washes indicated above. Soreness of the anus due to frequent stools can be prevented by careful washing and drying, and by the application of lanoline,

or eslavine lotion made with an oily base. Meteorism may be an indication of severe toxæmia, but in the later stages of the disease it often indicates an indiscretion in diet. It may be relieved by giving charcoal biscuits or charkaolin, but more active treatment with turpentine stipes, etc. (see p. 475) may be necessary. Vomiting and luccough may also be troublesome (see p. 396). For collapse the usual treatment for this condition—hot water bottles, etc.—should be supplemented by intravenous saline therapy, with if necessary the addition of pituitrin.

**Diet.**—As was noted above, no food should be given for the first 24 hours, but barley water made with glucose should be allowed *ad lib.* and then lime whey, albumin water, arrowroot, and chicken broth. It is important also to give some form of fruit, and in India and other countries where this fruit grows, bael fruit made into the form of a 'sherbet' for drinking, or into a 'fool', is perhaps the best. Orange juice or other fruits as long as they are put through a strainer may be given. The feeds should be given in small quantities at short intervals, say every two hours. The diet must be extended slowly; there is a strong tradition against the use of milk in dysentery in India, but milk foods are too useful as invalid dietary to be excluded altogether. Skimmed milk should be given at first, it may be strained, given in the form of buttermilk, prepared with Benger's food, or better still fortified by the addition of casein. Horlick's milk is also a good alternative at a later stage. Bulgarcized milk is sometimes very useful in more chronic forms of bacillary dysentery, to change the intestinal flora. Then, eggs in the form of flip, marmite and toast, jellies, and vegetable pieces may be added. The return to a full diet should be slow.

As a general rule, in Flexner infections the diet should be predominantly protein, and in Shiga infections predominantly carbohydrate.

**Special diets.**—Great success has been claimed for the apple diet. As much as 3 pounds of finely minced apples are given during the day to the exclusion of all other food for about three days. Dried apple powders have been placed on the market for this purpose. The writer's limited experience with dried apple powder diet was inconclusive.

Bael or bananas have been used as alternatives where these fruits are available.

**Treatment of recurring bacillary dysentery.**—For each fresh attack the same routine should be applied, but it will seldom be necessary to go to the extent of giving anti-dysenteric or intravenous saline. As the diagnosis of amebic dysentery will probably have been excluded at the first examination—though it is unsafe to assume without further examination that an amebic infection has not been super-imposed—it will be possible to give castor oil. The patient should be put on casein fortified skimmed milk, or buttermilk, or as alternatives, bulgarcized milk or Benger's food. Castor oil emulsion—a drachm to the ounce—should be given four-hourly for the first day, followed by bismuth carbonate in doses of gr. xx three times a day, until the symptoms subside. Then, to prevent further recurrence the diet will have to be regulated very carefully for some time (see below), and ispaghula (or one of the proprietary preparations Isogel, Normacol, etc.), a tablespoonful nightly, and liquid extract of kurchi, a drachm three times a day taken for a number of weeks. The best form of ispaghula is the ordinary Indian bazar *bhus* which is the husk of the seed; this is placed in half a glass of water and after being allowed to soak for a few minutes is swallowed quickly. If it is left too long the husks swell and the draught becomes a soft gelatinous mass which may be mechanically easier to swallow but is very nauseating to some tastes. Where this is not available the bowels should be regulated by means of one of the agar agar and liquid paraffin preparations (e.g. agarol or petrolagar) very carefully.

for a time, but the possibility that these absorb and retain vitamins must be remembered. When some other purgative is necessary, senna pods should be used.

The treatment of the truly chronic condition will not be considered here, but it must be remembered that there is no sharp line of distinction between this recurring condition and chronic ulcerative colitis (*vide infra*), and many physicians will recommend the early administration of the medicated enemata that are the mainstay of the treatment for this latter condition.

**Vaccines**—These have never found any place in the treatment of the acute attack. Their advocates have claimed useful results in chronic cases in which the original causal organisms are still present. For these they advocate autogenous or at least homologous, dysentery-group vaccines, as well as 'sensitized' vaccines, prepared by treating the vaccines with homologous serum.

Others have used autogenous vaccines of various other organisms obtained from the patient's stool, on the assumption that they are the organisms causing the secondary infection of the ulcers, sometimes picking out certain special organisms e.g. *Bact. pseudo carolinus*, which—for no very apparent reason—they particularly suspect. The writer has seen striking results follow the administration of these vaccines in certain cases, which results he attributes to a combination of psychological effect and protein shock.

If such vaccines are used with a full appreciation of their limitations—which of course must on no account be conveyed to the patient—they are sometimes of value in certain cases of chronic bacillary and amoebic dysentery.

Vaccines prepared from cultures taken directly from the ulcer by means of the sigmoidoscope are on a slightly higher scientific plane, but have not been any more successful in the writer's experience.

**Diet in recurring dysentery** when acute symptoms have subsided or in chronic ulcerative colitis. No hot or spiced foods, no strong coffee or tea, and no strong alcoholic drinks are to be taken. All meals should be taken leisurely and if possible quietly, all food should be well chewed. The following suggestions are made for those on European diet:—

Benger's food or Horlick's milk at 7 a.m. on waking and again last thing at night.

For breakfast: sieved porridge with milk lightly boiled or poached eggs dry toast and butter with honey or marmite. Weak tea with plenty of milk.

At lunch and dinner: cream soups, steamed fish or chicken, preferably minced or creamed but may be taken in the ordinary way if well masticated. Mutton may be substituted if absolutely necessary but must be once cooked and minced. Sieved or pureed vegetables or fresh tender lettuce with olive-oil dressing. Milk puddings, soft rice with milk, cold sweet soufflés or jellies with sieved fruits, toast and butter, and tomato juice.

Weak tea with plenty of milk and dry toast and butter with marmite (vegex) at tea time.

Orange juice and Adexolm or some other vitamin concentrates (A and D) should be taken in adequate doses 2 or 3 times a day.

## REFERENCES

- ANDREWS, F. W. and INMAN, A. C. (1919) A Study of the Serological Races of the Flexner Group of Dysentery Bacilli. *Med. Res. Committee Special Rep. Ser. No. 42*. His Majesty's Stationery Office, London.
- BORD, J. S. K. (1940) Laboratory Diagnosis of Bacillary Dysentery. *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. and Hyg.* **33**, 553.
- LAPPING, D. (1942) Chemotherapy in Bacillary Dysentery. *Indian Med. Gaz.* **77**, 69.

- NATH, L. E. (1937) .. *The Etiology of Tropical Macrocytic Anæmia*  
*Indian Med Gaz.* 74, 1
- NATH, L. F., and NEAL EDWARDS, M. I. (1941) .. *Anæmia in Pregnancy in Calcutta* *Indian Med Pers Mem.* No 33 Thacker, Spink and Co (1933) Ltd., Calcutta
- TAYLOR, J. F. (1919) .. *The Role of the Fly as a Carrier of Bacillary Dysentery in the Salonica Command* *Med Pers Comm Special Rep Ser.* No 40 p 68 His Majesty's Stationery Office, London
- TERRY, W. W. C., and WILSON, G. B. (1932). *The Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity* Edward Arnold and Co., London



## FLIES

THE following note on flies and methods of controlling them has been prepared from notes kindly given to me by Dr. D. N. Roy, the Professor of Entomology at the School of Tropical Medicine, Calcutta.

**Method of spreading infection** The three ways by which flies spread infection are, (i) by passing ingested pathogenic micro-organisms with their excreta, (ii) by mechanical transfer on the external surface of their bodies, and (iii) by regurgitating the ingested materials.

**Species of flies** The house-frequenting flies in India are mostly of two species of *Musca*, *M. vicina* and *M. nebulosa*. It is doubtful if *M. domestica*, the common European species of house-fly, occurs in the plains in India. The common blue-bottle found in the house is *Chrysomya megacephala* and among the flesh flies *Sarcophaga ruficornis* is the most common. In England in addition to *M. domestica*, the lesser house-fly (*Fannia canicularis*), the latrine fly (*Fannia scalaris*), and the large blue-bottle (*Calliphora erythrocephala*) are found in the house. The house-frequenting flies in America are *M. domestica*, *Fannia scalaris*, *Lucilia caesar*, and species of *Sarcophaga*.

## CONTROL OF FLIES

The menace of flies may be reduced in three ways, by eliminating or reducing their breeding outside the house, by killing the adults inside the house, and by screening the house, or at least the kitchen, pantry, and dining room.

It is seldom possible completely to eradicate flies, but their number can usually be reduced by proper measures.

For the proper control of each species of fly, an accurate knowledge of its life-history and its habits are essential. While house-flies generally breed in horse manure and garbage the blue-bottles and flesh flies thrive on the carcasses of animals and birds. Putrefied night-soil forms an important source of origin of the common blue-bottle, *Chrysomya megacephala*, in India and China.

The eye-fly, *Siphunculina fuscicola*, breeds in moist and contaminated decomposing organic matter, also in the grass thatch bordering the roofs of dwelling houses.

It is needless to emphasize that the use of fly-proof dustbins, the proper removal and disposal of garbage, and a sanitary conservancy system are the first essentials.

**Control of breeding** The ways in which fly breeding can be controlled in manure or refuse may be considered under the headings, (i) chemical and (ii) biological.

The chemicals for treating manure are potassium permanganate, hellebore, borax, and fluo-silicate.

One drachm of potassium permanganate in 8 gallons of water is sufficient for 10 cubic feet of manure.

Half a pound of powdered hellebore should be mixed with 10 gallons of water, and the mixture allowed to stand for 24 hours, one gallon per cubic foot of the fluid is sprayed on the manure.

One pound of powdered borax for every 16 cubic feet of manure should be mixed with the manure heap by stirring. Borax, when used in such small quantities, has no harmful effect on crops when the manure is later used for fertilizing purposes.

One pound of sodium fluo-silicate in 15 gallons of water is applied to manure until it is fully soaked.

Under this heading pyrethrum powder might be included, but its use is not economical.

The biological method aims at preventing flies from ovipositing, or at destroying their larvæ. By this means, the fertilizing properties of the manure are well maintained. Oviposition can be prevented by covering a well-watered manure heap with turpentine, and it can be reduced considerably by covering the heap with a thin layer of cowdung, which flies do not like. To destroy the larvæ, the manure is packed as closely as possible, and the flies are allowed to breed on the surface. If the manure is watered, the heat of the fermentation will prevent the penetration of the larvæ deeper than an inch or two. The third-stage migrating larvæ can be trapped in various ways when they leave the manure. Hutchinson devised a method of storing horse manure over water, with the object of drowning the migrating third-stage larvæ.

The Indore system of composting night-soil and dry refuse packed in alternate layers and turned over every three days is another example of the biological method of fly control. This device is simple and economical and has been successfully employed in various places in China and India.

**Breeding in night soil.** In India the potent cause of fly breeding is the careless disposal of night-soil unprotected open latrines and the habits of the people in defecating in fields close to their habitations.

The pans, tubs or any other receptacles used for the reception of night soil should be placed in the latrine sub-chambers with well fitted back doors and the latrine should be sprayed with kerosene oil emulsion or 5 per cent cresol solution every day. The carts for removal of night-soil should be kept clean and should have well fitting lids. The night-soil should be removed daily, or at least three times a week. Shallow trench latrines used mainly at *melas* should be filled up with dry grass and leaves and burnt out or they should be covered with earth new trenches being used each day. Human faeces should never be buried in trenches less than 4 feet deep.

The type of latrine which completely eliminates fly breeding is the bore hole latrine (*vide supra*).

Incinerating night-soil and street refuse has not proved as successful as was once thought. The disadvantages are many, it is doubtful if it can be conducted in such a way as to eliminate the breeding of *Musca* in and around the incinerator. Further it is very wasteful.

**Screening.** For economic reasons the screening of the entire house is seldom possible. All food-stuffs including milk should however be kept screened. Wherever possible at least the kitchen and the dining room should be screened.

**Destruction of adult flies.** The two main ways of destroying flies are by poisoning them or by catching them on a sticky surface but swatting will in some circumstances be effective. The best poison is arsenic used in the form of sodium arsenite mixed with treacle and water, but serious accidents are likely to occur among children and domestic animals. Formaldehyde is one of the most commonly used poisons against house-flies, a mixture of two drachms of commercial (40 per cent) formalin and two heaped spoonfuls of sugar with lime water to make up one pint is an effective way of attracting flies. Pads of cotton wool or layers of blotting paper may be soaked in the mixture. As the formaldehyde on exposure quickly turns acid a much better device is to use the poison in a bottle and the mouth is closed by means of a platform of absorbent material (blotting paper) from the centre of which a wick of the same material passes down into the fluid.

Other contact poisons have been recommended for use in the house such as sodium salicylate (used in the same strength as formalin), sodium fluo-silicate in saturated solution. 'Tangle-foot' mixture for making adhesive fly-baits is prepared by heating together (without boiling) a mixture of eight parts of powdered resin and five parts of castor oil or ground nut oil until the resin is entirely dissolved. The mixture is applied in a thin layer on papers or on lengths of stout string which are suspended in suitable places. The mixture keeps indefinitely in a closed container.

The destruction of adult flies can be accomplished very effectively by the use of pyrethrum sprays as used for mosquitoes. On walls DDT paints and sprays remain for many weeks their powers of destroying flies that settle on the treated areas.

# AMÆBIC DYSENTERY

	PAGE
DEFINITION .. .. .	425
DISCUSSION .. .. .	425
HISTORICAL .. .. .	425
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	426
Geographical description .. .. .	426
Epidemic features .. .. .	426
Seasonal incidence .. .. .	426
Age, sex, and racial incidence .. .. .	427
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	427
The causal organism .. .. .	427
Morphology .. .. .	427
Trophozoite—Pecyst—Cyst—Amœbulae—The life cycle	
Culture—Resistance—Animal susceptibility .. .. .	428
The carrier .. .. .	428
Source, route and dissemination of infection .. .. .	429
Immunity and susceptibility .. .. .	429
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	430
The colonic lesions .. .. .	430
Site—Mechanism of production—Naked-eye appearance—Chronic ulcer.	
Secondary extra-colonic lesions .. .. .	431
Liver .. .. .	431
Hepatitis—Military abscess—Large abscess	
Abscesses in other organs .. .. .	432
Ulceration of the skin .. .. .	432
The blood .. .. .	433
The fæces .. .. .	433
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	433
Incubation period .. .. .	433
Clinical types .. .. .	433
(a) The fulminant attack, (b) The typical acute attack; (c) The diarrhœal onset, (d) Chronic amœbic dysentery, and (e) The latent infection	
Complications .. .. .	435
Hæmorrhages—Peritonitis and perforation—Appendicitis and localized abscess—Cutaneous ulceration—Cirrhosis of liver	

DIAGNOSIS	PAGE
<i>Laboratory diagnosis</i>	435
Stool examination	436
Microscopical examination (a) In saline—(b) In iodine—Culture	436
Complement fixation test	438
<i>Other methods</i>	438
Sigmoidoscopy	438
TREATMENT	438
<i>Historical</i>	438
<i>Treatment of the acute attack</i>	438
Routine—Diet—Toxic effects of emetine—Other symptoms	438
<i>Treatment of chronic amœbic dysentery</i>	440
Vaccine—Diet	440
PREVENTION	441
PROGNOSIS	442

**Definition**—A dysenteric affection that is a condition characterized by ulceration of the large intestine and the passage of numerous stools containing blood and mucus which may be acute or chronic and is caused by the protozoal parasite *Entamoeba histolytica*.

**Discussion**—There is a very strong tendency in the literature of the present day to give preference to the heading 'amœbiasis' and to relegate 'amœbic dysentery' to the place of one of the major manifestations of this infection. There is something to be said for this procedure namely (i) that it draws attention to the fact that there are many other manifestations of amœbic infection besides dysentery (ii) that a clinical attack of dysentery is not an essential prelude to these manifestations and (iii) that considered together these are probably far more important from a morbidity and possibly also from a mortality point of view than amœbic dysentery itself. Against it however are a number of points (i) that it is giving precedence to a purely parasitological classification over a clinical one where this is quite unnecessary (ii) that as there are a very large number of amœbæ and several of these infect man the term might imply infection by any one of a number of species of amœbæ whereas it only refers to infection by one and (iii) that whilst suggesting that the parasite attacks a number of different tissues and causes a variety of pathological changes in these which is a fact it also implies that the processes are independent whereas they are all secondary and dependent on the primary intestinal ulceration.

For these reasons the writer prefers to consider the subject under the heading amœbic dysentery and to classify the secondary amœbiasis including amœbiasis sine dysentery as complications or sequelæ of the primary infection of the bowel wall which may have been sub clinical. There are many parallel examples which the writer could quote in favour of his point of view and even if there are as many that could be quoted against it he still proposes to adhere to his view as he considers that the adoption of this classification will help to rescue tropical medicine from laboratory domination.

**Historical**—Amœbic and bacillary dysentery were not really not differentiated until their respective causative organisms had been identified there were however strong suspicions which often amounted to conviction that the dysentery of the

tropics which had been long associated in the astute minds of the early clinicians with hepatitis and liver abscess was a different disease from the jail or asylum dysentery of temperate climates, which was never followed by these sequelæ. As the discovery of amœbæ in the stools of dysenteric subjects preceded the identification of the dysentery bacilli by many years it is not unnatural that the idea that practically all dysentery especially in the tropics, was due to amœbæ should become so firmly established that it took many years to eradicate, and the erroneous impression that it is the more prevalent form is even now scarcely eradicated.

In 1875 Losch discovered amœbæ which were undoubtedly *Entamœba histolytica*, in the stools of a peasant with dysentery who had come from Archangel to St Petersburg (Leningrad). In 1887 Kartulis in Egypt found amœbæ in a liver abscess and thereby confirmed the previous suspicion regarding the association of the two conditions. In 1891, Councilman and Lafleur described the bowel lesions and first used the term amœbic dysentery. Osler later confirmed all these findings and established the disease in the textbooks with a clear clinical and pathological description. In 1903 Schaudinn differentiated between *Entamœba histolytica* and *Entamœba coli* but his description was so poor that for a number of years there was still much confusion between the pathogenic and non-pathogenic entamœbæ, to which confusion Musgrave and Clegg working in the Philippines added by claiming that all entamœbæ were pathogenic or might become pathogenic, they introduced the word 'amœbiasis' but used it in a wider sense than its present application. In 1913 Walker and Sellards in the Philippines demonstrated the pathogenicity of *E. histolytica* compared with *E. coli*, in a series of human infection experiments. The 1914-18 war gave a great stimulus to the study of this disease, and Dohell, Wenyon and others clarified the position regarding the differences between these two species established certain morphological characters as identifying the cysts of *Entamœba histolytica*, and placed the pathogenicity of this species where parasitologists have been satisfied to leave it for the last twenty years.

The present war has again revived interest in this subject. Hundreds of thousands of British and American soldiers are serving in the tropics so that *Entamœba histolytica* is assured of vast virgin pastures and it is to be hoped that its behaviour will be carefully studied.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical description**—The disease has a wide distribution in all tropical and sub-tropical countries, in the temperate zone, its position is anomalous, for the percentage of 'carriers' (*vide infra*) is almost as high as in the tropics, but amœbic dysentery is a rare incident, and when genuine autochthonous cases occur in Great Britain, Canada or even the north USA, the incident is usually considered a suitable subject for a special report, which is quoted and requoted in the literature for some years. There are exceptions to this relative immunity to the disease enjoyed by ré-idents in temperate climates, e.g. the Chicago epidemics of 1933 and 1934, in the first, 1,400 cases were traced to 400 towns in America amongst visitors returning from this city, 75 per cent of whom had stayed in two hotels (Bundezen, 1934), and in the second during the great stockyard fire, a hundred firemen and 2,000 spectators who drank sewage-polluted water were affected (Hardy and Spector, 1935). It must also be remembered that the first identified case of amœbic dysentery came from Archangel, which is almost in the Arctic circle.

**Epidemic features**—It is essentially an endemic and sporadic disease, and though there are sometimes concentrations of cases indicating a common source of infection (e.g. the Chicago incidents reported above) and suggesting an epidemic, true epidemics of dysentery, where the spread of infection can be traced from case to case, are almost always, if not always, bacillary in origin.

**Seasonal incidence**—As a general rule, there is no special seasonal distribution in the tropics, sporadic cases occurring all the year round. In special circumstances, for example, where flies are the main disseminators, or when contamination of water supplies is more likely to occur at some special season, there may be a tendency for a concentration of cases. In temperate climates it is usually a summer disease.

**Age, sex, and racial incidence**—It occurs at all ages but is not common amongst children. At the moment the writer has a European child of 4 years in hospital suffering from dysentery with a very heavy *E. histolytica* infection, but he has seen few such cases. Manson-Bahr (1939) claims never to have seen amœbic dysentery in a European child under 10 years old. The commonest ages for this disease are between 20 and 40 years, and the incidence of its sequel, amœbic abscess of the liver, is even more heavily concentrated in this age period. The sexes appear to be equally affected, but liver abscess is less common amongst women. There is little evidence of any racial immunity or susceptibility to infection, but the sojourner and the visitor are certainly more susceptible to the serious complications of this disease than is the native of the tropics. The writer has seen more cases of liver abscess during the last few months in the British military hospitals in Calcutta than he has seen in twenty years in his own hospital in which the large majority of patients are Indians.

### ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal organism**—*Entamoeba histolytica*, a protozoan of the family Amœbidae, is the causal organism. It is a two-phase organism with an active trophozoite phase and a resistant cystic phase (see plate A, figures 1 to 3). There are other amœbæ which infect man, all of them are probably non-pathogenic, namely *Entamoeba coli*, *Entamoeba gingivalis*, *Endolimax nana*, *Dientamoeba fragilis*, and *Iodamoeba butschlii*.

**Morphology**—The trophozoite of *E. histolytica* is an amœboid organism from 15 to 60 microns in the long axis, consisting of a clear ectoplasm and a granular endoplasm, it is greenish in colour, has a nucleus that is ill-defined in the unstained state, and contains ingested red cells.

The trophozoite is extremely active when examined in the fresh state under favourable conditions of temperature. A single large pseudopodium, showing no sharp line of demarcation between ectoplasm and endoplasm, is thrust forward, and into this pseudopodium the rest of the cytoplasm of the amœba appears to flow until the whole organism has moved forward, the process takes place very rapidly.

When the organism has been outside the body of its host for some time however, it exhibits movements of a different kind, it then becomes stationary, but throws out large hyaline pseudopodia composed of clear ectoplasm sharply differentiated from the endoplasm. The endoplasm contains the nucleus and possibly red blood cells. The nucleus is spherical and vesicular, containing a fine central karyosome, in unstained preparations, it is invisible, in contrast to the clearly visible brighter refractile nucleus of *E. coli*.

The precyst form first becomes immobile, extrudes all food particles, rounds up, and eventually secretes a thin cyst wall.

The cyst thus formed is uni-nucleate, but later the nuclei divide and a quadri-nucleate cyst is formed, it is spherical in shape 6 to 20  $\mu$  in diameter, with a well-defined cyst wall, and contains chromatoid bars.

The amœbulæ, which emerge from the cyst when it reaches the intestine of a new host, are small, actively motile organisms with a clear blue cytoplasm.

**The life cycle**—The sequence of events in the life cycle of the amœba is as follows. The cysts are ingested with food or water, they resist the action of the gastric juice and reach the lower end of the small intestine where the intestinal juices dissolve the cyst wall, and a four nucleated amœba excysts, the nuclei divide and then the amœba itself divides into eight amœbulæ. These remain in the fluid contents of the small intestine and pass through the ileo-cæcal valve, then, escaping from the more solid

tropics which had been long associated in the astute minds of the early clinicians with hepatitis and liver abscess, was a different disease from the jail or asylum dysentery of temperate climates which was never followed by these sequelæ. As the discovery of amœbæ in the stools of dysenteric subjects preceded the identification of the dysentery bacilli by many years, it is not unnatural that the idea that practically all dysentery, especially in the tropics, was due to amœbæ should become so firmly established that it took many years to eradicate, and the erroneous impression that it is the more prevalent form is even now scarcely eradicated.

In 1875, Losch discovered amœbæ, which were undoubtedly *Entamœba histolytica*, in the stools of a peasant with dysentery who had come from Archangel to St Petersburg (Leningrad). In 1887 Kartulis in Egypt found amœbæ in a liver abscess and thereby confirmed the previous suspicion regarding the association of the two conditions. In 1891, Councilman and Laffeur described the bowel lesions and first used the term amœbic dysentery. Osler later confirmed all these findings and established the disease in the textbooks with a clear clinical and pathological description. In 1903 Schaudinn differentiated between *Entamœba histolytica* and *Entamœba coli*, but his description was so poor that for a number of years there was still much confusion between the pathogenic and non-pathogenic entamœbæ, to which confusion Musgrave and Clegg working in the Philippines added by claiming that all entamœbæ were pathogenic or might become pathogenic, they introduced the word 'amœbiasis', but used it in a wider sense than its present application. In 1913 Walker and Sellards in the Philippines demonstrated the pathogenicity of *E. histolytica*, compared with *E. coli*, in a series of human infection experiments. The 1914-18 war gave a great stimulus to the study of this disease, and Dobell, Wenyon and others clarified the position regarding the differences between these two species established certain morphological characters as identifying the cysts of *Entamœba histolytica*, and placed the pathogenicity of this species where parasitologists have been satisfied to leave it for the last twenty years.

The present war has again revived interest in this subject. Hundreds of thousands of British and American soldiers are serving in the tropics, so that *Entamœba histolytica* is assured of vast virgin pastures, and it is to be hoped that its behaviour will be carefully studied.

## • EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical description**—The disease has a wide distribution in all tropical and sub-tropical countries, in the temperate zone, its position is anomalous, for the percentage of 'carriers' (*vide infra*) is almost as high as in the tropics, but amœbic dysentery is a rare incident, and when genuine autochthonous cases occur in Great Britain, Canada or even the north USA, the incident is usually considered a suitable subject for a special report, which is quoted and requoted in the literature for some years. There are exceptions to this relative immunity to the disease enjoyed by residents in temperate climates, e.g. the Chicago epidemics of 1933 and 1934, in the first, 1,400 cases were traced to 400 towns in America amongst visitors returning from this city, 75 per cent of whom had stayed in two hotels (Bundesen, 1934), and in the second, during the great stockyard fire, a hundred firemen and 2,000 spectators who drank sewage-polluted water were affected (Hardy and Spector, 1935). It must also be remembered that the first identified case of amœbic dysentery came from Archangel, which is almost in the Arctic circle.

**Epidemic features**—It is essentially an endemic and sporadic disease, and though there are sometimes concentrations of cases indicating a common source of infection (e.g. the Chicago incidents reported above) and suggesting an epidemic, true epidemics of dysentery, where the spread of infection can be traced from case to case, are almost always, if not always, bacillary in origin.

**Seasonal incidence**—As a general rule, there is no special seasonal distribution in the tropics, sporadic cases occurring all the year round. In special circumstances, for example, where flies are the main disseminators, or when contamination of water supplies is more likely to occur at some special season, there may be a tendency for a concentration of cases. In temperate climates it is usually a summer disease.

Age, sex, and racial incidence—It occurs at all ages, but is not common amongst children. At the moment the writer has a European child of 4 years in hospital suffering from dysentery with a very heavy *E. histolytica* infection, but he has seen few such cases. Manson-Bahr (1939) claims never to have seen amœbic dysentery in a European child under 10 years old. The commonest ages for this disease are between 20 and 40 years, and the incidence of its sequel, amœbic abscess of the liver, is even more heavily concentrated in this age period. The sexes appear to be equally affected, but liver abscess is less common amongst women. There is little evidence of any racial immunity or susceptibility to infection, but the sojourner and the visitor are certainly more susceptible to the serious complications of this disease than is the native of the tropics. The writer has seen more cases of liver abscess during the last few months in the British military hospitals in Calcutta than he has seen in twenty years in his own hospital in which the large majority of patients are Indian.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism—*Entamœba histolytica*, a protozoan of the family Amœbidae is the causal organism. It is a two-phase organism with an active trophozoite phase and a resistant cystic phase (see plate A, figures 1 to 3). There are other amœbæ which infect man, all of them are probably non-pathogenic, namely *Entamœba coli*, *Entamœba gingivalis*, *Endolimax nana*, *Dientamœba fragilis*, and *Iodamœba butschlii*.

Morphology—The trophozoite of *E. histolytica* is an amœboid organism from 15 to 60 microns in the long axis, consisting of a clear ectoplasm and a granular endoplasm, it is greenish in colour, has a nucleus that is ill-defined in the unstained state, and contains ingested red cells.

The trophozoite is extremely active when examined in the fresh state under favourable conditions of temperature. A single large pseudopodium, showing no sharp line of demarcation between ectoplasm and endoplasm, is thrust forward, and into this pseudopodium the rest of the cytoplasm of the amœba appears to flow until the whole organism has moved forward, the process takes place very rapidly.

When the organism has been outside the body of its host for some time, however, it exhibits movements of a different kind, it then becomes stationary, but throws out large hyaline pseudopodia composed of clear ectoplasm sharply differentiated from the endoplasm. The endoplasm contains the nucleus and possibly red blood cells. The nucleus is spherical and vesicular, containing a fine central karyosome, in unstained preparations, it is invisible, in contra-distinction to the clearly visible brighter refractile nucleus of *E. coli*.

The precyst form first becomes immobile, extrudes all food particles, rounds up, and eventually secretes a thin cyst wall.

The cyst thus formed in uni-nucleate, but later the nuclei divide and a quadri-nucleate cyst is formed, it is spherical in shape, 6 to 20  $\mu$  in diameter, with a well defined cyst wall, and contains chromatoid bars.

The amœbulæ, which emerge from the cyst when it reaches the intestine of a new host, are small, actively motile organisms with a clear blue cytoplasm.

The life cycle—The sequence of events in the life cycle of the amœba is as follows. The cysts are ingested with food or water, they resist the action of the gastric juice and reach the lower end of the small intestine where the intestinal juices dissolve the cyst wall, and a four nucleated amœba excysts, the nuclei divide and then the amœba itself divides into eight amœbulæ. These remain in the fluid contents of the small intestine and pass through the ileo-cæcal valve, then, escaping from the more solid



and more static contents of the large intestine, they find their way into the crypts of Lieberkuhn, where they develop into adult trophozoites, invade the living tissues, and eventually reach a lymph follicle, here they secrete a cytolytin, there is an inflammatory reaction, and eventually an ulcer forms, in the tissues at the base and in the walls of this ulcer, the amœbæ multiply by simple binary division, amœbæ find their way into the lumen of the gut, where under the sub-optimal conditions they extrude any contained food, become spherical and form a cyst wall, the nucleus divides by binary fission to produce the characteristic four-nucleated cyst, which eventually passes out with the faeces. Once outside the body no further development takes place.

Alternatively, the active amœbæ, during their invasion of the tissues, may find their way into a vein, when this occurs they are carried *via* the portal vein into the liver, where they cause first hepatitis, then multiple small abscesses, and eventually a large liver abscess, according to the number of the invading amœbæ and the resistance (possibly aided by therapy) of the host tissues. At whatever stage this process is halted, the result, as far as the amœba is concerned, is the same, it has reached a dead end. Thus, this invasion of the blood stream must be looked upon as an accident, for it can form no part of the ultimate design of the protozoon, this must be the propagation of its own species, not the destruction of its host which in this case it may easily bring about. Secondary invasion of the lungs, brain, and skin have been reported a number of times, the skin infection being a result of direct contamination of a skin abrasion around the anus or a colostomy opening.

A single individual will pass many millions of cysts in one day, the number has been estimated as from 300 000 to 45,000 000.

**Culture**—Boeck and Drbohlav (1925) were the first workers to find a satisfactory medium for growing amœbæ *in vitro*. The medium generally used is a coagulated serum slant covered with Ringer's solution and egg albumin. The medium thus has a solid and a fluid portion, and the amœba tend to crawl up the slant.

**Resistance**—The cysts will survive in sewage for months and for equally long in distilled water, that they will also live in chlorinated water is a fact of some considerable practical and epidemiological importance. Cysts do not however resist drying.

**Animal susceptibility**—Kittens are the most susceptible animals, they can be infected by rectal injection of the trophozoite forms or by ingestion of cysts. Puppies and monkeys can also be infected easily. The disease runs a very rapidly fatal course in kittens and also in some dogs, but in monkeys it is more comparable to the disease in man.

**The carrier**—*Entamœba histolytica* is reputed to be an obligatory parasite, that is to say, it has not been found completing its life cycle except in the intestinal tract of man (and of a few mostly experimental animals), and it is believed that it cannot complete this cycle without the nourishment of living tissues. If, therefore, a person is passing cysts in his stool, it is evidence that he has some open lesion in the intestinal mucosa, where the amœbæ obtain nourishment and whence they escape. Post mortem, in individuals who had no symptoms of dysentery during life minute pin-point ulcers containing amœbæ have been demonstrated in the intestinal tract. It is therefore assumed that all persons passing amœbic cysts must at least have such small ulcers in their intestinal mucosa. If the premises are correct, the conclusion appears inevitable, but there are a number of observed facts regarding the incidence of carriers and of amœbic dysentery in different populations that are hard to reconcile. Extensive studies on the percentages of carriers—i.e. persons passing *Entamœba histolytica* cysts in their

stools—in different populations have been carried out for many years. Dobell (1921) found 7 to 10 per cent of carriers amongst the civil population in England, Faust (1926 and 1942) found a 20.3 per cent infection rate amongst Chinese and foreigners in Peiping, the incidence in the former being higher, and he places the average incidence of carriers in the United States 'possibly as high as 20 per cent'. In India the incidence has been placed at above 20 per cent by various competent observers. Knowles and Das Gupta found *histolytica* cysts in 10.87 per cent of stools from an unselected population in Calcutta, this finding at a single examination suggests that at least double this number were actual carriers.

Data are available for many countries, but no more need be quoted here, all these observations indicate that in most countries in the world there is a high percentage of carriers, and that though on the whole the percentage is highest in the tropics and in sanitarially backward countries and communities, the differences are not very great, nevertheless, except for rare incidents in temperate countries amœbic dysentery is confined to the tropics and sub tropics. The 'carrier' in temperate countries usually gives no history of ever having had dysentery or any other bowel disorder, and, though a host of secondary conditions are attributed to 'amœbiasis' (*vide infra*), the evidence of cause and effect is very often slender.

There is usually a higher percentage of carriers amongst convalescents, and 'contacts', e.g. soldiers returning from tropical countries where the disease has been rife.

**Source, route and dissemination of infection**—The resistant cyst is the only infective form, as the delicate trophozoite would obviously not resist the digestive juices, even if it survived long enough to be ingested. A few animals have been found infected in nature—monkeys, rats and dogs—and though it is possible to infect both cats or dogs in the laboratory (*vide supra*), they do not normally pass cysts and are therefore not sources of infection to others. Man is thus probably the only important source of infection. In patients suffering from acute amœbic dysentery, the active trophozoite forms which find their way into the intestinal lumen are swept out with the rest of the intestinal contents, rapidly die, and are incapable of propagating the infection, but in the less acute stages, though there may still be trophozoites, precyst forms have had time to develop into cysts, which are capable of carrying the infection to fresh hosts. The main source of infection is usually considered to be neither the sub acute case nor the convalescent carrier, but the carrier who has never suffered from a clinical attack of dysentery. However, in the opinion of the writer, the epidemiological and other evidence makes it very questionable whether these symptom-free carriers, especially those that are encountered in temperate climates, can be in any way associated with the dissemination of the disease, amœbic dysentery, though the 'convalescent carrier' and the 'contact carrier' should be regarded with considerable suspicion, and should not be employed as food-handlers.

Invasion is always by the oral route.

The media in which the infection spreads are food and water. The former may become infected by means of flies—but these are not usually considered as important as they are in bacillary dysentery—by food-handlers, or by the contamination of greenstuffs with human sewage used as manure. Water may be directly contaminated by human sewage, as in the historical Chicago incidents (*vide supra*) and it must be remembered that chemical disinfection, e.g. chlorination, does not kill the cysts.

**Immunity and susceptibility**—Though there is probably no such thing as complete natural immunity, there is evidence of varying susceptibility in different individuals, in a population exposed to infection, some escape

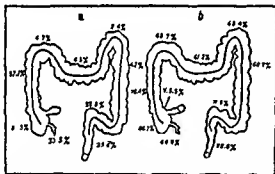
infection altogether, others harbour the amœbæ and pass cysts for a time without showing any symptoms, yet others suffer from mild dysenteric or diarrhoeal symptoms while, finally, others will suffer from a serious or fulminating dysentery

There is not much evidence of individual acquired immunity one attack appearing to provide little immunity to a subsequent attack, on the other hand the indigenous inhabitants of the tropics are undoubtedly less likely to develop such serious complications as do sojourners and visitors. Liver abscess is relatively rare in Indians and long resident sojourners but is a frequent sequel to amœbiac dysentery in the non immune British soldiers

There is some evidence of immunological response—as distinct from immunity—as complement fixation occurs when antigen prepared from cultures of *Entamoeba histolytica* is brought in contact with the serum of an infected person (*vide infra*)

### PATHOLOGY

**The colonic lesions** Site—The initial ulcers are in a very large percentage of cases in the cæcum after this the common sites are the ascending colon the sigmoid and the rectum. The secondary ulcers are more widespread and occur with almost equal frequency in all parts of the large intestine. This is well shown in the diagram below



The ileo cæcal valve is sometimes involved but never the ileum proper

**Mechanism of production**—The amœbæ find their way into Lieberkuhn's crypts from there they penetrate the mucous membrane but they do not cause much inflammatory reaction until they reach the submucosa here they secrete a cytotoxin which acts on the local tissues causing an outpouring of fluid into these tissues stasis and eventually thrombosis in the capillaries in these areas and coagulation necrosis. The

amœbæ multiply freely in this necrosed tissue and may penetrate into and even through the muscular layers. There is some question whether they often penetrate further than this during life—for there is evidence that after the death of the host they penetrate in all directions in his tissues—but post mortem they have frequently been demonstrated on the peritoneal surface of the intestine. As there is usually a direct connection between this necrotic focus and the gut lumen a secondary infection occurs and there is infiltration of inflammatory cells and leucocytes. The abscess that is formed is mainly in the submucosa it has a comparatively narrow opening into the gut lumen and is usually described as flask shaped it undermines and raises up the mucous membrane which later undergoes a gelatinous necrosis and eventually sloughs and separates leaving a deep punched out ulcer. The tendency is still for the amœbæ to penetrate into the submucous tissues laterally so that the mucous membrane is nearly always undermined. The extension of the abscess to the muscular coat will often mean involve

ment of the larger vessels, with resultant severe hæmorrhages, and possibly interference with the circulation, and gangrene of a portion of the gut, gangrene will inevitably lead to perforation and peritonitis.

The naked-eye appearances of the ulcers are thus as follows (a) The first stage is the early round raised area of mucous membrane which at first has a glazed gelatinous appearance with a slight yellow tinge, and later becomes frankly yellow, this is surrounded by a narrow area of hyperæmia, but the rest of the mucous membrane is healthy. (b) The next stage is the large irregular-shaped area of greenish slough which eventually separates and reveals a deep ulcer with ragged undermined edges from the deep lateral sinuses may extend along the submucous layer to join up with similar ulcers some inches away. The mucous membrane covering these sinuses as well as the surrounding mucous membrane may appear quite healthy. (c) In some severe cases, large areas of mucous membrane become gangrenous and separate, and in extreme cases this gangrenous process extends through the whole thickness of the gut wall. (d) Finally, in the healing ulcer, the mucous membrane grows in from the edges and covers the base, leaving a slight depressed area to indicate where the ulcer has been, or (e) a chronic ulcer develops (*vide infra*).

A characteristic of the post-mortem appearance of amœbic dysentery is that ulcers at all stages will be present, those in the cæcum usually being in the later stages of development, and, by means of the sigmoidoscope, the ulcers in the lower end of the bowel may be observed passing through these various stages of development. Sigmoidoscopy is without serious discomfort to the patient, or, except in the extreme cases where there is gangrene, danger to the tissues.

Another type of lesion that is usually associated with milder clinical symptoms or even the symptom-free carrier state, is one in which there are innumerable minute punched-out ulcers, which give the mucous membrane a 'mouse-eaten' appearance, these ulcers, for some reason (not satisfactorily explained) do not extend further. Simple abrasions of the mucous membrane which are believed to heal up rapidly have also been described to account for the rarity of the typical 'carrier' lesion, but the evidence that these do not occur *post mortem* is not complete.

The chronic ulcer has a sharply-defined fibrotic edge, not usually undermined, with a base of granulation tissue lying on the muscular coat, there is a general thickening of the bowel, in which all layers take part. Amœbæ are still present in the deep tissues and, although most of the inflammatory processes are caused by secondarily infecting organisms, healing will not take place while the amœbæ are still there. When the amœbæ are eradicated, the ulcer either (a) heals, leaving a scarred mucous membrane but seldom any serious contractures or a stricture of the bowel (b) continues as a non-specific ulcerative condition, or, probably quite frequently, (c) heals up and later breaks down again under much the same conditions as does the bacillary ulcer.

**Secondary extra-colonic lesions.**—The commonest site is the liver, the right lobe is usually affected, the proportion of right to left lobe infections being from 4 to 1 to 20 to 1, according to different observers. The former figure only reflects the fact that the right lobe is much larger than the left, the proportion of the two weights being about 3 to 1, the latter could probably be accounted for by the size and direction of the two branches of the portal vein.

The lesions caused in the liver will depend to some extent on the number of amœbæ that reach that organ but also, probably to a greater extent, on the natural resistance of the tissues of the liver to this parasitic invasion—

livers already overworked or otherwise damaged being much less likely to resist such invasion—and, later, on the presence or absence of secondary infection. The pathological process may go through the following four stages to reach the final one, or it may be halted at any one of them —

(a) *hepatitis*, (b) *miliary abscesses*, (c) *large 'sterile' abscess or abscesses*, (d) *secondarily infected abscess or abscesses*, or (e) *an abscess may point and burst through the skin, or into some other organ or tissue* (*vide infra*)

The amœbæ may reach the liver in a number of small or large showers, or as a single shower, they are distributed fairly widely in the organ. When they reach a sinusoidal space, they penetrate the endothelial layer and secrete their cytotoxin, causing a local reaction, this is the stage of *hepatitis*. Quite frequently the local response will destroy the amœbæ, but sometimes it fails, and the amœbæ produce a small zone of focal coagulation-necrosis which develops into a *miliary abscess*, resolution may take place at this stage, in which case there is probably complete absorption of these minute abscesses—if not, these abscesses grow and eventually coalesce producing a single large abscess which often involves a large part of the lobe, it consists of a necrotic mass of liver cells and cytolysed tissues, but contains little or no true pus. The cavity has an ill-defined ragged wall in which the amœbæ are still active, and it is usually traversed by fibrous bands or trabeculae which the amœbæ have not succeeded in 'lysing'. The abscess may extend and eventually burst into some other organ or tissue, but there is evidence that the process is self-limiting, because very frequently, even without any evidence of secondary infection, the amœbæ will be found to have died, and the abscess may be a completely sterile one. In such circumstances, the necrotic material becomes slowly absorbed, or, if it is large, encapsuled and eventually calcified.

On the other hand, it is not uncommon for the abscess to become *secondarily infected* via the blood or the bile ducts, or by direct extension, in which case there is an inflammatory reaction, and the abscess cavity becomes filled with pus under tension, it may extend in almost any direction, and will eventually burst, the commonest directions in which a liver abscess will point are—through the abdominal wall and skin, or into the lung, the peritoneum, the peri renal tissue, the pericardium, or one of the hollow viscera, the stomach, duodenum, or colon.

The contents of the abscess will vary considerably according to the stage it has reached but the most characteristic is of the consistency and brownish-red colour of anchovy sauce. Microscopically, if it is a sterile abscess the material aspirated consists of liver-cell debris, a few blood cells, occasionally some pus cells, and Charcot-Leyden crystals. There are seldom any amœbæ, but in an active abscess these can be found by scraping the cyst wall. A secondarily-infected abscess will consist largely of pus and liver-cell debris.



Figure 128  
Charcot-Leyden  
crystals

**Abscesses in other organs**—Pulmonary abscess, secondary to liver abscess is comparatively common, but so-called primary lung abscesses have been described. 'Primary' in this instance is meant to indicate 'without the intermediary liver abscess', it is not a truly primary condition.

Brain and spleen abscesses are not very uncommon, and are always secondary to liver abscess.

**Ulceration of the skin**—It is doubtful if the amœbæ could ever penetrate the epidermis, but, once through into the deeper layers of the true skin, they are able to penetrate rapidly, to cause gangrene of large areas

of skin, and to produce deep punched-out ulcers. The sites are practically always around the anus or a colostomy wound.

**The blood**—There is always a sharp leucocytosis during the acute attack, the count often rising to 30 000 per c mm. The increase is general and there is not usually a predominantly polymorphonuclear leucocytosis, as one encounters in septic processes, but a general increase in all four main white-cell elements, some writers attach special importance to the eosinophil increase, but in many tropical countries this is 'normally' from 3 to 7 per cent. The leucocyte count returns to normal with the subsidence of the acute symptoms, but it will rise again if there is secondary liver involvement. It does not however, usually rise very high again, and even 12,000 per c mm should be taken as significant, in a frank amœbic liver abscess the white-cell count will sometimes be normal.

There is slight anæmia during the acute stages, which is usually normocytic, but in the chronic stages where the picture is often complicated by nutritional defects, there may be a marked anæmia and this will usually be macrocytic.

**The feces**—The characteristic amœbic dysentery stool is bulky and offensive, containing 'anchovy sauce' pus, much mucus, and dark red blood often in clots, mixed with faecal matter at first. Later, the stool may consist of little more than 'anchovy sauce' pus and dark blood and in severe cases gangrenous clots which give it a very offensive smell.

The reaction is acid.

Microscopically, the stool does not present a highly cellular picture, there are many bacteria, yeasts and other organisms, and undigested food debris, the cells that are present are mainly lymphocytes with some polymorphonuclears (both degenerated and possibly only represented by a pyknotic mass of nuclear chromatin, so that their identity may be uncertain), clumped red cells, Charcot-Leyden crystals, and active amœbæ. (For further details and methods of examination see Diagnosis.)

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Incubation period**—This is usually from 7 to 14 days, but it may be many months, and, if the onset is insidious, the first serious symptoms attributable to the amœbæ may be delayed for many years, when perhaps the patient has returned to a temperate climate.

**Clinical types**—There is a wide variation in the symptoms that may occur when the amœba first establishes itself in the colon. For convenience of description, the following types may be visualized but there is no essential difference, except in degree, in the pathology of these various types—

- (a) *The fulminant attack*
- (b) *The typical acute attack*
- (c) *The diarrhœal onset*
- (d) *Chronic amœbic dysentery*
- (e) *The latent infection*

The types are not by any means clear cut, and one type may pass into another, especially if no suitable treatment is given, the chronic type must always have had some prelude but this may have been a latent infection.

(a) In the severe or fulminant attack, there will be very great prostration and toxæmia, with the passage of many bulky and very offensive stools in which there are large gangrenous sloughs, as well as dark blood and pus. There will be severe abdominal pain, often with rigidity of the abdominal wall due to localized peritoneal involvement, later, with the onset of gangrene of a loop of intestine, fortunately a comparatively rare incident there may be, before the final collapse, a short period when local signs and

symptoms subside and stools decrease, but this is accompanied by a rapidly increasing toxæmia which any physician should recognize

(b) In the typical acute attack the onset may be sudden with the passage of 10 to 20 stools a day, consisting of faecal matter mixed with dark blood, mucus and pus. There is a considerable abdominal pain which is at first diffuse, but tends to become localized in the right iliac fossa and then later may become more generalized again, there is not however as much tenesmus as in the attack of bacillary dysentery. The attack is usually afebrile but there may be an intermittent temperature up to about  $100^{\circ}\text{F}$ , a higher temperature in an amoebic attack indicates early liver involvement and is not a good prognostic sign, and the pulse rate is usually proportionate to the temperature, but may be increased even in the afebrile attack. There is usually general weakness and loss of appetite. The abdomen is very tender, and the thickened colon can be felt, if the abdominal wall is not too thick.

(c) Perhaps the most common type of onset is the diarrhoeal onset in which all the signs and symptoms noted above in the typical attack may occur, but will be milder. If suitably treated, the condition usually clears up, but otherwise it may continue in this form for some time, attacks of diarrhoea alternating with periods of constipation, and may pass imperceptibly into the chronic stage, the liver complications often being the first indication of the more serious nature of the condition, or a typical attack with the passage of blood or pus, or even a fulminant attack may develop from this mild beginning.

(d) Chronic amoebic dysentery.—For this condition the term chronic amoebiasis seems justifiable. It is, as a rule, secondary to one of the acute or sub acute types described above, but it is not uncommon to find the condition established in a patient who gives no previous history of dysentery or diarrhoea however in such cases the infection has obviously been present, though latent, in the patient for some time. The main symptoms are repeated attacks of loose stools possibly with a little blood and mucus, alternating with periods of constipation, accompanied by slight pain and distinct tenderness in the abdomen most commonly in the area of the caecum, descending colon and sigmoid, the liver is tender, and a thickened bowel will often be felt distinctly through the abdominal wall. There is a muddy or yellowish discoloration of the skin, and a history of loss of weight, indigestion loss of appetite and slight general malaise. A large number of secondary symptoms can definitely be associated with this chronic ulceration of the bowel, these include a variety of conditions, in which either allergy or sepsis play a part, skin diseases, pyelitis, rheumatism, eye diseases, all conditions in which a septic focus is reputed to play a part, and nearly all allergic diseases, the ulcers in the colon appear to constitute an open door through which streptococci and other micro-organisms have a ready access to the blood stream, and through which allergens are absorbed.

(e) A latent infection undoubtedly very often occurs without any recognizable clinical symptoms and from it any of the above clinical forms may develop. This latent infection may be presumed in retrospect from the subsequent development of the chronic condition in a patient who gives no history of any bowel disorder, or it may be observed during life by means of the sigmoidoscope, or post mortem in such a person, when this ulceration is shown definitely to exist, and amoebae are recovered from the ulcers, it is certainly permissible to use the terms 'amoebiasis' or 'chronic amoebiasis', and to suspect that any of the secondary conditions enumerated in the last paragraph, from which the patient may be suffering, are due to this condition. But the writer questions the justification of arriving at this conclusion solely on the evidence of the stool and the presence of cysts which

have the morphological appearance of *histolytica* cysts, or of applying the term 'amœbiasis sine dysentery' to these laboratory-diagnosed cases.

### COMPLICATIONS

The commonest complications are hepatitis and liver abscess these will be considered separately as though they are ætiologically linked with amœbic dysentery, they constitute a separate syndrome. Other complications are —

**Hæmorrhages** —The deep sloughing that occurs in the bowel wall often leads to severe hæmorrhage the signs and symptoms of which are similar to those of any other bowel hæmorrhage.

**Peritonitis and perforation** —A localized peritonitis may result in severe cases (*vide supra*). A generalized peritonitis may result from perforation of the bowel wall at the site of a deep ulcer, this is an uncommon accident and seldom occurs except in the case of gangrene of a segment of the colon which subsequently ruptures.

**Appendicitis and localized abscess** —Amœbic ulceration in the appendix has been reported fairly frequently, the symptoms are naturally those of appendicitis. If amœbic dysentery is recognized or suspected it is probably better to give specific treatment for the amœbic infection first, and then, if any localizing signs remain to remove the appendix. A pseudo appendicitis from a localized peritonitis due to ulceration in the cæcum is not uncommon, and, in such cases, specific treatment will often obviate an unnecessary operation. Retro colonic abscesses also may occur as the results of a leak from, or the frank perforation of, an amœbic ulcer retro-peritoneally. The signs and symptoms will be very similar to those of an appendix abscess, and will often be in the locality of the cæcum to make the picture more complete. The treatment will be much the same as for an appendix abscess.

**Amœbic granuloma** —Occasionally, as a result of a granulomatous reaction of the bowel wall to the invasion, an ulcerating fleshy growth, which may well be mistaken for a carcinoma, appears in the cæcum or sigmoid.

**Cutaneous ulceration** —This has been reported a number of times, the common sites being the neighbourhood of the anus, around a colostomy wound in a case of chronic ulcerative colitis, and at the site of pointing of a liver abscess. Clinically, it is a rapidly-spreading deep ulceration of the skin with undermined edges and a base of granulation tissue lying on the muscle layer, very painful on pressure, and exuding a purulent discharge. The ulceration is liable to spread with alarming rapidity unless controlled by emetine injections.

Rogers described a condition of cirrhosis of the liver which he looked upon as secondary to amœbic hepatitis. His main evidence was the frequency with which the condition was discovered post mortem in Calcutta, in cases in which alcoholic cirrhosis could be excluded but the writer with more recent local experience, believes that this cirrhosis is more probably dietetic in origin, a sequel to restriction or to mal absorption of essential food elements, particularly protein.

### DIAGNOSIS

The clinical dysenteric attack will have to be differentiated from dysentery from other causes (*see p 368*).

It is of primary importance that this differentiation should be made in order to ensure the correct treatment (there being radical differences in the treatment for bacillary, amœbic, and other dysenteric conditions), but it is also important from the point of view of prognosis especially to provide an indication of the complications that are to be expected.

Points of differentiation between bacillary and amœbic dysentery are given in table VIII (p 413).



**Laboratory diagnosis: Stool examination.**—The first point to be borne in mind is that the examination must be made on a fresh stool. Amœbic trophozoites will not be found unless the specimen is absolutely fresh, even cysts begin to degenerate in an hour or so in some stools. In a cold country, it will be necessary to keep the specimen warm, both before and while it is examined, if the activity of the amœbæ is to be maintained, and it is important for proper identification that they should be active. If possible, e.g. in chronic cases, the patient should always go to the pathologist and pass a fresh stool for him to examine, rather than send the specimen to the pathologist. If a stool cannot be passed to order, it is a good practice to insert a rubber catheter into the rectum, rotate it so that the end moves about, and from the 'eye' of the catheter it will usually be possible to obtain a small sample suitable for examination.

The stool must be inspected carefully and its macroscopical characteristics noted (see p. 433).

The reaction of the stool should be tested with litmus paper; it will be acid in amœbic dysentery.

Formicroscopical examination, two preparations must be made—(a) in saline and (b) in iodine.

(a) *In saline.* A small portion of stool, if possible a piece containing blood or mucus, is picked out on a platinum loop and transferred to a watch-glass containing a few drops of normal (0.85 per cent) saline; a fine emulsion is made, any mucus present being teased (the emulsion should be such that small print can be read through it), a ring of vaseline is arranged on a clean slide, a drop of emulsion is placed in the centre; and a thin coverslip is placed over it. The slide is placed on the microscope stage—which should be warmed, if necessary—and examined with a 1/6th objective.

(b) *In iodine-eosin.* A 5-per-cent potassium-iodide solution is saturated with iodine, an equal amount of saturated solution of eosin in normal saline is added immediately before use. A portion of stool is added and a slide prepared as with saline. There is some advantage in examining the saline and iodine-eosin specimens under the same coverslip.

(c) Some workers contend that there is a definite advantage in employing the zinc-sulphate centrifugal floatation technique (see p. 620) in examining stools for cysts, after the final centrifugalization a loopful of material is taken from the surface and mixed in iodine-eosin.

The saline preparation must be examined immediately, and if there is any delay it must be kept in the 37°C. incubator; the iodine-eosin specimen may be kept for some hours.

If the examination is to be thorough, several 'smears' of each kind must be made with samples taken from different parts of the stool.

The general microscopical nature of the stool should be noted, and amœbæ should be looked for and, if found, identified. There should be little doubt about the identity of an active trophozoite of *E. histolytica* when it has once been seen, and it could only be confused with *Entamoeba coli* (see table IX) or other entamoebæ, but a sluggish or dead amœba is not unlike an endothelial cell, which may show some amœboid movement. The cysts, which in all but the most acute stages are more readily found than the trophozoites, also have to be differentiated from other amœbic and flagellate cysts, and from *Blastocystis hominis*. About the identity of a single four-nucleated cyst in the saline or in the iodine preparation, there will often be doubt, but, when several specimens are found in each, the doubt will usually be removed, of course, frequently both *E. histolytica* and *E. coli* are present.

When trophozoites are present, there are usually few cysts, and *vice versa*.

The finding of active *E. histolytica* with contained red cells, or of undoubted precysts, is diagnostic of amœbic dysentery. The presence of

cysts is also said to be diagnostic of some ulceration, but this may be of the pin-point or somewhat questionable shallow type

Culture of the faeces for entamoeba is a laboratory refinement that is certainly worth undertaking if a well-equipped laboratory is available

In a convalescent, at least six consecutive daily examinations should be carried out—and found 'negative'—before a patient can be proclaimed as free from infection.

TABLE IX

*Important morphological characters of E. histolytica and E. coli*

	<i>Trophozoite stage, unstained E. histolytica</i>	<i>E. coli</i>
Size when rounded	10-30 $\mu$	20-30 $\mu$
Movements ..	Very active in fresh state Later finger-like clear pseudo- podia thrust out from im- mobile body	Very active in fresh state, but rounds up and loses motility very rapidly. As usually seen, is sluggish and with blunt pseudopodia
Colour and appear- ance	Glassy, clear greenish or yellowish	Ground glass
Inclusions .	Red cells, usually no bacteria	No red cells*, bacteria yeasts, starch granules, and even other protozoal organisms
Nucleus .	Usually not seen	Usually visible
<i>Encysted stage, unstained</i>		
Size ..	6-20 $\mu$	10-33 $\mu$
Shape .	Spherical	Spherical
Cyst wall ..	Thin	Thicker
Colour and appear- ance	Clear greenish or yellowish	Like ground-glass
Chromatoid bodies ..	Usually bars with smooth rounded ends present in most cysts	Filamentous or splinter-like; seen only in about 5 per cent of the cysts
Glycogen mass .	Often very prominent, especially at binucleolar stage	Sometimes well marked in early stage, but soon disappears
Nuclei ..	Usually invisible	Visible
<i>Encysted stage, iodine preparation</i>		
Cytoplasm ..	Greenish-yellow, smooth and hyaline	Yellowish-brown: granular
Chromatoid bodies .	Indistinct	Not visible,
Nuclei ..	1 to 4 (rarely 8) · minute central karyosome	1 to 8 (rarely 16, or more); karyosome large and eccentric
Glycogen mass ..	Yellowish-brown · diffuse	Dark brown diffuse with indistinct outline

\* Some strains of *E. coli* have been known to ingest red cells in culture, if these are introduced into the medium

The only other finding to which significance can be attached is the presence of Charcot-Leyden crystals (Acton, 1918). There is little doubt that there is a high degree of correlation between these and *E. histolytica* in stools, but they are not diagnostic.

**Complement fixation test**—It is claimed that a 90 per-cent correct diagnosis can be made by means of complement fixation technique with an *E. histolytica* culture extract as the antigen. The results obtained by this test are not entirely consistent and its specificity is not accepted by all workers.

**Other methods**—Sigmoidoscopy will aid diagnosis considerably if the appearance of the amoebic ulcer is characteristic, and further a swab-specimen may be taken and examined. A barium enema and a fluoroscopic examination will indicate the extent and position of the ulceration but on the whole, x-rays are not very helpful in an acute or sub acute dysenteric attack.

### TREATMENT

**Historical**—Ipecacuanha has been used in the treatment of dysentery for centuries. It was certainly used in India in 1660. But at this time it was usually given in small doses. In 1846 Parkes revived the interest in this drug and gave it in large doses. In 1866 Macnamara gave the alkaloid emetine that had been isolated from ipecacuanha by Pelletier in 1817 by mouth and from the year 1886 ipecacuanha was given regularly in hepatitis. The emetic properties of emetine were recognized and ipecacuanha *sine* emetine had a short vogue (Neubert 1913) but in 1912 Vedder showed that it was the emetine that killed the amoebae and that the efficacy of ipecacuanha depended on its emetine content.

In 1912 Rogers demonstrated that emetine could be injected subcutaneously and that it acted as a specific in amoebic dysentery and amoebic hepatitis. He standardized the treatment with this valuable drug that has made such a vast difference to the expectation of life of the white soldier in the tropics.

Later work by Dobell and others cast doubt on the specific action of emetine on amoebae *in vivo* and the present opinion is that its action is indirect.

Emetine bismuth iodide (EBI) an emetine compound which it was possible to administer without causing vomiting was introduced with the idea that a more direct action on the amoebae in the bowel could be obtained by the oral administration of the drug.

*Holarrhena anti-dysenterica* (or *kurchi* bark) is an ancient Indian remedy for dysentery. Chopra and others have shown that an extract of this bark has a specific action in amoebic dysentery though distinctly less than that of emetine.

Many synthetic drugs have been introduced during the last twenty years e.g. arsenical preparations such as stovarsol and carbarsone (Reed *et al.* 1932) iodine compounds such as yatren (Muhlen and Menk 1921) and acridine compounds such as rivanol for all of which a specific action on the amoeba is claimed.

**Treatment of the acute attack**—Emetine one of the most useful and almost certainly the most abused drug ever introduced in the treatment of disease in the tropics is the mainstay of the treatment of amoebiasis. The fact that there are adults who will tolerate and feel better for 36 one-grain doses of this drug in as many days does not alter the fact that many patients—some of whom did not require the drug at all—have been seriously disabled, and yet others probably killed, by a course of 12 grains in 12 days (*vide infra*). That is to say, as in the case of most drugs the personal factor is important and it is essential to play for safety.

Directly a diagnosis of amoebic dysentery has been made, a course of emetine should be started without delay. To an adult, six injections of one grain each should be given during the first six days, after which an interval of three to six days should be allowed and the course repeated. In very mild attacks that respond immediately three injections in the second course will be sufficient. After this, an interval of at least two weeks should be allowed before any more emetine is given, whatever the circumstances, few cases in which the infection is confined to the bowel will require any further emetine, but the more serious hepatic infections will

For small women and children, the size of the individual dose of emetine should be reduced proportionately.

**Routine**—An ounce of castor oil with 15 minims of tincture of opium should be given on the first day, followed by one grain of emetine hydrochloride given intramuscularly, *the patient should be confined strictly to bed*, and given a light fluid diet mainly consisting of low-fat-content milk, or milk preparations. From the following day, or from the evening of the same day, if the castor oil was given early, he should be given 2 drachms of bismuth carbonate in a glass of water four-hourly night and day, and one grain of emetine intramuscularly 2½ hours after the first daily dose of bismuth. The bismuth may be reduced to thrice daily if the main symptoms—pain and frequent stools—subside and discontinued altogether in these circumstances when the first course of emetine is complete, otherwise, the bismuth should be continued through the second course of emetine.

After this, in those cases in which there are cysts still present in the stools, and/or in which there are still some residual symptoms carbarsone should be given in two daily doses of 0.25 gramme for 10 or 15 days, whichever is indicated by the progress of the patient. When carbarsone is being taken, a dose of salts should be given to ensure complete evacuation of the drug, as otherwise its action is likely to be cumulative. Or, for this immediate follow-up course, emetine bismuth iodide (EBI) is favoured by some workers. This is given in 3-grain doses for a week to ten days, in hard gelatin capsules, or as salol-coated pills, taken at night two hours after a light evening meal and preceded if necessary by some sedative mixture, phenobarbitone 2 grains, or tincture of opium, 15 minims. These precautions are necessary to stop vomiting.

The treatment of the acute attack can be rounded off by prescribing liquid extract of kurchi, a drachm thrice daily for three weeks to a month and some form of ispaghula (*Plantago ovata*) to be taken at night to regulate the bowels, as great care should be taken to avoid constipation.

As far as possible, progress should be checked by sigmoidoscopy, but it must be remembered that most of the lesions are likely to be out of reach of the sigmoidoscope.

The vast majority of cases will respond to this course of treatment. Those who do not must be looked upon as chronic cases and treated accordingly (vide *infra*).

**Diet**—As stated above, at first the diet must be light and fluid, lime whey, albumin water, skimmed milk, citrated milk, or Benger's food, fruit juice and glucose, marmite, and chicken broth, and then light solids, milk puddings, egg dishes, and boiled fish. Meat, fat and any food with much roughage should be avoided, as also should alcohol. A semi-vegetarian dietary, which does not contain too much roughage, should be maintained for some time, as this tends to keep the large bowel content alkaline.

**Toxic effects of emetine**—The most disastrous consequences may result from the ill-advised administration of emetine. These results are the more frequent and serious on account of the dramatic early favourable effects on the patients who are being poisoned. During the 1914-18 war, the writer saw many examples of inexperienced medical officers giving two and even three grains of emetine daily for long periods and literally killing their patients of whose fate they were often quite unaware on account of the frequent evacuations from hospital that are inevitable in war time. In the subsequent years he has seen athletic young men's hearts disorganized for years through the failure of their medical advisers to realize that they should advocate strict rest in bed during the whole time a patient is taking emetine.

The most dangerous and important effect is on the heart in which it produces myocardial degenerative changes and alterations in conductivity with a fall of blood pressure, cardiac irregularity and acute dilatation as the result of any undue effort. It also may cause acute mental depression, neuritis, myositis

changes in the skin and nails, and diarrhoea, which last-named is likely to be attributed to the dysenteric condition

**Other symptoms**—Abdominal pain may be severe and interfere with rest at night, in the latter case, morphia is certainly indicated for a night or so until the treatment takes effect, but minor degrees of discomfort can be aided by hot fomentations or turpentine atupes

Tenesmus is less common but can be relieved in the same way as in bacillary dysentery (*vide supra*)

**Treatment of chronic amæbic dysentery**—This presents one of the major problems of tropical medicine. The action of emetine is specific if given early, and every effort should be made to give an efficient course in good time. However, in the chronic stages, the action of emetine is very disappointing, and in the absence of hepatitis, it is questionable if it should be employed at all

At this stage, drugs that have a direct action on the intestinal mucosa appear to act better than emetine, and therefore emetine bismuth iodide, given as indicated above, is of value. However, in the writer's experience, carbarsone is the most useful drug at this stage, provided that there is no hepatitis or cirrhosis, other drugs such as yatren and its English equivalent chiniofon, diodoquin, vioform and rivanol (an acridine compound) all have their special advocates, and it may be advisable to give each a trial in an obstinate case, but even then a cure may not be effected until medicated bowel washes are also given

Chiniofon (yatren) is given in keratin-coated pills of 0.25 gramme (about 4 grains) each, one pill three times on the first day, the dose being increased to two pills and then three pills daily on the two succeeding days, if it can be tolerated, for ten days

Vioform, also best given in the form of keratin-coated capsules and diodoquin are given in doses of 0.63 gramme three or four times a day. In the case of the former, it is best to limit the course to 10 days, as toxic effects have been reported, but the latter can be continued safely up to a full three weeks

For medicated bowel washes, chiniofon (20 c cm of a 2.5 per cent solution) is the most popular, and considerable success has been claimed with it by some workers although the writer has been less fortunate. Manson-Bahr (1939) uses a combination of EBI by mouth and chiniofon per rectum, which he claims is almost infallible

Other bowel medicamenta have been used with success, *e.g.* rivanol which is recommended in a strength of 1 in 2000, but the writer has usually found that silver nitrate solution combined with the administration by mouth of some 'specific' drug, *e.g.* carbarsone, is as good as the far more expensive yatren

All medicated bowel washes must be preceded by a 2 per cent sodium bicarbonate enema, which the patient retains for about 10 minutes and then passes as completely as possible. After this the medicated retention-enema is run in slowly—about 8 ounces is usually sufficient for the patient to retain comfortably, he should retain this as long as possible, up to 8 hours in the case of yatren (2.5 per cent). Silver nitrate is given in increasing strength, from 1 in 750 up to 1 in 250 or even stronger. If the enema causes much pain, it can be washed out immediately with normal saline, but if not, it should be retained as long as possible up to about 5 hours. The patient should lie on his left side whilst the wash is being run in, and should then assume the knee elbow position to allow it to run well up into the transverse colon and, one hopes, beyond

It is usually necessary to keep up the bowel washes for at least a fortnight before much benefit will be apparent, except some soothing effect

which is often an almost immediate result, and they may have to be continued daily for a month or more. Later, as improvement is established, the washes may be reduced to one every other day.

After this course, extract of kurchi and spaghula (*vide supra*) should be prescribed for at least two months.

**Vaccines**—In chronic ulcers, which are mainly maintained by secondary infection, but in which the amœbæ are still active, a vaccine, preferably made from an organism obtained directly from the ulcer by means of the sigmoidoscope, is sometimes helpful (*see p 412*). When the secondary bacterial infection is overcome, the tissues are apparently better able to deal with the amœbic infection.

**Diet**—Great care must be exercised in advising patients about their diet, in these chronic bowel conditions. As much emphasis should be laid on what the patient is going to take, as on what articles of diet he should avoid, and this will depend on his normal dietary habits about which the doctor should question him carefully if he does not already know them. The thoughtless recommendation of restricted diet may lead to a patient's eventually suffering from specific dietary deficiencies, if not general starvation, which will help to maintain the bowel lesions. The diet must contain the full quota of calories suitable for a person at rest and also all the vitamins and essential minerals. Meat, excess of fat, coarse vegetables and fruits, spices, condiments and pickles, very hot and very cold substances, strong tea or coffee, and alcohol, should be avoided.

As secondary infection of the ulcers is an important factor at this stage, it may be useful to attempt to influence the intestinal flora by giving bulgarized milk (in India the ordinary *dohi* will serve the same purpose), with or without the addition of lactose, a heaped tablespoonful first thing in the morning.

## PREVENTION

Mao is apparently the sole source of infection so that proper faecal disposal and sewage treatment are the most important measures. It should be remembered that the cysts—the infective form—will survive in a septic tank for some months.

Water is not usually incriminated—although it was the vehicle in at least two historic epidemics, however, it cannot be ignored, as ordinary chemical methods of water sterilization will not destroy cysts, although almost any form of filtration will. The writer believes that more attention should be paid to water as a source of this infection.

Uncooked food, especially greenstuffs in the growing of which human manure may have been used, and food exposed to contamination by flies are probably the commonest sources of infection, and preventive measures should be adopted against these especially against flies.

The isolation of persons with acute dysenteric symptoms is of little value as a preventive measure, as such persons pass few cysts, it is important however that, when they become convalescent they should be followed, examined periodically, and, if they are found to be passing cysts, treated.

Most of the measures for prevention are thus general sanitary measures, and the only special preventive measure is with reference to carriers (*quod vide*). In institutions and households a systematic stool examination should be carried out amongst all food handlers and the 'carriers' weeded out and treated. What is at present impeding legislation in the matter of enforcing such precautions in public eating places is the uncertainty regarding the importance of the 'cyst-passer' in temperate

countries, but the measure should be rigidly enforced in the case of the convalescent carrier, especially in tropical countries

### PROGNOSIS

This will depend on how soon treatment is undertaken and on its efficacy. It is impossible to give figures, but an initial attack is very rarely fulminant. Almost all the deaths that occur as a direct or indirect result of amoebic dysentery are due to neglect of treatment in the early stages. There is however a small percentage of cases in which the symptoms persist for months and even years, despite (ordinarily) efficient measures.

With the establishment of hepatic complications the prognosis becomes graver (*vide infra*).

### REFERENCES

- ACTON, H. W. (1918) .. The Significance of Charcot-Leyden Crystals in the Faeces as an Indication of Amoebic Colitis. *Indian J. Med. Res.* **6**, 157.
- BOECK, W. C., and DRECHSLAV, J. (1925) The Cultivation of *Entamoeba histolytica*. *Amer. J. Hyg.* **5**, 371.
- BUNDESEN, H. N. (1934) .. The Chicago Epidemic of Amoebic Dysentery in 1933. *Pub. Health Rep.* **49**, Pt. 2, 1266.
- CLARK, H. C. (1925) .. The Distributions and Complications of Amoebic Lesions found in 186 Post-mortem Examinations. *Amer. J. Trop. Med.* **5**, 157.
- COUNCILMAN, W. T., and LAFLEUR, H. A. (1891) Amoebic Dysentery. *Johns Hopkins Hosp. Rep.* **2**, 393.
- DOBELL, C. (1921) .. A Report on the Occurrence of Intestinal Protozoa in the Inhabitants of Britain with Reference to *Entamoeba histolytica*. *Med. Res. Council Special Rep. Ser.* No. 59. His Majesty's Stationery Office, London.
- FAUST, E. C. (1926) .. Parasitic Infections and Human Disease in China. *Arch. Path. and Lab. Med.* **2**, 223.
- Idem* (1941) .. Amoebiasis in the New Orleans Population as revealed by Autopsy Examination of Accident Cases. *Amer. J. Trop. Med.* **21**, 35.
- Idem* (1942) .. The Prevalence of Amoebiasis in the Western Hemisphere. *Amer. J. Trop. Med.* **22**, 93.
- HARDY, A. V., and SPECTOR, B. K. (1935) The Occurrence of Infestations with *E. histolytica* Associated with Water-Borne Epidemic Diseases. *Pub. Health Rep.* **50**, Pt. 1, 323.
- KARTULIS, S. (1887) .. Zur Aetiologie der Leberabscesse Lebende Dysenterie-Amoben im Eiter der Dysenterischen Leberabscesse. *Centralbl. Bakt.* **2**, 745.
- MANSON-BAHR, P. H. (1939) .. Dysenteric Disorders. Cassell and Co., Ltd., London.
- MUHLENS, P., and MENK, W. (1921) Ueber Behandlungsversuche der chronischen Amöbenruhr mit Yatren. *Münchener med. Woch.* **68**, 802.
- NEUBERT (1913) .. Ueber die Wirkung von Uzara und geronnener Milch bei Darmerkrankungen. *Arch. Schiffs- u. Trop.-Hyg.* **17**, 640.
- REED, A. C., ANDERSON, H. H., DAVID, N. A., and LFAKE, C. D. (1932) Carbarsone in the Treatment of Amoebiasis. *J. Amer. Med. Assoc.* **98**, 189.
- ROGERS, L. (1912) .. Sixty Cases of Amoebic Dysentery Illustrating the Treatment by Ipecacuanha and Emetine respectively. *Indian Med. Gaz.* **47**, 421.
- ROGERS, L. (1912) .. The Rapid Cure of Amoebic Dysentery and Hepatitis by Hypodermic Injections of Soluble Salt and Emetine. *Brit. Med. J.* **1**, 1424.
- SCHAUDIN, F. (1903) .. Untersuchungen über die Fortpflanzung einiger Rhizopoden. *Arch. Kaiserl. Gesundh.-Amte.* **10**, 547.

## PLATES XI AND XII

- 1 *Entamoeba histolytica* trophozoite, showing ingested red corpuscles and characteristic nucleus
- 2 *Iodamoeba butschlii* trophozoite, showing nucleus with large karyosome and vacuolated endoplasm
- 3 *Endolimax nana* trophozoite showing characteristic nuclear structure and hyaline pseudopodium
- 4 *Entamoeba coli* trophozoite showing granular pseudopodia, numerous coarse vacuoles in the endoplasm and the characteristic nuclear structure
- 5 Large mononucleate cyst with single glycogen vacuole and two chromatoidal bodies
- 6 Binucleate cyst showing dispersed glycogen and three chromatoidal bodies
- 7 Three-nucleate cyst showing single glycogen vacuole and two chromatoidal bodies, which are more spherical than usual
- 8 Large four nucleate cyst with dispersed glycogen and five chromatoidal bodies
- 9 Large four nucleate cyst with remnants of glycogen in center
- 10 Medium-sized cyst containing four nuclei small glycogen vacuole and two typical chromatoidal bodies
- 11 Small race mononucleate cyst with dispersed glycogen and three chromatoidal bodies
- 12 Small race binucleate cyst containing two glycogen areas and two chromatoidal bodies
- 13 Mononucleate cyst with large glycogen vacuole
- 14 Binucleate cyst with glycogen vacuole around the margin of which are small splinter like chromatoidal bodies
- 15 Four nucleate cyst.
- 16 Four nucleate cyst with nuclei in characteristic resting stage Typical chromatoidal bodies present Might be confused with *E. histolytica* if it were not for the splinter like chromatoidal bodies
- 17 Typical eight nucleate cyst showing normal eccentric arrangement of the karyosomes of nuclei in resting stage and typical chromatoidal bodies.
- 18 Typical eight nucleate cyst showing the eccentric arrangement of the karyosomes and heavy chromatin masses on nuclear membrane
- 19 *Dientamoeba fragilis* Mononucleate trophozoite with large vacuoles The dispersed arrangement of granules in a circle is probably the most characteristic arrangement of chromatin within the nucleus of *D. fragilis*
- 20 21 22 Cysts of *Iodamoeba butschlii*
- 23 and 24 *Endolimax nana*
- 25 Large *Blastocystis hominis*



PLATE XI (Trophozoites and cysts)

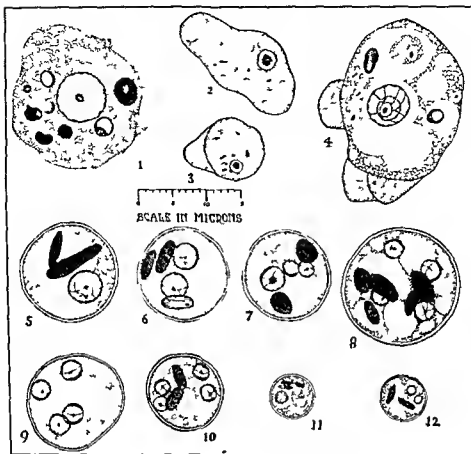
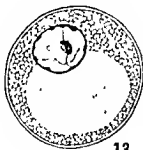


PLATE XII (Cysts)



13



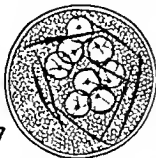
14



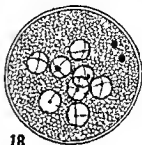
15



16



17



18



19



20



21



22



23



24



25

VEDDER E B (1912)

An experimental Study of the Action of  
Ipecacuanha on Amœbæ Trans Second  
Biennial Congress Far Eastern Assoc Trop  
Med, Hongkong p 87

WALKER E L, and SELLARDS A W (1913)

Experimental Entamoebic Dysentery Philip-  
pine J Sci, 8, 253

### The Iron-hæmatoxylin Staining Method\*

The accurate differentiation of *Entamoeba histolytica* from other amœbæ and cysts requires experience. In most cases, an identification can be made from a saline and an iodine specimen, but intermediate forms will sometimes be encountered which defy identification in wet films and of which even the long-experienced will prefer to see a hæmatoxylin stained specimen before making a final decision. It therefore will be advisable for anyone who wishes to learn to identify amœbæ to use the iron-hæmatoxylin staining method routinely to supplement the wet methods, at least for a time.

The staining method used by Dr John F Kessel, at Los Angeles, is a very satisfactory one. The following description and the figures on Plates XI and XII are taken from his *Laboratory Syllabus*, with his kind permission.

<sup>1</sup>A rapid method of iron hæmatoxylin staining is given below. In staining by this method it is imperative that the slides be kept moist throughout the process. Smears should be made quickly and the slides placed in fixative immediately and care should be taken to transfer them rapidly from one solution to another.

- 1 Smear fecal material on slides evenly and not too thick
- 2 Place slide in Schaudinn's fluid<sup>1</sup> heated to a temperature of 40°C. Leave in 3 minutes
- 3 Transfer to 70% alcohol for 2 minutes
- 4 Transfer to 70% iodine alcohol for 2 minutes. This is prepared by adding sufficient tincture of iodine to the alcohol to give a dark amber color
- 5 Transfer to 70% alcohol for 2 minutes
- 6 Transfer to 50% alcohol for 2 minutes
- 7 Wash in running water for 2 minutes
- 8 Transfer to 2% iron alum<sup>2</sup> at 40°C for 2 minutes
- 9 Wash in running water for 3 minutes
- 10 Transfer to 0.5% aqueous hæmatoxylin<sup>3</sup> at 40°C for 2 minutes or longer. This may vary according to the strength of the stain
- 11 Wash in water for 2 minutes
- 12 Decolorize in cold 2% aqueous iron alum. The time varies from 1 to 5 minutes depending upon how deeply the objects have stained. Usually 2 minutes time is sufficient. The decolorizing may be watched under the microscope using a high dry objective
- 13 Wash in running water for 10 minutes
- 14 Transfer through 50% 70% 80% 90% and 100% alcohol for 2 minutes each
- 15 Place in xylol for 2 minutes
- 16 Mount in balsam or gum damar using a No 1 cover glass. In place of step 14 two changes of dioxane may be used for dehydration<sup>4</sup>

\*<sup>1</sup>Schaudinn's Fixing Fluid. Distilled water saturated with mercuric chloride 2 parts 95% alcohol 1 part. Add 5 to 10 cc of glacial acetic acid to every 100 cc of this mixture.

<sup>2</sup>Iron Alum. 2% aqueous solution of ammonium ferric sulfate

<sup>3</sup>Hæmatoxylin Stain. 0.5% aqueous solution of alcoholic ripened stain. Stain solution is prepared by dissolving one part of hæmatoxylin crystals in 10 parts of absolute alcohol. This may be ripened in one of several ways.

- 1 By the ordinary slow process of standing for several months
- 2 By placing in an incubator for two weeks
- 3 By adding hydrogen peroxide
- 4 By adding carbolic acid and then boiling

The ripened stain should be diluted to 0.5% by adding distilled water. If upon using the stain is found to be insufficiently ripened a few drops of hydrogen peroxide or of carbolic acid should be added to each 100 cc of solution and the solution heated

# AMÆBIC HEPATITIS AND LIVER ABSCESS

	PAGE
HISTORICAL .. .. .	444
ÆTIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	444
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	445
<i>Amœbic hepatitis</i> .. .. .	445
<i>Miliary abscess</i> .. .. .	445
<i>Liver abscess</i> .. .. .	446
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	447
<i>Clinical and radiological</i> .. .. .	447
<i>Therapeutic test</i> .. .. .	447
<i>Blood picture</i> .. .. .	447
<i>Exploratory punctures</i> .. .. .	447
Technique of exploratory puncture	
DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	447
Febrile conditions—Hepatic enlargements—Extra-hepatic conditions	
TREATMENT .. .. .	448
<i>General—Specific—Aspiration</i> .. .. .	448
Technique of aspiration	
PREVENTION .. .. .	450
PROGNOSIS .. .. .	450

**Historical**—The association between dysentery and liver abscess has been suspected since the days of Galen, and some of the earliest observations of amœbæ, namely those of Koch, Kartullis, and Osler, were made in material from liver abscesses. But there was still a school of thought (e.g. Andrew Duncan at the London School of Tropical Medicine) which denied the general association, mainly, it appears on account of failure to find the amœbæ in the pus of the larger abscesses. In 1886, Norman Chevers and Maclean advocated ipecacuanha, then used in the treatment of amœbic dysentery, in hepatitis to prevent abscess formation. Between 1902 and 1907, Rogers definitely established the relation between amœbic dysentery and liver abscess by showing that in a large percentage of cases amœbæ could be recovered from the walls of these abscesses, he also suggested that some specific medicinal treatment, e.g. ipecacuanha, the use of which he revived might be used instead of the unsatisfactory surgical treatment then in vogue. In 1912, he introduced the emetine treatment for hepatitis and amœbic abscess.

**Ætiology and epidemiology.**—The cause of these conditions is the presence of amœbæ in the liver which they reach via the portal vein from an ulcer in the colon (see p 431), in patients with liver abscess, a clear history of past dysentery is obtained in only 60 to 90 per cent of instances, according to the experience of different observers, and in little more than 50 per cent are amœbæ found in the stools at the time the abscess is diagnosed.

\* Further in the epidemiology of the conditions there are many unexplained facts for example that amœbic abscess seldom occurs in temperate climates though amœbiasis is common (*vide supra*) that it is ten to twenty times more common amongst visitors and sojourners in the tropics than amongst the native residents and that it is ten times more common in men than in women

One explanation is that alcoholic excesses predispose to these conditions but this is not a sufficient explanation of the relatively high incidence in India at the present time amongst the British troops whose indulgence in alcohol is at least limited by opportunity even if not by inclination and of the rarity amongst certain hard drinking groups of more acclimatized Europeans. It is a subject that should be removed from the fervent atmosphere of prohibitionists propaganda into the cold light of statistical research.

The writer considers that there are indications that the higher incidence may be correlated with a heavy meat diet and/or with lack of the immunity produced by previous experience but he admits that his data would withstand statistical analysis no better than would that of his predecessors.

Amœbic liver abscess does not occur in children and is rare below the age of 20 years.

Amœbic hepatitis is probably a very much more common condition than is indicated in the literature on the subject in which figures are based mainly on the cases in which liver abscess subsequently develops.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Each of the four stages in the pathological process (*see p. 432*) of the invasion of the liver has its corresponding clinical picture though it is of course not possible to be dogmatic as to the exact signs and symptoms that will be produced at each stage.

The mild form of amœbic hepatitis is indicated by malaise a low irregular but fairly constant fever and a feeling of heaviness and constriction below the diaphragm or actual pain in the liver region the liver will be enlarged and tender and the white cell count slightly raised 10 000 to 12 000 per cmm. Treatment for hepatic congestion *e.g.* calomel and sodium sulphate or mercury pill will not usually be sufficient but a very marked improvement will follow a few injections of emetine.

The evidence that such an attack is amœbic hepatitis is not conclusive and the improvement caused by emetine though suggestive is not confirmatory as the writer believes that this drug often has a non specific effect on hepatic congestion but in patients who later develop liver abscess a history of such attacks is very common and from a pathological point of view it is extremely probable that a small shower of amœbæ could cause a minor degree of hepatitis that the natural tissue resistance in an undamaged liver might well overcome. Rogers has used the term *pre suppurative* stage for this but this term is avoided here because it seems to indicate inevitable suppuration which even in the untreated patient is not justifiable.

In the next stage in which there is military abscess formation the clinical picture is likely to be both more severe and more chronic the temperature may develop a more hectic character and be accompanied by severe sweating. The liver is usually enlarged and tender but not continuously so especially in the more chronic forms when the temperature chart may show periods of intermission. The leucocyte count is now definitely raised being usually 15 000 to 18 000 per cmm with a slight predominance of polymorphonuclears. Here again *pre suppurative* is an inappropriate adjective as suppuration is almost certainly occurring in small circumscribed areas where periods of subsidence of activity alternate with

periods of reactivation and advance. At this stage also, emetine will often control the condition, but it must be given for a longer time.

The stage of liver abscess will usually present a more definite clinical picture, but nevertheless there are many cases that show few or none of the classical signs and symptoms, and cases are on record in which an abscess has suddenly burst, e.g. into the lung, without any previous record of ill health.

The patient may give a history of previous illness that would correspond with the earlier stages referred to above, but on the other hand, the onset may be sudden, as the symptoms are more associated with the body's reaction to the invasion than with the invasion itself which may have taken place rapidly and unimpeded. However, he will usually be seriously ill, he will have a grey look with a sub-icteric tinting of the skin and sclerotics, but not often actual jaundice. The onset of fever may be sudden, with a rigor, or it may develop more gradually into a hectic remittent, occasionally an intermittent, or even a high continuous, fever with severe sweating. His pulse will be rapid, he may complain of dysphagia, indigestion, severe liver pain, which is usually stabbing in nature and very often referred to the right shoulder, and an irritable cough. The leucocyte count will be 20,000 per cmm or more but this is not a constant finding (see figure 130) and a normal or a lower count does not exclude liver abscess especially in an Indian patient. The liver is always enlarged and tender, but the rectus may be so rigid that this is difficult to feel. Pain will be caused when the thorax over the liver area is pressed between the hands, there will also be tenderness in the inter-costal spaces, and there may be some inter-costal oedema.

Other physical signs will depend on the size and position of the abscess. If it is in the left lobe or in the palpable portion of the liver below the costal arch it may produce a local bulge in the abdominal wall which it is possible to recognize as an abscess, it may be tense, but it is more usually soft and can in any case readily be distinguished from a hydatid cyst by the absence of the characteristic thrill of the latter.

There will often be rales or friction sounds at the base of the right lung.

X-ray examination will be invaluable, as the commonest site is in the right lobe just below the diaphragm. There will usually be definite limitation of movement of the diaphragm on the right side, it may be much higher than normal or it may show a definite localized bulge. There may be evidence of the involvement of the lung at the base and the heart may be pushed over to the left side (see plates XIII and XIV).

The abscess may point and eventually rupture externally either laterally through the chest wall or below the costal margin, or it may rupture internally in a number of directions. Probably the most common route taken by the abscess is to rupture into the lung or bronchus, this can sometimes be foreshadowed by suggestive physical signs and/or symptoms referable to the lung or pleural cavity, or by x-ray. When the abscess ruptures into the lung, the contents are immediately coughed out, and the patient may die of dyspnoea, or of shock, but, if he recovers from the immediate effects complete recovery is very common. The walls of the abscess collapse and close the opening and sepsis may be obviated.

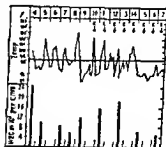


Figure 130 Shows the inconsistency of the leucocytosis in liver abscess, the condition responded to emetine treatment.

PLATE XIII  
*Amæbic liver abscess*



Fig 1.—Showing the high raised right dome of the diaphragm, it has an unusually clean-cut outline. The heart is pushed over to the left. Two pints of pus were obtained by aspiration.

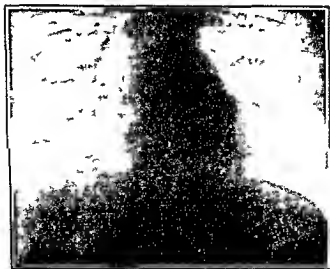


Fig 2.—Showing a local dome-shaped swelling superimposed on the right dome.

PLATE XIV  
*Amœbic liver abscess*



Fig 3—Showing another high right dome



Fig 4—In this case the diaphragm is scarcely raised, but the lung is apparently involved. Two days before this was taken the patient coughed up over a pint of pus, he made an uninterrupted recovery



Rupture into the pleural cavity is far less common. Other common directions are into one of the hollow viscera—stomach, duodenum or large intestine. Rupture into the pericardium, the gall bladder, the pelvis of the kidney or into the loose perinephric tissue and into the peritoneal cavity has been reported (see figure 131).

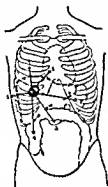


Figure 131 Diagram showing some of the directions in which a liver abscess may burst

- 1 Into the lung or pleural cavity
- 2 Into the stomach
- 3 Into the duodenum
- 4 Into the caecum
- 5 Through the skin
- 6 Into the pericardium

**Diagnosis**—If the patient gives a history of living in the tropics under conditions in which he is likely to have acquired an amoebic infection not too much attention should be paid to whether he has actually suffered from amoebic dysentery, or whether he has the infection at the moment, though either fact would add weight towards a positive diagnosis. Clinical and radiological evidence has been discussed above, and the response to emetine has been mentioned and will be discussed again under treatment but it should be emphasized here that at any stage the therapeutic test with emetine is of value in the early stage of simple hepatitis, a definite response will usually follow three daily injections, if it is suspected that the stage of miliary abscesses has been reached at least six should be given and even when there is a large abscess some distinct clinical improvement will usually follow six injections but it may be advisable to persist up to nine. The blood picture will give additional evidence but it must be remembered that the leucocytosis is neither as constant nor as high as one might expect. The final court in the diagnosis of liver abscess is an exploratory puncture.

**Technique of exploratory puncture**—A large serum syringe with a needle of moderate bore (about no. 9) not less than 3½ inches long is used. A local anæsthetic should be injected at the point selected. The needle is inserted either at a point where the abscess appears to be pointing or when there is no such indication in the 8th interspace in the mid axillary line and thrust into the liver substance at first in a slightly upward and forward direction towards the right cupola of the diaphragm. If no pus is obtained the needle is partly withdrawn and pushed in again in another direction, a third or even a fourth attempt may be made but if these fail it must be assumed that there is no large abscess present. If the anatomy of the liver is visualized if common sense is used and if care is taken to avoid the gall bladder and not to thrust the needle in to a depth greater than 2½ inches in any direction the procedure is a reasonably safe one. From time to time the plunger is withdrawn and if an abscess is entered the syringe will fill with pus either a chocolate-brown the typical anchovy sauce or ordinary yellow pus. In some cases it is very viscid and it is only possible to obtain very little through the ordinary exploring needle. It is advisable to detach the syringe and pass in a stylet to remove any blockage. Amoebæ are rarely found in the pus thus withdrawn and therefore the direct examination of the fluid will give little information but a culture should be made as the subsequent treatment of the case will depend on whether or not the abscess is already secondarily infected. (In an active abscess amoebæ are present but are confined to the walls of the abscess cavity, and will therefore only be found in the last few ounces of pus when the abscess is later aspirated *vide infra*).

**Differential diagnosis**—In view of the very considerable variability in the signs and symptoms of amoebic hepatitis and liver abscess and the possible absence of any, especially in the early stages, an adequate discussion on this subject would cover half the field of internal medicine. In

these circumstances, it will be best to give a short classification, with a few examples, of the diseases that may simulate, or be simulated by, amoebic hepatitis and liver abscess.

**Febrile conditions.** Long fevers—Typhoid, tuberculous, and *Bacillus coli* infections, the Pel-Ebstein syndrome, undulant fever, and kala-azar.

Short fevers—Malaria, relapsing fever, rat-bite fever, and leptospirosis.

In most of these conditions either rigors or profuse sweating will sometimes, if not usually, occur, and either of these symptoms will heighten the similarity.

**Hepatic enlargements.** Generalized—Hepatic congestion, active or passive, infective hepatitis, kala-azar, schistosomiasis, early cirrhosis, syphilis, tuberculosis, actinomycosis, leukæmia, and tularemia.

Localized—Hydatid cyst (suppurating or otherwise), gumma, carcinoma, and pyæmic abscesses.

**Extra-hepatic conditions**—Pneumonia, basal pleurisy and empyema, cholecystitis and suppurative cholangitis, pyelonephritis, perinephric abscess, and sub-phrenic abscess, appendicitis with complications.

### TREATMENT

**General**—The patient must be confined to bed whenever a definite diagnosis of amoebic hepatitis or liver abscess is made. He should be given a light diet, mainly of milk and milk products during the febrile bouts, with plenty of fruit juice and glucose to drink.

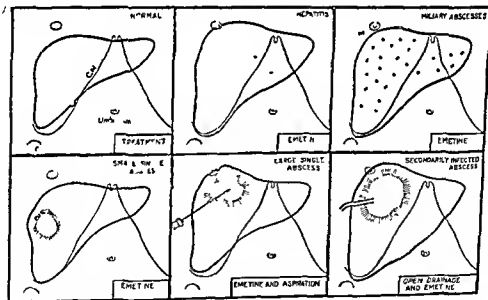


Figure 132 Showing five stages of liver involvement and the treatment of choice in each case

Pain should be relieved by local applications, hot fomentation or antiphlogistin. Sleep should be ensured by bromide and aspirin, phenobarbitone, or Dover's powder.

The bowels should be kept open, if necessary with magnesium sulphate, liquorice powder, or a mercury and aloes pill (see p. 51).

In severe cases, a daily dose of intravenous glucose will be beneficial.

**Specific**—It is in the hepatic complications of amoebic dysentery that emetine is of the greatest value, and in amoebic liver abscess, the combined

treatment of emetine administration with aspiration is a very great advance on the previous method of open operation in which the death rate was always above 40 per cent

At every stage of the invasion of the liver by amœbæ, emetine is of value. Some indication has already been given of what may be expected from emetine administration.

While in the earliest stage of hepatitis three one-grain injections will usually cause a definite clinical improvement, it is well to add another three injections when one is satisfied as to the specific nature of the infection.

In the early suppurative stage two courses of six injections each (or nine injections followed by three are preferred by some physicians *see* figure 133) with a short interval between them are usually necessary.

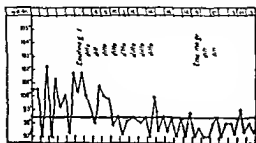


Figure 133 Showing a rapid response to emetine the process had probably reached only the military-abscess stage

**Aspiration**—Even when a large abscess has obviously formed it is quite often possible to control the condition by emetine alone without aspiration. However, if the evidence points to a large abscess or if preliminary treatment while perhaps controlling the fever to some extent has obviously not completely halted the pathological process it will be as well not to postpone aspiration any longer. If emetine has not

already been given and if the urgency of the occasion seems to permit it should be given before the operation; if not, then after operation until the fever is controlled or 12 injections have been given. In a serious condition like this certain risks (*see* p. 439) which might be unjustifiable in other circumstances, have to be taken with emetine dosage (*e.g.* cases of figures 134 and 135).

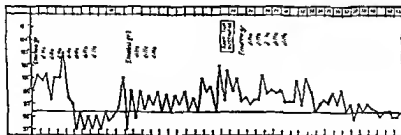


Figure 134 Showing delayed response to an overdose of emetine (*see* text)

In the case of which the temperature chart is shown (figure 131) aspiration was seriously contemplated as his temperature had not fallen after 12 emetine injections but instead emetine was given again and aspiration obviated. In another case (figure 135) both aspiration and emetine were necessary but the patient eventually recovered.

**Technique of aspiration**—After a successful exploratory puncture (*vide supra*), the cannula of Potain's aspirating apparatus with the trocar in position is inserted along the tract along which the exploring needle passed and as nearly as possible to the same depth. The stylet is then withdrawn and the negative pressure from the exhausted Potain's bottle turned on. If the point is in the cavity pus will drain into the bottle. No more than two pints should be withdrawn at one sitting. It may be necessary to replace the stylet periodically if the cannula becomes blocked.

After the abscess has been aspirated, if the fever continues it may be advisable to give further emetine injections. The risk of giving these may have to be weighed against the risk of allowing the pathological process in the liver to extend. Eventually, even in an uninfected abscess the time may come when open drainage will have to be considered, but this should be postponed as long as possible, for once a drainage tube is put in, contamination is inevitable.

When it is known that the abscess is secondarily infected, open drainage is the only treatment. This procedure is within the realm of the surgeon and the technique will not be described here, it might however be mentioned that resection of a rib is often necessary.

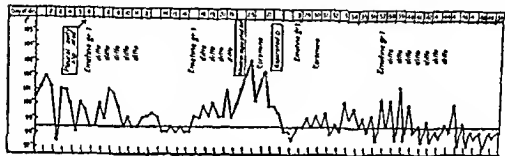


Figure 135 This was a very bad case two liver and one pleural aspirations were required as well as 20 grains of emetine

**Prevention**—Basically the prevention of liver abscess is the prevention of amoebic infection. There appears to be no danger of liver abscess developing in the intestinal amoebic infections that occur in temperate climates but in a tropical country such an infection must be looked upon as a potential danger and certainly in all cases in which there is frank dysentery, early and thorough treatment must be given. Emetine appears to be the only specific where the liver is affected or threatened (*vide supra*).

On general principles one might advocate moderation in the consumption of alcohol, or a vegetarian diet, for a person with intestinal amoebiasis but the writer questions the specific efficacy of the first measure and has no proof to offer regarding the second.

**Prognosis**—Without emetine the prognosis in liver abscess is poor, the death rate was placed at least 50 per cent—and is sometimes reported as 70 per cent—in pre emetine days.

In amoebic hepatitis by efficient treatment, it should be possible to prevent abscess formation in every case but later, when an abscess has developed, the death rate is still from 10 to 15 per cent.

## OTHER PROTOZOAL AND METAZOAL DYSENTERIES AND DIARRHŒAS

	PAGE
FLAGELLATE DIARRHŒAS      GIARDIASIS	451
DISCUSSION	451
<i>Historical</i>	451
<i>Epidemiology—Ætiology and pathology—Symptomatology—Diagnosis—Treatment</i>	452
CILIATE DYSENTERY      BALANTIDIASIS	453
COCCIDIOSIS	454
HELMINTHIC DIARRHŒAS AND DYSENTERIES	455
<i>Trematode diarrhœa</i>	455
<i>Nematode diarrhœas and dysenteries</i>	455

### FLAGELLATE DIARRHŒAS      GIARDIASIS

**Discussion**—The commonest intestinal flagellates are *Trichomonas intestinalis* and *Chilomastix mesnili* which infest the cæcum and large intestine, and *Giardia enterica* (*Giardia intestinalis* or *lamblia*) which is found in largest numbers in the duodenum and small intestine. The only flagellate about the pathogenicity of which there seems to be any unanimity of opinion is *Giardia enterica*. It is usually agreed that the other flagellates are found more frequently in an unhealthy stool than in a formed one, but this does not mean that the flagellates cause this condition, on the contrary, the condition of the bowel probably encourages the flagellates to multiply so that they are always found in greater numbers. Their presence if known to the patient, may encourage a neurasthenic subject to take an unhealthy interest in his bowel fauna, but there is little evidence of their pathogenicity.



Figure 136 *Giardia enterica*. Trophozoites (1 and 2) and cysts (3 and 4)

The writer has until recently always questioned the pathogenicity of *Giardia enterica*, and, except in children in whom he was satisfied that it did cause diarrhœa, he was inclined to place it in the same category as the other flagellates. During the last few years, since in fact, the introduction of a specific treatment for this infection, all his doubts have been dispelled.

As it would be absurd for the writer to describe a symptomatology which he does not believe exists, he will make no further reference to the other flagellates, and will discuss only giardiasis.

**Historical**—Leeuwenhoek discovered the parasite whilst using his primitive microscope in 1681. It was rediscovered as a human parasite by Lambl in 1859, and given the name *Lamblia intestinalis*, but as another species of the genus had previously been described and given the generic name *Giardia*, Lambl's parasite

was renamed *Giardia intestinalis*. It was later pointed out that the specific name *intestinalis* was already occupied and that the correct name is *Giardia enterica*. The name *Giardia lamblia* is also used, but is not in accordance with the rules of nomenclature.

**Epidemiology.**—*Giardiasis* occurs in all countries, but is probably more common in the tropics. It is found in persons of all ages, but it produces more definite symptoms in children than in adults. It was found in 6.27 per cent of about 20,000 stool samples from a mixed population examined in Calcutta between 1935 and 1938. In children, the general infection rate is higher.

There appears to be no reason for attributing any racial predilection to this infection, and, although the incidence is to some extent inversely correlated with the sanitary sense of the community, it is not uncommon amongst classes that are very careful about their food and personal habits. There is little reason for believing that individuals of the classes that show the highest infection rate have acquired any tolerance to the ill-effects of the infection, the writer has frequently seen symptomatic giardiasis in such persons.

**Ætiology and pathology.**—*Giardia enterica* is a flagellate parasite with a trophozoite and a cystic stage. The former is pear-shaped and dorsally convex, it has a 'sucking disc' in its ventral concavity, and four pairs of flagella, it has a colourless granular cytoplasm, and two nuclei (not seen in the unstained specimen), in size it varies from 10 to 20 $\mu$  in length and from 5 to 15 $\mu$  in breadth, it is actively motile in the freshly-passed fluid stool, but soon loses its flagella and motility in a formed or stale stool. The cysts are oval, 8 to 12 $\mu$  in length and 7 to 10 $\mu$  in breadth, they are colourless, and have four nuclei and a well-defined cyst wall.

The parasite lives and multiplies in the intestinal tract, from the duodenum to the cæcum. Both the cysts and the trophozoites are found in the stools, but the trophozoites will be found in larger numbers in samples obtained by duodenal aspiration.

The flagellates become attached to the intestinal mucosa which they irritate, causing it to secrete an excess of mucus. It is also very probable that they affect the function of the mucous membrane and interfere with absorption. A variety of lesions has been attributed to giardia infestation but it seems very doubtful if the parasite can be held solely responsible for any of them. It does not appear to have any invasive properties.

**Symptomatology.**—At present the symptomatology is not well defined, as the infection is so frequently associated with other infections, but a large variety of symptoms clear up when the infection disappears under specific treatment, and one is naturally inclined to attribute these to giardiasis. However, it is quite obvious that there are many persons with giardia infection, who suffer no recognizable ill effects.

The most constant symptoms are (a) diarrhoea—the stools are usually loose and watery, but may be definitely fatty, (b) abdominal pain or discomfort, either in the upper segment often associated with flatulence and sometimes with vomiting and usually accompanied by loss of appetite, or in the lower segment, with griping pains usually relieved by defæcation, and (c) irregular fever.

Children also are usually irritable and tiresome and develop capricious appetites. A condition very like celiac disease is recognized as being caused by giardiasis, and several of the writer's adult patients have shown a condition suggestive of sprue (*qv*) with marked anorexia, a sore tongue, macrocytic anæmia, and a fatty diarrhoea with actual increase of total fat in the stools. Specific treatment has caused a rapid disappearance of all the signs and symptoms.

In addition adult patients often feel definitely ill and weak, and they may exhibit nervous symptoms such as irritability and anxiety.

Abdominal tenderness is constant in the cases with symptoms, this is usually in the epigastrium, but sometimes in the region of the caecum where some thickening of the gut can be felt in thin individuals.

**Diagnosis**—The symptoms are too pleomorphic and too vague to allow an unsupported clinical diagnosis. The finding of the flagellate or its cysts in the stool is of course diagnostic of giardiasis, though the symptoms may be due to another cause, but flagellates are not always found, and duodenal aspiration may be advisable in a case under strong suspicion. This procedure is essential, if cure is to be definitely confirmed.

**Treatment**—Of the innumerable treatments advocated none proved really successful until Brumpt (1937) and Martin (1937) introduced mepacrine (atebrin) which appears to be a specific.

A large percentage of complete cures will be achieved with a course of 0.1 gramme three times a day for five days. Children should be given smaller doses (see p. 101). A second course after an interval of about a week will be necessary in a few cases. If there is any doubt about the cure it is advisable to give this second course.

### CILIATE DYSENTERY BALANTIDIASIS

Although balantidiasis is a rare infection there seems no possible question that it occurs and may be serious. Some 250 cases have been recorded.

**Geographical distribution**—Balantidiasis appears to have a universal distribution but far more cases have been reported in temperate countries than in the tropics. Cases have been reported from most European and Asiatic countries including both England and India, but it is not common in either, in the case of the latter, this will easily be understood. Two cases have been reported from North America, and several from South America and Africa.

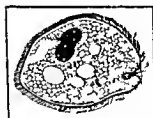


Figure 137 *Balantidium coli*

**Occupational incidence**—It occurs in swineherds and pork-butchers and other persons closely associated with pigs.

**Etiology**—*Balantidium coli* is a ciliate protozoa, a natural parasite of pigs, to which it appears to do little harm. It is transmitted to man apparently by food contamination. Experimentally it is transmitted with great difficulty.

**Pathology**—The parasites invade the mucosa of the large intestine apparently in exactly the same way as does *Entamoeba histolytica*. The ileum has also been involved. Entering the crypts of Lieberkuhn the parasites secrete a kind of cytotoxin, and penetrate into the submucosa, and thence even into the intestinal lymph nodes. The ulceration produced is similar to that of amœbic dysentery. Perforation has been reported.

**Symptomatology**—This is again indistinguishable from that of amœbic dysentery. The onset is often very insidious but the condition may develop seriously, and it is usually very persistent. Anæmia is a marked feature and later cachexia develops.

**Diagnosis** will be made only by finding the *Balantidium coli* in the stool. It is a large parasite easily seen with the low power lens.

**Treatment**—This has not been very satisfactory. Large (dangerous) doses of emetine, gr 1 daily for 15 to 20 days, have produced a cure in a number of cases, and recently methylene blue—administered by mouth in

was renamed *Giardia intestinalis*. It was later pointed out that the specific name *intestinalis* was already occupied and that the correct name is *Giardia enterica*. The name *Giardia lamblia* is also used but is not in accordance with the rules of nomenclature.

**Epidemiology**—Giardiasis occurs in all countries, but is probably more common in the tropics. It is found in persons of all ages, but it produces more definite symptoms in children than in adults. It was found in 6.27 per cent of about 20,000 stool samples from a mixed population examined in Calcutta between 1935 and 1938. In children, the general infection rate is higher.

There appears to be no reason for attributing any racial predilection to this infection, and, although the incidence is to some extent inversely correlated with the sanitary sense of the community, it is not uncommon amongst classes that are very careful about their food and personal habits. There is little reason for believing that individuals of the classes that show the highest infection rate have acquired any tolerance to the ill-effects of the infection, the writer has frequently seen symptomatic giardiasis in such persons.

**Ætiology and pathology**—*Giardia enterica* is a flagellate parasite with a trophozoite and a cystic stage. The former is pear-shaped and dorsally convex, it has a 'sucking disc' in its ventral concavity, and four pairs of flagella, it has a colourless granular cytoplasm, and two nuclei (not seen in the unstained specimen), in size it varies from 10 to 20 $\mu$  in length and from 5 to 15 $\mu$  in breadth, it is actively motile in the freshly passed fluid stool, but soon loses its flagella and motility in a formed or stale stool. The cysts are oval, 8 to 12 $\mu$  in length and 7 to 10 $\mu$  in breadth, they are colourless and have four nuclei and a well defined cyst wall.

The parasite lives and multiplies in the intestinal tract, from the duodenum to the cæcum. Both the cysts and the trophozoites are found in the stools but the trophozoites will be found in larger numbers in samples obtained by duodenal aspiration.

The flagellates become attached to the intestinal mucosa which they irritate, causing it to secrete an excess of mucus. It is also very probable that they affect the function of the mucous membrane and interfere with absorption. A variety of lesions has been attributed to giardia infestation but it seems very doubtful if the parasite can be held solely responsible for any of them. It does not appear to have any invasive properties.

**Symptomatology**—At present the symptomatology is not well defined, as the infection is so frequently associated with other infections, but a large variety of symptoms clear up when the infection disappears under specific treatment, and one is naturally inclined to attribute these to giardiasis. However, it is quite obvious that there are many persons with giardia infection, who suffer no recognizable ill effects.

The most constant symptoms are (a) diarrhoea—the stools are usually loose and watery, but may be definitely fatty, (b) abdominal pain or discomfort, either in the upper segment often associated with flatulence and sometimes with vomiting, and usually accompanied by loss of appetite or in the lower segment, with griping pains usually relieved by defæcation, and (c) irregular fever.

Children also are usually irritable and tire some and develop capricious appetites. A condition very like celiac disease is recognized as being caused by giardiasis and several of the writer's adult patients have shown a condition suggestive of sprue (*qv*) with marked anorexia, a sore tongue, macrocytic anæmia and a fatty diarrhoea with actual increase of total fat in the stools. Specific treatment has caused a rapid disappearance of all the signs and symptoms.



In addition, adult patients often feel definitely ill and weak, and they may exhibit nervous symptoms, such as irritability and anxiety.

Abdominal tenderness is constant in the cases with symptoms, this is usually in the epigastrium, but sometimes in the region of the cæcum where some thickening of the gut can be felt in thin individuals.

**Diagnosis**—The symptoms are too pleomorphic and too vague to allow an unsupported clinical diagnosis. The finding of the flagellate or its cysts in the stool is of course diagnostic of giardiasis, though the symptoms may be due to another cause, but flagellates are not always found, and duodenal aspiration may be advisable in a case under strong suspicion. This procedure is essential, if cure is to be definitely confirmed.

**Treatment**—Of the innumerable treatments advocated none proved really successful, until Brumpt (1937) and Martin (1937) introduced mepacrine (atebrin), which appears to be a specific.

A large percentage of complete cures will be achieved with a course of 0.1 gramme three times a day for five days. Children should be given smaller doses (see p. 101). A second course after an interval of about a week will be necessary in a few cases. If there is any doubt about the cure, it is advisable to give this second course.

### CILIATE DYSENTERY BALANTIDIASIS

Although balantidiasis is a rare infection, there seems no possible question that it occurs and may be serious. Some 250 cases have been recorded.

**Geographical distribution**—Balantidiasis appears to have a universal distribution, but far more cases have been reported in temperate countries than in the tropics. Cases have been reported from most European and Asiatic countries, including both England and India, but it is not common in either, in the case of the latter, this will easily be understood. Two cases have been reported from North America and several from South America and Africa.



Figure 137 *Balantidium coli*

**Occupational incidence**—It occurs in swineherds and pork-butchers and other persons closely associated with pigs.

**Etiology**—*Balantidium coli* is a ciliate protozoa, a natural parasite of pigs, to which it appears to do little harm. It is transmitted to man apparently by food contamination. Experimentally, it is transmitted with great difficulty.

**Pathology**—The parasites invade the mucosa of the large intestine apparently in exactly the same way as does *Entamoeba histolytica*. The ileum has also been involved. Entering the crypts of Lieberkuhn, the parasites secrete a kind of cytotoxin, and penetrate into the submucosa, and thence even into the intestinal lymph nodes. The ulceration produced is similar to that of amœbic dysentery. Perforation has been reported.

**Symptomatology**—This is again indistinguishable from that of amœbic dysentery. The onset is often very insidious, but the condition may develop seriously, and it is usually very persistent. Anæmia is a marked feature and later cachexia develops.

**Diagnosis** will be made only by finding the *Balantidium coli* in the stool. It is a large parasite easily seen with the low-power lens.

**Treatment**—This has not been very satisfactory. Large (dangerous) doses of emetine, gr. 1 daily for 15 to 20 days, have produced a cure in a number of cases, and recently methylene blue—administered by mouth in

2-grain pills and as an enema in a strength of 1 in 3,000—has been used with some success. Drachm doses of carbon tetrachloride have also been used successfully.

**Prognosis**—A number of deaths have been reported. The mortality can be placed at between 10 and 20 per cent.

In some cases, the infection has persisted for from four to fifteen years.

### COCCIDIOSIS

Infections with the coccidium, *Isospora hominis*, are not rare in the tropics and sub-tropics, and are usually associated with sub-acute dysenteric symptoms.

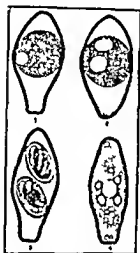


Figure 138 *Isospora hominis*

(Dobell and O'Connor 1921)

- 1 Oocyst with unsegmented protoplasm as usually passed in stools
- 2 Later stage nucleus divided into two
- 3 Fully developed oocyst containing two spores—each containing four sporozoites
- 4 Degenerate oocysts which have failed to develop

**Epidemiology**—The infection has been reported in most countries in the tropics and sub-tropics, but rarely in the temperate zones. The apparently greater frequency in the Mediterranean area probably reflects only the fact that greater attention has been paid to it there. In routine stool examinations in India, it is not such a rare finding that observers think it necessary to report each case. Nine cases have been encountered in the last twenty years at the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine (Das Gupta, 1934).

The majority of the infections reported have apparently been in adults.

**Ætiology and pathology**—The parasite, *Isospora hominis*, infects the small intestine and invades the mucosa. The oocysts, which are found in the stools, have the general appearance of helminthic ova, they are oval, 25 to 32  $\mu$  in length and 12 to 16  $\mu$  in breadth, they are colourless, and consist of a distinct cyst wall, a clear cytoplasm, and a central sporoblast with contained spores; the sporoblast is more or less round and occupies the whole breadth of the parasite.

Infection of man takes place in the oocyst stage by the oral route.

A heavy infection will cause a catarrhal condition of the mucosa rather than ulceration, and will interfere with its functions.

**Symptomatology**—Symptomless infections are not uncommon. Infection is usually associated with mild chronic diarrhoeal symptoms, some malaise and mental depression, loss of appetite and weight, and occasionally epigastric discomfort.

The stools are light-coloured, contain much undigested food, and show a tendency to be fatty.

**Diagnosis** can be made only by finding the oocysts in the stools. The only other characteristic finding, which is almost constant, is Charcot-Leyden crystals.

**Treatment**—No entirely satisfactory treatment has been evolved, but the condition is not usually very persistent. The administration of bismuth salicylate, gr 30, thrice daily and of a two per-cent sodium bicarbonate enema appears to have been one of the most successful procedures.

### HELMINTHIC DIARRHOEAS AND DYSENTERIES

The most important of the helminths *vis à-vis* dysentery are those of the genus *Schistosoma*, but these will be considered when the important

syndrome caused by these parasites is discussed. Diarrhoeal symptoms have been associated with two other trematodes, *Fasciolopsis buski* and *Heterophyes heterophyes*, and two nematodes, *Esophagostomum apistomum* and *Strongyloides stercoralis*.

**Trematode diarrhoea.**—*Fasciolopsis buski* develops in certain species of snail, and thence the cercariae infect the water-chestnut and other aquatic plants which are eaten by man. The infection is common in China and the Far East generally, many infections have been reported in India (Assam). The parasites live in the small intestine, and usually give rise to no symptoms at all when they are present in small numbers, but heavy infections cause a catarrhal condition of the gut which leads to diarrhoea, pain in the abdomen, oedema and ascites, and a serious condition of ill-health, which develops gradually.

Most antihelminthic drugs will effect a cure e.g. carbon tetrachloride or tetrachlorethylene given in doses of 3 or 4 ccm with the usual precautions.

*Heterophyes heterophyes* infests logs, cats and other carnivores, and man. They similarly develop in snails, the cercariae are ingested by fish, and man becomes infected by eating insufficiently cooked fish.

If present in the small intestine in large number, they also produce a catarrhal condition of the mucous membrane. The clinical picture is similar to that associated with *Fasciolopsis* infection.

In the treatment of this infection, most of the ordinary anthelmintics have been tried usually with good effect.

**Nematode diarrhoeas and dysenteries.**—*Esophagostomum apistomum* is a common nematode in monkeys in West Africa, and it occurs also in Asia, it has not been reported in India. The larvae are swallowed, and reach the caecum where they bury themselves in the mucous membrane, and develop. The nodule thus formed bursts into the lumen of the caecum, and the worm attaches itself to the mucous membrane. Secondary infection of the site of the burst nodule causes ulceration, and the worms themselves cause excessive secretion of mucus, so that the symptoms may be either those of dysentery, or simply diarrhoea.

Carbon tetrachloride is recommended as an efficient treatment, but probably other anthelmintics would prove as satisfactory.

*Strongyloides stercoralis*, to which further reference will be made, also causes a diarrhoea.

#### REFERENCES

- |   |    |  |
|---|----|--|
| BRUMPT, L (1937)                        | .. | Traitement Experimental de la Lambliase<br><i>Compt Rend Soc Biol</i> 124, 1040 (Abstract— <i>Trop Dis Bull</i> 1938 35, 592)                  |
| DAS GUPTA B M (1934)                    |    | Observations of a Case of Coccidial Infection in Man ( <i>Isospora belli</i> Wenyon 1923)<br><i>Indian Med Gaz</i> 69, 133                     |
| MARTIN P (1937)                         | .. | Nouveau Traitement de la Lambliase par un Derive d'Acridine<br><i>Rev Méd et Hyg Trop</i> 29, 33 (Abstract— <i>Trop Dis Bull</i> 1938 35, 591) |
| DOBELL CLIFFORD and O'CONNOR F W (1921) | .. | <i>The Intestinal Protozoa of Man</i> John Bale, London  |

The principal micro-organism that is now maintaining the pathological process will probably vary from case to case. Streptococci are usually recovered most readily from the ulcers, but there is still much work to be done on the identification and classification of the flora of these ulcers.

Cultures from the stools may be misleading, and the true culprit is likely to be identified only by taking swabs directly from the ulcers, after colonic lavage, with the aid of the sigmoidoscope. Bagen's diplococcus, which, it is claimed, is frequently present in the 'idiopathic' form, has seldom been identified in the tropics.

The main predisposing factor is of course the damage done to the gut mucous membrane and deeper structures during the primary (specific) ulceration. It is not difficult to understand how such large denuded areas fail to heal whilst in more or less continuous contact with the septic gut contents. However as we know that healing does frequently occur, we must consider why it does not always do so.

The general health of the patient is an important factor; this will often be largely influenced by climatic conditions, associated infections, and, probably above all, his state of nutrition. This latter will often be low, even in the well-to-do patient from long periods of restricted diet.

### PATHOLOGY

The ulcers may be in any part of the colon, but are usually in the sigmoid or rectum. The caecum is the next most common site. The ulcers are usually oval in shape but may be serpiginous. The edge may have a clean cut punched-out appearance, or it may be rounded, hard and fibrous, it very rarely, if ever shows the irregular undermined edge of the extending ulcer. The mucous membrane in the areas between the ulcers is usually healthy.

The ulcers are frequently deep, and there is infiltration of the muscular coats, with interference of the normal muscular action, and thickening of the bowel that can be felt through the abdominal wall. Later, there may be fibrosis and contraction in the deep layers of the intestinal wall, and a whole length of gut may become a rigid tube with a narrow lumen. More superficial scarring may lead to the isolation of areas of mucous membrane, with polypoid formations.

**Blood**—There is no characteristic blood picture. There are two influences, the tendency to microcytic anaemia as a result of repeated blood loss from the ulcers, which may become an important factor, and the tendency to a nutritional macrocytic anaemia, from mal-absorption and/or dietary restriction; patients often develop a para-sprue (qv) condition. However, in the uncomplicated ulcerative colitis, the haemoglobin may be almost normal. There is often a slight leucocytosis.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Clinical history**—The condition may develop after a single attack of dysentery, but more frequently it is established after a series of attacks, most of which may have been relatively mild, and the usual history is that they were inadequately treated either because the patient did not attach sufficient importance to them, or because of the circumstances in which they occurred.

The onset may however be entirely spontaneous and without any previous history of bowel disorder.

**Symptoms**—When the condition is fully established, the patient will complain of more or less continuous discomfort in the abdomen, which is less insistent after a period of rest and dietary restriction, and is increased

# CHRONIC POST-DYSENTERIC ULCERATIVE COLITIS

	PAGE
DISCUSSION .. .. .	456
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	456
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	457
Blood .. .. .	457
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	457
Clinical history .. .. .	457
Onset .. .. .	457
Symptoms .. .. .	457
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	458
Clinical—Stools—Sigmoidoscopic—Opaque enema ..	458
TREATMENT .. .. .	458
Colonic irrigation .. .. .	459
Diet .. .. .	459
General and symptomatic .. .. .	459
Progress .. .. .	459
PROGNOSIS .. .. .	460

**Discussion.**—Ulcerative colitis is not an exclusively tropical condition, and, in fact, has received far more attention in cosmopolitan medical literature than in that section of medical literature that deals mainly with tropical diseases. There has been much inconclusive discussion on the ætiology of so-called 'idiopathic' ulcerative colitis; we are little concerned with this, for, whether or not bacillary dysentery is a common cause of the ulcerative colitis of temperate countries, certainly a chronic ulcerative colitis is not an uncommon sequel to both bacillary and amœbic dysentery in the tropics. This ulcerative condition is distinguished from chronic amœbic dysentery and chronic bacillary dysentery—if such a condition really exists—by the fact that the primary causal organism has disappeared, or at least is no longer responsible for the main ulcerative condition.

**Ætiology.**—As has been indicated above, the condition we are considering here is not now maintained by either *Entamœba histolytica*, or one of the recognized dysentery bacilli, and the finding of a small number of organisms of either of these genera in the stools does not necessarily indicate that the main pathological process is maintained by them. For example, in bacillary dysentery (*q.v.*) a carrier state occurs in which small retention cysts containing dysentery bacilli burst periodically into the lumen of the gut; this state of affairs may be co-existent with, but be entirely independent of, a chronic ulcerative condition of the bowel. Similarly, a 'carrier' type of amœbic infection may exist in one part of the gut, when elsewhere there is a non-specific ulceration.

The principal micro-organism that is now maintaining the pathological process will probably vary from case to case. Streptococci are usually recovered most readily from the ulcers, but there is still much work to be done on the identification and classification of the flora of these ulcers.

Cultures from the stools may be misleading, and the true culprit is likely to be identified only by taking swabs directly from the ulcers, after colonic lavage, with the aid of the sigmoidoscope. Barger's diplococcus, which, it is claimed, is frequently present in the 'idiopathic' form, has seldom been identified in the tropics.

The main predisposing factor is of course the damage done to the gut mucous membrane and deeper structures during the primary (specific) ulceration. It is not difficult to understand how such large denuded areas fail to heal whilst in more or less continuous contact with the septic gut contents. However, as we know that healing does frequently occur, we must consider why it does not always do so.

The general health of the patient is an important factor, this will often be largely influenced by climatic conditions associated infections, and, probably above all, his state of nutrition. This latter will often be low, even in the well-to-do patient from long periods of restricted diet.

### PATHOLOGY

The ulcers may be in any part of the colon, but are usually in the sigmoid or rectum. The caecum is the next most common site. The ulcers are usually oval in shape, but may be serpiginous. The edges may have a clean-cut punched-out appearance, or it may be rounded, hard and fibrous, it very rarely, if ever, shows the irregular undermined edge of the extending ulcer. The mucous membrane in the areas between the ulcers is usually healthy.

The ulcers are frequently deep, and there is infiltration of the muscular coats, with interference of the normal muscular action, and thickening of the bowel that can be felt through the abdominal wall. Later, there may be fibrosis and contraction in the deep layers of the intestinal wall, and a whole length of gut may become a rigid tube with a narrow lumen. More superficial scarring may lead to the isolation of areas of mucous membrane with polypoid formations.

**Blood**—There is no characteristic blood picture. There are two influences, the tendency to microcytic anaemia as a result of repeated blood loss from the ulcers, which may become an important factor, and the tendency to a nutritional macrocytic anaemia, from mal-absorption and/or dietary restriction, patients often develop a para-sprue (*qv*) condition. However, in the uncomplicated ulcerative colitis, the haemoglobin may be almost normal. There is often a slight leucocytosis.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Clinical history**—The condition may develop after a single attack of dysentery, but more frequently it is established after a series of attacks, most of which may have been relatively mild, and the usual history is that they were inadequately treated either because the patient did not attach sufficient importance to them, or because of the circumstances in which they occurred.

The onset may however be entirely spontaneous and without any previous history of bowel disorder.

**Symptoms**—When the condition is fully established the patient will complain of more or less continuous discomfort in the abdomen, which is less insistent after a period of rest and dietary restriction, and is increased

after dietary (or alcohol) indiscretions exposure to climatic extremes especially cold and subjection to physical or more rarely mental strain. This discomfort is usually on the left side, over the descending and sigmoid colon but it may be over the cecum or at the flexures. The pain may be partly relieved by defecation or passage of flatus, but it rapidly returns. It is more noticeable shortly after food is taken.

The patient is always in a state of sub health and is easily tired during exacerbation he feels definitely ill. He is often slightly anæmic has an unhealthy 'muddy' complexion and his skin is inelastic. He is often considerably emaciated with a thin abdominal wall through which the thickened bowel can be felt easily. There are points in the abdomen which are constantly tender.

A low pyrexia is common, this will amount to definite fever now and then but usually the evening temperature is between 99° and 100°F.

The number of stools varies, but except during the occasional periods of constipation they are seldom less than three, or more than five or six. They are watery or soft and 'porridgy', but very seldom formed. They may show blood and usually there is mucus or pus. After a period of constipation, there is usually much blood stained mucus in the outside of the formed or semi formed stool.

A very large number of secondary symptoms of an allergic, a toxic and a neuroathenic nature are attributed to chronic bowel ulceration and there is undoubtedly a causal relationship between many of these and ulcerative colitis. Patients with this condition are very liable to be hypochondriacal and to concentrate entirely on their bowel condition often adopting a very unsuitable dietary regime of their own invention.

**Diagnosis**—It is usually possible to make a provisional clinical diagnosis from the history and examination of the patient which are frequently very typical.

The stools will often contain blood mucus and pus and under the microscope they will show a cellular exudate and red cells.

Sigmoidoscopic examination is however, almost essential for satisfactory confirmation of the diagnosis. Typical ulcers will be seen in a relatively healthy mucous membrane some of these will probably be healed others breaking down. They usually bleed readily.

The opaque enema (by the use of this well diluted barium admixed slowly under low pressure into the previously prepared bowel) shows diminution or loss of haustration of the colon, at a later stage the colon develops a smooth outline like that of a bicycle tube. There may be local areas of narrowing. Remnants of barium may be visible in the deeper ulcers after its evacuation. A ray examination also shows the extent of the bowel involvement and whether it is generalized or segmental.

#### TREATMENT

Once the diagnosis has been made the patient should be made to realize that the treatment is bound to be very prolonged and needs his (or her) full co operation and patience.

He should rest in bed as long as there is fever or dysenteric symptoms. Later he may be allowed a little licence for example to bathe himself and to sit in a long chair.

Preliminary administration of a sodium sulphate mixture 2 dr. four hourly from 6 a.m. to 6 p.m. for a few days will usually help to clear the large bowel of mucus and debris. It also frequently brings down the temperature. During this period the diet should be restricted to fluids e.g. milk which may be citrated or peptonized butter milk chicken broth and fruit juice. Sometimes considerable improvement can be effected by

giving by mouth some of the recognized arsenic or iodine preparations used in the treatment of amœbic dysentery (*qv*), and recently we have had several cases that have responded to sulphapyridine, this drug possibly knocking out the secondary streptococcal infection, but we have had many more failures than successes with it. However, no reliance can be placed in oral medication, and bowel washes are usually necessary.

**Colonic irrigation**—Many drugs have been recommended, *eusol*, *chinosphon*, *vioform*, sodium sulphapyridine, and several organic silver preparations, but the writer has found silver nitrate as satisfactory as any of these more expensive drugs.

The medicated enema must be preceded by a sodium-bicarbonate bowel wash. A pint of warm two-per-cent bicarbonate solution is run in slowly, and the patient told to retain it for a few minutes. He is then encouraged to evacuate this completely. The medicated enema is then given, six ounces should be given at first, but later the amount is increased up to half-a-pint, if the distal portion of the colon only is affected and, if the higher portions of the bowel are to be reached the amount must be slowly increased up to a pint, and the patient placed for a short time in the knee-elbow position in order to help the fluid to reach the proximal portions of the colon. The bowel washes should be run in through a soft catheter under low pressure (18 inches to two feet of water).

The strength of the silver nitrate solution should be 1 in 1,000 at first, and it should be slowly increased by stages to 1 in 750, 1 in 500, 1 in 400, 1 in 300 and eventually 1 in 250. If on any particular day the enema is very painful, it should be washed out with normal saline.

The patient should be encouraged to retain the medicated enema as long as possible up to five hours. These washes should be given daily, or, if they appear to exhaust the patient too much on alternate days, for several weeks, until all the symptoms have subsided and the returning fluid is entirely free from pus and red cells.

**Diet**—This is a matter of the greatest importance. After the first few days of treatment, during which the diet should be mainly fluid, as suggested above, the patient must be got on to a high-calorie, well balanced residue-free diet, by rapid stages. The diet must contain adequate protein in some easily digestible form, and all the vitamins and minerals, but it must include only the minimum of residue. Plenty of fluid and adequate salt must be taken. A suitable diet has been suggested above (see p. 420).

**General and symptomatic treatment**—The bowels must be kept regular by means of *ispaghula*, or some similar substance. Purgatives should if possible be avoided, but if they are necessary, only the mildest vegetable laxatives should be taken.

The anemia should be treated with suitable hæmatinics as indicated by the blood counts, but very often it will be advisable to give both liver and iron. In severe cases a blood transfusion will often initiate a period of improvement. Sedatives, analgesics, and antispasmodics may be required, it may be advisable to give a bromide mixture for a week or so at the outset, and at night, in order to ensure a good night's rest, codeine or opium, the latter in the form of Dover's powder combined with bismuth salicylate.

**Progress**—Except in the worst cases, all the symptoms will rapidly subside, the general appearance of the patient will improve, and he will put on weight. If the ulcers are at the lower end of the colon, the progress can be watched by means of the sigmoidoscope.

The principal danger will come from stopping both active and dietetic treatment too soon, even after an apparent complete cure, a relapse is very liable to occur unless great care is taken, regarding the diet in particular, for months or even years.



On the other hand, if the patient does not improve after two or three months' treatment, and after several changes of bowel wash, surgical treatment will have to be considered. Two operations are recommended, appendicostomy and ileostomy; by the former, a means of giving efficient bowel washes is provided, and by the latter the faecal matter from the upper bowel is side-tracked as well. The latter is undoubtedly more efficient, but the former is simpler to do, and much simpler to undo when it is no longer required. Care should be taken not to resort to surgery too late, because once the large intestine has become fibrotic, it will contract with disuse, and become a hard narrow tube that will never function again properly, and a permanent colostomy will be the result.

**Prognosis.**—This will depend on how early the treatment is undertaken, and on the vigour and skill with which it is prosecuted; this in turn will depend on the co-operation of the patient, and on the circumstances in which he is placed.

If proper treatment is undertaken early, cure should always be possible, but many neglected patients have passed into a stage of chronic invalidism, while others have gone rapidly down hill, and have died of exhaustion or intercurrent disease within a few months.

**Addendum.**—Stannus (1943)\* has developed a very attractive theory on the aetiology of sprue. He considers that the primary 'physiological lesion' in sprue is a failure in phosphorylation of both fatty acid and glucose, and that this is determined by a defect in the complex enzyme reaction which effects this. This defect he believes is due to a dietary deficiency of certain vitamins of the B-complex, possibly including pyridoxin (B<sub>6</sub>) and he considers that the success of the liver diet is due to the provision of these deficient food factors. The regional nature of the disease he suggests may be due to the differences in the fatty-acid composition of the fats in different countries. The success of the fruit diet, especially of strawberry and banana, he attributes to their relatively high protein content and to the fact that the sugar is in the form of fructose which unlike glucose, does not require phosphorylation for its utilization.

The present writer's hypothesis, that behind the aetiology of sprue there is an inborn error or 'weakness' of metabolism, seems to tie in well with Dr Stannus's hypothesis, except that in the former there is less emphasis on the specific dietary deficiency and more on the constitutional factor.

\* Stannus, H S (1943) Sprue *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg* 36, 123

# SPRUE

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	462
DEFINITION	462
HISTORICAL ..	462
EPIDEMIOLOGY ..	462
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	463
<i>Age and sex—Race—Climate and locality—Seasonal</i>	463
<i>Other epidemiological observations</i>	463
<i>Time relation to tropical residence</i>	463
ETIOLOGY .. .. .	463
(a) <i>The infection theory</i>	463
(i) <i>Monilia—(ii) Streptococcal infections—(iii) Some other specific organism</i>	
(b) <i>Calcium deficiency</i>	464
(c) <i>Simple failure of absorption</i>	464
(d) <i>Food deficiency</i>	464
(e) <i>Metabolic failure</i>	464
<i>Discussion</i>	465
<i>Precipitating factors</i>	466
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	466
<i>Morbid anatomy</i>	466
<i>Blood</i> ..	466
<i>Gastric analysis</i>	467
<i>Stools</i> ..	467
<i>Technique of fat estimation</i>	
SYMPTOMATOLOGY . ..	468
<i>History—Symptoms—Tongue—Abdomen</i>	468
<i>Röntgenological findings</i>	469
<i>Progress</i> . ..	469
DIAGNOSIS .	469
<i>Differential diagnosis</i>	469
TREATMENT .. .	470
<i>Introduction</i>	470
<i>Diets</i> .. .. .	471
<i>Rationale—Milk diets—Mixed diet—Meat diet</i>	
<i>Routine</i> ..	474
<i>Symptomatic treatment</i>	474
<i>Convalescence</i>	475
PREVENTION .	475
PROGNOSIS .	475

**Introduction**—Most of the early writers on sprue emphasized the fact that the disease was confined to Europeans or persons of mixed European and Asiatic descent. It has long been recognized that the incidence in different racial groups is in inverse ratio to the degree of pigmentation of their skins. There is, however, a natural tendency to report the rare case, so that the exceptional cases of sprue in Indians or other indigenous inhabitants of the tropics have received greater publicity than the ordinary run of cases in Europeans, with the natural consequence that the undoubted racial predisposition to this disease is not receiving sufficient emphasis in current medical literature. The writer has not yet seen a typical case of sprue in an Indian, though he believes that typical cases do occur amongst the fairer, northern Indians.

There occurs, however, commonly amongst Indians a now-well-recognized syndrome of macrocytic anaemia, nutritional in origin, that is often associated with a chronic watery diarrhoea. In some of these cases, there are certain signs and symptoms that are also typical features of the sprue syndrome, for example, emaciation and a sore, red and glazed tongue. In fact many of these cases in Indians would pass as modified sprue, and are often diagnosed as such.

There is also a condition of chronic watery diarrhoea, with perhaps a slightly sore tongue but not first without macrocytic anaemia, that occurs amongst both Europeans and Indians and is usually referred to as 'pre-sprue'. The name is not a good one, as, even if one does not take the view that true sprue never occurs in Indians, the name implies that sprue must inevitably follow unless the condition is cured. This is not the case, for, although many patients with sprue give a history of previous diarrhoea, this diarrhoeal condition referred to here may continue for many months and even years without the patient's developing further typical symptoms of sprue, but emaciation, a sore tongue and a macrocytic anaemia are common sequelae, so that the condition develops into the malnutritional syndrome described above as commonly occurring in Indians. For this condition the writer has for some years used the word 'para-sprue'.

While there are undoubtedly all degrees of conditions between (a) nutritional macrocytic anaemia, with or without diarrhoea, (b) para sprue, and (c) true sprue, the writer believes that they are not just stages of the same condition, but that para-sprue and sprue have different aetiologies, just as they have distinguishable clinical pictures. The conditions are therefore described separately.

**Definition**—Sprue, or psilosis, is a diarrhoeal condition of uncertain aetiology, characterized by emaciation, the passage of large, light-coloured and frothy stools with a high fat content, flatulent dyspepsia, a sore tongue, a low glucose-tolerance curve, and eventually a marked macrocytic anaemia occurring amongst people who live, or have lived, in certain tropical countries.

**Historical**—Early historical records of this still not very clear-cut syndrome are not very clear and it is obvious that many that are quoted might equally well refer to other diarrhoeal diseases. Manson Bahr (1939) considers that the descriptions of Ketelaer in 1669 and of Hillary in 1766 undoubtedly refer to sprue. The name was first used in the descriptions of Manson in Amoy and van der Burg in Java in 1879 and 1880 respectively.

Recent contributions to our knowledge of this disease have been more destructive than constructive for example Thaysen (1931) and later Mackie and Fairley (1934) showed that our previous conception of the morbid anatomy of the disease was entirely erroneous.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—'Sprue' without any qualification usually means 'tropical sprue', but there is little question that there is an indis-

tinguishable condition which occurs amongst persons who have lived all their lives in a temperate climate, to this the name 'non-tropical sprue' is usually given. Some 170 cases of non-tropical sprue have been described, these reports have come from several countries, mainly the U.S.A. and Great Britain.

Tropical sprue is most commonly associated with residence in China, India, Ceylon, Malaya, the East and West Indies, southern U.S.A., Central and South America, southern Italy, and Queensland, that is to say it is for the most part truly tropical, but a few sub-tropical areas are included, and the disease is rare in tropical Africa. Its realm lies between 40°N and 20°S.

**Age and sex**—It is more common in females than males, and is essentially a disease of middle age, but it may occur in young people and even in children.

**Race**—The negative correlation between skin pigmentation and sprue has been mentioned above. The disease is commonest amongst European and fair Eurasians, it is uncommon amongst Chinese, Malays, and fair northern Indians, it is very rare in dark southern and eastern Indians, and it is apparently unknown to negroes.

**Climate and locality**—It occurs mainly but not entirely in hot, damp, coastal climates. Instances have been reported of residents in desert areas getting the disease, and a number of cases have occurred amongst sailors who have spent little time ashore.

It is regional as well as climatic, that is to say, sprue is often common in one and rare in another of two places that appear to be climatically identical. It often follows long or frequent hill residence and repeated attacks of hill diarrhoea.

**Seasonal**—The onset is usually after or during the rains.

**Other epidemiological observations**—Sprue houses, in which a succession of residents have suffered from sprue, have been reported, and this has led to theories regarding its infectious nature, also, husband and wife not infrequently both suffer from the disease. It has been specifically associated with heavy white-ant infestation of the house, and with dry rot, neither being very unusual associations in the tropics.

**Time relation to tropical residence**—It is usually associated with long tropical residence, and it is common in the domiciled European in tropical countries. Many cases have been reported amongst retired tropical sojourners, several years after they have returned to a temperate climate, this has been referred to as *latent sprue*. On the other hand, it is by no means uncommon for sprue to develop after a very short residence.

### ETIOLOGY

There are numerous theories regarding the aetiology of this disease—

(a) **The infection theory**—There are still a large number of writers who believe that the evidence is in favour of some infective organism being the cause of the disease. This school is at present represented by Manson-Bahr (*loc cit*) who gives the following reasons for his belief—

- (i) Sprue has a definite incubation period of usually three to six months after residence in the tropics.
- (ii) The geographical distribution is patchy and peculiar.
- (iii) Evidence has been collected that several members of the same family living under the same conditions may contract the disease.
- (iv) Clinical observations suggest that sprue is a specific inflammation ranging through the intestinal tract and affecting principally the process of assimilation and that it is brought about by some specific virus affecting the mucous membranes. It may be assumed that this virus is capable of lying dormant in the tissues for a number of years and may then be roused into activity by some unknown factor.

There are certain points in the epidemiology of this disease which are hard to explain except on the infection theory, but the two main criticisms of the above-quoted points are that the incubation period of sprue is far from constant, and that all recent pathological evidence is against there being a specific, or in fact any other, inflammatory condition of the whole intestinal tract.

The organisms under suspicion can be grouped as follows —

(i) *Monilia* *Monilia pilosus*, or *Parasaccharomyces ashfordi*, has been the organism mainly suspected. This theory was supported by Kohlbrügge, Ashford (1929), and Manson-Bahr, but it is now generally considered that their presence is simply a matter of the suitability of the bowel contents in sprue as a medium for these organisms. It has been shown that this and other moniliae are present in the bowel under normal conditions, and that in any diarrhoeal condition they may become more abundant (Mackie and Chitre, 1928, and Pasricha and Lal, 1939).

(ii) *Streptococcal infections* Rogers was one of the earliest exponents of this theory. Haemolytic streptococci are usually obtainable from the stool and mouth, but are probably secondary invaders.

(iii) *Some other specific organism* as yet unidentified, possibly a virus.

(b) *Calcium deficiency* — The total calcium is below normal in about half the cases, but the more marked deviation from normal is the reduction in ionic calcium, which was at one time thought to be due to dysfunction of the parathyroid, possibly caused by excessive strain on its detoxicating functional activity.

It is obvious that this low calcium content of the blood which is shown clinically by tetany, a not uncommon symptom, is only a small part of the general picture and is almost certainly due to failure of calcium absorption since calcium forms an insoluble compound with the soaps in the intestinal canal and possibly to some extent to failure of calcium metabolism resulting from the general endocrine imbalance.

(c) *Simple failure of absorption* due to degenerative and atrophic changes in the intestinal mucosa. Recent work has shown that there are no constant histological changes in the mucosa of the gut in sprue.

(d) *Food deficiency* — Cantlie (1913), Elders (1919) and McCarrison (1919) amongst others suggested that it was a food deficiency, vitamin A and B complex and certain specific amino-acids being specially selected and Castle and Rhoads (1932) considered that it was due to the absence of the extrinsic haemopoietic factor in the diet or of the intrinsic factor in the gastric secretion, or to the failure of absorption of the combination of these factors by the intestinal mucosa.

Against this simple food deficiency theory is the fact that many persons who have lived on an excellent and well balanced diet have developed sprue, that the diet of persons of the class in which sprue most commonly occurs is not on the whole particularly deficient, and that, though sprue may be associated with other deficiency conditions there are many population groups on notoriously poor diets whose individual members suffer from various deficiency diseases but these seldom include sprue.

(e) *Metabolic failure* \* — Finally, Farley has suggested that it is a metabolic failure a functional rather than a mechanical failure to absorb and to utilize both fats and carbohydrates.

---

\* Recently this theory has been developed and elaborated. Two important papers on this subject by Hurst (1942) and Leitner (1942) have been published. The former has given an excellent review of the subject, he emphasizes the important known facts regarding the aetiology of the disease and has suggested that the main failure is in paralysis of Meissner's plexus which controls the muscularis mucosae with subsequent

*Physiology of fat and carbohydrate absorption*—Fat is absorbed in two ways,—(a) Unsplit fat is absorbed in the form of chylomicrons. In this form the fat goes to the central lacteal of the villi whence it is pumped by the rhythmical contractions of the muscularis mucosae into the main lacteals. It eventually reaches the systemic blood. The pumping action is controlled by Meissner's (submucous) plexus which in turn it is believed is controlled by an intestinal hormone (villikinine) which is extracted from the intestinal mucosa by hydrochloric acid. (b) Split fat—split into glycerol and fatty acids by the action of pancreatic lipase in the presence of bile in the intestinal canal—goes to the radicle of the portal circulation whence it is carried to the liver. The fatty acid reaches the blood mainly in the form of phospholipins after undergoing in the cells of the mucosa the complicated process of phosphorylation in which phosphoric acid, choline, vitamins, possibly niacin and pyridoxin and probably certain endocrines play a part.

Carbohydrates are broken down by the various digestive juices to monosaccharides; they are then absorbed by the intestinal mucosa and go to the portal radicles. The process of absorption of glucose is apparently not one of simple diffusion but includes an intermediate process of phosphorylation also.

**Discussion**—The writer believes that there is considerable evidence that sprue is caused by an inborn error of metabolism which normally remains latent but becomes patent when the organism is subjected to certain strains and stresses, especially those associated with tropical residence.

The nature of the disease is far more that of a metabolic disorder than of an infection; it is peculiar to certain racial types and, once the defect is unmasked, it shows a marked tendency to relapse, and permanent recovery without change of habits and/or environment is unusual.

This 'error' leads primarily to a failure of absorption in the small intestine, of fats, vitamins and minerals, and to a less extent of carbohydrates, the fatty and fermenting stools and the emaciation are due to failure of absorption of fat and carbohydrate but all other symptoms are due to vitamin and mineral deficiencies as a direct result of malabsorption or deflection, of these elements. The syndrome of tropical sprue is probably identical with that of coeliac disease, except that the latter becomes patent earlier in life and is not necessarily associated with tropical residence, and with that of non-tropical sprue, which, though the evidence of the 'error' appears in later life, does not need the excessive strain of tropical conditions to bring it to the surface. The degree of the error is thus greatest in coeliac disease, less in non tropical sprue, and least in tropical sprue, the response to treatment is in the reverse order.

Sprue is similar to pernicious anaemia mainly in that the latter is also an inborn error which only becomes apparent in later life, but a very different portion of the intestinal tract is affected. The symptoms common to these two conditions are due to 'haemopoietin' deficiency, in pernicious anaemia on account of the absence of intrinsic factor, and in sprue on account of failure of absorption of the combined intrinsic and extrinsic factors, or to deflection of the latter.

In sprue, there are often pellagra like symptoms. The most important cause of pellagra is niacin (nicotinic acid) deficiency, this may be due to an actual deficiency of niacin in the food to its neutralization or deflection by porphyrins, or to a failure of absorption through some intestinal defect. This intestinal defect in pellagra may also be of a metabolic nature and/or caused by endocrine imbalance, for example, the writer recently had a persistently relapsing case of pellagra in which there was thyroid deficiency and in which the pellagra was cured by thyroid extract without the addition

---

failure of the pumping action of the villi. The latter's paper is also full of suggestive observations but his conclusions fail to carry conviction because they appear to depend largely on the assumption that achlorhydria is a constant—or at least a very common—finding in sprue in ours and other's experience some hydrochloric acid is secreted in about three-quarters of the cases of sprue. In pellagra however we have found almost constant achlorhydria.

of niacin. The pellagra-like symptoms of sprue are due to failure of absorption of the vitamin-B<sub>2</sub> complex which includes niacin.

The populations that suffer from pellagra seldom suffer from true sprue, and, though the two diseases are sometimes associated in the same person, they are nevertheless two distinct diseases, and probably have totally different etiologies.

The association with dysentery (even if it bears statistical examination which seems probable, though it must be remembered that dysentery is a very common tropical disease) may be a partial correlation due to the fact that a low gastric acidity, which is part of the sprue syndrome, predisposes to bowel infection. Further, dysentery is probably an important precipitating factor, in that it interferes mechanically with nutrition, especially in the acute bacillary form in which very rapid passage through the small intestine is the rule.

Vedder (1940) has suggested that the error may be associated with the anterior pituitary. It is not very clear exactly why Vedder has suggested the anterior pituitary, except that it is a 'master gland' and controls the function of several other glands, especially the thyroid and adrenals, and, in our present state of knowledge, the writer feels that it would be better to postulate endocrine imbalance rather than any specific dysfunction.

What remain to be discussed are the precipitating factors associated with tropical residence, these probably include a hot damp climate in which there is nearly always hyperæmia of the skin with relative visceral ischæmia, a monotonous ill-balanced diet rich in carbohydrates and poor in good protein, vitamins, and minerals, and debilitating infections, particularly malaria and those associated with the gastro intestinal tract.

### PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy**—The heart is small and shows brown atrophy. The liver, spleen, and kidneys are small, a 20 to 30 per cent decrease in weight sometimes being found.

There are no specific histological changes in any part of the gastro-intestinal tract. In the duodenum and jejunum, there is flattening of the valvula conniventes, and general thinning of the mucous membrane, submucosa and muscular coats, through wasting of the last-named, and dilatation of the gut.

The desquamation that has been described is almost certainly a post-mortem change, and any ulceration is only incidental and not a part of the specific pathological picture. The mucous membrane is, however, usually coated with viscid mucus.

There is atrophy of the mucosa of the tongue, often associated with, and disguised by œdema, loss of submucous tissue, thinning of the mucous membrane and flattening or loss of the papillæ. The mucous membrane is thus easily damaged, with resultant general soreness and aphthous ulcers.

The bone-marrow may show a megaloblastic hyperplasia, but this is not a constant finding and will seldom be found in those cases in which the anæmia is normocytic, post-mortem, the marrow shows, in addition to the usual hyperplasia a gelatinous appearance, which is often found in malnutrition conditions and is probably due to specific starvation.

Suprarenal atrophy and degenerative changes in the pancreas are also described.

**Blood**—There is a decrease in fat to 0.4 g (normal = 0.6 g) per 100 c cm, and in the calcium which is usually about 7 to 9 mg. Cholesterol is often reduced to 70 mg.

The blood glucose curve, after 50 grammes of glucose by mouth, normally rises to 30 to 50 milligrammes per 100 c cm above the fasting

level at the end of one hour, 30 milligrammes may be looked upon as the low limit of normality. In sprue, the rise is usually less than 30 mg, and in an appreciable percentage of cases is less than 10 mg.

On the other hand, after intravenous glucose (50 grammes), the curve rises to 400 mg or so, and remains high for much longer than in the normal person. This indicates a poor absorption of carbohydrates and a hypo-insulinaemia, probably as a result of carbohydrate starvation.

The van den Bergh (indirect) reaction is usually slightly above normal, and the urobilin in the urine is increased.

Quite a marked degree of anaemia is the rule, most well-developed cases showing less than 3,000,000 red cells per cmm. While, in a typical case, a macrocytic anaemia is found, this is not constant, only 61 per cent of Manson-Bahr's series had a colour index above 1. However, a true microcytic anaemia is uncommon, and when it occurs it must be attributable to some exceptional secondary cause (i.e. it cannot be accounted for simply by the failure of iron absorption).

There is seldom a high megaloblast percentage in the sternum puncture.

**Gastric analysis**—Free acid is usually present, but the acid curve is low. Fairley (1930) found achlorhydria in 14 of 44 cases. Hanes (1942) found only 21 per cent histamine-fast achlorhydria, we have found a similar percentage.

**Stools**—The first stool in the morning is nearly always bulky, pale and frothy, for the rest of the day, the stools are pale and fluid, but occasionally normal in appearance. The white appearance is not due to absence of urobilinogen, but to its conversion into leucobilin by the action of intestinal bacteria.

Normally, the total fat is 10 to 25 per cent of the weight of the dry stool, of this two-thirds is split fat. This split fat is found in the stool as fatty acid or combined as soapy fat. One-third remains as neutral fat.

In sprue, in 80 per cent of cases the fat is over 25 per cent and it may be 60 per cent\*, two-thirds of this is split, but even more may be split, so that neutral fat to split fat may be 1 to 3 or even 5. The fat content of the stool is to a large extent dependent on the fat content of the diet, so that a standard diet should be consumed for several days before the test, a diet containing not more than 100 grammes of fat should be aimed at.

The important point is that, though the pancreas is doing its work, fatty acids are not being absorbed and utilized.

\* Estimation of fat in stools—There is no bedside method for the differential estimation of the fat content of a stool. This is necessary if the diagnosis between sprue and pancreatic disease has to be made but in most circumstances the estimation of the total fat will give all the information necessary. The following method advocated by Hanes (1942) is relatively simple and apparently accurate.

**Method**—The stool sample is mixed very thoroughly with distilled water to the consistency of thick soup, it is then strained through a fine sieve, it is again mixed thoroughly and two portions are taken. (1) One is weighed dried and again weighed and the percentage of solids thus ascertained. (2) The other is weighed and the total fat in it is extracted and weighed and (3) from these two figures the proportion of total fat to total solids is calculated.

**Reagents**—9N sulphuric acid (approximately), 95 per cent ethyl alcohol ethyl ether B.P. petroleum ether B.P.

**Technique**—(1) On an analytical balance weigh to milligrammes a 5 to 10 g sample in a tared 50 ccm pyrex beaker. Dry in an oven at approximately 115°C for about three hours. This will give the dry weight of stool and can be carried on during the fat extraction which is carried out on another sample as follows—

(2) At the same time weigh out to milligrammes a 3 to 5 g sample of the wet well mixed stool directly into the bottom of a 50 ccm round bottom narrow neck centrifuge tube taking care to keep material from the sides of tube. Add 1 ccm of 9N sulphuric acid and make to approximately 5 ccm with water. Add to this



## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Patients often give a history of an attack of dysentery which is followed by troublesome diarrhœa, for which they have received a variety of treatments with correspondingly varied results. Amongst these treatments is always included a long period of restricted dietary. On the other hand, the onset is quite frequently unassociated with previous bowel trouble.

The onset may be slow and mild, mild but insidiously progressive, or rapid and severe.

**Symptoms.**—There is general lassitude and weakness, soreness of the mouth and dysphagia, particularly for hot food or spices, indigestion and meteorism but seldom vomiting. There is morning diarrhœa, large frothy and bulky stools constantly, with occasional attacks of loose stools throughout the day (but the stools after the first are often formed).

There is both mental and bodily irritability, and often neurasthenia; tetany, cramps, and muscular twitchings, and paresthesias are not uncommon.

The appetite is usually poor, but occasionally the patient is ravenous, with disastrous results.

In the well-developed case, the patient has a sallow muddy complexion and a parchment-like skin with patchy pigmentation on different parts of the body, e.g. the malar eminences, forehead, buttocks, etc., the nails are brittle and the patient is emaciated and anæmic. The anæmia may be very prominent and many of the symptoms may be attributable to this. A low irregular fever is not uncommon, but is not part of the syndrome.

The tongue has a characteristic appearance; at first it is red and sore, the mucous membrane is thickened, œdematous, and folded, then later it is red and smooth with loss of papillæ, aphthous ulcers form on the frenum and edge of the tongue and in the mouth generally. If a piece of filter paper or handkerchief is applied to the tongue, normally it will leave a matt surface, but in sprue the tongue will remain shiny as if still wet.

There is the characteristic tumid lower segment of the abdomen, with the thin abdominal wall distended and drum-like. Peristaltic movements

an equal volume of 95 per cent ethyl alcohol. Heat in a boiling water-bath for two minutes. Cool thoroughly under running water. Add 15 ccm of ethyl ether, stopper with cork stopper, and shake vigorously. Add 15 ccm of petroleum ether, stopper, and shake vigorously. Centrifuge at low speed for three minutes. Transfer the clear supernatant fluid to a shallow-bottom, 50 ccm, conical centrifuge tube. Evaporate the ether cautiously by heating the tube in a small beaker of hot water, taking precautions to prevent bumping. For this purpose a small special stirring rod, with a curved, beaded tip, is placed in the tube. Repeat the extraction of the alcoholic stool mixture 4 or 5 times, using 15 ccm portions of ethyl ether and petroleum ether each time as before, and evaporating the supernatant fluid cautiously after each extraction.

The residue from the extractions remaining in the conical centrifuge tube is dried by heating the tube in boiling water-bath for ten minutes, making sure that no alcohol, ether, or water remains in the tube. Cool and add 30 ccm of petroleum ether, washing down the stirring rod and the sides of tube, and stirring up the residue well. Centrifuge at low speed. Transfer the clear supernatant fluid to a tared 50 ccm Erlenmeyer flask. Evaporate the petroleum ether slowly by heating cautiously on a steam bath. Repeat this extraction with 30 ccm portions of petroleum ether four times transferring the supernatant fluid to the 50 ccm Erlenmeyer flask, and evaporating off the petroleum ether each time. After the last evaporation no petroleum ether should remain.

Dry the flask on the outside and place this flask and the beaker from (1) containing the oven-dried sample of stool, in a vacuum desiccator for one hour. Weigh the beaker to milligrammes and the flask to tenths of milligrammes, using an analytical

## (3) Calculation —

$$\frac{(\text{gm of stool before drying}) \times (\text{gm of fat in flask}) \times (100)}{(\text{gm of dried stool}) \times (\text{gm of stool taken for fat extraction})} = \text{per cent fat in dried stool.}$$

may be visible, there are borborygmi, and the liver dullness is diminished, this is due to an actual decrease and to the general distension of the intestines

There is usually oedema of the legs, and often loss of knee jerks

**Röntgenological findings**—The normal feathery or herring bone appearance of the upper part of the small intestine will be absent, and there are irregular local dilatations which suggest loss of tone, yet the bowel usually empties rapidly, the cælon is reached in three hours, and the small intestine empties in six hours. The large intestine usually empties rapidly also, but there may be obstinate atæsis here

**Progress**—The condition progresses steadily if rigorous treatment is not undertaken. With half-hearted treatment there may be periods of remission, but eventually symptoms will recur and the disease progress. Death is due to exhaustion and intercurrent disease

The condition may improve and remain latent for some time, and then relapse after one or two years, but sometimes after a longer period

### DIAGNOSIS

There are naturally differences of opinion regarding the criteria for the diagnosis of sprue. The fully-developed case of sprue will exhibit the following characteristics —

- (a) Emaciation usually marked
- (b) A sore red tongue
- (c) Characteristic stools usually bulky frothy and white but sometimes watery, containing total fat at least 30 per cent of the dry weight when the patient (adult) is fed on a diet containing not more than 100 grammes of fat per day
- (d) A low glucose-absorption curve not rising more than 30 mg. after 50 grammes (adult) or perhaps a more accurate measure is a rise of not above 40 mg. after 1 gramme per kilogramme body weight (Hanes 1942)
- (e) Anæmia, with cells rather larger than normal
- (f) Hypochlorhydria but not usually (20 per cent of cases only) histamine fast achlorhydria
- (g) Röntgenological appearance. Loss of the normal feathery or herring bone appearance of the upper part of the small intestine

While the above are the criteria for a well developed case of sprue, the steatorrhœa must be looked upon as the only *sine qua non*, and there are many cases of undoubted sprue in which the syndrome is far from complete. On the other hand, of course steatorrhœa is not necessarily diagnostic of sprue, as it occurs in many other conditions

**Differential diagnosis**—This subject can best be discussed under seven headings corresponding to the seven diagnostic points enumerated above —

**Emaciation**—There are many conditions, such as malignant disease, tuberculosis, Addison's disease, anorexia nervosa, thyrotoxicosis and diabetes in which there will be wasting without any other obvious physical signs but in none of these are the other diagnostic signs of sprue present

**Sore red tongue**—The tongue of sprue is not really different from that of pellagra or pernicious anæmia nor in a mild case from that of the Plummer-Vinson syndrome, nutritional macrocytic anæmia or ariboflavinosis

There is much overlapping between the pellagra and the sprue syndrome but there is seldom typical pellagra dermatitis in sprue, and never the steatorrhœa in uncomplicated pellagra and seldom the low glucose-absorption curve. Pernicious anæmia also is excluded by the absence of these two conditions, and further, emaciation is unusual in the latter disease in sprue the neurological symptoms are seldom marked, histamine-fast achlorhydria is not the rule, nor is the true megaloblastic picture as reflected in the blood and bone marrow, ever present, and the van den Bergh indirect test usually gives a low reading

In the Plummer-Vinson syndrome, the throat is usually affected, the anæmia is microcytic and, except the low gastric acidity, other typical symptoms of sprue are absent.

Some degree of ariboflavinosis is often present in sprue, on account of the poor absorption, and in nutritional macrocytic anæmia, the blood picture and gastric-acidity curve may also be very similar to that of sprue, but in both these conditions, if they are uncomplicated, the steatorrhœa will be absent and usually the emaciation.

**Fatty stools**—(Celiac disease and 'non-tropical' sprue are not included here as we consider them analogous to 'tropical' sprue, as has been indicated above.) In pancreatitis or pancreatic tumour, the unsplit fat is increased at the expense of the split fat, and there may be sugar in the urine.

In abdominal tuberculosis the fever and the abdominal condition should give some clear indication if the disease has reached the stage of steatorrhœa, also tubercle bacilli should be found in the stools.

In giardiasis a heavy infection of giardia will be necessary to produce steatorrhœa and this will be identified easily, the diagnosis can be confirmed by the therapeutic test.

**Low glucose-absorption curve**—This is not very uncommon in normal individuals, and may be very marked in para sprue (qt). Though common in sprue it is not a very helpful differential diagnostic point.

**Anæmia**—Pernicious anæmia, nutritional macrocytic anæmia and the Plummer-Vinson syndrome have been discussed above.

**Hypochlorhydria**—As a rule, free acid is either low or absent. This condition is common to many other diseases, alone, therefore, the finding is of no positive diagnostic significance. On the other hand, in about 80 per cent of cases of sprue, pernicious anæmia will be excluded by the finding of some free acid.

**Röntgenological appearance**—A similar appearance will be found in many cases of vitamin-B-complex deficiency (Mackie and Pound, 1935).

In addition to these conditions, gastro- or duodeno colic anastomosis will produce a condition very similar to sprue.

## TREATMENT

**Introduction**—It has been said of sprue that there are 365 infallible cures. It is easy to understand the multiplicity of the specifics, since there are so many deficiencies that go to make up the sprue syndrome. The rectification of any one of these may go a long way towards restoring the general balance. Hence calcium, given in several forms, with and without parathyroid extract, niacin (or nicotinic acid), riboflavin, and liver extract have each been claimed as specifics and have undoubtedly effected cures in certain cases, but, without the dietary regime and rest in bed, patients exhibiting the full sprue syndrome will seldom be cured.

There is thus no short cut to treatment of this condition, patients must be warned that their whole hearted co-operation is essential and that they must be prepared to face a period of at least two months of hospital or the equivalent treatment.

The treatment consists of rest in bed, a strict dietary regime and treatment for the anæmia and gross deficiency conditions, otherwise it is symptomatic. In the cases in which there is macrocytic anæmia parenteral liver extract must be given in full doses, and, in view of the fact that many of the patients will have been living on a restricted diet, iron should also be given. Niacin may also be given with advantage in most cases preferably by injection. The liver extract will usually produce an immediate

improvement in the blood picture, and also in the general condition, but even in the cases in which anæmia is the most prominent symptom, this treatment alone is seldom sufficient. Those reported cases in which liver treatment alone was effective were probably not true sprue but para sprue or nutritional macrocytic anæmia.

### *Diets*

**Rationale**—The object of the dietary is to rest the disorganized fat and carbohydrate digestive mechanism and at the same time to ensure proper nutrition to the tissues. This is best done by giving a high protein diet with a sufficiency of all the vitamins and essential minerals and at the same time restricting the fat and carbohydrate intake.

If this principle is observed the details are not of very great importance and the diet will certainly have to be varied according to the circumstances under which the patients are being treated as well as from patient to patient.

The ratio of protein fat carbohydrate in a normal diet is 1 1 5. In a sprue diet the proportions of fat and carbohydrate must each be reduced by at least two thirds.

**Milk diets**—One of the oldest forms of treatment was with milk. By using skimmed milk it is possible to devise a milk diet that will very nearly meet the above requirements or if there is any difficulty about obtaining suitable milk 'sprulac' a proprietary (Cow and Gate) preparation of dried milk with an exceptionally low fat content (P=10 F=03 C=13), should be given.

The five stages of this milk diet are given in table X below. The feeds must be taken every two hours from 6 in the morning until 8 at night with an extra milk feed at 2 o'clock in the morning if the patient is awake this makes 8 milk feeds and one fruit meal the latter in the middle of the day. The milk must not be drunk from a cup but sipped from a spoon at least at first.

Some patients find it difficult to take fresh milk but this difficulty is usually overcome by suitable treatment of the milk e.g. by peptonization or citration or by the occasional substitution of butter milk or some

TABLE X

Stages	1	2	3	4	5
Milk skimmed pnts whole	3	4	5	5	4
Fruit* ounces	8	8	8	1	2
Glucose ounces	1	1	1	8	8
Eggs				1½	2
Butter ounces				1	2
Ruiks* ounces		1	2	3	3½
Calories	846	1166	1450	1986	2412
Proportions					
Protein	1	1	1	1	1
Fats	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.3	0.5
Carbohydrates	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.3	2.5

\* See footnotes to table XI



proprietary preparation, such as Benger's food, bovril added to milk will provide a change

If sprulac is used, it must be given as follows —

First stage, 6 ounces of sprulac (125 calories to the ounce of dry powder), to which water is added to bring the amount up to 48 ounces, that is, 1 part of dried milk in 8 parts of water, in the succeeding stages, 8, 10, 12 and 15 ounces of dried milk are given, with the fruit, glucose, etc., in the fourth and fifth stages, respectively, a quarter and half ounce of butter are added

Mixed diet — In the tropics, a diet which is basically of milk, but to which other food substances are gradually added, will usually be found the most generally useful, the diet on these lines that we have used for several years is shown in table XI. At least eight 'meals' should be taken during the day, and the patient must be given an exact programme to follow

Meat diet. — The high-protein diet recommended by Fairley consists largely of beef, good quality beef is difficult to obtain in many tropical countries, and, further, to many patients, beef is not only an unpleasant food, but does not seem to suit them even if they can be persuaded to take it. However, many patients come under treatment in a temperate climate and this diet has certainly been very successful in its originator's hands

Fairley (1939) recommends the following diet —

TABLE XII

## HIGH PROTEIN MEAT DIET

*Diet No 1 (calorie value=770)*

8 a.m. — Underdone beef 3 oz, rusks  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz, juice of  $\frac{1}{2}$  orange, and glucose, 2 drachms

12 noon — Soup, 4 oz + liver extract (=  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb), underdone beef, 3 oz, rusks,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz, juice of  $\frac{1}{2}$  orange and glucose, 1 drachm

6 p.m. — The same as at 12 noon

Protein fat carbohydrate=10 0.3 12

Note. — When patients are very ill two-hourly feeds of meat and beef juice can be substituted

*Diet No 2 (calorie value=1,280)*

8 a.m. — Underdone beef, 5 oz, rusks 1 oz, calves-foot jelly, 2 oz, juice of 1 orange + glucose 2 drachms

12 noon — Soup 4 oz + liver extract (=  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb), underdone beef 5 oz, rusks, 1 oz, juice of 1 orange + glucose 2 drachms

4 p.m. — Tea 10 oz, milk 2 oz

7 p.m. — The same as at 12 noon + calves-foot jelly, 2 oz

Protein fat carbohydrate=1.0 0.3 1.0

*Diet No 3 (calorie value=1,820)*

6 a.m. — Tea 10 oz, milk, 2 oz

8 a.m. — Underdone beef 6 oz, rusks,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz, calves-foot jelly, 2 oz, juice of 1 orange + glucose, 2 drachms

10 a.m. — 1 baked apple, custard 1 oz

12 noon — Soup 4 oz + liver extract (=  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb), underdone beef, 6 oz, calves-foot jelly, 2 oz, rusks,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz, juice of 1 orange + glucose, 2 drachms

4 p.m. — Tea, 10 oz, milk 2 oz, baked apple 1 oz, custard, 1 oz

7 p.m. — The same as at 12 noon

Protein fat carbohydrate=1.0 0.32 1.3

*Diet No 4 (calorie value=2,200)*

6 a.m. — Tea, 10 oz, milk, 2 oz

8 a.m. — Underdone beef 6 oz, rusks,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz, calves-foot jelly, 2 oz, juice of 1 orange + glucose, 2 drachms

10 a.m.—1 baked apple + custard 2 oz

12 noon—Soup, 5 oz + liver extract (= 1 lb), underdone beef, 7 oz, calves-foot jelly, 2 oz, rusks, 3 oz, juice of 1 orange + glucose, 2 drachms

4 p.m.—Tea, 10 oz, milk, 2 oz, 1 baked apple, custard 3 oz

7 p.m.—The same as at 12 noon, but only 1½ oz of rusks allowed

Protein fat carbohydrate = 10 0.31 1.3

#### Diet No 5 (calorie value = 3020)

6 a.m.—Tea, 10 oz, milk, 2 oz, glucose, 2 drachms rusks 1½ oz, butter, 1 drachm, one scraped ripe apple or one fully ripe canary banana (yellow ends)

8 a.m.—Underdone beef, 7 oz, rusks, 3 oz, calves-foot jelly 2 oz, juice of 1 orange + glucose, ½ oz, honey, 2 drachms, butter, 1 drachm

10 a.m.—1 baked apple, custard 3 oz

12 noon—Soup 5 oz + liver extract (= 1 lb), underdone beef, 7 oz, calves-foot jelly, 2 oz, rusks 1½ oz, juice of 1 orange + glucose ½ oz

4 p.m.—Tea, 10 oz, milk, 2 oz, glucose, 2 drachms, rusks 3 oz, baked apple 1 oz; custard, 3 oz (egg boiled or poached sometimes substituted), honey, 2 drachms

7 p.m.—The same as at 12 noon

Protein fat carbohydrate = 1.0 0.36 2.0

**Routine**—The patient must be confined strictly to bed during the first few stages of the treatment, as bodily and mental rest are as important as in the treatment of duodenal ulcer, for example. If possible, the patient should be in an institution and should also have a special day nurse unless the institution is very well staffed. If treated at home, he must have a day and a night nurse, and the former should be carefully selected, and, if possible, should have had previous experience of sprue.

The first stage of the diet should be adhered to for at least ten days, in severe cases for a fortnight, and even then the second stage must only be started if all the main symptoms have subsided. The same rule applies for each stage of the diet, and, whenever there is any relapse of symptoms, the patient must be put back at least one stage, and, if the relapse is a serious one, back to the first stage.

The patient may be allowed to get up for defecating and washing during the fourth stage, and to sit up in a chair for part of the day during the fifth stage.

The injections of liver extract (the whole-liver extracts are usually better than the more refined ones, and they must be given in generous doses), with additional niacin and choline, should be given daily.

Marmite, or some other autolysed yeast preparation, and vitamin A and -D concentrates should be given by mouth, and additional calcium in the form of calcium lactate or basic triple phosphate in doses of a drachm thrice daily.

Cortin appears to aid fat absorption in some cases, and should be given a trial.

**Symptomatic treatment**—A purgative may be given at the commencement of treatment, a full dose of castor oil, or pulv rhei co. If there is any tendency to constipation, ispaghula (*Plantago ovata*) husk, obtainable in the bazar in India, or the proprietary preparations, normacol or isogel, should be given regularly. If these fail, pulv glycyrrhizæ should be given in preference to liquid paraffin, which may further interfere with the effective absorption of vitamins. The atonic condition of the bowel may have led to a constipated condition in which there are large fecoliths in the bowel that may necessitate warm oil enemata for their removal.

It is probably not advisable to interfere too much with the looseness of the bowels if it occurs in the early stage before treatment has had time to take effect, but later, if the diarrhoea is troublesome or distracts the patient at night, kaolin or bismuth should be given. A course of

salphapyridine produces surprisingly satisfactory results in some cases of obstinate diarrhoea

For flatulence and indigestion, a mixture of spiritus ætheris nitrosi and spiritus ammoniæ aromaticus, 15 minims of each in half an ounce of peppermint water, should be tried first, but if the indigestion persists, in view of the low acidity, an alkaline mixture should be given before meals and dilute hydrochloric acid one half increasing to one drachm well diluted with water after meals

When there is gross emaciation, intravenous glucose, 200 ccm of a 25 per cent solution of glucosa together with 10 units of insulin, and, for cramps or tetany, parenteral calcium and parathyroid by mouth, should be given

For meteorism, turpentine in minim doses, turpentine stupeæ, and finally pituitary extract should be given, but some modification of the diet may be necessary, especially when milk is being taken

Special care should be directed towards the mouth. A potassium chlorate mouth-wash, a drachm to the pint, or optochin, should be used, or, if the mouth is painful, glycerine and borax, with 2 grains of cocaine to the ounce in extreme cases when the soreness is interfering with the taking of nourishment

**Convalescence**—Exercise must be graded carefully, and the patient should not be allowed to return to full work for two or three months. 'Home' leave is the ideal solution, if it is during the summer, but an extremely cold climate will be as unsatisfactory as a hot one. The question will arise as to whether the patient should go to the 'hills'. If he has shown no particular susceptibility to hill residence (see HILL DIARRHOEA) there is nothing against this, but, if some healthy plains climate is within easy reach, this will be preferable. The popular sea trip must depend on whether the food and accommodation is likely to be entirely satisfactory

Diet is of course most important, and the patient must endeavour still to follow the general principles of the diet that brought him back to health. The fat intake should be restricted for several years, and skimmed milk or 'sprulac' should be taken several times during the day

Spirits, except possibly once in the evening, should be avoided, but wines or beer may be taken with meals, naturally in moderation

**Prevention**—It would be impossible to lay down any satisfactory rules for prevention. However, sprue is probably less common amongst sojourners who live on a good mixed diet with the vitamins all well represented. Food-faddism is very dangerous in the tropics, but a careful study of the diet based on established scientific data and not on the ideas of some 'popular' medical writer, should be encouraged in persons who show some tendency to develop sprue. If this tendency continues to develop despite this, that individual should be recommended to return to a temperate climate where for some time he may still have to consider his diet. The long continuance of restricted diet is also a precipitating factor and must be guarded against. If such a diet is inevitable, then extra vitamins must be given

**Prognosis**—This is dependent on the stage at which the patient comes under observation, the co-operation of the patient, and the facilities for proper treatment. If the treatment is undertaken early, the prognosis should be good but it may be necessary for the patient to leave the tropics, this is particularly the case if the symptoms developed after short residence, as it will indicate that the patient is particularly predisposed to the condition

At the other end of the scale, if a patient is grossly emaciated with a distended abdomen, has serious macrocytic anaemia, and is unable to take



solid food on account of extreme soreness of the mouth, the prognosis is grave, but not hopeless if conditions for treatment are optimal

## REFERENCES

- ASHFORD, B K (1929) Mycology of the Intestinal Canal in Porto Rico and its Relation to Tropical Sprue *J Amer Med Assoc*, **93**, 762
- CANTLIE, J (1913) Colloidal Argentum Its Use in Sprue and Post-Dysenteric Conditions *J Trop Med and Hyg*, **16**, 123
- CASTLE W B, and RICHARDS, C P (1932) The Aetiology and Treatment of Sprue in Porto Rico *Lancet*, **i**, 1198.
- ELDERS, C (1919) *Nederl Tijdschr Geneesk.*, **63**, 1683
- FAIRLEY, N H (1930) Sprue Its Applied Pathology, Biochemistry and Treatment *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg*, **24**, 131
- Idem* (1939) Sprue, Tropical *British Encyclopedia of Medical Practice*, **11**, 419 Butterworth and Co, Ltd London
- HANES, F M (1942) Diagnostic Criteria and Resistance to Therapy in the Sprue Syndrome *Amer J Med Sci*, **204**, 436
- HURST, A (1942) Pathogenesis of Sprue Syndrome as seen in Tropical Sprue, Non Tropical Sprue and Coeliac Disease *Guy's Hosp Rep.*, **91**, 1
- LEITNER, Z A (1942) The Physiology of the Small Intestine Its Application to the Aetiology of Sprue *Trop Dis Bull.*, **36**, 497
- MACKIE F P, and CHITRE G D (1928) Animal Experiments and Sprue *Indian J Med Res.*, **16**, 49
- MACKIE F P and FAIRLEY N H (1934) Gross and Microscopic Anatomy of the Intestinal Canal from Two Cases of Sprue *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg*, **27**, 340
- MACKIE T T, and POUND, R E (1935) Changes in the Gastro-Intestinal Tract in Deficiency Cases with Special Reference to the Small Intestine Roentgenologic and Clinical Study of 40 Cases *J Amer Med Assoc*, **104**, 613
- MANSOUBAHIR P (1939) *The Dysenteric Disorders* Cassell and Co, Ltd London
- MCCARRISON, R (1919) The Pathogenesis of Deficiency Disease *Indian J Med Res*, **7**, 283
- PASRICHA C L and LAL S (1939) Incidence of Moniliasis in Human Faces *Indian Med Gaz*, **74**, 652
- THAYSEN, T F H (1931) Pathological Anatomy of the Intestinal Tract in Tropical Sprue *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg*, **24**, 539
- VEDDER, E B (1940) A Discussion of the Aetiology of Sprue *Amer J Trop Med*, **20**, 345

## PARA-SPRUE

	PAGE
DEFINITION	477
ÆTIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY	477
PATHOLOGY	477
<i>Blood—Gastric analysis—Stools</i>	477
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	478
DIAGNOSIS	478
TREATMENT	478
PROGNOSIS	478

**Definition** — Para sprue is a disease of dietary origin in which there is a watery diarrhoea of long duration, loss of weight, a sore red tongue, and later marked macrocytic anæmia, it occurs in the European sojourner, the domiciled European and Eurasian, and the native, in the tropics

### ÆTIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

The writer believes that the disease is basically dietetic, but that both dysentery, in its direct effect on intestinal absorption and in encouraging a limitation of diet, and malaria, in its predatory effect on the red cells with consequent exhaustion of essential hæmopoietic material, are very frequent contributory or determining factors (Napier, 1939)

It occurs mainly in poorer Indian and other native, populations living on a low diet, deficient in good protein and vitamins, especially of the B<sub>12</sub> group, in which malaria and bowel disorders are common, but it also occurs in the better-dietary groups when, as a result of some bowel disorder, a patient is kept on a low fluid diet for a long time, it is found amongst pregnant women (Napier and Edwards, 1941) It also occurs in poorer-class Europeans and Eurasians, and in economically-higher classes of these two groups following long continued bowel disturbances

### PATHOLOGY

Little is known of the morbid anatomy of this condition

**Blood** — A macrocytic anæmia is the rule in the later stages of this condition, the red cell count may drop to a million and a half, or even lower. There is also usually a leucopenia. The sternum-puncture count usually shows a slight increase of megaloblasts (non-hæmoglobinized, basophilic cytoplasm, with a finely stippled lightly-stained nucleus) but not a true megaloblastic reaction

The glucose absorption curve is usually low or normal, but occasionally it will be completely flat indicating practically no carbohydrate absorption

**Gastric analysis** — This is often normal, but there may be hypochlorhydria, or more frequently a pseudo-achlorhydria that responds to histamine, occasionally true achlorhydria has been found, but this also occurs in about 4 per cent of normal persons

**Stools** — They are usually watery and light in colour, but not the bulky, frothy and pale stools of sprue, there is often some increase of fat, but the total fat is seldom above 30 per cent of the weight of dried faeces, with the normal proportion of split fat

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The onset is usually gradual, following a period of ill health as indicated above. In the fully-developed case, there is emaciation, a sore red tongue, sometimes a low fever, anaemia with its accompanying signs and symptoms, and diarrhoea without any localizing abdominal symptoms. There is also usually dyspepsia, flatulence, and abdominal discomfort. Edema of the legs is also common, this usually improves with rest in bed. As long as the patient is kept on a poor fluid diet, the diarrhoea will continue and the anaemia increase, until the patient dies as a result of the anaemia, or of some concomitant infection.

**Diagnosis**—There is no clear-cut method of diagnosis. The absence of the extreme degree of emaciation, the tumid lower segment of the abdomen, the parchment-like skin, the severe dysphagia, and the bulky, frothy pale stools with an increase of fat above 40 per cent exclude true sprue and the absence of the dermal lesions and mental symptoms exclude pellagra. Ulcerative colitis can be excluded by the absence of red cells or cellular exudate in the stools. Intestinal tuberculosis and malignancy have to be considered, in the former condition, tubercle bacilli can often be found by examination of a smear, but more recent methods include animal inoculation of an ontiformin-treated specimen, in the latter there will usually be occult blood.

## TREATMENT

The treatment of para-sprue is very much that of sprue, except that a strict dietary regime is necessary. We usually encourage the patient to take the full mixed hospital diet (which includes meat), and this is, if possible, supplemented by eggs, extra milk and marmite. While it is unnecessary to restrict fat rigidly, care should be taken that the meat is not served swimming in fat as Indian cooks are liable to serve it, and, in fact, special attention should be paid to the cooking and serving of the food.

Liver extract constitutes the most important specific item, and this should be given in full doses of one of the whole-liver (or crude) extracts. The blood picture improves immediately, with a sub maximal reticulocyte response.

For the diarrhoea treatment for not more than two days with sodium sulphate in drochm doses four-hourly is followed by kaolin or a bismuth mixture if necessary, until it stops, but quite often the stools will become formed directly the diet is changed from the low-calorie fluid diet that the patient was taking in his home to a well balanced solid diet.

Sulphapyridine is sometimes surprisingly efficacious in stopping the diarrhoea, presumably because it cures the mild inflammatory condition from which the ill-nourished mucous membrane is suffering. One would expect the new, less soluble drugs, such as sulphanilyl guanidine, to be even more efficacious.

If there is achlorhydria, hydrochloric acid should be given with each meal. Attention should be paid to associated infections, particularly malaria and intestinal helminth infections. For anæmic patients, a blood transfusion appears to have a tonic effect far beyond that of simple blood replacement.

**Prognosis**—With adequate treatment this is usually good, and if the response is not rapid, one should question the diagnosis, and again consider such conditions as ulcerative colitis or intestinal tuberculosis.

# HILL DIARRHŒA

	PAGE
DISCUSSION	479
ÆTIOLOGY	479
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	480
TREATMENT	480

**Discussion**—The literature on hill diarrhœa goes back nearly a hundred years it presents a kaleidoscopic series of pictures of the possible or probable ætiology of this condition which all seem totally disconnected each writer's contribution being mainly destructive of previous theories and presenting very little in the way of constructive contribution to the problem. Some of the theories that were put forward were that it was a form of scurvy—even at that time (1854) known to be due to lack of fresh fruit and vegetables that it was a disorder of the liver due to the low temperature and that it was due to the presence of mica in the water.

**Ætiology**—It seems very likely that the expression 'hill diarrhœa' covers as many bowel disorders as would the word 'diarrhœa' used at any other level, its ætiology is probably as varied.

The main root cause of hill diarrhœa in India is in the writer's opinion, a curious lethargy that affects the sanitary sense of the administrator in India when he transfers his activities to the holiday atmosphere of a hill station. Nearly all hill stations are appallingly insanitary, and much of the diarrhœa is due to mild *Bact. flexneri* infections acquired through water, milk or food particularly the latter which is usually infected by flies. The definite epidemics that were reported by the early writers and which frequently occur now indicate the infectious nature of the disease. Another cause is undoubtedly the reactivation of a chronic dysenteric condition by sudden subjection to the damp cold of a hill station, the history given is so frequently an onset immediately the subject arrives in the station. A third suggestion is that the sudden subjection to the cold causes a failure of the proper 'pumping action' of the villi and thereby defective fat absorption but this does not explain why the same thing does not happen when the subject goes to a cool climate at sea level. But there is a fourth class of case which does not quite fit any of these suggested ætiologies namely that of the patient who gets an attack of diarrhœa only when he (or she) goes to the hills, this attack continues more or less throughout the visit—certainly if this is a short one—and disappears immediately on his return to the plains and this patient does not suffer in the same way when he returns to a cold climate in Europe. This only constitutes a very small percentage of the cases of hill diarrhœa but the writer believes that such cases do occur, and that the low atmospheric pressure may be the cause.

One very definite physiological change that occurs at high altitudes is an increase in hæmoglobin percentage to counteract lower oxygen tension. To meet the immediate emergency, the red cell reservoir in the spleen will be emptied and there will thus be a reduction in the number of cells undergoing the pre hæmolytic process in this organ with consequent reduction in blood destruction, as a result of this there will naturally be decreased bile production. Another way the relative shortage of red cells can be supplied is by increased production, it seems possible that the increased

demand for the raw material for additional blood formation might lead to a lower rate of wastage and again decreased bile formation. Decreased bile will lead to a decrease in fat and calcium absorption, and an unhealthy condition of the bowel content. The adaptability of the individual naturally varies, so that these reactions will be more apparent in some subjects than in others.

**Symptomatology.**—This will naturally vary according to the cause. The usual experience is a watery diarrhoea, which starts very soon after the patient reaches the hill station, and is accompanied by mild constitutional symptoms, microscopic examination shows a cellular exudate but seldom any blood, suggesting a mild bacillary dysentery.

In true hill diarrhoea—if there is any such condition caused by the climatic effects only and the writer believes that there is—the stools are very similar to those of sprue, the main defect is an increase of fat which in some cases is associated with a deficiency of bile. There will be a large fluid, fatty and frothy stool first thing in the morning, and diarrhoea usually up to about midday, after which there are no more stools until next day. There is marked flatulent dyspepsia—not an uncommon experience in arrivals at a hill station—and a certain amount of lassitude, but otherwise the subject does not feel particularly ill, and he is able to enjoy, but not to the full, his holiday, or to carry on his work, as the case may be.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of the infective type is with sodium sulphate in 2-drachm doses every four hours during the first day or two, followed by kaolin or bismuth as in mild forms of bacillary dysentery. More severe forms may require sulphapyridine or sulphanil-guanidine.

The 'climatic' form will respond best to dietetic treatment, namely, the reduction of fat, on the lines of the treatment of sprue, but it will seldom be necessary to put the patient on the earlier stages of the diet, in fact the fourth stage (see table X, p. 474) will usually suffice, calomel in divided doses ( $\frac{1}{2}$  grain half-hourly up to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grains) should be given for the first night, and bile in the form of keratin coated pills, gr. x, three daily, for several days.

The classical treatment for this condition was a drachm of liquor hydrargyri perchloridi, three daily after food, followed by 10 grains of pepsin two hours later.

# LEPROSY

by  
John Lowe, M.D.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .. .. .	482
DEFINITIONS .. .. .	483
HISTORICAL .. .. .	484
<i>Leprosy in ancient medical writings—Leprosy in modern medical writings—The history of the disease</i> .. .. .	484
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	486
The causal organism—Culture—Animal inoculation—Viability—Causative relationship to leprosy—Transmission	
IMMUNOLOGY .. .. .	488
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	489
Geographical distribution .. .. .	489
Incidence .. .. .	491
Type-distribution of cases .. .. .	491
Leprosy and age .. .. .	491
Differences in susceptibility at different ages—Incidence at different ages—Type-distribution at different ages—The importance of type- and age-distribution of cases	
Sex incidence .. .. .	492
The influence of heredity .. .. .	493
Race—Familial susceptibility	
The influence of environment .. .. .	494
Climate—Diet—Social and hygienic conditions	
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	495
Neural type .. .. .	495
Morbid anatomy—Histopathology	
Lepromatous type .. .. .	496
Morbid anatomy—Histopathology	
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	497
Latent period—Prodromal symptoms—Onset—Types	
Neural type .. .. .	498
The macular variety—Sub-classification of macular lesions—Size, number, and spread of macules—The anæsthetic variety—Nerve trunk involvement, its nature and significance—The neural type in general—Nerve abscess—'Reaction' in neural cases—The course of the disease in the neural type	
Lepromatous type .. .. .	502
The skin lesions—Other lesions of the lepromatous type—Reaction in lepromatous cases—The course of lepromatous cases—Signs of subsidence in lepromatous cases	
Cases of doubtful classification .. .. .	505
The disease in general .. .. .	505
The relation between the two main types—Reaction—Ulceration in leprosy—Eye lesions	

	PAGE
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	507
Cardinal signs of leprosy .. .. .	507
Testing for loss of sensation .. .. .	507
The detection of nerve thickening .. .. .	508
The demonstration of acid-fast bacilli .. .. .	508
Sites of examination—Methods of making smears—Staining and examination of smears	
Cases with no cardinal signs, .. .. .	509
Miscellaneous points .. .. .	509
DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	509
Diseases which produce lesions in the skin which may resemble leprosy .. .. .	509
Diseases causing loss of cutaneous sensibility .. .. .	509
Conditions causing deformities and other lesions resembling the trophic lesions of leprosy .. .. .	509
Multiple infections .. .. .	510
PROGNOSIS .. .. .	510
TREATMENT .. .. .	511
Introduction .. .. .	511
Selection of cases suitable for treatment .. .. .	511
General treatment .. .. .	511
Special treatment with hydnocarpus preparations .. .. .	511
Historical—Preparations—Dosage—Methods of injection—Duration of treatment and assessing results	
Other forms of special treatment .. .. .	513
Local treatment of lesions .. .. .	514
Management of complications .. .. .	515
Reaction—Trophic lesions—Leprous eye affections—Severe neuritis—Respiratory obstruction	
THE CONTROL OF LEPROSY .. .. .	517
General principles .. .. .	517
Practical application of these principles .. .. .	518
Preliminary measures—Main lines of work—Leprosy survey—Clinics for diagnosis and treatment—Isolation in institution—Home isolation—Social services—Disabled non-infectious cases—Propaganda—Training of staff	
Organization .. .. .	520
The results of anti-leprosy work .. .. .	520
SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY .. .. .	521

**Introduction**—In the last two decades it has become increasingly realized that in different countries there are marked variations, not only in the incidence, but also in the severity of leprosy. In some countries, *e.g.* parts of India and of Africa, leprosy is very common but often mild. In other countries, *e.g.* parts of the Philippine Islands and of South America, the disease is less common but considerably more severe. In still other countries, *e.g.* parts of South China, of Burma, and of South America, the disease is both common and severe.

An unbalanced and depressing view of leprosy may be the result of studying leprosy in countries where the disease is usually seen in severe forms, and particularly when such studies are largely confined to severe cases seen in leprosy institutions. Such studies appear however not infrequently to have formed the basis of accounts of leprosy in medical literature.

The description of leprosy given here is based on long experience of leprosy in the general population of India, supplemented by experience gained in brief visits to other countries, and by a thorough study of the literature of the disease.

In most parts of India, the milder neural type of the disease predominates, and slight abortive cases of leprosy are common; even the cases of the severer 'lepromatous' type are frequently less severe and progressive than those seen in some other countries. It will, therefore, be found that the picture of leprosy presented here is on the whole less depressing than that frequently presented in medical literature. The disease is not described as highly infectious, nearly always progressive, and sooner or later but invariably fatal.

It is however believed that the description given here can be applied, with minor modifications, to leprosy in any country, and that probably nowhere in the world is the prognosis of leprosy so hopeless as is often suggested.

**Definitions.**—Leprosy (Synonyms.—*Lepra*, *Elephantiasis Graecorum*, *Lepra Arabum*) is a disease belonging to the group 'infective granulomata', is caused by *Mycobacterium lepræ*, and is transmitted from man to man, mainly if not entirely, by contact, it is endemic in varying degree in most tropical and sub-tropical countries, and it was endemic in the past, but is so to a much less extent at present, in some temperate countries; it occurs in two main forms now called 'neural' and 'lepromatous'; and it is characterized by extreme chronicity.

The neural type is relatively mild, and the lesions are confined to certain areas of skin and/or to certain peripheral nerves and the tissues supplied by them. The lepromatous type is relatively severe and progressive, and the lesions are usually widespread in skin and mucous membranes, and to a less extent in the internal organs; the vital organs however show little or no affection.

The definition of these two main types of leprosy adopted at the International Leprosy Congress, 1938, was as follows:—

'*Neural (N) type*—All cases of the "benign" form of leprosy with disturbances of polyneuritic nature (i.e. alterations of peripheral sensation, trophic disturbances, atrophies, and paralyses, and their sequelae), or macules of a non-lepromatous nature (i.e. leprides, usually with localized sensory disturbances), or both. These cases give evidence of relative resistance to the infection, are of relatively good prognosis as regards life although mutilation may take place, and usually react positively to lepromin. Bacteriologically, the skin lesions are typically but not invariably found negative by standard methods of examination, though the nasal mucosa may be found positive\*. Many of these lesions are histologically of a "tuberculoid" nature'.

'*Lepromatous (L) type*—All cases of the "malignant" form of leprosy, relatively non-resistant and of poor prognosis, usually negative to lepromin, exhibiting lepromatous lesions of the skin and other organs, especially the nerve trunks. Bacteriological examination usually reveals abundant bacilli. Disturbances of polyneuritic nature may or may not be present; they are usually absent in the earlier stages and present in the later stages of primarily lepromatous cases, and often present in cases arising secondarily from the neural form'.

Some of the points made and the terms used in these definitions are later explained more fully.

\* In our experience the nasal mucosa in true neural cases shows no bacilli.



## HISTORICAL

Leprosy in ancient medical writings—The earliest references to leprosy confirmed by clinical descriptions are in the ancient literature of India, the *Sushruta Samhita* (about 600 B C) contains definite references to, and descriptions of, leprosy, but there are other probable references in still older Indian literature. The supposed references to leprosy in ancient Egyptian, Jewish, and Chinese writings of the pre-Christian era are of doubtful authenticity, no definite clinical details indicating leprosy being given, but this fact does not prove that leprosy was not prevalent in ancient times in the countries in question. In most ancient medical literature, the definite recognition of the disease now called leprosy is difficult or impossible, partly because words which now mean leprosy were sometimes used in ancient writings either with a much wider meaning or else with a different meaning, for example the Sanskrit word *kushtha*, which is now generally used for leprosy, originally meant skin disease in general, the Greek word '*lepra*' from which name 'leprosy' is derived, originally meant a scaly disease, possibly psoriasis, and was only later applied to leprosy, as the result of mistakes in translation.

The disease was possibly mentioned by Hippocrates, and certainly mentioned and described by later Greek writers, Lucretius, Celsus in the first century B C, and by numerous later authors in Greco-Roman times. These writers first mention leprosy as a disease rare in Italy but more common in the eastern Mediterranean. Later, the spread to Italy and to other parts of Europe is recorded by contemporary writers.

With the collapse of the Greco-Roman civilization, the science of medicine retrogressed and was largely forgotten in Europe, but the Greek medical knowledge was kept alive by the Arabians, who studied the Greek and probably the Indian writings on leprosy, and wrote extensively themselves on the subject. The Greek writings on leprosy were recovered to Europe first indirectly from the Arabian writers by the writers of the school of Salerno in Italy in the tenth century, and, later, directly through the recovery of the ancient Greek writings themselves.

During this time the terminology of leprosy became confused, and it took many centuries to clear up this confusion.

Both the Greek and the Arabian writers had used both the terms *lepra* and *elephantiasis* but with completely different meanings. The Greeks, as already stated, used the word *lepra* possibly for psoriasis while for our leprosy they used the word *elephantiasis* (because the thickness and texture of the skin of severe cases of leprosy was thought to resemble that of the elephant's skin), whereas the Arabians had translated '*lepra*' as meaning our leprosy (Arabic *juzam*) and they interpreted *elephantiasis* as filariasis (Arabic *dil fil*).

The medical writings on leprosy in Europe in the Middle Ages were dominated very largely by the Greek writings and contain little original material. Dozens of descriptions of leprosy were, however, written in the countries of Europe. Under the impression, possibly a mistaken one, that the terms *zaraath* (Old Testament Hebrew) and the *lepra* (New Testament Greek) indicated leprosy, the disease then common in medieval Europe, the word 'leprosy' was used in translating the Bible into some (but not all) European languages, and the Mosaic Law relating to *zaraath* was applied to the medieval leprosy.

Leprosy in modern medical writings—The developments of scientific and medical knowledge which later followed the Renaissance were not for a long time applied to a study of leprosy, partly because by that time there was little leprosy left in Europe. It was only in the nineteenth century that the Norwegian workers Danielssen and Boeck, and later Hansen made the studies which led to the scientific work on leprosy,

especially in the last forty years. This work has established leprosy as a disease showing many points of resemblance to tuberculosis, and also some important differences.

To the modern literature of leprosy, workers of many nations have made notable contributions.

The scientific study of leprosy initiated in Norway by Danielssen and Boeck, was continued by Hansen and Looft and later by Lie and others. Other workers in Europe have included Virchow, Unna, Arning, Ehlers, Marchoux, Jadassohn, Jeanseime, Klingmüller, Hutchinson, Radcliffe-Crocker, Paldock, Tonkin, Hoffmann Stein and others.

Numerous United States workers have studied leprosy in America, Hawaii, or the Philippine Islands; amongst these workers are included Dyer, Hopkins, Denny, Dean, Hollman, Macdonald, Heiser, McCoy, Aycock, McKinley, Soule, Wayson, Wade, Cole and Hesselstine.

In the Philippine Islands Filipino workers include Rodriguez, Lara, Nolasco, Manalang and Chiyuto.

In India, organized leprosy research was initiated by Rogers and carried on by Muir. Later workers include Chatterji, Cochrane, Dharmendra, Henderson, Lowe and Santra.

In Japan leprosy workers have been very numerous and have included Sugai, Ota, Sato, Asami, Mitsuda, Hayaishi and Uchida.

In South America in recent years leprosy work has much developed and among the writers have been De Souza, Araujo, Balina, Fernandez, Fidanza, Schubman, De Souza, Campos, Rotberg and Rebello.

In the French colonies have worked Delinotte, Tisseul, Montel and others; in the Dutch colonies de Langen, Lampe and Sitanala; and in the Belgian colonies, Dubois, Degotte and Radna.

In Australia workers have included Ashburton, Thompson, Cilento and Moleworth; in South Africa Moser, Mitchell and Strachan.

In other parts of the British Empire Frazer and Rytie (Malaya), Rose (West Indies), Simon (Ceylon) and Austin (Fiji) have worked on this subject.

In China workers have included Maxwell and in Korea Wilson.

The writings of these and many other workers are largely contained or abstracted in *Leprosy Bibliotheca Internationalis* (1900 to 1914) and the *International Journal of Leprosy* from 1933. These publications and also the other publications mentioned in the bibliography have been used in the preparation of the present chapter but it has been considered inadvisable to burden the text with hundreds of references. A select bibliography is given at the end of the chapter.

**The history of the disease**—This has already to a considerable extent been outlined in the preceding discussion. Leprosy has been common in India, and probably in Africa and China for many centuries. In classical times, leprosy invaded the Mediterranean countries and later it spread over most of Europe including the British Isles. For about a thousand years it was common in the e areas, and then, between the fourteenth and sixteenth centuries, it declined markedly, although it persisted and still persists in some foci in Europe, chiefly in the countries bordering the Mediterranean, and to a less extent in Iceland, Scandinavia, and the Baltic countries.

The decline of leprosy in medieval Europe has been attributed to segregation measures, to improved hygienic conditions and diet, to climatic changes, and to the development of racial immunity. None of these explanations appears to fit the facts.

The disease was imported by immigrants from Europe and by slaves from Africa to the American continent, where previously there was no leprosy. In North America, it has persisted chiefly in the southern states but only to a very limited extent, and mainly in people of European descent. In Central and South America, however, it has steadily increased and is now very common in certain areas, particularly north Brazil, and both Europeans and negroes are affected. The Indians of both North and South America have very little leprosy.

in villages in one part of India, in 80 per cent of the new cases arising during the period of the study, infectious contact could be proved

Strong support of the view that closed cases are not infectious has been afforded by a recent careful epidemiological survey carried out in the Philippine Islands, in which it was found that the incidence of leprosy in the family contacts of 'closed' cases was actually lower than the incidence of leprosy in the general population with no known contact, while in contacts of open cases the incidence was, of course, much higher

## IMMUNOLOGY

There is no doubt that the degree of natural susceptibility to leprosy in different persons varies considerably. Under 'Epidemiology' the various factors which may have an influence in this matter are discussed.

There is also considerable evidence (*vide infra*) that acquired specific immunity to leprosy occurs, but there is no completely specific test for such immunity. There appears to be, however, a definite element of specificity in the lepromin test.

The lepromin test was originated over thirty years ago by Mitsuda, and consisted of the intra-dermal injection of a minute amount of an emulsion made by grinding up lepromatous tissue, rich in bacilli, and previously sterilized by boiling. A positive result is indicated by the development, during the next few weeks, of a small nodule at the site of injection. A positive result is commonly seen in cases of the neural type, particularly 'tuberculoid' cases, in healthy contacts, particularly adults, and in some healthy non-contacts, particularly adults. A negative result is seen in cases of the lepromatous type, and in healthy young children, contacts or non-contacts. The completely negative result seen in cases of lepromatous type is a striking feature of the test, and it is possibly analogous to the negative result seen in some very advanced cases of tuberculosis.

Numerous later workers, particularly Dharmendra, have introduced improvements in the methods of preparing lepromin, standardizing the dose and reading the results. The active principle of the emulsion has been shown to be the bacilli, and methods have been evolved of obtaining bacilli free from tissue and of standardizing by a bacillary count, or still better by weight.

Recently Fernandez has shown, and others have confirmed, that the late nodular reaction is preceded by an early (24/48 hours) reaction of the 'tuberculin' type which is of the same significance as the late nodular reaction. It has moreover been found that by breaking down the bacilli by physical methods, defatting and grinding, the early reaction can be enhanced, and the late nodular reaction can be almost abolished. Dharmendra has isolated and tested all the chemical fractions of the bacilli, has found that the antigen is of a protein nature and gives rise to the early reaction only, has shown that the late reaction is caused by this protein fraction being slowly liberated from the unbroken bacilli, and has attempted to isolate a specific antigen. This result has not been obtained, but by using small doses of antigen, the number of positive results in non-contacts has been much reduced, without any appreciable reduction in the number of positive results in neural cases.

There appear to be two factors contributing to a positive result in the lepromin test, one specific and the other non-specific, and, so far, it has been impossible entirely to eliminate the non-specific factor. Until this is done, the test is likely to be of very little value in diagnosis.

In prognosis, however, the value of the test is considerable. In healthy contacts, a definite positive result is an indication either that leprosy will

not develop, or that the disease will be of the mild neural type. In cases of neural type, it indicates a relatively good prognosis and the unlikelihood of development into the lepromatous type. In cases of the lepromatous type, very few positive results are seen, but when seen may indicate a prognosis better than usual in such cases.

The following is a brief account of the methods of preparing lepromin, doing the test and reading the results —

By the older methods lepromin was prepared by grinding leprous nodules in saline and diluting until the bacillary concentration was roughly the same as in a previously used and satisfactory preparation or until the injection of 0.1 of a ccm produced a significant but not excessive reaction in a case of neural type and no reaction in a case of lepromatous type. By thorough grinding and centrifugalization it is sometimes possible by such methods to produce a suspension which can be standardized by a rough bacterial count.

The latest methods involve a separation of the bacilli from the nodular material either by centrifugalization in fluids of different specific gravity or by extraction with chloroform (for details see Dharmendra Leprosy in India, 1942 p. 122). Such preparations can be standardized by weight.

A dose of two million bacilli or 0.01 mgm by weight of the bacillary powder, suspended in saline is injected intra dermally as in the tuberculin test.

The readings are as follows — The early reaction is seen in 24 or 48 hours and consists of an area of swelling and erythema  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch or more in diameter. The late reaction seen from the second week and usually at its maximum between three to four weeks takes the form of a definite nodule in the skin easily palpable, and usually measuring 5 mm or more in diameter when held with the skin between the jaws of a measuring instrument.

Complement fixation may be seen in leprosy. The sera of certain cases of leprosy have the power of fixing complement in the presence of certain antigens, e.g. Wassermann antigen, and antigens prepared from various acid-fast bacilli including those of tuberculosis and leprosy. This fact is of no practical value in diagnosis or prognosis. It is a curious fact that complement fixation is seen commonly in the more severe (lepromatous) form of leprosy in which the lepromin test gives negative results.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution (see map)** — The distribution and incidence of leprosy in different parts of the world is shown roughly in the map. Leprosy is now found chiefly but not entirely in the tropics. In the past,

leprosy was found commonly in temperate and even in very cold countries such as Iceland, but there is now little leprosy in such areas.

Leprosy is on the whole most common in areas where the climate is both warm and humid, and in hot dry climates the disease is often relatively rare or absent. The three great endemic areas are (a) Africa, particularly equatorial Africa, (b) a large part of Asia including India (particularly southern and eastern India), Burma, Siam, Indo-China and China (particularly the south), and (c) South America, particularly Brazil.

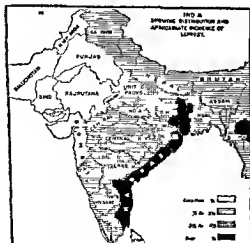


Figure 139

The incidence of leprosy in endemic areas and countries varies markedly. It is noticeable that, compared with some other chronic infective diseases, the incidence of leprosy is never very high. An incidence of more than 10 per cent of the population of an affected area is very rare, and when it has occurred it has been only temporary.

The varying incidence of leprosy in different parts of India and Burma is roughly shown in the map. The incidence for India as a whole is probably not more than 0.25 per cent. In Burma, Bengal, Orissa, Madras and other parts of southern and eastern India, most of these areas being low lying hot and humid, the incidence of leprosy is generally high, 0.5 to 3 per cent, and may be 5 per cent or more in certain areas. In individual villages, the incidence may be 10 or 15 per cent or more. In some, if not most, of these highly endemic areas, many cases are mild. In central and western India, where the climate is hot and fairly dry, there is on the whole a low incidence, and in the north west of India, where the climate is very dry and much more extreme, i.e. very hot in summer and cold in winter, there is very little leprosy. In the Himalayan foothills, however, even in the north-west of India leprosy is relatively common.

In other endemic continents and sub continents, for example, Africa and South America similar marked variations in incidence are seen.

By type distribution is meant the proportion of cases of leprosy belonging to the two main types neural and lepromatous. Observations of the incidence and severity of leprosy have revealed the following interesting facts regarding the type-distribution of cases. In India, in areas where the incidence is high, most of the cases, usually 70 per cent and sometimes even 90 per cent or more, are of the neural type, often of the tuberculoid variety, and many are slight and abortive. In contrast with this, it is found that in other areas, and commonly where the incidence of leprosy is relatively low, the average case is often much more severe, and 50 per cent or even more may be of the lepromatous type. There are in India relatively few areas where leprosy is both common and severe. These few areas include part of the Madras Presidency and certain Himalayan hill areas.

In Africa, similar variations in type-distribution have been recorded, but they are possibly less marked, and in most areas the milder neural cases appear to predominate. In some other countries, including Burma, the Philippine Islands, Japan, South China and also South America, lepromatous cases appear to form a high proportion, often a much higher proportion than in India and in Africa.

**Leprosy and age.** Differences in susceptibility at different ages are shown by a study of leprosy in families. Adults long exposed to infection in families show an incidence averaging about 5 per cent, while children similarly exposed to infection may show an incidence of 50 per cent or more. These differences may not be entirely caused by the age factor. Other possible factors are mentioned elsewhere.

It is also suggested that, if leprosy is contracted early in life, it is more likely to take a serious form than if contracted later in life, but evidence on this point is not very clear.

The incidence at different ages has been studied in two ways. In a few areas it has been possible to study the actual incidence in different age groups, but this involves a complete census of the population. More often practicable is a study of the age-distribution of the cases detected in surveys. Here three age groups are considered: up to 15—the early age-group, 15 to 34—the middle age-group, and 34 and over—the late age group, these age-groups being chosen because in India they are of approximately the same size, and because accurate ages may be unobtainable.



Figure 140

The incidence of leprosy in endemic areas and countries varies markedly. It is noticeable that, compared with some other chronic infective diseases, the incidence of leprosy is never very high. An incidence of more than 10 per cent of the population of an affected area is very rare, and when it has occurred it has been only temporary.

The varying incidence of leprosy in different parts of India and Burma is roughly shown in the map. The incidence for India as a whole is probably not more than 0.25 per cent. In Burma, Bengal, Orissa, Madras and other parts of southern and eastern India, most of these areas being low lying, hot and humid, the incidence of leprosy is generally high, 0.5 to 3 per cent, and may be 5 per cent or more in certain areas. In individual villages the incidence may be 10 or 15 per cent or more. In some, if not most, of these highly endemic areas many cases are mild. In central and western India, where the climate is hot and fairly dry, there is on the whole a low incidence, and in the north-west of India, where the climate is very dry and much more extreme, i.e. very hot in summer and cold in winter, there is very little leprosy. In the Himalayan foothills, however, even in the north west of India, leprosy is relatively common.

In other endemic continents and sub continents, for example, Africa and South America, similar marked variations in incidence are seen.

By type distribution is meant the proportion of cases of leprosy belonging to the two main types neural and lepromatous. Observations of the incidence and severity of leprosy have revealed the following interesting facts regarding the type-distribution of cases. In India, in areas where the incidence is high, most of the cases, usually 70 per cent and sometimes even 90 per cent or more, are of the neural type, often of the tuberculoid variety, and many are slight and abortive. In contrast with this, it is found that in other areas, and commonly where the incidence of leprosy is relatively low, the average case is often much more severe, and 50 per cent or even more may be of the lepromatous type. There are in India relatively few areas where leprosy is both common and severe. These few areas include part of the Madras Presidency and certain Himalayan hill areas.

In Africa, similar variations in type-distribution have been recorded, but they are possibly less marked, and in most areas the milder neural cases appear to predominate. In some other countries, including Burma, the Philippine Islands, Japan, South China and also South America, lepromatous cases appear to form a high proportion, often a much higher proportion than in India and in Africa.

**Leprosy and age.** Differences in susceptibility at different ages are shown by a study of leprosy in families. Adults long exposed to infection in families show an incidence averaging about 5 per cent, while children similarly exposed to infection may show an incidence of 50 per cent or more. These differences may not be entirely caused by the age factor. Other possible factors are mentioned elsewhere.

It is also suggested that, if leprosy is contracted early in life, it is more likely to take a serious form than if contracted later in life, but evidence on this point is not very clear.

The incidence at different ages has been studied in two ways. In a few areas it has been possible to study the actual incidence in different age-groups, but this involves a complete census of the population. More often practicable is a study of the age-distribution of the cases detected in surveys. Here three age groups are considered, up to 15—the early age-group, 15 to 34—the middle age group, and 34 and over—the late age group, these age-groups being chosen because in India they are of approximately the same size, and because accurate ages may be unobtainable.

In most endemic areas, the largest number of cases, and sometimes the highest incidence, will be found in the middle age-group. This finding, however, does not indicate the age when the disease is acquired, for leprosy is a very chronic disease with a long latent period. Studies of the age of onset indicate that symptoms most commonly appear at the period a few years before and after puberty and, when the latent period is allowed for, it appears that most leprosy infections are contracted in childhood or early in adult life.

While the highest number of cases is generally found in the middle age-group, marked variations are found both in the relative incidence and in the proportion of cases in the early and late age-groups. The findings in this respect may vary in different countries and in different parts of the same country, and also may show some relation to the type-distribution which has already been discussed.

In areas in which the severer lepromatous forms of the disease are common, leprosy frequently shortens life, so that the number of cases and the incidence in the late age-group is relatively low. At the same time the infectiousness of the lepromatous cases is sometimes associated with a considerable incidence of leprosy in children and young people. In such circumstances a high proportion of the cases is found in the earlier age-group, and a low proportion in the late age-group.

Contrasting with this is the state of things found in areas where the mild neural type of the disease predominates. These mild forms of the disease do not appreciably shorten life, and the result is an increase in incidence with increase in age, and a high proportion of the cases in the late age-groups. Together with this the low infectivity of most of the cases is often associated with a relatively low incidence in children.

There are of course areas in which the type-distribution and age-distribution of the cases, and the incidence in different age-groups, come midway between these two extremes, and also it must be admitted that sometimes rather anomalous findings are recorded, which are difficult to reconcile with the general ideas here expressed.

A study of type-distribution at different ages has given additional information of some interest. The findings vary markedly not only in different countries but sometimes in different parts of the same country. In some countries including many parts of India, the proportion of frank lepromatous to neural cases in the early age-group is low, and shows a relatively small rise in the later age-groups. Such findings indicate that the disease is relatively mild and often not progressive.

In other areas, however, the proportion of frank lepromatous cases in children may be higher, and in the later age groups lepromatous cases may be in the majority. Such findings indicate that, in these areas, the disease is relatively severe and progressive.

The importance of type- and age distribution of cases is now being increasingly recognized, for crude incidence figures may give little indication of the public-health importance of leprosy in any area. A high incidence, if associated with mildness of the disease, as shown by the figures for type distribution, and a low proportion of cases in young people as shown by the figures for age-distribution, may be considerably less serious than a lower incidence of leprosy in its severer form, with the infection of numerous young people.

**Sex incidence**—Studies of leprosy in the general population have shown that, in most parts of endemic countries the incidence of leprosy is higher in men than in women, sometimes twice as high. A slight difference is found even in childhood and the difference becomes more marked in adult life. Also females tend on the whole to show milder forms of the



disease. The reasons for these differences are not clear. The possible causes are an inherent lower susceptibility of females, or a less degree of exposure to infection.

**The influence of heredity. Race** — There is considerable evidence to show that the severity and the forms of leprosy vary quite markedly in different countries, and it has been suggested that some races are more susceptible to leprosy than others. These suggestions have been borne out by studies of persons of different races in the same place, for example, Indians, Chinese, and Malaysians in Malaya, Indians and Burmans in Burma, Indians, Negroes, and others in the West Indies, and Europeans and Africans in Africa reported by different workers. No matter where the case of leprosy is found, there is a marked tendency for the form of leprosy to be influenced by the race of the person affected. The differences in type-distribution of leprosy in different countries which have already been mentioned are possibly caused largely by these differences in racial immunity. It has been suggested that racial immunity may be gradually built up as the result of the long endemicity of leprosy in the particular race, and it has even further been suggested that the dying out of leprosy in Europe may have been partly or largely caused by the development of this immunity in European races. It is difficult however to correlate the degree of susceptibility to leprosy of a race with the length of the period of endemicity in that race. For example the Chinese among whom leprosy has been endemic for many centuries appear relatively highly susceptible to leprosy.

Moreover, persons of the European races among whom leprosy died out a few hundred years ago may be more highly susceptible than many persons of other races in whom leprosy is still endemic. An Englishman in the tropics will very rarely get leprosy, but, when he does he will often get it in a severe form. In the southern part of the United States, particularly Louisiana, the large Negro population, in spite of relatively poor hygienic conditions, shows a much lower incidence of leprosy than the population of European descent, especially French and German. These facts indicate that the postulated acquired immunity of European races, if it was ever a reality, may have died out since leprosy died out in Europe. At any rate at the present time, Europeans often show relatively little immunity. Our knowledge of this subject, however, is very incomplete, but it is clear that race is of importance.

**Familial susceptibility** — From ancient times it has been realized that leprosy often runs along certain familial lines, and this gave rise to the belief that leprosy was hereditary. This idea has been disproved. The possibility of susceptibility to leprosy being hereditary, however, has to be considered and a suggestion has frequently been made that in certain families, certain persons exposed to infection develop the disease far more readily than persons of other families similarly exposed to infection, and this suggestion is supported by a certain amount of evidence. Accurate evidence on this matter, however, is very difficult to collect, and information so far available is not completely convincing. The evidence regarding a high susceptibility of certain races already mentioned does however point in this direction for a race is simply a large group of families.

An interesting suggestion has been made that the rarity of marital infection and the relative frequency of infection of children in families may be influenced by the fact that the husband and wife are usually of different familial stock and are not blood relations, whereas the children are of course the blood relations of the leprous parents.

If susceptibility to leprosy were truly hereditary, it should be inherited according to Mendelian law, and there is also a remote possibility that 'somatic linkage' between this possibly hereditary factor and some other

easily recognizable hereditary factor might be found. As Weiner points out, this can only be done by studying three generations of affected families and, as far as is known, this has not been attempted.

The idea that leprosy is more common or more severe in persons of certain Landsteiner blood groups than in others has been suggested, but the author and others have failed to confirm this. The blood groups are of course entirely hereditary. The blood grouping of cases of leprosy of all types shows no significant difference from the blood grouping of healthy persons of the same population.

It will be seen that definite evidence regarding familial susceptibility to leprosy is scanty, but it is a matter of common experience that some persons may acquire leprosy from very slight contact for a very limited period, while other persons with long and intimate contact do not acquire the disease and it is not impossible that these individual variations in susceptibility are related to family and heredity.

**The influence of environment.** *Climate.* A possible relationship between climate and leprosy has already been hinted at in the discussion on the distribution and incidence of leprosy. In the world as a whole, leprosy is most common in areas which are both warm and humid, and it appears that these conditions favour the transmission of the disease. High temperature, however, with a low humidity is often associated with a low incidence of leprosy, and therefore humidity appears to be of more importance than temperature. When leprosy is studied more in detail however, certain facts are revealed which are not in accordance with these ideas. For example, in the very humid eastern part of Bengal, leprosy is considerably less common than in the drier western part of Bengal. Dry central Burma shows a higher incidence of leprosy than the more humid southern Burma.

It appears probable that climate is only one of a number of factors influencing the spread of leprosy. The fact that leprosy used to be common in temperate and cold climates indicates that a high temperature is not necessary for transmission, but the fact that infectious cases of leprosy imported into or repatriated to European countries, although often not isolated, very rarely give rise to secondary cases, indicates that, under modern conditions transmission in temperate or cold countries rarely occurs.

In addition to the possible influence of climate on transmission, it appears that climate also has an influence on the progress of the disease, in spite of the fact that leprosy is mainly a disease of warm countries. It is the common experience that persons suffering from leprosy in cold and temperate climates often benefit physically by a removal to a warmer climate provided that it is dry and bracing.

**Diet.**—There has been from ancient times a common idea that leprosy is influenced by diet, and even caused by diet. In different parts of the world, different items of diet have been blamed. Fish and meat are two items of diet often mentioned in this connection. The attempt of Sir Jonathan Hutchinson in the 1890s to explain the distribution epidemiology of leprosy by his 'fish eating' theory is now of historical interest only. During recent years it has frequently been pointed out that, in Asia, the incidence of leprosy is highest in those areas where rice is grown and forms the staple diet, but nobody believes that the rice diet has any direct causative relationship with leprosy. The association of leprosy with rice areas may be caused more by climatic and racial factors than by the diet factor.

A lack of salt has been mentioned in connection with a high incidence of leprosy, as well as the consumption of the toxic foods. The idea has been advanced on very unsatisfactory evidence that the eating of *Colocasia antiquorum*, which contains saponin toxins is an important predisposing cause of leprosy. This foodstuff under various names is commonly consumed

in many tropical areas, but the evidence to support this theory is of a very similar nature to, and, as completely unconvincing as, the evidence which Hutchinson quoted to support his 'fish eating' theory of the causation of leprosy.

Largely from analogy from other similar diseases such as tuberculosis, it appears possible that deficient diet in general rather than the consumption of some particular article of diet may influence the spread of leprosy in the community, and the development of the disease in the individual. This is by no means certain. The few diet surveys that have been made in relation to leprosy have given inconclusive results.

**Social and hygienic conditions**—There is some evidence to show that social and hygienic conditions affect the incidence of leprosy, and that under good conditions the disease may tend to die out. In India and other countries, this factor may be of considerable importance, but the distribution and incidence of leprosy cannot be explained on this basis alone, since in very poor areas leprosy may be rare while in neighbouring prosperous areas with better conditions leprosy may be much more common. There is, however, no doubt that leprosy is to a considerable extent aggravated by bad social and hygienic conditions. Poverty, bad diet, poor housing with overcrowding, and ignorance of ordinary hygiene often go together, and favour the spread of leprosy. It is perhaps bad housing necessitating close and intimate contact of an infectious case of leprosy with healthy people in the home which is of greatest importance. Among aboriginal and semi-aboriginal people living under very primitive conditions, leprosy is usually rare. Ancient tribal customs and traditions often include drastic precautions against the spread of leprosy, and the breaking down of these customs without the institution of other hygienic measures may cause leprosy to spread.

In some countries, including India, two special factors probably have an important bearing on leprosy. The first is the religious sentiment which regards leprosy as a divine visitation, which encourages those suffering from leprosy to go on religious pilgrimages, and which also fosters the giving of alms to beggars in general, and to those with leprosy in particular. The second is the joint family system under which a father, mother and all married sons and their families, and all unmarried sons and daughters share one household, this favours the spread of leprosy in a family if the infection is introduced.

Another factor, probably of increasing importance, is the industrialization now occurring in tropical countries where leprosy is common. Workers from the rural areas sometimes with little or no leprosy are migrating with their families in very large numbers to industrial centres, where they may get infected by workers with leprosy coming from other areas, and they may return to their villages and introduce the disease there. Housing and other conditions in industrial areas often favour the transmission of leprosy.

## PATHOLOGY

The pathology of the two main types of leprosy is markedly different, and therefore the two types will be discussed separately.

**Neural type Morbid anatomy**—The changes seen in the skin are described under Symptomatology. The only other important changes are in the peripheral nerves. The affected nerve often shows marked thickening over large parts of its course but there is frequently marked thickening of some parts, with thinner portions in between. The thickened nerve is often hard the surface rough, and it may be adherent to surrounding tissues. On opening the nerve, the sheath is found thickened, and the nerve bundles if

still recognizable, are often widely separated by whitish streaks of chronic inflammatory tissue. These tissues may have undergone caseation and, where the areas of caseation are large, nerve abscess may be formed. In chronic long-standing cases of the neural type, the nerve, instead of being thickened, may be thin and atrophic, and consist of little more than fibrous tissue.

In the areas supplied by affected nerves, trophic lesions will often be found in the form of decalcification, rarefaction and absorption of bones. The only other change worthy of note in neural cases is the slight enlargement of lymphatic glands sometimes seen in the neighbourhood of marked tuberculoid lesions.

**Histopathology**—This varies widely according to the clinical variety of the lesions as described under Symptomatology. In the 'simple' variety of lesion the changes take the form of cellular infiltration of the small round cell type, partly diffuse, partly peri-vascular and to some extent peri-neural. There is an absence of the changes described below as 'tuberculoid' and 'lepromatous'. In the writer's experience, clinically simple lesions often show slight tuberculoid histology, and occasionally early lepromatous changes.

In lesions of the 'tuberculoid' variety, whether in the skin, the cutaneous nerve, or the nerve trunk, the characteristic histological appearance is very similar to that produced by infection of the tissues with tubercle bacilli, hence the term 'tuberculoid'.

The lesions consist essentially of small foci of epithelioid cells, often surrounded by areas of round cell infiltration, and often in the centre showing Langhan's giant cells and occasionally necrosis. (It is this necrosis which causes the nerve abscess, and the ulceration of the skin patches occasionally seen.) The small foci frequently coalesce and form large masses. In these lesions, bacilli are usually relatively few, and may be very difficult to detect in smears or sections. For some reason which is not clear, in the neural type of leprosy there is a marked tendency for these lesions to appear in the terminal nerve branches in the skin, from whence the changes spread up the subcutaneous nerves, and frequently cause marked lesions in the nerve trunks. Hence the anæsthesia and nerve involvement in the neural type of leprosy.

In the neural type of leprosy, these changes are found only in certain sites, namely, in certain areas of skin, in cutaneous nerves and nerve trunks, and sometimes in lymph nodes. There is no similar involvement of the skin as a whole, or of the mucous membranes, internal organs, etc.

**Lepromatous type** **Morbid anatomy**—The changes in the skin are described under Symptomatology. In the active phases of the disease the skin is thickened, has lost its elasticity and has a greyish white colour on section. There are often thickening and infiltration in the subcutaneous tissues. Peripheral nerves may show thickening, usually of slight or moderate degree, over a considerable part of their course. There is frequently a slight generalized involvement of lymph nodes and lymphatic vessels. The alimentary tract is affected only at its upper end, with infiltration of the mucous membrane of the mouth and pharynx. The upper part of the respiratory tract is also affected in a similar way, and this affection may extend down into the bronchi and bronchioles, but there is no affection of the parenchyma of the lungs. There is frequently slight enlargement of the liver and spleen caused by a chronic interstitial infiltration, and these organs may show a slightly irregular surface and a mottled appearance on section. The testes often show chronic infiltration and enlargement but may be atrophied. The vascular system shows little affection, the heart and larger vessels and the arteries usually being normal, but the veins in

the affected tissues often show slight chronic inflammatory changes. The central nervous system is not affected.

**Histopathology**—Wherever the lepromatous lesions are found, their histopathology is roughly the same. The tissues show interstitial infiltration with inflammatory cells, the cells however being very different in character from those seen in lesions of the neural type. The epithelioid cells are few and Langhan's cells are absent. There is no marked tendency towards the involvement of nerve as compared with other tissues, most types of tissues being invaded. The characteristic cell is the histiocyte, in which the protoplasm frequently undergoes fatty change with the formation of vacuoles which may be filled with fatty material and masses of acid-fast bacilli ('foamy' cell of Virchow). In this type of lesion bacilli are demonstrated in large numbers with great ease. Such lesions are found in the skin, the nerves, the mucous membranes, the lymphatic glands, the bone marrow, and the internal organs.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

There is almost invariably a considerable latent period between the time when bacilli enter the body and the definite appearance of the signs of leprosy, but it is only in exceptional circumstances that the time of the transmission of infection can be fixed with any accuracy. In such cases, latent periods as short as a few weeks and as long as twenty years or more have been reported. Some books describe prodromal symptoms with malaise, fever, rigors and pains in various parts of the body, as commonly occurring before definite signs of leprosy appear and before diagnosis becomes possible.

In the experience of the writer and he believes, of most other leprosy workers, such prodromal symptoms are very rare. Such symptoms are not common even some time after clear signs of leprosy are evident. Such reports suggest strongly that the diagnosis of the disease has been unnecessarily delayed until the disease has become generalized and 'reaction' has occurred.

The onset of the symptoms varies greatly. In countries such as India where most people are not highly susceptible, the onset is usually gradual, often very gradual, very commonly there is seen a single initial slowly spreading lesion with no general symptoms whatever. Some workers have regarded such initial lesions as the primary lesions at the site of the original infection. This seems doubtful, but the possibility of some initial lesions being primary cannot be ignored. In other patients, the lesions from the start are multiple. Several patches may appear in various parts of the body, and slowly spread. In other countries, and even in India in those persons who are more highly susceptible, the onset of the disease may be much more sudden, and there may be a rapid appearance of lesions in many parts of the body, sometimes with malaise, pain in the limbs, fever, etc., cases with such an onset however are relatively few.

**Types of leprosy**—Leprosy is usually a generalized or systematic infection, and the infection is rarely if ever confined entirely to one particular tissue (although in certain cases the recognizable lesions may be so confined). Clinically, however, leprosy shows itself in two main forms to which the term *neural* and *lepromatous* are now being applied. The definition of these two main types of leprosy adopted at the International Leprosy Congress 1938 has already been given. The common clinical manifestations of these two main types are here described.

still recognizable, are often widely separated by whitish streaks of chronic inflammatory tissue. These tissues may have undergone caseation and, where the areas of caseation are large, nerve abscess may be formed. In chronic long-standing cases of the neural type, the nerve, instead of being thickened, may be thin and atrophic, and consist of little more than fibrous tissue.

In the areas supplied by affected nerves, trophic lesions will often be found in the form of decalcification, rarefaction and absorption of bones. The only other change worthy of note in neural cases is the slight enlargement of lymphatic glands sometimes seen in the neighbourhood of marked tuberculoid lesions.

**Histopathology**—This varies widely according to the clinical variety of the lesions as described under Symptomatology. In the 'simple' variety of lesion the changes take the form of cellular infiltration of the small round cell type, partly diffuse, partly peri-vascular and to some extent peri-neural. There is an absence of the changes described below as 'tuberculoid' and 'lepromatous'. In the writer's experience, clinically simple lesions often show slight tuberculoid histology, and occasionally early lepromatous changes.

In lesions of the 'tuberculoid' variety, whether in the skin the cutaneous nerve, or the nerve trunk the characteristic histological appearance is very similar to that produced by infection of the tissues with tubercle bacilli, hence the term 'tuberculoid'.

The lesions consist essentially of small foci of epithelioid cells, often surrounded by areas of round cell infiltration, and often in the centre showing Langhans' giant cells and occasionally necrosis. (It is this necrosis which causes the nerve abscess, and the ulceration of the skin patches occasionally seen.) The small foci frequently coalesce and form large masses. In these lesions, bacilli are usually relatively few, and may be very difficult to detect in smears or sections. For some reason which is not clear, in the neural type of leprosy there is a marked tendency for these lesions to appear in the terminal nerve branches in the skin, from whence the changes spread up the subcutaneous nerves, and frequently cause marked lesions in the nerve trunks. Hence the anaesthesia and nerve involvement in the neural type of leprosy.

In the neural type of leprosy, these changes are found only in certain sites, namely, in certain areas of skin, in cutaneous nerves and nerve trunks, and sometimes in lymph nodes. There is no similar involvement of the skin as a whole or of the mucous membranes internal organs etc.

**Lepromatous type. Morbid anatomy**—The changes in the skin are described under Symptomatology. In the active phases of the disease the skin is thickened, has lost its elasticity and has a greyish white colour on section. There are often thickening and infiltration in the subcutaneous tissues. Peripheral nerves may show thickening usually of slight or moderate degree over a considerable part of their course. There is frequently a slight generalized involvement of lymph nodes and lymphatic vessels. The alimentary tract is affected only at its upper end, with infiltration of the mucous membrane of the mouth and pharynx. The upper part of the respiratory tract is also affected in a similar way, and this affection may extend down into the bronchi and bronchioles but there is no affection of the parenchyma of the lungs. There is frequently slight enlargement of the liver and spleen caused by a chronic interstitial infiltration, and these organs may show a slightly irregular surface and a mottled appearance on section. The testes often show chronic infiltration and enlargement but may be atrophied. The vascular system shows little affection the heart and larger vessels and the arteries usually being normal, but the veins in

the affected tissues often show slight chronic inflammatory changes. The central nervous system is not affected.

**Histopathology**—Wherever the lepromatous lesions are found their histopathology is roughly the same. The tissues show interstitial infiltration with inflammatory cells, the cells however being very different in character from those seen in lesions of the neural type. The epithelioid cells are few and Langhans cells are absent. There is no marked tendency towards the involvement of nerve as compared with other tissues, most types of tissues being invaded. The characteristic cell is the histiocyte in which the protoplasm frequently undergoes fatty change with the formation of vacuoles which may be filled with fatty material and masses of acid fast bacilli (forming cell of Virchow). In this type of lesion bacilli are demonstrated in large numbers with great ease. Such lesions are found in the skin, the nerves, the mucous membranes, the lymphatic glands, the bone marrow, and the internal organs.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

There is almost invariably a considerable latent period between the time when bacilli enter the body and the definite appearance of the signs of leprosy, but it is only in exceptional circumstances that the time of the transmission of infection can be fixed with any accuracy. In such cases latent periods as short as a few weeks and as long as twenty years or more have been reported. Some books describe prodromal symptoms with malaise, fever, rigors and pains in various parts of the body, as commonly occurring before definite signs of leprosy appear and before diagnosis becomes possible.

In the experience of the writer and he believes of most other leprosy workers, such prodromal symptoms are very rare. Such symptoms are not common even some time after clear signs of leprosy are evident. Such reports suggest strongly that the diagnosis of the disease has been unnecessarily delayed until the disease has become generalized and 'reaction' has occurred.

The onset of the symptoms varies greatly. In countries such as India where most people are not highly susceptible the onset is usually gradual, often very gradual. Very commonly there is seen a single initial slowly spreading lesion with no general symptoms whatever. Some workers have regarded such initial lesions as the primary lesions at the site of the original infection. This seems doubtful, but the possibility of some initial lesions being primary cannot be ignored. In other patients the lesions from the start are multiple. Several patches may appear in various parts of the body and slowly spread. In other countries and even in India in those persons who are more highly susceptible the onset of the disease may be much more sudden and there may be a rapid appearance of lesions in many parts of the body, sometimes with malaise, pain in the limbs, fever, etc., cases with such an onset however are relatively few.

**Types of leprosy**—Leprosy is usually a generalized or systematic infection and the infection is rarely if ever confined entirely to one particular tissue (although in certain cases the recognizable lesions may be so confined). Clinically however leprosy shows itself in two main forms to which the term *neural* and *lepromatous* are now being applied. The definition of these two main types of leprosy adopted at the International Leprosy Congress 1938 has already been given. The common clinical manifestations of these two main types are here described.

## NEURAL TYPE

The lesions seen in cases of the neural type can be divided into two varieties for which the terms *macular*\* and *anæsthetic* may be used

The macular variety (see plate XV) — There appear in the skin one or more patches usually clearly defined, round, oval, or irregular in shape, in which one or more of the following changes are found —

- (a) Loss of pigment
- (b) Diminution in cutaneous sensibility
- (c) Thickening of the cutaneous nerve supply of the area
- (d) Thickening and erythema, particularly at the margin, occasionally going on to ulceration
- (e) Dryness due to impairment of sweat function, scaldiness, failure of hair growth, etc

The loss of pigment is usually not complete. It may be more marked in some parts of the patch than in others. It may be obscured by erythema, or, in countries such as India where such treatment is widely practised, by scarring caused by the application of caustics.

The diminution in cutaneous sensibility varies. It is usually slight in patches on the face, rather more marked in patches on the trunk, and most marked in patches on the limbs, while in individual patches the centre may be more affected than the margin. All sensations are not equally affected, the earliest sensory changes are often those affecting the sensation of heat and cold and pain, later, the sensation of light touch is affected. These sensory changes detectable by the physician are often accompanied by sensory changes described by the patient, such as feeling of hyperæsthesia, and formication, pain and tingling when the part is struck.

The thickening of cutaneous nerves supplying the macule may not be easy to detect, although sometimes it is marked, particularly in cases with marked thickening of the macules. Careful examination made with a knowledge of the distribution of cutaneous nerves will, however, not infrequently reveal nerve thickening, and this thickening may be traced from the patch up the cutaneous branches into the nerve trunks, which may also be thickened (see plate XVI, figures 1 and 2).

Thickening and erythema of the skin are often present in active macules, but they vary greatly in extent and degree. They may be very slight, and affect only the extreme margin, they may be more marked, and affect the whole outer zone of the patch, they may be very marked, and affect the whole patch, in which case they may be accompanied by scaling of the epidermis and occasionally by actual ulceration. Flat patches often become thick and red, and later become flat again. The thickening of patches may be very rough and uneven, and sometimes patches have a papillated appearance (see plate XV, figures 2, 3, and 4).

---

\*The use of the term 'macule'. In general dermatology the term macule is used to signify a circumscribed lesion of the skin with pigmentary change but without elevation or depression. Leprosy workers however have for many years used the term to signify lesions in which there may be a considerable amount of elevation and, since no other more suitable term has been suggested we here use the word 'macule' in this second sense.

---



---

PLATE XV—LEPROSY NEURAL TYPE MACULAR LESIONS

---

- Fig 1—'Simple' macule. Flat pale slightly anæsthetic patches in a child.  
 Fig 2—'Minor tuberculoid' lesion on the back. Slight irregular thickening and erythema at the spreading margin. Definite loss of sensation.  
 Fig 3—Major tuberculoid lesion. Marked irregular thickening and erythema of the whole outer zone of the patch. Patch completely insensate.  
 Fig 4—Major tuberculoid lesion on the back. The whole patch thick rough red, and completely anæsthetic.





Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4

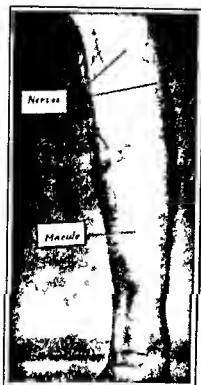


Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 5

**Sub classification of macular lesions**—The International Congress on Leprosy, Cairo, 1938, suggested a sub-classification of cases of leprosy of the neural type on the basis of the nature of the macular lesions. The term simple is applied to those macules which are not, and show no evidence of having previously been, thickened, erythematous, and infiltrated. The simple variety of macular lesion is often associated with little or no nerve involvement. The term tuberculoid is applied to those patches which show definite thickening, erythema, and infiltration, or else show evidence (usually in the form of slight scarring and wrinkling) that they have previously been of this nature.

The degree of tuberculoid change in these patches may be indicated by the terms *minor tuberculoid*, *tuberculoid* and *major tuberculoid*. The tuberculoid variety of macular lesions is often associated with nerve involvement, which may be great. It should be emphasized that the different patches in the same patient are usually all of the same clinical variety.

This sub classification is of considerable importance, because the different varieties of macular lesion are associated with differences in immunological, prognostic and pathological findings. This matter is discussed later.

**Size, number, and spread of macules**—Macules of the types described above may be found anywhere in the body. They may be small ( $\frac{1}{4}$  inch in diameter), or very large (a foot or more in diameter). There may be only one macule, there may be several or many macules, and in cases of reaction (*vide infra*) there may be hundreds of small macules, and, in such cases, the macules being thick, there may be a striking resemblance to a case of leprosy of the lepromatous type with nodule formation.

The active lesions show radial centrifugal spread, and this may cause coalescence of lesions. There may however be long periods of inactivity lasting for months, years, or for life.

Bacteriological examination of these lesions usually gives negative results though sometimes a few bacilli are found and occasionally (usually during temporary phases of reaction) bacilli are fairly numerous.

**The anæsthetic variety**—This form of neural lesion is characterized by the occurrence of leprosy involvement of the peripheral nerve trunks. This may arise as the result of an ascending infection spreading up the cutaneous nerves supplying a macule to the corresponding main nerve, but it may also arise without any apparent involvement of the skin and cutaneous nerves. Certain symptoms appear in the distribution of the affected nerve or nerves. These may be enumerated as follows—

(a) Impairment of cutaneous sensibility in the area supplied by the nerve starting peripherally and extending up the affected limb.

(b) Impairment of sweating and consequent dryness and scaldiness of skin in affected parts.

(c) Paresis or paralysis with wasting of muscles supplied by affected nerves and consequent deformity.

(d) Trophic lesions namely, decalcification and absorption of bones of hand and foot and trophic ulcers frequently with necrosis of underlying bone which may be extruded through the ulcer, commonly with secondary infection of trophic lesions.

Perhaps the commonest nerves to be affected are the ulnar nerve, the peroneal nerve, and the posterior tibial nerve.

#### PLATE XVI.—LEPROSY NEURAL TYPE NERVE INVOLVEMENT

Fig 1—Thickening of cutaneous nerves supplying a patch on the forearm.

Fig 2—Thick branches of cervical plexus supplying patch around the ear.

Fig 3—Paralyses of 5th and 7th nerves. Anæsthesia of cornea and inability to close the eyes.

Fig 4—Trophic ulcers of foot caused by tibial nerve involvement.

Fig 5—Nerve abscesses of ulnar nerve exposed at operation. Two abscesses and markedly thick nerve between are seen.

The affected nerve is usually thick, sometimes very thick, particularly the ulnar and peroneal nerves. Sometimes the involvement of nerves causes nerve abscess (*v. 1*, and see plate XVI, figure 5).

The lesion of the ulnar nerve is most marked above the elbow, this lesion produces anæsthesia of the little and ring fingers, and on the ulnar side of hand and forearm, and later paralysis of small muscles of the hand, with the development of the typical deformed 'claw hand' of ulnar paralysis. The peroneal nerve is often affected where it passes round the neck of the fibula. The result is anæsthesia of the dorsum of the foot and of the outer side of leg, and paresis of the peroneal muscles with the development of 'drop foot'. The posterior tibial nerve is commonly affected on the inner and posterior aspect of the ankle, and the result is anæsthesia and keratosis of the sole of the foot, and trophic ulcers (see plate XVI, figure 4).

Other nerves sometimes affected are the radial nerve, the median nerve, the fifth and seventh cranial nerves and the great auricular nerve. The involvement of the median and radial nerves causes anæsthesia of the hands, trophic lesions, and occasionally 'drop wrist'. Involvement of the fifth and seventh cranial nerves causes anæsthesia of the cornea, paresis of the orbital and facial muscles, ectropion, and lagophthalmos, with great liability to irritation of the eye by unfelt foreign bodies, conjunctivitis, corneal ulcer, etc (see plate XVI, figure 3).

In marked cases of the neural type of the anæsthetic variety, there may be anæsthesia of all the limbs and of most of the trunk and face, and paralysis, trophic lesions, and deformities in the arms, legs, and face.

Bacteriological examination of the skin and nose in cases of the anæsthetic variety of the neural type usually shows no bacilli.

**Nerve trunk involvement, its nature and significance.**—Many patients have both nerve trunk involvement and skin patches which may be simple or tuberculoid, and the nature, significance and the course of the nerve trunk involvement are likely to be the same as those of these patches.

Some patients, however, have nerve trunk involvement only, and in the absence of patches it may be difficult or impossible to assess the nature and significance of the nerve trunk involvement. The more markedly thickened nerves, sometimes with nerve abscess, are usually 'major tuberculoid', and have a corresponding short course and a good prognosis. The period of activity will often be short, but much nerve damage may be done, and permanent disability caused. The less marked forms of nerve thickening are more likely to be of 'minor tuberculoid' or 'simple' nature, with less immediate damage but a greater tendency to chronicity and extension, and even to lepromatous development.

**The neural type in general.**—The chief clinical manifestations of the neural type of leprosy have been outlined. Both types of lesion, macular and anæsthetic, may be present in the same patient. For practical purposes, in cases of the neural type, we may regard the infection as being confined to the macules in the skin and to the affected cutaneous nerves and nerve

#### PLATE XVII—LEPROSY NEURAL TYPE TUBERCULOID REACTION AND SPONTANEOUS SUBSIDENCE

- Fig 1—Marked inflammation and slight ulceration of tuberculoid lesion on face. Lepa bacilli fairly numerous in the discharge.  
 Fig 2—The same patient a few months later. Complete subsidence, no bacilli found. During the succeeding eight years only very slight temporary lesions appeared elsewhere.  
 Fig 3—Marked general tuberculoid reaction.  
 Fig 4—Same patient about a year later. Subsidence was complete and permanent (Eighteen years observation).



Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4

PLATE XVIII



Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4

trunks There is as a rule no constitutional disturbance, except in cases with secondary infection or with reaction (*vide infra*)

Of all the symptoms described above, there are only two which are diagnostic of leprosy, namely, definite thickening of nerves and impairment of cutaneous sensation (*see* Diagnosis)

There remain to be discussed certain matters common to cases of the neural type in general

**Nerve abscess**—One curious feature of leprosy of the neural type seen in India, and particularly in Bengal, is the not infrequent occurrence of oval or circular swellings on leprosy nerves The swellings may occur in cutaneous nerves, when they are usually small (the size of a pea), or in nerve trunks, when they may be much larger The swellings are cold abscesses, which may burst into the surrounding tissues, and may discharge through the skin (*see* plate XVI, figure 5)

**'Reaction' in neural cases** (*see* plate XVII figures 1 to 4) —In some cases of leprosy of the neural type, there may be seen a phase of acute or sub-acute 'tuberculoid' activity of the lesions To this condition the term reaction is applied This reaction is probably of an allergic nature It may occur naturally with no apparent cause, in some parts of India it is most commonly seen in the hot seasons of the year It may be induced by the oral administration of potassium iodide, or by the administration of iodine in other forms, for in some cases of leprosy, iodine has the specific effect of inducing lepra reaction reaction may also be induced by the injection of substances of an antigenic nature, such as tuberculin and lepromin and vaccines Reaction may follow attacks of intercurrent disease such as malaria Finally reaction is not uncommon in the puerperium in leprosy women

The clinical manifestations of tuberculoid reaction are an acute or sub-acute inflammation of the lesions present, of the patches in the skin which occasionally ulcerate, and of the affected nerves which may show caseation During reaction, new leprosy lesions may appear in the skin and nerves, sometimes in large numbers or previously undetected lesions may be rendered easily detectable At the beginning of the reactionary phase, there is often an increase in the number of bacilli detectable in smears taken from the lesions, and previously negative lesions may become positive

The condition of reaction in neural cases is always a temporary one, and it subsides spontaneously, sometimes in a few weeks or months but the reaction may cause severe damage to the nerves with permanent disability and deformity Reaction of the variety described in cases of the neural type, although its appearance may be alarming, is often not a bad prognostic sign, since it is frequently followed by long periods of inactivity of the disease, and it may be followed by permanent arrest of the disease In a few cases however reaction may recur, even several times and at short intervals The importance of recognizing reaction is emphasized later

**The course of the disease in the neural type**—The disease is localized to certain areas of skin and certain nerves, and as long as the disease remains in the neural form, this marked tendency to localization is maintained In some cases the number and the size of the lesions may show little or no increase over long periods, while in other cases, the size and number of the

#### PLATE XVIII—LEPROSY LEPROMATOUS TYPE

Fig 1—Slight diffuse lepromatous infiltration of skin of face and body Skin slightly thick smooth soft and shiny

Fig 2—More marked diffuse infiltration with tendency to nodulation on face and ears with macules on the chest

Fig 3—Marked generalized nodulation (Such cases are rare in India)

Fig 4—Lepromatous eye affection Leprosy irido-cyclitis with hypopyon Note lepromatous infiltration of face

patches may increase steadily, and the number of nerves involved and the degree of involvement may also increase. This increase in the size and the number of lesions may be extremely gradual, or, in cases with reaction it may be sudden and marked. In some cases, the extent and degree of skin involvement may show little or no increase while the extent and degree of involvement of the nerves and nerve trunks supplying the affected areas may increase markedly, with resulting deformities trophic lesions, etc.

There are some cases of the neural type which tend to develop into cases of the lepromatous type, but recent studies have shown that this change from neural to lepromatous type is relatively rare, and is largely confined to neural cases of the 'simple' variety.

The course of the disease in cases of the neural type varies markedly with the sub-type.

(i) *The course in neural cases of 'simple' sub-type.*—Such cases do not often remain indefinitely of this sub-type, a few lesions of this type may subside spontaneously. Some become lepromatous and follow a corresponding course as described later. Most of the others become tuberculoid usually minor tuberculoid and follow a corresponding course.

(ii) *The course in neural cases of minor tuberculoid sub-type.*—Minor tuberculoid cases are often characterized by extreme chronicity. There are some cases in which lesions remain localized and subside within a relatively short time but in many cases the slight indolent activity goes on for years with extension of the lesions of the margin and healing at the centre with from time to time the development of new lesions and also a tendency for increasing involvement of nerve trunks. Those cases of leprosy which gradually over a period of many years become crippled and deformed are frequently of this type. Sometimes a temporary phase of reaction with more marked tuberculoid activity will be seen and this may be followed by quiescence and arrest but is often followed by a resumption of the chronic minor tuberculoid activity.

Minor tuberculoid cases may remain mildly active for many years sometimes up to thirty years or more. In such cases apparent arrest even of long standing may be followed by renewed activity.

(iii) *The course of tuberculoid and major tuberculoid cases.*—In such cases the skin lesions are clinically more marked and the degree of nerve involvement is also greater as also is the tendency to tuberculoid reaction with positive bacteriological findings but nevertheless the periods of activity of the lesions are often very much shorter and may be limited to a few months or a year or two while the tendency to extreme chronicity is much less marked.

In some cases one or a few marked lesions may appear suddenly and spread for a short time but this extension will soon stop subsidence will occur and the disease will often remain completely inactive for long periods and often permanently. Even very severe cases of generalized major tuberculoid reaction with numerous bacilli in the lesions may subside permanently and completely, and the more marked the degree of tuberculoid activity the greater is this tendency to subsidence.

Subsidence of marked tuberculoid activity is occasionally followed by minor tuberculoid activity of long duration or after a considerable interval by short periods of recurrence of major tuberculoid activity. This recurrence however is usually not repeated many times and the disease commonly becomes quiescent and arrested. These phases of tuberculoid activity however may cause severe damage to nerves with permanent deformity.

(iv) *The signs of subsidence in neural cases.*—The patches instead of being infiltrated and raised become thinned and atrophic and signs of fibrosis in the form of wrinkling and scarring of the skin are often seen.

Similar changes are found but usually at a later period in affected nerves which instead of being thickened and hard become thin and fibrotic. As the result of this fibrosis trophic changes often increase and this increase must not be taken as indicating renewed activity of the disease.

### LEPROMATOUS TYPE

As has been already mentioned in the definition of the two main types of leprosy, the lepromatous type of lesion is seen in cases of the severer 'malignant' form of the disease, in which there is little or no resistance to the infection, the bacilli multiplying and spreading in the tissues of the body.



with little or no tissue reaction. The lesions are more diffuse in nature and more widespread throughout the body than in the neural type of leprosy, for the skin, nerves, mucous membranes, lymphatic glands and internal organs frequently show invasion. Clinically, however, the chief lesions are in the skin and in the mucous membranes.

The skin lesions (see plate XVIII, figures 1 to 4) — There is among medical men a common idea that this type of leprosy is characterized by the formation of nodules, this may possibly be true of leprosy in some other countries. In India, however, we find that nodule formation is relatively rare. The lesions of the lepromatous type of leprosy seen in the skin are, in order of frequency, as follows —

- 1 Slight diffuse thickening sometimes with erythema the skin having a shiny appearance and giving a soft 'velvety' feeling on palpation.
- 2 Macules or circumscribed areas of skin with pigmentary change differing from the macules of the neural type by having a smoother surface and an indefinite margin by showing no sensory change or thickening of the cutaneous nerves and by the fact that many bacilli are found on bacteriological examination.
- 3 Nodule formation in the skin or subcutaneous tissue the nodules varying markedly in size and sometimes being so small as to resemble papules.
- 4 Ulcers caused by breaking down of nodules.

In cases of the lepromatous type the lesions may, to begin with, appear to be localized in certain parts of the body, but this finding is often more apparent than real for bacteriological examination of apparently unaffected skin in other parts of the body will frequently show bacilli and, in severe cases of the lepromatous type, almost invariably the skin of the whole body is affected. Clinically, however the lesions are much more noticeable in certain parts of the body than in others particularly on the face and ears, the back, the buttocks, the knees, the elbows, and the dorsal aspect of the hands.

One of the manifestations of leprosy infiltration of the skin is the loss of hair, which may be seen all over the body, but is most commonly seen on the face affecting the brows, chin and lips.

Other lesions of the lepromatous type — In this type of leprosy, sensory change is usually absent in the skin lesions, although there may be some anæsthesia of the limbs caused by leprosy involvement of the peripheral nerve trunks. The nerves are involved, but the nerve thickening is usually much less than in the 'neural' type of leprosy, and anæsthesia trophic lesions paralysis, etc., are consequently a less marked feature. It should be mentioned, however, that in cases of the lepromatous type in which the disease in the skin gradually dies out the subsidence of skin lesions (shown by fibrosis, wrinkling and thinning of the affected skin) is very frequently accompanied by increase in anæsthesia, trophic lesions, etc., caused by fibrotic changes in the nerves which accompany the process of healing.

In the lepromatous type of leprosy, the mucous membranes are very frequently affected, the mucous membrane of the nose, pharynx and larynx being infiltrated, and sometimes showing nodulation and ulceration. Such lesions in the nose may cause destruction of the nasal septum and falling in of the nose, and in the larynx may cause hoarseness, and dyspnoea. Symptoms of leprosy infiltration are also frequently seen in the eye (see plate XVIII, figure 4), in the form of chronic leprosy irido-cyclitis and leprosy infiltration of the cornea. Leprosy invasion of the testes is also common, and is sometimes accompanied by loss of hair on the body, enlargement of the mammary glands, and other changes caused by lack of internal secretion of the testes. The other internal organs the liver, spleen, bone marrow, etc., frequently show leprosy lesions on post mortem examination, but clinical symptoms are usually absent.

**Reaction in lepromatous cases**—Reaction in the neural cases has already been discussed. A condition somewhat similar is also seen in cases of the lepromatous type, but in such cases the allergic nature of the reaction is much less clear, the clinical manifestations of reaction are often very different, and the prognostic significance of the reaction is also different.

In lepromatous cases, the manifestations of the reaction often include thickening, erythema and sometimes ulceration of the infiltrations and nodulations in the skin and mucous membranes, the appearance of new nodules and infiltrations, sometimes very numerous and extensive, in the skin and subcutaneous tissue, and increase in the symptoms caused by leprosy involvement of the mucous membranes, particularly of the nose and of the larynx (sometimes with epistaxis and blockage of nose, or dyspnoea caused by blockage of the larynx), and acute or subacute leprosy irido-cyclitis. These clinical manifestations are frequently accompanied by constitutional disturbance, fever, rigors, prostration, etc.

Reaction in lepromatous cases may be very severe, and not infrequently lasts for a considerable time, weeks, or months, and when it finally does subside, the patient's condition is often worse than it was before the reaction. Also the reaction is apt to recur periodically, with a progressive deterioration in the patient's condition. Such reaction, however, even if very severe, rarely causes death, though death from intercurrent disease during or after the reaction is not uncommon. The importance of recognizing reaction is emphasized later.

**The course of lepromatous cases**—The course of the lepromatous cases is very different from that of the neural cases. The disease to begin with may be localized to certain limited areas of skin, and there are a few cases in which, after a limited period of localized activity, the disease subsides, but in the majority of cases the disease gradually progresses, the lesions become more marked and more widespread, and, finally, generalized.

This process may be relatively rapid, taking only a few months or it may be much slower and take several years. The process of generalization may be accelerated and made more obvious by the occurrence of reaction, and, in severe rapidly progressing cases, these reactions may occur repeatedly at short intervals and the general condition of the patient may rapidly deteriorate. In such cases, death from intercurrent disease and weakness is not uncommon, and the whole course of the disease may be only a few years. Even in such cases, however, if the patient can be tided over the period of intense activity, sooner or later subsidence and arrest of the disease may be seen, such subsidence, however, being sometimes accompanied by marked disability, deformity, permanent eye affection, etc.

In other cases, however, the disease is much more chronic and this is seen particularly in patients in whom the infiltrations and nodules are hard and fibrous, although often prominent. In such cases reaction may be entirely absent, and there may be long periods during which clinical activity and any extension of the lesions may be very limited if not entirely absent. The increase of the disease may be very slow, and subsidence when it begins may be correspondingly slow. In such cases, though the course of the disease of the lepromatous type may be very prolonged, twenty years or more, subsidence may leave the patient relatively little disabled and deformed.

Thus two varieties of lepromatous cases have been described, one being acute and rapid, and the other being of great chronicity. Between these two extremes come most cases of the lepromatous type. The disease is serious and may shorten life considerably, but subsidence with a greater or less degree of deformity and disability is not uncommon, and the prognosis of lepromatous cases, though grave, is not so hopeless as is sometimes stated.

**Signs of subsidence in lepromatous cases**—These are the gradual disappearance of inflammatory changes in the lesions, shrinkage of the lesions with a diminution and final disappearance of the bacilli in them, the skin being left in a shrunk or shrivelled and flaccid condition, and often pendulous. Similar changes are seen in the lesions in the mucous membranes and in the nerves, and the fibrosis of nerves is frequently accompanied by actual increase in the trophic changes, which should not be taken as indicating activity of the disease itself.

### CASES OF DOUBTFUL CLASSIFICATION

While nine cases out of ten, or even nineteen out of twenty, can be classified as neural or lepromatous on clinical grounds with reasonable accuracy, there are cases in which this is difficult or impossible, because the lesions are not entirely characteristic of either type, and show some of the features of both.

There may, for example, be infiltrated patches with anæsthesia and some nerve involvement, but the patches may be smooth, have an indefinite margin and show numerous bacilli in smears. Less commonly some of the lesions may be localized and appear to be neural, while other lesions may be more diffuse and appear to be lepromatous.

Bacteriological examination may be of little value in classification of such cases, since neural cases in the phase of reaction may show bacilli in considerable number. A very large number of bacilli in smears, however, does suggest the classification of the case as lepromatous.

Histological examination will, in some doubtful cases, make classification possible, but often clinically atypical cases will show atypical histology, and both tuberculoid and lepromatous elements may be seen in sections.

The lepromin test is of some value in classification and prognosis of such doubtful cases, a positive result indicating the probable neural nature of the case, with a correspondingly better prognosis.

In some of these cases the atypical clinical and histological findings are temporary, often associated with a phase of reaction. In a few weeks or months the case may become more typical, either neural or lepromatous, with corresponding clinical and histological findings and prognosis.

There is, however, a small number of cases in which clinical and other abnormalities persist, possibly for years, and accurate classification and prognosis are impossible.

### THE DISEASE IN GENERAL

**The relation between the two main types**—The idea that the neural and lepromatous forms of the disease may be caused by different strains of the organism is discussed and criticized elsewhere.

The idea has sometimes been expressed that the neural and lepromatous forms of the disease are merely early and late phases of leprosy, but that this is usually not so is now generally recognized. In many patients, the disease starts in the neural form and remains in the neural form throughout. In other patients, the disease starts in lepromatous form and remains in the lepromatous form throughout. The two main types of leprosy are apparently clinical manifestations of two widely different ways in which the body may react to leprosy infection. Those persons in whom there is some degree of immunity usually show the neural form, while those in whom there is little or no immunity show a much greater tendency to develop the lepromatous form.

It is true that there are some cases of leprosy which are not characteristic of either of these two main types, and which show some features of both, but these cases are, as a rule, not numerous. It is also true that there are

some cases of leprosy of the neural type which later develop into cases of lepromatous type, but it is believed that these are not numerous and that they mostly belong to the sub-variety of the neural type which has been called 'simple'. The classification of cases of leprosy is not merely of academic interest, since it has important bearings on prognosis and treatment, and also on preventive work, since the lepromatous cases are the infectious cases.

The wide differences in the clinical manifestations of the two main types of leprosy, and the less marked but the still definite differences between the different varieties of the neural type of lesion, have been outlined. The clinical differences are associated with differences in bacteriological findings, immunological findings, histological findings, course and prognosis. This relationship is outlined in the following table:—

TABLE XIII

Findings	NEURO-MACULAR			Lepromatous
	Simple	Tuberculoid	Tuberculoid major	
<i>Clinical</i>	Patches flat and smooth. Nerve thickening, slight anaesthesia sometimes not marked.	Margins of patch show thickening, roughness, often papillation. Anaesthesia definite. Nerves often moderately thick.	Thickening of patch marked and not confined to margin. Anaesthesia marked. Nerve thickening often marked.	Skin lesions smooth ill-defined, usually infiltrated, may be nodular. Mucous membranes, etc., affected. Anaesthesia often found in limbs, but not in skin lesions.
<i>Bacteriological</i>	Usually negative.	Rarely positive.	Usually negative, may be positive in 'reaction'.	Always positive.
<i>Lepromin test.</i>	Negative or weak positive.	Rarely negative, usually weak or moderately positive.	Practically always positive, usually moderate or strong positive.	Nearly always negative.
<i>Histopathology</i>	Cellular infiltration, not 'tuberculoid'.	Definitely tuberculoid infiltration, but of moderate degree.	Markedly tuberculoid infiltration, sometimes caseation.	Foamy cell leproma. No tuberculoid structure.
<i>Prognosis and course.</i>	Doubtful. May become lepromatous, may become tuberculoid, or may subside.	Disease sometimes chronic and progressive to some extent. Rarely becomes lepromatous, subsidence fairly common.	Activity of disease often limited. Complete subsidence often seen. Very rarely becomes lepromatous.	Disease is usually progressive and becomes generalized. Subsidence rarely seen early, more often late after long period of activity. Relapse common.

**Reaction.**—There are certain points which have already been mentioned but of which further discussion is advisable. The first is the occurrence, in both of the main types of leprosy, of the acute or sub-acute condition which has been called 'reaction'. The failure to recognize this

condition and the fact that it usually subsides, sometimes in a relatively short time, even without any special treatment, has been a frequent cause of misunderstanding regarding the disease itself and the value of treatment.

The onset of reaction frequently brings the patient to the doctor, and the rapid subsidence of reaction often seen on the institution of treatment in such patients should not be attributed to that treatment. This mistake has often been made, and this fact helps to explain some of the 'rapid cures' of leprosy which have been reported from time to time. Many of the photographs showing patients before and after treatment, which have been published in textbooks and articles, are really photographs of lepra reaction and natural subsidence (see plate XVII, figures 1, 2, 3 and 4).

**Ulceration in leprosy**—In both the main types of leprosy, ulcers may be seen, and there is a tendency to regard ulceration as indicating that patients are infective. The ulcers seen in cases of the neural type are of a trophic nature caused frequently by trauma in tissues the vitality of which has been impaired by the destruction of the nerve supply including the vaso motor fibres. These ulcers are usually seen in the feet or hands, and usually discharge no bacilli. In the lepromatous type of leprosy however ulceration is also seen most commonly in the nasal mucous membrane and less commonly in the skin lesions. These ulcers discharge very large numbers of bacilli.

**Eye lesions of leprosy**—In both types of leprosy, lesions of the eye are seen. In cases of the neural type the lesions are caused by the destruction of the nerve supply, the fifth and seventh nerves. There is no actual leprous infiltration of the eye although there is frequently secondary (non-leprous) infection. In the lepromatous type of leprosy, however, the eye affections are caused by actual leprous infiltration of the eye, both superficial and deep (see plate XVIII, figure 4).

## DIAGNOSIS

By a wrong diagnosis of leprosy very grave injustice may be done, since the social consequences of a diagnosis of leprosy are often extremely serious. Without adequate grounds a diagnosis of leprosy should never be made and in doubtful cases, patients should be kept under observation until signs either disappear or become more definite.

**Cardinal signs of leprosy**—It cannot be too strongly emphasized that there are only three diagnostic signs of leprosy, namely, impairment of skin sensation thickening of nerves and the finding of acid fast bacilli. An excellent rule is 'Never diagnose leprosy unless at least one of these three signs is present'. Very occasionally one may have to depart from this rule, but only in very special circumstances (see p 509). Generally one may say that, even if a case appears exactly like one of leprosy, unless one of these three signs is definitely present the diagnosis of leprosy should not be made.

In diagnosis, thorough clinical examination is of the utmost importance. The whole body area should be examined in a good light for areas of loss of pigment, or of infiltration, which may be very slight. Palpation for thickened nerves should be carried out, and the skin sensation of the whole body should be tested. In doubtful cases, bacteriological examination of suspected areas of the skin may be needed in diagnosis, but such cases are few.

**Testing for loss of sensation**—Loss of sensation is usually found either in the macules or else in the distal part of the limbs. The loss of sensation is usually partial and not complete and may be very definite in some lesions and only very slight in other lesions. The most useful way to test for loss of sensation is to test the sensation of light touch. The patient's eyes are shut or bandaged the skin is touched with a piece of paper or a feather and the patient is asked to indicate with a finger the place touched. Failure to respond indicates impairment. Sometimes particularly in patches on the face, touch sensation is retained

while the sensations of pain and of heat and cold are lost. The sensation of pain may be tested by means of pin pricks in the suspected area and in normal skin, the patient being asked to say which he feels most. In doubtful cases the heat and cold sensation may be tested.

Patience and care are necessary in testing sensation, and allowance must sometimes be made for the patient's mental condition, which may be dull. It should also be remembered that the skin sensation is normally dull in certain parts of the body, for example, over the elbows and in areas of hard thick skin.

**The detection of nerve thickening.**—Here a word of warning is necessary. A nerve is not thick merely because it can be felt. Many normal nerves (e.g. the ulnar, posterior tibial, peroneal and sometimes the great auricular) are palpable and give pain on pressure. A nerve should only be stated to be thick when it is definitely more thick than the same nerve on the other side of the body or, if both sides are affected, thicker than the same nerve in a person of similar build. Examination for thickened nerves should include palpation of the ulnar above the elbow, the great auricular, the peroneal, and superficial peroneal nerves, and also palpation of the subcutaneous tissue around and proximal to macules, for thickened cutaneous nerves.

**The demonstration of acid-fast bacilli.**—As has been stated above, this is not often necessary for diagnosis, but more often for judging whether a patient is infectious or not.

**Sites of examination.**—There is a common idea that the best way to demonstrate bacilli is to examine smears taken from the nasal mucous membrane. This is not so. Bacilli are much more commonly found in the skin. Nasal examination may be necessary in order to judge whether a patient is highly infectious or not, but it should be done in addition to, and not instead of, examination of the skin.

Bacilli are rarely found in anæsthetic areas or in macules of the neural type, though there may be a few found in the erythematous margins of such macules. Bacilli are found in the lesions which have been described above as lepromatous, i.e. areas of slight diffuse infiltration, thickening, nodule formation, etc. In cases of the lepromatous type, bacilli are very frequently found in the skin of the lobe of the ear, sometimes even in the absence of clearly visible lesions.

**Methods of making smears.**—The most generally useful method of examining the skin is known as the 'slit' method. Take up a fold of the suspected skin between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, maintaining pressure to prevent bleeding, and with a sharp scalpel held in the right hand, make a slit vertically downwards into the corium. Still maintaining the finger pressure, with the point of the scalpel scrape the bottom and sides of the slit, collecting material on the point of the scalpel. Tissue cells, not blood are required. If there is excess of bleeding, wipe away the blood before scraping. Make a smear of the scraping on a slide, fix by heat, stain, and examine.

In nasal examination, inspect the nasal septum for lesions, take a suitable instrument and scrape away cells, not blood or mucus, from the lesion if visible, or from the septum near the anterior end of the inferior turbinate bone, make a smear on a slide, fix and stain.

It is most important that the slides and instruments used in making bacteriological examinations should be clean and free from acid-fast bacilli. This means that old slides should be used only after very thorough cleansing, and that instruments must be very thoroughly cleaned and sterilized between each examination.

**Staining and examination of smears.**—The method of staining used is that of Ziehl-Neelsen which is described in many textbooks. The most important thing is that the stain shall be properly made, the basic fuchsin being ground in a mortar with a pestle to get proper solution in the absolute alcohol. It is not necessary to heat the slide in order to stain the bacilli, for if the stain is properly made, the bacilli will be stained in the cold in about twenty minutes. Watery acid or acid-alcohol may be used for decolorization which should not be carried too far, and which should leave the film still slightly pink on washing with water. For counter-stain a strong watery solution of methylene blue is best.

When examining a slide, it is important to remember that other things besides bacilli may appear red, certain granules in some cells, fragments of horny epidermis, deposited stain may all be mistaken for acid fast bacilli. The bacilli are characteristic in size and colour, and there should be no doubt about the genuineness of the bacilli seen. A safe rule is, 'If there is doubt, it is not a bacillus'. Bacilli, if present, are usually fairly numerous, often very numerous. If

only one or two bacilli are found in a whole smear it is advisable to repeat the examination in order to verify the final

**Cases with no cardinal signs**—It has been stated that if none of the three cardinal signs is found a diagnosis is very rarely justifiable. The most important exception is met in cases of leprosy in children. In young children who have been in close contact with an infectious case one often finds on the face, body, buttocks or limbs depigmented patches in which there are no sensory changes, no bacilli and no thickening of nerves. In such cases if the patch is typical in appearance and in site a diagnosis of leprosy may be justifiable but only when there is a history of close contact with an infectious case. It should be remembered that many other diseases (the chief of which is tinea) may cause apparent depigmentation of skin in children.

**Miscellaneous points**—A mere diagnosis of leprosy is often of very limited value; the diagnosis frequently needs to be supplemented by notes as to whether the disease is of the neural or of the lepromatous type, whether the disease is active or inactive and whether the case is an 'open' or 'closed' one. In determining these points an accurate history and careful clinical examination and in some cases bacteriological examination are needed.

## DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Three groups of diseases may be mistaken for leprosy.

**Diseases which produce lesions in the skin which may resemble leprosy**—These may be enumerated as follows. Secondary and tertiary syphilide, tinea, leucoderma, leishmania infections of the skin (dermal leishmaniasis and oriental sore), psoriasis, yaws, lichen planus, erythema nodosum, dermatitis (sometimes occupational). Confusion may also occur between leprosy with reaction and acute inflammatory conditions of the skin such as erysipelas and cellulitis. Tertiary syphilide may closely resemble a macule of the neural type of leprosy. Dermal leishmaniasis (a post kala azar condition found commonly in Bengal, Bihar, Assam and Madras) often produces depigmented patches, infiltrations and nodules which very closely resemble those of leprosy. Psoriasis with marked scaling of the lesions may produce an apparent but not real loss of skin sensation. Leucoderma produces marked depigmentation with no loss of sensation. The absence of the three cardinal signs of leprosy mentioned above distinguishes all these conditions from leprosy.

**Diseases causing loss of cutaneous sensibility**—Many diseases of the central nervous system or of the peripheral nerves may cause some loss of skin sensation. Neuritis may be caused by toxins or by vitamin deficiency. Bernard's disease (neuritis of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve) lead poisoning, polyneuritis (beri beri), cervical rib, syringomyelia, traumatic injury to nerves and diseases of the spinal cord may all produce some loss of sensation in the limbs. Numbness of the limbs may also be produced by interference with the blood supply in conditions such as Raynaud's disease and obliterative endarteritis.

Most of these conditions are rare, some of them very rare. In countries in which leprosy is common a case of leprosy is frequently wrongly diagnosed as one of these rare diseases mentioned. In most of these conditions the distribution of the sensory change is not like that of leprosy and there is no thickening of the nerves as would be expected in leprosy. In most of the nervous diseases mentioned above the motor changes are more marked than the sensory changes; the reverse is usual in leprosy.

**Conditions causing deformities and other lesions resembling the trophic lesions of leprosy**—These include such conditions as the trophic ulcer of the foot and gangrene seen in diabetes, the necrosis and gangrene of

the hands and feet, sometimes seen in Raynaud's disease and obliterative endarteritis, the deformities of tertiary jaws, deformities produced by trauma to nerves, involvement of nerves in callus formation after fractures, etc

**Multiple infections**—One point should be mentioned in conclusion. Not infrequently patients are found suffering from more than one condition of the skin, one of which may be leprosy. The commonest example of this is the combination of leprosy and tinea, for in India many persons, including patients with leprosy, also suffer from tinea versicolor. Other combinations of diseases that are not infrequently found are leprosy and syphilis, and leprosy and dermal leishmaniasis.

## PROGNOSIS

The course of leprosy in its various clinical forms has already been discussed, and it has been seen how greatly this course varies. The statement sometimes made that leprosy is always or almost always progressive and sooner or later fatal is therefore seen to be extremely misleading especially in view of the fact that in most countries where leprosy is common, the neural cases form at least 50 per cent of the cases seen, while in some highly endemic countries such as India and Africa, the proportion of neural cases may vary between 70 and 90 per cent or more, and a high proportion of these is commonly of the tuberculoid sub-type.

It appears desirable to outline what is meant by a good or a bad prognosis in a disease such as leprosy. Leprosy does not affect the vital organs and, in the absence of secondary infection, rarely causes death. Therefore the prognosis is concerned largely with the likely duration and severity of the symptoms caused by leprosy. A good prognosis in leprosy means that the disease will probably increase little, if at all, and will become inactive after a relatively limited period, although there may remain areas of loss of sensation and possibly deformities. By a bad prognosis we mean that the disease will remain active for a very much longer time probably for many years, that during this time there is a possibility, or in highly susceptible persons a probability, of death from weakness or intercurrent disease, and that, if and when the disease does finally subside, there will probably be much more marked disability and deformity.

In prognosis the two chief factors to be considered are the type and sub-type of the disease and the race of the person affected. These two factors are often inter-related since in certain races the lepromatous type predominates, whereas in other races the neural type predominates.

In the neural type of leprosy the prognosis is, on the whole, good, but as already indicated, the nature of the lesions has a bearing on prognosis. If the lesions are of the tuberculoid variety in its more marked forms, the prognosis is usually excellent, whereas the presence of the kind of lesion which has been called 'simple' indicates an uncertain prognosis, since in such cases the disease not infrequently develops later into the lepromatous form.

In the lepromatous type of leprosy the prognosis is definitely poor. As already stated the race of the affected person markedly influences prognosis. Many people of Indian and African races show leprosy in a mild and non-progressive form. In Europeans, and in persons of mixed European and other descent, the disease is much more often severe and progressive, and the same is also true of persons of some other racial groups, e.g. Chinese, Burmese, etc.

In addition to the type of the disease and the race of the affected person, the immunological reaction of the affected patient may influence prognosis.



The lepromin test, if positive, is a definite indication of a relatively good prognosis.

Another factor possibly influencing prognosis is the age at which the disease appears, since children and young people often show relatively little resistance to leprosy, but even in children the definitely tuberculoid lesions have a good prognosis.

The general physical condition of the affected patients and the presence or absence of intercurrent disease have frequently been quoted as having an important bearing on prognosis, but it is believed that their importance can easily be exaggerated.

## TREATMENT

**Introduction**—From ancient times until recently, leprosy has been regarded as a disease for which treatment was of very limited value. Hundreds of different remedies are mentioned in ancient and more recent literature, but the only one widely and persistently used and recommended has been the chaulmoogra group of oils. The history of this treatment is discussed later, and also some notes are given on other forms of treatment advocated in the past and occasionally used now.

During the last thirty years published reports on the value of treatment of leprosy vary markedly. Some writers have reported strikingly beneficial results from various forms of treatment, some of these reports have probably been based on the treatment of cases of the tuberculoid type, probably in the phase of reaction, cases which often show marked clinical improvement even without any treatment. Other writers have reported that treatment is of little or no use, some of these reports are probably based on the treatment of unsuitable patients.

The true position of leprosy treatment is considered to be between these two extremes, and it is the general opinion of experienced workers that provided that patients suitable for treatment are selected, treatment is of definite value, but that beneficial results cannot be rapidly produced.

**Selection of cases suitable for treatment**—Cases suitable for treatment belong to two main groups, firstly, cases of the neural type in which the disease is definitely active, secondly, cases of the lepromatous type which are not too advanced. The marked, chronic, and often inactive cases of leprosy of the neural type, with deformities, ulceration, etc., obtain little or no benefit from treatment. The severe or advanced cases of lepromatous type are frequently difficult or impossible to treat, because of frequent reactions and other complications.

**General treatment**—This is of some importance. The elimination of intercurrent disease, such as syphilis, hookworm, malaria, and amoebiasis, may be necessary. Diet and healthy regime with regular hours, sufficient exercise, and sufficient rest are other matters of importance.

**Special treatment with hydnocarpus preparations**—The term 'special' treatment used here does not signify 'specific', for it is not believed that there is any remedy for leprosy which is specific in the sense that quinine may be specific for malaria, arsenic for syphilis, antimony for kala-azar or the sulphoamide drugs in certain other diseases. Many different forms of treatment have been advocated and are still advocated in leprosy. This is an indication that no one form of treatment is entirely satisfactory. It is, however, the general opinion of experienced workers that the best form of treatment at present available is the administration of some preparation of hydnocarpus oil preferably by injection.

**Historical**—The use of the chaulmoogra group of oils in the treatment of leprosy apparently originated in India at least 2,500 years ago for it is described

in the *Sushruta Samhita* of about that period. It has recently been pointed out that these writings indicate clearly the use of the oil of *Hydnocarpus wightiana*, but later this appears to have been replaced by other oils of the chaulmoogra group, and it is only in recent years that the use of the oil of *Hydnocarpus wightiana* has been resumed in countries such as India, where it is readily available. The use of the chaulmoogra group of oils in the treatment of leprosy spread early from India to other countries, and it was mentioned in Chinese literature many centuries ago.

In the nineteenth century, European physicians in India found this oil being used by practitioners of Indian medicine, and began to take an interest in it. The oil was administered by the mouth and byunction, and various workers in India and other countries tried this form of treatment some reporting some benefit, and others little or none. From 1879 onwards various chemists studied the chaulmoogra oils isolated their fatty acids and prepared their salts and these also were administered by mouth to patients with leprosy. The ethyl esters of chaulmoogra oil were first prepared in 1904 and marketed in 1907.

Injection treatment of leprosy was instituted in 1894 in Egypt where chaulmoogra oil was injected. Later, other workers injected various forms of the oil and also its ethyl esters and the salts of the fatty acids. The use of these preparations was confined to certain centres until about 1920. The excellent results of treatment reported by workers particularly in *Hawan* and in *India* encouraged the adoption of various forms of this treatment in most countries of the world and in spite of its limitations which are widely recognized it is now the standard treatment in most countries.

**Preparations.**—The two preparations in common use are *hydnocarpus* oil (usually *wightiana* but sometimes *anthelmintica* etc) with 4 per cent creosote and the ethyl esters of the oil with 4 per cent creosote. (In some countries where good fresh oil is not available and ordinary ethyl esters tend to be irritant iodization of esters by a special process is used.) The ethyl esters are more expensive but easier to inject while the oil is cheaper but more difficult to inject because of its viscosity, which can however be reduced by warming the oil to body temperature. Supplies of oils and esters must be obtained from a reliable source.

**Dosage.**—For workers without great experience, the following dosage is recommended. Begin with 1 c cm and increase by  $\frac{1}{2}$  c cm up to a dose of 5 or 6 c cm given once or twice a week. (Experienced workers may give larger doses in certain suitable cases and doses of 20 c cm a week or even more have been used.) If there is excessive local reaction or pain, the doses should be reduced or a different preparation tried. If reaction occurs, injections should be stopped completely until it has subsided, and then only small and very gradually increasing doses should be given.

**Methods of injection.**—The oil and ethyl esters are preferably given by a combination of intra-dermal and intra-muscular or subcutaneous injections.

Intra-muscular injections should be given deep into the upper part of the gluteus maximus muscle. Thorough massage of the part after injection assists rapid absorption. Subcutaneous injections are best given into the loose subcutaneous tissues of the fleshy parts of the limbs. By nearly withdrawing the needle and turning it in several different directions, up to 3 or 4 cubic centimetres can be given through one skin puncture.

Intra-dermal injections are given into the dermis of the lesions themselves. A special short intradermal needle is advisable. The needle is inserted at an acute angle, about two millimetres into the skin, and about 0.1 c cm is injected, raising a wheal about one-third of an inch in diameter in the skin. Injections should be given into the corium and not just beneath the epidermis. Similar injections are given at about half-inch intervals over the whole lesion to be injected. The small swellings at the site of injection should subside in two or three days, and the lesion should not be injected a second time until a month has elapsed.

If all the lesions have recently been intra-dermally injected, the other two methods should be used. Usually not more than two or three cubic centimetres are given by intra-dermal injection at one time, the remainder (if any) of the dose ordered being given by other methods.

The intra dermal method is suitable for injections into the macules of the neural type and into the lesions of the lepromatous type. Good results have also been reported with injections given near and around the affected nerve trunks and into the skin and subcutaneous tissue in their distribution.

*Duration of treatment and assessing results*—The duration of treatment depends on the type and severity of the disease. In slight cases of the tuberculoid variety signs of activity may disappear in a few weeks or months. In more marked neural cases treatment may be prolonged and in the lepromatous cases treatment may need to be very prolonged. There are some patients in whom treatment appears to do little or nothing towards controlling the disease. Treatment should be continued until signs of activity have been absent for at least six months, preferably one or two years and the patient is then kept under observation so that any tendency to relapse may at once be detected and treatment resumed.

In assessing results of treatment accurate records of clinical and bacteriological findings are needed. Care must be exercised to avoid attributing the subsidence of a reaction to treatment. In suitable cases, if treated properly, the progress of the disease is arrested and no new lesions appear; the lesions already present become less noticeable and may disappear, the anaesthesia may become less extensive and the bacilli if previously present in the skin become less numerous and finally disappear. There are, however, often found permanent areas of anaesthesia and sometimes permanent deformities although the disabilities caused may be minimized by treatment as described later.

*Other forms of special treatment*—As already stated, hundreds of remedies have at one time or another been used and advocated in the treatment of leprosy and every year sees additions to this number. The common sequence of events is as follows. Some worker tries a new remedy and to begin with reports excellent results and advocates its wide adoption, later workers fail to confirm the value of the new treatment and eventually the originator of the new treatment himself abandons it and finds that the good results originally obtained were largely psychological or else obtained in cases in which clinical improvement is often seen even without treatment.

While it cannot be stated that no treatment other than hydnocarpus oil is of any value in leprosy it can be stated that the value of other treatments has not been so marked as to justify their continued and widespread use. It is possible to mention here only a few of the treatments which have been used.

Numerous workers have used injections of preparations of heavy metals, particularly gold and have reported some benefit in the disease in general and also in certain manifestations of the disease such as eye affections but other workers have failed to confirm this.

Potassium iodide administered by the mouth with gradual increase from small to large doses has been used by various workers during the last sixty years. Some workers have considered it of value in some cases, other workers have considered it of little or no value but all workers are agreed that the administration of potassium iodide (which has often the specific effect of inducing a condition indistinguishable from lepra reaction) is a procedure which may in some cases produce harmful effects. The resolution of the International Conference of Leprosy, Cairo, 1938, on this matter reads as follows—

‘With regard to treatment with potassium iodide the use of this drug is frequently followed by disastrous results. It is therefore to be discouraged for the purposes of diagnosis, treatment or as a test of recovery unless in very skilled and experienced hands.’

Various workers have used *vaccines* consisting of supposed cultures of leprosy bacilli, or else sera produced by 'immunizing' animals with these vaccines, or with material obtained from leprosy patients. Examples of these preparations are Rost's 'leprolin' and Reinstein's serum. The results of such treatment are not striking.

Ever since their introduction, from time to time *aniline dyes* have been used in the treatment of leprosy. Certain dyes are definitely localized in the leprosy lesions after intravenous injections, and lesions may break down, ulcerate and then heal after large doses, but permanent improvement is usually not seen.

Various workers have reported beneficial results from the administration of preparations containing large amounts of one or more of the different vitamins. Reports of this form of treatment are very contradictory, and their value has not been proved.

One of the latest new treatments for leprosy has been the injection of *diphtheria-formol-toxoid*. The strikingly beneficial results originally reported have been confirmed by no one, and some workers find the treatment definitely harmful.

The induction of a high temperature either in the lesions themselves or in the patient's body as a whole has been used by various workers, and various methods of *heat therapy* have been employed, but the results are not striking or consistent.

**Local treatment of lesions**—In addition to the local treatment discussed later under 'Management of complications', various forms of local treatment of the lesions themselves may be used.

All workers are agreed on the value of local irritation to lesions of all types, and some of the benefit produced by injection of *hydriocarpus* preparations may be caused by this local irritation. Various other forms of irritant have been used, such as carbon dioxide snow, but a very useful and more widely practicable measure is the application to the lesions of *trichloroacetic acid*. Solutions of the crystals in water of varying strengths from 1 in 1 to 1 in 4 (by weight) are used. The stronger solutions are used for touching nodules and other small but prominent lesions, the weaker solutions are used for application to larger areas of skin, infiltrations, patches, etc. The solution is applied with a small cotton-wool swab held in forceps, and the application should be followed by whitening of the skin and desquamation but not by ulceration. A little experience is necessary in judging how much solution to apply and in what strength, and care is needed to avoid burning the skin, with the production of scars and sometimes keloids.

Another form of local treatment is the surgical removal of suitable lesions suitably situated. If the only lesion of leprosy is a single small patch, surgical excision may be practised, and is usually not followed by recurrence if the original lesion is of the tuberculoid sub-type. Sometimes more than one such patch may be excised.

In other cases, prominent disfiguring nodules and infiltrations in various parts of the body can be surgically removed for cosmetic reasons. Pedunculated or prominent nodules on exposed parts of the body may be excised greatly enlarged, infiltrated and nodular ears may be trimmed down to normal size, etc., and in this way the patient's appearance may be considerably improved. In making these excisions, particularly of ear tissues allowance must be made for contraction produced by fibrosis when the incision heals.

Another form of local treatment is the *local treatment of lesions of nasal mucous membrane* which are very common and may be troublesome in cases of the lepromatous type. The nasal passages should be washed out several

times a day with a bland fluid such as normal saline or with mild antiseptics and local applications of mild caustics or stronger antiseptics can then be made to the actual ulcers present in the nasal septum. In this way such ulcers will frequently be made to heal the discharge of the lepra bacilli from the nasal mucous membrane can be much diminished or prevented and the patient thus rendered much less infectious.

### MANAGEMENT OF COMPLICATIONS

**Reaction** —In the milder forms of reaction particularly the tuberculoid reaction seen in neural cases hospitalization may not be needed and the reaction will subside in time without any treatment beyond the cessation of the administration of hydnocarpus preparations or any other medicament which may have precipitated the reaction. Concomitant diseases present such as malaria should be treated.

In the more severe forms of reaction particularly in lepromatous cases hospitalization is necessary for proper treatment.

The patient should be kept in bed properly nursed and given suitable general treatment diet aperients etc. Various forms of medicinal treatment of reaction have been recommended such as the injection of small doses of antimony in the forms of potassium antimony tartrate given intravenously or of foudan given intramuscularly and the administration of large amounts of alkalis. Some patients appear to respond well to these forms of treatment but others do not. Complications present such as eye affections severe neuritis respiratory obstruction etc should be treated as described later.

In time the fever and the other symptoms will subside and hydnocarpus treatment when resumed must be undertaken with great caution as to dosage.

**Trophic lesions** —By care it is frequently possible to minimize if not prevent the development of trophic lesions in cases of leprosy. The lesions are the result of the damage to nerves chiefly those supplying the feet and hand. Careful examination of patients may reveal marked infiltration of the ulnar or median nerves of the peroneal or tibial nerves and suitable treatment for this neuritis (*vide infra*) may minimize the nerve damage and the resulting trophic changes. Together with this electric treatment and massage of muscles slightly paralysed or likely to become paralysed may be of value. For example massage of the small muscles of the hand and repeated and forcible extension of the fingers likely to become contracted may much minimize the deformity of the hand commonly produced by ulnar nerve affection. The wearing of a splint at night to maintain the extension of the fingers may also be of value.

If the nerves supplying the hands and feet are seriously affected steps should be taken to prevent injury to the hands and feet from undue pressure from heat and from trauma. Patients with anæsthetic hands should not be allowed to cook or do manual work in which injury to the hands is likely. Similarly the feet should be protected by comfortable well fitting shoes specially made if necessary or adapted to prevent pressure on points where trophic ulcers are likely to develop such as the head of the first metatarsal or the os calcis.

If trophic lesions have developed they may be reduced by the measures mentioned above massage movement splinting etc. Good results have been reported from the injection of hydnocarpus preparations around the affected nerve and into the area of the trophic lesion in its distribution.

The trophic ulcer nearly always found on the foot is a troublesome condition which will however almost always yield to suitable treatment.

The trophic ulcers of the foot are of two types, firstly the simple trophic ulcer of the sole without necrosis of bone, secondly, the trophic ulcer with necrosis of the underlying bone. In practice it is found that most trophic ulcers are of the second type.

In the absence of necrosis of the bone, the ulcer will usually heal if the patient is kept off his feet and suitable local applications are used. It is most important to prevent pressure of injury to the feet, by keeping the patient in bed or allowing him to walk only with the use of crutches, until the ulcer has finally healed. The ulcer should be kept dry and clean, and all thickened dead skin around it should be kept pared off, and the ulcer encouraged to heal from the bottom. Many different local applications have been recommended, but none appears to be of outstanding value. Most of the common antiseptics such as eusol and other chlorine antiseptics, and lysol and other coal-tar preparations, may be used for cleaning septic ulcers, but prolonged soaking in antiseptics is to be avoided. Antiseptic or bacteriostatic powders such as sulphanilamide may be used, and the ulcer may be sealed with elastoplast or plaster of paris, and the dressing changed at long intervals.

If bone necrosis is present the ulcer may heal temporarily, but not permanently unless the bone is removed or else discharges itself through the ulcer. The bone necrosis can usually be detected by the use of a probe in the sinus at the base of the ulcer, and sometimes the presence of dead bone can be detected by eliciting crepitus on forcible movement of the neighbouring joint. If possible the extent of the necrosis should be studied by x-ray examination.

The dead bone should be removed by operation, which should be carefully performed to avoid all damage to surrounding healthy tissue. Local anaesthesia is induced by infiltrations round all the nerves at the ankle. Incisions should always be made on the side or dorsum of the foot and not on the sole. In order to minimize deformity, only dead tissue should be removed. Since some secondary infection is usually present, it is inadvisable to close the incision by sutures.

Secondary infection of trophic lesions, often of a virulent nature is not uncommonly seen, and, in the absence of proper surgical treatment, is one of the commonest causes of death in cases of leprosy. It commonly leads to acute cellulitis, necrosis or gangrene of the affected part. The virulent secondary infection may arise through a perforating ulcer, but also without any breach of the surface, apparently as the result of blood-borne infection settling in the devitalized tissues.

In the past, early and radical surgical treatment of these acute septic conditions has been practised in the form of amputation of digits, hand, foot, or limb, and has given excellent results, without such operations patients frequently die. Although nothing has yet been published, it appears that the use of the sulphanilamide group of drugs has markedly influenced the treatment of these conditions, has reduced the necessity for surgical treatment, or made less radical surgical treatment possible.

Treatment of trophic lesions of the feet by such operations as sympathetic ganglionectomy has given very disappointing results.

Once trophic ulcers have been made to heal, the preventive measures already outlined should be adopted to prevent recurrence.

**Leprous eye affections**—In the lepromatous type of leprosy, slight chronic eye affection is frequently present and may attract little attention and cause little trouble, except in cases of reaction. In some patients, however, particularly in certain countries, severe leprosy eye affections are very common, and frequently cause blindness. Chronic or sub-acute leprosy irido-cyclitis should be treated along ordinary lines. The patient should

be kept in a darkened room or wear an eye shade the pupil should be kept constantly and fully dilated with atropine and hot boric fomentations should be applied several times a day

Leprous infiltrations of the conjunctiva interfering with vision may be dissected off. In some cases of chronic eye infection with adherent and contracted iris iridectomy may improve vision but it should only be performed in the absence of all signs of inflammation.

In cases of the neural type also leprosy eye affections may demand special treatment. The eye infections are caused by the involvement of the fifth and seventh nerves. The bad results of dryness of the surface of the eye caused by the inability to close the eye may be minimized by instillation of oily preparations. Corneal ulcer if present should be treated along the usual lines. The inability to close the eye properly may be partly remedied by the surgical operation of lateral canthorrhaphy. Great care is needed in these cases to prevent the injury to the surface of the eye by foreign bodies, etc.

**Severe neuritis**—This may be seen either during a reaction or apart from it, and is most common in the ulnar nerve. Palliative treatment includes such procedures as the injection of cobra venom to relieve the pain, local application of heat etc. in the form of hot compresses or of diathermy. Subsidence is frequently seen following the operation for removal of the nerve sheath around the affected part of the nerve, which is frequently a limited portion of the ulnar nerve above the elbow. Such operations may also minimize subsequent deformity.

**Respiratory obstruction**—Obstruction of the larynx may be caused either by the presence of marked lepromatous lesions, especially during the phase of reaction, in which case it is acute or sub acute, or by the fibrosis which follows the healing of such lesions, in which case it comes on very gradually. In either case, tracheotomy is sometimes needed for the relief of this condition which may otherwise cause death. When the reaction has subsided, it may be possible to remove the tracheotomy tube, but the advisability of removal is doubtful, for subsequent reactions may necessitate replacement. In cases caused by fibrosis the tube has to be kept in permanently.

## THE CONTROL OF LEPROSY

The control of leprosy should be based on knowledge of the epidemiology of the disease which has already been outlined.

**General principles**—With the exception of one or two countries such as Norway, definite plans of anti leprosy work aiming at the control of leprosy have not been applied on a wide scale until the present century. During the last forty years, however, a considerable amount of valuable experience has been gained, and the matter has been discussed in various national and international conferences of leprosy workers. The recommendations made here regarding leprosy control are in general accordance with these recommendations.

Leprosy is a contagious disease, and the main principle of control of leprosy is, or should be, the same as that applied to the control of other contagious diseases, namely, the prevention of contact. The general opinion is that the methods of treatment at present available, even if widely and efficiently applied, cannot control leprosy in the community, although they may do much to facilitate other control measures since without the organization of careful and thorough treatment of cases of leprosy, no control measures are likely to be effective, for the operation of those suffering from leprosy will not be secured, nor the sympathy and support of the public.

In various countries where leprosy is found the following measures have been adopted notification, segregation of all infective cases, periodical examination of non-infective cases and of contacts, segregation of indigent persons with leprosy, prevention of persons with leprosy following certain occupations, appearing in public places and travelling in public vehicles, the separation of children, and the control of immigration of patients suffering from leprosy. Legal provision for the application of such measures is usually made.

Where the number of persons with leprosy is not unduly great, and where reasonable financial resources are available, the control of leprosy is usually attempted on the above lines on a compulsory basis. The isolation of infectious cases is usually arranged in institutions, but in some countries in favourable circumstances, home isolation has been allowed.

In many countries where leprosy is common, however, the large number of cases, the lack of financial resources, the lack of trained workers and the lack of public opinion to make the measures effective, have rendered it difficult or impossible to institute such control measures against leprosy on a compulsory basis, and the work that is done is along similar lines but on a voluntary basis.

Modifications of the older type of isolation measure have rendered isolation more popular, and have done much to encourage patients to report voluntarily for isolation. The old idea of the isolation of all cases of leprosy has been abandoned and usually only infectious cases are isolated. Of great importance is the establishment of efficient treatment in the isolation institutions, with the discharge of a considerable number of patients on becoming non-infectious. In a few centres, arrangements have been made for men and women with leprosy to marry and live in leprosy institutions, usually of the colony type, under proper safeguards to prevent the infection of children. This may be done in one of two ways, either children born may be separated as soon as possible after birth as in the Philippine Islands, or else marriage is only allowed after the male has been sterilized as in Japan, such couples, however, being allowed to adopt leprosy children.

In some countries where leprosy is common, the giving of alms to leprosy beggars is widely practised as a religious duty, and large numbers are thereby encouraged to gain a living by wandering around the country begging. A considerable number of these beggars are infectious cases, and while it is true that their contact with the healthy population is limited, the menace to public health cannot be ignored. Special institutions or separate sections of leprosy institutions may be needed to deal with this problem, since the management of these persons demands measures differing from those framed for patients from the general population.

**Practical application of these principles.** Preliminary measures—Before undertaking leprosy control measures in any area or country, the following preliminary steps should be taken—

- 1 The appointment of a small group of suitable workers with the necessary knowledge and training in leprosy work to make a preliminary study of the problem. If trained workers are not available, suitable men are appointed and delegated for training at a suitable centre, and if necessary sent abroad for this purpose.

- 2 The carrying out by this trained staff of a general survey of the extent, the nature, and the severity of the leprosy problem in the area to be dealt with.

- 3 The framing of a leprosy control scheme to be based on the general lines outlined below, and the framing of suitable legislative support for the scheme.



**Main lines of work**—These consist in leprosy surveys, diagnostic and treatment clinics, provision for isolation of infectious cases in institutions or in the patients' homes and villages, provision of social services for patients and dependants, the organization of propaganda work, and of thorough training for staff engaged in the work.

(a) **Leprosy surveys**—In addition to the general preliminary survey of the problem, more intensive surveys are needed in the areas in which the work is undertaken. Methods of survey cannot be discussed here, they are described in the special report mentioned in the bibliography.

(b) **Diagnostic and treatment clinics**—Such clinics may be established in suitable institutions or hospitals, but particularly in rural areas with few hospitals, they may need to be separate. The clinic should be properly staffed, and the work of the clinic should include the detection of all cases of leprosy in the area served by the clinic, if necessary by properly organized surveys, the treatment of cases of leprosy detected, the reporting to the authority concerned regarding infective cases detected, arranging for the isolation of such cases either at home or in institutions, periodical examination of infectious cases discharged from isolation, periodical examination of contacts of infectious cases, the organization of teaching for patients and contacts, and for the general public in the area served by the clinic.

(c) **The provision for isolation of infectious cases in institutions**—Leprosy institutions may be of different kinds to meet different needs. In general, isolation should be provided at a central place, not remote from the areas from which the patients come. Colonies planned on the cottage principle are much to be preferred to the hospital type of institution, but in such institutions adequate facilities for all kinds of treatment and nursing should be available if needed. Institutions should preferably be in rural areas, well outside towns and they should, if possible, be run to a considerable extent on the basis of partial self-government and partial self-support.

(d) **Provision for home isolation of infectious cases**—The main point in home isolation is the prevention of contact between infectious cases and children and young people, and it is very doubtful whether home isolation should be allowed in houses where young people live and cannot be provided for elsewhere. Separate living and sleeping accommodation, eating, cooking utensils, etc., are needed, and are best provided in an annexe to the main dwelling and not in the main dwelling itself. The home isolated patient might in suitable circumstances undertake certain activities outside the home, agriculture, gardening, looking after cattle, etc., which do not involve contact with others. It is strongly recommended that home isolation if allowed should be supervised by regular inspection to see that the isolation is reasonably complete. In some circumstances, a small grant for maintenance of the home isolated patient may be needed, but should of course be contingent on the isolation being properly maintained. In some countries, group isolation of infectious cases in villages or small towns is preferable to individual isolation in homes. A plot of land on the outskirts of a village, suitable buildings, and arrangements for feeding and maintenance are required.

(e) **Provision of social services**—These services are needed to aid patients themselves and the dependants of patients, particularly of isolated patients, who may be left unprovided for. Small grants for the maintenance of patients or their dependants may be needed, and special arrangements for the supervision, care and education for children of patients. Another activity of such services is the training of non-infectious patients, or of healthy children of leprous parents, for suitable occupations, and the securing of employment for such persons.

(f) *Provision of institutional accommodation for disabled non-infectious cases*—A considerable number of persons of this type are usually found. They are non infectious but because of the presence of deformities of hands and feet, trophic ulcers etc., they are permanently disabled. Compulsory isolation of these persons is not necessary, but some provision is needed for those unable to maintain themselves, and the condition of such patients frequently demands treatment, medical or surgical, and such facilities should be provided.

(g) *The organization of suitable propaganda to create the public opinion necessary for the success of the measures*—This matter is of vital importance but cannot be discussed here.

(h) *The organization of facilities for thorough training of the medical staff engaged in the work*—Theoretical and practical instruction should be included in the ordinary pre graduate medical curriculum but centres of thorough post-graduate training are also needed.

*Organization*—The details of how such measures can be put into force and made effective, whether such work should be staffed by ordinary state medical or public health officers or whether a special branch of such services should be formed to undertake the work, and what part voluntary agencies can play in such work, etc., cannot be discussed here, since conditions in different countries vary so widely. In most countries it has been found that the special nature of leprosy work demands the services of men of the right type specially selected and trained, but it is certainly advisable that the anti leprosy service shall be a branch of the public health service. It is also found that voluntary organizations can do much to aid anti-leprosy work particularly by undertaking activities of the nature of social aid to patients and their dependants.

In many countries where leprosy is common, the inauguration of a complete scheme of leprosy control along the above lines is impracticable and in such circumstances an attempt should be made to concentrate on certain parts of the work which are of the greatest importance. It may for example be impossible to isolate all the infectious cases, and in such circumstances it is best to concentrate on preventing contact between infectious cases and children and young people. Infectious persons living in homes containing no young people may be left there but from homes with infectious cases and young people, either the cases should be removed to an isolation centre or else the children may be removed. Such children may be adopted by healthy relatives or others, or else admitted to special homes.

In some countries it will be found that leprosy is a really serious problem in only limited areas and it may be advisable or necessary to confine work in these areas rather than to attempt to cover the whole country. In any case, anti leprosy measures should be inaugurated to begin with in limited areas and only when their practicability has been demonstrated should they be extended widely.

*The results of anti leprosy work*—The demonstration of the effectiveness of anti leprosy measures is likely to take a long time. The long latent period of leprosy means that new cases will be found long after all infectious cases have been isolated. The effectiveness of anti leprosy measures can best be demonstrated by a fall in incidence found in repeated thorough surveys which may however not often be practicable. A very valuable indication of the effectiveness or otherwise of measures adopted may be obtained by a demonstration of the presence or absence of a fall in the incidence of leprosy in children on periodical examination of all school children in the areas. In some countries the reduction in the incidence of leprosy has been demonstrated by the fall in the incidence in young men reporting for compulsory military service.

The results of compulsory isolation measures have varied markedly. In some countries, for example Norway, where the serious leprosy problem of sixty years ago has almost entirely disappeared, and where public opinion gave strong support to the measures the results appear to have been excellent. In some other countries particularly where public opinion has not given the necessary support the laws have been evaded and the measures have met with little success. In some countries, Japan and the Philippine Islands for example, a moderate degree of success appears to have been attained, but the work has not yet continued for sufficiently long to make possible a final judgment of its effectiveness. In Brazil a comprehensive scheme of leprosy control has recently been inaugurated but it is too early to judge its results.

### SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

Below is given a list of the main publications on leprosy with a few notes on their nature and also of the important references to the subjects named. To some subjects however the references are so numerous and scattered that it is impossible to detail them.

*Textbooks*—The following books give a general account of leprosy. The first two are mainly of historical interest—

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Danielssen D. C., and Boeck W. | Traite de la Spedalskhed Paris 1843  |
| Hansen G. A. and Looft, C.     | Leprosy in its Clinical and Pathological Aspects John Wright Bristol 1895  |
| (translated by Norman Walker)  |  |
| Jadassohn J.                   | Lepra Fischer Jena 1928  |
| Jeanselme Ed.                  | La Lepre Douin Paris 1931  |
| Muir E.                        | Leprosy Diagnosis Treatment and Prevention (Sixth Edition) Indian Council British Empire Leprosy Relief Association Delhi India 1938 |
| Rogers L. and Muir E.          | Leprosy (Second Edition) John Wright Bristol 1940  |

The last book named is the most comprehensive.

#### *Reference book*

- Klingmüller V. Die Lepra Julius Springer Berlin 1930

This book abstracts practically all publications on leprosy up to that date. A later volume covers more recent years.

#### *Periodicals*

- Lepra Bibliotheca Internationalis (Leipzig) 1900-1914—Quarterly  
 International Journal of Leprosy (Manila Philippine Islands) 1932—Quarterly  
 Leprosy Review (London) 1930—Quarterly  
 Leprosy in India (Calcutta) 1929—Quarterly  
 La Lepre (Japan) 1930—Quarterly  
 Revista Colombiana de Leprologia (Colombia) 1939—Quarterly  
 Revista Brasileira de Leprologia (Brazil) 1933—Quarterly  
 Leprosy Summary of recent work (From Tropical Diseases Bulletin) British Empire Leprosy Relief Association London—Periodically

The above mentioned books contain numerous references to subjects mentioned below, but in addition the following references should be mentioned and there are many others scattered throughout the literature.

#### *History of leprosy*

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| Hensler P. G. | Vom abendländischen Aussatze in Mittelalter Hamburg 1790   |
| Kaposi        | Leprosy in Hebra on skin diseases' New Sydenham Society London 1874  |
| Simpson J. Y. | Antiquarian notices of leprosy and leper hospitals in Scotland and England Edinburgh Med and Surgical Jour 1841-42 |
| Virchow, R.   | Archiv XVIII 1860 XX 1861  |

- Newman, G., and others .. Prize essays on leprosy, two volumes,  
New Sydenham Society, London, 1895  
Lowe, J .. .. .. .. Comments on the history of leprosy,  
Indian Med Gaz, 77, p 680, 1942

*Distribution*—Numerous references in textbooks and leprosy literature and

- de Souza-Araujo, H C .. Leprosy survey made in forty countries  
(1924-1927), Rio de Janeiro, 1929

### *Bacteriology :*

- McKinley, E B .. .. .. Medicine, 13, p 377, 1934

This is the best single review of the subject.

### *Susceptibility and immunity and the Mitsuda test :*

- Mitsuda .. .. .. Jap Jour of Urol and Derm, 1916  
Hayashi, F .. .. .. Internat Jour Leprosy, p 31, 1933  
Dharmendra, Lowe, J., and others Studies of the lepromin test Leprosy in  
India, 1940, p 121, 1941, pp 40 77, 81,  
89, 1942, pp 4, 86, 93, 122  
Rotberg, A .. .. .. Rev Bras Leprol, 5, p 45, 1937

### *Symptomatology and classification :*

Good accounts are given by Rogers and Muir, and by Muir. In addition the following two reports should be consulted: Report of the Leonard Wood Memorial Conference on Leprosy, Manila, Philippine Islands, 1931, and Report of the International Leprosy Congress, Cairo, 1938

*Pathology*—Numerous references scattered throughout the literature. For tuberculoid changes see numerous articles by Wade in the International Journal of Leprosy.

### *Treatment*

- Muir, E .. .. .. Internat Jour Leprosy, 1, p 407, 1933

A good review of the subject

# YAWS AND ASSOCIATED DISEASES

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	524
YAWS OR FRAMBOESIA	
DEFINITION . . . . .	524
HISTORICAL . . . . .	525
EPIDEMIOLOGY . . . . .	525
<i>Geographical distribution</i> . . . . .	525
<i>Epidemiological features</i> . . . . .	525
Temperature—Humidity . . . . .	
<i>Racial distribution</i> . . . . .	526
<i>Age and sex distribution</i> . . . . .	526
ÆTIOLOGY . . . . .	526
<i>Historical</i> . . . . .	526
<i>The causal organism</i> . . . . .	526
Culture and animal inoculation—Distribution in the tissues—Transmission—The relation of the causal organism of yaws to that of syphilis . . . . .	
<i>Immunology</i> . . . . .	527
PATHOLOGY . . . . .	528
SYMPTOMATOLOGY . . . . .	529
<i>The primary stage</i> . . . . .	529
Incubation period—Site . . . . .	
<i>The secondary stage</i> . . . . .	529
Macules—Lichenous rash—Furfuraceous desquamation—Papular or papulo-macular eruption—Papillomatous frambœside—Clavus . . . . .	
<i>The tertiary stage</i> . . . . .	531
Juxta-articular nodules—Sabre tibia or boomerang leg—Keloid—Gangosa or rhinopharyngitis mutilans—Goundou . . . . .	
DIAGNOSIS . . . . .	532
Clinical—Laboratory . . . . .	
<i>Differential diagnosis</i> . . . . .	532
Yaws and syphilis (table) . . . . .	
PREVENTION . . . . .	533
TREATMENT . . . . .	534
General—Local—Specific—Subsidiary . . . . .	
PROGNOSIS . . . . .	536

## PINTA

DEFINITION	PAGE
DISCUSSION	537
EPIDEMIOLOGY	537
Geographical distribution—Age incidence—Race	
ÆTIOLOGY	537
Historical—Causal organism—Transmission—Immunity	
SYMPTOMATOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY	538
DIAGNOSIS	539
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	539

## BEJEL

INTRODUCTION	539
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	539
EPIDEMIOLOGY AND TRANSMISSION	540
ÆTIOLOGY	540
Immunity	540
PATHOLOGY	540
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	540
TREATMENT	541
Prevention	542
PROGNOSIS	542

*Introduction*—There are at least three tropical syndromes that have been given the status of named diseases which are caused by spirochaetes morphologically indistinguishable from the parasite of syphilis they are yaws pinta and bejel. All three are looked upon as modified forms of syphilis by some workers and as distinct diseases by others. They have many common features but perhaps the most important is that they are all three non venereal in origin.

There are probably other allied similar or identical diseases in other primitive and isolated populations. An example of such a condition is *Irkintja* of Central Australia recently described by Hackett (1936) who believes that the condition is identical with or at least closely related to yaws. In this condition there are early lesions similar to those of yaws usually in childhood and later gangosa boomerang leg and keloid scarring.

## YAWS OR FRAMBOESIA

*Definition*—Yaws or framboesia (French *framboise* = raspberry) known as *pian* in the French colonies and by many other local names elsewhere is a contagious disease resembling syphilis but non venereal in origin occurring mainly amongst aboriginal populations in the tropics.

characterized in its florid stage by multiple granulomatous lesions of the skin and later by a variety of lesions of the skin, subcutaneous tissues, and bones, it is caused by a spirochaetal organism, *Treponema pertenue*, that is readily recoverable from the cutaneous lesions

**Historical**—It is not possible to identify definitely as yaws any of the skin diseases that are mentioned in ancient writings though several would pass as this disease

In the records of the 15th and 16th centuries the disease is obviously confused with syphilis, a confusion that still exists even today. Bontius appears to have recognised the disease in the East Indies and early in the 18th century it was described as occurring amongst African slaves in North America. Yaws was well established as a distinct disease entity in medical literature by the end of the 18th century

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—It has a wide tropical distribution and all the more important endemic centres are within the true tropics. It occurs in Central and South America, in the West Indies, extensively in equatorial Africa, including the Sudan and Abyssinia, in India, Burma, Ceylon, Indo-China, Malaya, and the East Indies generally, and in Northern and Central Australia and certain Pacific islands. The most important sub tropical endemic foci are in Algiers and Tripoli in North Africa, in Assam in India, and in northern Burma

In India, it is much more widespread than is generally supposed, occurring in Cochin, Travancore, Hyderabad, the Central Province, Chota Nagpur, Bihar, Santhal Parganas, Chittagong Hill Tracts, Manipur, Cachar and several other places in Assam. Nowhere, however, has it assumed serious epidemic proportions and spread to the general populations of the plains of India

It is said to be increasing in East Africa, particularly in Kenya, Tanganyika, and Uganda, and to be decreasing in Ceylon, in Barbados and in the Guianas but, as it is a disease that spreads rapidly, and produces a high degree of immunity, it is likely that it will appear in epidemic waves in countries where conditions are particularly suitable for its spread, and die down or disappear when all susceptible persons (i.e. the children born since the last epidemic wave and the few adults who previously escaped infection) have been infected

**Epidemiological features**—It is a disease of rural districts rather than towns. The incidence of the disease varies considerably. In certain isolated islands and other primitive populations, practically every individual becomes infected sooner or later, and usually sooner, that is in childhood. In some tropical countries in equatorial Africa, for example, the disease is a very serious public health problem (e.g. over 300 000 persons were treated within a few years in the Belgian Congo, which has a population of only about 10 000 000 and in the coastal region of Colombia it is estimated that there are 80 000 cases), whereas in India, although yaws occurs in many parts of the country, it is seldom a serious problem and the number of cases treated annually will amount to only a few hundred, at a generous estimate

The tropical distribution suggests that temperature is an important factor. Experience has shown that when a case is imported into a temperate country the infection does not spread. It has been found in India that the hill folk, who tend to get the disease when they come down to the foot-

hills or into the hot humid plains, do not take the disease back to their own villages if these are situated at any great height

Humidity is also important, and most of the endemic countries enjoy a high degree of humidity for a considerable part of the year, and luxuriant vegetation, however, the disease also occurs in Algeria and Tripoli which are relatively dry countries, as well as being outside the tropics

**Racial distribution**—In its natural form, it is a disease that is confined almost entirely to primitive peoples. This is most strikingly demonstrated in India, where it occurs amongst primitive hill folk, but seldom spreads to any extent amongst the plains' population (*vide supra*). This is almost certainly not due to personal susceptibility or immunity, as the disease is easily transmitted experimentally to individuals of any racial type, but probably to the habits of the people who have a low standard of personal cleanliness, and live and sleep in primitive huts closely huddled together

**Age and sex distribution**—The disease is most common in children up to the age of 15 years, though it is uncommon in infants under six months but adults who have escaped infection in their childhood also suffer from it, mothers frequently contracting the infection from their children. In highly endemic areas, children usually contribute at least 90 per cent of the cases, but in isolated communities where the infection is reintroduced at longer intervals a large proportion of adults will become infected. All contagious infections tend to spread more rapidly amongst children on account of their habits, but the most important influence in these cases is undoubtedly the immunity acquired by adults during previous outbreaks

Most writers report that males are more commonly infected than females. This is probably due to the greater freedom allowed male children. Chambers (1938) points out that in Jamaica the only age groups in which females predominate is from 20 to 29 years, this is an age at which women would be closely associated with infants and children and would be likely to be infected from them

## ÆTIOLOGY

**Historical**—Castellani in 1905 first isolated from yaws lesions an organism indistinguishable from the organism of syphilis and named it *Spirochaeta pertenue*. Both these organisms were later placed in the genus *Treponema*.

**The causal organism**—*Treponema pertenue* is a very slender (0.25 microns) spirachætal organism, from 8 to 18 microns in length, it has from five to a dozen regular spirals, 1 to 1.5 microns deep, at intervals of about 1 micron which tend to taper towards each end where there may be a single flagellum like filament. It is flexible and moves by spiral rotation. It is morphologically identical with *Treponema pallidum*, the causal organism of syphilis.

**Culture and animal inoculation**—Culture of this organism was claimed by Noguchi and later by Hata, the former grew it in ascitic fluid to which kidney tissue had been added anaerobically. Most other workers have failed to satisfy themselves that they have produced a true culture, and at any rate the procedure is not a practical diagnostic method.

Successful inoculation has been produced in man, higher apes, monkeys, and rabbits, in the two latter animals only local lesions are produced.



**Distribution in the tissues.**—The spirochæte is found in the primary and secondary skin lesions, in the spleen, and in the bone-marrow, their presence in the blood has been demonstrated by inoculation

**Transmission.**—This takes place by means of direct contact, the organism from the exudate of a lesion entering the new host through an abrasion, although possibly an invisible abrasion, in his skin. Whenever the point has been carefully investigated, a history of close contact with some person with florid lesions has been obtained in almost every case and, when mothers are infected by their infant, the common sites of the primary lesion are on the breast, at the bend of the elbow, or on the hip, places where direct contact most commonly occurs. The mechanical transfer of infection by means of flies is considered to be a possible alternative method in some places, and the small fly, *Hippelates pallipes*, has been experimentally incriminated as a mechanical transmitter in Jamaica. Certain species of *Musca* have also been shown to be potential mechanical carriers of viable spirochætes, but a biological cycle in any insect has never been seriously suggested

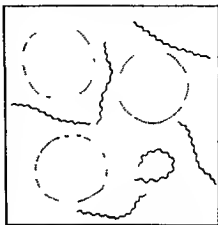


Figure 141 *Treponema pertenue*

Man is the only known reservoir of infection

Congenital transmission never occurs

**The relation of the causal organism of yaws to that of syphilis.**—This is a problem on which much work has been done during the last four decades without any final conclusion yet being reached

Morphologically, the organisms are identical, culturally, no definite differences have been established, serologically, in the antigenic structure of the organisms, common elements but also distinct differences have been shown to exist, in animals, readily distinguishable lesions are produced by these two organisms, and in man, there are marked differences in the two diseases they cause

Whether syphilis is a specialized form of yaws that has, in the course of years, undergone some change through being transmitted venereally amongst people of 'civilized' races, whether yaws is a mild form of syphilis that has lost some of its characteristics through frequent non-venereal passage amongst primitive people, for example, possibly as a result of their heavy malarial infection, or whether, which seems to the writer most likely, they both arose from a common ancestor, probably in prehistoric times, and each developed in its own way, are matters of little more than academic interest. Except in the crude test of morphology, the differences are far greater than those frequently observed between different strains of the same organism, and the general opinion is that *Treponema pallidum* and *Treponema pertenue* are closely related but of quite distinct species

**Immunology.**—Immunity to superinfection is not immediate and complete, but it appears to take several months or even years to develop and,

if early treatment is given, reinfection becomes possible. Many cases of syphilis have been reported in individuals who have, or have had, yaws and conversely, yaws has developed in syphilitics, but there appears to be little doubt that populations that have been heavily infected with yaws enjoy some degree of immunity from syphilis. The reverse is probably true but not so easily demonstrated, unless one takes the view that the relative immunity to yaws of towns-folk in countries where yaws is common in the rural districts is due to the heavy syphilization of the town dwellers, but this argument cannot be universally applied.

Animal experiments indicate that infection with syphilis gives complete protection against yaws, but that yaws infection only gives partial protection against syphilis.

The Wassermann and Kahn reactions become positive three to four weeks after the appearance of the primary lesions and are constantly positive after about the eighth week, they remain positive for several years or as long as the infection is active. Those affected with yaws in early childhood usually lose their positive serum reactions after puberty, so that whenever positive results are obtained in such persons they may usually be taken as evidence of a superimposed syphilis infection.

#### PATHOLOGY

The spirochæte gains entry through an abrasion, or possibly even through the unbroken skin and enters the deeper layers of the epidermis where it multiplies, producing a cellular (polymorphonuclear and plasma cell) reaction and oedema. The proliferation of the cells of the malpighian layer causes both a downgrowth of the interpapillary processes and is also a general upward growth that pushes up and eventually splits the stratum corneum into lamellæ between which fibrinous coagula form. There is also increased vascularity, plasma cell and lymphocyte infiltration and some proliferation of the reticular cells of the papillæ. The spirochætal infection is mainly confined to the epidermis but eventually spreads to the surrounding lymph channels in the dermis and finally reaches the blood when generalization of the infection occurs.

From the moment of entry of the spirochæte the lesions of this first stage take three to four weeks to develop and after generalization has taken place there is usually an interval of two to three months before the secondary lesions appear, these are multiple and appear on many parts of the body surface. The typical secondary yaws lesion is similar to the primary lesion described above.

After a much longer interval up to several years a third group of lesions may appear, typically they are *gummatous inflammatory* lesions of the subcutaneous and other tissues that may lead to gummatous ulceration of the skin to fibrotic tumours in the skin or subcutaneous tissues especially around the joints to gumma and rarefaction of the bones and/or to diffuse keloid like formations of the skin.

It is suggested that the tertiary lesions are of the nature of an allergic reaction.

Some writers describe tertiary lesions of the viscera and the arteries similar to those of syphilis, but the authenticity of such lesions seems doubtful, and most observers agree that the lesions of yaws are mainly epiblastic, that is to say, affecting the skin and bones, in contrast to syphilis.

in which the causal organism is panblastotropic, that is, it affects the tissues of all three embryonic layers

The lesions that occur can thus be placed in three groups, the primary or initial lesions ('mother jaw'), the secondary or lesions of the generalized stage, and the tertiary lesions, or sequelæ. Between these three stages and the three stages of syphilis, there is, in the writer's opinion, sufficient similarity to justify the adoption of the terms 'primary', 'secondary' and 'tertiary' stage, but there is not exact parallelism and for this reason some writers avoid these terms

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The clinical picture corresponding to these three pathological stages will be considered under three separate headings —

**The primary stage**—There is usually a single lesion but it is possible for there to be more than one, if infection occurs at two places. After an incubation period of from three to six weeks one, or more often a group of papules appear in the skin over a developing granuloma, the granuloma usually rises up above the skin surface level, splitting the horny layer which is curled back, the crater thus formed is filled with exudate which dries and forms a dome-shaped cap, so that the lesion takes on the characteristic mushroom shape of the typical frambœside, when this crust is removed, the red, raspberry-like top of the granulomatous tumour will be seen at the base of the ulcer, finally, the crater is rapidly filled by more exudate and the crust reforms. Several such ulcers coalesce forming a single lesion an inch or even two inches in diameter. There is usually an area of hyperæmia around the lesion, and in dark-skinned subjects there may be a halo of hypopigmentation around this. The lymph nodes in the neighbourhood are often enlarged and slightly tender. The primary lesion is sometimes pruritic and in other cases painful, but usually it is both painless and non-irritating.

In some cases, it is not possible to find any evidence of an initial lesion, and in others a maculo-papular or even a macular spot takes the place of the granulomatous initial lesion.

This initial lesion may continue to develop and may still be active when the secondary lesions appear, but it usually then tends to heal, or on the other hand it may heal early, so that there is only a scar to be seen when the second stage commences.

This initial lesion is apparently not usually accompanied by any constitutional symptoms, it is not, however, possible to be dogmatic on this point as the people who usually suffer from this disease are not very intelligent, and would probably not notice, or at least not report, slight malaise.

The site of the primary lesions will vary according to circumstances, depending as they do, on the one hand, on abrasions and, on the other, on contact with morbid material, the lesions will be most common in the sites where these are most likely to occur, as for example, in mothers of infected infants they usually occur on the breast, at the bend of the elbow, and on the hip (*vide supra*), and in children on the lower extremities. Genital lesions are very rare and are placed as low as 2 per cent in some populations.

**The Secondary Stage**—The secondary lesions appear from six weeks to three months after the full development of the initial lesion. The onset

of the secondary stage is often associated with mild constitutional symptoms a low fever not often above  $100^{\circ}\text{F}$ , joint pains, pains in the bones and general malaise

A large variety of secondary lesions are described, and in the textbooks these make a formidable array that must alarm and confuse the student. However, the pathological processes that produce these lesions are qualitatively at least, the same, although they may vary in number, in distribution and in the extent to which they progress before resolution as well as being influenced by such variable factors as for example, individual and racial differences in skin texture.

The individual foci may produce very minute papules with little keratosis and, if these are arranged in groups, they will give the appearance of macules, or, if they are slightly larger and very numerous that of a lichenous rash. When these lesions resolve, they desquamate producing the furfuraceous desquamation that is described. If there is a little more keratosis, a papular or papulo-macular eruption will result. The majority of these papules will subside, but some will continue to develop and the typical papillomatous frambœside, very similar to the initial lesion will appear. These yaws papules sometimes develop in the form of a ring with an area of unaffected skin in the centre, this particular form is given the name ringworm yaws.

Finally, when these lesions develop in the skin of the palms or soles on account of the great thickness of the epidermis there the clinical results are very different from those in other parts of the body. Many types of plantar and palmar yaws are described and given various and often vernacular names but amongst the commonest types are the vesicular or papular eruptions that lead to separation of the superficial layers of the epidermis or to an eczematous condition, and the hyperkeratosis that leads to cracking usually of the soles with the formation of painful fissures. Another characteristic lesion is the very painful crab yaws of the soles this lesion usually appears somewhat later than the other secondary lesions and partly for this reason it is often classified as a tertiary lesion due to gummatous formation in the tissues it is however usually a secondary lesion in which the yaws granuloma takes some time to force its way through the thick horny layers of the skin. These lesions are very painful and crippling before they break through and afterwards they produce extensive granulomatous ulcers that, when they eventually heal, cause a crippling deformity of the feet known as *clavus*.

The lesions appear in crops so that there will often be lesions in all stages of development present at the same time. This will also mean that the order of development may not seem to be consecutive and for example the furfuraceous rash may appear after a typical frambœside (from an earlier crop) has already developed.

Thus, there are three types of secondary lesion the early diffuse frambœsides of several types the typical papillomatous frambœside and the late plantar or palmar lesions.

**Sites**—The diffuse lesions that is the papular eruption the furfuraceous rash etc., appear mainly on the trunk and the limbs whereas the typical frambœsides appear most commonly on the face the limbs and the buttocks also on the trunk neck, and perineum but the scalp is very seldom affected the junction of skin and mucous membrane (e.g., around the anus the mouth and the *alæ nasi*) are the most favoured sites.

**Progress**—The fully-developed typical papillomatous frambœsides vary from the size of a pea to that of a large walnut (3.4 cm), but they will usually be present at all stages of development and healing. They may heal within a month or so, or persist for years. When they heal, either spontaneously or as a result of treatment, they leave a white scar, this scar may become pigmented in the course of time or it may persist for life.

**The Tertiary Stage**—Most of the lesions in this stage owe their association with yaws to the fact that they are common lesions in populations that suffer from yaws and amongst persons who, although they give no history and show no other evidence of syphilis, have positive Wassermann and/or Kahn reactions, it has, however, seldom been possible to prove the yaws origin of these lesions, parasitologically, and for this reason they are often looked upon as allergic manifestations.

These lesions may appear at any time from one year to twenty years after the appearance of the secondary lesions. Amongst the earliest and most typical tertiary lesions are **juxta-articular nodules**. These are hard, fibrotic swellings in the subcutaneous tissue around the joints varying in size from a pea to a pigeon's egg. They are usually attached to the ligamentous tissues of the joint or tendon sheaths, but the skin is freely movable over them—at least at first. Later, probably as the result of trauma, it may become fixed. They are not normally painful but from their position (usually on the outer side of the joint), are very liable to damage. The knees and ankles are the commonest joints affected, but the nodules may occur around almost any joint and similar fibrotic swellings are sometimes found in the subcutaneous tissue in other parts of the body.

Gummata develop in the subcutaneous tissues, and eventually ulcerate through the skin causing chronic septic ulcers.

There are several types of bone lesion. A soft painful swelling of the periosteum, particularly of the tibia and ulna, that occurs relatively early in the disease is often classed as a secondary lesion. There is also an osteitis, associated with severe gnawing pains that leads to bowing of the bones. This occurs most characteristically in the tibia, producing the classical *sabre tibia*, or the boomerang leg of Australian aboriginals (Hackett, 1936). An osteitis also occurs in the bones of the fingers, associated with a general dactylitis and later contractures, which causes the characteristic bowing of the fingers especially of the little and the adjoining finger. Other bone lesions are a rarefying osteitis and gumma of the shaft which make spontaneous fracture a common occurrence.

The keloid formations that are seen in different parts of the body and which often cause crippling contracture of the limbs should be looked upon as sequelæ rather than tertiary lesions, as they are in most cases the direct result of earlier granulomata or gummatous formations in the affected areas although sometimes regular keloid scarring of skin surfaces, e.g., the forehead or back, is apparently spontaneous.

There are certain atrophic changes in the skin and nails shown by the glazed appearance of the skin particularly of the palms and by onychia and also disturbances in pigmentation particularly noticeable in the highly pigmented races, that are almost certainly tertiary manifestations.

There remain two clinical syndromes that are now recognized as being usually, although perhaps not always sequelæ of yaws infection namely *gangoa* and *goundou*. The former usually occurs in adults who have suf-

ferred from yaws in childhood, but the latter often appears at an earlier date and affects children. The evidence for the ætiological connexion between these diseases and yaws is almost universally accepted as complete, but in only a very few cases has *Treponema pertenue* been isolated from the lesions. The serum reactions are usually positive but in the later stages they may become negative. The case depends mainly on the epidemiological association of the conditions with yaws, and the exclusion of other ætiological factors.

**Gangosa, or Rhinopharyngitis Mutilans**—This is a condition in which there is ulceration of the mucous membrane of the nasopharynx and nose which involves and eventually destroys the soft tissues, cartilages bones and eventually the skin, working from within outwards, until the whole mouth, nose, nasopharynx, and antra form one large fungating cavity with a single large aperture which is perhaps bridged by the remains of the upper lip. Minor degrees of this condition may occur in which the process is halted, either spontaneously or as a result of treatment, before the destruction has been complete. The condition was at one time associated with leprosy, but the association has been definitely disproved and though syphilis is capable of producing similar destruction, in the countries where this condition is common, the evidence is against its having a syphilitic origin, whereas they are all areas in which yaws is almost the rule in childhood.

Somewhat similar conditions may be produced by rhinoscleroma and by espundia (q v).

**Goundou**—In this condition, there is a bony exostosis of the nasal processes of the upper maxilla, usually bilateral. It is usually associated with severe headaches, some nasal obstruction, and a sero purulent and sometimes blood tinged discharge from the nose. The skin over the exostosis is normal and freely movable. The tumour may obstruct the lacrymal ducts and interfere with the line of vision, but does not encroach on the orbit or otherwise affect the sight.

### DIAGNOSIS

**Clinical**—The typical yaws lesion is so characteristic that it is unlikely to be mistaken for other conditions but many of the other less typical lesions may well be, and it will often only be possible to diagnose their nature clinically by their association with the typical frambeside.

**Laboratory**—From the primary and from many of the secondary lesions especially from the frambeside, it is possible to recover the spirochæte without much difficulty.

The spirochæte can be seen by dark-ground illumination, by the Indian ink method, or after staining by Leishman's or Giemsa's stain by Tribondeau's silver nitrate method or by some modification of these stains (see p 242).

**Differential diagnosis**—Syphilis and leprosy are probably the two diseases with which yaws has been confused most frequently in the past but the protean nature of the manifestations of yaws make it possible to confuse the individual lesions with those of almost any skin disease and of many ulcerative conditions, e.g. pityriasis rosea versicolor and pilaris, lichen planus, acne vulgaris, psoriasis, acthyosis, impetigo contagiosa, tinea, eczema of various forms, lupus erythematosus and vulgaris,

oriental sore and South American leishmaniasis, *ulcus tropicum* veldt sore, and septic, varicose and malignant ulcers

The joint pains in the earlier stages and the juxta articular nodules in the tertiary stage may suggest rheumatism and arthritis, and the juxta articular nodules as well as the fibrotic nodules that appear on other parts of the body may simulate fibromatosis

TABLE XIV

The following table gives the main points of differentiation between yaws and syphilis —

	YAWS	SYPHILIS
<i>Epidemiology</i>	Primitive people Children under 14 years Seldom venereal Never congenital	Civilised people Adults Usually venereal May be congenital
<i>Tropism</i>	Epiblastotropic	Panblastotropic
<i>Primary lesion</i>	Extra genital Variable but usually typical fram bœside Glandular involvement—not con stant and glands soft Wassermann & Kahn reactions — negative	Genital Typical indurated chancre Commonly shotty on largement Often positive
<i>Secondary stage</i>	Typical framboïde and furfuraceous desquamation Mucous membranes not affected Eyes unaffected  Alopecia —unknown Constitutional symptoms —slight Wassermann & Kahn reactions — positive	Rash sore throat etc Often affected Iritis common other eye lesions may occur May occur May be marked Positive
<i>Tertiary stage</i>	Lesions superficial and obvious—trou blesome and crippling non fatal  Nervous and cardio-vascular sys tems —not affected (according to most authorities) Blood Wassermann reaction —usu ally positive but may be negative	Lesions mostly of vis cera, subtle often fa tal Both affected Always positive
<i>Para-lesions</i>	Do not occur (according to most au thorities) CSF Wassermann reaction —never positive	Tabes and GPI may occur Often positive
<i>Treatment</i>	Does not respond to mercurial treat ment	Will respond to mercurial treatment

## PREVENTION

This disease is essentially one of uneducated populations, amongst these it usually occurs only in those communities with the most primitive habits and mode of living and it does not spread amongst members of the poorest classes where they observe some—even the most rudimentary—code of hygiene and behaviour. Education is therefore the first principle in prevention. This may however be too idealistic or at least too long term a policy for most circumstances and organized wholesale treatment of the population will in most circumstances be the best method to adopt. How

PLATE XIX (YAWS LESIONS)

*Fourth picture shows the result of treatment*



Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



For young children, and when large numbers of persons have to be treated in a short time or under difficult circumstances intramuscular injections may be preferred by some workers. The usual precautions regarding the administration of these toxic drugs will of course have to be taken.

(ii) The effect of bismuth injections is not immediate, at least six injections at weekly intervals should be given but distinct improvement will follow a smaller number. Bismuth salicylate in a 10 per cent solution (dose up to 0.2 gramme), sodium potassium bismuth tartrate suspended in oil (dose up to 0.3 gramme), and precipitated bismuth suspended in oil to make a 10 per cent suspension (dose up to 0.2 gramme), have all been used with good effect. The first injection should be about half the maximum dose and the dose should be increased by 0.5 ccm at each injection. Children are given correspondingly smaller doses.

A watch must be kept for stomatitis and albuminuria.

Treatment with bismuth is unquestionably inferior to that with arsphenamine, but this form of treatment has the advantage of being very much cheaper. There are several useful proprietary preparations of bismuth e.g. bismotab and neotropol which will be convenient if a single case is to be treated, but by their use on a large scale much of the advantage of low cost is lost.

(iii) There are several safe and effective arsenical preparations that can be given by mouth e.g. stovarsol and carbarsone. These must be given in the full therapeutic dose 0.25 gramme twice daily for an adult for 15 days, if further dosage is required an interval should be allowed of about a month before a second course is started. Good results have been obtained with this treatment, but these oral drugs are definitely less effective than the parenteral arsenic or bismuth.

Several combinations of these three forms of treatment have been suggested but probably the most effective is a course consisting of two intravenous neoparsphenamine and six intramuscular bismuth injections at weekly intervals the arsenic and bismuth injections being given conjointly on the first two occasions. The cost of such a course is not very high.

To summarize for efficiency parenteral arsenic is the drug of choice for cheapness parenteral bismuth and for utility the special arsenical preparations by mouth.\*

Whatever the treatment given the aim should always be the reversal of a positive Wassermann or Kahn reaction.

d) **Subsidiary treatment**—For the tertiary lesions, some workers have used potassium iodide by mouth in large doses either alone or in combination with arsenic and/or bismuth, they claim that a more rapid resolution is brought about by this means.

For some of the tertiary lesions e.g. the juxta articular nodules the contractures and goundou surgical treatment will also be indicated.

**Prognosis**—Even when the condition is left untreated, spontaneous resolution will occur in a certain percentage of cases in both the primary (but probably rarely) and in the secondary stage and the latter lesions usually last from six months to two years. In neither of these stages does death ever occur as a direct result of the disease and in both proper treatment will always produce a cure.

\* For penicillin therapy in yaws see addendum p. 542.

The lesions of the third stage may be life-long in their effect and, even if treatment is given, there will usually be some permanent disabilities, here again, however, death will seldom occur as a direct result of the lesions, although quite often as an indirect one. Death from septic pneumonia occurs sooner or later in most cases of gangosa.

## PINTA

**Definition**—Pinta (mal del pinto, or carate) is a contagious disease that occurs in certain tropical countries in the western hemisphere, it is characterized by papulo squamous eruptions which may appear on any part of the body and which are chronic and eventually produce pigmentary disturbances, and it is caused by the spirochætal organism, *Treponema carateum*.

**Discussion**—Much has been discovered about this disease during the last few years but it is obvious that there is still much more to be learned. Its ætiology has in the recent past been the subject of some imaginative writing regarding the different species of fungi of several genera e.g. *Aspergillus*, *Monilia* and *Trichophyton* that caused the red white blue yellow purple and black lesions. Several workers (Herrejón 1927 and Fox 1928) have for some years suspected the spirochætal nature of this disease on account of the response in antisyphilitic treatment and the positive Wassermann reaction but up to seven years ago (1938) the parasite managed to evade investigators.

The disease occurs in populations in which other skin diseases especially yaws are common, this has led to many obviously inaccurate descriptions of the lesions of pinta appearing in the literature. Recently writers have tended to describe three distinct stages of this disease as there are in syphilis and yaws this division appears to the present writer to be artificial and he cannot help feeling that these writers are influenced by their desire to stress the similarity of pinta to the other recognized treponemoses. The evidence that some of the lesions described as tertiary manifestations and sequelæ of pinta are really caused by the *Trep. carateum* is wanting in view of the fact that syphilis or yaws are usually endemic in the same country.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—The disease has a limited tropical distribution in the western hemisphere, the main countries affected are Colombia (4 per cent of the population) and Mexico (11 per cent) but it also occurs in Cuba and other islands of the West Indies, Venezuela, Ecuador, Peru, Brazil and Central America. The endemicity of the disease has not been established in the eastern hemisphere, though isolated and questionable cases have been reported from time to time in northern Africa, Iraq, India, Malaya and the Philippines.

The age incidence appears to vary in different countries and even in the same countries different observers give different figures, most however, agree that pinta is rare in infants and uncommon in young children below five years of age. It seems probable that the commonest age of infection is in late childhood but that the lesions increase in number and potency; so that superficial estimates indicate that the largest number are in the third and fourth decades, whereas smaller, and probably more accurate ones indicate an earlier age incidence.

People of the dark skinned races seem to be more easily infected, this is apparent in mixed populations.

## ÆTIOLOGY

**Historical**—The causal organism *Treponema carateum* was discovered by Doctors Triana and Armenteros, in the exudate from lesions and in the associated lymph

nodules of a case of pinta in Havana Cuba in August 1938. This finding was confirmed two months later by Leon y Blanco. These workers did not give the parasite a name, this was done by Brumpt (1939) who called it *Treponema carateum* which has priority over the name *Treponema herrejon* given to it a year later by Leon y Blanco (1940) in honour of Dr Herrejon a distinguished Mexican physician.

The causal organism, *Treponema carateum*, is morphologically very like *Treponema pallidum*, but it has rather a wider range of measurements, its usual range is from 12 to 20 microns, with a mean of about 17 microns, but larger and smaller specimens are not uncommon. It is a flexible spirochæte with a variable number of regular spirals distributed at about one-micron intervals. They can be recovered easily from the early papular lesions, but are very scanty in the later dyschromatic and depigmented lesions.

As the exudates from all the early lesions contain treponemata which as in the case of yaws, can enter the new host through a small skin abrasion, direct transmission is possible, therefore direct contact is probably the usual method of transmission. But it has also been shown that certain flies, e.g. *Hippelates pallipes* and *Simulium hæmatopotum*, are capable of mechanically conveying viable spirochætes, and it is therefore possible that these and other flies also play some part in transmission, in places where they are abundant. There appears to be no cross immunity between pinta and syphilis, as on many occasions syphilis has been reported as occurring in pinta subjects, and vice versa.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

After an incubation period of 7 to 20 days, a small papule appears at the point of entry of the infection. Within a few days further papules appear around the first one, and an erythematous squamous patch develops. This scaly patch is slightly raised above the skin surface and is variously shaped, but usually more-or-less round and anything up to an inch and a half in diameter. It takes four to seven weeks for it to attain full development, when it becomes a chronic, irritating but non-ulcerating lesion.

After a further interval of several months, during which time the initial lesion either remains in much the same condition or, in a few cases, heals completely, a batch of secondary lesions, similar in every way to the first, appear on different parts of the body.

The particular pathological characteristic of the pinta lesion is at first a stimulation of the cells of the melanoblastic layer and later their destruction, so that there is at first hyperpigmentation, a characteristic dark coppery pigmentation of the skin, usually on the face, but also on other parts of the body, and later, atrophic lesions with leucoderma, or vitiligo. The explanation for the dyschromatic effects that are sometimes seen is not quite clear, but it is more likely that they are due to a variation in the reaction of the tissues of different individuals than to differences in the causal parasite, or even in the secondarily infecting organisms for it has repeatedly been shown that the colour-producing fungi do not produce the same colours *in vivo* as they do *in vitro*. Hyperkeratosis of the palms and soles is not uncommon, painful fissures occur, and in the sero-purulent discharge from these the causal organism can be found.

The vitiligo, which is really the final stage of the typical pinta lesions, is often classed as a tertiary manifestation, and nodular, cardio-vascular and nervous lesions have also been described, but there is little justification

for referring to the former as tertiary, and it is questionable if the latter are really pinta lesions, occurring as they do in populations in which both yaws and syphilis are common

**Diagnosis**—*Treponema carotum* can be found in scrapings from the early papules and also from the newly developed lesions, and in the exudate from the clefts in the hyperkeratotic soles (For technique see p 242) The Wassermann reaction is positive from the time of the appearance of the secondary crop of lesions, but it may become negative again when the depigmented stage develops Thus neither the Wassermann reaction nor the finding of spirochaetes helps in the differential diagnosis

From a clinical point of view, the difference between yaws and pinta is that the latter never causes true ulceration, nor the tertiary lesions commonly associated with yaws, although opinion on this latter point is not unanimous Pinta is also confined almost entirely to the dark-skinned races

Only gross ignorance of the clinical picture of both diseases could lead to confusion between pinta and leprosy

#### PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

The only effective prevention measures are education and treatment, as in the case of yaws

The earlier lesions respond rapidly to anti syphilitic treatment (also see p 534), but a full course is often necessary to reverse a positive Wassermann reaction The atrophic and pigmented lesions will seldom respond to the treatment, but repigmentation may take place in the course of time It is possible that repigmentation might be accelerated by the local intradermal injection of bouché (*Psoralea corylifolia*) oil, as it is in idiopathic leucoderma

### BEJEL\*

**Introduction**—In 1928, while practising medicine in Deir-el Zor, Syria Hudson drew attention to a non venereal muco-cutaneous treponematoses encountered among the nomadic tribes in Arab countries, this condition is known as *bejel* in Iraq and Syria, *firjal* and *latta* in Palestine, *laghout* in Lebanon and *jirar* in Trans-Jordan

Hudson (*loc cit*) at first described the disease as a distinct entity, but has modified his views recently (Hudson, 1937, 1938), and is now inclined to support Hasselmann's (1938) view that it is a form of syphilis, he (Hudson, 1941) has gone even further and suggested that yaws also is a modified form of syphilis The writer does not agree with this point of view, he considers that syphilis, yaws pinta, and bejel are distinct clinical entities It is not unlikely that originally all four causal organisms developed from a common source, but it seems more probable that bejel was historically the earliest of the treponematoses from which these other diseases evolved

**Geographical distribution**—Whereas yaws is a tropical condition which is always associated with abundance of vegetation, humidity and

\* By Harry Senekjue MD MS Assistant Professor of Tropical Medicine Tulane Medical School The published papers on this disease are very contradictory and as Dr Senekjue has had at least six years experience in the countries where this disease occurs the author asked him to contribute this section

rainfall, bejel occurs in dry and hot climates mainly in desert areas. It has been reported from Iraq, Syria, Lebanon, Palestine and Arabia and since it is a disease of the nomadic Arab tribes it can safely be assumed that the condition occurs also in those parts of North Africa which are occupied by nomadic Arabs though up to the present no confirmatory reports have been received from these areas.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY AND TRANSMISSION

A very high percentage of the people of all social strata in infected nomad Arab tribes suffer from the disease. It is usually acquired in early infancy or childhood but when children escape infection, they will frequently become infected in later life. Although venereal transmission is possible, the infection is usually transmitted non-venereally. Promiscuous sexual intercourse is uncommon in these tribes but cups, glasses, plates and towels are shared freely by the members of not only one, but of several families.

During certain seasons flies are very prevalent and, just as yaws is apparently transmitted by *Hippelates pallipes* and pinta by *Simulium hamatopotum*, so bejel may be transmitted mechanically by house flies.

Unlike syphilis, but like yaws and pinta, bejel is never transmitted congenitally.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism is morphologically indistinguishable from *Treponema pallidum*, *T. pertenue*, and *T. carateum* but in the writer's opinion it is more flexible. The spirochæte is found easily in early lesions but is very scanty in the late lesions, the former are presumably the most infectious. Attempts to infect rabbits, guinea pigs and mice intradermally have so far failed.

**Immunity**—There is no natural immunity to bejel and persons of all ages and races are apparently susceptible but immunity can be acquired through previous infection, thus most adult Arabs are immune through infection in childhood. The Wassermann, Kolmer and Kahn reactions are constantly positive in this disease.

The question of cross immunity between bejel and syphilis, yaws and pinta has not yet been settled but the writer has seen syphilitic chancre develop in Arabs who had had bejel and who showed a positive Kahn reaction.

### PATHOLOGY

This has not been studied to the same extent as in the other treponematoses but it is evident that this disease is an epiblastotropic one like yaws and pinta rather than a panblastotropic one like syphilis.

The skin lesions are characteristically granulomatous ones.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The initial lesions are usually in or around the mouth, however, in those rare cases where the infection is venereal the lesions are naturally on the genitalia. These initial lesions are usually patches which desquamate but do not ulcerate. The usual location is the lips, angles of the mouth, tongue, mucosa of cheeks, rarely the glans penis, labia or mucosa of the vagina. At the same time, or sometimes after a short interval

papules appear on the trunk, extremities, groin and genitalia, and develop into circinate and rarely roseolar eruptions. As there is never a history of anything corresponding to the primary chancre of syphilis, it seems probable that these constitute the primary lesions.

There are no constitutional symptoms, and no pain or pruritis in association with these early lesions, and apparently the health of the child is not impaired. These lesions disappear spontaneously without leaving any scar and often without any treatment.

A latent period is followed by the appearance of the late lesions, which are usually ulcerative in character. A small erythematous patch appears in the soft tissues of the mouth, this breaks down and spreads to the soft palate, tonsil or pharynx, so that swallowing becomes painful. Leucoplakial patches may be observed in the mouth. After several months, the lesion heals with the formation of scar tissue. Sometimes the process extends to the larynx and produces changes in the voice or hoarseness or even stridor due to the contraction of the cicatrix. Similarly, the ulcerative lesions of the nose may destroy the soft tissues and even erode through the hard palate into the mouth and maxillary sinuses producing a gangosa-like condition, and rarely paranasal swellings resembling goundou develop.

The characteristic skin lesions begin as papules and then ulcerate, these granulomatous ulcers heal in one place while spreading in another, and at times fungating masses result that become covered with crusts and exude a sero-sanguineous or purulent discharge.

Hyperkeratosis of the soles of the feet, either localized at sites which bear weight, or generalized, with extensive fissures, are common findings. There are similar lesions of the palms. Sometimes depigmented areas appear on the skin and there may be alopecia (Hudson, 1936).

Periostitis and osteitis, especially of the long bones, frequently occur, patients complain of throbbing bone pains and sometimes the small bones of the hands are involved. Juxta-articular nodules around the knee, ankle, and back are seen. These are painless movable hard masses which do not have any tendency for ulceration, but may become fibrosed (Hudson, 1935).

There is either localized hypertrophy of the lymph nodes in the neck, groin, epitrochlear region, or a diffused generalized lymphadenopathy. Such glands are painless and freely movable. They usually disappear altogether eventually.

Apparently there are no cardio-vascular symptoms, but occasionally cases with invasion of the central nervous system have been reported, with changes in the chemistry and cell count of the cerebro-spinal fluid, and a positive Kolmer and Kahn (Hoff and Shaby, 1940). It should, however, be remembered that bejel and syphilis can probably co-exist. Tabes and general paralysis are rare among Arabs.

#### TREATMENT

The specific treatment of choice is neoarsphenamine. It must however be remembered that the Arab cannot tolerate large doses of arsenicals. Bismuth comes next in its effectiveness, while mercury also gives very satisfactory results. A much shorter course of treatment than that given for syphilis is necessary.

**Prevention.**—The most effective means will be by education and propaganda amongst the tribesmen, combined with a treatment campaign particularly amongst the children. Bismuth is the most practical drug for this on account of its relatively low cost and long continued action, but nrsphenamine is more potent.

### PROGNOSIS

This is good. In many cases a spontaneous clinical remission will occur without treatment, and the response to anti syphilitic treatment is excellent.

### REFERENCES

- BRUMPT, E (1939) Un nouveau treponème parasite de l'homme *Treponemo carateum*, Agent des carates ou 'mal del pinto', *Compt rend Soc Biol.* 130, 942
- CHAMBERS H D (1938) Yaws London J and A Churchill Ltd
- FOX H (1928) Carate (Pinta) as observed in Colombia S A, *Arch Derm Syph.* 18, 673
- HACKETT C J (1936) Boomerang leg and yaws in Australian aborigines *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg* 30, 137
- HASSELMANN C M (1938) Syphilis among Arabs in the Near East *Arch Derm Syph.* 38, 837
- HERREJON, S G (1927) *Neuvas Orientaciones para el Estudio de Mal del Pinto Folleto Mexico*
- HOFF, H and SHART J A (1940) Nervous Manifestations of Bejel *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg* 33, 549
- HUDSON E H (1928) Treponematosis among the Bedouin Arabs, *US Naval Med Bull.* 26, 817
- (1935) Juxta articular nodules in Euphrates Arab *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg.* 28, 511
- (1936) Hyperkeratosis and depigmentation in Bejel *Ann Trop Med Parasitol* 30, 3
- (1937) Bejel The Endemic Syphilis of the Euphrates Arab *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg.* 31, 9
- (1938) Bejel Syphilis as a contagious disease of children *Amer J Trop Med* 18, 675
- (1941) Yaws and Syphilis—The same or different? Should the discussion be continued? *Amer J Trop Med* 21, 545
- LEON Y BLANCO F (1940) El Treponema herrejoni *Rev de Med Trop y Parasitol Bacteriol Clin y Lab* 6, 5

\* Addendum—Penicillin is very effective in the treatment of yaws and will very probably prove to be the drug of choice for any of these three spirochaetoses when cost is not important. A total dose of 500,000 units given over a period of 5 or 6 days will effect a cure.

# TROPICAL SKIN ULCERATIONS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	544
ULCUS TROPICUM	
DEFINITION	544
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	544
EPIDEMIOLOGY	544
ÆTIOLOGY	545
(a) <i>The predisposing factors—(b) The specific organisms—(c) The determining factors—The source and transmission of the causal organism</i>	545
PATHOLOGY	547
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	547
DIAGNOSIS	548
PREVENTION	548
TREATMENT	549
<i>Some treatments advocated</i>	550
Specifics	
Local applications	
Practical considerations	
PROGNOSIS	551

## VELDT SORE

DEFINITION	551
<i>Discussion</i>	551
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	552
EPIDEMIOLOGY	552
ÆTIOLOGY	552
<i>Historical</i>	552
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY	552
DIAGNOSIS	553
PREVENTION	554
TREATMENT	554



**Introduction**—There are many types of skin ulceration that will be encountered as frequently in a temperate as in a tropical climate specific ulcers *e.g.* syphilitic, tuberculous, actinomycotic, and glanders, ulcers associated with systemic or blood diseases, such as diabetes, sprue, pellagra, sickle celled anæmia and purpuric conditions, non specific ulcers associated with varicose veins, and septic ulcers secondary to skin diseases, wounds, abrasions, and insect bites.

However, skin ulceration is both commoner and more chronic in the tropics than in the temperate zones. This is in part because many specific parasitic infections are peculiar to the tropics but also because insect bites and the subsequent self-inflicted trauma so frequently cause breaches in the integument, because the high temperature often associated with high humidity, encourages the growth of bacteria on and in the skin and its glands and appendages, and because there are so many systemic infections and dietary deficiencies to lower the tissues' resistance to invasion. The multiplicity of the predisposing conditions and superimposed infections tends to produce ulcers of such a wide variety that a description of all of them is out of the question.

The ulcers especially associated with the tropics, that have been described or will be described in other sections, include the cutaneous leishmaniasis, oriental sore (p 179) and espundia (p 191), leprosy (p 481) yaws (p 523) cutaneous amœbiasis (p 435) tularemia (p 345), rat bite fever (p 237) tsutsugamushi disease (p 275), and the venereal ulcerations lymphopathia venereum (p 562) and granuloma venereum (p 568) as well as the secondary ulcerations of bubonic plague and the rare cellulocutaneous type of septicæmic plague (p 335).

This leaves two tropical skin ulcerations that do not fall naturally into any other section namely, *ulcus tropicum* or Naga sore, and *velvet sore*.

### ULCUS TROPICUM

**Definition**—*Ulcus tropicum* (Naga sore or so called phagedænic ulcer\*) is a troublesome lesion that occurs usually on the legs amongst field workers in humid tropical climates it is apparently caused in part at least by an anaerobic fusiform bacillus.

**Geographical distribution**—*Ulcus tropicum* occurs in many tropical countries but the majority of the earlier reports on this condition came from Africa and India. It is also common in tropical America.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

It occurs almost exclusively in hot damp climates and amongst farmers and field workers. It is more commonly reported amongst labour forces *e.g.* tea plantation workers in such countries but this is probably because of the financial loss to employers entailed as there is evidence that private cultivators also often suffer from the condition. Recently, a *num*

\* The word phagedænic (literally meaning eating canker or spreading ulcer) is not at all appropriate for the typical examples of Naga sore (named from its occurrence amongst the aboriginal tribesfolk in the districts around the Naga Hills in Assam) with which the writer has been familiar during the last twenty five years nor for many of the ulcers that he has either seen personally or had described to him first hand in other places in India and elsewhere and which he has always classified in the same ætiological group. When our knowledge especially with regard to their true ætiology increases it will probably be possible to divide these ulcers into several groups. Meanwhile the writer has described the type with which he is most familiar.

ber of British and Indian soldiers in Assam have suffered from somewhat similar sores, but it seems questionable whether these sores have the same ætiology

The disease occurs not only among men, but women and children are also susceptible in those population groups where both sexes work in the fields

In the tea-estate labour forces in India, *ulcus tropicum* reaches its peak of incidence at the beginning of the rainy season, that is, in June or July. In most places there is a distinct seasonal incidence and, though the month of highest incidence may vary in different places, it is nearly always a hot and humid season of the year.

There is a marked variation in the incidence from year to year in any one locality, this has been particularly noticeable on tea-estates.

### ÆTIOLOGY

A number of theories as to the cause of this condition have been put forward, with reference to which it is easier to be critical than constructive.

The subject can best be discussed under three headings, the predisposing factor, the specific organism and the determining factor.

(a) *The predisposing factors*—There has been a strong tendency in recent years to attribute tropical ulcer to dietary deficiency, in whole or in part. The present writer (Editorial, 1934), discussing the subject from the point of view of Indian experience, suggested that dietary deficiency should be considered as a possible factor, and Clements (1934) reporting experience in Papua observed that agriculturists living on a poor diet suffered more than fishermen on a much better high-protein diet.

Papers in which dietary deficiency is incriminated have never been very convincing or very specific in their indications as to which particular dietary element is the determining one, several vitamins and calcium have been named. Further, many instances of the infection—natural, experimental and accidental—of well-nourished persons have been reported. Nevertheless, one must conclude after a general survey of the epidemiology that the state of nutrition of the subject possibly, and even probably, plays a part in the ætiology of this ulcer.\*

Again, it would seem not unreasonable to suggest that debilitating diseases may reduce the individual's resistance against the invading organisms, and standard tropical infections such as malaria, dysentery and ancylostomiasis have naturally been selected, in fact at one time these ulcers were actually labelled 'malarial ulcers'. But there is no good evidence in favour of any one of these infections having any specific predisposing properties, although it would be unsafe to deny the possibility that in a general way they all help to undermine the patient's resistance.

(b) *The specific organisms*—The frequency with which a fusiform bacillus alone or the fusiform bacillus plus a spirochæte are found in the wound again make the causal association between these organisms and the ulcer an obvious hypothesis. These organisms are usually known severally as *Bacillus fusiformis* and *Treponema vincenti*, although many writers believe that they are two phases of the same organism, others, in order to avoid taking sides in this controversy, refer to the condition as fusospiro-

\* Charters (1943) has produced further evidence to support the dietary-deficiency theory. He considers that vitamin A is the deficient element.

chretosis. In India we have found that the fusiform bacillus is constantly present and that there is always another organism almost equally prominent in the field this is however not always a spirochete but is quite often a diplotheroid. This view is not incompatible with the univarian theory referred to above as in the instances in which there were no spirochetes in the ulcers it may simply have meant that on account of some local condition in the ulcer all organisms were in the fusiform stage.

The proof of the causal association of these organisms is not complete as it has never been possible to induce an ulcer with a pure culture of any of them although this has been done frequently with mixed organisms from an ulcer, and with a mixed culture of *Bacillus fusiformis* and either diplotheroids or streptococci. Further, fusospirochetal infections are found frequently in ulcers of the mouth and pharynx in venereal lesions and in gangrenous wounds of various localities.

The fusiform bacillus is about 17 microns in length and 1 micron in thickness it is fusiform in shape, as its name implies and it stains well with Romanowsky stains usually showing a slightly beaded appearance. It is gram negative.

It is an anaerobe and can be grown on gelatin serum agar. It would however be surprising if in the many tropical countries in which an apparently similar ulcer appears there were not more than one specific organism concerned.

The Klebs-Loeffler bacillus has on several occasions been isolated from a clinically typical Naga sore.

(c) **The determining factors**—There seems to be very little doubt that some breach in the epithelium is essential to allow the organisms to gain entry. Four common causes are—(i) injury (ii) dermatitis (iii) insect or leech bite and (iv) water sores (anelyostoma invasion). The ulcer appears most commonly on the legs and feet at points most subject to injury in those who walk about bare legged on areas of skin likely to be affected by dermatitis as a result of coming in contact with irritant plants chemical manures etc. or at points where hookworm larvae often enter and cause vesiculation. Panja and Acton (Acton 1932) showed experimentally that it was easier to produce an ulcer on the leg than on the arm in the latter situation a sore formed but healed rapidly whereas in the former it developed into a typical ulcer.

It is often found that occupational groups particularly subject to local injury e.g. tea garden coolies working amongst tea bushes suffer more than their fellow coolies who work in the factory and even amongst Clements Papuan natives (*vide supra*) the factor may have been occupation rather than diet.

**The source and transmission of the causal organism**—The fusiform organism is found infecting the mouth and other mucous membranes but it also occurs widely in nature as a saprophyte and is commonly found in the soil. The ulcers appear in outbreaks in which a large number of persons are affected about the same time but it has never been satisfactorily demonstrated that one person is infected from another either directly or indirectly and it would be equally in keeping with the epidemiological observations to assume that they were all infected from a common source.

Insects have been suspected as vectors but there is no indication that they act otherwise than as mechanical transmitters. The common house fly and flies of the genus *Sphunculina* have been particularly sus-

pected. Flies of the latter group are very prevalent during the season at which these ulcers occur, and they are certainly attracted to purulent wounds, but they have never been incriminated experimentally and some negative observations have been made. It is almost certain that flies *could* act as mechanical transmitters, how far they are responsible for outbreaks is uncertain, and there is little positive supporting evidence for the hypothesis.

Roy (1928) suggested that the bacillus probably remains in the soil just below the surface during the dry season, and that, when the first monsoon rains convert the surface soil into mud which is splashed and caked over the legs of the coolies or cultivators, anaerobic fusiform bacilli, which are imbedded in the mud, infect existing skin wounds. Later, when the rains become heavy, the bacilli are washed out of the soil. The present writer feels that this theory fits many of the known facts regarding the epidemiology of the disease. It seems quite possible that the variations in the incidence of *ulcus tropicum* from year to year might be accounted for by variations in climatic conditions, or in the use of manures which will alter the soil flora.

#### PATHOLOGY

The fusiform bacillus is unable to establish itself without the cooperation of some other organism the membrane producing diphtheroids appear to be amongst the most suitable symbionts. The fusiform anaerobes multiply rapidly under the protecting membrane and establish themselves in subcutaneous tissues, they have limited powers of tissue invasion, but they produce a toxin that causes necrosis of the overlying skin and a cellular reaction in the surrounding tissues. Later there is granulation tissue formation at the edges and at the base of the ulcer under the layer of fusiform bacilli which form a thick mat immediately under the upper necrotic layer of the ulcer, this granulation tissue is later replaced to some extent by fibrotic tissue. There is some indication that the individual ulcer is anatomically self limiting as the ulcer tends to be circular and not more than an inch or two inches in diameter, its downward extension is limited by the first fascial layer that it encounters and its lateral extension by a ring of cellular reaction and eventually by the fibrosis that occurs. There are, of course, occasions when two or several separate ulcers join to form a large and sometimes irregular shaped ulcer which may almost surround the leg, interfere with the circulation and lymph drainage and cause painful oedema of the leg and foot. There is no evidence of hæmatogenous or lymphatic extension although the proximal lymph nodes may enlarge as a result of infection of the wound with septic organisms.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Small itching papules appearing at the site of an existing scratch or abrasion, rapidly become necrotic and if the necrotic tissue is removed a small ulcer with undermined edges will be found underneath. The ulcer spreads rapidly and in a few days will have reached the 'standard' size (*vide supra*), a circular ulcer from an inch to two inches in diameter. Other ulcers may meanwhile be developing in the neighbourhood these may remain discrete or may coalesce and form a large ulcer. In a large percentage of cases there is however only a single circular ulcer.

The ulcers are usually on the lower limbs on the dorsum of the foot at the ankle or instep or on the front of the leg a few inches above the instep, they rarely occur above the knee.

Mild constitutional symptoms of a toxæmic rather than a febrile nature often accompany the ulcers. Even deep ulcers may not be particularly painful, provided they do not interfere with the blood supply or lymph drainage, but when this occurs the swelling, heaviness, and pain make the patient unable, or at least disinclined to do his work.

In those cases in which the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus has been found, the neuritic sequelæ associated with this infection will often be observed (see VELDT SORE).

The discharge is usually a reddish watery exudate that trickles continuously from under the necrotic membrane that covers the ulcer. The edges of the ulcer at first are undermined, but later become firm, fibrotic, and raised. The ulcer extends down to the first fascial layer or to the bone, but the ordinary tropical ulcer does not usually involve the bone or the joints; however, the danger to joints from the presence of a large open septic wound in their vicinity is obvious, and in many cases the septic infection does extend to the tendon sheaths and joints, producing a dangerous condition at the time and serious crippling afterwards.

The ulcers are usually very chronic but even without any special form of treatment most of them will heal in a few months time, in Assam, for example, when the rains stop and the weather becomes cool again. They leave a considerable scar. Any immunity built up can only be very temporary as it is not uncommon for a patient to suffer from these ulcers at about the same season year after year.

#### DIAGNOSIS

When tropical ulcers presenting the typical picture—circular sloughing ulcers with a firm raised edge exuding a sero-hæmorrhagic fluid, and mostly below the knee—are seen against their appropriate epidemiological background, there should be no difficulty in arriving at a correct clinical diagnosis, but not even those most familiar with them should be prepared to make a diagnosis when an isolated ulcer is encountered in other circumstances; one must first exclude ulcers from other causes and finally resort to bacteriological examination.

Other conditions that have to be excluded are varicose ulcers (not common in the class of patient who is likely to suffer from tropical ulcer), syphilitic ulcers (which can be excluded by a negative Wassermann reaction), yaws (which can also be excluded by a negative Wassermann reaction and by failure to find *Treponema pertenue* in smears from the ulcer), oriental sore (which has a very different geographical distribution and is confined to drier climates, and will show the round forms of *Leishmania tropica* in material taken from the edges of the ulcers; see p. 185), and veldt sore.

If a smear is made from the exudate, or better still from a scraping from the base of the ulcer, the characteristic fusiform bacilli, with or without spirochaetes, will be recognized easily. In a Giemsa-stained specimen, the characteristic beading of the fusiform bacilli will be clearly seen.

#### PREVENTION

As there is still some uncertainty about the cause of *ulcus tropicum*, measures to prevent it cannot yet be placed on a proper scientific basis, but if meanwhile we adopt certain premises, it will be possible to map

out a provisional preventive programme. These premises are that the ulcers are most likely to occur in people who are ill-nourished and/or debilitated from diseases such as malaria and dysentery, that the causal organism—which is apparently a fusiform anaerobic bacillus—in nature lives as a saprophyte, probably in the soil, and that an epidermal lesion, due to trauma, dermatitis, water sores, insect or leech bite, or to some other cause, is essential for the specific organism or organisms to gain entry. Preventive measures should therefore include, (a) improvement of the diet and general state of health of the population, (b) the protection of the limbs against direct contact with the soil or mud, and the early cleansing of the skin thus contaminated, (c) protection of the legs from trauma, contact with irritant plants, and insect and leech bites, and the prevention of hookworm infection and of dermatitis from any cause.

How these recommendations are to be put into practice will depend so much on local conditions that detailed discussion here is out of the question. Very careful consideration should, however, be given before any special measures are adopted, as in the most promising theoretical recommendation there is liable to be a 'snag'. The point can possibly be best illustrated by quoting two recommendations made on a *priori* grounds that in practice failed.

(i) *Recommendation* That a shallow concrete reservoir containing antiseptic lotion 16 inches deep be placed so that bare-footed tea-garden coolies returning from work have to walk through the tank and cleanse their legs.

*Result* If the antiseptic was weak, it became neutralized after the first few dozen coolies had trailed through it with their muddy feet, and the rest walked through a septic medium that was likely to spread any infection that already existed, and if the antiseptic was strong, it irritated the legs of the first coolies who walked through it causing dermatitis and it later became equally useless or detrimental.

(ii) *Recommendation* That tea-estate coolies should be provided with putties to protect their legs from scratches which they are very liable to get from the pruned tea bushes.

*Result* Very early in the day the putties became saturated with rain and mud, and the wearing of damp putties for the rest of the day caused dermatitis.

It is possible that in certain circumstances both these recommendations might have been successful, but in most cases they were a failure, apparently for the reasons given above.

The encouragement and if necessary supervision of individual cleansing of the feet of coolies on return from work, and the early treatment of all skin lesions may necessitate the temporary employment of considerable extra personnel on a tea-estate, but may be well worth undertaking if the efficiency of the labour force is seriously threatened at a time of year when most labour is needed, as often happens when there is a serious outbreak.

#### TREATMENT

There is no short cut to the successful treatment of this condition, as is evident by the multiplicity and the variety of the methods advocated. Nearly every writer on the subject has some special treatment that he considers the best. In view of the possibility that the name 'ulcus tropicum' is used to describe an aetiological heterogeneous group of ulcers, short accounts of some of the treatments advocated by reliable observers will be included.

## Some Treatments Advocated

'Specifics'—Parenteral arsenicals, arsphenamine, neoarsphenamine and novarsenobenzol, can claim the largest number of advocates. Various bismuth preparations have also been used with apparent success.

Sodium iodide given by mouth in doses up to the point of producing iodism, combined with local applications of hydrogen peroxide, has had some success. For sulphanilamide and sulphathiazole, good results have been claimed by some workers, and denied by others.

A number of workers have advocated autogenous and specific stock vaccines prepared by various methods, but others consider that equally good results are obtained by non specific vaccines, and yet others have recommended milk injections.

Under this heading also, the specific action of calcium and of several vitamins that have been claimed by some—usually isolated—workers should be mentioned.

**Local applications**—Neoarsphenamine and other arsenicals and sulphanilamide and sulphathiazole have been recommended as local applications. A saturated solution of potassium permanganate (5 per cent) applied by means of a shaped piece of soaked lint to the ulcerated area only for as long as the patient can stand it, pure phenol or powdered copper sulphate in glycerine (one part in two) similarly applied, crude tar and powdered cinchona febrifuge have each been advocated. More recently, whole blood serum, and powdered dry plasma have been suggested as dressings. Some success has been claimed for cod liver oil dressings.

For bathing the ulcers acriflavine, 1 in 1000 potassium permanganate 1 in 4000 and electrolytic chlorogen have been advocated. Innumerable creams, ointments and dusting powders in the preparation of which zinc oxide, several bismuth salts, iodine, iodoform and/or sodium hypochlorite are combined with olive oil, paraffin or lanolin or boric acid have been suggested.

Surgical procedures, from debridement to total excision of the ulcer have been proposed.

## PRACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS

In considering the treatment of this condition, it is very necessary to keep the practical aspects of the problem before one. There will of course be other circumstances but a common one will be that in which a large number of coolies in a labour force are suffering from these ulcers and the immediate requirement is to get them on to their feet again in the shortest time possible. In most cases it will pay in the long run to put the patient into hospital (and there will usually be some sort of hospital, however primitive) and treat him thoroughly, rather than to apply palliative measures.

The patient must be kept lying down as much as possible. The wound must be thoroughly cleansed first with hot magnesium sulphate fomentations then preferably with hydrogen peroxide, and finally with some antiseptic lotion such as eusol until the sloughs have been removed, dead tissue can be cut away but any action to cause bleeding should be avoided. The ulcer itself is then very carefully swabbed with pure phenol or with a mixture of copper sulphate and phenol in glycerine (half an ounce pow

dered copper sulphate in one ounce of glycerine to which a drachm of phenol is added), this is allowed to act for a few minutes and is then washed off with normal or hypertonic saline, finally, it is dusted over with sulphonamide, covered lightly with a single or a double layer of gauze to keep off dust and flies but to allow as much air and sunlight as possible to get to the ulcer, the latter appears to have a very beneficial effect in some cases. This is repeated for several days until a healthy red healing surface is left. One or two applications of scarlet-red lotion may help the healing process. After a week or ten days, it will often be possible to cover the area with *tulle gras*, or some such dressing, strap the whole limb firmly or even put on a plaster of paris casing, and allow the patient to go back to work.

In some cases ambulatory treatment along these lines will be possible. In such cases the phenol 'cauterization' should be very thorough and the strapping or plaster should be applied and left for a week or more. Some workers claim better results by cleaning the surrounding skin only, putting on a piece of gauze and then applying the strapping or plaster immediately.

Older ulcers with thick fibrous edges will require surgical scraping. This should be done under an anæsthetic and should be thorough, it will also be advisable to swab the ulcer with phenol to complete the operation.

If the area is extensive skin grafting will be necessary.

During his stay in hospital the patient should be given a good balanced diet with a full quota of protein and additional vitamins if there are any other indications of specific deficiency.

In cases in which the presence of the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus is established specific treatment as for veldt sore should also be given (*vide infra*).

#### PROGNOSIS

Left untreated a certain percentage of ulcers will heal in a month or so, but the majority will continue for several months, even up to a year or more.

Under active treatment early ulcers should keep the patient away from work for a few days only, more advanced ones for two to three weeks, and very advanced ulcers for two to three months. A few obstinate cases will be encountered that will lead to the loss of a limb, and death may follow septic complications.

---

#### VELDT SORE

**Definition**—Veldt sore is a shallow ulcer appearing on exposed parts of the body that affects white persons, mainly, in hot desert areas, the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus is recoverable from the lesion in a large percentage of cases.

**Discussion**—The status of veldt sore as a distinct disease entity is not in the opinion of the writer satisfactorily established. This ulcer obtrudes itself on to the medical scene during war-times—it made its debut in 1899 and staged comebacks in 1914 and 1939—and then retires into comparative obscurity from whence it is reported upon rarely often by non medical patients and in retrospect. It does not seem to have been investigated scientifically during peace interludes.



At the time of the Boer war, bacteriology was young and *Staphylococcus aureus* was blamed, during the first world war, the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus was definitely associated with the disease but there was much about the aetiology and pathology still left unexplained, and during the present war, it is to be hoped that the picture will be clarified. The writer very much regrets that he has to write this chapter now and hopes that if this book ever goes into a second edition he will therein be able to include the fruits of recent experience.

Skin infection with the Klebs-Loeffler is recognized in temperate climates and in recent and past experience diphtheroids and also true diphtheria bacilli have sometimes been isolated from several different forms of ulcer, especially ulcus tropicum but it seems unjustifiable on these grounds alone to call these yeldt sores. It is proposed to confine the discussion in this chapter to the shallow ulcer of desert areas while recognizing the fact that even these are probably a heterogeneous group.

**Geographical Distribution**—The condition has been reported from a number of localities, mainly in the subtropics where desert conditions prevail, South Australia (Barcoo river), Queensland, North Africa, including Egypt, and the Sudan, South Africa, Gallipoli, Arabia and Iraq, and northern India.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The disease is largely confined to sojourners in hot desert areas, e.g. Australians in the Barcoo rivers area, it was prevalent amongst British soldiers in South Africa in 1899-1901, amongst the colonial and British troops in Gallipoli, Egypt, and Iraq in 1914-1918, and recently amongst the soldiers of the United Nations in North Africa.

It is more common amongst fair-haired than dark-haired, and commonest amongst red-haired individuals, it does apparently occur amongst the fairer-skinned natives of the endemic areas, e.g. the Arabs of Iraq but is not common amongst these and is even rarer amongst darker-skinned Africans and Indians.

### ÆTIOLOGY

**Historical**.—Walshe (1918) noted the association of these sores with diphtheritic paralysis and Craig (1919) demonstrated the presence of Klebs-Loeffler bacilli in the ulcers.

Klebs-Loeffler bacilli, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, are recoverable from the well established ulcer in a large majority of cases. In the pre-ulcerative (vesicular) stage, it is not usually found. This suggests that the lesion in its early stages has some independent cause and that the diphtheria bacillus is superimposed and gives the ulcer its special character, particularly its chronicity.

What then are the predisposing causes of this lesion? A number of suggestions have been made. Dietary deficiency, sun trauma, (Henderson, 1943), sand trauma, and personal susceptibility of the fair- and red-haired. In each case the data presented are suggestive, but in no case convincing.

### PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The lesions usually appear on exposed and hairy parts of the body (although not usually on the head) on the dorsa of the feet, on the knees, on the backs of the hand, on the forearms, and on face, neck, and ears. A small vesicle develops at the root of a hair and gradually enlarges into a blister which eventually bursts leaving a shallow ulcer. At first the base of the ulcer consists of the deeper layers of the epidermis, but the infiltration extends into the dermis and the remaining epidermal layer sloughs off, the ulcer extends centrifugally up to a maximum of about two inches in diameter. At this stage the edges are punched out and slightly in-

durated, and the base of the ulcer which is still shallow is covered with a greyish slough, the surrounding skin is cyanosed rather than inflamed, and there is not usually much exudate. The lymphatic involvement is not constant and probably depends on the nature of the secondary invading organisms.

The special character of the lesions is their obstinate chronicity, and their failure to respond to any of the usual treatments for septic sores. They may heal temporarily with a thin epithelial covering which is likely to break down, and even when they finally heal they leave a depressed scar that may persist for years.

From the outset the lesion is a painful one, at first the sensation is that of pricking, and itchy, then burning, and finally there is a frank pain. There are usually some constitutional symptoms: fever, headache and malaise.

Very common symptomatic associations with these ulcers, which in one reported series occurred in 27 per cent of cases, were the paræsthesias and paralyses that are frequently encountered in faucial diphtheria. Diphtheria toxin is absorbed at the site of the ulcer and passes along the afferent nerve fibres to the central nervous system where it affects the motor cells and then diffuses to the neighbouring cells, so that the first effects are noticed in the limb in which the ulcer is found, weakness, anæsthesia and paræsthesia of the leg and foot, loss of knee jerk, foot-drop, and loss of coordination and an ataxic gait are amongst the symptoms commonly encountered, or, if the sore is on the upper limb, loss of power of grip, loss of tactile sensation, and inability to execute any fine movements of the hand. Later, the toxin reaches the circulation and more distant groups of muscles are affected, such as the muscles of visual accommodation, and of the palate.

The nervous symptoms do not usually develop for some weeks after the ulcers first appear, and in fact it is often several weeks after the ulcers have healed before the eye symptoms develop.

#### DIAGNOSIS

This is made on clinical and epidemiological, on bacteriological grounds, or on both.

The investigator must first decide for himself what in his opinion constitutes a veldt sore. He may decide to accept the clinical picture and epidemiological evidence alone, if so, should *Corynebacterium diphtheriæ* also be found, the case will be nicely rounded off as a complete syndrome, but their absence will not exclude a diagnosis of veldt sore in a clinically typical case seen in the appropriate surroundings. Or he may be more conservative and demand the typical clinical and epidemiological evidence and the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus. On the other hand, if he takes the view that any sore in which the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus is found is a veldt sore, then he must be prepared to revise his ideas of the epidemiology and clinical picture, except with regard to the nervous sequelæ, as he may, for example, see typical Naga sores acquired in the humid jungles of Assam or Burma, and starting perhaps as leech bites, which give an almost pure culture of *C. diphtheriæ*.

The writer feels that the first attitude is the correct one to take at present. Veldt sore was a clinical entity for many years, then the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus was associated with it. The Klebs-Loeffler bacillus has

been shown to be promiscuous in its associations. It does not seem logical to the writer that this bacillus should be allowed to take the name *veldt* into the humid jungles of Assam and Burma.

A bacteriological diagnosis is made by direct smears (stained with Loeffler's methylene blue) cultures fermentation reactions and animal inoculations (to determine the virulence).

#### PREVENTION

The initial sores can to some extent be prevented by giving exposed persons protection from the sun by suitable clothing and protecting ointments (see p 45), and from the irritating effects of sand and other trauma also by clothing and by frequent bathing and in view of the possible effect of diet one must add by the giving of a balanced diet rich in vitamins.

The superimposition of the diphtheritic infection can be prevented by early treatment and the protection of all sores and abrasions and in the case of troops or other communities by the discovery and suitable treatment of all diphtheria carriers.

A person with infected ulcers should also be isolated to prevent the spreading of infection. It is possible for a patient to develop a faucial infection from his own ulcer as well as *vice versa*.

Protection of the community by diphtheria toxoid may be indicated in special circumstances.

#### TREATMENT

The treatment of the early sore need not be discussed here however when the Klebs Loeffler bacillus is implanted in the wound anti diphtheritic serum becomes a specific. The serum is applied directly to the wound and about 20 000 units given intramuscularly with the usual precautions. In some instances the effect on the local lesion appears to be dramatic but anti serum is in any case necessary in order to obviate or control the neuritic sequelæ.

Topical applications of penicillin (250 Oxford units per c cm) has recently been used with success.

#### REFERENCES

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| ACTON H W (1932)     | <i>Ann Rep Calcutta School Trop Med</i> for 1932<br>Gov Press Calcutta   |
| CHARTERS A D (1943)  | The Causation of Tropical Ulcer <i>Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg</i> <b>37</b> 205                                      |
| CLEMENTS F W (1934)  | The Relation of Diet to Tropical Ulcer <i>Med J Australia</i> <b>1</b> 520   |
| CRAIG C McK (1919)   | A Study of the Ætiology of Desert Septic or Veldt Sore amongst European Troops <i>Lancet</i> <b>ii</b> 478               |
| EDITORIAL (1934)     | Phagedenic Ulcer (Naga Sore) <i>Indian Med Gaz</i> <b>69</b> 331   |
| HENDERSON J M (1943) | The Relation of Sunlight to Desert Sores <i>Brit Med J</i> <b>1</b> 657  |
| ROY D N (1928)       | A report on the Investigation into the Ætiology and Prevention of Naga Sore in Assam <i>Indian Med Gaz</i> <b>63</b> 673 |
| WALSHE F M R (1918)  | Post Diphtheritic Paralysis. A Note on a Form Following Cutaneous Diphtheria <i>Lancet</i> <b>i</b> 232                  |

## LYMPHOPATHIA VENEREUM

	PAGE
DEFINITION	555
HISTORICAL	555
EPIDEMIOLOGY	556
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	556
<i>Social, sex, and race distribution</i>	556
ÆTIOLOGY	556
<i>Historical</i>	556
<i>The causal organism</i>	556
PATHOLOGY	556
<i>The blood</i>	558
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	558
<i>Incubation period—The primary sore—The secondary phase—The tertiary phase</i>	558
DIAGNOSIS	559
<i>Fret's test</i>	559
Technique	
The result	
Precaution	
<i>Differential diagnosis</i>	560
PREVENTION	560
<i>Education—Early recognition—Treatment</i>	
TREATMENT	561
PROGNOSIS	561

**Definition**—Lymphopathia venereum (*syn* lymphogranuloma inguinale and paradenitis) is a disease of venereal origin caused by a filtrable virus which produces at the point of entry a primary sore that is frequently overlooked, infection of the inguinal glands in men and the pelvic glands in women, and a series of conditions that have in the past been known severally as 'climatic bubo', 'esthiomene or ulcer and elephantiasis of the genitals', 'genito recto anal syndrome', and 'inflammatory stricture of the rectum'

**Historical**—Climatic bubo has for many years been recognised as a venereal condition common amongst and apparently peculiar to sailors who have visited oriental and other tropical ports it was thus named by Godding in 1896. Materially the same condition but one with a slightly wider incidence was later described by Durand Nicolas & Favre (1913) and the condition became known in France as

Nicolas Favre disease. The troublesome chronic ulceration and elephantiasis of the female pudenda sometimes associated with rectal stricture and proctitis, had been known to gynecologists for nearly a hundred years (Huguer 1849) as esthiomene. Surgeons had long recognised an inflammatory stricture of the rectum in women the etiology of which did not seem clear, but which was common in prostitutes and often associated with venereal disease. It fell to microbiologists to correlate these independent observations of venereologists gynecologists and surgeons and in 1930 Hellerstrom and Wassen and during the next two years Levaditi and his coworkers (1931) and Findlay (1932) showed that they were all caused by one and the same filtrable virus. The way had been cleared by Frei (1925) who introduced a specific test for venereal lymphogranuloma and climatic bubo Stannus (1933) did much to draw attention to this group of diseases as a group by the publication of his book *The Sixth Venereal Disease*.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—It has a world-wide distribution, but it is undoubtedly much more common in tropical countries, this is probably less a matter of climate than of social conditions (*vide infra*).

**Social, sex and race distribution**—It is a venereal disease. It is particularly associated with the low-class prostitutes that frequent dock areas in most countries in the world. The disease is very prevalent in Mediterranean, South American and Eastern ports, where such prostitutes abound and where little or no control is exercised over them.

In a woman, evidence of the disease will often be concealed, so that she may be unconscious of the infection and transmit it to a number of men, men are therefore more frequently affected. Further, for the same reason, men will be more likely to seek medical advice and the sex disparity will be exaggerated.

In many places in the United States the disease is far more common amongst negroes than amongst members of the white populations. Vander Veer and his coworkers reported that 85 per cent of the cases at the Pennsylvania Hospital were negroes although negroes constituted only 37 per cent of the outpatient population. Further, Frei's test surveys indicate that a high percentage of the negro patients at venereal clinics suffer from this infection without necessarily showing any symptoms.

### ETIOLOGY

**Historical**—In 1924 Gamna described certain chromatin staining bodies as being constantly present in macrophages in the lesion of lymphogranuloma inguinale these are almost certainly inclusion bodies (*vide infra*). In 1930 Hellerstrom and Wassen proved that this disease was caused by a filtrable virus. Certain Japanese workers (Miyagawa *et al* 1935-1936) have satisfied themselves that the granulo-corpuscles previously described by Gay Prieto (1927) and Findlay (1933-34) are actually the virus.

The causal organism is a filtrable virus between 0.127 micron and 0.175 micron in diameter, it passes through Seitz E and K, Chamberland 1, 2 and 3, and Berkefeld V and N filters. It is transmissible to most laboratory animals except rats. Mice are the most suitable experimental animals, in these animals an encephalitis is produced and from the brains of infected mice antigen has been prepared for Frei's test. It grows on the yolk-sacs of developing chick embryos and from this source also an antigen has been prepared.

### PATHOLOGY

The virus gains entry through a small abrasion in the skin or mucous membrane, or possibly through the intact epithelium, usually of the prepuce or glans penis in men and of the vagina or the cervix in women but in

the latter the primary sore may be on or near the clitoris, in the fourchette, or on the labia. Primary lesions around the anus and on the lips have been attributed to unnatural practices. Extra-genital primary lesions have also occurred in children, the infection having been transmitted by contact with bed companions.

There is little local reaction. The epidermis becomes slightly thickened, but there is no downgrowth into the papillary layer. There is no granulomatous reaction, but some infiltration of plasma cells, lymphocytes, and polymorphonuclears, and some exudation which raises the superficial layers and produces a nodule, a papule, or just vesiculation. The papules break down or the vesicles burst leaving a shallow abrasion which may be surrounded by a narrow band of hyperæmia but little infiltration.

Thence the virus passes along the lymphatics to reach the first group of lymph nodes. In the case of men, this will be the inguinal glands, this will also be the case in women in whom the primary sore was in the anterior part of the vulva, but this is rare as the lesion is more often in the vagina, and from here the infection is carried to the lymphatics in the wall of the anal canal and lower end of the rectum and then by reflux infection to the deep pelvic glands, which include the peri-rectal and retro-peritoneal. The wall of the lower end of the rectum and anal canal becomes thickened and later contracts causing a stricture.

In the glands, pin-point epithelioid formations, with giant cells and large reticulo-endothelial cells, appear. The centres become necrotic and in the next stage these star-shaped necrotic areas are seen surrounded by a layer of epithelioid and giant cells, with here and there chromatin-staining Gamna bodies, inclusion bodies in the monocytes and plasma cells, which usually take a dumbbell or pear shape, or sometimes a ring or a crescent form. Around the gland there is a plastic peri-adcitis. Several of these stellate necrotic areas coalesce and form an abscess, which then becomes secondarily infected and suppurates, or it may dry up and become partly absorbed, but fibrotic changes occur in the surrounding tissue, and scars form and eventually contract.

Suppuration is usually the fate of the superficial, inguinal glands, the pus tracks to the surface leaving a number of sinuses which are further infected and become chronic. However, the deep pelvic and peri-rectal glands seldom suppurate, but during the healing process there is a considerable amount of fibrotic contracture which may cause a stricture of the rectum at a higher level than that referred to above.

When there is extensive involvement of the pelvis and the lymphatics, there is considerable interference with the lymphatic drainage from the pudenda, this results in lymphatic back pressure and eventually elephantiasis. The unhealthy elephantoid tissue is easily damaged and is very susceptible to secondary invasion from the surface, as in filariasis (*quod vide*), so that the final state is often one of chronic ulceration.

There are thus four stages in the pathogenesis of this infection, namely,

- (i) *the symptomless stage of invasion,*
- (ii) *the primary lesion,*
- (iii) *the invasion of the lymphatic glands, and*
- (iv) *the sequelæ, due to the fibrotic changes in or around the glands, causing rectal stricture and/or lymphatic obstruction with elephantiasis and ulceration*

**The Blood**—There is no characteristic blood picture, but in the majority of cases there is a moderate leucocytosis with a relative large mononuclear increase, later, there may be a normal white cell count with a slight relative lymphocytosis.

There is an increase in the sedimentation rate and a marked lowering or even an inversion of the albumin/globulin ratio to the extent of causing a positive aldehyde test (see p 164) in rare cases.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The symptomatology can best be considered under four headings corresponding to the four stages in pathogenesis enumerated above.

(i) **Incubation period**—From the time of exposure to infection to the first appearance of the primary sore is only a few days but if this is missed it may be a month or more before the other lesions reach the clinical stage.

(ii) **The primary sore**—This commences in the localities noted above as a vesicle or cluster of vesicles which burst and leave a small shallow ulcer with a white or greyish base and clean cut edges surrounded by a narrow band of slightly reddened skin which is not indurated. It is usually painless, it heals rapidly and it leaves no scar.

In some areas it may be possible to trace the lymphatic spread by feeling a cord like lymphatic vessel e.g. along the wall of the vagina and in these cases nodules may form along the course of the lymphatic vessel and may later break down.

(iii) **The secondary phase**—The onset of this phase is usually from two to six weeks after the initial infection and often occurs with marked constitutional symptoms fever headache arthralgia and malaise. The fever which may be high does not follow any specific pattern and may be mistaken for that of typhoid plague or other febrile disease. It may fall when the buboes develop or continue and eventually become a septic type of fever as the buboes suppurate. Rashes and skin eruptions eye changes and other symptoms suggestive of an allergic reaction may occur.

The buboes which are frequently bilateral are at first soft and rubbery, discrete and slightly tender. Later they become matted, adherent to the underlying tissues and to the skin and very tender. If they are felt carefully soft fluctuating points will be identified. They may heal spontaneously leaving a dimple where the skin has been caught in the retracting scar tissue but as indicated above the inguinal glands usually become secondarily infected, suppurate and if they are not opened discharge through one or more sinuses. Sometimes further secondary infection causes sloughing of the skin and an open ulcer is formed which is usually very chronic. The iliac glands may be affected and although these are much less likely to suppurate it is often possible to feel the large mass of enlarged glands in the iliac region.

In women when the pelvic glands are infected there will often be no localizing signs accompanying the febrile attack to indicate its nature except possibly a heaviness in the pelvis some low back pain and dyspareunia.

(iv) **The tertiary phase**—There will be an interval of several months to several years before the next phase becomes established. The symptoms

of rectal stricture are usually frank dysentery (i.e. the passage of blood and mucus), or alternate diarrhoea and constipation, as in carcinoma recti. The stricture can be seen through the sigmoidoscope with an inch or so of ulcerated and sometimes necrotic mucous membrane below, and there is almost certainly (although it cannot be seen) several inches of ulcerated bowel above the stricture to account for the blood, pus, and mucus coming through the stricture opening and for the associated pain and tenderness.

The interference with the lymphatic return may lead to localized elephantiasis of the preputium clitoris or the labia minora, the latter developing the typical turgid cock's comb appearance, or it may be more extensive and involve the labia majora and other soft parts around the vulva and anus. Ulcers develop and spread involving all the soft parts which break down and lead to recto-vaginal and vagino-vesical fistulae, until eventually the whole area is occupied by a common cloaca into which urine and faeces are discharged, a condition which women particularly of certain coloured races, are able to survive for many months and even years, but which eventually must lead to their death from sepsis and exhaustion.

#### DIAGNOSIS

The clinical diagnosis in the well developed and typical case should not present any difficulty, but there will be many cases in which the syndrome is only partially developed and in which a confirmation of the diagnosis will be welcome. The finding of Gamna bodies and the granulo-corpuscles in histiocytes in biopsy material will provide some additional evidence, but these findings cannot be considered specific. It will therefore be necessary to do Frei's test to obtain absolute confirmation of existent, or at least recent, infection with the specific virus.

**Frei's test**—There are four sources for the antigenic material for this test namely, (a) aspirated pus from an inguinal or other bubo of a diagnosed case\*, (b) macerated material from an infected gland, (c) mouse-brain emulsion from a cerebrally infected mouse\*\*, and (d) emulsion of yolk sacs inoculated with the virus. The first is probably the most satisfactory, but it is very difficult to obtain uncontaminated pus in sufficient quantities and for this reason the mouse brain antigen came into general use some years ago. It is acknowledged that this gives less clear cut results and that it is necessary to measure the papules carefully and to compare them with a normal mouse brain control to ensure a satisfactory result (Grace and Suckind, 1936). Sulkin (1941), using a yolk sac antigen prepared by Rake, McKee and Shaffer (1940), reported more specific results than he obtained with mouse brain antigen. A complement-fixation test can be done with this same antigenic material, this gives a very specific result.

The test becomes positive within 14 days of the first appearance of the primary lesion in a very large majority of cases, rarely, the positive reaction is delayed for another week. It usually remains positive as long

\* To prepare this antigen pus must be obtained by aspiration from an unopened bubo in a patient who has no other venereal disease. This is diluted with four parts of saline heated to 60°C for half-an-hour on three consecutive days and tested for sterility by aerobic and anaerobic technique. If possible its antigenic properties are tested on a known case of the disease after which it is ready for immediate use but can be kept for some time in the cold. A more satisfactory method of preserving the antigen is to freeze the pus and dry it *in vacuo*; the powdered pus is dissolved in 50 parts of normal saline when it is required for use.

\*\* Commercial preparations are available.



as there are lesions and often for some time after they have healed. The test is positive in about 90 per cent of cases of chronic ulcerative elephantiasis of virus origin.

It has been shown that both the intradermal and the complement fixation tests remain positive as long as the virus is present, and, conversely, if the reactions are positive, it is evidence that the virus is still present. This may be as long as 25 years after infection, and it is possible that such persons are still infectious.

**Technique**—An intracutaneous injection of 0.1 c. cm. of antigen is given into the skin of the arm or leg and at the same time an injection of similar substance that does not contain the specific antigen is given a few inches away. The result is read after 48 hours.

**The result.**—With Frei's pus antigen a papule of at least 5 mm. in diameter and with either the mouse-brain or the yolk-sac antigen of at least 7 mm. constitutes a positive result. The papule is surrounded by a hyperæmic halo and sometimes has a pustular or even a necrotic centre. The extreme limit of a non-specific reaction is 6 mm. and the controls are usually of the order of 1 to 4 mm. in diameter.

**Precaution**—Frei (1938) recommends that the test should not be done in the 'peracute' stage or in cases where there is suppuration near the perineum on account of the dangers of a generalized or local reaction.

This disease may be associated with other venereal diseases, and when a diagnosis of some other venereal disease is made care should be taken to exclude the possibility that lymphopathia venereum infection has also been established. Frei's test should therefore be a routine investigation in venereal clinics.

**Differential diagnosis**—The buboes must be distinguished from other glandular swellings, acute enlargement, e.g. sepsis, chancre, glandular fever, plague, tularemia, and malignancy, the elephantiasis and ulceration from filariasis and other causes of lymphatic obstruction, from granuloma venereum, chancre, cancer, tuberculosis, and actinomycosis, and the rectal stricture from cancer, syphilis, tuberculosis, ulcerative colitis and other dysenteries.

## PREVENTION

Under this heading it is only possible to make very general remarks. In this connection certain facts must be remembered. Firstly, lymphopathia venereum unlike some other venereal diseases, gonorrhoea and syphilis for example, is confined to the lowest strata of society. It is, therefore, obviously preventable by the observation of the simple rules of hygiene. Secondly, although, as stated, there is every reason to believe that it is a disease associated with poverty and a lack of hygienic knowledge, its prevalence is not yet fully known, nor whether persons with subclinical infections act as carriers. Thirdly, it has not received the attention in medical schools it deserves, not even in special classes on venereal diseases. Lastly, there is as yet no treatment that can be considered a true specific for the disease.

The first line of attack must therefore be education, primarily, of general medical personnel, then of the social hygienist, and finally of the general public. In order to impress any of these groups with the importance of the subject, figures will be necessary, to obtain which not only is better reporting of the clinically obvious cases of this disease imperative, but clinically obscure cases must be sought out, Frei's-test surveys should be

carried out in certain populations, e.g. amongst prostitutes, and should be adopted as a routine practice in venereal clinics. As satisfactory antigen is now obtainable commercially, this should not present any great difficulty.

Much can now be done by **early recognition and treatment** of the disease to limit its spread, but, if a true specific could be found, this line of attack would obviously be considerably facilitated.

### TREATMENT

In view of the diversity of the lesions it is obvious that any adequate discussion on treatment would lead one far beyond the scope of this book, so that it will be necessary to confine remarks mainly to medical treatment.

No true specific treatment has yet been found, some promising early reports on the use of certain 'sulpha' drugs were published, but none of these drugs has lived up to this early promise, which is not surprising in view of their total lack of success in other virus infections.

There is evidence that in the early stages antimony will sometimes cut short the infection. The drugs used have been sodium antimony tartrate and Fouadin or its chemical equivalents, for dosage see GRANULOMA VENEREUM. Gold preparations have also been used, but, as their administration is not without danger and as their specific action in this disease is uncertain, it seems unjustifiable to use them.

Earl (1939) reported good results with sulphapyridine 3 grammes daily for five days with a second similar course after four days interval, but few workers have had such good results with this small dosage. With larger doses of either this drug or sulphathiazole (8 grammes followed by 6 grammes daily) continued for several weeks improvement appears to be effected in a certain number of cases. The reversal of a positive Frei's test is evidence of cure.

In rectal stricture, considerable improvement in the secondary bowel condition is effected by placing the patient on sulphaamide, three grammes daily for twelve days, alone, or combined with 3 per cent 'sulpha' drug bowel-washes. When the inflammatory condition subsides, the stricture disappears and it is often possible to avoid any surgical interference.

The treatment by increasing doses of Frei's antigen that was advocated at one time was not a great success and has been largely abandoned.

Buboes should be treated by local applications of heat, infra-red rays, or hot fomentations, and later when they become soft and fluctuating, they should be aspirated with a sterile syringe and sealed, rather than opened and drained.

### PROGNOSIS

Despite the absence of a truly specific treatment, if treatment is undertaken early, the prognosis appears to be good. This is especially true in the case of men. In uncomplicated rectal stricture when the pelvic adnexa are not involved to any extent, even when medical treatment has failed, something can usually be done surgically. In cases in which lymphatic obstruction is already established, great care, which may be difficult or impossible to maintain, is necessary to prevent ulceration. Finally, when there is extensive ulceration with fistulae already formed, the condition is hopeless as the unhealthy tissues will not stand up to any plastic operations.

## REFERENCES

- DURAND, M, NICOLAS, J and FAVRE, M (1913) Lymphogranulomatose inguinale subaiguë d'origine génitale probable peut-être vénérienne *Bull. and Mem Soc Med Hop Paris*, 3<sup>e</sup>, Ser 35, 274
- EARL, K V (1939) .. .. Lymphopathia venereum treated with M & B 693 *Lancet*, i, 985
- FINDLAY, C M (1932) .. .. The relationship of climatic bubo and lymphogranuloma inguinale *Lancet*, ii, 11
- (1933) .. .. Experiments on the Transmission of the virus of climatic bubo to animals (lymphogranuloma inguinale) *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg*, 27, 35
- FREI, W (1925) .. .. Eine neue Hautreaktion bei Lymphogranuloma inguinale *Klin Woch.*, 4, 2148
- (1938) .. .. Venereal lymphogranuloma *J Amer Med Assoc*, 110, 1653
- CAMNA, C (1924) .. .. Sull' etiologia del linfogranuloma inguinale *Arch Pat Clin Med*, iii, 305
- CAY-PRITO, J A (1927) .. .. Contribución al estudio de la linfogranulomatosis inguinal subaguda, úlceras venéreas adenogénas de Nicolás y Favre *Actas Dermo Sifil.*, 20, 122
- CONDINO, C C (1896) .. .. A non-venereal bubo *Brit Med J*, ii, 842
- GRACE, A W and SUSKIND, F H (1936) Lymphogranuloma inguinale III The cultivation of virus in mice and its use in the preparation of Frei's antigen *Arch Derm and Syph.*, 33, 853
- HELLERSTROM, S and WASSER, E (1930) Meningo-Enzephalitische Veränderungen bei Affen nach intercerebraler Impfung mit Lymphogranuloma inguinale *Int Derm Cong of Derm and Syph*, 1147
- HUGUIER, D C (1849) *Mém. Acad. Méd Paris*, 14, 507
- LEVADITI, C, RAVAUT, P and CACHERA, R (1931) Les preuves de la nature lymphogranulomateuse de la maladie expérimentale du singe *Bull. Soc Franc Derm et Syph.*, 38, 1456
- McKEE, C M, RAKE, C and SHAFER, M F (1940) Complement Fixation Test in Lymphogranuloma venereum *Proc Soc Exp Biol and Med.*, 44, 410
- MITAGAWA, Y *et al* (1935) .. .. Studies on virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale Nicholas, Favre and Durand *Japanese J Exp Med.*, 13, 733
- STANNUS, H S (1933) .. .. A Sixth Venereal Disease Bailière, Tindall and Cox London
- SULKIN, S E, FLETCHER, P F, HUBER, E T and REH, E P. (1941) Frei's test for lymphogranuloma venereum. *J Amer Med Assoc.*, 116, 2663

## GRANULOMA VENEREUM

	PAGE
DEFINITION	563
EPIDEMIOLOGY	563
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	563
<i>Transmission</i>	563
<i>Social, sex, age, and race distribution</i>	564
ÆTIOLOGY	564
PATHOLOGY	564
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	565
<i>Primary sore—Typical granulomatous ulcer—Extra genital ulcers—</i>	
<i>Generalized form—Summary</i>	566
DIAGNOSIS	566
<i>Differential diagnosis</i>	566
PREVENTION	567
TREATMENT	567
<i>Local treatment—Specific treatment—Surgical treatment</i>	567
PROGNOSIS	568

**Definition**—Granuloma venereum is a specific infectious ulcerating granuloma usually of the pudenda and of venereal origin associated with the presence in the affected tissues of a bacillus like body, the Donovan body

**Historical** The disease was apparently first described by McLeod in India at the end of the 19th century. The bacillus-like body now generally regarded as the causal organism was first associated with this disease by Donovan (1905) and has since been known as the Donovan body

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—The infection is widespread in the tropics. It occurs in Brazil and other tropical countries in South and Central America in the West Indies and in the southern states of the United States, in tropical and northern Africa in southern China in India where it is confined mainly to the south east coastal area i.e. Madras, with a few cases occurring in Bengal but none on the west coast, in Northern Australia, and in several Pacific islands

**Transmission**—It is undoubtedly transmitted venereally as a general rule, but there are exceptions to this rule and there are certain anomalies which require explaining. It is for example often found in only one partner

of a marriage. The explanation for this is that apparently it is only infectious in its early stages. In endemic countries it commonly follows circumcision operations even in children, and other cutting operations such as herniotomy, in the genital area.

**Social, sex, age and race distribution**—More cases are reported in men than in women, but as in the case of lymphopathia venereum this may be because the early sores are often inapparent in the woman who may therefore transmit it to a number of men. Children are frequently infected non-venereally.

The infection appears to be far more common in the coloured than in the white races, and is confined largely to lower social strata, as is lymphopathia venereum but there are possibly more exceptions in the case of this disease which suggests that there is some common alternative mode of transmission of infection.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The Donovan body is constantly present in the tissues in the earlier lesions. It is a short (1 by 2 microns) 'capsulated' bacillus like body with rounded ends, but diplococcal forms are also seen. It is found in large epithelial cells. It was at an earlier date given the name, *Colymmatobacillus granulomatis*, but is now usually classified as *Klebsiella inguinale* (Bergey, 1939), however, in view of its marked host specificity (so far man only has been infected), its ability to reproduce only in living tissues namely in large mononuclear cells, and its suggestive staining reactions many workers still believe that it is a protozoon or at any rate that it is not a *Klebsiella*. It has also been suggested that the bodies may be cell inclusions and evidence of a virus that is the true causal organism.

It is gram negative but stains well with Romanowsky stains and for this reason is often given in textbooks as likely to be confused with the 'round' stage of leishmania and with *Histoplasma capsulatum*. In the former case, there is very little similarity, but the confusion might well take place in the student's mind on account of the similarity in the names the Donovan body and the Leishman Donovan body.

The organism has been grown on the yolk sac of the developing chick embryo by Anderson deMonbreun and Goodpasture (1945) who are satisfied that it is a capsulated bacillus.

Experimental transmission to man by rubbing the exudate from a sore on to the scarified skin has been effected.

### PATHOLOGY

The causal organism appears to be able to enter through the intact or at any rate very slightly abraded skin or mucous membrane. The first lesion to appear is a shallow ulcer that rapidly heals and it seems possible that this ulcer, which is not constant is caused by associated organisms. The typical cellular reaction is in the corium where there is first a round celled infiltration followed by a typical granuloma formation with the formation of new capillary loops epithelial cells and fibroblasts. There is thinning and later loss of the squamous layer in the central portion of the lesion, while around the edges some epithelial proliferation and down growth of the inter papillary processes sometimes suggesting squamous celled carcinoma may occur and at the base of the ulcer true granuloma formation with no endarteritis little tendency to necrosis and no giant

cell formation. However, in the dense fibrous tissue that is found in chronic lesions there may be pin-point abscess formations, as occur in actinomycosis.

The ulcer spreads by direct extension, by auto inoculation of apposed surfaces, or indirectly by finger transfer of infection to more distant parts, *e.g.* the lips, as the ulcer spreads in one direction the other end may heal, leaving a track of white scar tissue. There is no specific lymph node infection. A case of generalized infection, apparently hæmatogenous, has been reported.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

After an incubation period of a few days the primary sore appears, usually on the penis or in the groin in men, and on the labia, in the fourchette, or in the vagina in women. It is a shallow, indolent and painless ulcer, without any accompanying glandular enlargement. It is easily overlooked and in fact few women give any history of a primary sore. It usually heals within three or four days, but after a few more days—bringing the total period up to ten days to three weeks from the time of exposure—one or more nodules may form in the same locality. These break down and an ulcer appears, on this occasion it is deeper, shows no tendency to heal, and spreads. The typical *granulomatous ulcer* develops, there are three types of lesion, the sloughing ulcer with a purulent base but few granulations, the *granulomatous ulcer* with the red velvety granulations rising to the skin level that bleed easily and the raised warty and purulent lesion. These are not clean cut types and not only are there intermediate types but one type may develop from the other, usually in the order mentioned. If the ulcer is in the groin, it usually extends rapidly the full length of the fold of the groin and to the root of the penis and scrotum and if it is on the penis, it may spread down the penis for an inch or so and then by contact with an apposed surface *e.g.* in the groin or on the scrotum cause a new ulcer to develop.

The ulcers become secondarily infected, often with a fuso-spirochætal infection, and usually emit a foul-smelling sero-purulent discharge.

In women the ulcer may spread up the walls of the vagina and involve the cervix. Or the lesion may commence as a chronic cervicitis.

Transference of infection to other mucous membranes, *e.g.* the mouth, is not uncommon amongst persons with careless and unhygienic habits. Rarely, isolated *extra-genital ulcers* are found, which suggest perverted practices.

Very extensive areas of skin are sometimes involved. In course of time apparently as an attempt at spontaneous healing fibrotic changes occur at the edges of the ulcer and these sometimes extend into the ulcer, isolating portions of it. These fibrous strands subsequently contract, causing considerable deformities, they also interfere with the lymphatic drainage, so that some degree of *elephantiasis* often occurs, and in the male, it is not uncommon to see the penis and scrotum involved in a mass of fibrotic tissue and the whole glued to the inner aspect of the thigh, and in women a condition not unlike that of *esthiomene* may occasionally result.

Spontaneous healing of the whole ulcer may occur, but only with extensive scarring. Scarring and keloid formation is particularly striking in negroid patients. In the dark skinned races, the scars are nearly always white and repigmentation seldom occurs.

**Generalized form**—Recently, a most unusual case in which there were lesions on all parts of the body was seen in New Orleans. Some of the lesions, on the back for example, seemed to preclude direct or indirect external transfer of infection, and suggested dissemination of infection via the blood stream.

To summarize, there may or may not be a primary shallow ulcer, otherwise the first lesion is a nodular button-like one. This is replaced by a spreading serpiginous ulcer, which may develop a necrotic base but later becomes a hypertrophic granulomatous lesion, and finally a cicatricial one. Extragenital lesions and even a generalized infection have been reported.

### DIAGNOSIS

An early diagnosis is very important as treatment in the early stages is much easier and is more effective. A clinical diagnosis can be made with a fair degree of certainty in many cases, by the nature of the bright red velvety lesions which bleed easily and in the early stages are button-like, however, whenever possible the diagnosis should be confirmed by the finding of the specific Donovan bodies in smears from the exudate from scrapings recovered from the bases or sides of the ulcers, or in biopsy material. This will be easier in the early stages of the infection, as in the late stages the specific organisms become very scanty.

The smear should be stained with Wright's, Leishman's or Giemsa's stain.

The 'Donovan body' has to be distinguished from the round form of leishmania, to which it bears only a very superficial resemblance (*see p 143*), from histoplasma, from the pneumococcus which is gram positive, from the gonococcus, and from Friedlander's bacillus, which also being gram negative and having a well developed capsule will present the only real difficulty.

If there is any doubt, a culture on an ordinary agar slant should be made, on this, Friedlander's bacillus will grow, but not, of course the 'Donovan body'.

A stain which will differentiate the Donovan body from 'other' bacteria especially of the Klebsiella group has been suggested by Mortara and Dienst (1943).

**Technique**—Make a smear and dry it rapidly in the air or by gentle heat. Stain for two minutes with basic fuchsin (0.5 per cent aqueous solution). Decolorize in 0.5 citric acid solution for approximately five seconds and counter-stain with 1 per cent aniline blue.

**Result**—This will stain the intra-cellular Donovan bodies a pink colour and the so-called capsule a light blue. Bacteria will mostly take the blue stain.

Further confirmation can be obtained from the ready response of these lesions to suitable antimony treatment (*vide infra*).

**Differential diagnosis**—The condition will have to be differentiated from chancroid (soft sore or Ducrey's infection) by the absence of the characteristic soft glandular enlargement and of any response to intra-dermal smelcos antigen, from syphilis—by the open granulomatous nature of the early lesion and by the absence of (i) the 'shotty' glandular enlargement (ii) a positive Wassermann reaction and (iii) any response to antisyphilitic treatment from lymphopathia venereum—by the absence of glandular enlargement and by a negative Frei's test, and from tuberculous

and carcinomatous ulceration—by the absence of the characteristic histological pictures in the biopsy material

### PREVENTION

The problem is very much the same as that of lymphopathia venereum (*quod vide*), but for several reasons it should prove a simpler one. In the first place, in granuloma inguinale, there is little indication that a symptomless carrier state can exist, as is suspected in the former disease, and, secondly, trivalent antimony acts as a specific

### TREATMENT

This should be considered under three headings —(i) local, (ii) specific, and (iii) surgical

(i) **Local treatment**—If there is acute inflammation, hot magnesium sulphate fomentations should be applied until this subsides. The lesions should then be bathed at least twice daily with hydrogen peroxide or some mild antiseptic, or, if the site and extent of the lesion make it necessary, by the use of a sitz bath, this should be followed on each occasion by the application of a 20 per cent preparation of podophyllin in olive oil. Should this application prove too painful, it may be preceded by the application of some anæsthetic ointment (e.g. pantocaine 4 per cent or anæsthesin), which should be allowed to act for ten minutes before the podophyllin is applied (Tomskey *et al.*, 1942). This should be continued for about a week—but the duration of the application will depend on the progress of the lesion—and then, when the granulations are considerably reduced, scarlet-red ointment applied to stimulate epithelial growth

As an alternative to podophyllin, four per cent potassium antimony tartrate (tartar emetic) is used, as before, after the preliminary application of some anæsthetic ointment

This local treatment may be applied without any specific treatment, but more rapid cure will be effected if the local and the specific treatment are combined

(ii) **Specific treatment**—Antimony preparations have proven the most successful. Many have been advocated but the most successful have been the simple potassium and sodium antimonyl tartrates and the more complex foudain (pyro-catechin sodium bisulphate, *B.P.* stibophen). More recently, anthomaline (lithium antimony thiomalate) has been used with limited success (Robinson and Robinson, 1942)

Foudain is supplied in a 7 per cent solution in ampoules, and is given intramuscularly, the initial dose is 1.5 c.c.m., and the dose is increased by rapid stages to 5.0 c.c.m., if the patient shows no intolerance. The first three or four doses may be given on successive days but, when the maximum is reached, 48 hours should be allowed between each injection. It is usually advisable to give a full course of about 5.0 c.c.m. and then to discontinue this treatment and observe the progress. A second course may be commenced after two to three weeks' interval, or one of the other antimony preparations may be substituted. It is important to continue the treatment for some time after the lesions have healed as they are otherwise liable to relapse

The course and dosage with either sodium or potassium antimonyl tartrate is the same as that given in kala-azar (*see* p. 168). Anthomaline is



given in 2 c.cm. doses of a 6 per cent solution, from 12 to 15 doses usually being necessary.

(iii) **Surgical treatment.**—Complete excision of the primary sore, or the early secondary lesions is often possible, and should always be considered when an early diagnosis has been made, but partial removal of a large lesion usually leads to infection of the wounds and extension of the process.

Again, in the later stages, after the specific organism has been destroyed as a result of the specific treatment, there will often be a large raw surface left and it may be necessary to scrape or trim the fibrotic edges before the epithelium will begin to grow in from the margins, and, if the area is very extensive, in order to hurry the healing process and limit scarring, skin grafting will be necessary. Further, if important structures, e.g. the perineum, have been destroyed, or contractures have taken place, plastic surgery will have to be considered.

#### PROGNOSIS

The earlier the treatment is undertaken the better are the chances of a rapid cure. With suitable specific treatment the prospects are excellent in early cases, and, even in the more extensive ones, provided there are no serious complications and the patient will cooperate, cure and repair should eventually be effected, but left untreated the process will continue to extend for many years, often causing serious crippling and eventually imperilling the life of the patient.

#### REFERENCES

- ANDERSON, K., DEMONBREUN, W. A., and GOODPASTURE, E. W. (1915) An Experimental Investigation of the Etiology and Immunology of Granuloma Inguinale *Amer J. Syph., Gon., and Ven. Dis.*, 29, 165
- BERGEY, D. H. (1939) .. *Manual of Determination Bacteriology* Williams and Wilkins
- DONOVAN, C. (1905) .. Ulcerating Granuloma of the Pudenda *Indian Med. Gaz.*, 40, 44
- MONTARA, F. and DIENST, R. B. (1913) New Method of Staining Donovan bodies of Granuloma Inguinale *Amer J. Syph., Gon. and Ven. Dis.*, 27, 296
- RAJAM, R. V. (1934) .. A note on the Treatment of Infectious Granuloma with Fouadin *Indian Med. Gaz.*, 69, 372
- ROBINSON, J. M., and ROBINSON, H. M. (1942) .. Treatment of Granuloma Inguinale *Southern Med J.*, 35, 889
- TOMSKY, G. C., VICKERY, G. W. and GETZOFF, P. L. (1942) The Successful Treatment of Granuloma Inguinale with special reference to the use of podophyllin *J. Urol.*, 48, 401

## SOME COMMON SKIN DISEASES OF THE TROPICS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	570
PRICKLY HEAT	
EPIDEMIOLOGY	571
ÆTIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY	571
<i>Anatomical distribution—The lesion</i>	572
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	572
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	572
PROGNOSIS	574
RINGWORM OF THE FEET (TINEA PEDIS) OR DERMATOPHYTOSIS	
EPIDEMIOLOGY	575
ÆTIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY	575
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	575
<i>Complications</i>	576
DIAGNOSIS	576
PREVENTION	576
<i>Prevention of infection—Prevention of morbidity</i>	576
TREATMENT	577
DHOBIE ITCH OR TINEA CRURIS	
EPIDEMIOLOGY	578
ÆTIOLOGY	578
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	578
DIAGNOSIS	578
PREVENTION	578
TREATMENT	579
TOKELAU OR TINEA IMBRICATA	
ÆTIOLOGY	580
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	580

DIAGNOSIS	PAGE
	580
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	580

### PITYRIASIS (TINEA) VERSICOLOR

ÆTIOLOGY	581
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	581
DIAGNOSIS	581
TREATMENT	581

### LEUCODERMA OR VITILIGO

DEFINITION	582
EPIDEMIOLOGY	582
ÆTIOLOGY	582
PATHOLOGY	582
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	582
DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS	583
<i>Albinism — Leprosy — Pityriasis versicolor — Pinta — Syphilide —</i>	
<i>Melan-leucoderma — Post kala azar dermal leishmaniasis — Mor-</i>	
<i>pha — Lupus erythematosus</i>	
TREATMENT	583
<i>General treatment — Diet — Local treatment</i>	
PROGNOSIS	583

**Introduction**—There are few true\* skin diseases that are confined entirely to the tropics but several are undoubtedly more common more severe and acquire a special significance in tropical climates. It is to some of the more important of these that this chapter is devoted. Every white sojourner in the tropics will know prickly heat, dhobie itch and ring worm of the feet—by the or some other names—as actual afflictions or ever present dangers. Pityriasis versicolor, which is a widespread infection amongst natives of the tropics and leucoderma which is a common enough condition in the tropics to justify its inclusion here are more important from an æsthetic than from a morbidity point of view but should be recognized as they may well be confused with other more serious conditions. Finally tinea imbricata is perhaps the only skin disease that has an exclusively tropical distribution.

These conditions will be discussed mainly from the clinical point of view.

---

\* What does and what does not constitute a skin disease is a question that has yet to be answered satisfactorily. Skin manifestations of specific systemic diseases should certainly be excluded and the right of the ulcerative conditions to be included in this category seems equally doubtful. Neither of these groups is considered here. On the other hand many skin diseases have a constitutional origin. Leucoderma is almost certainly an example of the latter.

## PRICKLY HEAT

Prickly heat is probably the commonest of all syndromes suffered by the newly arrived white man in the tropics, and history has recorded that no less august personages than British governors-general in India have been observed rolling on the floor in the agonies of prickly heat during the monsoon in Bengal, and yet our knowledge of the exact ætiology, the pathology and the treatment are still far from complete

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

It occurs in all tropical and in many sub-tropical countries but is especially associated with the 'green' tropics and with the periods of year when humidity is high, e.g. the monsoon in India.

The dark-skinned native of the tropics rarely suffers from this condition. It is far more common in the newly arrived sojourner than in the older residents, but the white man seldom becomes completely immune. A degree of immunity is undoubtedly acquired, but the main reason for the relative freedom from prickly heat enjoyed by the older resident is certainly that experience has taught him how to behave in the tropics and how to take simple precautions to avoid this distressing complaint. It is more severe in infants and children than in adults, in men than in women, in the thick-set than in the spare individual, in the fair than in the dark, and is most pronounced in the obese.

It was more common in the past when the British soldier in India wore heavy broadcloth, when the sojourner wore the formal dress of his country of origin, and when the cholera belt was considered an essential precaution, than it is today when the dress of both the soldier and the civilian sojourner is more rational. It occurs more commonly amongst those persons whose circumstances prevent regular bathing and changing of clothes.

## ÆTIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

On the subject of the ætiology of prickly heat, there are several schools of thought.

Smith (1927) claimed to have isolated a yeast-like fungus apparently a monilia regularly from the skin in this condition but most other workers question the specificity of this organism. There seems little reason to believe that the cutaneous moniliasis that he produced experimentally is identical with prickly heat, the former is readily cured by 2 per cent gentian violet which is certainly not true of the latter. Blomfield (1943) appears to consider that prickly heat is due to functional failure of the sweat glands as a result of overaction.

There is little doubt that infection plays an important part as there is always at least a mild inflammatory reaction and all successful treatments have as part of their objective the removal of accumulated micro-organisms from the clothes and skin by frequent washings and their destruction by the use of mild antiseptics. In favour of the specific micro-organismal theory is the fact that some immunity appears to be developed in course of time but the earlier claims of Smith (*loc.cit.*) regarding his specific fungus have not been confirmed by other observers.

The actual cause of the lesions is blocking of the small sweat ducts and an associated infection. The main divergence of opinion lies in whether the infection is a more or less specific one and is the primary cause of the blocking, or whether the blocking is primarily mechanical and the infection is secondary and non-specific.

Perpetual sweating causes the washing out of the fat from the epidermis, so that these tissues absorb water and become swollen and soft. The less completely cornified skin of infants is more readily affected. This

swelling leads to occlusion of the openings of the ducts, where the blockage is made complete by desquamated duct epithelium. The damp surface provides a suitable nidus for micro organisms of all kinds and the damaged sweat ducts soon become infected with the common skin inhabiting micro-organisms, including monilia, which are mostly of low virulence and have poor invasive properties. There is already hyperæmia of the skin and the infection causes a slight inflammatory reaction. Whenever anything occurs to increase the skin hyperæmia, sweat secretion is stimulated and there is tension within the blocked ducts. The hair follicles are also involved but to a less extent.

**Anatomical distribution**—It occurs on parts of the body (a) where the clothes are held in close contact by pressure, e.g. around the waist under the belt, on the shoulders where the weight of the clothes is taken, and across the shoulder-blades, (b) where there is friction from the clothes e.g. in the groin, axilla and the backs of the wrists, (c) where two skin surfaces are in continuous contact, e.g. under the breasts and between the folds of fat in the obese, and (d) on the backs of the hands, a site where the frequent presence of prickly heat cannot be explained on any of the above grounds.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The lesion consists of red papules and minute clear vesicles with a surrounding red halo, or sometimes on a general hyperæmic background which gives the skin a red granular appearance and a rough coarse sand paper-like texture. A white powdery desquamation occurs later.

Anything that will cause a hyperæmia of the skin, such as exercise, a hot bath or a cup of hot tea, will cause an immediate exacerbation of the symptoms, a pricking sensation and intolerable itching.

The extremely irritating nature of the lesions causes scratching which will often lead to deeper secondary infection with pyogenic micro organisms and may result in the development of folliculitis, eczema, and/or furunculosis.

Bromfield (*loc cit*) described the miliarial (as above), the pustular, the pemphigous and the impetigenous types of prickly heat, but it seems more satisfactory to consider these other types, together with multiple boils which he includes as a fifth type as complications, for in the ordinary circumstances in which prickly heat is common they are relatively rare, further, they have causes other than prickly heat though it may be a common one.

Ordinarily, prickly heat is a minor annoyance to the resident in the tropics but it may dominate the mind of the sufferer, interfere seriously with his sleep and lead him towards neurasthenia, it is more serious in children as not only will it disturb their sleep but the common complications are more likely to develop in their delicate skins and in the sick, though it may be easy to control, if neglected prickly heat will often be a serious complicating factor in their illness.

- a) Avoiding as much as possible the environmental conditions namely high temperature and humidity that produce prickly heat much can be done by the use of air conditioning and the electric fan
- b) Avoiding unnecessary exertion unless the immediate removal and change of clothing is possible
- c) Avoiding hot baths unless ample time can be allowed for cooling off before redressing
- d) Avoiding the taking of long draughts especially of warm tea or coffee when fully dressed
- e) Reducing clothing to a minimum and avoiding constrictions around the waist neck wrists etc Children should be allowed to be naked or at most wear a pair of pants and infants should be spared from wearing even a diaper
- f) Wearing fine cotton or linen under pants and vests next to the skin and changing these as often as possible at least twice during the day The removed under-clothing should be dropped into the bath washed out immediately with anti-septic soap in hot water and hung out to dry
- g) Bathing and/or taking a shower bath with tepid water at least twice a day
- h) Avoiding the too free use of ordinary soap in the bath but washing over with special antiseptic soaps and leaving the lather on to dry with the precaution that sensitivity to such soaps must be carefully tested by each individual
- i) Drying the body thoroughly cooling off under an electric fan and finally before putting on the clothes dusting the whole body (except sensitive spots) and especially those areas most liable to prickly heat with an antiseptic dusting powder
- j) At night in the absence of air conditioning or an electric fan using a hard mattress with a sheet of grass matting between it and the under sheet a firm pillow and a Dutch wife that is a hard holster or an open rattan work cylinder over which the legs and arms can be thrown to keep them apart and from lying against the body
- k) Keeping a supply of hand towels for mopping the face arms and other exposed parts of the body repeatedly these must be washed and dried frequently

It may be considered that much of this is counsel of perfection but it is by following these practices that many experienced sojourners avoid prickly heat altogether The less fortunately placed must adopt as many of these practices as possible

In addition to the above judicious sun bathing is to be recommended, as the tanned skin is not so liable to prickly heat This is particularly true of infants and children

Some observers consider that a reduction of the fat and carbohydrate in the diet with an increase of the protein is of value in reducing liability to prickly heat but the only dietary modification from which the writer has seen direct benefit is the addition of extra salt (2 gramme tablets to each pint of water) This is an important point which should be emphasized The taking of a balanced diet with all the vitamins will of course help to maintain good health and indirectly reduce both prickly heat and more particularly its complications

It is usually worth prescribing an antiseptic hair lotion, as the hair is undoubtedly a prolific source of fungi and other micro organisms that play a part in the syndrome A lotion consisting of castor oil and spirit with 2% euresol (a colourless resorcinol preparation) is very effective The use of some inoffensive mildly antiseptic oil for thoroughunction of the body has been very successful in some instances It is a rational procedure and it has been suggested that the entire freedom from prickly heat of many native populations is due to the practice ofunction with mustard or coconut oil these oils will be too pungent for the average sojourner, but olive, almond or other vegetable oils can be substituted

The aims of treatment are much the same as those of prevention. It will however usually be necessary to adopt more aggressive tactics.

All, or as many as possible of, the above precautions should be observed rigidly. After the bath the affected parts must be lathered with antiseptic soap which should be allowed to dry on the skin. The tolerance of each person to each soap must be ascertained. Some sensitive individuals will be 'burnt' if 'neko' soap for example, is left on for more than two minutes, so that after this interval it must be sponged off, 15 minutes is usually the time recommended, but in the case of the less sensitive it is unnecessary to wash off the soap at all. 'Asepto', 'Afridol' and 'neko' soap are to be recommended. The two former being the better.

As an alternative to the antiseptic soap and to be applied at other times is a lotion of 1 in 2000 perchloride of mercury in 95% alcohol to be wiped over the affected part after it has been dried, and itself allowed to dry. (This will not suit all skins.) Then a dusting powder, consisting of camphor—20 parts, menthol—5 parts, boric acid—200 parts, zinc oxide—300 parts made up to 1000 parts with fine talcum powder, should be applied.

As an alternative to the mercury spirit lotion and powder a white lotion made up of zinc oxide 20 per cent, menthol 1 per cent, camphor 2 per cent in 80 per cent alcohol should be dabbed on the affected area with a piece of cotton wool. It is usually inadvisable to apply this more than twice during the day. At other times an aqueous calamine lotion with phenol will be soothing.

As in the case of most skin disease, there is greater danger from over-treatment than from under-treatment, and whenever any treatment appears to be irritating the skin, it must be discontinued and simple aqueous calamine lotion applied.

The sulphonamides have no effect on uncomplicated prickly heat, but for the complications in which pyogenic organisms play a part, sulphathiazole and sulphadiazine will be of considerable value.

#### PROGNOSIS

This will depend on the personal factor, on the opportunities for applying the measures recommended, and on the vigour and wisdom with which they are applied. Seldom, if ever, should it be necessary to invalid patients for uncomplicated prickly heat, but when they persistently develop multiple boils, a short period of leave in a cool climate often appears to be the only way to cure this serious complication.

#### RINGWORM OF THE FEET (TINEA PEDIS) OR DERMATOPHYTOSIS

This is a worldwide condition but always assumes a much greater importance in the tropics and particularly in the humid tropics. In temperate climates, where it is usually known as 'athlete's foot', it often appears in epidemic form in schools and amongst athletic groups whose members transmit the infection to one another in dormitories, changing rooms and swimming baths, by walking barefooted and by the communal use of bath-shippers, sandals and towels. In the tropics, where it has innumerable synonyms *eg*, Hong Kong, Singapore, Bengal, etc., foot rot (indicating its geographic distribution), mangoe toe, etc., it is endemic.

and where there are native servants walking barefooted it is practically impossible to avoid infection even by taking the most rigid precautions

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

This disease is at its worst under conditions of high temperature and high humidity. In chronic sufferers it will often improve if not apparently clear up during the cool dry season in those places where there is one or when the subject goes to a cool climate but it returns in full force when the temperature or humidity rise again. It is more common in towns (hot pavements) than in country districts amongst men than amongst women and amongst those who have to do a considerable amount of walking during the day (e.g. brokers) than amongst those whose occupation is mainly sedentary (e.g. bankers). The barefooted are usually infected but the infection is seldom active and in any particular set of circumstances the activity of the condition will usually be in inverse ratio to the ventilating properties of the footwear.

### ÆTIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

The causal organism is a fungus usually a species of *Trichophyton* but *Epidermophyton floccosum* and even the monilia *Candida albicans* may be responsible. The spores of these fungi are highly resistant and survive on wooden floors, coir or grass mats, carpets, towels, shoes, etc. almost indefinitely despite vigorous treatment with strong antiseptics. They are destroyed by autoclaving.

These fungi penetrate the epidermis and the superficial layers of the corium only and their toxins cause a serous exudate to accumulate under the epidermis which is thus separated from its source of nutrition and dies.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The primary site of the infection is often between the fourth and fifth toes. It soon spreads to the other interdigital spaces, to the soles, to the dorsum of the feet and particularly of the great toe, to the sides of the feet, to the soft area of skin between the ankle and the Achilles tendon and to the nail beds. The same infection may also spread to other parts of the body (*vide infra*).

Small vesicles appear, they are usually surrounded by a halo of inflammation. They are extremely irritating. After a few days the whole area between the toes becomes white and pieces of sodden epithelium separate, exposing the red corium covered by a thin transparent layer of epidermis which tends to crack, bleeds if damaged by scratching and readily becomes infected with pyogenic micro organisms. After such infection has subsided the epidermis gradually resumes its normal thickness but soon becomes sodden and separates again. Meanwhile areas of hyperkeratosis develop at the margins of these lesions and form ridges along the edges of the dorsa of the toes and up the interdigital sulci on to the dorsa of the feet. The infection will usually spread to the soles, especially to the parts under the arch where the skin is thinnest, here the vesicles in the comparatively thicker epidermis cause intolerable itching and develop to the size of a six pence ( $\frac{3}{4}$  inch) or more. These blebs contain a clear fluid at first but they often develop into pustules surrounded by areas of inflammation. Here too the epidermis may separate in large plaques but it usually flakes off, the denuded skin tends to crack and secondary infection and extensive cellulitis may result.



**Complications**—The danger of serious cellulitis is very real but there is another development that provides a good reason for not neglecting these infections, namely, the occasional development of 'ids', trichophytids or dermatophytids, on the other hand, it is believed that these sometimes develop as a result of too netive treatment. These 'ids' are apparently an allergic manifestation which result from the patient developing a sensitivity to the mycotic toxins that have reached the general circulation from the local lesions. They take the form of severe erythematous rashes or papular, vesicular, or pustular eruptions, on any part of the body but characteristically on the soles or palms, the site bears no relation to the initial lesion except that in foot infections the 'ids' very commonly appear on the palms, producing a condition known as cheilopompholyx. This is a very distressing condition that completely incapacitates the sufferer for a period of seldom less than six weeks and often for much longer. The whole of the skin of the palms separates and secondary infection in some degree is almost inevitable. There may be two or three relapses before the condition finally subsides.

### DIAGNOSIS

A clinical diagnosis is usually sufficient for practical purposes. However, it is very easy to confirm that the lesions are due to a fungal infection by taking a scraping from the margin or removing the roof of a vesicle macerating this in 20 per cent potassium hydroxide solution and examining it under the microscope for fungus hyphae or spores. The main value of the further identification of the fungus which is made by growing it on Sabouraud's medium is for purposes of prognosis. *Epidermophyton* sp infections are the most amenable to treatment, whereas *Trichophyton rubrum* are the most resistant.

### PREVENTION

This must be considered under two headings—(a) the prevention of infection and re infection, and (b) the prevention of morbidity, by keeping the conditions at the site of the infection unfavourable to the fungus.

(a) **Prevention of infection**—As was indicated above, under most conditions in the tropics it is impossible to avoid infection for any length of time but by taking certain precautions it will be possible to reduce the chance of infection and the frequency of re infection namely—

- (i) By avoiding going barefooted even in one's own bathroom.
- (ii) By using a bath mat that can be boiled frequently and avoiding one that cannot be so treated.
- (iii) By using rope or canvas-soled bath slippers that can from time to time be placed in boiling water or cheap grass (raffia) sandals that can be discarded periodically.
- (iv) When changing outside one's own house by being particularly careful and always using one's own bath mats towels and slippers and avoid bathing pools except those with a very high standard of cleanliness.

(b) **Prevention of morbidity**—The nature of the shoes is a most important point. Whenever possible solid leather shoes should be avoided. The alternatives are full canvas shoes or respondent shoes in which the white parts are canvas instead of buckskin perforated leather shoes or 'chaplins' the last named is a form of shoe worn by northern Indians and made with two leather flaps which overlap one another and are held in place by a strap and buckle. All these types of shoe allow a free circulation of air.

The socks should be of thin cotton material and must be changed at least twice daily, washed immediately in antiseptic lotion and dried thoroughly before being put on again and boiled periodically. After the feet have been washed with lotion or antiseptic soap the interdigital spaces should be dried by rubbing hard between the toes with a rough dry towel to remove all pieces of loose skin swabbed with spirit and finally powdered with some mild antiseptic powder. A useful prescription is

R Camphor—2 drachms  
sulphur sublimate— $\frac{1}{2}$  ounce  
zinc oxide—2 drachms  
talcum powder—2 ounces

As some individuals are sensitive to sulphur, it may be necessary to omit this from the prescription.

### TREATMENT

The greatest danger is from overtreatment and for this reason many people are content, without attempting to cure the condition to keep it inactive by the measures advocated above.

The patient will usually first come for treatment when the lesions are actually inflamed, either as a result of neglect or inexpert overtreatment. It is necessary first to reduce the inflammation by hot (as hot as the patient can bear) footbaths of 1 in 1000 mercury perchloride or acriflavin, or boracic or magnesium sulphate fomentations alternating with calamine lotion. When the inflammation has subsided after careful removal of all pieces of loose skin with forceps apply gentian violet 4 per cent in 10 per cent alcohol, or triple dye (gentian violet and brilliant green 2.5 grammes each and flavine 1 gramme to the litre).

For complete eradication of the infection the following lotion should be applied twice daily.

R Salicylic acid—gr xx  
Dilute acetic acid—min xxx  
Alcohol—95 per cent to the ounce

If there is a sharp local lesion this treatment must be stopped immediately and hot fomentations applied.

The socks must be changed twice daily and after a thorough course it will be advisable to discard all old shoes which are almost certainly infected and which cannot be sterilized by any known means.

As the nails and nail beds are often a source of re-infection, special attention must be paid to these. They constitute a very difficult problem and often the nail has to be removed and the bed scraped. The possibility of complete failure to cure the nail infection must be faced.

The 'ids' must be treated by hot footbaths and fomentations and mild antiseptic lotions. Later, the triple dye may be used. In a true 'id' there is no specific mycotic infection at the site, and vigorous treatment, with strong salicylate preparations for example will usually be disastrous. The mycotic infection at its distant focus however may and some workers consider that it should be treated specifically.

Some workers have claimed considerable success in chronic cases with an autogenous vaccine made from the pyogenic secondary invaders which they claim interfere with the action of the fungicidal drugs. The local treatment is continued while the vaccine is being given.

DHOBIE ITCH OR *TINEA CRURIS*

The name is derived from the popular tradition (undoubtedly founded on fact) that the *dhobie*, or Indian washerman before returning to their owner the clothes he has taken home to wash, lends or hires them out to his friends whose mycotic infections are thus widely disseminated

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

This is an exceedingly common condition amongst both the native inhabitant and the sojourner in all tropical and many sub tropical countries and though it does occur in temperate climates especially in epidemic form in schools, it is relatively uncommon

It is very common in the middle class clothes wearing native of the tropics and occurs, though less frequently, even in those who wear only a loin cloth, amongst sojourners it is not uncommon in the newly arrived and amongst members of the lower social strata, however the better class native and the experienced sojourner will not usually tolerate the condition but will take active steps to prevent it

It is more common amongst men than women

It is more common in humid climates but it does not appear to be as dependent on high humidity as are prickly heat and *tinea pedis*

## ÆTIOLOGY

The main causal organism is *Epidermophyton floccosum* or *inguale* but several species of *Microsporon* and *Trichophyton* have also been isolated from the lesions. The causal organisms are thus much the same as those that cause *tinea pedis* and in fact one condition may give rise to the other though differences in the epidemiologies and clinical pictures of these two diseases seem to warrant their separate description

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The two main areas in which this condition develops are (a) the inner aspects of the thighs where radiating from the crutch it passes backwards to the perineum on to the scrotum and into the anal cleft, and (b) the axillæ where it spreads out on the lateral aspects of the chest and on the under and inner sides of the arms the former site is by far the commoner. The condition is usually bilateral

A red rough scaling area with a raised spreading papular and often pustular margin develops the lesion spreads fan wise. It is intolerably irritating and thus causes continuous and involuntary scratching even in the sleep which allows secondary infection to occur and increases inflammation. The inflammation may be so severe that the patient can scarcely bear to put on his clothes and can walk only with great difficulty

## DIAGNOSIS

This can be confirmed by taking scrapings from the margins of the lesions and macerating them in 20 per cent potassium hydroxide as in the case of *tinea pedis*

## PREVENTION

This condition is not nearly so difficult to prevent as *tinea pedis*. A good supply of cotton or linen pants and vests should be made available.

After removal these should always be washed with soap in hot water rinsed out in clean water and dried thoroughly before being put on again. If possible this washing should be done personally. In most cases it will be left to the native servant but care should be taken that he is himself not suffering from the condition if he is arrangements should be made for his thorough treatment. The precautions to be taken are in fact much the same as those against prickly heat (*qv*). After the bath the susceptible areas should be carefully dried and powdered with talcum powder.

### TREATMENT

Before treatment is undertaken precautions against re-infection must be organized. The cotton pants and vests used should be such that they cover the whole affected area—that is to say in the case of an axillary infection vests with at least short sleeves must be used.

Though the danger of overtreatment does exist it is usually less in this condition than in *tinea pedis* one reason being that the areas are more sensitive and the immediate pain of strong applications will prevent their over use. When however the areas are actually inflamed strong fungicidal substances must not be applied until the inflammation has been reduced by hot applications alternating with aqueous calamine lotion.

Individuals with a tough skin *e.g.* negroes and some Indians of the labouring class will usually stand strong applications such as formalin (commercial) and liniment of iodine but even in these individuals care must be exercised and the doctor should himself apply the medicaments not leave this to the patient.

Perhaps the most useful preparation of all is Whitfield's ointment—

R Salicylic acid—gr xxx  
Benzoic acid—gr lx  
Lanolin— $\frac{1}{2}$  ounce  
Vaseline—to one ounce

This is too strong for many skins and for the first application half strength Whitfield's ointment should be used. Later it may be possible to use the full strength ointment but the patient must be warned to discontinue the application if there is a severe inflammatory reaction. He should also be warned to apply it to the scrotum very cautiously as it may be exceedingly painful.

Alternative applications are 4 per cent gentian violet in 10 per cent alcohol or triple dye. There are also several proprietary preparations *e.g.* Cignolin—a synthetic chrysarobin preparation—in the form of an ointment or a paint (1 to 3 grains in one ounce of pure acetone) which are useful.

These fungicidal applications should be made daily after the morning bath care being taken that the area is first thoroughly dried. In the case of half strength Whitfield ointment a second application may be made at night if there is no inflammatory reaction.

A few days of conscientious treatment with any of these applications will usually cure this condition but the treatment must be continued for some time after symptoms have disappeared. Refractory cases will occasionally be encountered in which a succession of medicaments may have to be tried.

## TOKELAU OR *TINEA IMBRICATA*

This infection appears to have a purely tropical distribution. It has been described in India, Ceylon, Burma, Indo-China, Malaya, the Dutch East Indies, Borneo, New Guinea, the South Pacific Islands, and China. There are apparently a few foci of infection in Central Africa and in Brazil. In India it is encountered almost solely amongst aborigines in South India, Bengal, and Assam, and in a few plainsfolk who have been in close contact with aborigines.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism is *Trichophyton concentricum*. This micro-organism differs from others of this group by its apparent inability to survive saprophytically for any length of time, so that it can only be transmitted by direct contact. It penetrates the epidermis between the epidermis and the dermis; it multiplies abundantly, causing the former to separate, and in due course it penetrates the newly formed epidermis and causes further separation.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The lesion starts as round or oval macules in the centre of which the horny layer of the epithelium cracks and flakes of epithelium begin to separate from within outwards. The lesion extends and a larger and larger ring of separating white scales is produced. Meanwhile the area in the centre recovers to some extent its normal appearance, but it soon cracks again and a new ring forms within the previous one, so that the lesion eventually consists of a series of concentrically arranged brown (normal skin) and white (separating scales) rings; these meet other annular groups of rings so that the whole skin area presents a most striking appearance suggestive of tattooing. At the periphery of the individual lesions the horny layer becomes slightly thickened and raised, but there is little inflammatory reaction.

The lesions are very irritating.

Extensive areas of the skin of the trunk and limbs are involved, but the hair is not affected. The head, palms, soles, axillæ and groins are seldom affected.

### DIAGNOSIS

Clinical diagnosis is usually easy on account of the unique appearance of the earlier lesions. Old lesions with dark thickened edges will sometimes simulate ichthyosis, but in such cases other fresh lesions will usually be found somewhere on the body.

### PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

Personal cleanliness is an effective preventive measure. The disease is said not to occur among persons who anoint their bodies with coconut oil.

The lesions themselves respond fairly readily to treatment, but the area involved is so extensive that the whole surface cannot be treated at one time with any of the stronger fungicides. An additional complication is the fact that the patients are mostly uneducated aborigines.

Most fungicides are effective. Castellani's fuchsin paint\* is usually recommended. Dey and Maplestone (1942), who have had considerable

---

\* This consists of 10 ccm of a saturated alcoholic solution of basic fuchsin in 100 ccm of 5 per cent phenol in water. Filter this and add 1 gramme of boric acid. After two hours add 5 ccm of acetone and two hours later 10 grammes of resorcinol. Keep in dark stoppered bottles.

experience with this infection, recommend a paint of one drachm each of resorcinol and glacial acetic acid in one ounce of compound tincture of benzoin

### PITYRIASIS (TINEA) VERSICOLOR

This is such a common infection in Indians of the poorer classes that they are usually quite unconscious of its existence and are often unable to appreciate the fact that their skin is not normal, even when the lesions are pointed out to them. It has a wide distribution amongst natives in other tropical countries. It is much less common in fair-skinned persons, but does occur, and it is not strictly confined to hot countries though it is much commoner in them.

Although this infection is widespread in certain social groups, it is not highly contagious and needs close association before it is transmitted from one person to another.

#### ÆTIOLOGY

It is caused by *Malassezia furfur*. The fungus invades the superficial layer of the epithelium and causes a fine scaling. There is practically no inflammatory reaction.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The visible lesions are actually accumulations of fungus on the skin, where they form yellowish or brownish plaques. On the brown skin, they appear as a whitish layer of powder, and on the white skin they produce brownish patches. As well as the surface lesions, there is apparently some change in the underlying pigment, a decrease in the brown skin and an increase in the fair one. The lesions commence as small macules the size of a pin's head, they increase in size and coalesce. There is a fine powdery desquamation if the affected area is rubbed.

The distribution of the lesions is very characteristic. It corresponds to an area on which dandruff would naturally fall from the hair, that is to say, over the shoulders, on the front and back of the chest, and on the outer aspects of the arms. Sometimes they also appear on the abdomen, neck and face, but seldom on other parts of the body. These are not the covered areas, in the class of individual who usually suffers from this condition, as some writers state. The distribution seems to suggest that the hair may be an important source of infection.

#### DIAGNOSIS

The condition is readily recognized clinically, but confirmation can be obtained easily by taking a scraping from the area, macerating it in potassium hydroxide and examining it under the microscope. The grape-like clusters of spores will be seen.

#### TREATMENT

This presents little difficulty. Most fungicides will destroy this superficially situated fungus very easily. The commonest application is sodium sulphite, 10 to 25 per cent solution. This is washed over the affected area after it has been bathed and well scrubbed. Or an ointment containing 3 per cent salicylic acid and 6 per cent precipitated sulphur can be rubbed in. The hair should be washed also and the sulphite lotion or some other suitable antiseptic applied to it.

The condition will usually clear up within a few days but treatment must be continued for several weeks and all the usual precautions regarding the changing and sterilization of clothes must be taken if relapse and reinfection are to be obviated.

## LEUCODERMA OR VITILIGO

**Definition**—Leucoderma or vitiligo is an acquired condition in which in certain areas there is complete loss of skin pigment. It is characterized clinically by the appearance of ivory white patches surrounded by an area of normal or increased pigmentation. It is neither infectious nor hereditary though at times it seems to show a familial tendency.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

It appears to be much more common in tropical countries but it occurs throughout the world in people of all races, all ages and both sexes.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The cause of leucoderma is not known. It is usually classed as a tropho-neurosis. In India it has been observed that in the majority of the cases there is some intestinal infection—protozoal, bacterial or helminthic—and it has been suggested on rather slender experimental evidence that the condition may be due to a hyperadrenia resulting from toxic stimulation of the suprarenals. It has been pointed out that although kala-azar and leucoderma are relatively common in Bengal both conditions are seldom encountered in the same patient. In kala-azar there is some evidence of hypo-adrenia.

### PATHOLOGY

Apart from the total absence of pigment the affected skin is not changed in any way. The activities of the sweat and sebaceous glands are uninfluenced but the hair shafts in the affected area sometimes lose their pigment and become whitish or yellowish in colour.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The lesions appear as small white macules and extend slowly. The margins may remain clear cut but in the larger patches they tend to become less sharply defined. Sometimes there is an increase of pigment in the adjoining areas but there is seldom a definite ring of hyperpigmentation around the leucodermic patches.

In the well developed case the lesions can be classified into several types—(a) the mucocutaneous type affecting the lips, eyelids and external genitals; (b) the pressure type affecting such areas as the waist when there is continuous pressure from clothes, the *dhoti*, the *sari* or the belt; (c) the symmetrical type and (d) the generalized type where the white patches fuse to form large lobulated areas and even progress so far that the original skin coloration is completely obliterated.

The condition may remain stationary for years but is generally slowly progressive in its course. In exceptional instances the patches disappear spontaneously. There are no somatic symptoms associated with this condition but the mental effect of the grotesque disfigurement that may be

produced is often profound. The lesions give rise to no subjective symptoms, but the whitened patches are hypersensitive to heat and tend to become inflamed readily when exposed to the sun.

### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis does not usually present much difficulty but it is necessary to exclude certain other conditions in which there is complete or partial depigmentation, namely (a) the congenital condition partial albinism (b) the bacillary infection, leprosy (c) the mycotic infection pityriasis versicolor, (d) the spirochætal infections (i) pinta (ii) atrophic macular syphilide, and possibly (iii) melano leucoderma, (e) the protozoal infection post-kala azar dermal leishmaniasis, and (f) conditions of unknown ætiology (i) morpha and (ii) lupus erythematosus.

(a) In partial albinism, the lesions are congenital there is never any bordering of the depigmented patch by hyper pigmented skin and the patient always has a blue iris.

(b) In anæsthetic leprosy there may be depigmentation but it is not usually as complete and there are definite sensory changes that are not found in leucoderma, there will also be thickened nerves and other stigmata of leprosy. There is little real similarity between these two conditions but there is a popular misconception on the subject due partially to Biblical misquidance which reacts very unfavourably on the unfortunate (but non infectious) individual with leucoderma.

(c) In pityriasis versicolor the depigmentation is mainly due to the whitish mycotic growth on the surface with little hypopigmentation and certainly no true depigmentation there is also slight scaling in the lesions. Laboratory confirmation should be unnecessary but the spores and hyphæ of *Malassezia furfur* can be demonstrated.

(d i) In pinta which has a limited geographical distribution there is a history of the earlier lesions of this condition which are characteristic and quite unlike leucoderma there is usually a positive Wassermann reaction and possibly some slight response to arsenphenamine.

(d ii) Atrophic macular syphilide is a condition where multiple small atrophic areas are found on the trunk and extremities and the atrophy is more marked than the depigmentation.

(d iii) Melano leucoderma generally affects the palms and the soles and rarely the lips. It manifests itself by the appearance of patchy leucoderma and melano derma (hyper pigmentation) side by side and also hyper keratosis with desquamation. The hyper pigmentation is more marked along the margins and sometimes extends higher up to the hands and feet. The disease is probably a late manifestation of syphilis the serum reactions for syphilis are positive in all cases and it responds to anti-syphilitic treatment.

(e) In post kala azar dermal leishmaniasis, the depigmentation is not complete. There will nearly always be other lesions the butterfly erythema on the face or the granulomatous nodules. As a rule a history of kala azar or at least of a febrile attack that may have been kala-azar will be given.

(f i) In morpha, the skin shows different grades of depigmentation with smooth shiny atrophic patches adherent to the underlying tissue.

(f ii) In lupus erythematosus the leucoderma like depigmentation which is present is due to cicatricial fibrous atrophy of the skin. Apart from the depigmentation, the lupus patches are covered by the characteristic fine adherent horny plugs which when removed reveal enlarged follicular orifices. Moreover the borders of the patches are markedly raised and infiltrated. These signs are absent in leucoderma.

### TREATMENT

This is far from satisfactory and many writers dismiss the condition as incurable. However at the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine over a



# HELMINTHIC INFECTIONS

INTRODUCTION	PAGE
EPIDEMIOLOGY	586
<i>In India and China</i>	587
PATHOLOGY	589
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	590
PREVENTION	590
TREATMENT	590
CLASSIFICATION	590
CLASSIFICATION ADOPTED	593

*A Intestinal parasites—B Parasites of lymphatics subcutaneous tissues and serous cavities—C Blood flukes—D Liver and lung flukes—E Worms that produce the main pathogenesis in their larval stage*

593

**Introduction**—The metazoa that parasitize man differ from many other parasites the protozoa the spirochetes the bacteria and other fungi the rickettsiae and the filterable viruses in several important directions. Firstly with few exceptions they are unable to complete a cycle of development and multiply in a single individual host or even except in a very few instances in one host species but require one or more intermediate hosts and/or some special exogenous milieu. Secondly, although host specificity is an important characteristic of helminths they are less dependent than are the other parasites on the variations in the natural and acquired immunity of the individual host. Thirdly while the majority of helminths by means of their metabolites when alive and of their decomposition products when dead induce some general and local tissue responses in the host these are not comparable in their effects to the exo toxins and endo toxins of bacteria for example but helminths on the other hand because of their size (all adult helminths are visible to the naked eye) often cause local damage to the tissues obstruct the normal body functions and deflect the nutrition of the host.

Let us consider how these fundamental differences between metazoa and other parasites are reflected in the epidemiology pathology symptomatology prevention and treatment of the diseases that are caused by metazoa.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

The distribution of most helminthic infections tends to be very limited because the climatic and other local conditions must be suitable not only

for the parasite itself during its exogenous phase, but often for one or more intermediate hosts. Also the complicated life cycle of the parasite is often dependent for its completion on certain special (and in our Western way of thinking, unusual) habits of the affected population.

However, neither of these limitations applies in the cases of the helminths that have a simple life cycle such as *Enterobius vermicularis* and *Hymenolepis nana* in both these instances the infection takes place directly by contaminated hands or food to mouth. Consequently the infections are cosmopolitan and very widespread though naturally more common in population groups with a lower standard of personal cleanliness.

*Trichocephalus trichiurus* and *Ascaris lumbricoides* are also cosmopolitan helminths but are dependent to some extent on suitable exogenous conditions and therefore other things (e.g. sanitary conditions) being equal they are more common in humid tropical climates.

The helminths that have an encysted stage in some human food substance (e.g. *Clonorchis sinensis*, *Paragonimus westermani* and the large tapeworms) will naturally be limited to those population groups where the consumption of the particular food substance in which these worms encyst is common and also to those persons in the population groups who are in the habit of eating the food raw or insufficiently cooked.

The parasites of the hookworm group are dependent not only on warm and humid conditions for their exogenous cycle, but on the habits of the population: e.g. the wearing of no shoes or at least defective ones. These infections are very widespread in the humid tropics as the majority of the indigenous inhabitants of Asia and Africa habitually go bare-footed. There is however, another habit factor that comes in here—the disposal of excreta. Where the practices in this respect are unsatisfactory as in India where villagers defæcate in the open fields around the village or in China where human excreta is used as manure infections by this group amongst others are likely to be very prevalent.

The filarial group of infections are dependent on certain arthropod intermediate hosts, as well as on favourable climatic conditions for their development within these hosts. *Wuchereria bancrofti* which is transmitted by several very common mosquitoes, including the ubiquitous *Culex fatigans*, is very widespread within certain temperature and humidity ranges, whereas *Onchocerca volitans* whose intermediate host is the less common gnat *Simulium damnosum* is confined within much narrower geographical limits, and *Dracunculus medinensis*, which is dependent for its transmission on a very special set of circumstances regarding drinking-water supply, as well as on the presence of cyclops (and the absence of fish that will prey on them) in the wells has a very limited distribution even in countries that are climatically suitable for its transmission.

**In India and China.**—It will be of interest to compare the habits of the people of the two great eastern countries that together hold at least two-fifths of the total population of the world *vis à vis* a helminthic infection.

In most parts of India sanitation is sufficiently backward for infections such as *Ascaris* and *Trichocephalus* that depend mainly for their propagation on indirect faecal contamination of vegetable food substances to be common especially in those parts where the climate is hot and humid for a great part of the year but perhaps not so common as in China where the habit of using human manure fosters these infections. This same habit also propagates schistosome infections in those localities where the suitable snails exist. Such worms as *Hymenolepis nana* and *Enterobius vermicularis* that are usually transmitted by direct personal contamination of food during preparation and serving are less common amongst the

people of India as a whole, on account of certain religious observances associated with eating Hookworm infection, which depends on contamination of soil around the dwelling is very common in India, and perhaps for this reason even more common than under similar climatic conditions in China, where human excreta are not thus wasted, though some infection will result from its indiscreet use as manure in the latter country. Filariasis, potentially transmitted by so many

TABLE XV

Phylum	Class	Sub-class	Order (or group)	Sub-order	Super-family	Genus	Species				
NEMATHELMINTHES	NEMATODA		Aphamulida		Trichinellidae	Trichinella Trichocephalus	spiralis trichinella				
			Phasmida		Rhabditidae	Strongyloidea	stercoralis				
					Strongyloidea	Ancylostoma Ancylostoma Uncinaria Cyathostomum	brasiliense duodenale americanum apiostomum				
					Trichostrongyloidea	Trichostrongylus	typ.				
					Oxyuridae	Enterobius	vermicularis				
					Acaridae	Acaris	lumbricoides				
					Spiruridae	Gnathostoma	sp. 11				
					Filariidae	Wuchereria Brugia Onchocerca Acanthocheilium Loa Mansonella	braconii malayi volvulus perstans loa ozardi				
						Dracunculidae	Dracunculus	med. nem.			
			PRECESTODEA	DIGENEA	Procestomata	Strigeata	Schistocephalidae	Schistocephalus Schistocephalus Schistocephalus	hemorrhoidalis maximus japonicus		
						Amphistomata	Paramphistomatidae	Gastrophilus	homini		
							Distomata	Fasciolidae	Fasciola Fasciolopsis	hepatica buski	
									Echinostomatidae	Echinostoma	typ.
									Heterophyidae	Heterophyes Metagonimus	heterophyes potamensis
									Opisthorchiidae	Opisthorchus Clonorchis	felinus sinensis
									Tegulotrematidae	Paragonimus	westerni
									Bothriocephalidae	Diphyllbothrium	latum
CESTODEA	CESTODA	Pseudophyllidea									
		Cylophylidae				(Super family)	(Family)	Tania	solium		
							Tenuidae	Tania Echinococcus	solium granulosus		
							Hymenolepididae	Hymenolepis Hymenolepis	nana dim. nana		

vectors, is dependent mainly on favourable climatic conditions and is common amongst the densely packed populations in many areas in both India and China. Finally, infections that depend on the consumption of raw fish and meat (about one-third of those included in Table XV) are uncommon in India as a large percentage of the population is vegetarian.

On the whole, therefore, China provides an infinitely wider field of interest to the helminthologist than does India.

## PATHOLOGY

The inability of most human helminthic parasites to complete a cycle of development within a single human host means that an helminthic infection is not susceptible to numerical increase within the individual host, and that the weight of the infection, and therefore the extent of the patho-

TABLE XV—Cont

	Intermediate host or hosts	Exogenous free-living habitat	Definitive hosts other than man (Reservoir)	Portal of entry Mouth or Cutaneous	Infective medium	Main sites of pathogenic processes	Temperate Cosmopolitan Warm climate
1	Pig rat bear	—	Pig rat, bear	M	Fork	G-I tract, muscle brain etc	T
2	—	Soil	—	M	Veg*	Lower ileum caecum	C
3	—	Soil	—	C	Soil	Skin lungs O I tract	W
4	—	Soil	Dog	C	Soil	Skin	W
5	—	Soil	—	C	Soil	Skin lungs G-I tract	W
6	—	Soil	—	C	Soil	Skin lungs G I tract	W
7	—	?	Monkey	M	?	Caecum	W
8	—	Soil	—	—	Soil	Intestine	W
9	—	—	—	M	Fingers*	Caecum	C
10	—	Soil	—	M	Food*	Lungs intestine	C
11	Cyclops & fish	Water	Feline dog	M	Fish	Skin subcuticle	W
12	Mosquitoes	—	—	C	M bite	Skin lungs lymphatics	W
13	Mosquitoes	—	—	C	M bite	Lymphatics	W
14	Simulium	—	—	C	B-bite	Subcuticle cornea	W
15	Culexoides	—	—	C	C-bite	(Serous cavities)	W
16	Chrysops	—	—	C	C-bite	Subcuticle conjunctiva	W
17	Culicoides	—	—	C	C-bite	(Serous cavities)	W
18	Cyclops	Water	Cattle dog	M	Water	Lung & subcuticle skin	W
19	Snails	Water	—	C	Water	Skin lung liver bladder	W
20	Snails	Water	—	C	Water	Skin lung liver colon	W
21	Snails	Water	Cattle dog rat	C	Water	Skin lung liver colon	W
22	Snails	Water	—	?	?	Caecum & colon	W
23	Snails	Water	Sheep	M	Veg	Duodenum liver	W
24	Snails	Water	Pig	M	Water chestnut	Duodenum S. intestine	W
25	Snails	Water	Rat dog	M	Snails	Small intestine	W
26	Snails & fish	Water	Cat dog fox	M	Fish	Small intestine	W
27	Snails & fish	Water	Cat seal pelican	M	Fish	Small intestine	W
28	Snails & fish	Water	Dog cat seal	M	Fish	Liver pancreas	W
29	Snails & fish	Water	Dog cat weasel	M	Fish	Liver	W
30	Snails & crabs	Water	Cat dog pig	M	Crabs	Lung	W
31	Fish & cyclops	Water	Cannae felines	M	Fish	G I tract	T
32	Pig	Soil	—	M	Fork*	G-I tract muscle brain etc	C
33	Cattle	Soil	—	M	Beef	G I tract	C
34	Man sheep	—	Dog	M	Fingers*	Liver lung brain	C
35	—	—	Rodents	M	Fingers*	Small intestine	C
36	Arthropods	—	Rodents	M	Food	Small intestine	C

\* Indicates that the egg is the infective stage

genesis, will usually be dependent on the number of parasites that enter the host, rather than on the tissue reactions of the host, which so often are the determining factors in the production of disease by non-metazoal parasites

The pathological responses of the host to helminthic infections are usually allergic rather than anti-toxic in nature

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

In the majority of helminthic infections the presence of only a few parasites will not cause pathological lesions of sufficient importance to produce clinical evidence of infection so that in circumstances of low endemicity the vast majority of the helminthic infections will be symptomless. It is only when the initial invasion is exceptionally heavy or when the individual is subjected to repeated invasions that these infections reach the clinical threshold and it is even less frequently that the diseases caused by helminths reach an acute stage. Another result of this poor host tissue response is seen in the long duration of most helminthic infection.

## PREVENTION

The complex life cycles of most helminths apparently display several Achilles heels but in practice it is found that these points are not usually as vulnerable as one would at first suppose because of ingrained customs of the affected population groups. To take some examples from the infections mentioned above hookworm infection could be obviated by proper sanitary disposal of feces or by the use of proper footwear clonorchiasis and teniasis by the avoidance of undercooked fish and meat dracontia is by keeping wells covered or by drinking only filtered or boiled water and filariasis by avoiding mosquito bites. But in each case it will be many decades and in some cases probably centuries before it will be possible to impress on the population groups most affected the necessity for altering their habits to fulfill these apparently simple requirements. This establishes education and propaganda at the top of the list of preventive procedures against helminthic infections perhaps more firmly than in the case of infections by parasites of other phyla.

## TREATMENT

In the treatment of bacterial and other infections we usually have to rely largely on the host tissue reaction and are often content to stimulate or bolster these rather than to attempt direct action against the parasite. In helminthic infections however the relative poverty of the host tissue response complicates the treatment of these infections and makes it necessary to use drugs that act directly on the parasite and kill or narcotize it. In the case of the intestinal helminths this presents no great difficulty with the blood parasites it is more difficult though some progress has been achieved but with the lymph and tissue parasites it presents a problem that has in no case yet been satisfactorily solved.

## CLASSIFICATION

Some form of classification of helminthic diseases is desirable at least as a concession to the scientists' natural desire for order if not as an aid to memory for the student. Classification might be along several lines some of these will be considered —

I *Classification according to the taxonomic relations of the causal parasites* — These are shown in the left half of Table XV on pp. 588 and 589. From all the medical aspects of the subject there are obvious limitations in the value of such a classification for example the class Nematoda contains such divergent species as *Enterobius vermicularis* and *Wuchereria bancrofti*; the superfamily Trichinelloidea contains *Trichocephalus trichurus* and *Trichinella spiralis* and the family Tenuidae contains *Tenia*

## HELMINTHIC INFECTIONS

*saginata* and *Echinococcus granulosus*. It is felt, however, that the which gives an outline of the taxonomy of the majority of the human helminths (some of which are not deemed of sufficient importance to need further consideration in this book) may be of value for reference when the names of classes, subclasses, orders, sub orders and super families are mentioned, by other writers. It will also give the necessity for any further reference here to the subject of taxonomy.

II *Classification according to the medium of transmission and mode of entry of the causal parasite*—In this classification five groups can be considered

(i) Oral infection with helminth eggs directly by contaminated fingers or other objects, or indirectly through contaminated food. This would include contaminated water-supplies, but water is not a common source of infection as helminth eggs are large objects and tend to sink rapidly, so that any primitive form of sedimentation or filtration will remove them.

(ii) Oral infection through raw food substances that contain encysted larvae.

(iii) Oral infection with water containing infected crustaceae.

(iv) Cutaneous infection by active entry of the pre adult forms (larvae or cercariae) from water. In several instances the entry may also occur through the mucous membranes of the buccal cavity or pharynx but in no case is this the important route of infection.

(v) Cutaneous infection by entry of larval forms conveyed by arthropods.

The arrangement of the important helminths according to this classification is shown in the table below —

TABLE XVI

*Showing Helminthic Parasites Arranged according to their Portal of Entry and the Medium of Transmission*

Portal of entry	Medium of transmission	Species	
Oral	Fingers and contaminated food	<i>Trichuris trichiura</i> <i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> <i>Gnathostomum apistomum</i> <i>Hymenolepis nana</i> <i>Echinococcus granulosus</i>	<i>Enterobius vermicularis</i> <i>Trichostrongylus</i> spp.  <i>Hymenolepis diminuta</i>
	Special food substances containing encysted larvae	<i>Trichinella spiralis</i> <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> <i>Echinostoma</i> spp. <i>Melagonimus yokogawai</i> <i>Clonorchis sinensis</i> <i>Tenia solium</i> <i>Diphyllobothrium latum</i>	<i>Gnathostoma spinigerum</i> <i>Fasciolopsis buski</i> <i>Heterophyes heterophyes</i> <i>Opisthorchis felinus</i> <i>Paragonimus westermani</i> <i>Tenia saginata</i> <i>Gastrophilus hominis</i>
	Water containing infected crustaceae	<i>Dracunculus medinensis</i>	
	Active invasion by larvae or cercariae from soil or water	<i>Strongyloides stercoralis</i> <i>Ancylostoma braziliense</i> <i>Schistosoma haematobium</i> <i>Schistosoma japonicum</i>	<i>Ancylostoma duodenale</i> <i>Necator americanus</i> <i>Schistosoma mansoni</i>
	Invasion by larvae conveyed by arthropods	<i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i> <i>Acanthocheilium perlati</i> <i>Onchocerca volvulus</i>	<i>Wuchereria malayi</i> <i>Loa loa</i> <i>Mansonella ozzardi</i>
Cutaneous			

### III Classification according to the parasitological findings.—This is shown in tabular form below.—

TABLE XVII

Showing Helminth Infections Arranged According to the Clinical Parasitic Findings  
A Diagnostic Classification

Stage	Material	Species
Eggs	(i) In faeces	
	(a) Constant, in large numbers	<i>Trichuris trichiura</i> <i>Ancylostoma duodenale</i> <i>Necator americanus</i> <i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> <i>Trichostrongylus</i> spp <i>Fasciolopsis buski</i>
	(b) Periodic or scanty	<i>Schistosoma mansoni</i> <i>Gastrostrongylus hominis</i> <i>Heterophyes heterophyes</i> <i>Ophiorchis felinus</i> <i>Clonorchis sinensis</i> <i>Diphyllbothrium latum</i> <i>Hymenolepis nana</i> <i>Schistosoma japonicum</i> <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> <i>Echinostoma</i> spp <i>Metagonimus yokogawai</i> <i>Esoophagostomum</i>
	(c) Rare	[ <i>Schistosoma haematobium</i> ] [ <i>Paragonimus westermani</i> ] [ <i>Tenia solium</i> ] [ <i>Enterobius vermicularis</i> ] [ <i>Tenia saginata</i> ]
	(ii) In a perianal swab	<i>Enterobius vermicularis</i>
	(iii) In the urine	<i>Schistosoma haematobium</i>
	(iv) In the sputum	<i>Paragonimus westermani</i>
	(i) Faeces	<i>Strongyloides stercoralis</i> [ <i>Trichinella spiralis</i> ] [ <i>Ancylostoma duodenale</i> ] [ <i>Necator americanus</i> ]
	(ii) Blood	<i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i> <i>Acanthocheilonema perstans</i> <i>Mansonella ozzardi</i> <i>Wuchereria malayi</i> <i>Loa loa</i>
	(iii) Discharge from ulcers	<i>Dracunculus medinensis</i>
Larvæ	(iv) In subcutaneous tissues, or muscle	<i>Onchocerca volvulus</i> <i>Trichinella spiralis</i>
	(v) In cysts	<i>Echinococcus granulosus</i>
Adult worms or proglottids	(i) In faeces	<i>Tenia solium</i> [ <i>Diphyllbothrium latum</i> ] <i>Tenia saginata</i>
	(ii) In subcutaneous tissues	<i>Gnathostoma spinigerum</i> [ <i>Loa loa</i> ] [ <i>Onchocerca volvulus</i> ]

Note The brackets indicate that the species also appears under another heading that is more important from a practical diagnostic point of view

Other classifications that might be adopted would be

IV According to the nature of the intermediate host or hosts, of the definitive hosts other than man, and/or of the habitat of the free-living phase;

V According to whether they are infections of warm, or of temperate countries, or are cosmopolitan in their distribution,

VI According to the main sites of the pathological processes that they engender

There is little to be gained by regrouping the worms according to these last three classifications, but in the second half of Table XV these data are tabulated

None of the above classifications would appear to be entirely satisfactory for the purpose of this book, but the following modification of (vi), the pathological classification, seems to allow a consecutive presentation of the subject and has therefore been adopted here

#### CLASSIFICATION ADOPTED

**A. Intestinal parasites**—These can be divided into several groups—

(i) Nematode worms whose portal of entry is the mouth, whose infective stage is the egg, whose cycle is a relatively simple one and does not include an intermediate host, and whose distribution is cosmopolitan. In this group are included *Trichuris trichiura*, *Enterobius vermicularis* and *Ascaris lumbricoides*, and they are described under the general heading 'Cosmopolitan intestinal nematode infections'

(ii) Nematode worms whose usual portal of entry is through the skin, whose infective stage is the filariform larva whose life cycle though it does not include an intermediate host, requires special exogenous conditions, and whose distribution is mainly tropical. In this group are included *Ancylostoma duodenale*, *Ancylostoma braziliense*, *Necator americanus*, *Strongyloides stercoralis*, and *Trichostrongylus* spp, though the usual portal of entry of the last named is not known, it is apparently capable of entering through the skin or the mouth. They are described under the heading 'Tropical intestinal nematode infections'

(iii) The tapeworms, *Diphyllobothrium latum*, *Taenia solium*, *Taenia saginata*, *Hymenolepis nana* and *Hymenolepis diminuta* which are not a very homogeneous group in their life cycles, though their portal of entry is in each instance the mouth, and, except in the case of *H. nana*, they enter in the larval stages they are cosmopolitan in their distribution. They are described under the heading 'Tapeworm infections'

(iv) *Trichinella spiralis* which must be considered here because the adult stage is in the intestinal mucosa and produces intestinal symptoms, though the larval stage causes more serious symptoms in the same individual host. Infection is by ingestion of the encysted larval stage in meat, it is an infection of temperate zones. This is described under the heading 'Trichinosis'

(v) The intestinal trematodes, of which only one, *Fasciolopsis buski*, is described here. These worms have a complex life cycle, they usually enter their determinative hosts in their larval stage, and are tropical in their distribution. (*Fasciolopsis buski* will be described more appropriately with the other flukes)

**B Parasites of lymphatics, subcutaneous tissues and serous cavities**—These can be divided into three groups—

(i) The filarioidea *Wuchereria bancrofti*, *Wuchereria malayi*, *Onchocerca volvulus*, *Acanthocheilonema persians*, *Loa loa* and *Mansonella ozzardi*, all of which gain entry in their larval stage by the agency of an insect that acts as intermediate host. They are described under the heading 'Filariasis'

(ii) The guinea-worm, *Dracunculus medinensis*, which gains entry by mouth in a crustacean that acts as an intermediate host



(iii) *Gnathostoma spinigerium* which apparently has a complex life cycle, including two intermediate hosts, and gains entry by the mouth in the encysted larval stage in fish

All these infections have a tropical distribution

**C. Blood flukes**—The schistosomes *Schistosoma hæmatobium*, *Schistosoma mansoni* and *Schistosoma japonicum* are the only three worms in this group. Their life cycle includes intermediate hosts species of snails, and they gain entry through the skin in their cercarial stage. They are described here under the heading 'Schistosomiasis'

**D. Liver and lung flukes**—Only two of these, *Clonorchis sinensis* and *Paragonimus westermani*, are considered to be of sufficient importance to be described here. They gain entry in the encysted stage in food and are tropical in their distribution. (The intestinal fluke, *Fasciolopsis buski*, is also described here and the chapter is given the general heading 'Other fluke infections')

**E. Worms that produce the main pathogenesis in their larval stage**—These are *Echinococcus granulosus*, whose larval stage alone occurs in man, and *Trichinella spiralis* and *Tænia solium* whose adult stages also occur in the intestines in man. In all three, infection is by the mouth in the case of *Echinococcus granulosus* and *Tænia solium* (for the larval infections) in the egg stage, and in *Trichinella spiralis* and *Tænia solium* (for the adult infection) in the encysted larval stage. (In the two latter cases both larval and adult stages are described in their appropriate places amongst intestinal parasites)

## COSMOPOLITAN INTESTINAL NEMATODE INFECTIONS

### ASCARIASIS

	PAGE
EPIDEMIOLOGY	596
ÆTIOLOGY	596
<i>The causal organism</i>	596
<i>The Egg—Larvæ—Adults—Life cycle</i>	
<i>Conditions favouring transmission</i>	597
PATHOLOGY	597
<i>Larvæ—Adults</i>	597
<i>Blood picture</i>	598
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	598
DIAGNOSIS	598
PREVENTION	599
TREATMENT	699

### THREADWORM (PIN-WORM) INFECTION OR OXYURIASIS

EPIDEMIOLOGY	600
ÆTIOLOGY	600
<i>Life cycle</i>	600
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY	601
DIAGNOSIS	602
TECHNIQUE	602
PREVENTION	602
TREATMENT	602

### WHIPWORM OR TRICHURIS INFECTION

EPIDEMIOLOGY	603
ÆTIOLOGY	603
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY	604
DIAGNOSIS	604
PREVENTION	604
TREATMENT	604

## ASCARIASIS

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

This is a cosmopolitan infection, but, because the climatic conditions in tropical countries are more favourable than those of temperate and cold countries to the exogenous phase of this worm and, because on the whole the populations of the former adopt a lower standard of both personal and environmental hygiene, the infection is a widespread and heavy one amongst the inhabitants of most tropical countries.

Ascariasis is a good indicator of the sanitary advancement in any population, and in temperate countries it is confined mainly to insanitary population groups and is particularly prevalent amongst poorer class children.

## ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism—*Ascaris lumbricoides* is the only species of the genus which infects man. *Ascaris suum* of the pig is morphologically identical, but physiologically distinct, and mutual interchange of hosts apparently does not occur.

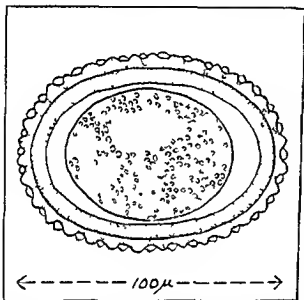


Figure 142 The fertile egg of *Ascaris lumbricoides*

The egg is the infective stage. The fertile egg which measures 45 to 75 microns by 35 to 50 microns has a thick but transparent coarsely mammillated albuminoid shell. It is unsegmented, and it contains an almost globular protoplasmic mass of moderate sized regular granules.

The larvae develop inside the egg and pass through two stages before they emerge. The larva that eventually emerges from the egg is 0.2 to 0.3

millimetres in length by 0.014 mm in diameter, it passes through two more developmental stages and increases to 1 to 2 millimetres in length.

The adult is a large round worm. The male is 15 to 31 mm by 2 to 4 mm in diameter and the female 20 to 35 by 3 to 6 mm but is occasionally longer.

The life cycle—Mature (embryonated) eggs are ingested in the duodenum. The shells split and active embryos emerge, these penetrate the mucous membrane of the intestine and enter a lymphatic vessel or venule.\*

\* There is experimental evidence for this (Ransom and Cram 1921). If however the larvae (about 14 microns in diameter) travel via the venules they will have to pass through the liver whereas if they travel via the lymphatics they detract the liver. There is no evidence of any damage to the liver but that caused to the lung is considerable. It is possible that this is because they pause longer and undergo development in the latter organ or it may be that the large majority go by the lymphatics and miss the liver.

to reach the right side of the heart and the lungs in the blood stream, in the lungs the larvae moult twice during a sojourn of several days, and eventually they penetrate into an alveolus whence they migrate up the trachea and down the œsophagus to reach the intestine once more and become adults. In their larval stages they live on blood, but the adults are almost entirely lumen feeders. The female lays eggs at the rate of nearly a quarter of a million a day, these are passed out with the stools, and mature in the soil. The adult worms may live for at least 15 months.

**Conditions favouring transmission**—A moderately high temperature

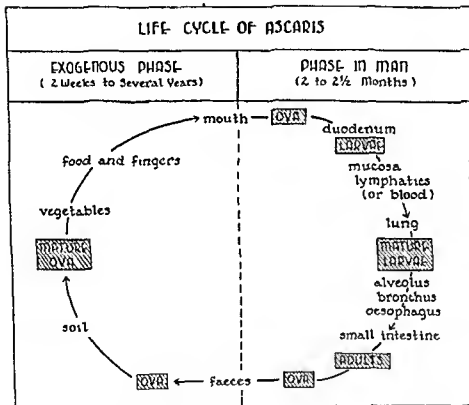


Figure 143

(80° F) favours the exogenous phase of the worm and, though the eggs will survive drying and may be blown about in dust they reach maturity earlier in a warm humid environment.

The infection is acquired from the faeces contaminated ground by means of soiled hands and other objects that children frequently place in their mouths, contaminated food particularly vegetables in the growing of which human excreta have been used as manure, and from contaminated water supplies.

#### PATHOLOGY

This is not as clear cut as in many other helminthic infections.

The migrating larvae during their sojourn in the lungs damage the capillaries and cause a cellular, largely eosinophilic, reaction, there is des-

quamation of the alveolar epithelium, bleeding into the alveoli and often in heavy infections a pneumonitis or a true pneumonia resulting from secondary bacterial infection

Blood-stained sputum containing *ascaris* larvae may be coughed up

Aberrantly migrating larvae may produce thrombotic lesions in various organs, including the brain and the cord, but such instances are rare

The adults in the intestinal canal do not cause any gross pathological lesion as a rule, but when the infection is very heavy, they may wander into other organs, e.g. the gall-bladder, liver, bronchus, or even eustachian tube, and produce considerable local disturbances, or in the intestine itself, they may become impacted causing obstruction, directly or as a result of intussusception, and even perforation. They also produce a 'toxin', apparently an albumose with neurotoxic, anaphylactic, anti-peptic and other properties, especially after they are dead, that causes a local reaction in the bowel, and is absorbed, producing a 'toxæmia' that may be fatal in ill-nourished children

The writer has removed half a bucketful of worms from the intestinal tract of a patient who died of intestinal obstruction, they were aggregated in solid knots in different parts of the intestinal tract. There were certainly a thousand round worms, but the record is apparently held by Ryle who counted 1488 from one patient

**Blood picture**—There is usually an eosinophilia, often up to 1,500 (or 20 per cent) per c mm, but the degree of eosinophilia is no indication of the weight of the infection

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The symptoms produced are very variable in degree and very protean in character. In the majority of light infections, there are probably no symptoms due to the *ascaris*, but some observers believe that in children even these light infections frequently cause intellectual retardation, stunted growth, and general sub-health

In heavy infections, during the stage of migration the larvae may undoubtedly cause pneumonitis and pneumonia, and more rarely the conditions that result from embolism in the various organs and tissues referred to above

During their intestinal phase, the adults cause vague abdominal pain, indigestion, nausea and vomiting, malnutrition, pallor (not necessarily associated with anæmia) and heavy rings under the eyes, restlessness and insomnia and, in infants, convulsions and death, as well as the symptoms produced by the worms when they wander into other organs, e.g. suffocation when they obstruct the bronchi, and peritonitis when they cause intussusception, appendicitis or perforation

Children are very likely to pass live worms in their stools or these may escape *per anum* between stools or be vomited or escape through the nares, the incident causes considerable alarm to the patient, or the parent but is not in itself of any special significance beyond indicating the presence of the worms and the probability that there are more

### DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis does not ordinarily present any difficulty, as the female passes large numbers of eggs regularly throughout her life, and these can

be readily recognized, though it may be necessary to employ a concentration method. *Ascaris* eggs are not well demonstrated by floatation methods. It is said that a certain percentage of persons, less than 4 per cent, will harbour male worms only, in such cases there will be no ova and a diagnosis will be best made by the therapeutic test.

The characteristic *ascaris* egg has been described above, but occasionally unfertilized eggs will be found these are longer and slightly narrower than the fertilized eggs they may or may not have the characteristic albuminoid shell, and they contain a disorganized mass of highly refractile particles of various sizes.

#### PREVENTION

All-round sanitary improvement will be necessary to prevent or reduce this infection. It will however be advisable to find out which are the most highly infected groups in a population, and then what is the main source of infection, so that special measures may be adopted. It is often a homestead problem in which the infection is maintained by promiscuous defaecation of children and until this has been corrected the infection will be certain to recur. Education, especially in schools will be an important means of achieving this.

Mass treatment in which it will be most essential that all children are included, will effect some improvement by reducing the source of infection but, unless combined with other sanitary measures, it will not produce any permanent reduction in infection in the population.

#### TREATMENT

Santonin, which was at one time looked upon as a specific has little to recommend it, and has now been replaced by other safer and more efficient drugs.

Oil of chenopodium (B.P.) is very effective but is best given with tetrachlorethylene, 1 c cm of the former with 3 c cm of the latter for an adult and for children 0.25 c cm of this mixture for every year of *apparent* age. This should be given shaken up with an ounce of saturated sodium sulphate solution.

For the safety of the patient it is essential to reduce the dose of oil of chenopodium as indicated above, in the case of children, but, since the worms are the same size whatever the size of the host the smaller doses may prove inadequate (Maplestone and Mukerji 1938). For this reason, the less toxic hexylresorcinol may be substituted in the case of young children.

Hexylresorcinol is at present available only in the form of the proprietary caprokol crystaloids (Sharpe and Dobme) containing 0.1 gramme or 0.2 gramme each. This is given on an empty stomach (5 hours after food) in doses of 1 gramme (5 x 0.2 g) for adults and older children 0.8 gramme for children between 6 and 11 years and 0.6 gramme for children from 1 to 5 years of age. This dose is followed in two hours by an ounce of saturated sodium sulphate solution (for an adult and less for children).

In the case of either drug if a good reaction is not secured within a few hours the purgative should be repeated as the early removal of both the drug and the dead worms is very desirable, there is evidence that a toxin may be absorbed from the disintegrating *ascaris*.

The full dose of the former medicine will usually cure 90 per cent of adults, but with the smaller dosage in children the cure rate is not so high. For the latter drug, an all-round 90 per cent cure rate is claimed

## THREADWORM (PIN-WORM) INFECTION OR OXYURIASIS

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

This infection is world-wide, it is also probably both the commonest and the most harmless of intestinal helminth infections. It has been shown to be present in 35 per cent of a general population group in Washington (D C, U.S.A.) and in nearly 70 per cent in certain children's institutions. Writers usually assume that it will be more common in the tropics, on account of the lower sanitary standards in these countries, but this is by no means a foregone conclusion, as the habits and general mode of life of many inhabitants of the tropics are such that they would be less likely to foster this infection than are those of the natives of more advanced western countries. However, few reliable figures are available.

As well as being an institutional disease, it is a family disease. The highest infection rate will always be found in the children.

### ETIOLOGY

The causal parasite, *Enterobius vermicularis* (previously placed in the genus *Oxyuris*, hence the name 'oxyuriasis'), is a very small thread-like nematode worm, the male,

which is seldom seen is 2 to 5 millimetres long by 0.1 to 0.2 mm in diameter and the female, which has a fine pointed tail, is 8 to 12 mm long by 0.3 to 0.5 mm in diameter. The eggs are 50 to 60 microns long by 20 to 30 in diameter, they are ovoid in shape with one side slightly flattened, they have a moderately thick transparent shell, and when seen usually contain a fully-developed embryo.

Their life cycle is a simple one. The eggs are swallowed, larvae hatch out in the duodenum and pass down the intestinal canal to the caecum, moulting twice en route, here they develop into adults, they

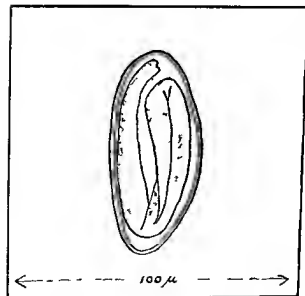


Figure 144 The egg of *Enterobius vermicularis*

attach themselves to the mucosa of the caecum and large intestine, but to oviposit the females migrate outside the intestinal canal. The eggs remain attached to the skin in the grooves around the anus, to the host's clothes or to the bedclothes, or they fall to the ground where when dry they be

come part of the dust of the room and in an infected household can be recovered in large numbers from the dust lying on furniture or even along the tops of pictures on the wall. The host may reinfect himself by scratching the skin around the anus or the eggs may regain entry into the same host or into other members of the family in innumerable ways and the cycle will commence again.

The cycle takes about two months to complete.

#### PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

It is quite obvious that in the large majority of infected persons there is no pathogenesis. There is no very convincing evidence that the worm

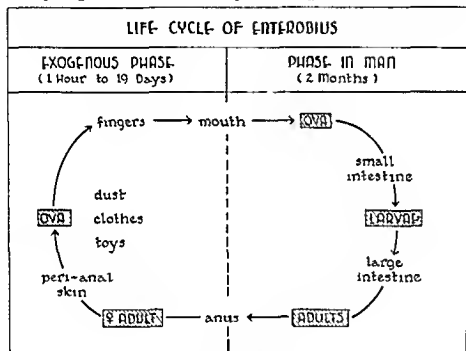


Figure 145

produces any lesions in the intestinal tract. catarrhal inflammation mucosal erosions and allergic manifestations in sensitive persons are referred to. Acute and subacute appendicitis are sometimes mentioned in the symptomatology but the fact that the worms are found in 5 per cent of vermiform appendices of which only a third showed acute inflammation and which are removed from members of a population with possibly a 35 per cent *Enterobius* infection rate is not very convincing evidence of the pathogenicity of this worm or even of its predilection for this site.

The female worm however causes anal pruritus which leads to scratching and trauma with the attendant dangers of secondary infection. This will lead to disturbed sleep and irritability and may thus indirectly affect the health of a child.

There is a little evidence that in heavy infections in ill nourished children some invasion of the mucosa may take place with resultant diar-



ricent and other disturbances, but with this possible exception it seems very doubtful if any of the varied symptomatology that is popularly attributed to this worm is really caused by it

### DIAGNOSIS

Eggs will not be found in the stools of more than about 5 per cent of infected persons so that stool examination is useless. To find the eggs it is necessary to take a swab from around the external anal orifice. The best method of doing this is with the NIH (National Institute of Health) swab



Figure 146  
NIH swab  
(Hall 1937)

**Technique.**—The NIH swab is essentially a glass rod rounded at the end which is capped by a piece of thin cellophane about one inch square; this cellophane is held in place by a small rubber band. A useful alternative is a gummed cellophane strip. For convenience of sterilization and transport this swab is placed in a test tube with the other end of the glass rod passed through the cork with which the test tube is closed. The cellophane swab is wiped around the anal orifice and the swab is replaced in the test tube to be taken to the laboratory. Here the swab is removed and the end placed and held on a large slide on which there is a drop of saline while the rubber band is pushed up the glass rod by means of a pair of forceps until the cellophane is released. The rod is still held in position while the cellophane is smoothed out on the slide; it is then removed, a drop of saline is dropped onto the cellophane, and a coverslip is applied. Under the low power the slide is examined and eggs will be seen lying between the slide and the cellophane and adhering to the latter.

### PREVENTION

The main source of infection lies in the patients themselves and the other members of the household and in their immediate environment. Prevention therefore consists in simultaneous and thorough treatment of every member of a household combined with a very complete cleaning of the house and the maintenance of a high standard of personal cleanliness. Such measures as providing night clothes that prevent children scratching their anal orifices and transferring the infection immediately to their mouths will limit massive reinfection but if the child is still infected reinfection will be

certain to take place whatever precautions are taken and the problem will not be solved.

### TREATMENT

The most satisfactory results are obtained with gentian violet; the dosage is the same as that for strongyloidiasis (see p. 632) but it is usual to divide the course into two 8 day periods, leaving an interval of one week between courses (Wright & Brady, 1938). Hexylresorcinol is also very effective, especially if the oral administration (for dosage see ASCARIASIS) is combined with an enema of a 1 in 1000 dilution of the same drug. After the morning dose of hexylresorcinol an alkaline saline enema is given and the bowel evacuated. This is followed immediately by a high enema of one pint of 1 in 1,000 hexylresorcinol, this should be retained as long as possible. If the pain and/or tenesmus are severe even after evacuation, a warm water bowel wash should be given.

If the above drugs are not available, tetrachlorethylene as given in hookworm infection (see p. 626), will be found relatively satisfactory.

Whatever drug is used, in order to test cure perianal swabs should be taken. It is unsafe to assume that the patient is cured until seven such swabs (preferably NIH) have been negative.

## WHIPWORM OR TRICHURIS INFECTION

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

This infection is again world-wide, but it is probably more common in the tropics, especially the humid tropics. It is epidemiologically closely associated with ascariasis infection, but it is not so widespread, and is less prevalent in dry areas. It is more common amongst children than adults.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal parasite, *Trichuris trichiura* (or *Trichocephalus trichiurus*), measures from 3 to 5 centimetres, the male being slightly smaller than the female. It is a whitish-grey worm with a filamentous anterior three-fifths and a stout posterior two-fifths, this gives it its very appropriate name.

The egg measures about 52 by 22 microns, it has a double shell the outer one of which is bile stained, it is lemon shaped, and at each pole there is a hole through the shell that is filled with a non-staining substance which like the bung in a barrel projects slightly to make button-like prominences at each end.

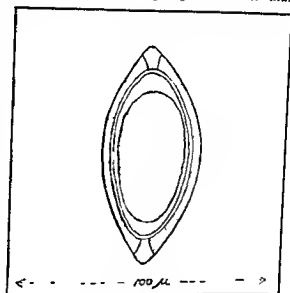


Figure 147 The egg of *Trichuris trichiura*

The life cycle is as follows—Fully embryonated eggs are ingested by man, who is the only host and the shell is dissolved off in the small intestine. The larvae that emerge attach themselves temporarily to the local mucosa to obtain nourishment, but soon pass on to the caecum, or the adjoining ileum or colon where they become adults. The adults attach themselves to the mucous membrane by their delicate head ends, and sometimes actually bury these for some distance just under the surface in a way that prevents easy mechanical removal. Here the females produce their immature eggs which pass out with the stools on to suitable damp soil. The developmental phase from egg to adult occupies about three months. After about two weeks under optimal conditions the eggs become mature. They are now ready for ingestion, but will survive in suitable medium for about a year, and when they are ingested the cycle starts again.

## PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

These worms appear to produce distinctly more damage in the intestines than do thread worms, and it is also believed that they suck blood. They are occasionally associated with a moderate eosinophilia which suggests the absorption by the host of some allergin, and insomnia, loss of appetite, and 'nervousness' are attributed to them, even when infections are light, but there is better evidence with regard to heavy infections, and it is believed that quite severe anaemia, diarrhoea, emaciation, and a condition somewhat similar to that produced by hookworm infection may occur.

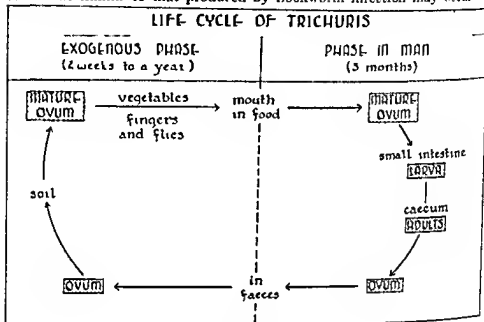


Figure 148

## DIAGNOSIS

This presents no difficulties. The eggs can be found very easily in the faeces and are unmistakable. Floatation methods will facilitate the search when the infection is light. The number of eggs in the stools are a rough indication of the degree of infection.

## PREVENTION

There are no special measures to be recommended. This infection like that of ascaris, is a good indication of personal and environmental hygienic practices of a community.

## TREATMENT

There is no specific, available for general use, for the treatment of this infection. All the anthelmintics mentioned above should be tried. It is usually found that heavy infections are reduced by tetrachlorethylene and oil of chenopodium (see p. 599) or hexylresorcinol, but that light infections are often uninfluenced. The results of treatment with any of these drugs will be better if the bowel is thoroughly washed out first by a saline purge and then a high alkaline enema.

There is however one substance that is apparently a specific, namely, leche de higueron, which is the sap of certain species of the genus *Ficus*.

*Ficus glabrata* and *F. doliaria* grow in Central and South America where they are used extensively as anthelmintics. The latex contains a proteolytic ferment but this can only be preserved under conditions of refrigeration, and it is not yet commercially available outside the countries where it grows (Faust, D'Antoni and Sawitz, 1943). In several countries, *e.g.* India attempts have been made to use for this purpose the latex of the local species of *Ficus*, but so far without success. The fresh latex is given in a two ounce dose on an empty stomach, preferably at night after thorough cleansing of the bowel by saunas and enemata.

The cure is tested by examination of the stools for ova 3 to 5 days after treatment. If they are still present, the treatment should be repeated after a week's interval.

#### REFERENCES

- FAUST E. C., D'ANTONI J. S. and SAWITZ W. G. (1943) Diagnosis and Treatment of Infections with Common Intestinal Protozoa and Helminths *Tulare Med Bull* **2**, 39.
- HALE MALRICE C. (1937) Studies in Oxyuriasis *Amer J Trop Med*, **17**, 445.
- MAPLESTONE P. A. and MUKERJI A. K. (1938) The Treatment of Ascariasis *Indian Med Gaz* **73**, 328.
- RAYSON B. H. and CRAM E. B. (1921) The Course of Migration of *Ascaris Larvae* *Amer J Trop Med* **1**, 129.
- WRIGHT W. H. and BRADY F. J. (1938) The Treatment of Oxyuriasis with an Improved Type of Enteric-coated Tablet *J Parasitol Supp* **24**, 9.

# TROPICAL INTESTINAL NEMATODE INFECTIONS

## ANCYLOSTOMIASIS AND HOOKWORM DISEASE

	PAGE
DEFINITION .. .. .	607
HISTORICAL .. .. .	608
<i>Geographical distribution</i> .. .. .	608
America—Africa—Europe—Asia—India	
ÆTIOLOGY . . . . .	609
<i>The causal organisms</i> .. .. .	609
The eggs—Larvæ—Adults—Life cycle of worm—The viability of the ova and larvæ	
<i>Immunity</i> . . . . .	612
EPIDEMIOLOGY AND FACTORS IN HOOKWORM INFECTION .. .. .	613
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	616
<i>Variations in the clinical picture</i> .. .. .	616
Species—Duration of exposure—Weight of infection and host tolerance	
<i>Skin lesions</i> .. .. .	616
Ground itch—Creeping eruption	
<i>The larval phase</i> .. .. .	617
Lung lesions—Gastro-intestinal symptoms	
<i>General symptoms in established ancylostomiasis</i> . . . . .	618
Blood picture	
The cause of the anæmia—The anæmia—The white cell count	
Gastric acidity	
Fæces	
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	619
<i>In the parenteral phase</i> .. .. .	619
<i>In the intestinal phase</i> .. .. .	620
Hookworm infection and Hookworm disease	
Examination for ova	
Technique	
Direct examination—Floatation methods	
Estimating the hookworm load	
Technique	
<i>Other diagnostic aids</i> .. .. .	621
PREVENTION .. .. .	621
<i>Introduction</i> .. .. .	621
<i>Prevention of infection</i> .. .. .	622

	PAGE
<i>Prevention of hookworm disease</i>	623
<i>Policy</i>	624
TREATMENT	625
<i>Of the parenteral infection</i>	625
<i>Of the intestinal infection</i>	625
(a) Specific	
Historical	
Tetraclorethylene	
Hexylresorcinol	
Checking the results of treatment	
(b) General	
PROGNOSIS	627

## STRONGYLOIDIASIS

INTRODUCTION	628
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	628
EPIDEMIOLOGY	628
ÆTIOLOGY	628
<i>The causal organism</i>	628
The egg—The rhabditoid larva—The filariform larva—The adult—The life cycles	
<i>Discussion</i>	630
<i>Contributory factors in determining morbidity</i>	630
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY	630
(a) <i>The skin</i>	631
(b) <i>The respiratory tract</i>	631
(c) <i>The intestinal tract</i>	631
<i>The blood picture</i>	631
DIAGNOSIS	631
PREVENTION	631
TREATMENT	631

## TRICHOSTRONGYLIASIS

<i>Identification of ova</i>	633
------------------------------	-----

## ANCYLOSTOMIASIS AND HOOKWORM DISEASE

**Definition**—Ancylostomiasis or hookworm infection that is infection by *Ancylostoma duodenale* *Necator americanus* or *Ancylostoma braziliense* may be symptomless or if the infection is a very heavy one and/or the subject is undernourished or otherwise particularly susceptible it may give rise to symptoms of various degrees of severity. The most prominent of these are skin eruptions at the point of entry or along the route of the migrations of the larvae—conditions known respectively as water

(or ground) itch' and 'creeping eruption'—and, when the worms are established in the bowel anaemia, cardiac dysfunction, gastro intestinal disturbances and debility—a symptom complex known as hookworm disease. The infection is transmitted from man to man by faecal contamination of the soil and subsequent entry of the worms through the skin usually of the bare feet. The infection is endemic in warm climates and occurs in temperate climates when the special local temperature conditions approximate those of warm climates.

**Historical.**—There are very early authentic records of the existence of hookworm disease, e.g. in the Ebers Papyrus and unmistakable clinical examples can be traced in the medical writings throughout the ages up to the middle of the 19th century but the real nature of the disease was not realized prior to 1853 when Bilharz definitely associated Egyptian chlorosis with the presence of the worm described ten years previously by Dubini in Italy and named *Ancylostoma duodenale*.

Wucherer confirmed these observations in Brazil in 1866 where he associated the worm infection with tropical anaemia. Surprisingly it was another twenty years before Grassi and the brothers Parona showed that the condition could be diagnosed by finding the ova in the stools.

The first serious medical attention was attracted to the disease by the St. Gotthard tunnel outbreak in 1880. When this tunnel was completed in 1882 the workmen were dispersed and many were employed in mines in different countries in Europe where they disseminated the infection. The disease was for example recognized in the tin mines in Cornwall. *Ancylostomiasis* had meanwhile been recorded in tropical countries where it was confused with the anaemias due to other parasites as it frequently is even today.

It was first recognized in America in 1893 here the infection had undoubtedly been introduced by the negro slaves from Africa as the infection was almost entirely by *Necator americanus* the predominant worm in tropical Africa first described by Stiles in 1902.

In 1893 Looss discovered that the ordinary route of infection was not as had been previously supposed by the mouth from contaminated food or fingers but through the skin usually of the feet whence the larvae migrated to the lymph channels blood stream lungs oesophagus and stomach to the duodenum and small intestine. His epoch making monograph on this subject was published in 1911.

**Geographical distribution.**—Hookworm infection occurs in practically all humid tropical countries and in a number of subtropical areas in both the northern and the southern hemispheres. Several outbreaks have been reported in temperate countries in mines and tunnels where the temperature and humidity conditions simulate those prevalent in tropical countries.

It occurs in the southern states of North America, throughout Central America and in South America—in Venezuela the Guianas Brazil Paraguay Uruguay and Argentina—as far south as Buenos Aires but not in the countries on the west coast. It occurs throughout the west coast of tropical Africa, on the east coast in Tanganyika and Portuguese East Africa and in Madagascar. *Necator americanus* is the only important human hookworm in all these countries except for a few areas in southern Brazil in Paraguay in Panama and in Portuguese West Africa where although the infection is predominantly *Necator americanus* *Ancylostoma duodenale* occurs also.

*Ancylostoma duodenale* is solely responsible for the infections in Egypt in North Africa especially Tunisia in southern Italy and Sicily and in the mines in Spain and countries in Europe where the infection still persists.

In Asia, infection is widespread in India southern China Burma Siam Indo China Malaya the Dutch East Indies and Japan Borneo.

the Philippines, and New Guinea, and in Queensland in Australia. In most of these areas both species are found.

In India, there are few areas throughout the plains free from the infection, but in very few places does it assume serious proportions. Some of the coastal areas in southern India and Ceylon are exceptions, here the infections are almost solely *Necator americanus*, and in Ceylon in particular it has been a very serious public health problem. In northern India, the infection is mainly *Ancylostoma duodenale* and in the central portion of the country and in the north-east provinces both worms are found but the former certainly predominates.

*Ancylostoma braziliense*, a common infection of dogs and cats and wild felines in many parts of the world, is rare as a human intestinal infection, but has been reported as occurring sporadically in the southern states of America, Brazil, West and East Africa, India and Ceylon, the Philippines, Fiji, and other South Pacific islands. In some places on the bathing beaches of Florida and São Paulo, its nuisance importance in causing 'creeping eruption' is considerable.

### ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal organisms.**—The two most important hookworms that parasitize man and reach the intestine are *Ancylostoma duodenale* and *Necator americanus*, the third, *Ancylostoma braziliense*, is rarer and less important as an intestinal parasite of man, but is more likely to give rise to a skin lesion known as 'creeping eruption' when it fails to penetrate the deeper layers of the skin. The three worms are morphologically similar although readily distinguishable from one another in their adult and larval stages, their life cycles are identical, and all three produce very much the same clinical pictures when they parasitize man. The three stages of *Ancylostoma duodenale*, the egg, the larva, and the adult, will be described and any special differences exhibited by either of the other species will be noted.

The eggs are colourless thin-shelled oval bodies with bluntly rounded ends, measuring on the average 40 by 60 microns. Most characteristically the protoplasm

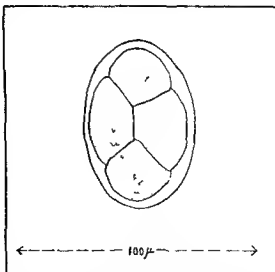


Figure 149 The egg of *Ancylostoma duodenale*

within the thin hyaline shell is divided into four closely packed but separate masses, the egg however when it is passed by the female is usually unsegmented, and becomes segmented during its passage through the intestines, or it may develop into the larval stage within the shell, so that it is possible to find eggs in the stools, as unsegmented eggs, in the two, four-, or eight-



segmented stage or with fully-developed first-stage larvae coiled within the shell. The eggs of *Aecator americanus* are longer (64 to 76 microns) and narrower (36 to 40 microns) than those of *Ancylostoma duodenale* but otherwise similar and the eggs of *Ancylostoma braziliense* are indistinguishable from those of *Ancylostoma duodenale* (see Frontispiece A figure 11).

The larvae rarely emerge from the shell within the intestinal canal, so that when a larva is found in the stools the first assumption is that it is not a hookworm larva but one of *Strongyloides stercoralis* however, the rhabditoid larvae of this latter species have a very short buccal cavity

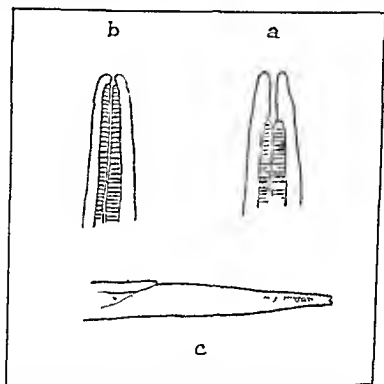


Figure 150 Showing difference between rhabditoid larvæ of *Ancylostoma* (a) and of *Strongyloides* (b), and also notched tail of the filariform larva of *Strongyloides* (c)

(figure 150, b) which makes them easily distinguishable from rhabditoid hookworm larvae (figure 150, a), and the filariform larva of *Strongyloides* is unmistakable on account of its notched tail (figure 150, c)

The first-stage rhabditoid larva, which is 250 to 300 microns long and 17 microns in diameter, usually emerges from the ovum within 24, or at longest 48 hours after the stool has been passed onto a suitable medium, here the larva feeds on organic matter for about another three days sheds its cuticle, and becomes a second-stage larva which is about double the size of the first-stage. This larva continues to feed and grow for another three to five days and then when it has reached about a millimetre in length, its mouth closes up and it becomes a fully developed third stage non-feeding filariform larva. This larva sometimes retains its cuticle for a time, but sheds it before it enters its new host. When it reaches the

jejunum, the larva sheds its filariform cuticle attaches itself to the intestinal mucosa, feeds, and grows into an adult.

The adult worms are pinkish or creamy gray in colour, cylindrical, slightly curved, 8 to 13 mm in length with a greatest diameter of 0.4 to 0.6 mm, the males are distinctly smaller than the females, being seldom above 11 mm in length or 0.5 in diameter whereas the females are seldom less than 0.6 in diameter. The worms of the other two species are slightly smaller, *Necator americanus* varies from 7 to 9 mm by 0.3 for the male and 9 to 11 by 0.4 for the female and *Ancylostoma braziliense* is very slightly

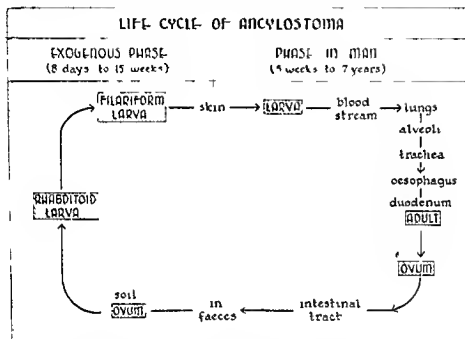


Figure 151

smaller than this, but there is too much overlapping to allow the making of a diagnosis on size of the single individual alone, except of course where large ones—that are necessarily *Ancylostoma duodenale*—are encountered.

Hookworms are distinguished from other intestinal worms of about the same size by their dorsally flexed anterior ends and oval shaped heavily reinforced chitinous buccal capsules. In *A. duodenale* there are two pairs of teeth and in *Necator americanus* a single pair of cutting plates.

**The life cycle of the worm**—The eggs are passed in a stool by an infected individual on to the moist soil, the stool is mixed with the surface layer of the soil by the action of rain by insects such as the coprophagous beetles or by animals, within 48 hours the larvae have emerged from the eggs, the larvae migrate laterally for only short distances measured in inches but in sandy soil may burrow for a foot or more below the surface of the ground. Here they develop and when they have reached the third larval stage are infective to man. Returning to the surface and lying on the soil or on blades of grass or other plants, they attach themselves to the feet of passers by, and immediately burrow into the skin usually at

the side of the foot, on the dorsum or between the toes, where the skin is thin and soft. They will penetrate at any other site where the skin is sufficiently thin. Laboratory workers, from Loos onwards, have frequently been infected through the hands as also have miners, and bathers in contaminated waters are liable to be infected at any point on their skin surface.

The larvae can penetrate the apparently normal skin either through the hair follicles or through microscopic faults in the epidermis, they reach the blood vessels in the dermis, and, entering a venule, they are carried in the blood stream via the right side of the heart to the lungs. In the lungs they penetrate the wall of an alveolus and migrate, via the bronchioles and the trachea, to the epiglottis, in this migration, they are aided by the ciliary epithelium of the respiratory tract. At the point of entrance into the nostril they cause a certain amount of local damage to the alveolar mucous membrane including localized haemorrhages. At the epiglottis they pass into the oesophagus and now reversing their direction they pass into the stomach and eventually reach the jejunum, where they attach themselves to the mucous membrane and develop into male and female adult worms. Not all the larvae that start from the skin reach the jejunum some evidently die in the tissues.

The adult worm is an voracious and wanton blood sucker that it takes far more blood than it needs for its own nutrition, literally pumping the blood out at the rate of 0.67 c.c. a day, it has been estimated in the case of *Ancylostoma duodenale*. *Necator americanus* takes less blood 0.2 to 0.5 c.c. a day.

The female worm lays her eggs in the lumen of the intestinal tract these have been variously estimated as averaging from 10,000 to 30,000 a day. The egg output of *Necator americanus* is much less and is usually estimated at less than 10,000 a day.

From the time the larvae enter the body to the appearance of the first eggs in the stools there is an interval of about five weeks. It has been estimated that 70 per cent of adults disappear from the intestine within a year nearly all within three years, but rare instances of persistence up to 9 years have been reported. Thus although oviposition is believed not to be a continuous process, it is fairly certain that a single female hookworm will produce several million eggs during her life time. These are passed out with the faeces and the cycle begins again.

**The viability of the ova and larvae**—If the eggs do not find their way into a suitable medium their development will be slowed down or stopped. In undiluted faeces they will survive for a long time but development is slowed in a septic tank they are destroyed in 40 days in a tropical climate. In the larval stage in the soil provided the temperature and moisture are suitable they will survive up to 15 weeks. They die if the temperature falls to 50° F, or if the ground becomes excessively dry.

**Immunity**—The question of immunity in helminthic infections is not yet placed on an entirely satisfactory basis but there is considerable evidence mainly based on analogy with helminthic infections in animals that immunity plays a far from unimportant part in the pathogenesis of helminthic infections in man. There is epidemiological evidence that previous experience of hookworm infection provides some degree of protection against reinfection. Further children in a community are always the most susceptible.

In dogs, the development and maintenance of immunity is dependent to a large extent on their nutrition, and when ill nourished dogs are given an adequate diet, not only do they improve in health, but they lose their hookworms and resist further infection (Otto and Kerr, 1939)

In man the immunity appears rather to affect the larvae during their migration through the host's tissues—the stimulation to antibody production being possibly provided by migrating larvae that fail to reach their goal—than the adult worms in the intestinal canal and there is evidence that the development of this immunity is dependent to some extent on the proper nutrition of the human host

The effect of diet on the development of hookworm disease is of course a well-established fact, but this is not necessarily an immunity phenomenon

It is a well-established fact that negroes are less susceptible to infection than white persons living under similar conditions. This is possibly due to their thicker skin. Conversely, the thinness of the skin of children may also determine their greater susceptibility

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY AND FACTORS IN HOOKWORM INFECTION

The essentials for the development of hookworm infection in a population are

- (a) The presence of one or more infected persons, as man is the only reservoir at least as far as *Ancylostoma duodenale* and *Necator americanus* are concerned
- (b) A suitable terrain around a population unit—a homestead a coolie 'line' or a village—a light soil preferably a sandy loam with decaying vegetation and shade or some other special local condition e.g. in a mine or tunnel
- (c) Promiscuous defecation or at least a defective sanitary system
- (d) A warm humid climate (or micro-climate)
- (e) A population that is largely barefooted in the hot months of the year at least and is susceptible to infection

For the development of hookworm disease, one should add —

- (f) A sub-optimal diet for the population defective especially in iron and protein

The subject may be discussed further under each of the above six headings

(a) As has been indicated above, a single pair of worms will, during a year, give rise to several million eggs which in suitable medium will develop into a similar number of hookworms. These could theoretically cause a heavy infection in a large number of persons. In nature, however, the wastage is enormous so that to maintain a high infection rate amongst the population a rich source of infection is necessary. Other factors being equal the infection amongst the population will vary with the degree of infection of the soil which in turn will depend on the number of infected persons polluting the soil and the average number of ova in their stools

(b) and (c) Four examples under which these two conditions are optimal for the development of hookworm endemicity are given

(i) *The small homestead of the poor white in the southern states of America*—Here the land around the house is limited and therefore well trodden. Even if there is a privy this may leak and/or be emptied carelessly near the house and the children of the household will often defecate promiscuously elsewhere

(ii) *The village in India e.g. in Bengal Behar, or Assam*—These villages are sometimes islands of slightly raised ground surrounded entirely by rice fields

There is usually no sanitary system and in the drier season the villager defecates in the open fields often some little way from the houses. The hot sun plays on the stool all day and desiccates and destroys some of the ova or larvæ and at night jackalls eat what is left if meanwhile it has not been entirely buried by dung beetles even if the eggs survive this second intestinal passage (it has been shown that though the majority are destroyed some survive) they are at least taken further afield and there is less chance of their again coming in contact with the feet of the villagers. However when these fields are flooded as in many places they are for several months each year, the defecating ground becomes confined to a much smaller area closer to the house and usually more shady. Such conditions favour the larvæ which remain in the locality and may a few days later re-enter the same individual's feet or infect another member of the community.

In other circumstances the advent of the rains will tend to wash out the larvæ from the soil and most infections will occur in the drier season.



Figure 151 A

(iii) *Tea estates in India*—The tea-garden coolie is often a very primitive individual who although he may have a latrine provided near his quarters prefers to answer nature's call when and where he hears it which often means during his morning's work, squatting between tea bushes he (or she) satisfies a small degree of modesty, avoids the eye of the overseer and places the stool on the ground on which later he and his companions will have to stand while picking the tea leaves. In such cases the chances of both survival and re-entry of the larvæ are maximal.

(iv) *Where human excreta is used as manure*—This habit is common in China in particular and frequently comparatively fresh human excreta is used as manure. The danger to the cultivator is obvious.

Examples such as these could be multiplied indefinitely.

(d) Hookworm infection is confined to hot countries, except where in cooler countries the local conditions, e.g., in a mine or tunnel, simulate those of a hot country. In subtropical countries during the months when the night temperature falls below 50° F, larvæ will seldom be found in the soil and no infections will take place during these months, e.g., in Alabama from December through March. Similarly, in hot dry countries the larvæ die when the saturation deficiency rises above a certain figure but this figure depends to some extent on the nature of the soil, in India,

Chandler (1927) found that 6 inches of rain per month was usually necessary to insure transmission of infection

In humid areas on the other hand Maplestone (1932) found evidence that the large number of new infections were acquired in the warm months prior to the onset of the rainy season. When the rains started the ground became water logged and unsuitable for larval development.

In mines infection seldom occurs if the temperature is below 70° F, and conditions only become optimal in the region of 78° F.

(e) Shoes or boots even if they are not defective are not a complete protection against hookworm infection. European planters in India, or Indian overseers who have to walk through the highly infective mud in tea gardens although they may wear good leather boots, frequently become infected but of course the infection rate is much lower than amongst the barefooted Indian labourer. The children in particular of the poor 'whites' in the southern part of the United States usually go about barefooted at least in the summer time and in India and other eastern countries the majority of the labouring classes are always barefooted.

Miners in European mines at least usually wear boots or shoes but in these the infection occurs through the hands from the soil contaminated rungs of the ladders.

There is no evidence that there is such a thing in man as complete immunity to hookworm infection. Negroes are not so readily infected as white persons in the southern states of America but in India little difference in racial susceptibility has been noted. Children appear to be more susceptible than adults. There is evidence that immunity is to some extent dependent on nutrition (*see Immunity* p. 612).

(f) Whilst immunity to infection is uncertain there is no possible question about the effect of diet on the morbidity produced by the infection. The heavier the hookworm load in comparable population groups the higher will the morbidity rate usually be but this direct correlation between the hookworm load and the degree of anaemia for example in the individuals of a group is often absent. This is probably a matter of individual differences in diet and iron assimilation. There is evidence that if the intake of iron is sufficient there will be no anaemia however heavy the hookworm load and further the writer has frequently been able to show that even in the presence of a very heavy hookworm infection it is possible to bring the haemoglobin level back to normal by iron administration alone. Similarly we (Napier and Das Gupta 1937) have shown that a high protein diet will produce a general improvement in the condition of patients suffering from hookworm disease causing the disappearance of the oedema.

**Special circumstances and other factors**—Whilst the above discussion probably covers 99.9 per cent of hookworm infections there are exceptional circumstances under which infection may be acquired vicariously, e.g. in the laboratory and by bathing in water heavily contaminated by fresh sewage (Ashford *et al.* 1933). Dogs, pigs and jackals commonly eat human faeces. Some of the ova are destroyed in their intestinal tracts but many survive so that these animals may act as disseminators of infection. Cockroaches on the other hand have a digestive apparatus that destroys the ova and Chandler has suggested that in mines cockroaches should therefore be encouraged.

## PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Variations in the clinical picture**—The morbidity will depend on four circumstances—(a) the species of the worm, (b) the duration of the exposure to infection, that is, whether it was a single incident (acute) or a repeated one (chronic), (c) the weight of the infection, and (d) the tolerance of the host

(a) **Species.**—*Ancylostoma braziliense*, the dog hookworm, frequently fails to reach the blood stream and so may produce only dermal lesions. Although there are some localities where this species is capable of producing the full syndrome, it is undoubtedly the least pathogenic of the three species. Between the pathogenic potentialities of the other two species, there is less difference, but *Ancylostoma duodenale* is the more pathogenic. So that the ascending order of pathogenicity is *Ancylostoma braziliense*, *Necator americanus* and *Ancylostoma duodenale*. Mixed infections are common

(b) **Duration of exposure.**—The infection is usually a more-or-less continuous or at least an oft-repeated process, but rare instances have been reported in which single heavy infections have occurred (Ashford *et al.* 1933), these latter have given us a valuable glimpse of the pathological processes that probably occur in all cases but which, being as a rule spread out over so long a period, have been difficult to appreciate clinically

(c) **Weight of infection and (d) host tolerance**—The clinical picture shows considerable variation with the weight of the worm infection and the tolerance of the host. In most areas, the majority of infections are symptomless throughout, while, in others, clinically apparent infections predominate. The severity of the symptoms will, on the whole, vary in the direct ratio to the weight of the infection, but there will be many individual exceptions, due to variations in host tolerance (*vide supra*)

**Skin lesions.**—At their point of entry, the filariform larvae cause a local irritation, no doubt partly on account of the organisms that they carry with them from their aëptic environment. As indicated above, this is usually at the sides of the foot, or on the dorsum between the toes, where the skin is soft and thin. Within about half an hour of the entry of the larva, there is a burning sensation and later the area becomes intensely irritating, a red wheal forms, there is local oedema and hyperæmia, in the course of a day or two, the epidermis is raised in the form of small vesicles, and the scratching that the irritation precipitates aids the introduction of septic organisms, so that the vesicles burst and discharge their watery contents or become pustular. These vesicles or pustules, which are usually multiple, coalesce, and finally an eczematous patch develops. This condition is known as 'ground itch' or 'water sores', for obvious reasons

There is some evidence that this local condition is more frequently caused by *Necator americanus* than by *Ancylostoma duodenale*, for it appears to be rare in Egypt where the latter only is found, whereas in India, where both worms are found, it is relatively common, especially amongst tea-estate labourers

The pathology of 'creeping eruption' is somewhat different, as it is dependent on the fact that the larvae of *Ancylostoma braziliense*, the dog hookworm, is often unable to penetrate all the layers of the skin, after penetrating the epidermis, the larvae wander laterally between the epidermis and the corium in an aimless manner for a considerable time, causing a local reaction. There is local infiltration by eosinophils and

neutrophils, with local hyperæmia and œdema, and later vesicle formation. The worm then moves on and the vesicles along its old tracks dry up and scabs form, which later may be scratched off and the area secondarily infected. It is usually very irritating. The tracks of the larva can be seen easily through the epidermis like irregularly twisted threads, they may move at the rate of several centimetres in twenty-four hours and may produce extensive patterns throughout the skin surface of a limb. They survive in this intradermal locus for several weeks or even months.

Occasionally, the larvae of the other species cause a similar condition.

**The larval phase**—In synchronized heavy infections (acute), there is evidence that some larvae do not immediately find their way into the venules of the skin, but wander in the deeper tissues, taking a month or so to reach the lung or perhaps never reaching it at all, being phagocytosed in the tissues. In such cases, acute general symptoms, *e.g.* fever, which may simulate typhoid, and a sharp eosinophilic (75 per cent) leucocytosis, have occurred. It is doubtful if in the ordinary spaced infection there is ever any trace of this syndrome beyond a moderate increase in eosinophils.

**The lung lesions**—The next point at which the worm makes its presence felt is in the lungs. In escaping from the lung capillaries into the air sacs, it penetrates the alveolar mucosa often causing submucosal extravasations of blood which may even reach the cavity of the alveoli and lead to collections of blood that are later coughed up by the patient. Pneumonitis has been reported, but is rarer than in the cases of *ascaris* and *strongyloides* infections. In cases in which there is an acute, that is, a heavy synchronized infection, there may be a sensation of obstruction in the throat with difficulty in swallowing and speaking, but in the ordinary case, in which the invasion is spread over a long period, it is seldom possible to get any such history. In acute cases, these bronchial symptoms begin to appear as the skin symptoms subside, that is to say, at about the end of a week after exposure.

**Gastro-intestinal symptoms**—In the acute case, these are usually pronounced, there being marked gastro-intestinal discomfort, colicky pains, and diarrhoea often with the passage of frank blood and mucus, or of black tarry stools. Even in mild infections in Europeans, epigastric discomfort is a common symptom, it often persists and may be the only evidence of the infection. In heavier infections that have been spread over a long period, especially in poorer class Indians and other barefooted populations, these gastro-intestinal symptoms stand out from the rest of the picture of ill-health. The diarrhoea may be due to the local irritation and the absorption of metabolites in the intestine, but Ashford and his coworkers (1935) believe that it may be the result of helminthic metabolites from the live or dead larvae that have gone astray in the tissues (*vide supra*).

In the acute case, if there is no further infection, the acute symptoms will tend to subside as the adult worms settle in the jejunum, but, if the infection has been a severe one and the worms are not removed, anæmia will develop as the iron reserves of the body are depleted and other symptoms (*vide infra*) will appear. It is scarcely conceivable that a single acute invasion that was non-fatal in the earlier stages, could produce very serious chronic manifestations, however, where the infection is a continuous process these earlier symptoms will be relatively insignificant, but the symptoms of the established disease will be the important ones.



**General symptoms in established (chronic) ancylostomiasis**—When the adult worms are established in the jejunum they suck blood possibly inject some 'toxin' and make small lesions in the mucosa which may allow septic absorption. The recognized syndrome of ancylostomiasis will now develop.

The fully-developed ancylostomiasis syndrome shows a patient with oedema of the extremities and face—the puffy pale ancylostomiasis facies—mucous membranes almost white, hair scanty, and a protuberant abdomen. The patient has a vacant expression, he has no energy and is indifferent to his surroundings. He complains of palpitations and is breathless on exertion. He suffers from dimness of vision and night blindness. Examination shows that his heart (both right and left side) is extremely dilated there is usually a mitral systolic murmur, and sometimes one at the pulmonary base, his pulse is rapid, and his blood pressure low. His tongue has a wash-leather appearance and often a black streak down the centre. A watery diarrhoea is common.

The cardiac changes, which are all secondary, to severe endocardial damage that is in turn caused mainly by the anaemia, are easily reversible when the blood picture is improved by anti-anaemic treatment alone, but there are a few cases in which this improvement will be delayed until the worms are expelled, this suggests a possible second factor of a toxic or an allergic nature (Heilig, 1942).

Patients will usually have taken several years to reach this marable state, and in the case of children, their physical and mental development will have been retarded, so that a child of 16 years of age may physically and mentally appear to be no older than 10 years, and at the same time he will lack the childish energy and desire to play with other children. Sexual maturation is also retarded. A curious craving manifested by geophagy (or eating of earth), often develops.

The anaemia is perhaps the most striking morbid change and it is certainly the most easily measured so that the blood picture will be discussed in some detail.

**Blood picture—The cause of the anaemia**—Until a few years ago there was much difference in opinion on the actual cause of hookworm anaemia. It is now well established that it is a true secondary anaemia due to the adult worms continuously pumping large quantities of blood from the host's circulation into the lumen of the intestinal canal. The lost blood has to be replaced and this can only be done at the expense of the reserves of iron and probably other blood forming substances. Even with a heavy load of worms, anaemia can be prevented or even cured by giving the patient a good protein diet *plus* medicinal iron but, in persons living on the borderline of iron starvation anaemia will be caused by quite a moderate load.

While most cases can be cured by iron administration alone (*vide infra*) there are a few exceptions in which the normal blood level cannot be regained without the removal of the worms, this suggests that the worms may also introduce some toxin or allergin that depresses haemopoietic function. However, in a small series of cases in which a large number of blood examinations and sternal punctures were done, we (Napier, Das Gupta and Majumdar, 1941) failed to see any evidence of the repressive effect on the bone marrow of the hypothetical toxin and we suggested that these few exceptions might be the result of malabsorption of some essential blood

forming element, as a result of course, of dysfunction caused by the hookworm infection

*The nature of the anæmia*—A more striking reduction in hæmoglobin can occur in hookworm disease than in any other disease of equal seriousness. The writer has seen tea estate coolies walking into the dispensary with a hæmoglobin percentage that was estimated by the tea estate doctor as 5 per cent on the Tallqvist scale. The blood that came out when one pricked the finger of such patients was a thin watery fluid which would not make a proper smear even on a scrupulously clean slide. The colour was in fact, well below the 10 per cent matching on the Tallqvist scale and by more accurate methods a figure of 1.5 grammes of hæmoglobin per 100 ccm of blood was not an unusual finding with 900 000 red cells per cmm and a packed cell volume of 6 per cent thus gives a mean corpuscular hæmoglobin (MCH) of 16.7, a mean corpuscular volume (MCV) of 66.7 cu  $\mu$  and a mean corpuscular hæmoglobin concentration (MCHC) of 25.0 per cent. It is thus a microcytic hypochromic anæmia. The picture is nearly always a microcytic hypochromic one, but of course the anæmia is not usually as extreme as in the example quoted.

There are usually a few normoblasts present and 2 to 5 per cent of reticulocytes, the van den Bergh reaction is negative.

There is often an increase in blood volume this compensates to some extent for the extreme anæmia and possibly explains why patients can live and even work with such low percentages of hæmoglobin. There is a decrease in the serum proteins and in both calcium and cholesterol.

*The white cell count*—The total count is usually between 5 000 and 10 000 per cmm. That is more or less normal but the eosinophil percentage is usually raised. An average count of 14 per cent is not unusual but in the very heavy infections the count is often within normal limits or eosinophils may even be absent.

*Gastric acidity*—There are conflicting statements in the literature on this subject. We found in a series of 28 Indians that the gastric acidity was normal or increased in 21 (or 75 per cent) and that the relation between the hookworm load and low gastric acidity was if anything a negative one but that there was some relation (though not a significant one) between gastric acidity and hæmoglobin percentage, suggesting that hookworm infection did not cause achlorhydria but that achlorhydria was possibly an independent contributory factor in the cause of anæmia. There were in this series only three cases of complete achlorhydria. Anti-anæmic treatment causes no striking improvement in the acidity.

*Fæces*—The stools are watery. As well as the ova which will be discussed below, there is nearly always occult blood.

#### DIAGNOSIS

*In the parenteral phases*—The diagnosis of the 'ground itch' would be difficult without the epidemiological background and the condition is likely to be confused with the secondary pyogenic invasions in tinea infections and of other skin conditions, but 'creeping eruption' produces a map-like effect on the skin that is very characteristic. *Gnathostoma spinigerum* and the larvae of the flies of the genus *Gasterophilus* may produce somewhat similar conditions. However both of these are more liable to cause deeper tunnelling and abscess formation though the diagnosis can only be made with certainty by the recovery and identification of the worm.

or the fly maggot from the lesions. There is little opportunity to make an accurate diagnosis at any other stage of the parenteral infection, although in a few cases larvae have been coughed up from the lung.

**In the intestinal phase**—The clinical picture of hookworm disease is a characteristic one and so also is the anaemia (*vide supra*) but it would not be justifiable to make a diagnosis without the confirmation of stool examination. The finding of hookworm ova in the stools is evidence of *hookworm infection*, but even when the ova occur in relatively large numbers and the patient is anæmic this is not necessarily evidence of *hookworm disease*, as the anaemia may have some other cause. Many populations have an infection rate of almost a hundred per cent without much morbidity directly due to the worms and great care must be taken to view these hookworm infections in their proper perspective and not attribute either too much or too little to them. In the early days several experienced investigators made serious mistakes in this direction (*e.g.* Giles in Assam attributed kala-azar to hookworm infection). In the absence of other obvious causes of illness and on the finding of perhaps a single egg it is often tempting to label a patient 'anelystomiasis', but this should not be done without first carrying out a very thorough investigation to exclude other causes and finally applying the therapeutic test. On the other hand light sporadic infections in some social groups in Europeans in India for example, may be responsible for mild but troublesome gastric intestinal disturbances such as continuous epigastric discomfort and they should not be ignored.

**Examination for ova**—It will be possible to make a diagnosis in any clinically significant infection and even a rough estimate of the hookworm load by a direct examination of a stool emulsion under the microscope but for recognizing very light (initial or residual) infections for example in testing the efficacy of a drug, concentration (*e.g.* floatation) methods should be used.

#### Technique

**Direct examination**—A small piece of stool is placed directly on a large microscopic slide 3 by 1½ inches a little saline sufficient to make a thin emulsion is added and a large coverslip 1½ by ¾ inches is placed over it. The whole portion under the coverslip is examined with a low power ½ objective and a no. 10 eyepiece. Periodically it may be necessary to bring the 1/6th objective into operation to identify some special object but the initial search for ova should be made with the low power lens. Three negative slides may be accepted as evidence that there is no clinically significant infection.

**Floatation methods**—A piece of stool about the size of half a walnut is placed in a round bottomed centrifuge tube. Tap water is added and the stool emulsified. The emulsion is now filtered through wet cheese-cloth (16-20 mesh) and then centrifuged at high speed for 70 seconds the supernatant fluid is poured off fresh water added and the centrifugation is repeated several times until the supernatant fluid is clear. A small amount of 33 per cent zinc sulphate solution (specific gravity 1.180) is now added to the sediment which is broken up with a glass rod and the tube is then filled almost to the top with zinc sulphate solution. It is again centrifuged for 70 seconds. A few more drops of solution are added very carefully with a pipette to fill the tube to the brim and make a meniscus and a coverslip is placed in contact with this meniscus. ova tend to adhere to the cover-glass. This is lifted off placed face downwards on a slide and examined for ova.

In the absence of a centrifuge the zinc sulphate solution can be added directly to the faeces mixed thoroughly and allowed to stand for a few minutes after which the floating ova are collected on a coverglass in the way described above.

Lane's direct centrifugal floatation method which entails the employment of a special apparatus is dependent on the same principle it is possibly the best method

for finding the last egg in a stool but the former of the methods described above falls very little short of Lane's method and is sufficiently accurate for all practical purposes

**Estimating the hookworm load**—The methods for doing this *before* treatment are necessarily rough, but it is generally considered that one female worm will pass enough eggs to represent 80 eggs per gramme of stool, and, on the assumption that the sexes are equally divided, this means that each 40 eggs per gramme represents one worm

We have adopted the principle of grouping hookworm loads as follows —

I Light load	= under 2000 eggs per gramme
II Moderate load	= over 2000 but under 10 000 eggs per gramme
III Heavy load	= over 10 000 but under 40 000 eggs per gramme
IV Very heavy load	= over 40 000 eggs per gramme

The last figure is equivalent to a load of 1,000 worms

*After treatment* the worms can be counted by collecting all the stools for 48 hours and washing them through a fine (1-mm mesh) copper sieve. The adult worms will be held back by the sieve and can be counted

There are several methods for estimating the number of ova, but the following modification of the original Stoll method is in the writer's experience the best —

**Technique**—A test tube of suitable size is marked at the 27 cm and the 30 cm levels. Decinormal sodium hydroxide is poured into the tube up to the 27 cm level and portions of stool added until the fluid reaches the 30 cm level. The contents of the test tube are now poured into a bottle containing glass beads and the test tube washed out thoroughly with a measured 60 ccm of  $\frac{N}{10}$  sodium hydroxide which is also added to the bottle. The final dilution of the stool is thus about 1 in 30. The bottle is corked and shaken thoroughly and if necessary left over night to ensure complete disintegration of solid faeces. With a measuring pipette exactly 0.15 ccm of emulsion is placed on a large slide and a large coverslip placed over it. The number of eggs on two such slides are counted. This figure multiplied by 100 gives the number of eggs per gramme of stool.

**Other diagnostic aids**—Instances have been reported in which, though no ova were found in the stools, adult worms were found post mortem. The usual explanation is that these have all been male worms. If this state of affairs is suspected, the therapeutic test and careful examination of the stools for adult worms should clear up the point.

The finding of an eosinophilia will naturally lead to a suspicion of some helminth infection but will be of no real diagnostic value, further, when the infection is a heavy one and the morbidity considerable, there will usually be no eosinophilia.

If the examination of the stool is delayed for any reason the ova may hatch into rhabditoid larvæ, and these will have to be differentiated from rhabditoid larvæ of *Strongyloides*. The most striking point of difference is the very short buccal cavity of the latter. In extreme cases, filariform larvæ may develop but the differentiation of these from the filariform larvæ of *Strongyloides* presents little difficulty as the latter have a notched tail that is quite characteristic.

#### PREVENTION

**Introduction**—It will first be necessary to make an accurate assessment of the problem to be faced. This will require a clinical survey of representative groups of the population, including at least some rough estima-

tion of hemoglobin, an examination of the stools, preferably of the same individuals, and an estimation of the percentage of infected persons and of the degree of their infection—a better evaluation of the latter will be obtained by classifying the population according to the number of ova they are passing (see p 621) than by working out an average for the whole number examined—and finally, if possible, an estimation of the infectivity of the soil\* in areas where most infections are thought to occur, this last investigation should be made at several different times of the year. These examinations will have to be repeated periodically to measure the success or failure of the procedure. (For short descriptions of the methods of stool examination see p 620.)

In order to obtain a view of the subject of prevention in proper perspective, it should be considered under two headings, namely, (I) the prevention of hookworm infection, and (II) the prevention of hookworm disease, despite the fact that there will be much overlapping in the two aims.

(I) **Prevention of infection**—The reader is asked to turn back to p 613 where the five essentials for hookworm infection are given, we will consider the subject under each of these five headings.

(a) Man is the sole reservoir of infection of the two important species so that effective anthelmintic treatment will have the double result of curing the individual and reducing the source of infection in the community.

(b) The circumstances are such that it is seldom that anything can be done to improve the terrain, but where the area is a very limited one as in mines, attempts have been made to reduce its suitability as a medium of infection by treatment with such substances as common salt.

(c) The proper disposal of human feces by installation of sanitary latrines, and the encouragement—or the enforcement—of their use by the whole population is the crux of the whole hookworm problem, and where this is possible all other preventive measures become subsidiary. This is not the place to discuss methods, which will naturally vary with the conditions. In some places in India, the bored-hole latrine has been a very useful solution, as the individual nature of this system obviates the prejudices that are entertained regarding the communal latrine. It is of the utmost importance that any scheme that is introduced should be easily workable and suited to the special circumstances, it must not be liable to break down, as an unsatisfactory latrine will do more harm than good. This aspect of prevention is so important that it must always be remem-

---

\* **Estimation of larvae in soil**—This is most easily accomplished by the Baermann technique which depends on the fact that larvae will migrate out of soil into warm water that comes in contact with the lower surface of this soil. The technique is described by Craig and Faust (1943) as follows—

The simple apparatus used consists of a glass filter funnel of 15 to 23 cm diameter (preferably ribbed) placed in a convenient rack or ring-stand and connected at its lower end with a short rubber tube provided with a pinch-cock. The soil sample to be tested is placed in a little basket made of 1 mm mesh bronze screening lined with cheese cloth. Luke warm water is placed in the funnel and its height so adjusted that the lower level of the soil will come in contact with the upper level of the water when the wire basket is set into the funnel. Within ten to fifteen minutes the nematode larvae in positive soils may be observed migrating down the stem of the funnel. The maximum yield takes place within the first hour after which the pinch-cock should be opened about 25 to 50 cc of water drawn off into a test tube the suspension centrifuged, the supernatant fluid pipetted off immediately and the sediment poured on to a slide for examination. The examiner needs considerable skill and experience to differentiate hookworm and *Strongyloides* larvae from nematodes free living in the soil.

bered that, whatever other measures are taken, the only enduring solution will be proper disposal of human excreta, the source of infection, and a beginning must be made to this end

Education and propaganda will play an important part in the prevention scheme, as not only has understanding to be imparted, interest aroused and ingrained habit broken but quite often active prejudice has to be overcome

Where human excreta is used for manure either septic tank treatment for a considerable time, at least 3 months in a temperate climate or six weeks in a tropical one, or some other means of 'sterilization' must be employed, e.g. the addition of lime to a dilution of 1 in 500 or mixture with litter to make a form of compost and burial in the earth which will raise the temperature sufficiently to destroy the eggs and larva. But this particular problem is a difficult one and has not yet been satisfactorily solved

(d) Climatic conditions are matters outside human control

(e) The wearing of good boots or shoes will decrease the chance of infection but not stop it completely. Unless this is an entirely foreign custom amongst the people the wearing of boots or shoes should be urged. Propaganda will again find an important place here

**II Prevention of hookworm disease**—It is again necessary to recapitulate. Certain facts must be remembered

(i) Hookworms do not undergo any multiplication within the body of the host, so that without re-infection there will be no increase in their number but in fact a relatively rapid reduction (placed at 70 per cent in the first year by some observers) will occur. If the infection is not to die out it will have to be repeatedly replenished. We thus have the equation

$$\text{hookworm load} = \frac{\text{the rate of acquisition of infection}}{\text{the rate of worm loss}}$$

(ii) The hookworm load at any particular moment will vary from one worm to several thousand and similarly the infection may be either sub-clinical or symptomatic, however the relation between these two facts is not a simple and direct one but morbidity is dependent also on the tolerance of the host or in other words

$$\text{morbidity} = \frac{\text{hookworm load}}{\text{host tolerance}}$$

(iii) Host tolerance is dependent on certain fixed factors such as age and race but it is also influenced considerably by a variable factor the diet of the host

The eventual aim of prevention is the reduction of hookworm morbidity in the population. It will be seen from the above equations that this can be done by

- (a) reducing the hookworm load or
- (b) increasing the tolerance of the hosts

The hookworm load can be reduced by

- (c) decreasing the rate of acquisition of infection or
- (d) increasing the rate of worm loss

We can achieve (c) mainly by improving environmental hygiene (*vide supra*) but there is some evidence, mostly on analogy with canine infection, that diet affects the rate of effective infection\* and (d) will be achieved by anthelmintics and to some extent possibly also by suitable dietary. The only practicable measure for achieving (b), increase in tolerance is also by dietary improvement

\* Referring to the number of worms that actually reach the bowel

Thus to summarize, hookworm morbidity can be reduced by —

- (i) Improvement in environmental hygiene (*sensu lato*)
- (ii) Anthelmintic treatment
- (iii) Improvement in diet

It must be quite obvious that if the rate of the acquisition of infection is sufficiently decreased by sanitary improvement or the rate of worm loss is sufficiently increased by mass treatment or both effects are brought about the degree of infection of the population will decline and the average hookworm load will decrease and eventually fall below the morbidity level if in addition the diet of the population is improved this end will be achieved at an earlier date. In this way the morbidity in the population may be reduced without achieving the ideal of a perfect sanitary system which in most cases will be impossible or the complete deworming of the community which in most cases will be impracticable. The great disadvantage of this method of approach is that continued vigilance to ensure that there is no dangerous increase in the hookworm infection in the population and usually periodic retreatment will be necessary.

**Policy**—There have in the past been two schools of thought. The more realistic school demanded a reduction in the hookworm morbidity on the lines indicated in the last paragraph success being measured by the reduction of this morbidity in the community. The idealistic school considered that the aim should be the removal of the last hookworm failure to achieve this being measured in terms of the number of infected persons left in the population.

We will consider the latter first. It is impossible to criticize the ideal but how far is the aim practicable? To achieve complete success not only the symptomatic cases but every member of the population who shows any hookworm infection must be treated (if he will consent). To ensure the removal of all the worms even by the most efficient method at least three treatments will be required in a large number of cases and an elaborate method of stool examination will be necessary to check the results. Further this whole process will usually have to be repeated at monthly intervals for a period of four months to catch all the fresh worms—those migrating in the tissues and those acquired from larvae surviving in the soil since the first mass treatment—before they can produce any eggs. Even then a few worms may escape and should complete success be achieved a casual visitor might reinfest the ground and start the whole infection cycle again. There might be occasions when in an isolated community such a measure would be both practicable and advisable but as a general rule complete success would be so improbable that it would be scarcely worth attempting.

The policy of the realistic school is the one now generally adopted. Complete treatment of the whole community is not usually attempted but treatment is concentrated on the members of the families or of the habit groups in which any cases of hookworm disease are found. One course of anthelmintic treatment is given to each member and medical treatment for the anaemia plus a second course of anthelmintics if necessary to those with clinical evidence of the disease. The most favourable time for giving such a course of treatment is during the period—when there is one—in which transmission does not occur *e.g.* in the southern states of America the temperature prevents transmission between November and March.

By this modification of the mass treatment programme much time consuming laboratory work is saved and the number of treatments given is

reduced very considerably, although it may be advisable to repeat the treatment every few years. It has been found that, if this procedure is combined with the provision of latrines, and the dissemination of propaganda regarding their proper use, a steady decline in morbidity will take place year by year.

In conclusion, it must be remembered that none of these measures mentioned above can be put into effective operation without explaining to the people the cause of the disease and the necessity for their whole-hearted cooperation, so that to the measures summarized on p. 624 must be added,

(iv) Education and propaganda

TREATMENT

This must be considered under the two major headings, (I) treatment of the parenteral infection, and (II) treatment of the intestinal infection; and the latter can be divided into (a) specific treatment and (b) general treatment.

I. The parenteral infection.—Except that in the case of 'creeping eruption' the larvæ of *Ancylostoma braziliense* may be destroyed in the skin by the application of carbon dioxide snow ('dry ice') or by the ethyl chloride spray, no method of affecting the larvæ before they reach the intestinal canal is known. Antiseptic lotions and dressings should be applied to the skin lesions to obviate or cure secondary infection.

II Intestinal infection.—(a) Specific.

Historical.—Prior to about 1917, chloroform, beta-naphthol, and thymol were the principal drugs used, of these thymol was undoubtedly the best. A dose of sixty grains was given to an adult, usually in divided doses, there were often unpleasant bye-effects which might be serious if alcohol were taken. Three treatments at least were usually required to reduce the worm load to a negligible level. Thymol is a relatively expensive drug and, as cheaper, safer, and more effective drugs have since been introduced, it only deserves mention in an historical section.

Chloroform and oil of eucalyptus was the standard treatment for this and other helminth infections in the early days of the century and deserves honourable mention, whereas beta-naphthol is quite useless in safe doses, and it is difficult to see why it was ever advocated.

In 1915, Victor Heiser used oil of chenopodium in over 10 000 cases 'with success and no bad results'. This drug, that had been first suggested by Schuffner and Vervoort in 1900, depends for its efficacy and its toxicity on its ascaridole content, this unfortunately varied in different samples so that in different workers' hands results were not uniform, and dangerous bye effects, including some deaths, resulted in a few cases. It is now a standardized pharmacopœial drug and is very useful in mixed ascari and hookworm infections, when it is combined with carbon tetrachloride or tetrachlorethylene, but given alone for hookworm infection its effective dose (3 ccm for adults) is dangerously near its toxic dose, so that it has been superseded except for mixed infections.

In 1922, Leach used carbon tetrachloride in man a drug that had been used successfully in dogs by Hall, and it was later used in hundreds of thousands of human cases without apparently causing any ill-effects. At this time it was by far the most effective drug. It was shown experimentally, however, to have a very damaging effect on the liver cells and several cases where this followed therapeutic doses were reported. Further, if any alcohol was taken immediately before or shortly after the carbon tetrachloride, the liver damage was likely to be extensive, and several groups of fatalities amongst subjects of mass treatment were reported. Such incidents had a very serious effect on treatment campaigns and this drug fell into disfavour for this purpose, although it was still used extensively, and still is for the treatment of such patients under hospital discipline. A safe dose for an adult is 3 ccm, and for children 0.2 ccm for each year of age. It is given in the same way as tetrachlorethylene (*vide infra*), but special emphasis must be placed on the dangers of taking alcohol, before or after.



In 1925 tetrachlorethylene was introduced. It appeared too late to be used in the extensive Rockefeller Foundation treatment campaigns so that it was slow in receiving the recognition that it deserves. However it has now been used in probably a million or more cases and only very few ill-effects and no fatalities have been reported. A single treatment may be expected to remove 99 per cent of *Uncinaria americana* and 95 per cent of *Ancylostoma duodenale*.

Tetrachlorethylene ( $\text{C}_2\text{Cl}_4$ ) is undoubtedly the drug of choice. It is best given in the form of a suspension in saturated sodium sulphate, 4 c cm of tetrachlorethylene is shaken vigorously in a stoppered bottle containing two ounces of saturated solution of sodium sulphate and then taken by the patient before it has time to settle.

The dose for children is 0.2 c cm for each year of age. The drug should be taken early in the day on an empty stomach. Some workers advocate the giving of an ounce of sodium sulphate in half a glass of water the night before the anthelmintic, but there may be administrative difficulties about this and Maplesone considers it unnecessary.

The only ill effects are a slight sensation of giddiness and in some cases exhalation as occurs after taking alcohol. The treatment may be repeated in a week's time if necessary.

If there is a mixed nematode and hookworm infection, oil of chenopodium 1 c cm, should be added to the tetrachlorethylene under the same routine.

Hexylresorcinol (1,3 dihydroxy-4-hexylbenzol), although slightly less efficacious than tetrachlorethylene, has a special use in seriously debilitated patients. It is the least toxic of the anthelmintics in general use, it is given in one gramme doses, in five hard gelatin capsules containing 0.2 gramme each. The dose for children under 6 years is three capsules (0.6 g) and for older children 4 capsules, (0.8 g). The capsules, which must be swallowed and not bitten or a local irritation will be caused, are taken on an empty stomach and are followed by a sodium sulphate purgative. Under no conditions should oil or alcohol be taken in conjunction with this drug. The drug may be repeated if necessary after an interval of three days.

**Checking results of treatment**—If this is to be done accurately the stools must be screened for deworming (vide supra), but for mass treatment it will seldom be possible to do anything more than examine the stools for ova. This should be postponed until about the seventh day after treatment, as otherwise eggs passed by worms before the treatment was given may be encountered and vitiate conclusions. If there are still more than 200 eggs per gramme, the treatment should be repeated.

(b) **General**—Malnutrition is a common accompaniment of hookworm infection and whenever possible a general dietary improvement should be instituted. An increase in the intake of both iron and protein is particularly indicated, however, the improvement in the anaemia need not be unnecessarily delayed by relying on dietary iron but medicinal iron should be given whenever necessary. It has repeatedly been shown that anthelmintic treatment without iron administration will effect little if any immediate improvement in the anaemia (see figure 152), but on the other hand, as has been indicated above in many cases it is possible to bring the blood level up to normal by iron administration alone and to very anaemic patients it is preferable to give one course of iron prior to the administration of the anthelmintic, to be followed by a second course of iron, if necessary, after the deworming (see figure 153).

Iron can be given conveniently in the form of ferrous sulphate tablets grs vi, three times a day for 21 days, a total dose of 378 grains, or better

still in a mixture. For the mixture 12 grams of ferrous ammonium sulphate ( $\text{FeSO}_4 \cdot (\text{NH}_4)_2 \text{SO}_4 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), in half an ounce of dextrose, is taken three times a day for 21 days. The iron content of the mixture is a little less than that of the tablets even though the dose of the salt is doubled but none the less the response to the mixture is usually more rapid. Two

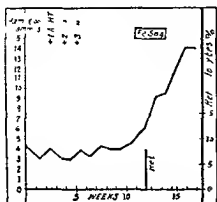


Figure 152 Showing absence of effect on haemoglobin level of three doses of 3 ccm of  $\text{CcCl}$  + 1 ccm oil of eucalyptus within a period of 8 weeks and immediate effect 18 grains of ferrous sulphate daily

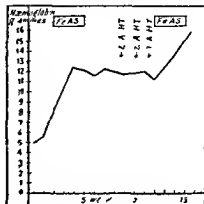


Figure 153 Showing the immediate effect of 18 grains of ferrous ammonium sulphate daily before deworming

21 day courses of iron are usually sufficient to bring the haemoglobin to normal even in the most severely anæmic cases the result of treatment should be checked by blood examination.

The writer questions whether it is ever necessary or even advantageous to give a blood transfusion in an ordinary case of hookworm infection however severe the anæmia, in view of the extremely rapid response to iron that can be expected but in the special case e.g. of the pregnant woman who is nearing full term this will perhaps be indicated.

#### PROGNOSIS

From the public health point of view the chances of ridding a population of hookworm infection will depend on how much sanitation it will be possible to install if money is the limiting factor, or on how much the population can be induced to take advantage of the sanitary conveniences installed if ignorance and custom religious or otherwise are the main handicaps against which one has to work. In most countries where a determined effort has been made to improve sanitation, the hookworm position has improved automatically within five or six years where this has been combined with treatment campaigns very appreciable improvement has occurred within two or three years.

If in the individual case anthelmintic treatment alone is given without at the same time any improvement being effected in the diet it will take six months or more before there is any striking improvement in health but if, in addition to the anthelmintic treatment a better diet and medicinal iron are given even the most anæmic patient may be restored to good health within as short a time as a month.

Unless the patient is first seen in *extremis* death should never occur in an uncomplicated case of ancylostomiasis, but in the very anæmic patient treatment for the næmia should be given first.

The pregnant woman, however, with severe ancylostomiasis often fails to survive parturition. On the other hand, if the næmia is solely due to the ancylostome infection and is therefore an iron deficiency anæmia, the chances of survival of that inexorable parasite, the foetus who appropriates all the iron it requires, are good (Napier and Edwards, 1941).

### STRONGYLOIDIASIS

**Introduction**—It may be said of this infection that clinicians tend to pay it too little and helminthologists too much attention in proportion to the pathogenic proclivities of the parasite and the extent of its incidence. The explanation for the attitude of the latter is not difficult, this worm has a complicated and variable life cycle, unique in helminthic infections that includes an extensive sojourn in the human tissues that might reasonably be expected to call forth considerable tissue reaction. On the other hand there is little doubt that while serious infections are common enough to make the dismissal 'pathogenicity doubtful' of some textbooks quite unjustifiable, the total amount of morbidity and mortality that this worm produces, directly or indirectly, throughout the world, is infinitesimal compared with that caused by the hookworm.

**Geographical distribution**—This is world-wide, but mainly tropical and the infection is particularly associated with the more humid tropical areas. It is obviously far more common in the southern states of North America and in South America than in the tropical areas of the eastern hemisphere (Faust, 1936). It is relatively uncommon in China and in India although in the latter the writer has seen a number of instances of this infection in which there was some degree of associated morbidity.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The conditions which favour this infection are roughly those which favour hookworm infection, although there are obviously certain differences in the factors concerned, for there is certainly no parallelism in the intensity of the infections by these two worms in different parts of the endemic areas.

There is a distinct male predominance amongst the persons infected and the age groups with the heaviest infection rates are in the second decade.

The incidence is often high in institutions, such as mental hospitals.

### ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal organism**—The stages through which the worm passes are as follows.

**The egg**—This is fully embryonated on discharge from the uterus; it is deposited in the tissues in the parasitic phase and is seldom seen except in experimental infections. It has a thin transparent shell, is ovoid in shape, and measures about 54 by 32 microns.

**The rhabditoid larva**—This develops from the egg in the tissues, reaches the lumen of the gut, and is passed usually as such in the faeces.



Or if conditions are optimal then the rhabditoid larvæ feed pass through one moult, feed again, and develop into free living adults. These mate, the female lays eggs which develop into rhabditoid larvæ in the soil and the free-living cycle is repeated probably an infinite number of times as long as conditions remain favourable, but, when they cease to be so the rhabditoid larvæ develop into filariform larvæ which though they will survive as such in the soil for many months are immediately infective and capable of entering another human host to complete the indirect parasite cycle.

This does not exhaust the possible cycles, but we must go back to the rhabditoid larvæ in the intestinal lumen. Instead of passing on to the soil with the stool these may adhere to the skin or the hairs around the anus and there develop into filariform larvæ which immediately re-enter the skin of the host and recommence the cycle. Or the rhabditoid larvæ may not pass out of the intestinal canal at all, but develop into filariform larvæ usually the dwarf forms referred to above, and penetrate the bowel wall to reach the blood and recommence their cycle. The former of these last two cycles was described by Fulleborn and called by him 'auto-infection' and the latter by Faust, who called it 'hyperinfection'.

Thus to summarize, there are four parasitic cycles: (a) endo-auto-infection (Faust's hyperinfection), (b) exo-auto-infection (Fulleborn's auto-infection), (c) direct (comparable to that of the hookworm) and (d) indirect in which the free living cycle is interposed (see figure 154).

**Discussion**—The practical significance of the auto-infection cycles is that an individual can apparently retain the infection almost indefinitely without renewing it from outside. The auto-infection cycles are nowhere common but are more important in temperate climates where both conditions for the survival and opportunities for the re-entry of the parasite are unfavourable, but they are believed not to be confined to these climates as was at one time supposed. The free living cycle makes it possible for sporadic infection of man to occur without recent contamination of the soil and should, theoretically at least, make prevention more difficult. Another point of difference between strongyloidosis and ancylostomiasis is that nail infection is apparently achieved more easily in the former, so that an infection can be initiated under conditions which would preclude entry through the skin of the feet or hands.

**Contributory factors in determining morbidity**—There is considerable evidence that diet is a very important factor in determining pathogenicity in this infection both in the population and in the individual. In children who are malnourished and/or debilitated as a result of disease the adult and larval worms appear to be able to burrow much more deeply into their tissues and cause more serious damage.

#### PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

As in the case of hookworm infection this worm produces pathogenic lesions commonly at three points on its course: (a) in the skin at the point of entry, (b) in the lungs and (c) in the intestinal mucosa, and rarely in the bronchi and trachea.

\*The word 'hyperinfection' seems a most unfortunate choice for this cycle. The word is well established in medical language as meaning a very intense infection. This cycle is certainly auto-infection but if it is desirable to differentiate it from Fulleborn's auto-infection—and from a practical point of view it is questionable whether it is necessary—then the words 'exo-auto-infection' might be used for the Fulleborn cycle and 'endo-auto-infection' for the Faust cycle.

(a) *The skin*—Here the *filariiform* larvæ may produce petechial hæmorrhages at their points of entry. The site later becomes very irritating and there may be a localized œdema.

(b) *The respiratory tract*—Hæmorrhages may be caused in the lung and these may be associated with a cellular exudate into the alveoli. This frequently causes a cough during which blood stained sputum containing larvæ may be brought up and after heavy infections an atypical pneumonia may occur. Occasionally the worms mature in the lungs and invade the columnar epithelium of the bronchi and trachea causing a local exudate. The respiratory lesions and symptoms are likely to be greater in this infection than in *ancylostomiasis*.

(c) *The intestinal tract*—The adult females invade the mucosa as deep as the muscularis mucosæ and cause desquamation and occasionally sloughing of the mucous membrane with abdominal discomfort or pain sometimes a frank dysentery but more usually a profuse watery diarrhoea or diarrhoea alternating with constipation loss of weight and indigestion. The infection is often associated with insomnia restlessness and depression.

*The blood picture*—There is usually a slight leucocytosis with an 8 to 10 per cent eosinophilia at first and later a leucopenia. There may be some slight degree of anæmia usually of the macrocytic nutritional type.

#### DIAGNOSIS

This can be made by finding the larvæ in the stools. Concentration of the stool will facilitate this. The larvæ appear in the stools intermittently and therefore no importance should be attached to a single or even several negative findings. Further the larvæ may die and be digested during their relatively long journey down the intestinal canal thus in a case in which the infection is strongly suspected some workers recommend that a duodenal aspiration should be done. Or the larvæ may be coughed up in the sputum.

The larvæ must be differentiated from the hookworm larvæ the main point of difference is the shallow buccal cavity in the strongyloides rhabditoid larva and the notched tail in the filariiform larva (*vide supra*).

#### PREVENTION

The main measures to be adopted are those employed against hookworm infection (*quod vide*). In addition the existence of this infection in an institution suggests the need for all round improvement in sanitation a higher standard of personal cleanliness and greater care in the preparation of food. Uncooked vegetables and contaminated water supplies are important sources of infection that can usually be obviated.

Improvement in the diet of an infected population or individual will help to prevent the more serious results of infection.

#### TREATMENT

This has been very disappointing as none of the anthelmintics that have been so successful in the treatment of *ancylostomiasis* have proved of any value in this infection. Gentian violet is considered the only specific but this has not been successful in the hands of all workers in some cases this was possibly because they did not adopt the right technique, but there is evidence of a variable resistance to treatment. Experiments have shown that this drug will penetrate at least as far as the muscularis mucosæ.

The most efficient method of administration is by intubation of the duodenum, into which 25 ccm of a 1 per cent dilution of *medicol* gentian violet is given in one dose, this can be repeated after a few weeks, if the infection is not eradicated

The alternative, simpler, and almost equally efficacious method is to give gentian violet in the form of 1½-hour enteric-coated tablets (Eli Lilly's Enseals). The ordinary dosage is one grain (two tablets) three times daily, one hour before meals, for 17 days, an approximate total of fifty grains. Adult doses are given to older children weighing over 100 pounds, one grain twice daily to children between 75 to 100 pounds and half a grain thrice daily to those between 50 and 75 pounds

Dr J S D'Antoni (personal communication) recommends a concentrated 4 day treatment, in which he gives two ½-grain tablets thrice daily before meals on the first day, three on the second day, four on the third, and five on the fourth, a total of 21 grains

For parenteral infections, e.g. lung, up to 25 ccm of 0.5 per cent aqueous solution of gentian violet given intravenously on alternate days for five doses is recommended

This drug may cause nausea and abdominal discomfort in certain individuals, but as it is the only drug known to be of any value, it should be persevered with, if possible. After administration of an efficient course of gentian violet, larvæ may be found in the stools for several weeks before finally disappearing, which seems to indicate that the drug does not destroy the eggs

### TRICHOSTRONGYLIASIS

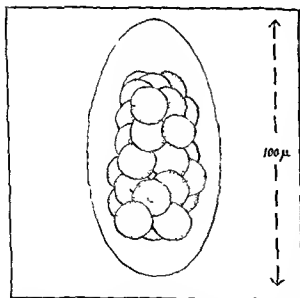


Figure 155 The egg of *Trichostrongylus orientalis*

Several species of the genus *Trichostrongylus* parasitize man, but most of them are the normal parasites of other mammals and only incidentally infect man. One species, *Trichostrongylus orientalis*, has been found in man more than twenty times by one observer (Jimbo, 1914) and is believed to be mainly, if not entirely, confined to man

These worms occur in many countries in the world from the tropics to Siberia, and their life cycle is apparently very similar to that of the *ancylostomes*, so that they are likely to be found in the same individuals. How-

ever, they also gain entrance by the ingestion of uncooked vegetables

The adults are found with their heads buried in the mucous membrane of the small intestine. They can suck blood and there is usually hyperæmia surrounding their points of puncture which suggests that they may inject some toxic substances and/or allow the entry of septic organisms. In cases with heavy infections emaciation and noxia have been attributed to the worms but they are evidently not more than low-grade pathogens and their importance in medicine rests almost entirely on the fact that it is easy for the unexperienced to mistake their eggs for those of the hookworm.

Further, they are very resistant to treatment and Maplestone (1941) complains that several patients sent to him as suffering from treatment-resistant hookworm infections have turned out to be infected with *Trichostrongylus*. However, the usual course of treatment for hookworm infection (*quod vide*) is the only one known to be at all effective.

**Identification of the ova**—Compared with hookworm ova these ova are larger and more characteristically egg shaped, that is pointed at one end and there is a much larger clear area usually at both poles. Maplestone (*loc cit*) gives the average measurements as 89 by 48 microns compared with 62 by 41 microns for hookworm eggs.

The ova usually hatch within twenty-four hours under favourable conditions, producing pseudo-rhabditoid larvae that differ mainly from hookworm larvae in that the musculature of the  $\alpha$ -opliagus is not well developed and although present the posterior bulbous portion is not clearly seen as in the true rhabditoid larva of the hookworm.

#### REFERENCES

- ANDREWS J. L. (1912) Modern views on the Treatment and Prevention of Hookworm Disease. *Annals of Internal Medicine* 17, 891.
- ASHFORD H. K., PAYNE G. C. and LAYNE, F. (1933) The larval phase of uncinariasis. *The Puerto Rico J. of Pub Health and Trop. Med.* 9, 97.
- CHANDLER A. C. (1927) The Prevalence and Epidemiology of Hookworm and other Helminthic Infections in India. *Indian J. Med Res.* 15, 695.
- FALAT J. (1936) Strongyloides and Strongyloidiasis. *Rev. de Parasitol.* 2, 315.
- HENIG ROBERT (1942) The pathological heart conditions in hookworm disease and their causes. *Indian Med Gaz.* 77, 257.
- JIMBO K. (1914) Ueber eine neue Art von *Trichostrongylus* aus dem Darne des Menschen in Japan (*Trichostrongylus orientalis* n.sp.). *Annot. Zool. Japon.* 8, 459.
- MAPLESTONE P. A. (1932) Further observations on the seasonal variation of hookworm infection. *Indian J. Med Res.* 19, 1145.
- (1941) *Trichostrongylus* infection in Man. *Indian Med Gaz.* 76, 710.
- NAPIER I. F. and DAS GUPTA C. R. (1937) Hematological Studies in Indians. *Indian J. Med Res.* 24, 835.
- NAPIER L. E., DAS GUPTA C. R. and MAJUMDAR D. N. (1941) The Treatment of Hookworm Anæmia. *Indian Med Gaz.* 76, 1.
- NAPIER L. E. and EDWARDS M. I. N. (1941) Anæmia in Pregnancy in Calcutta. *Indian Med Res. Mem.*, No 33. Thacker Spink & Co Calcutta.
- OTTO G. F. and KERR K. B. (1939) Immunization of Dogs against Hookworm *Ancylostoma caninum* by Subcutaneous Injections of graded Doses of Living Larvæ. *Amer. J. Hyg.* 29, 825.



# TAPEWORM INFECTIONS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	634
LARGE TAPEWORMS	
Geographical distribution	635
ÆTIOLOGY	635
The parasites	635
Life cycles	635
<i>Tænia saginata</i> — <i>Tænia solium</i> — <i>Diphyllobothrium latum</i>	
EPIDEMIOLOGY	637
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY	637
The adult worms	638
The cysticerci of <i>T. solium</i>	638
DIAGNOSIS	639
PREVENTION	640
<i>Cysticercosis cellulosa</i>	640
TREATMENT	640
PROGNOSIS	641
DWARF TAPEWORMS	
Geographical distribution	642
ÆTIOLOGY	642
Life cycles and morphology	642
<i>H. nana</i> — <i>H. diminuta</i>	
EPIDEMIOLOGY	643
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY	643
DIAGNOSIS	643
PREVENTION	643
TREATMENT	644

**Introduction**—There are three important large intestinal tapeworms that infect man namely

*Tænia saginata* Goeze, 1782, the beef tapeworm,  
*Tænia solium* Linnæus 1758 the pig tapeworm and

*Diphyllobothrium latum* (Linnaeus, 1758) In the 1910 the fish tapeworm

and two dwarf tapeworms

*Hymenolepis nana* (v. Siebold, 1852) Blanchard 1891

*Hymenolepis diminuta* (Rudolph, 1819) Blanchard 1891

## LARGE TAPEWORMS

**Geographical distribution**—None of these infections is tropical in its distribution. As, however, they depend for their distribution upon the eating habits of the people in the various countries and as the control of meat supplies is more lax in tropical countries the meat eating sojourner is perhaps more likely to contract an infection with either the pig or the beef tapeworm in a tropical country than in the United States or in any of the western European countries. In eastern Europe the pig tapeworm especially is relatively common.

The fish tapeworm on the other hand is rare in the tropics and occurs in the Baltic countries, northern Italy and Switzerland in the Danube delta in Palestine, in Siberia Manchuria and Japan in some places in the northern states of America and in Canada and sporadically elsewhere. In the last-named countries the foci of infection are mostly on the shores of the great lakes where the infection was probably introduced by Scandinavian immigrants but recently a focus has been found in Florida.

## ETIOLOGY

**The parasites**—The tapeworms are flat hermaphroditic worms consisting of—(i) a scolex the so called head which is an attachment organ (ii) the neck which is narrow and formed by a number of undifferentiated proglottids (iii) a short section of differentiated but immature proglottids or segments in which the male and female sex organs are present,

(iv) a long section of mature proglottids and finally (v) the gravid proglottids. These worms have no digestive tracts but absorb nutrition from their environment in the gastro-intestinal tract of their hosts. The life cycles of the different species vary so much that it will be necessary to describe them separately.

## Life Cycles

***Taenia saginata***—Man is the only important definitive host, he passes the proglottids in his feces, and when these disintegrate the ova which are

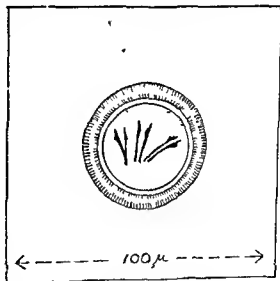


Figure 156 The egg of *Taenia saginata* that of *T. solium* is identical

spherical, 30 to 40 microns in diameter, have a thick shell and contain an onchosphere with three pairs of hooks, are set free. These are ingested by cattle in whose gut (duodenum) onchospheres emerge and penetrate the bowel mucous membrane, reach the systemic circulation and are filtered out in the muscles. Here they develop into cysticerci in about 60 days. These cysticerci which are white oval bodies, 7 to 10 by 4 to 6 mm, are the infective form for man who ingests them in raw or under-cooked meat. From the cysticerci the worm develops, attaches itself to the small intestinal mucosa, and proceeds to grow into a mature worm, measuring from 4 to 10 metres with as many as 2 000 segments, in about three months. Gravid proglottids now begin to drop off one by one, pass out of the anal orifice under their own power or in the faeces, and the cycle is complete.

*Tania solium*.—The cycle of this tapeworm is similar to the above, with the pig replacing cattle as the usual intermediate host. However,

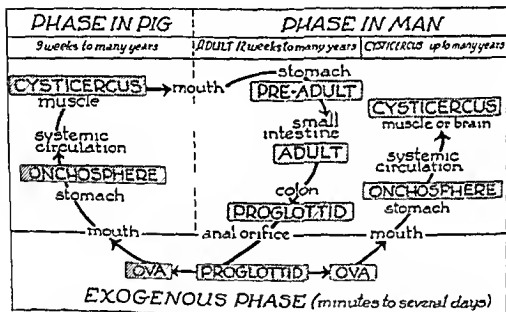


Figure 157 The life cycle of *Tania solium*. (The possible endo-auto-infection is not shown in this diagram.)

an alternative route is provided by the fact that man may also function as an intermediate host. If the eggs are ingested by man, from another host, by oral re-infection from the proglottids of his own adult worm, or by proglottids or eggs reach the stomach where the covering is digested off and the onchospheres emerge, penetrate the intestinal mucosa, and, reaching almost any part of the body via the blood, develop into cysticerci (see figure 157). From this point the cycle could only be continued by cannibalism.

*Dipyllobothrium latum*.—There are many definitive hosts of this worm other than man—the domestic pig, the domestic dog and cat and other canines and felines, walruses, seals, sea-lions, minks and bears. The eggs, which are golden-brown in colour, ovoid, 45 by 70 microns, contain immature larvæ within a thin shell, and have an opening at one pole covered by a cap, are passed in the faeces (figure 158). In water these mature within fifteen days and the embryos (coraedia) emerge, these are

act as toxins or allergins. Rare instances of the scolices having penetrated the intestinal wall and caused peritonitis have been reported. And finally the cysticerci of *T. solium* may develop in man as they do in the usual intermediate host in any tissue or organ of the body. As the pathogenesis and symptoms produced by each of the two stages of the worm are of an entirely different order from those produced by the other it will be advisable to describe them separately.

**The adult worms.**—The symptoms produced are irregular and ill-defined. Loss of weight, indigestion and general abdominal discomfort, and in allergic individuals periodic diarrhoea may occur. All somatic symptoms may be absent especially in *T. saginata* infection but the host may be reduced to a state of neurasthenia by knowledge of the presence of the worm and by the embarrassment caused by the emerging segments, which may appear at unexpected moments on the host's stockings or shoes. In *D. latum* infection however there is in certain cases evidence of some intoxication produced by the metabolites of the worm. A macrocytic anaemia of the pernicious anaemia type has for many decades been associated with this infection. Although the work of Birkeland (1932) seemed to cast doubts on the causal relationship between the infection and the pernicious anaemia that is very prevalent among Finnish nationals, more recent work seems to support the suggestion that the worms' metabolites, which are of the nature of unsaturated fatty acids, are capable of producing anaemia (Wardle and Green 1941). Anaemia has not been reported in Canadian and North American cases.

**The cysticerci of *T. solium*.**—The oncho-spheres having reached the blood stream migrate into the tissues in any part of the body, but appear to have a preference for the brain, the muscles and the subcutaneous tissues. Here they give rise to a tissue reaction and are eventually surrounded by a fibrous capsule of host origin. Within this rigid host capsule the cysticercus continues to develop, the parasitic wall of the cyst becomes folded upon itself and in some cases produces a relatively large, 0.5 to 1 centimetre racemose cystic growth. There is apparently a stage at which a balance between host and parasite is reached and no further development takes place for several years but when the parasite dies this symbiosis is disturbed, the capsule becomes permeable and fluid enters and toxin escapes so that there is renewed tissue reaction and an increase in the size of the parasitic mass at least temporarily. Later there is either calcification or the foreign body is partly or completely removed. The life of the cysticercus is probably very variable but it is probable that they live for at least three years and after their death at least another three years elapses before they become calcified.

The symptoms depend on the site in which the cysticerci are located and of course on the number present. A heavy invasion may be associated with pyrexia, other general symptoms of a toxæmic nature and pressure symptoms if vital tissue is involved. Generally however the symptoms are postponed until the worm dies when further pressure and toxæmic symptoms may appear. The symptoms associated with the foreign body effect of the cysticercus in the tissues frequently do not develop until the worm is dead and calcification has occurred.

The sites where they are most usually reported are (1) in the subcutaneous tissues where they form lumps that are clinically recognized, (2) in the brain where they produce a number of symptoms from mild mental changes such as deterioration of memory to Jacksonian epilepsy and total

mental degeneration, and are recognized by x-ray examination, (iii) in the eyes where they may actually be seen in the anterior or posterior chamber, (iv) and in other tissues, such as the muscles, they may be recognized accidentally during x-ray examinations or post mortem.

There have been reported several instances of the similar development in man of the plerocercoid (sparganum) larval form of *Bothriocephaloidea*, probably not of the species *Diphyllobothrium latum*, but of other species such as those that live in lower vertebrates, these may produce mild or severe symptoms according to the site in which they develop. The condition is sometimes known as 'sparganosis'.

### DIAGNOSIS

In tapeworm infections this will usually depend in the finding of the proglottids in the stools, or on their presence being reported by patients and in *D. latum* infection by the finding of the eggs in the stools.

In *T. solium* and *T. saginata* infections, eggs will occasionally be found in the stools, but this finding must not be expected. The eggs are practically identical and for differentiation one must rely on examination of the mature or gravid proglottids. This can be done by flattening them out on a slide, placing a cover-slip over them, examining the uterus, and counting its primary lateral branches; in *T. solium* there are 7 to 13 primary branches and in *T. saginata* 15 to 20 (figure 159).

After unsuccessful treatment that leaves the scolex *in situ*, proglottids will usually reappear in the stools within three months.

On the other hand, the eggs of *D. latum* may be found in the stools but a number of examinations will have to be carried out before a negative diagnosis can be made as they are extruded by the worm intermittently. In this infection, proglottids are not usually found in the stools in an untreated case, they are quite distinct from the other two being much shorter and broader and having an almost stellate uterus.

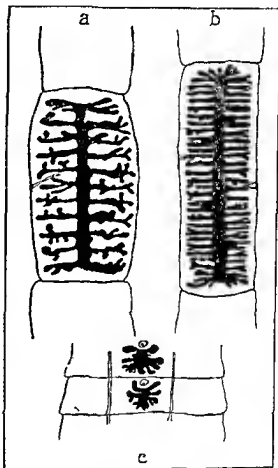


Figure 159 Tapeworm proglottids

a *T. solium*

b *T. saginata*

c *Diphyllobothrium latum*

The presence of *cysticerci* may be diagnosed by the palpation and/or removal of the tumours in the subcutaneous tissue or muscles, by the symptoms they produce, when they occur in vital tissues or by x-ray examination. The x-ray examination requires special experience, the exposure should be that given for bone visualization with a slight under-exposure. The opacity may be produced by a calcified scolex one millimetre in diameter or by a fully developed *cysticercus* as large as two centimetres in length. It will seldom be worth taking a skiagram within 6 years of the probable time of infection.

It has been said that whenever epileptic fits occur in an adult without a history of injury or a family history of epilepsy *cysticercosis* should always be suspected.

### PREVENTION

If the beef, pork, and fish are properly cooked the *cysticerci* will be destroyed (65.5° C is lethal) and direct personal prophylaxis achieved.

As a measure of general prophylaxis, in most countries meat is inspected. In the United States, two thirds of the beef that is consumed by the public is inspected. In 1930, 0.37 per cent of carcasses were found infected and were condemned, the figure has improved in recent years. Pork is similarly inspected and 'measly pork' discarded.

It is possible to go one stage further back in the matter of prophylaxis and to prevent cattle from grazing on pasture contaminated with human faeces, or pigs from eating human faeces. Regulations to achieve this will be difficult to enforce, but if meat and pork are inspected frequently and when found infected condemned, and the cause of their meat becoming infected is explained to farmers, the economic aspect will probably appeal to the cattle and pig raisers in the sanitary advanced western countries and they will take the necessary steps. However, in eastern Europe, and in Asia where pigs and cattle are allowed to roam freely, the prevention will be much more difficult.

In the case of *D. latum* though there are many other definitive hosts, man is believed to be the most important and the prevention of the sewage contamination of water where edible fish are caught will be an effective preventive measure.

*Cysticercosis cellulosa* is prevented by the immediate and thorough treatment of all infected individuals and by observation of rigid personal hygiene, especially by those who know that they are infected. In certain circumstances, isolation of the infected individual would be justifiable.

### TREATMENT

Male fern has been the specific for this infection for many years but some improvement has been effected recently in the preparation, the standardization, and the method of administration of this drug.

An unopened bottle of the oleo resin of *Aspidium filix-mas*, or better still gelatin capsules containing 10 or 20 minims each of this drug are obtained. The patient is given two ounces of saturated sodium sulphate solution at night and next morning on an empty stomach at 7.00, 7.30 and again at 8.00 a.m. (or earlier if convenient) one 20 minim capsule (or two 10 minim capsules), that is, a total dose of 60 minims. Two hours later, a second saline purge is given and food is withheld until the patient has passed a copious stool, which will contain the whole or most of the worm.

always be guarded, as localization in the brain is very common, and may not become evident for many years.

Generally, the prognosis in *D. latum* infection is also good, and even the severe anemia that develops in some subjects is easily curable, at least in those who have no background of pernicious anemia.

## THE DWARF TAPEWORMS

**Geographical distribution.**—Both these tapeworms are cosmopolitan in their distribution, but *Hymenolepis nana* shows a patchy distribution, with here and there hyper-

endemic areas, e.g. in India and Argentina, for which there is no obvious explanation. *H. diminuta*, of which the rat is the true definitive host, has been reported in man, mainly in India, Russia, Japan, Italy, and the southern United States.

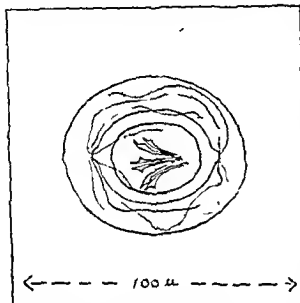


Figure 160 The egg of *Hymenolepis nana*

inner shell with small projections at the poles from each of which arise 4 to 8 filaments, and they contain an onchosphere with three pairs of hooklets (figure 160).

An egg is ingested by man, and after passage through the stomach the onchosphere emerges and penetrates a villus in the small intestine where it develops into a cysticercus, after about 5 or 6 days, this larva migrates into the lumen, attaches itself by its scolex to the mucous membrane, and develops into an adult (25 to 40 mm in length with a maximum breadth of 1 mm). From the time of ingestion of the egg, the adult worm becomes mature in about two weeks, and when it is mature the terminal proglottid disintegrates and releases about 180 eggs into the intestinal canal. Normally, these are passed out with the stools and the cycle is completed, but there is strong evidence that they may hatch in the intestinal canal (whether for this to occur it is necessary for them to be returned to the stomach by reverse peristalsis is not clear), and by a process of endo-auto-infection again go through the whole developmental cycle in the same individual. Reinfection by the external route also occurs.

***H. diminuta*.**—The egg is similar to that of *H. nana*, it is subspherical, 60 to 80 by 72 to 86 microns, but has a slightly thicker outer covering and no filaments between the two membranes (figure 161).

## ÆTIOLOGY

Both dwarf tapeworms have the same general morphological characters as the large tapeworms.

**Life cycles and morphology.** *H. nana*.—The eggs are sub-spherical, 30 to 45 microns in diameter, they have an outer vitelline membranous covering and an

The egg is ingested by an arthropod intermediate host (a large variety, from grain moths, earwigs, cockroaches and millepedes to flea larvae, have been incriminated) where it develops into an onchosphere, and finally a cysticercus; in due course the arthropod is ingested by man or other definitive hosts e.g. rodents, in whose intestine it develops into the adult worm (20 to 60 cm in length with a maximum breadth of 4 mm). The mature terminal proglottids disintegrate and release the eggs which are passed out with the stools.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Man is probably the only important source of *H. nana* infection; it usually is a family, household or institutional infection. Children show the highest incidence. In the United States eggs are found in about one per cent of all stool specimens; in Ceylon a slightly higher infection rate was found, and in Argentina a 9 per cent infection rate amongst a group of children has been reported.

*H. diminuta* is relatively rare and is usually associated with low sanitary standards where murine parasites and other arthropods may be accidentally consumed with food. Infection has occurred through the consumption of insects infesting prepared cereal foods (Chandler, 1922).

### PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

*H. nana* invades the mucous membrane during its larval stage secreting toxins and allergens, and heavy infections cause a considerable degree of toxæmia, which are clinically manifested by convulsions, giddiness, and even epileptiform attacks. Abdominal discomfort is a common complaint and watery diarrhoea, possibly of allergic origin is sometimes associated with this infection.

There is usually a moderate degree of eosinophilia up to 16 per cent.

*H. diminuta* infection is not usually associated with any symptoms.

### DIAGNOSIS

This is made by the identification of the characteristic eggs in the faecal smear or by the concentration technique (see p. 620), or after anthelmintic treatment—possibly for other worm infections—by the finding of the whole or part of an adult worm in the stools.

### PREVENTION

Improvement in general sanitation and personal hygiene are indicated. As auto infection is common, special attention must be paid to hand-wash-

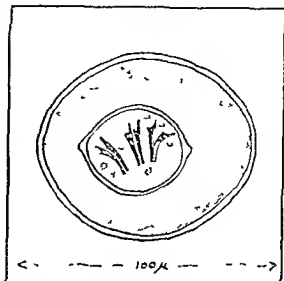


Figure 161 The egg of *Hymenolepis diminuta*



ing after stool and before meals. Treatment will also be an important measure, every infected persons in a household or institution must be treated.

### TREATMENT

The treatment of *H. nana* infection is complicated by the fact that both auto-infection and re-infection are common. It is therefore advisable

TABLE XVIII

### DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF INTESTINAL HELMINTHS

Worm	Incubation period, weeks	FINDINGS IN FÆCES		Eosinophils	Drug or drugs of choice and adult dose
		Stage	Constancy		
<i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> or round worm	8	egg	numerous	++	Oil chenopodium—1 c cm plus tetrachlorethylene— 3 c cm or Hexylresorcinol—1 gramme
<i>Trichuris trichiura</i> or whip worm	12	egg	numerous	+	Leche de Higuerón— 2 ounces or Hexylresorcinol—1 gramme or tetrachlorethylene— 3 c cm
<i>Enterobius vermicularis</i> or thread worm	8	egg	scanty*	+	Gentian violet—1 grain x 3 for 8 days followed by second similar course after 7-day interval
<i>Ancylostoma duodenale</i> or hook worm	5	egg	numerous	++	Tetrachlorethylene in 4 c cm in saturated sodium sulphate—1 oz or Hexylresorcinol—1 gramme
<i>Strongylodes stercoralis</i>	4	larva	irregular	+++	Gentian violet (enseals)— 1 gr x 3 for 17 days
<i>Trichostrongylus</i>	(5)	egg	constant	++	as for hookworm
<i>Tænia solium</i> or pork tapeworm	6-12	proglottid	irregular	++	Filix mas—20 minims x 3 in gelatin-coated capsules by mouth, or 60 minims in saturated sodium sul- phate by duodenal tube, or carbon tetrachloride— 3 c cm
<i>Tænia saginata</i> or beef tapeworm	10-12	proglottid	irregular	++	
<i>Diphyllobothrium latum</i> or fish tapeworm	5-6	egg	periodic	++	
<i>Hymenolepis nana</i> or dwarf tapeworm	2	egg	periodic	++	Gentian violet—1 grain x 3 for one week or Hexylresorcinol—1 gramme

\*Found in anal swab

to prescribe an anthelmintic that can be taken over a relatively long period or repeated often. Gentian violet meets this requirement best. It is given for one week only in the daily doses recommended for strongyloidiasis (see p. 632).

Hexylresorcinol is also a benign drug that can be repeated. It will be advisable to give this in the doses advocated for ascariasis (see p. 599) but it should be given twice with a one week interval.

In view of the fact that a multiple infection may arise in an individual from the infection by a single worm by means of auto-infection even if re-infection can be excluded, complete eradication of the infection must be achieved. If no eggs are found at weekly examinations over a period of one month, cure may be assumed.

For the treatment of *H. diminuta* infection, provided the source of infection has been eliminated, a single efficient treatment will be sufficient. Either of the above drugs could be used, but the oleo-resin of *Aspidium filix mas* is considered to be more specific.

#### REFERENCES

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| BIRKELAND I. W. (1932)                    | <i>Bothriocephalus Anæmia</i> . <i>Medicine</i> 11, 1   |
| C. HANDLER A. C. (1922)                   | Species of <i>Hymenolepis</i> as human parasites<br><i>J. Amer. Med. Assoc.</i> 78, 636               |
| MUKERJI A. K. and MAPLESTONE P. A. (1943) | Treatment of <i>Teniasis</i> . <i>Indian Med. Gaz.</i> 78, 282  |
| WARDLE R. A. and GARRY N. K. (1941)       | The rate of growth of the tapeworm <i>D. phyllobothrium latum</i> . <i>Canadian J. Res. D</i> 19, 245 |

# TRICHINOSIS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .. .. .	646
HISTORICAL .. .. .	647
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	647
<i>Geographical distribution</i> .. .. .	647
<i>Distribution in population groups</i> .. .. .	647
<i>Sex</i> .. .. .	647
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	647
<i>The causal parasite</i> .. .. .	647
<i>Hasts</i> .. .. .	647
<i>The life cycle</i> .. .. .	647
<i>Immunity</i> .. .. .	648
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	648
<i>The blood picture</i> .. .. .	648
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	650
<i>The gastric-intestinal stage</i> .. .. .	650
<i>The toxæmic stage</i> .. .. .	650
<i>The final stage</i> .. .. .	650
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	651
(a) <i>Clinical and epidemiological</i> .. .. .	651
(b) <i>Parasitological</i> .. .. .	651
<i>Biopsy</i> .. .. .	651
(c) <i>Immunological</i> .. .. .	651
<i>Technique—Intra-dermal test—Precipitin test</i> .. .. .	651
(d) <i>Post-mortem examination</i> .. .. .	652
<i>Technique</i> .. .. .	652
PREVENTION .. .. .	652
TREATMENT .. .. .	652
PROGNOSIS .. .. .	652
	653

**Introduction.**—Trichinosis, or infection with the worm *Trichinella spiralis* (Owen, 1835) Failliet, 1895, is in no sense a tropical disease. The geographical distribution in fact indicates that a warm climate has some inhibitory effect on the infection, as it is more common in the northern

than the southern United States and is apparently absent from large areas in the tropics where it is hard to account for its absence on dietary considerations alone

**Historical**—Between 1829 and 1835 several British workers reported the finding of the larval stage of this worm in man. Similar reports followed from Germany, Holland and North America. The infection was found in the pig in North America in 1846. Important observations on the life cycle were made by Leuckart and Virchow between 1855 and 1859 but it was Zenker who in 1860 pointed out the clinical importance of the infection and Virchow estimated that 90 per cent of the population of his country was infected. More attention was attracted to the infection in Germany than in other countries, it is therefore of interest that it is still so prevalent there.

The public health importance of the disease has been fully recognized for at least 80 years yet recent work stimulated by a few severe outbreaks in the United States and in England has shown that the infection is very prevalent in both of these sanitarially advanced countries. Wright and his colleagues (1943) have shown that 1 in every 6 persons in the United States is infected.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—Published data probably give a poor idea of the real distribution but it is certainly prevalent in Great Britain (Sheldon, 1941), in many European countries and in the United States (from Boston in the north, 27.6 per cent to New Orleans in the south 3.5 and 6 per cent). Cases have been reported from Kenya, Uganda and Tanganyika and from Brazil and Chile, but evidence that it occurs elsewhere in Africa, in Asia, or in Australia is absent. In India, Maplestone and Bhadhuri (1942) reported finding *Trichinella spiralis* in a single cat after failing to find it in 100 dogs, 100 pigs, 100 rats, and 73 cats whose diaphragms were examined specifically for this infection by the digestion-extraction technique, and after a study of the literature for the preceding 75 years they could find no records of the infection in man or animals in that country.

**Distribution in population groups**—For all practical purposes the flesh of the pig is man's only source of infection and the investigations of Wright and his colleagues (*loc cit*) only showed the infection in one of the two hundred Jews included in their investigation. The infection rate and clinical evidence of the disease is more common in country than in town populations. There are two factors here—the better inspection of the pork in the cities to account for the lower infection rate, and the lack of concentration of infected material, as would be likely to occur in the country when a heavily infected pig would probably be distributed to a few families only, to account for the lower morbidity rate in cities.

**Sex**—In several populations the infection rate has been found higher in women than in men. This has been accounted for by the practice of eating uncooked sausage meat, in particular that is apparently common amongst women in these populations.

### ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal parasite**—*Trichinella spiralis* is a small nematode worm, the female adult is about 3 millimetres long and 0.05 to 0.1 mm in diameter, and the male about half this size. The larvae are about 100 microns long by 6 microns in diameter.

**Hosts**—The cycle can be completed in one host species, but two individuals are necessary. The common hosts are pigs, dogs, cats and rats and in certain countries bears, but any carnivorous animal may be infected.

Rats which are cannibalistic, are probably the most important reservoir of infection and the pig is the important source of infection to man, although many fatal infections have been acquired from bear meat. Man is only an incidental host and under normal conditions constitutes a *cul-de-sac* for the parasite.

**The life cycle**—Encysted larvae are ingested, the gastric juice digests the cyst wall sufficiently for the larvae to escape in the duodenum. They

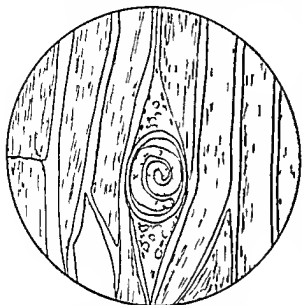


Figure 162 Encysted larva of *Trichinella spiralis* in human muscle

penetrate the mucosa superficially and in from five to seven days develop into adults. The worms mate probably in the crypts, the male dies and is passed out with the faeces, and the female again burrows deeply into the mucosa and parturites, producing 1500 larvae over a period of about six weeks. The larvae penetrate the lymphatics and venules and eventually reach the systemic blood stream and come to rest in striped muscle. They appear to prefer muscles such as those of the diaphragm, intercostal spaces, tongue, larynx, and abdomen, that are constantly active (the low glycogen content appears to be the factor as insulin increases and glucose decreases the number of larvae that will encyst), but they will also encyst in certain skeletal muscles (e.g. the biceps), and rarely in other organs and tissues. A boat-shaped fibrous capsule is formed around the larva within which it grows to about one millimetre in length and lies curled up (figure 162). The host is then eaten by another carnivore and the cycle is complete (figure 163).

Man may take the place of the host but in this case the cycle will not ordinarily be completed.

**Immunity**—There is evidence that rats acquire an immunity to subsequent infection after the first infection incident. Actual proof that this is so in the case of man is wanting but the hypothesis would explain why the morbidity rate is so low, in the presence of a high infection rate, only those who received a heavy dose of infection at the time of their first exposure would show any morbidity. However, larvae of apparently different ages have sometimes been found in one individual.

#### PATHOLOGY

The pathological changes produced in man by this infection can be conveniently divided into three phases. The first phase includes the period of invasion of the infecting larvae, their development into adults, their mating and the subsequent re-entry of the female into the mucosa. This may cause a considerable reaction in the mucosa, with cellular infiltra-

tion, oedema, some necrosis of the superficial layers of the mucous membrane, possibly a little *haemorrhage*, and considerable outpouring of fluid into the intestinal canal

The second phase commences with the parturition of the female the migration of the larvæ through the tissues, their destruction in some tissues and their coming to rest and encystment in the muscles. When these come to rest in their chosen site, there is an immediate tissue reaction in which eosinophils and large mononuclear cells take a prominent part, later, fibroblasts appear, and a thin fibrous capsule is laid down around each of the larvæ

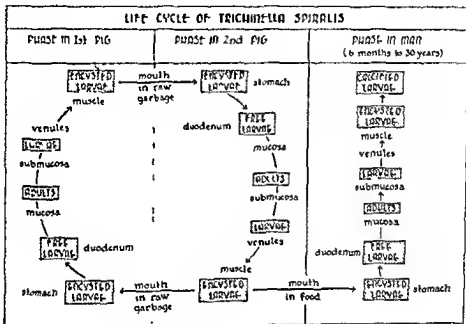


Figure 163

This boat shaped capsule containing the curled up larva lies between the muscle fibres with its long axis parallel to them. Some changes are evident in the surrounding muscle swelling of the muscle fibres, proliferation of interstitial tissue, or in some cases degeneration of the muscle fibres

In other tissues in which the larvæ are not able to encyst for example in the myocardium and the central nervous system there is evidence that they will nevertheless migrate and cause a very considerable cellular and inflammatory reaction to their 'toxins', which leads to the destruction of the larvæ, and not infrequently in severe infections to the death of the host

The third phase is a quiescent one, cysts will remain viable for a very long time, 30 years has been suggested (Craig and Faust 1943), but as time goes on the surrounding fibrous capsule becomes thickened and does not appear to allow much further escape of metabolites. Eventually the capsule may become calcified, and in heavy infections these calcified cysts may cause a certain amount of muscular dysfunction

**Blood picture**—The eosinophil count is constantly high, except in debilitated subjects. It may rise to 6000 per c mm (over 60 per cent) in the acute stages but it will tend to decrease later, however an eosinophil count of 1000 per c mm or more may be found in an infected subject for several years.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The severity of the clinical picture will vary almost exactly with the weight of the infection and the vast majority of infections are light and symptomless throughout. On the other hand there are a few cases in which certain grave symptoms can undoubtedly be traced to cardiac and cerebral involvement in heavy infections, these rarer clinical manifestations will not be described here.

It is convenient to consider the clinical course as being divided into three stages that correspond roughly to the three phases of the pathological picture. Firstly, there is the gastro-intestinal stage which may commence within twenty-four hours of the ingestion of the infected meat and last for several days often overlapping the second stage. This first stage corresponds to the period of activity of the larvæ and adults in the mucosa of the duodenum and probably ends when the female penetrates more deeply and commences to parturite.

The second or the toxæmic stage characterized by oedema swellings and pyrexia and later by hæmorrhages pain in the muscles and other localizing symptoms commences on the seventh to the tenth day with the parturition of the female and lasts as long as she is discharging larvæ, it covers the period of destruction of the larvæ in unsuitable tissues and their encystment in suitable ones a period of perhaps six weeks. The subdivision of this stage into two periods that is frequently made in the literature seems to the writer artificial as the phase in the life of the parasite is a continuous one.

The last is really the convalescent stage in which the patient is recovering from the effects of the toxæmia but may have some residual disabilities as a result of the presence of encysted and possibly calcified larvæ.

**The gastro-intestinal stage**—It is apparently only in very severe infections that this stage is prominent. In such cases there is severe watery diarrhoea often with vomiting, so that the condition may simulate cholera and sometimes there is a little blood and mucus suggesting dysentery. In moderately severe infections in which the patient comes under medical observation only when the symptoms of the second stage appear it will sometimes be possible to obtain a history of diarrhoea and indigestion a few days earlier but in the majority constipation will be reported.

**The toxæmic stage**—The most constant and prominent symptom is swelling of the eyelids. The patient may wake up in the morning with the eyes completely closed and even with the oedematous conjunctivæ everted and bulging. The rest of the face may also be swollen and there may be swellings in other parts of the body. The conjunctivæ are usually injected.

The temperature is almost constantly raised usually up to 101° or 102° F and there is often a remittent type of temperature lasting for one, two or three weeks or even longer.

There is sometimes urticaria and other rashes have been described.

As well as severe frontal headache, which is another very constant symptom, lethargy and apathy or anxiety, and irritability have been observed in a considerable percentage of cases. Areflexia is frequently observed.

Cough is common and hæmoptysis occurs rarely.

About the third day after the swellings have appeared there will often be pain in the various muscle groups so that breathing becomes laboured and mastication and deglutition difficult, and in fact all muscular movements, particularly after a period of rest are painful. Pains may be slight or very severe, and are often described by women as being as intense as labour pains. They may last for one day or for several weeks.

In this stage if the fever continues for a month or so there will be considerable emaciation and very great weakness with nervous and mental symptoms that suggest the typhoid state.

A somewhat unusual symptom hæmorrhages under the nails and extreme tenderness of the tips of the fingers, has been noted in about ten per cent of clinical cases.

In fatal cases, death takes place during this second stage.

**The final stage**—In this stage the patient recovers from the weakness and emaciation of the toxæmia and fever. There are often residual pains and muscular pains that may persist for many months and muscular weakness that may last for years. Calcified cysts can seldom be felt but can be seen by careful radiography.

#### DIAGNOSIS

This will have to be considered under four headings, (a) clinical and epidemiological (b) parasitological, (c) immunological, and (d) post mortem examination.

(a) **Clinical and epidemiological**—A clinical diagnosis is unlikely to be made unless there is an epidemic or the patient gives a clear history of having eaten raw or insufficiently cooked meat that he suspects but in either of these cases the swelling of the face in the absence of any renal or cardiac cause, the febrile attack in the absence of any demonstrable infection, and the severe cramps in the muscles in the absence of dehydration and hypochloræmia will be highly suggestive. A high eosinophil count without any other apparent cause will add support of this diagnosis.

(b) **Parasitological**—Only by a very unlikely chance will the adults or the larvæ be found in the stools, or the latter in the blood or other fluids, e.g. cerebrospinal fluid, but the search for encysted larvæ in muscle biopsy specimens is a useful method of diagnosis as many as 800 larvæ per gramme have been recovered from non fatal cases. The piece of muscle can be examined, pressed between the slides or after digestion in artificial gastric juice for 24 hours at 37° C (*vide infra*).

(c) **Immunological**—The intra dermal test has been used widely for demonstrating subclinical infections. The most recent technique gives results that are highly specific for this infection although with lower dilutions of the antigen false positives are given in the presence of trichocephalus infections. A blood precipitin test is also employed, it is more difficult to interpret and should be used only as confirmatory evidence.



**Techniques** The antigen\* is prepared from desiccated larvæ extracted from infected pork.

For the intradermal test the dilution should be 1 in 10,000, of which 0.2 c.c.m. is injected into the skin of the forearm. In a positive case a wheal of at least 7 mm. in diameter with pseudopodia will appear and this will be surrounded by a ring of erythema of at least twice this breadth.

A control in which the solvent is used without any antigen must be done at the same time.

The 'delayed reaction' which may occur after a delay of 24 hours is less specific.

The precipitation test is done with dilutions of 1 in 100 upwards, of the same antigen. In a micro-tube a small quantity of the antigen solution is floated on top of an equal amount of the patient's serum, and the reading is made after one hour in the 37°C incubator. A positive result in a dilution of 1 in 1250 or more suggests recent infection.

These tests become positive between the second and third weeks and remain positive for several years.

(d) **Post-mortem examination.**—The diaphragm is usually the best source of trichinella larvæ. A piece of this is cut into a thin slice which is pressed between two strong slides and then examined under the low-power lens of the microscope for encysted larvæ.

A more satisfactory method is by digesting the muscles, as follows:

**Technique** Digest about 50 grammes of muscle in 0.7 per cent hydrochloric acid—1.0 per cent of pepsin, 20 c.c.m. to a gramme of muscle, overnight. The mixture should if possible be stirred periodically. The digested material is placed in a large glass funnel to which a short length of rubber tube with a stop-cock is attached. The encysted larvæ fall to the bottom of the funnel and can be drawn off by opening the stop-cock. A count can also be made by this method.

## PREVENTION

Personal prophylaxis can be achieved by refraining from eating lightly cooked or undercooked pork. Refrigeration to -15° C for 24 hours will destroy larvæ, but ordinary refrigeration and salting or smoking will not.

The only effective public-health measure generally practised is the inspection of pork. Light infections are very liable to be overlooked, but the fact that the infection is much rarer in towns, where generally inspection is adequate, than in the country districts, where it is not, is evidence of the value of this procedure.

Education and propaganda amongst small pig-raisers in country districts to discourage raw-garbage feeding, and to encourage the proper disposal of pig viscera and of the carcasses of pigs dying of disease is important. Rats also being common hosts should be destroyed or at least kept away from the animal food store.

## TREATMENT

No specific for this infection is known, and, from the nature of the infection and the difficulty of early diagnosis, it seems doubtful whether a specific would be of very great value were one discovered, unless it were capable of killing the encysted larvæ in the muscles. Treatment must therefore be symptomatic and palliative.

The administration of calcium, in the form of calcium gluconate for example, has been suggested in order to hurry the encapsulation of the larvæ.

\* Prepared antigen can be obtained from Eli Lilly and Co., and probably other drug manufacturers.

## PROGNOSIS

It must be obvious that the prognosis in the vast majority of cases is excellent, as they do not show any symptoms at all. On the other hand in the very heavy infections in which gastro intestinal symptoms appear the prognosis should be guarded as many deaths have been reported. In such cases the absence of a high eosinophilia is a bad prognostic sign.

It has been estimated that 5 000 larvae per kilogramme of body weight will usually prove fatal. However, 800 larvae per gramme of muscle have been recovered by biopsy in a non fatal case. The two statements are not necessarily contradictory.

## REFERENCES

- MAPLESTONE P. A. and BHADHURI A. A Record of *Trichinella spiralis* (Owen 1835) in India. *Indian Med Gaz* 77, 193  
 V. V. (1942)
- SHELDON J. H. (1941) An outbreak of Trichinosis in Wolverhampton District. *Lancet* i, 203
- WRIGHT W. H., HERR K. B. and SIMON S. in Trichinosis. *Pub Health Rep* 58  
 JACOBS I. (1943) 1293

# FILARIASIS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .. .. .	656
<b>FILARIASIS DUE TO WUCHERERIA BANCROFTI</b>	
HISTORICAL .. .. .	657
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	657
<i>Geographical distribution</i> .. .. .	657
America—Europe—Australasia—Asia—India	
<i>Epidemic status</i> .. .. .	659
<i>Seasonal distribution</i> .. .. .	659
<i>Race, sex, age, and occupation</i> .. .. .	659
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	660
<i>Historical</i> .. .. .	660
<i>Causal organism</i> .. .. .	661
Adult—the ova and embryos	
<i>Life cycle of the parasite</i> .. .. .	661
Microfilarial periodicity	
<i>Correlation between filarial infection and filarial disease</i> .. .. .	664
<i>Conditions favourable to the development of the larvæ in the mosquito</i> .. .. .	665
<i>Intermediate hosts</i> .. .. .	666
FACTORS AFFECTING ENDEMICITY .. .. .	666
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	667
<i>Pathogenesis—Lymphangitis and lymphadenitis—Local inflammatory reaction—Elephantoid skin—Elephantoid limbs—Lymph varices—Lymph ascites, lymphuria, and lymphæcele—Chylous ascites, chyluria, and chylocele—Hæmaturia, hæmatocele, etc—Chylous diarrhæa—Microfilaræ—Secondary bacterial infection</i> .. .. .	667
<i>Variations in the lesions produced</i> .. .. .	671
<i>Blood picture</i> .. .. .	672
<i>Microfilaræ in the blood</i> .. .. .	672
<i>Urine</i> .. .. .	672
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	672
<i>Classification</i> .. .. .	672
<i>Incubation period</i> .. .. .	673

<i>A Symptomless infection</i>	674
<i>B Lymphangitis and lymphadenitis</i>	674
<i>C Elephantiasis</i>	674
<i>D Lymph varix</i>	675
<i>E Chyle varix</i>	678
Chylocele—Hæmatochylocele—Chyluria—Hæmatochyluria— Chylous ascites—Chylous diarrhoea	
<i>F General symptoms</i>	679
(i) Fever	
(ii) Allergic manifestations	
<i>G Psychoneurotic manifestations</i>	679
DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS	680
(a) <i>Duration of residence in an endemic area</i>	680
(b) <i>History of a previous attack</i>	680
(c) <i>Clinical picture</i>	680
(d) <i>Laboratory examinations</i>	680
(i) Blood—technique	
(ii) Immunological tests	
(iii) Urine	
(e) <i>Other procedures</i>	681
PREVENTION	681
<i>A Prevention of spread of infection</i>	681
<i>B Prevention of attacks in those already infected</i>	682
TREATMENT	683
<i>Introduction</i>	683
<i>A Specific treatment</i>	683
<i>B Treatment of secondary infections</i>	684
(i) Local treatment	
(ii) General chemotherapeutic treatment	
(iii) Vaccine treatment	
(iv) The search for and eradication of septic foci	
<i>C The relief of lymphatic obstruction</i>	685
<i>D Palliative treatment</i>	685
Acute lymphatic attack—Massive elephantiasis—Large scrotal swellings— Chyluria	
PROGNOSIS	686

## FILARIASIS DUE TO *WUCHERERIA MALAYI*

HISTORICAL	687
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	687
ÆTIOLOGY	687
The parasite	
Intermediate hosts	

	PAGE
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	688
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	688

### FILARIASIS DUE TO *LOA LOA* INFECTION

DEFINITION	689
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	689
THE PARASITE	689
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	689
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	689

### ONCHOCERCIASIS

DEFINITION	690
THE PARASITE	690
INTERMEDIATE HOSTS	690
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	690
<i>Eye lesions</i>	691
TREATMENT AND PREVENTION	691

**Introduction**—Filariasis\* is the term applied to the infections and to the diseases caused by the infections in man and animals by certain nematodes of the super family Filarioidea that were at one time generally placed in the now superseded genus *Filaria* namely

*Wuchereria bancrofti* (Cobbold 1877) Seurat, 1921  
*Wuchereria molyi* (Brug 1927) Rao and Maplestone, 1940  
*Loa loa* (Cobbold 1864) Crastellani and Chalmers 1913  
*Mansonella ozzardi* (Manson 1897) Faust 1929

For the other two important infections by nematodes of the super family Filarioidea namely,

*Onchocerca volvulus* (Leuckart 1893) Railliet and Henry, 1910  
*Acanthocheilonema perstons* (Manson 1891) Railliet Henry and Langeron 1912

the words onchocerciasis and acanthocheilonemiasis are commonly used although both worms are often referred to as filarial worms

The morbid changes that occur in filarial infections are brought about by the mature larvae and the adult worms passing through or lodging in the tissues especially in the lymphatics and causing local reactions

---

\*This section has been written with the aid of some notes by Dr S S Rao especially on the morphology of the parasites on the history and distribution of filariasis and on *Wuchereria molyi* infection. Most of the photographs were of his patients attending the filariasis outpatient department of the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine.

Part of this section has appeared in *Medicine* (May 1944) it is reproduced here with the Editors and Publishers kind permission.

*Mansonella ozzardi* is confined to the Americas where it has a limited distribution in northern Argentina in the countries along the north coast of South America in Mexico and in the West Indies. The adult worms live in the body cavities and apparently produce no pathogenesis. The microfilariae are very small unsexed and very similar to those of *Acanthocheilium perlati*. The infection has been transmitted experimentally by the gnat *Culexoides furax*.

*Acanthocheilium perlati* has a wide distribution in tropical and northern Africa and in the coastal areas of tropical and sub-tropical South America. The clinical condition that it produces is ill-defined and many workers believe it to be a non-pathogenic parasite. The microfilariae are unsexed much finer (less than  $5\mu$ ) and shorter (less than  $200\mu$ ) than those of the pathogenic filariae, and should never give rise to confusion. The intermediate hosts are species of *Culicoides*.

No further reference will be made to either of these two infections

## FILARIASIS DUE TO WUCHERERIA BANCROFTI

**Historical.**—Although filariasis in its grosser manifestations was mentioned by ancient Indian writers the term 'elephantiasis' was apparently first used by Celsus to indicate leprosy, and later by Galen to indicate both leprosy and true elephantiasis. A third disease Misdura foot was also generally confused with leprosy and elephantiasis until about the eighteenth century. In 1750 Hillary gave a full and lucid account of the elephantoid leg wherein he clearly differentiated this disease from leprosy. The classical researches of Danielssen and Boeck in 1848 on leprosy and those of Vandyke Carter in 1860 on mycetoma established clearly the true nature of these two diseases and their distinction one from the other and from filariasis.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution.**—Of the human filarial parasites *Wuchereria bancrofti* has the most extensive distribution in the tropics and sub-tropics and occurs in regions from about  $42^{\circ}$  N to about  $38^{\circ}$  S in the eastern hemisphere and from about  $30^{\circ}$  N to  $30^{\circ}$  S in the western hemisphere.

In America, the infection is common in Central America in the West Indies in British, Dutch and French Guiana Venezuela Brazil Peru, and Colombia. In the United States, a considerable focus of infection, probably originally introduced from Africa, was discovered in South Carolina some years ago, but no fresh cases have been reported in recent years, it probably does not occur elsewhere.

It is common on the west coast of Africa, in Madagascar and the neighbouring islands of Mauritius and Réunion, in East Africa, and in Egypt and North Africa.

In Europe, it is reported to occur in Spain (Barcelona), Hungary, and Turkey.

In Australasia, it is common in New Guinea Papua and other islands, and it occurs along the northern and eastern coasts of Australia. It is extremely common throughout the Pacific islands such as Samoa and Friendly Islands Fiji and the Gilbert and Ellice groups of islands.

In Asia, it is especially prevalent in Arabia, India, Ceylon, Burma, the Malayan peninsula, the Philippines and the islands of East Indies, southern China, and southern Japan. In some of these areas over 80 per cent of the population are infected.

In India, the infection is extremely prevalent, but it is more or less confined to the coastal regions and to areas along the banks of the im-

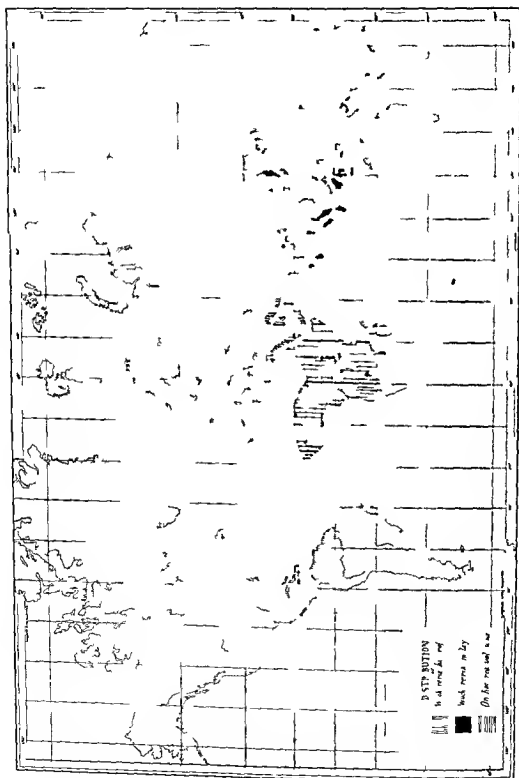


Figure 164 Distribution of Filariasis

tion. Filarial surveys of endemic areas in India, carried out by Rno (1924-1941) have shown that the age incidence of lymphatic obstruction depends on the intensity of the infection to which the people are subjected. Thus, in hyperendemic areas,\* elephantiasis may commence even at as early an age as 5 years, and, in one case, microfilariae were detected in the blood of a baby of 14 months. In moderately endemic areas, the lesions commence generally between the ages of 14 and 16, and in areas of low endemicity between 20 and 25 years. In general the incidence of infection in women is less than in men. This may be partly due to their conditions of living and their mode of dress.

No special correlation between the incidence of infection and the race or occupation of the individual has been noted. In Calcutta, a town of moderate endemicity, it is very rare for the disease to be found amongst European sojourners, but it is not uncommon amongst those who have lived there all their lives, and it is as common amongst the poorer Anglo-Indians as amongst the Indians.

### ETIOLOGY

**Historical.**—The discovery of microfilariae in the hydrocele fluid of a filarial patient was first made by Dumasquay in 1863 in Paris. In 1866 Wucherer independently discovered a microfilaria in the chylous urine of a filarial patient in Brazil. He continued his investigations and later obtained comparable findings in several cases of haematocyluria; a similar observation was recorded by Salisbury in 1868. Lewis working in Calcutta made the important discovery in 1872 that the microfilaria which was present in the chylous urine occurred also in the blood and lymph of persons suffering from elephantiasis, and in his subsequent investigations he showed that the embryo invades the thoracic region of the mosquito and there undergoes development but he did not study the subsequent stages of development as he could not keep his mosquitoes alive for more than a week. The presence of microfilariae in chylous ascitic fluid was first observed by Winkel in 1876 and in the same year the adult filarial worms were discovered by Bancroft.

About the same time, Manson carried out pioneer investigations in filarial infection in China and our present knowledge of the subject is mainly due to his classical researches on the transmission and the pathology of the disease. Manson made the memorable discovery in 1878 that the mosquito *Culex fatigans* was the carrier of filarial infection. He demonstrated that the filarial embryo developed inside the mosquito in seven days. In 1900 Low demonstrated that the infective larvae escaped from the proboscis of the mosquito on to the skin at the time of biting. Since then several investigators have carried out extensive researches dealing with many important aspects of the infection e.g. Manson Bahr (Bahr 1912) investigating filarial infection in the Fiji Islands showed that the transmitter of this infection in this region was *Aedes variegatus* var *pseudo scutellans*, and that *Culex fatigans* which is the important transmitter in other endemic areas of the world is not so efficient in these islands. He was also the first to show that the microfilariae in the blood in Fiji exhibited no periodicity, and that the nocturnal periodicity of the embryo was dependent upon the biting habits of the intermediary host.

James showed that the filarial parasite in Trivandrum developed in *Anopheles subpictus*; subsequent investigations especially those of Cruickshank and Wright (1912) and of Iyengar (1932), have however shown that *Culex fatigans* plays a far more important role in the transmission of *Wuchereria bancrofti* than *Anopheles subpictus*.

\* Endemic areas can for convenience be classed as

- (a) hyper endemic areas—microfilaria rate 30 per cent or more,
- (b) highly endemic areas—microfilaria rate 20 per cent but less than 30 per cent
- (c) moderately endemic areas—microfilaria rate less than 20 but over 5 per cent and
- (d) areas of low endemicity—microfilaria rate 5 per cent or less but an occasional positive finding



**Causal organism**—The adult *Wuchereria bancrofti* are white hair-like translucent worms having a smooth cuticle. The male and the female worms live coiled together in the dilated lymphatics, the male being considerably smaller than the female. The head is rounded and is separated from the body by a neck-like constriction. It is provided with two rows of small sessile papillae. The mouth is without lips and unarmed. The oesophagus has no bulb-like swelling at its posterior extremity. The anus is situated close to the posterior extremity of the worm.

Males measure from 25 to 40 mm in length and about 01 mm in breadth. The tail is specially curved ventrally. The cloaca is about 01 mm from the posterior extremity. The testis is not coiled and terminates as a snail-shaped process (liver). The accessory piece or gubernaculum which is chitinous is crescentic. There are two spicules of unequal length. The long one is cylindrical, expanded proximally and tapering distally, ending in a glass-like swelling. The short spicule is of the same diameter throughout, gutter-like and coarsely marked, especially near its distal extremity. There are nine pairs of caudal papillae which are pedunculated, five pre-anal and four post-anal in position. The caudal alae are sometimes indistinct (Maplestone and Rao, 1939).

Females measure from 50 to 100 mm in length and from 02 to 03 mm in breadth. The oesophagus has no bulb-like swelling at its posterior extremity. The anus opens about 02 mm from the tip of the tail. The vulva opens on the ventral surface about 06 mm to 13 mm from the anterior end. The vagina is a muscular tube forming a loop with a pyriform enlargement and ends in the uterus, the distal end of which is generally found filled with fully extended embryos ready to be discharged. At its proximal end the uterus is divided into two branches which occupy the greater portion of the body and each terminate towards the tail end in an ovary. Each branch of the uterus contains eggs and embryos in various stages of development.

**The ova and embryos**—The ova are found in the posterior end of the uterus. Their dimensions vary according to the stage of their development, when fully developed they measure about 40 microns in length and 25 microns in breadth. The ovum does not possess a true shell but only a membrane which becomes stretched to form the so called sheath of the microfilaria.

The measurements of the individual microfilariae (embryos) of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in ordinary thick smears when plotted on graph paper, exhibit a smooth curve, and there is no marked difference in their measurements in the wet and dry states. The average length of the embryo itself is 290 microns, the breadth 6 to 7 microns while the length of the sheath is 359 microns (Ivengar, 1939).

The embryo shows well marked cuticular striations. The cephalic space is generally smaller than the breadth of the embryo in this region. The tail tapers gradually to a rounded tip and is free from nuclei.

**Life-cycle of the parasite**—The adult filarial parasites live in the lymphatics of man, mainly in those of the pelvic region. They are known to live there for a considerable period of time without producing obstruction to the lymphatic circulation. The gravid female discharges embryos periodically, these embryos reach the blood stream and circulate there. The embryos exhibit a nocturnal periodicity\* in the blood stream, except in

\* Microfilarial periodicity. The maximum number of microfilariae is found between the hours of 10 P M and 2 A M and never during the day. This periodicity is a device on the part of the filarial worm (or of Nature) to aid propagation of

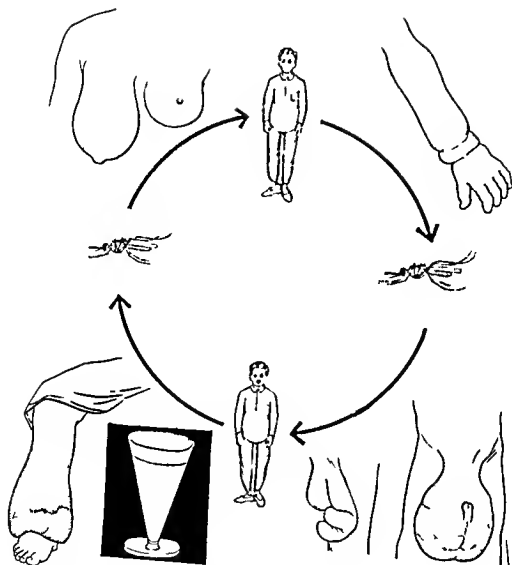


Figure 165 Showing cycle of transmission and indicating major pathological changes produced (including chyluria)

Fiji, Samoa, and other Pacific islands where they show no special periodicity. They do not develop further in the blood, but are taken up by the intermediate host the mosquito where the next stage of development occurs.

Ordinarily, a drop (20 cmm of peripheral blood) of an infected individual may contain anything up to 600 embryos. It has been found that, while a moderately high concentration (about 15 embryos per drop of blood) is necessary for the successful transmission of the infection, a much higher concentration of microfilariae, viz, 100 or more embryos per drop, is fatal to the mosquito.

The development of the filarial embryo in the intermediate host, the mosquito, may be briefly described as follows.

As the mosquito feeds on the blood of an infected individual, the embryos (microfilariae) are taken in by the mosquito and enter its stomach. With the progress of digestion in the stomach, the blood plasma becomes thickened. At this stage the embryos escape from their sheaths and enter the thoracic region of their mosquito host. It has been shown by Iyengar (1939) that within ten minutes most of the embryos enter the thorax and lie in between the thoracic muscle fibres where at first they are comparatively inactive. After two days the first-larval stage embryos measure about 124 to 250 microns by 10 to 17 microns. Many changes take place in the structure of the embryos, and the tail becomes reduced to a stump (stomage stage). After the third day, the development of the body cavity, oesophagus and the anus takes place, and at the end of seven days the larvae (second stage) measure 225 to 300 microns by 15 to 30 microns. Caudal papillae are now observed.

During the second week, moulting occurs and under optimum conditions the metamorphosis is complete by the tenth or eleventh day. The infective third stage (filariform) larvae which now measure 1500 to 2000 microns by 18 to 23 microns show an alimentary canal and a trilobed tail. They leave the thorax, migrate to the proboscis, and eventually reach the interior of the labium. They are generally seen to move in pairs. When the mosquito feeds, the larvae escape at the junction of the labium with the labella (figure 166) and enter through the puncture made by the mosquito or even through the unbroken skin.

The larvae find their way into the peripheral lymphatics. Their subsequent progress and eventual fate will depend to a great extent on the host's reaction but under conditions of perfect symbiosis the cycle will be completed as follows. The larvae migrate centripetally and eventually reach the large lymphatic trunks where, having developed into male and female adults, they mate. The female parturites and the microfilariae are

species as it is only observed in countries where the main mosquito vector is a night feeder. In Fiji *Aedes taenigatus* which is a diurnal feeder is the important vector and the microfilariae are found in the blood throughout the 24 hours in this and other Pacific islands. Many theories have been put forward to explain the mechanism of this periodicity—that it is due to light directly repelling the embryos or adversely affecting their activity to the inactivity of the host at night to chemotaxis from the bite of the mosquito to defective oxygen supply or to mid-day parturition of the worms and the daily death of the microfilariae (Lane 1933)—but no theory is entirely satisfactory. The ingenious though unlikely theory regarding mid-day parturition—which itself requires further explanation—has been disproved by several workers who have shown that even in another host the life of the microfilaria is over a week.

If the host changes his habits and sleeps during the day, the microfilariae that he harbours will change their periodicity correspondingly in about three days.

carried via the lymphatic trunks into the subclavian veins and the systemic circulation

This is the outline of the cycle as it occurs when symbiosis is perfect and it accounts for none of the pathogenesis associated with the infection when the host's tissues react to the presence of the worm, these reactions and their effect on the cycle will be described below under the heading of Pathology

It is, however possible that in some instances after the adult worms have mated, they, or at least the females, migrate centrifugally to the lymphatics of the extremities and genitals to parturite This hypoth-



Figure 166 Infective larvæ emerging from the lip of proboscis of *Culex fatigans*

sis—for which there is analogy but no experimental proof—would help to explain certain observed phenomena though it is believed that these can be explained almost as well on other grounds (*vide infra*)

From the entry of the mature larvae to the appearance of microfilariae in the blood of the host the interval is usually stated to be about one year but there is evidence that it may be much longer

**Correlation between filarial infection and filarial disease**—It is no longer necessary to discuss this from the point of view of establishing the causal relationship between filarial infection and the various clinical manifestations of the disease for the subject is only one of historical interest, as far as the commoner clinical manifestations of filariasis are concerned

Many of the early workers *eg* Low (1908) and O Connor (1923), noted the correlation between the incidence of filarial disease and the blood

microfilaria rate in the community and, recently, Iyengar (1938) found a positive correlation coefficient of  $+0.7644$  between the microfilarial rate and filarial disease in 216 localities in Travancore (India). In chyluria due to filarial infection, microfilariae are usually found in the peripheral blood, Rav and Rao (1938) found them in 78 per cent of their cases.

On the other hand, most (though not all) observers have found a very definite negative correlation between blood microfilarial findings and elephantiasis in the individual. In India, Aeton and Rao (1930) found microfilariae in only 5.7 per cent of cases of frank filarial elephantiasis whereas they found them in 14.7 per cent of the symptom-free population of the same area. In a population in which there was a 92.8 per cent filarial disease rate, Rao (1941) found a microfilaria rate of 8.4 per cent in those with elephantiasis, against 54.3 per cent in those without it. And Iyengar (1938) in an investigation involving over four thousand persons, of which over five hundred had clinical filariasis, in several localities in India found the microfilaria rate was on an average about three times as great amongst those showing no clinical evidence of the infections as amongst those with elephantiasis.

The absence of microfilariae in the early stages of the infection must be attributed to the immaturity of the filariae and/or to their failure to mate. The usual explanation for the lower microfilaria rate among subjects with elephantiasis is that the lymphatic channels are mechanically blocked by the worms and the retention that they initiate so that no microfilariae can get into the circulation. It seems however, that it may be due to the failure of the majority of the adult worms to get through to the larger lymph vessels where they can mate more easily, the finding of an occasional pregnant female worm in a distal lymph node does not negate this suggestion and may only indicate that worms migrate centrifugally after fecundation. On the other hand, as one would have to assume the complete blocking of all the larger lymph channels from the periphery in order to explain the absence of microfilariae in the peripheral blood, it is possible that one must visualize a general reaction of an allergic or an antibody\* nature on the part of the host, otherwise one would expect the worms in those areas where the blocking was as yet incomplete to provide some microfilariae. Each of these three alternatives is compatible with the observation of Iyengar (1933) that the longer the duration of the obstruction the lower the microfilaria rate is likely to be.

**Conditions favourable to the development of the larvae in the mosquito.**—The stages of the development of the larvae of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in mosquitoes outlined above, require a mean atmospheric temperature of about 80° F and a humidity above 60 per cent. Laboratory-controlled experiments by Rao have shown that the development of the larvae in the mosquito depends directly upon temperature and humidity, the optimum conditions for the development have been found to be a combination of 80° F with 90 per cent humidity. Under these conditions the parasite is found to complete its full development in the mosquito within seven days. Observations carried out in India (Calcutta and Cuttack) and in China have shown that the times for development in the mosquito under natural

\*It seems possible that the microfilariae that are retained in the tissues behind the obstruction in the lymphatic vessels or in the subcutaneous tissues are actively destroyed and provide the necessary sensitizing (*sensu lato*) stimulus whereas in lymph varix chyluria etc the microfilariae reach the blood stream where they circulate until they are obsolete and are subjected to a gradual process of absorption with other circulating debris.

conditions vary according to the temperature and humidity, from two weeks in the summer to three weeks or over in the winter months. Delay in the development of the filarial embryo in the mosquito reduces the chances of the infection being transmitted because in many instances the embryo will fail to reach the third larval the infective, stage.

**Intermediate hosts**—*Culex quinquefasciatus* (fatigans) is the common host in Egypt India South China, Formosa, Celebes, the East Indies, the Philippines Australia, the West Indies and Brazil. In mosquitoes of other species and genera the complete developmental cycle will take place and one must assume, therefore, that they are potential vectors, in some instances, e.g. the day-time feeding *Aedes scutellaris* var *pseudoscutellaris* in Samoa, these are known to be the principal vectors. Craig and Faust (1943) give the following as potential vectors

*Culex pipiens* and *C. pipiens* var *pallens*\* (Central China, Japan and Egypt), *C. habitator* (St Croix, W Indies), *C. fuscephalus*, *C. whitmorei*, *C. onnulirostris*, *C. ohs* and *C. ushnu* (all from Dutch East Indies and Celebes), *Aedes aegypti* (West Africa, New South Wales, St Croix, West Indies), *Aedes scutellaris*\* (*variegatus*) (Pacific Islands), *Aedes togoi*\* (Japan), *A. taniorhynchus* (St Croix, W Indies), *Taniorhynchus pseudotitillans* (Malaya), *T. uniformis*\* (Central Africa), *T. justamansonia* (Brazil), *Anopheles albimanus* (Caribbean area), *A. albivittatus* (Brazil), *A. gambia*\*, *A. funestus*, *A. rhodesiensis*, *A. squamosus*\* (Sierra Leone), *A. algeriensis*\* (Tunis), *A. hyrcanus* var *nigerrimus* (Travancore), *A. hyrcanus* var *sinensis* (Shanghai), *A. barbirostris*, *A. subpictus*\* (both freshwater and brackish water types), *A. pseudojamesi* (ramsayi), *A. varuna*, *A. philippinensis*, *A. palidus*, *A. annularis* (fuliginosus), *A. stephensi*, *A. sundanensis* (all in India), *A. omicrus* (North Queensland), *A. barbirostris* var *bonerofti* (Dutch East Indies Celebes), *A. aconitus* (Dutch East Indies and Celebes), *A. punctulatus*\* (New Guinea and Celebes), and probably *A. maculatus* (Celebes).

This list is not complete, nor have all these species been proven vectors in nature. Those in which the complete developmental cycle has been observed are starred.

#### FACTORS AFFECTING ENDEMICITY

The four essentials for transmission are,

- (i) the source of the microfilaria which is always man
- (ii) the mosquito vector
- (iii) susceptible man and
- (iv) links between (i) and (ii) and (ii) and (iii)

There is no reason to believe that race, age, or sex *per se* make any difference in the susceptibility of man to infection or in the number of microfilariae that will circulate in his blood, given therefore the source of infection and mosquitoes of a good transmitting species (of which there are many) the factors influencing the amount of filarial infection in any locality will be,

- (a) the density of the human population
- (b) the density of the vector mosquito population and
- (c) the length of duration of the period of effective transmission each year\*

\* Temperature and humidity are the main factors in determining the complete development of the filarial embryo in the mosquito so that transmission may take place a relative humidity of 90 per cent and a temperature between 80° and 90°F appear to be the most favourable (*vide supra*)

But, given a fixed human and a seasonally varying mosquito (e.g. *Culex fatigans*) population, filarial incidence will depend not so much on (c), but more on the length of duration of the coincidence of the favourable periods in factors (b) and (c), that is, on

(d) the length of duration of the coincidence between the peaks (or high plateaux) of the mosquito-incidence and favourable-temperature and humidity curves

The density of the vector mosquito population (b) will depend on a number of factors which will vary according to the species concerned, but the seasonal variations in the density will also depend to a great extent on temperature and humidity, and the same ranges as in the case of factor (c) namely, 80° to 90° F and over 90 per cent will certainly be favourable for mosquito breeding but other contemporaneous factors may not be, and therefore the peaks do not always coincide

For example, in Calcutta the most suitable period for transmission is from May to October, but the peak of the *Culex* curve is later in the year, so that Calcutta is an area of moderate endemicity, whereas in many coastal towns in South India, the transmission period lasts almost throughout the year and such places are hyper-endemic

We therefore have the equation,  
degree of endemicity  $\approx a \times b \times d$

It will thus be seen why the disease is endemic in hot, damp, tropical climates and in coastal areas where an even temperature is the rule, why it is seen at its best in densely populated areas, especially in towns in which the *Culex* population is not controlled, and why there is considerable variation in the intensity of the endemicity from place to place within these areas. The more practical importance of this appreciation of the factors concerned in transmission will be its application to prevention (*vide infra*)

#### PATHOLOGY

As in other filarial diseases, the pathological changes are caused by the adult and pre adult worms passing through or lodging in the tissues and giving rise to local reactions in these tissues, the circulating microfilariae themselves apparently produce no recognizable tissue reaction

**Pathogenesis**—There is evidence of tissue irritation from the point of entry of the mature larvae onwards. The skin around where the larvae penetrate may become thickened, hard, and red and this condition usually persists for some days. The lymphatic channels through which the larvae migrate show signs of irritation, apparently as a result of the action of some substance secreted by the larvae. The tissue response is a granulomatous development both within and outside the lymph vessels, the latter tends to narrow the lumina of the vessels while the former obstructs them. Later, these tubercle-like masses of epithelioid granulation tissue may resolve or, if the irritation is maintained by repeated passage of larvae or of adult worms, it may become infiltrated by fibroblasts and the channel permanently obliterated

When the immature worm reaches a lymph node, it must work its way through the lymph spaces between the trabeculae and the lymphoid nodules of the cortex to reach the medulla. During this passage considerable local reaction is caused, when numerous mature larvae constantly pass through a node, the whole node increases in size and in the course of a short time

it is converted into a mass of granulation tissue and no longer contains any lymphoid tissue (figure 167). As the lymph channels are obstructed by this granulation tissue lymph can no longer percolate through the node, nor can the larva pass through it; they are held up distally to the obstruction and there complete their development. In some instances adult worms fail to mate and the sterile female after living in the lymphatics for some time and causing periodic reactions eventually dies and is absorbed or calcified. In others the adult worms mate and the female parturates in this sub-optimal environment. With the discharge of the embryos, the uterine fluid—which is expelled at the same time—acting as a toxin causes



Figure 167 Section of lymphatic gland showing sections of filariae in two lymph spaces

lymphangitis and/or lymphadenitis. (In sections of tissue containing worms a large number of desquamated endothelial cells derived from the endothelial lining of the vessel walls can sometimes be seen at the site of the vulval orifice of the worm which is close to the head end). In this way an obstruction is gradually formed to the centripetal flow of the lymph and the pressure rises in the obstructed lymph channels.

The gravid female gives birth to living embryos intermittently, probably for a few days in each month, and this is the most likely explanation for the periodicity of the febrile attacks and other allergic signs and symptoms both local and general. When the gravid female ceases to produce embryos toxins are no longer excreted to the same extent as during fecundation and for the time being the inflammation subsides.

The primary factor in the mechanical production of lymph varices is this intermittent rise and fall of the lymph pressure. Clinically, such varices are seen most frequently in lymphatics that are supported by loose



tissue such as those around the superficial lymph nodes on the inner aspect of the arm etc. or when the deeper lymphatics are involved the abdominal plexuses and those of the spermatic cord (*vide infra*).

The local reaction to the presence of a foreign body in a lymphatic vessel or in a lymph node may be such that the mature worm, or even the immature worm is strangled, or such worms may die of old age or for some other reason. When this occurs there is an infiltration of lymphocytes, plasma cells and eosinophils and the formation of giant cells, which destroy the worms (figure 168). Meanwhile new blood vessels are formed in the



Figure 168. Section of lymphatic gland. Transverse section of filarial worm with giant cells surrounding it.

granulation tissue fibroblasts appear, and eventually the remains of the worm are encapsulated and may become calcified. This process may be associated clinically with a sharp local inflammatory reaction, and in some cases with a febrile attack. Later there will always be scar formation which will further interfere with lymph flow in this region.

When the lymph flow is thus obstructed in the distal parts of the lymph system, the lymph pressure increases, at first the deeper lymphatic vessels dilate then those of the subcutaneous tissue, and finally the skin lymphatics. The valves in these dilated lymphatics cease to function and stagnation results. Lymph ceases to drain from the tissues and the part becomes progressively more swollen. Such tissue is known as blubbery tissue and when one cuts into it the lymph exudes and the tissue collapses.

Drinker and his coworkers (1934-1935) have shown that this lymph has a higher content of plasma protein than ordinary lymph and that this content is further increased by any inflammatory reaction. The high content of plasma protein increases the fibroblastic activity of the tissues

In course of time the fibroblasts in the blubbery skin multiply and form new fibrous tissue which makes the skin dense and hard—the typical elephantoid skin. The fibrous induration extends deep down into the lower layers of the skin as far as the sweat glands, interfering with the lymphatics in that region and producing œdemn followed by fibrosis around the sweat glands which are eventually destroyed, so that the skin in elephantiasis is always harsh and dry. In the meantime the surface hypertrophy of the epidermis becomes more and more marked, fissures occur in the ill-developed horny layer and allow micro organisms to invade the corium. In these very large, warty elephantoid limbs repeated attacks of inflammation, originating at the surface and due to secondary bacterial infection, are extremely common and increase the local hypertrophy.

When the obstruction is in the deeper lymphatics, the hypogastric and/or the common iliac, the lymph is dammed back causing lymph varices of the abdominal plexuses and spermatic cord, these may rupture into the peritoneum, kidney, bladder, or tunica vaginalis causing lymph ascites, lymphuria, lymphocele, or, if the obstruction is in the pre-nortic nodes through which pass the lymph vessels from the small intestine and some of those from the pelvis of the kidney and which are also connected by small vessels with the lumbar lymph nodes, this will lead to a reflux of chyle into these plexuses and, if they rupture, chylous ascites, chyluria, and chylocele will result.

The entrance of more and more mature filariæ into these dilated tortuous lymphatics keeps up the irritation of the vessel wall, so that the endothelial cells hypertrophy and form a vascular granulomatous mass which projects into the lumen like a papillomatous growth. The slightest trauma is likely to rupture the blood vessels in these papillomatous growths and cause bleeding into the lymph vessel, with the production of hæmaturia, hæmatocoele, etc.

When the back pressure extends to the lacteals these may dilate and eventually rupture into the intestinal tract this reflux flow of chyle may cause chylous diarrhœa, but a much more serious sequel will be infection of the dilated and damaged lacteals which infection may spread backwards to the larger lymph vessels so that when they rupture serious septic complications are likely to follow.

As long as the lymphatic obstruction is only partial or intermittent, microfilaria will find their way into the blood stream but, if it is complete, the larvæ are confined behind the obstruction in the œdematous and hypertrophic limb and do not appear in the blood stream. Hence it is the rule that in cases of chyluria and lymphatic varix of the cord microfilaria are almost always found in the blood, whereas in elephantiasis of the limbs they are frequently not found (*vide supra*).

The importance of secondary bacterial infection is a controversial subject. Some workers including Leiper (1924), Acton and Rao (1929), and Grace and Grace (1931), believe that staphylococcal or streptococcal infections play an important part in all the inflammatory processes of a filarial attack where as others question this and believe that most of the milder inflammatory reactions except those originating in the skin, can be attributed to the irritation of the filarial secretions and of the body of the worm itself and to an allergic response to these on the part of the host (O'Connor, 1932). All recent work has supported the latter view and has often shown the complete absence of septic organisms in the early inflammatory lesions. The allergic lesions may be some distance from the actual

worm, and the supporting tissues around the genital organs, *e.g.* the cord and testicle, appear to be particularly prone to allergic reaction. The more serious complications, however, such as acute suppurating funiculitis, peritonitis and septicæmia, are obviously due to secondary infection, which may have been hæmatogenous in origin but is more likely to have resulted from direct infection from some hollow viscus into which the varices have ruptured.

*The variations in the lesions produced*—Various explanations have been suggested for the differences in the lesions produced by filarial infections in different individuals, but the following explanation appears to the writer to have most support from his personal experience and from recorded data.

If the complication of sepsis is excluded, there are two factors concerned, both of which are variable, namely (a) the tolerance of the subject to filarial metabolites and (b) the intensity of the infection to which he or she is subjected.

The human host will fall into one of the four following categories—

(i) *tolerant individuals subjected to few infected bites* their tissues do not react to the filarial metabolites, so that the migrations of the pre-adult worm and parturition of the adult cause little or no reaction, and no clinical symptoms, but microfilariae will always be found in the blood once the worms reach maturity.

(ii) *tolerant individuals subjected to a heavy infection* in course of time mechanical blockage of the lymph nodes may occur causing some static œdema, lymph varix or both, without necessarily any lymphangitis or febrile reaction.

(iii) *intolerant individuals subjected to few infected bites at long intervals* little damage is caused to the distal lymph nodes, since they have time to recover between successive passages of the injected larvæ, all of which pass through these nodes to reach the deeper lymph nodes, *e.g.* the juxta-aortic nodes, but here there is a sharp local reaction which eventually leads to blockage, local lymph varix, and chylocele, chyluria, or both. The blockage in this area is not complete, so that microfilariae will be found in the blood. It is only when secondary—usually streptococcal—infection occurs that the serious and often fatal acute funiculitis follows.

(iv) *intolerant individuals subjected to many infected bites throughout the year* the distal lymph nodes, *e.g.* the superficial inguinal and epitrochlear, are damaged early and obstruct the passage of filariæ which come to maturity and parturite in the lymph nodes of the limbs causing periodic attacks of lymphangitis and fever. Soon the lymphatics become completely blocked with resultant elephantiasis, none or few microfilariae can reach the peripheral blood.

There is no reason to believe that tolerance is a fixed quality, and it seems possible that many persons who are at first tolerant in course of time, become intolerant. Further, there will be degrees of tolerance just as there will be many grades of subjection to infection, and it is not suggested that these four categories are sharply defined.

If now, one of the possible common septic complications is added—such as infection from the skin surface in elephantiasis or from some hollow viscus into which a lymph or chyle varix has ruptured, or possibly

a hæmatogenous infection from some septic focus, e.g. an apical abscess or bowel focus—or if the rarer complications of hæmorrhage occurs, it will be seen that a very large variety of clinical manifestations can be accounted for

**Blood picture**—There is no characteristic blood picture in filariasis. With the exception of an inconstant eosinophilia, any of the changes that occur can be attributed to complications.

The sternal-puncture count done in a series of 53 cases of filariasis showed about normal percentages for all the blood elements (Nupier, Das Gupta and Rao 1941); the low percentage of eosinophil myelocytes in cases in which there is an increase in blood eosinophils suggests an extramedullary origin for the latter.

A moderate eosinophilia is common in cases in which there are microfilariae in the nocturnal blood but few or no signs of lymphatic obstruction. During an acute attack of fibrillar lymphangitis there is never any increase of eosinophils and they are not infrequently absent from the peripheral blood.

**Microfilariae in the blood**—Reference should be made to the paragraphs on microfilarial periodicity and on the correlation between fibrillar infection and filarial disease above.

We have found fewer microfilariae in the sternal marrow than in the peripheral blood both during the day and during the night.

**Urine**—There are no characteristic changes in the urine in an ordinary case of filariasis.

In chyluria the urine is typically a milky white, but the colour is not constant; in a doubtful case the urine should be shaken up with ether or chloroform to see if it clears as it will do if the milkiness is due to fat. If there is any doubt the urine should be examined again one to four hours after a fatty meal. In chyluria as also in lymphuria the urine will coagulate on account of the presence of fibrinogen. If it is set aside it will separate into three strata: an upper milky stratum, a middle pinkish one in which the clot will be seen and a lower stratum consisting of cells and debris.

Microfilariae will be found in about fifty per cent of the cases, either in the lowest layer or in the clot or one can demonstrate them by dropping a few threads of cotton wool into the urine allowing these to sink to the bottom and then recovering a thread and examining it under the low power of the microscope.

The fat content will vary from a trace to just over one per cent, and the albumin from a trace to 0.6 per cent.

In lymphuria there is albumin and many lymphocytes but, except for the possible presence of clots, the gross appearance of the urine is little changed.

In hæmatochyluria and hæmatolymphuria there will in addition be red cells and some free hæmoglobin.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Classification**—From the description of the pathological processes given above it will be obvious that the clinical pictures produced may be quite varied. As has been indicated above, there may be a short-lived skin

lesion—redness and induration with some irritation—at the point of entry of the larvæ, but this is inconstant and is seldom remembered by the patient, it therefore need not be considered in the symptomatology. Otherwise, the following classification covers the commonest of the filarial syndromes

- A Signs and symptoms may be absent
- B Lymphangitis and lymphadenitis
  - (i) Uncomplicated
  - (ii) Septic which may subside or lead to
  - (iii) Abscess formation
- C Elephantiasis
  - (i) Uncomplicated
  - (ii) Complicated by sepsis
    - Either may involve
      - a) The limbs
      - b) The scrotum penis or labia
      - c) The mammae
- D Lymph varix superficial or deep
  - (i) Uncomplicated
  - (ii) Rupturing and producing a variety of non septic complications
    - a) Lymphorrhexis of the groin or scrotum
    - b) Filarial synovitis
    - c) Lymphocele (hydrocele)
    - d) Lymphuria
    - e) Lymph ascites
  - (iii) Bleeding as a result of trauma and producing
    - a) Hematospermia
    - b) Hematocele
    - c) Hematuria or hematiolymphuria
  - (iv) Suppurating before or after rupture
- E Chyle varix
  - (i) Uncomplicated
  - (ii) Rupturing and producing a variety of non septic complications
    - a) Chylorrhexis
    - b) Chyluria
    - c) Chylous ascites
    - d) Chylous diarrhoea
  - (iii) Bleeding may occur as in lymph varix and produce a parallel series of complications
  - (iv) Suppurating before or after rupture
- F General symptoms
  - (i) Fever
  - (ii) Allergic manifestations
    - a) Skin manifestations e.g. urticaria
    - b) Extra focal inflammatory swellings especially of the genitals
    - c) Asthma
- G Tachoneurotic manifestations

A full clinical description of each of the very numerous filarial manifestations classified above would be out of place here, but notes are given below on the commoner ones and on those that seem to require some explanation. As far as they are applicable the paragraph identifications used above are followed.

**Incubation period**—It is usually stated that microfilariae first appear in the blood about one year after the larvæ have been injected by the infecting mosquito, but it is probable that the time may be shorter and it is certainly often longer. However, this cannot be considered the incubation period of the disease, which is even more variable. Some indication of this can be obtained from the age at which persons born in an endemic area first show symptoms. In many filarial countries, it is seldom that evidence of lymphatic obstructions appear within fifteen years of the date of ar-

rival in an endemic area although in such cases there will often be a history of periodic febrile attacks with possibly some lymphangitis for several years. However in highly endemic areas this period is frequently much shorter and recently from the South Pacific, cases have been reported in which the incubation period was apparently only three and a half months, lymphangitis of the arm and of the spermatic cord was associated with fever and the finding of the adult worms but not of microfilaria.

**A Symptomless\* infection**—In most endemic areas the majority of the infections are symptomless and in the areas of low and moderate endemicity they remain so indefinitely. However, as fresh infections are super imposed, on account either of sheer weight of numbers of adult worms or of developing intolerance on the part of the host, some of these subjects will later develop symptoms, and naturally the numbers of such persons will vary in direct proportion to the intensity of the infection to which they are subjected (*vide supra*).

**B Lymphangitis and lymphadenitis**—(i) *Uncomplicated*—Attacks may occur at frequent and often regular intervals, it is commonly noted by patients that the attacks recur always at some particular phase of the moon or in women at one particular state of the menstrual cycle. The whole limb and the glands in particular are very painful, and often a red line can be seen running down the limb; in the upper limb the epitrochlear is most commonly involved. The skin over the lymphatic vessels is red and oedematous and the whole limb may be slightly swollen. Painful subcutaneous nodules fixed to the skin will also appear in about 10 per cent of cases. The site of the adult worm may be indicated by a particularly red and tender spot.

The local symptoms are usually accompanied by a febrile attack, temperature  $100^{\circ}\text{F}$  to  $102^{\circ}\text{F}$  with general malaise, headaches and pains all over the body that usually lasts for two or three days. The local symptoms may subside after four or five days.

Not infrequently the general symptoms appear without any definite localizing symptoms and conversely local signs may be unaccompanied by fever.

(ii) If *sepsis*, either haematogenous or otherwise, is added the local and general symptoms will be of a more severe nature, the whole limb being very swollen and red and the temperature running up to  $104^{\circ}\text{F}$  or  $106^{\circ}\text{F}$  daily for a week or more. When such an attack subsides, the limb seldom returns to its previous diameter.

(iii) A local *abscess* at the site of the dead worm may be left (figure 169).

**C Elephantiasis**—After the first few attacks of uncomplicated lymphangitis the limb may return to its previous size but in course of time each attack leads to a slight permanent increase in the size of the limb, and in some cases the increase is insidious and occurs independently of patent attacks of lymphangitis. At first there is ordinary pitting oedema, then

\*The word latent is avoided here because it is often used as an antonym to patent and these infections are certainly patent to anyone who examines the blood at the appropriate time. Further, the word also seems to suggest that at any time the worm or worms causing this infection may suddenly be stirred into activity and the infection may then flare up into a clinically patent one this probably very seldom occurs.

the swelling becomes harder and does not pit, later the whole limb becomes massive, 'brawny', harsh, and dry, and fold- and/or cracks appear, finally these become infected with septic organisms and ulceration occurs. These changes take place most commonly in the arms, forearms and hands, legs and feet (figures 170 and 171), scrotum (figure 172), penis (figure 173), and labia (figure 174), and occasionally in the mammae.

The bizarre deformities that filarial infection will produce are well known, they are capitalized in the East by beggars who parade them for the purpose of obtaining alms, and in the West by writers of textbooks who always seek the most extreme examples for decorating their pages.



Figure 169 Scars of filarial abscesses left arm along main lymphatic vessel

Elephantiasis is simply the effect of lymphatic obstruction and may occur in non-filarial subjects, but no condition produces such effective obstruction as filariasis, and in a filaria-endemic area all cases of elephantiasis may be accepted as filarial in origin unless there is strong evidence to the contrary.

**D Lymph varix**—Varices will occur mainly when the vessels lie superficially, or in loose cellular tissue and are therefore relatively unsupported. Lymph varix may, thus, be found on the surface of a limb, or in the groin (figure 175), in the spermatic cord, in the scrotum, or in the deep abdominal lymphatics, in the bladder wall, or around the kidney.

They may be (1) uncomplicated, or (2) the varix may rupture (a) to the surface in the groin or scrotum producing lymphorrhoea, (b) into a joint, e.g. knee or hip, causing filarial synovitis, (c) into the tunica causing a lymphocele (hydrocele), (d) into the urinary bladder or the kidney pelvis or calices, causing lymphuria, or (e) into the peritoneum causing ascites. A characteristic of lymph varices is their sudden disappearance



Figure 170 Elephantiasis of the left leg and foot



Fig 171 Elephantiasis of scrotum penis and of left thigh leg and foot

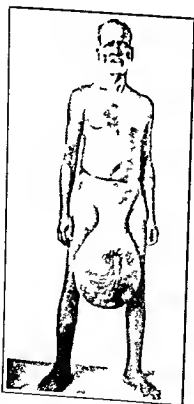


Figure 172 Elephantiasis of the scrotum and prepuce and of both legs and feet



Figure 173 Elephantiasis of penis and scrotum



and reappearance within a few days. Otherwise these conditions are mostly self-explanatory, two only appear to need further description.

(a) The lymphorrhœa produced when a superficial lymph varix in the groin or in the scrotum or when an ill-advised surgical operation is undertaken is very troublesome: there is continuous oozing from the part that may amount to seven or eight ounces of lymph in 24 hours, and thus keeps the patient's clothes continuously wet.

(d) The onset of lymphuria is often insidious but is at other times associated with an aching pain in the bladder or the loin or in both, dysuria, and the passage of clots. There is albumin in the urine and many lymphocytes, but except for the possible presence of clots, the gross appearance of the urine is little changed.



Figure 174 Elephantiasis of the vulva

(iii) The complications caused by the hæmorrhage into the cord, tunica, or urinary tract, being dependent mainly on trauma, are likely to be intermittent. The conditions will alternate with simple leakage of lymph or chyle in the various localities.

(ii) The most serious of the septic complications is acute funiculitis and epididymo-orchitis, which often leads to peritonitis and septicæmia, the infection is usually streptococcal and appears to be hæmatogenous in origin in the majority of cases. The severe general condition is out of all proportion to the local signs, and the onset is that of an acute abdominal emergency. It may occur in a patient who has had a lymph varix or lymphuria for some time, or it may appear as an early, even if not the first, symptom. These septic complications are even more likely to occur in cases of chyluria, where the original source of septic infection may be the intestinal tract (*vide infra*).

(d) Chylous diarrhoea, resulting from the reflux of chyle into the intestinal canal, has been reported, but is apparently a rare filarial manifestation.

(ii) Suppurating. It will not be necessary to discuss the septic complications that may be associated with any one of these ruptures of chyle varices, but in view of the closer association with the intestinal canal, they are likely to be commoner than in the case of lymph varices as has been indicated above.

### F General Symptoms

(i) Fever.—The fever that develops in filariasis is due, either (a) to the worm and/or its metabolites, entirely independently of secondary infection and for this the accepted expression 'filarial fever' is quite appropriate, or (b) to secondary infection of the blocked lymphatic channels, of the elephantoid skin or of the varices, and for this the expression 'secondary fever', to which the words 'of filariasis' might be added if the context did not already make it clear, seems to be unobjectionable\*.

(ii) Allergic manifestations.—There is undoubtedly a form of urticaria that is associated with a filarial attack and often recurs at regular intervals. Similarly, the easiest explanation for the frequent cord and testicular swellings that occur even when the demonstrable filarial lesions are in other parts of the body is on the basis of local allergic response. This may be a specific tropism as suggested by Michael (1941), but is in the writer's opinion, more probably the result of previous local sensitization by migrating filariae.

With regard to asthma, one is on less certain ground but many filarial subjects with asthma give a history of periodic attacks that cannot be correlated with the season or with any change in the patient's environment or habits which may or may not be accompanied by local filarial manifestations. The writer can give no statistical data in support of this 'clinical impression'.

G Psychoneurotic manifestations.—The psychoneurotic effects were apparent in young white and Anglo-Indian girls who living in the poorest parts of certain Indian towns—Calcutta, for example—in close association with the native population frequently became infected with filaria but actually seldom developed any gross deformities on account of the lightness of the infection. The psychoneurotic potentialities of filarial infection however, probably were never appreciated fully until very recently when a large number of members of United States fighting forces were heavily infected in a South Pacific island. The combination of (a) the frequent genital location of the lesions, (b) occasional associated venereal disease, (c) the frequent deformities in the natives with whom they associated, (d) the alarming pictures in medical textbooks to whose influence they were too often directly and indirectly subjected and (e) the ill advised publicity given to the whole incident, led to the development of psychoneurosis in a very large percentage of those with even the mildest somatic lesions. It has been estimated that 90 per cent of the disability of the personnel invalided on account of the infection were of psychoneurotic origin.

\* The fever that occurs when elephantoid skin and tissue become infected has been called elephantoid fever. Not only is the expression 'elephantoid fever' an example of ridiculously misapplied adjective but it is misleading as the fever that develops when secondary infection occurs in other filarial conditions such as lymph or chyle varices has exactly the same aetiology and the expression 'elephantoid fever' applied in these cases would be even more ridiculous.

## DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

This must be considered under a number of headings —

(a) **Duration of residence in an endemic area.**—The time taken for the development of filarial lesions varies in different localities (*vide supra*) a diagnosis of filariasis at an earlier date should be made with considerable caution, but, as there are exceptions to the general rule, it is also dangerous to rule out filariasis entirely on these grounds alone.

(b) **History of a previous attack.**—A history of previous attacks of lymphangitis without any apparent local cause, followed by oedema of the limb that does not always subside, and associated with a mild or severe febrile attack, should arouse great suspicion. Periodic febrile attacks alone in cases in which malaria can be excluded are also suggestive.

(c) **Clinical picture.**—The acute painful descending lymphangitis and lymphadenitis with fever should always be viewed with suspicion in an endemic area, but they may have other causes, the lymphoedema, brawny oedema and elephantiasis of the limbs, genitalia, or breasts will be more characteristic, but are only evidence of lymphatic obstruction—the most common cause of which in the endemic areas is, of course, filariasis—and not *per se* of filariasis itself, and certain other lesions that commonly occur in filariasis, such as hydrocele, are as likely to have some other cause even in endemic areas.

When hypertrophy occurs in other regions where there is a good collateral lymph supply, e.g. the head or face, back or buttock, it will seldom if ever be due to filariasis, and such conditions as *diffuse fibromatosis*, *fibrolipoma* and *von Recklinghausen's disease* should be considered. Oedema due to other common causes, such as cardiac and renal diseases, is usually bilateral but *angioneurotic oedema* like filariasis, will usually be unilateral. Too much weight should not be placed on the non-pitting character of filarial oedema as it takes some time for the fibrotic changes to occur. *Hypopituitarism* may also produce a condition suggestive of filariasis, but the excess tissue will have a different character as well as being bilateral.

(d) **Laboratory examinations.**—(i) **Blood.**—The examination of the blood for microfilariae has its strict limitations as a means of diagnosing filarial disease, see p. 664, correlation between filarial infection and filarial disease.

Summarizing these observations, one can say that the finding of microfilariae indicates filarial infection, but not necessarily filarial disease, failure to find them does not exclude either filarial infection or filarial disease.

In countries where the infection is transmitted by *Culex fatigans*, or other night-biting mosquitoes, and the microfilariae show nocturnal periodicity, the blood for examination must be taken between 10 o'clock at night and 2 o'clock in the morning, whereas in other countries, such as Fiji, where it is transmitted by a diurnal biter, the blood should be taken at about 10 o'clock in the morning.

**Technique.**—Take about 20 cmm of blood preferably an accurately measured quantity into a haemoglobinometer pipette from the finger or ear and make a thick film on a perfectly clean slide. Allow it to dry then stain and dehaemoglobinize with dilute Giemsa's stain. Pour off the stain very carefully—do not wash it off. Dry the film in air and examine with a low power lens. The number of microfilariae will vary from one in many films to hundreds in one film by multiplying the number per thick smear by 50 the number per cmm will be arrived at.

\* It will sometimes be worth employing a concentration method. Take 5 ccm of blood from a vein with a serum syringe into a centrifuge tube containing 10 ccm of distilled water mix thoroughly until the blood is laked place two or three threads of cotton wool in the centrifuge tube centrifuge for 5 minutes with a hand or an electric centrifuge pour off the supernatant fluid pick up the threads with a rough straight piece of wire and examine the sediment with the low power objective. Microfilaria if present will be seen entangled in the cotton threads.

The microfilaria of *W. bancrofti* has a sheath. Figure 176 may help in the differentiation of this microfilaria from those of other filarial worms.

No assistance will be obtained from the blood count. Eosinophilia, though frequently present, is too inconstant a finding to be of either positive or negative value.

(ii) *Immunological tests*—A complement fixation test in which the antigen is prepared from the dog filaria *Dirofilaria immitis*, has proved successful but apparently is dependent on the worm being alive.

The simpler intradermal test has been used more widely, but there is considerable variation in the technique used. A 1 in 8000 *Dirofilaria* antigen with 0.3 per cent phenol of which 0.01 ccm is given by means of a tuberculin syringe, gives a minimum of false positive reactions even in allergic individuals. A wheel of at least 1 ccm in diameter will indicate a positive reaction. A H. Hamilton (personal communication), basing his opinion on experience in the East Indies considers that positive intradermal tests with *dirofilaria* antigen are of little value since about two out of three normal natives will show positive results. A negative test however he considers to be of the greatest value as excluding filarial infection.

These intradermal tests, for which a really satisfactory standard technique has still to be found, indicate rather the reactivity of the host than the presence of the worms. Their particular usefulness will not be in a highly endemic area but to diagnose an obscure lymphangitis in a patient who has at one time been in an endemic area but shows no microfilariae in the blood.

A flocculation test with hydrocele fluid has a limited usefulness.

(iii) *Urine*—The milky urine in chyluria can be identified with the naked eye. For the method of examination for filaria see p. 672.

(e) *Other procedures*—These include cystoscopy and pyclography to identify the sites of the ruptured lymph varices in chyluria, roentgenography to show the presence of calcified filariae, and gland biopsy to identify the adult worm.

#### PREVENTION

1. This must be considered under two headings—

- A The prevention of the spread of infection and
- B The prevention of attacks in those already infected

A *Prevention of the spread of infection*—The reader should refer back to p. 666 where the essentials for transmission and the factors concerned in endemicity are discussed. These are—

- (i) The source of infection microfilariae in the peripheral blood of man
- (ii) The vector mosquito
- (iii) Susceptible man
- (iv) The links between (i) and (ii) and (ii) and (iii)

This aspect of prevention can be discussed shortly under each of the four headings

(i) Man is the only source of microfilariae, but in highly endemic areas a very large percentage of the community will have them in their blood. Further, there is no drug that has more than a very temporary effect on the microfilariae in the blood. Therefore, any attempt at wholesale 'sterilization' of infected individuals is at present out of the question.

Segregation of infected communities should as far as possible be prevented. This may be advisable when labour forces, police, or armies are recruited from endemic areas, and are to be employed in areas where transmission is possible.

Again, the circumstances might be such that it would be advisable to weed out altogether those who had microfilariae in their blood. If this were decided upon, it would be advisable to examine several night-blood specimens from each individual.

In endemic areas, the highest infection rate is amongst the poorer classes of people who have made no attempt to protect themselves from mosquito bites, so that the uninfected should build their houses well away from poor-class dwellings and should see that any servants that are allowed to sleep in their houses are free from blood-microfilariae.

(ii) Control of the transmitting mosquito will provide the most promising line of attack. While at least a dozen species belonging to four genera, *Culex*, *Aedes*, *Taniorhynchus* and *Anopheles*, have been found infected in nature and many others have been infected experimentally, *Culex fatigans* is the predominant transmitter in India and in many other tropical countries. It is a night-feeder, a breeder in dirty and stagnant water, and comparatively local in its habits. It is therefore not very difficult to control around dwellings by the usual measures directed against either larvae or adults. When it is ascertained that some other species is the main transmitter in any locality, special measures must be directed against that species. The subject of mosquito control is beyond the scope of this book, but some further references to anti-mosquito measures will be found on pages 113 to 117.

(iii) There is nothing to be said under this heading as there is little evidence that there is any individual immunity to infection, and there is certainly no evidence that it is possible to induce or increase such immunity.

(iv) In institutions, or even in households, infected persons must be kept in mosquito-proof rooms, or at least under mosquito nets at night, in order to prevent infection of the local mosquitoes.

Conversely, for personal protection in mosquito-ridden endemic areas, screening, mosquito nets, repellents, etc., should always be used, as a precaution against being bitten by infected mosquitoes.

**B The prevention of attacks in those already infected.**—The most important measure is the removal of any septic focus that might, through the blood give rise to infection at the site of a dead worm, or in tissue otherwise damaged by filarial metabolites. This may be an external one, e.g. a pyrexia infection or dermatitis, or an internal one, e.g. pyorrhoea, an apical abscess, septic tonsils, sinuses, gall-bladder, cervix, prostate, or urinary tract, or a bowel lesion, such as chronic amoebiasis or a *Shigella* infection. Elimination of such a focus, e.g. of a subclinical amoebic infection by a course of carbarsone or diodoquin, will often reduce appreciably the number of febrile attacks that a patient suffers.

This precaution should be taken in all infected persons whether they have suffered previous attacks or not

However, as well as by removing septic foci persons who have already had attacks of filarial lymphangitis or some other filarial syndrome can reduce considerably the chances of further attacks by maintaining good general health and, if possible, moving to a cooler climate. A recommendation to this effect usually can be made with a clear conscience, as even if such persons have microfilariae in their blood and there are *Culex fatigans* or other vectors in the locality, they will not be a source of danger to the new community amongst whom they go to live, provided the temperature and humidity are outside the ranges within which transmission occurs (*vide supra*). It is, however, quite unnecessary to recommend such a measure as transfer to a cold climate for an infected person who has suffered no clinical attacks except of course as a means of preventing further infection.

### TREATMENT

**Introduction**—The treatment of this condition is more unsatisfactory than that of almost any other tropical disease but partly because of this and also because of the variety of the clinical conditions that occur in filarial infection, a very great deal has been written on it. It is proposed to treat the subject summarily here. It can best be considered under the following headings—

- A Specific treatment
- B Treatment of secondary infections
- C The relief of lymphatic obstruction
- D Palliative treatment for special conditions

**A Specific treatment**—No true specific has yet been found, but there does not seem to be any valid reason why at some future date one should not be expected. Some drugs when given intravenously appear to destroy the microfilariae, but this does nothing towards helping the patient, for the adult worm, which is not in the blood stream, is left intact. When the adult worm has once settled in the tissues, it is difficult to reach it. The best method would be to inject some drug that is absorbed by the lymphatics, distally to the worm, so that it would get behind it, so to speak, or, in the case of chyluria and other syndromes following chyle varix a drug that would be absorbed from the intestinal tract into the lacteals. It has been suggested that it would be dangerous to destroy all the worms *in situ* at one time, it might certainly cause a sharp reaction in heavily infected cases, but should we find such a drug, it would probably not be very difficult to temper the treatment to the heavily infected.

Antimonyl tartrates were used by Rogers in 1917, but it was shown that these compounds had no effect on the microfilariae although they had certain beneficial results on the pathological lesions produced by the parasite. Various other drugs have been suggested from time to time. The Filariasis Commission of the London School of Tropical Medicine working in British Guiana in 1921 experimented with many preparations but without success. Systematic clinical experiments with various drugs have been carried out by Rao at the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine, during the last twenty years. Patients at various stages of the infection were treated by drugs whose therapeutic efficiency in other parasitic infection was known. The results may be briefly stated—

Of the organo-metallic compounds, soamin (atoxyl) appears to be most satisfactory in controlling the symptoms in the early stages. It can be given subcutaneously, intramuscularly, or intravenously, and is usually non-toxic, although a few exceptionally susceptible persons, who exhibit toxic symptoms even after the first injection, have been encountered. There does not appear to be any appreciable reduction in microfilaria-count, even after a full course of treatment with this drug, but in many cases the patients have remained free from fever and lymphangitis for a long time after treatment with soamin. Certain other arsenic compounds, such as tryparsamide, novarsenobillon and sulfarsenol, have given almost as satisfactory results as soamin, tryparsamide, given in 2 to 3 grammic doses, intravenously, appeared to control the symptoms in chyluria in particular.

Practically all available organic compounds containing antimony were investigated. Of these the pentavalent neostibosan\* and the trivalent compound Fouadin gave the most satisfactory results. The latter drug can be administered subcutaneously, intramuscularly, or intravenously and is non-toxic. The effect of these drugs on the filarial parasites seems to be temporary, as the microfilaria reappear in the blood after the lapse of some days, though it may be several weeks before they reach their previous level. These drugs usually control the inflammation and fever for a considerable time.

A recent addition to the antimony drugs used in this disease is antihomaline—lithium antimony thiomalate. Some workers have claimed good results in reducing the microfilaria counts, for several months at least. It is given intramuscularly in doses of 2 c cm. to 4 c cm. of a 6 per cent solution, according to the patient's tolerance, on alternate days, up to 10 doses.

Several vegetable drugs which are reported to be efficacious in allied helminthic infections were administered orally and in some cases by injection. Oil of chenopodium appeared to give satisfactory results in some cases, when given intramuscularly, it reduced the number of embryos in the circulation and controlled the attacks of lymphangitis, but the injections caused painful reactions.

**B Treatment of secondary infections.**—This should be considered under the headings —

- (i) Local treatment
- (ii) General chemotherapeutic treatment
- (iii) Vaccine treatment
- (iv) The search for and eradication of septic foci

(1) *Local treatment* will naturally depend largely on the part affected and the nature of the lesions. Ulcers on an elephantoid leg will in some cases be benefited by elevation of the limb, followed by the application of powdered sulphonamide to the ulcerated area and tight strapping of the whole affected part of the limb with elastoplast or some similar material which must be left for several days.

For lymphangitis and lymphadenitis, whether there is secondary infection or not, hot fomentations and local application of heat by the infra-red lamp will relieve the pain and reduce the inflammation.

\* Recent work by Culbertson and Rose (1945) suggests that neostibosan, given in much larger doses than hitherto employed, progressively reduces the microfilaria count—to nil in some instances—and that the reduction persists for at least 8 months—the length of duration of observation.

(ii) Of the *general chemotherapeutic* agents the new sulphur drugs have proved very useful in the treatment of secondary infections of all kinds and very satisfactory results have been obtained in the treatment of such very serious conditions as epididymo orchitis and funiculitis by the administration of red prontosil, sulphyridine and sulphathiazole have also proved very effective but it is probable that new and more effective anti-streptococcal drugs e.g. penicillin will be in general use by the time this chapter is printed.

(iii) *Vaccines* have been the mainstay in the treatment of many filarial lesions for some time and it seems doubtful if the good effects claimed and in some cases undoubtedly produced can be attributed to the specific action of the vaccines on the secondary infection. The effect has probably been that of non-specific protein therapy in many cases. This has obviously been the line of thought of some workers who have used typhoid vaccines or milk injections.

A vaccine consisting of 10 million lyophilic streptococci of many strains and 50 million staphylococci of several strains of *aureus* and *albus* has been used by Rao at the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine over a period of 15 years in more than 50 000 cases. The vaccine is given intracutaneously in doses of 0.02 to 0.1 c.c.m. twice weekly up to a total of 15 to 20 injections. The ameliorative effects have been sufficiently encouraging for him to consider that in the absence of a specific this is the best treatment to give even when there is no evidence of secondary infection. Other workers have used autogenous vaccines and claim satisfactory results.

(iv) The septic focus that gives rise to the haematogenous infections should be sought and removed (see p. 670).

**C The relief of lymphatic obstruction**—Attendance to the general health of the patient is important and very often if the patient is sent away to a place with a more bracing climate there will be some reduction in the size of the limb and therefore presumably an improvement in lymphatic drainage.

During an attack of lymphangitis the obstruction is temporarily increased by the inflammation and oedema and the speed with which the permanent fibrotic obstruction develops will depend to a large extent on how long this is allowed to persist so that rapid relief is important. This is helped by rest, elevation of the limb and if it is not too tender firm bandaging with an elastic bandage. Vaccine and non-specific protein treatment are also useful in this capacity.

For relief in the quiescent stage surgeons have devised innumerable operations for the re-establishment of lymphatic drainage with little evidence of success. Better results are obtained even at this stage by bandaging the limb tightly. Several forms of permanent bandage have been devised some are made of elastic webbing and others of more rigid material such as muslin or even canvas but fitted with zip fasteners at the top and bottom so that the pressure can be regulated and released when necessary. By this means support is given to the distal lymph vessels and drainage through collateral lymph channels is encouraged. Massage and exercise aid this.

**D Palliative measures**—Very often the first demand on the attending physician will be for the treatment of the acute lymphangitic attack and this subject has not been specifically covered above. Rest, elevation of the



limb, hot fomentations, infra-red rays or even short-wave diathermy applied locally, followed by soothing applications, such as lead or calamine lotion, should be the immediate local treatment, with aspirin and phenacetin by mouth, if this is insufficient, it will be justifiable to give morphin, but it should seldom be necessary to repeat this. A brisk saline purgative, a light diet, rest and the continuance of the local treatment, and perhaps a sleeping draught for the next few nights will be sufficient to help the patient through an uncomplicated attack, but, if there is any evidence or even any suggestion of there being secondary infection, it will be as well to give sulphonamides and possibly the other treatment recommended for secondary infection (*vide supra*).

In certain cases, in order to relieve the pressure—and therefore the pain—during an acute attack, small skin incisions have been made with a very sharp knife and a local anæsthetic under aseptic conditions; through these, lymph drains and relieves the tension, but the procedure is not to be recommended as permanent sinuses may remain and these are not only troublesome to the patient but may later become infected.

The inconvenience and discomfort of massive elephantiasis of a limb will sometimes be relieved by Auchincloss' operation, or some modification of it. In this operation, two parallel skin incisions joined at each end by a V-shaped incision are made in the long diameter of the limb; a wedge-shaped piece of skin and blubbery tissue is removed, the skin under-cut on each side and then drawn together, and the wound closed. If possible painful spots, from which the patient may indicate that the attacks usually start, are included in the wedges removed. Some temporary relief from the reduction in the diameter and tension in the limb is often achieved by this procedure. Amputation is seldom if ever a justifiable expedient.

Large scrotal swellings have frequently been removed very successfully, but the operation is not without hazard and should be preceded by a blood transfusion. As these swellings may reach a weight of one, or even two hundred pounds, their removal is a very great relief to the patient. This also applies to elephantiasis of the mamma and vulva, but, if operation is undertaken, nothing short of complete removal should be attempted.

Chyluria should be treated by complete rest, the elimination of all fat from the diet, and saline aperients. If there are clots in the bladder, this may have to be washed out with warm boric lotion of 2 per cent sodium citrate in normal saline. Silver nitrate, 1 in 2000 solution; is also recommended as a bladder wash, it has some styptic action. When cystoscopy shows that the leakage is in the bladder and is very limited, fulguration has been used, but its application is very limited.

#### PROGNOSIS

Filariasis is not a fatal infection and the expectation of life of the filarial subject is not materially decreased. There are a few of the rarer complications of obstruction of the deep lymphatics, such as acute suppurating funiculitis which usually leads to peritonitis, that are very fatal, but they occur in a very small percentage of the persons attacked. Again, in cases of extensive elephantiasis, ulceration and sepsis may cause exhaustion and eventually death.

Many filarial subjects attain a considerable age, and it has even been suggested that the enforced inactivity which the disease may entail actually tends to lengthen the expectation of life.

There is every indication that the serious deformities that are associated with this infection only develop in persons subjected to repeated infection continuously over a number of years, so that even those with heavy initial infections will be very unlikely to develop serious sequelæ if they are removed from the source of infection.

There is no indication that filarial lesions of the genitalia lead to impotence or sterility as, even when there are considerable deformities, vital tissues are not involved.

### FILARIASIS DUE TO WUCHERERIA MALAYI

**Historical**—The embryo of *Wuchereria malayi* was described by Brug (1927) from Java and named *Microfilaria malaya* and the adults were first seen and described by Rao and Maplestone (1910) in a biopsy specimen taken from a patient in North Travancore.

**Geographical distribution**—This is a parasite of rural areas with a patchy distribution. *Wuchereria malayi* is the chief filarial parasite in Malaya. It is common in Sumatra, Java, Borneo, Celebes, New Guinea, Indo China, South China, India and Ceylon. In India, it is found in a few places in North Travancore, Orissa, the Central Provinces, Santal Parganas, East Bengal, and Cachar (Assam).

### ETIOLOGY

**The parasite**—The male adult worm measures 22 mm in length and 0.08 mm in diameter. The oesophagus is 1.12 mm long and the alimentary canal is straight and ends in the cloaca. The tail is spirally curved and shows three turns. There are two pairs of large papillæ, one immediately in front of, and the other just behind the cloaca and in close apposition to them there are two pairs of smaller papillæ. There are two spicules which are unequal and dissimilar, and a small boat shaped gubernaculum.

The female worm measures 55 mm in length with a diameter of 0.16 mm. The mouth is terminal without appendages or lips. The vulval opening is 0.98 mm from the tip of the tail. The general course of the uterus and its branches ending in ovaries is practically the same as in the female of *Wuchereria bancrofti*.

The ovum varies greatly in size, measuring 0.027 mm long and 0.018 mm broad.

The average length of the microfilaria in the fresh state is 263 microns, while in smear preparations it is 186 microns (177-230 microns). The most distinctive character in the microfilaria of this species is the presence of two discrete nuclei at the tip of the tail (see figure 176).

The adult *Wuchereria malayi* lives in the lymphatics of the extremities in man and the sheathed embryos circulate in the blood showing a nocturnal periodicity.

**Intermediate hosts**—The chief transmitters of the parasite are *Taniorhynchus* (*Mansonioides*) *annulifera*, *T. (Mansonioides) uniformis*, and *T. (Mansonioides) indiana* (India and Malay), *T. (Mansonioides) longipalpis* (Malaya), *Anopheles barbitrostris* (Celebes), and *Anopheles hyrcanus* var *sinensis* (China), other potential transmitters are *Anopheles hyrcanus* var *negerrimus*, *Armigeres obturbans*. In India *Taniorhynchus* spp breed on the common water plant *Pistia stratiotes* found in ponds and tanks (Iyengar, 1935), while in Assam they breed also on the water hyacinth and 'dol grass' (Fraser, 1938) and in Malaya in mangrove swamps.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The pathological lesions produced by this parasite consist mainly of lymphatic obstruction of the extremities. There seems little support for the oft-repeated statement that the lesions are usually in the upper extremities in *W. malayi* infection (Ran, 1936). Periodical inflammatory attacks

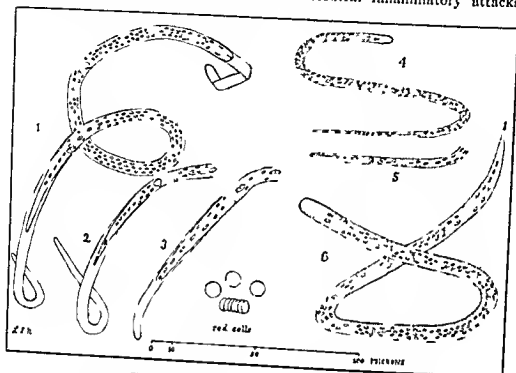


Figure 176 Showing the microfilariae of

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Sheathed</p> <p>1 <i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i></p> <p>2 <i>W. malayi</i></p> <p>3 <i>Loa loa</i></p> | <p>Unsheathed</p> <p>4 <i>Alansonella ozzardi</i></p> <p>5 <i>Acanthocheilonema perlati</i></p> <p>6 <i>Onchocerca volvulus</i></p> |
|--|---|

of the lymphatic vessels and glands, occasionally ending in abscesses, are common. No case of genital affection, of hydrocele, or of chyluria due to this parasite has so far been reported.

## PREVENTION

This consists in anti-mosquito measures and in the prevention of bites by infected mosquitoes. In North Travancore, Sweet and Pillai (1937) have reported successful results in the eradication of *Wuchereria malayi* infection by a periodical hand-removal of the *Pistia* plant from the ponds, but, as in some localities at least, since the mosquito can live on other plants (Fraser, loc. cit), this method may prove disappointing.

## TREATMENT

No specific is known. The treatment of the acute and chronic stages of the diseases produced by these parasites is on the same lines as in the case of infection with *Wuchereria bancrofti*.

## FILARIASIS DUE TO *LOA LOA* INFECTION

**Definition**—*Loiasis*, or *Loa loa* infection, is caused by the filarioid worm, *Loa loa* (Cobbold 1896), a parasite that wanders in the subcutaneous tissue, giving rise to fugitive swellings (Calabar swellings), and to a local reaction in the eye when they pass under the conjunctiva. The intermediate hosts are certain tabanid flies of the genus *Chrysops*, which transmit the infection to man by their bite.

**Geographical distribution**—It has a wide distribution in West and Central Africa, particularly along the River Congo and its tributaries. A parasite of the same genus was reported by Maplesone (1938) from India; he gave it the name *Loa inquirenda*, provisionally.

**Parasites**—The average length of the male is 30 to 34 mm and the breadth about 0.4 mm. The cuticle is embossed with protuberances. The female varies in length from 50 to 70 mm and is about 0.5 mm broad. The microfilaria is the same length as that of *Wuchereria bancrofti*, and has a sheath (see figure 176).

The microfilariae exhibit diurnal periodicity, and are transmitted by *Chrysops dimidiata* and *Chrysops silacea*.

The infective third-stage larva appear at the proboscis of these flies in about ten days, but their growth to the adult stage in man is believed to take several years, and they may live fifteen years.

The baboon also acts as a host to this infection.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Generally the worm infection does not give rise to any signs or symptoms. However, in some cases, fugitive swellings as large as a hen's egg, known as 'Calabar swellings', occur on the course of the worm's migrations. The worms migrate in the arms, across the bridge of the nose, across the eyeball under the conjunctiva, or in any other part of the body. The swellings are hot, tender and painful, they last for a few days or weeks, and then disappear suddenly, and they are probably allergic in nature.

Other signs and symptoms of disease produced by this parasite are urticaria, hydrocele, lymphatic oedema, and abscess.

### DIAGNOSIS

The typical history of transient swellings and the occasional passage of the worm across the eye is almost diagnostic, and the worm can sometimes be seen under the skin especially over the bridge of the nose, and removed for identification. Puncturing or splitting the skin around the swellings will often reveal the microfilariae, but these are also found in the peripheral blood. The specimen should be taken about midday. Group intradermal and immunological reactions are also positive in this infection.

### PREVENTION

This consists in personal protection from the bites of tabanid flies and measures to control these flies.

### TREATMENT

No drug so far used has any lethal effect on the parasite in the human system. Cold applications of sedative lotions and compresses relieve the

pain. The annoying migrations of the worm may be cut short by surgical removal as they come near to the surface when they cross the bridge of the nose, this is a convenient place to catch them.

## ONCHOCERCIASIS

**Definition**—Onchocerciasis or infection by the helminthic parasite, *Onchocerca volvulus* (Leuckart, 1893), is characterized by tumours in the subcutaneous tissues which appear in different parts of the body, it is transmitted from man to man by a gnat (*Simulium*). The condition is found in a wide area in tropical Africa, from Senegal to the Belgian Congo, as far east as the Sudan and Kenya Colony, and in circumscribed areas in southern Mexico and Guatemala. In Guatemala, the infection is chiefly found in coffee plantations on the Pacific slopes of Guatemala at elevations between 1,800 and 6,000 feet. The parasite found in Guatemala has been given the name *Onchocerca cacutiens* (Brumpt, 1919), but it is now believed to be identical with *Onchocerca volvulus*.

**Parasites.** The male adult is 20 to 40 mm long and 0.2 mm broad, the tail is bulbous at the tip and terminates in a single spiral turn. The female is 330 to 450 mm long and 0.4 mm broad and ovoviparous. The microfilariae are sheathless, they measure 150 to 350 microns long and 6 to 9 microns broad (see figure 176). The microfilariae are found in the subcutaneous tissues, especially in the vicinity of a nodule, they are also occasionally found in a lymph node, but they do not reach the blood stream.

**Intermediate hosts**—The embryos undergo development in the thoracic muscles of a *Simulium* fly in the same manner as those of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in *Culex fatigans*. The species in Africa is *Simulium damnosum* and in Guatemala, *Simulium avarum*, *Simulium ochraceum* and *Simulium mooseri*. These flies breed in swiftly moving streams, the larvae attach themselves to stems, twigs and leaves of plants on the banks or floating on the water. The infection is most common in adult males, but tumours have been reported in children even as young as two months.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

*Onchocerca volvulus* produces tumours of the skin varying in size from a pea to a hen's egg. These firm fibrous tumours give rise to considerable pain in the early stages, but only rarely break down and form abscesses. They are particularly painful when they occur near the joints. In aged patients they are reported to form the starting point of neoplasms. Lymphatic obstruction of the scrotum, formation of hydrocele, enlargement of testes and abscess formation produced by the worm have been recorded. An allergic dermatitis may occur and patients sometimes complain of pruritus.

The nodules vary in number from one or two up to 150, but in most endemic areas there are seldom more than five or six in one individual. The number of lesions apparently depends on the degree of the infection in the locality of endemicity, the number of naturally infected flies may vary from about 5 per cent to 33 per cent in highly endemic areas.

In Africa, 95 per cent of the nodules are in parts of the body other than the head, but in Guatemala, the distribution is reversed and most nodules appear on the head.

There are instances in which the worms are present in the tissues without producing clinical nodules

When the lesions occur on the head epileptiform convulsions due to erosion of the cranium by the tumours of the periosteum have been reported

**Eye lesions**—Photophobia, discomfort and irritation associated with conjunctivitis, epiphora, and amblyopia may precede other visible changes and punctate keratitis, and inflammation of the iris, ciliary body and choroid may follow. Microfilariae may eventually invade the optic nerve and cause blindness. The eye changes are also thought to be toxic or allergic in nature and due to metabolites produced by the worm in other parts of the body, as they are sometimes unassociated with the actual presence of the microfilariae in the eye. Further, the changes are more pronounced in persons on a poor diet

#### DIAGNOSIS

A biopsy of a nodule will confirm the diagnosis. It is usually possible to demonstrate microfilariae in skin biopsies taken near the nodule in a scraping from a small skin slit (see p 508), or in the exudate obtained by puncturing the skin near the nodule. Microfilariae are also found in a snipping from the conjunctiva in cases of eye infection. The intradermol and complement fixation tests with *Dirofilaria immitis* will give positive results

The high eosinophil count is the rule, it may be as high as 10 000 per c mm, or 75 per cent of the total leucocyte count

#### PREVENTION

Measures against *Simulium* have not been very successful and Strong believes that an extensive nodule removal campaign that reduces the local reservoir of infection is the most profitable preventive measure

#### TREATMENT

Excision of the tumours as they appear is the best means of avoiding subsequent complications. Fouadin (see p 726) appears to have some effect on the lesions and good results have been claimed from the injection of a 0.1 per cent solution of plasmochem into the anterior chamber of the eye

#### REFERENCES

- ACTON H W., and RAO S S (1929) The importance of secondary infection in the causation of filarial lymphangitis *Indian Med Gaz* 64, 801
- (1930) Factors which determine the differences in the type of lesions produced by *Filana bancrofti* in India *Indian Med Gaz* 65, 620
- BAHR P H (1912) *Filariae and Elephantiasis in Fiji* London: Witherby and Co
- CRAIG C F and FALST E C (1943) *Clinical Parasitology* Lea and Febiger Philadelphia
- DRINKER CECIL K, FIELD M E and HOMANS J (1934) The Experimental Production of Edema and Elephantiasis as a Result of Lymphatic Obstruction *Amer J Physiol* 108, 509
- DRINKER CECIL K, FIELD M E, WARD H A and LYONS C (1935) Increased Susceptibility to Infection following Blockage of Lymph Drainage *Amer J Physiol* 112, 74
- FRASER G (1938) *Putia striatipes* and *Mf malayi* *Indian Med Gaz*, 73, 235

- GRACE A W and GRACE F B (1931) *Researches in British Guiana* No 3 Memoir London School of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene London
- IVENGAR M O T (1933) *Filaria* in Travancore *Indian J Med Res*, 20, 921
- (1935) *Biology of Indian Mosquitoes that attach themselves to the Roots of Water Plants* *Proc Roy Entomol Soc*, 10, 9
- (1938) *Studies in the Epidemiology of Filariasis in Travancore* *Indian Med Res Mem* No 30 Calcutta
- (1939) Entry of filaria larva into the body cavity of the mosquito *Parasitology* 28, 190
- (1939) Differentiation of microfilariae *Wuchereria bancrofti* and *Filaria malayi* *Indian J Med Res* 27, 563
- LANE C A (1933) Mechanical basis of periodicity in *Wuchereria bancrofti* infection *Lancet* ii 399
- LEIPER R T (1924) *Report of the Filariasis Commission of the London School of Tropical Medicine* London School of Tropical Medicine Research Memoir Series No 7
- LOW G C (1908) The unequal distribution of filariasis in the tropics *Trans Soc Trop Med and Hyg*, 1, 84
- MAPLESTONE P A (1933) A New Filarial Worm from a Human Being *Indian Med Gaz* 73, 8
- MAPLESTONE P A and RAO S S (1939) The tail of the male *Wuchereria bancrofti* *Rec Indian Mus* 41, 35
- MICHAEL PAUL (1914) Filariasis among the Navy and Marine Personnel *US Navy Med Bull* 42, 1059
- NAPIER L E DAS GUPTA C R and RAO S S (1940) Sternal Punctures in Filariasis *Indian J Med Res* 28, 605
- O'CONNOR F W (1923) *Researches in the Western Pacific* London J C Philp and Son
- (1932) The aetiology of the disease syndrome in *Wuchereria bancrofti* infection *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med and Hyg* 26, 13
- RAY P N and RAO S S (1939) Chyluria of filarial origin *British J Urol*, 11, 48
- RAO S S and RAO S S (1924-1941) *Annual Reports of Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine* Bengal Gov Press Alipore
- (1936) Filariasis in Patnagarh *Indian J Med Res*, 23, 871
- RAO S S and MAPLESTONE P A (1940) The adult of *Microfilaria malayi*, Brug 1927 *Indian Med Gaz*, 75, 159
- SWEET W C and PILLAI V M (1937) Clearance of *Psittacus stratiotes* as a control measure for *F. malayi* infection *Indian Med Gaz* 72, 730

## DRACONTIASIS, OR GUINEA-WORM DISEASE\*

	PAGE
DEFINITION	694
HISTORICAL	694
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	694
ÆTIOLOGY	694
<i>Morphology of the parasite</i>	694
<i>Life cycle</i>	695
<i>Intermediate host (cyclops)</i>	696
EPIDEMIOLOGY AND FACTORS IN TRANSMISSION	696
(a) <i>Special social and sanitary circumstances</i>	696
(b) <i>Suitable water supply</i>	697
<i>Incidence year by year—Season</i>	
(c) <i>The presence of cyclops</i>	698
(d) <i>Introduction of infection</i>	698
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY	698
<i>Incubation period—General reaction—Local reaction—Site—Multiple infection—Secondary infection—Cellulitis—Sub acute abscess formation—Suppuration—Fibrotic changes</i>	699
IMMUNITY	700
<i>Natural—Acquired</i>	700
DIAGNOSIS	701
<i>Intradermal test</i>	701
<i>Antigen—Procedure—Result</i>	
PREVENTION	701
<i>Education and propaganda</i>	701
<i>Improvement in water supply</i>	701
<i>Elimination of cyclops</i>	702
<i>Physical—Chemical—Biological</i>	
TREATMENT	702
<i>The general reaction—Local reaction—Local inflammation at the point of emergence of worm—Cellulitis along course of dead worm—Removal of the worm—Sequelæ</i>	702
PROGNOSIS	703

---

\* By the author and Dr S Sundara Rao filariasis research worker Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine



**Definition**—Dracontiasis, or guinea-worm disease, is caused by the presence of large nematode worms, *Dracunculus medinensis*, in the tissues; it is characterized by a prodromal systemic reaction, local irritation at the site of the worm, septic complications at the point of its emergence, and local fibrotic sequelæ. The disease occurs endemically in certain relatively dry regions in the tropics and subtropics, is very local in its distribution, and is associated with a specific set of conditions regarding water supply.

**Historical**—Guinea worm infection is one of the oldest of tropical diseases. The expression 'fiery serpent' in ancient Hebrew literature probably refers to this disease. It seems possible that Moses knew the method of twisting the worm out on a stick, and that the symbol of the snake on the stick that he made was a model of this method of extraction. The disease was named *Dracontiasis* by Galen (AD 131 to 210). The early Arabian and Persian physicians were well aware of this infection, while the accounts of Plutarch (AD 50-117), Alexander, and others show that in the regions adjoining the Red Sea it was highly endemic even before the Christian era.

Paulus Æginus wrote stating that in India and Egypt a class of worms called 'dracunculi' formed in the muscular parts of the body and moved under the skin and that after a time the skin opened and the head came out. Avicenna, the Arabian physician named the worm *tana medina* as it was common in Medina.

Our present knowledge about the spread of this infection dates from 1869 when Fedchenko a Russian biologist in Turkestan showed that the embryo of *Dracunculus medinensis* undergoes developmental changes in cyclops. He observed the infected cyclops up to the fourth week and stated that the embryo completed its metamorphosis on the twelfth day. Fedchenko's observations, which incidentally initiated a new principle in medicine was subsequently confirmed by other workers including Manson who in 1893 repeated the experiments in London and found that the ecdysis of the guinea worm embryo in the local cyclopidae took place in the sixth week. Leiper working in Africa in 1907, added further confirmation and produced the disease experimentally in monkeys.

In 1913 Liston, Turkhud and Bhaye extended this work further and demonstrated at the Haffkine Institute, Bombay, that a man who drank water containing infected cyclops developed the worm in 348 days.

**Geographical distribution**—Guinea-worm disease is widely distributed in the tropics. It occurs in Asia, Africa, and South America.

In Asia, it is found in certain parts of India, Iran, Arabia, and Turkestan, and south east Russia, in Africa in the Nile Valley, in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan in Uganda, in Lake Chad district and Bornu, and on the West Coast and in South America, in the Caribbenn Islands, and in British Guiana and Brazil.

In India, the infection is confined principally to the western half of the peninsula. It occurs extensively in the Bombay Presidency except in some coastal areas south of Bombay city, in the Nizam of Hyderabad's Dominion in Madras Presidency, in Rajaputana (except the desert areas) and Central India in the east part of the Central Provinces in the North-West Frontier Province, in Jammu district of Kashmir, and in certain parts of the Punjab.

The disease does not occur at all in the north-east part of India, namely, in Bengal, Assam, and the adjoining provinces, nor in Ceylon, Malaya, or the East Indies (except possibly in some localities in the Dutch East Indies), Australasia, China, or the Pacific Islands. Nor has it been reported from Europe or North America.

#### ÆTIOLOGY

**Morphology of the parasite**—A fully-grown female worm is 32 cm to 120 cm (12 to 48 inches) long and 15 to 17 mm (about 1/16th inch) in

diameter. The worm is round, smooth and milky-white in colour. The head end is tapering and rounded. The tail, also tapering, is curved like a hook. The mature worm is packed with embryos from head to tail, there are about three million embryos in each worm.

The male worm apparently measures from 12 to 40 mm long and 0.4 mm broad, but few specimens have been seen and these have mostly come from experimentally infected animals.

Embryos are 0.5 to 0.75 mm long ( $1/42$  inch). They have a flattened body and a tapering tail. They lie coiled up on discharge from the worm but they soon stretch out in water and begin to swim vigorously with a tadpole-like motion. They can live in clean water for a week and much longer in muddy water. There is no further development of the embryos until they enter the cyclops.

**Life Cycle**—While in water, the embryos (first-stage larvæ) are swallowed by the cyclops (as many as ten may be seen in one cyclops), and migrate to the body cavity where they undergo further development, at the end of the fifth day the embryos lose their tapering tails, they moult on the 9th day, develop a bilobed tail, and grow much longer. All these changes take about two weeks in the summer months. There is no further growth inside the cyclops.

When infected cyclops are swallowed by man in drinking water, they are killed by the gastric juice in the stomach. The larvæ which were sluggish hitherto become very active and escape from the dead cyclops, they pierce the intestinal wall and reach the loose retroperitoneal tissue where they develop further, and then migrate to other parts of the body of their definitive host. The full development to the mature adult stage takes between eight months and one year.

When the female becomes gravid, it migrates to the surface of the body, usually to those parts that are most likely to come in contact with water, *e.g.* legs and feet. When the worm reaches the site of choice it secretes some irritant material which amongst other things causes a local reaction with the formation of a blister. Eventually, when it comes in contact with water, the blister breaks, and the uterus prolapses through the mouth or through a rupture in the body-wall of the worm, appears at the mouth of the opening, bursts, and discharges a milky fluid swarming with larvæ. These pass into the water, where they may live free up to about a week, after which they die, unless meanwhile they are swallowed by the cyclops present in the water, when the whole cycle may be repeated.

The discharge of larvæ is determined by temperature, in nature by contact with cold water, but it can be precipitated by the application of a piece of ice, or an ethyl-chloride spray. The migration of the adult worm may also be determined by thermotaxis, as in Rajputana, where *bhisties* (water-carriers) carry water in leather bags on their backs, and worms often appear on the back. In the people who carry water in pots on their shoulders or head, the worm may appear on the neck, or even on the head itself.

Whilst there is no evidence that man ever enjoys complete immunity from invasion by this worm, there is evidence from human experiments in Bombay, in which volunteers were fed large numbers of infected cyclops and only one developed a single worm infection, and from numerous animal experiments, that only a small percentage of the larvæ ingested by man reach maturity.

**Intermediate host (cyclops)**—Cyclopidae are present in many collections of fresh water and are found throughout the year. They breed actively in the summer; they are fairly abundant in the rainy season (July through September) and they decrease slightly in the winter months. They have a pear-shaped symmetrical body with a forked tail, two pairs of antennae, five pairs of swimming legs, and one eye. They measure about a twelfth of an inch and are just visible to the naked eye. There are about six species of cyclopidae in India. They are

*Mesocyclops leuckarti*,      *Mesocyclops tauricus*  
*Mesocyclops hyalinus*,      *Paracyclops fimbriatus* and  
*Mesocyclops decipiens*,      *Microcyclops kartei*

Other species of Cyclopidae in which development may take place include *coronatus magnus*, *prasinus serrulatus*, *quadricornis strenuus*, *ternalis*, *viridis* and *vermifer*. All of these feed readily upon the guinea-worm larvae.

Cyclops thus infected do not live as long as uninfected ones, but they have been found to live up to two months. The average life of cyclops is about three months, but this period is considerably affected by the temperature of the water and its acidity or alkalinity; they die when the water is warmed to a temperature of 60°C.

#### EPIDEMOLOGY AND FACTORS IN TRANSMISSION

It will be seen from the above description of the transmission cycle that three conditions are necessary, namely: (i) contamination of the water supply with larvae by the definitive host, man; (ii) the presence of suitable cyclops in the water supply to act as intermediate host, and (iii) consumption by a susceptible host of the water contaminated with infected cyclops. The conditions necessary for the disease to become endemic are therefore—

(a) a very special set of social and sanitary circumstances in which man firstly steps barefooted into the water when taking water for drinking or other purposes (theoretically man might contaminate the water by the immersion of other parts and other animals might act as definitive host) and secondly drinks the water from this source without filtration or boiling.

(b) a water source in which cyclops will live and multiply.

(c) the actual presence of cyclops of certain species in sufficient numbers in this water, and

(d) the commencement of the cycle by the introduction of an infected person into the community.

We will consider each of these conditions in association with known facts regarding the epidemiology of the disease.

(a) **Special social and sanitary circumstances**—Dracontiasis is known to be limited in its distribution to towns and villages where such conditions exist.

The water supply of a large number of villages in tropical and sub-tropical countries is from tanks (i.e. reservoirs) or step wells. At several points around the tank are stone, brick or concrete steps that extend into the tank two or three feet below the water level. It is the local practice to walk down these steps into the water in order to fill the water pot con-

veniently even if the tank is reserved for drinking water which is not always the case. In fact in many instances the villager will first wash himself and his clothes then wash out his mouth with the water and drink some and finally fill his or her water pot. The step well is a large shallow well with steps leading down to and into the water as in the case of the tank. (Figure 177)

TI disease does not occur in towns where there is a pipe borne water supply from a protected source or in villages where parapeted draw wells pump wells or tube wells are used exclusively. Further the disease has disappeared from towns and villages when the water supply has been changed from the former to the latter type

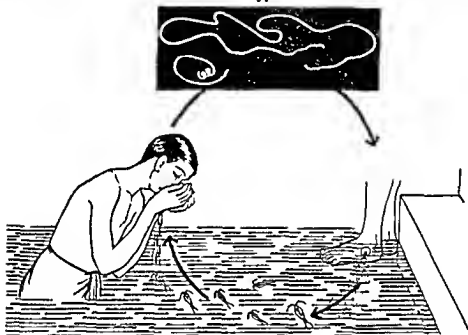


Figure 177 Indicates the transmission cycle in guinea worm disease

The type of water supply in use is often not a matter of free choice for the community but is determined by soil and climatic conditions for example in very dry countries all natural water supply must of necessity be from deep wells and the disease does not occur

Finally, educated individuals who have taken the precaution of boiling or filtering their drinking water from these sources have avoided the disease.

(b) **Suitable water supply**—Cyclopidae are bottom feeders and do not flourish in deep wells they require a certain amount of organic matter for their food they are susceptible to chemical and physical changes in the water they fall an easy prey to fish of many species and finally they naturally die out when a well dries up

The disease is confined to areas of moderate rainfall. Rao has shown that the average rainfall in the endemic areas is between 10 and 40 inches a year. It does not occur in the Rajaputana and Sind deserts which often have no rainfall during a whole year whereas in the neighbouring Central Indian States where the average annual rainfall may not be more than

12 inches, there are many heavily infected areas; and the disease never appears in areas of very heavy rainfall, such as Bengal and Assam in eastern India. In provinces such as Bengal where the rural water supply is almost exclusively from large tanks, it is probable that fish, which are constantly present in these large bodies of water, play an important part in destroying cyclops and preventing the disease.

Further, the incidence year by year is dependent on the regular recurrence of suitable seasonal conditions, and deviations from these conditions have often been shown to affect the incidence. Instances have been recorded where the disease has disappeared for several years after a flooding, which has washed out the cyclops from the wells, reduced the organic matter, and changed the chemical and physical composition of the water, and similarly after a drought, which has caused the wells to dry up.

On the other hand, in villages in which the normal annual rainfall is on the high side, 30 to 40 inches, a drought that merely reduces but does not dry up the wells will be followed by an increase in the incidence of the disease.

The season when most infections occur is at the end of the hot weather just before the monsoon rains arrive, at this time, the cyclops are present in the largest numbers as the water is shallow and the organic matter is at its highest concentration. Further, the concentration of cyclops makes the water particularly infective at this time of year.

The incubation period is usually about one year, and Rno's collected data show that the curve of the date of onset of symptoms starts to rise in March, reaches its peak in July, and falls again until October, after which it remains at a low level.

(c) *The presence of cyclops.*—Conditions may be suitable for cyclops without cyclops being present, and the temporary or long-standing immunity from the disease of certain village communities has been shown to be due to this fact. After cyclops have been washed out by flooding or dried out by drought, it is often several years before the well becomes restocked with cyclops. Experiments with animals and even human experiments (Liston, Turkud, & Bhawe, 1913) suggest that a heavy dose of infected cyclops have to be swallowed to ensure establishment of infection.

(d) *Introduction of infection.*—Several instances have been reported in which villages in the endemic area have remained free from infection until an infected individual from a neighbouring village arrived and infected the local well. Similarly, in an infected village when a well is used by one family or a very limited community, the family or the community may remain free from the disease for some time, until a member becomes infected by drinking from another well.

#### PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMOLOGY

The third-stage larvæ enter the tissues of the definitive host by passing through the mucous membrane and muscular coats of the intestine to reach the loose retro-peritoneal-tissue, where the worms mature and mate. The mature gravid female now migrates in the subcutaneous tissues to a limb where it lies with its head near the extremity of the limb and the body coiled in the local subcutaneous tissues or extended along the full length of the limb. Up to this time the worm has apparently produced no pathological changes in the body of the host; this therefore constitutes the incu-

bation period; it lasts about one year, and during this period there are no indications of infection except perhaps during the last week or so when the worm may possibly be felt by gentle palpation. Patients sometimes state that they have felt the worm moving under the skin. At this point, the worm secretes some apparently toxic substance that usually causes both a general and a local reaction in the subcutaneous tissues.

The onset of the general reaction is usually without any warning, the patient feels giddy and ill, and may collapse, he vomits, his pulse is feeble and his heart sounds faint, he is cyanosed or very pale, his face may swell and there is usually a painful swelling of the limb that is subsequently the site of the local reaction, and he may suffer from an urticarial rash all over the body that is intensely irritating. There is usually a slight leucocytosis that is mainly due to an increase in eosinophils. This attack which has been described as being allergic in nature but which is not unlike the type of attack that may follow a severe insect sting or even the bite of a mildly poisonous snake, usually passes off in a few hours and then the local signs become more prominent. Subsequent attacks whether in the same season or the following year, tend to be milder, this seems to be against the theory that they are allergic in nature, and suggests rather that the reaction is due to some toxic substance from the worm to which in time the patient develops some tolerance.

The local reaction follows immediately, or is coincident with the general reaction.

The site of the local reaction is usually the ankle or the foot but varies according to the circumstances. In India, in about 90 per cent of cases the worms point here as these are the parts of the body which commonly come in contact with water, this is probably true of most endemic areas. The worm may appear, however, in other parts of the body also *e.g.* on the arms, head, neck, chest, back, abdomen, loins, groins, and scrotum and very rarely on the tongue and eye-lids.

Generally a patient shows only one worm at a time and when this has discharged its larvæ or has been removed, the patient enjoys a little respite until the next year when a fresh worm may appear. Cases of multiple infection are, however, not uncommon. A patient may show two or more worms in the same part or in different parts of the body, either simultaneously, or, as is more common, at short intervals. In one individual from Rajputana as many as twenty-two worms were removed at the School of Tropical Medicine, Calcutta during one year, and as many as 56 worms have been found in one person at the same time.

There is local red induration and vesiculation, and eventually a blister is formed which if the contents are examined will be shown to consist of a clear yellow serous fluid with neutrophils, eosinophils, and mononuclear cells, but not usually any larvæ. The blister continues to enlarge, and at the end of four or five days it may have attained a size of two to two and-a-half inches in diameter, it eventually bursts and then from its tunnel in the subcutaneous tissues the worm protrudes a portion of its uterus that has prolapsed through its mouth or through a rupture in the body wall near the head, this loop of uterus bursts and the larvæ swim out.

This hole is kept patent by the worm, which at intervals protrudes its uterus and discharges larvæ, it is an easy point of entry for septic organisms, as the uterus is protruded into a septic environment and drawn in again so that secondary infection is certain to occur, but provided the

worm remains alive the local reaction at the mouth of the tunnel in which it lives is not usually very severe. It may amount to an area of redness and induration about an inch and a half in diameter, tenderness, some lymphangitis, and often a little tenderness of the lymphatic glands in the groin. There are seldom any constitutional symptoms.

The worm may, however, die before it reaches the surface, if this occurs or if the worm is broken while being extracted, there will be a sharp local reaction along the whole length of the site of the dead worm. This may only amount to cellulitis which eventually subsides, or there may be sub-acute abscess formation at different points along the site of the worm, or the site may become secondarily infected and suppurate, with the severe local and general reaction. This suppuration may involve important structures, tendon sheaths, joints, or even blood vessels, and cause serious complications, and even death from pyæmia or septicæmia.

Finally, when the inflammation subsides, there may be fibrotic changes along the whole site of the worm, which may cause scar formation, pain and contractures, or the remains of the worm may become calcified and cause painful lumps, chronic arthritis, tenosynovitis, or neuritis.

The pathological processes can thus be summarized —

- (i) A period of invasion lasting up to a year that is not associated with any pathological changes.
- (ii) A general reaction associated with the discharge of some toxic substance by the mature gravid female worm.
- (iii) A local reaction ending in blister formation in the subcutaneous tissues at the point of discharge of these toxic substances.
- (iv) An area of inflammation and induration due to secondary infection at the point of emergence of the worm.
- (v) Cellulitis, subacute abscess formation or suppuration along the course of the worm if it dies or is killed.
- (vi) Fibrosis or calcification with various possible complications, chronic arthritis, synovitis or neuritis.

### IMMUNITY

There is no evidence that there is any natural, race, class, sex or age, immunity, on the other hand, not all those that swallow infected cyclops suffer from the disease.

In the human experiment referred to above, only one out of five subjects became infected, and very frequently many of the members of a household whose well is heavily infected will escape infection. But Powell (1904) reports an incident in which 21 members of a party drank water from an infected well, during a visit of two days only, seven of them became infected and showed symptoms from 11½ to 13 months later.

There is no evidence that any immunity is acquired, as many instances are reported in which patients have been infected year after year, in some instances these persons have only been subjected to infection for a short time each year while visiting their native villages. Again, in a village in Saugor district in India 155 out of a population of 1095 were infected, of these 121 had single and 34 multiple infections. The large percentage of multiple infections in this village certainly does not suggest the development of any special immunity after the first infection.\*

\* A Poisson series would give only about 15 second infections

It would appear therefore that there is a personal factor that accounts for some individuals being more easily infected than others. This factor may not necessarily be of the nature of a true immunity, but it may well be some variable physiological factor, such as gastric acidity.

The fact that the general reaction shows a tendency to decrease with successive attacks has been referred to above, this suggests development of tolerance to the 'toxin' from the worm.

### DIAGNOSIS

This will seldom present any difficulty when once the worm has 'presented' and, when one suspects the condition, it is often possible to feel the coiled worm under the skin at an earlier date.

The diagnosis can be confirmed by the intradermal test suggested by G. W. St. C. Ramsay (1936), the technique of which is as follows—

**The antigen**—This is obtained from a dried and powdered guinea worm. 0.25 gramme is shaken in 100 c.c.m. of ether for two hours at room temperature in order to remove the lipoids, the residue is rendered ether free and is extracted by shaking in 100 c.c.m. of 0.85 per cent sodium chloride for four hours at 37°C and after centrifugation this is passed through a no. 6 Seitz filter.

**Procedure**—0.1 c.c.m. of this is injected intradermally.

**Result**—A wheel 2 to 3 c.c.m. in diameter with pseudopodia is considered a positive reaction.

The exact position of the worm may be ascertained by injecting it with lipiodol and the x-raying the limb. The position of calcified worms can also be demonstrated by skiagraphy.

There is usually a marked eosinophilia, up to 15 per cent, but this finding is not specific as it occurs in many other helminthic infections.

### PREVENTION

The reader should refer back to the paragraphs on *Ætiology*, he will see that the essentials for transmission to occur are, (a) the contamination of the water supply by an infected definitive host, (b) the presence of cyclops the intermediate host, in the water supply, and (c) the consumption of water containing live infected cyclops by a susceptible person.

Definitive hosts other than man seldom play any important part in the human infection cycle. The endless chain man—cyclops—man, can be broken at either link, or the cyclops can be eliminated.

For the disease to be transmitted, two elementary principles of sanitation have to be violated, and if either is adhered to that is if direct human contact with the drinking water supply is obviated or if the water used for drinking is subjected to even the most rudimentary form of filtration or sterilization, the disease will not occur. Therefore the most important steps in prevention are education and propaganda, but in the endemic areas in India at least, the habits of the people with regard to washing and drinking are deeply ingrained and amount to a quasi-religious ritual against which it is difficult to make headway.

The next measure is improvement of the water-supply, that is, the replacement of the unsatisfactory water-supply by a satisfactory one. Where possible a pipe supply from a protected source should be installed, but the conversion of step-wells into properly protected draw-wells, or better still into pump-wells, will be efficacious.



There will be many instances when from the nature of the terrain, or for economic reasons, it is not possible to do this, then measures must be directed against the cyclops, but any measures of this kind are temporizing measures, and this fact should be fully appreciated by those responsible for, or interested in, the health of the community concerned.

Measures for the elimination of cyclops may be (i) physical, (ii) chemical, or (iii) biological

(i) **Physical.**—The sudden raising of the temperature of water a few degrees will kill cyclops, therefore the bubbling of steam through a well has been suggested and used as a means of control. Unfortunately, the heat that—in practice—it is possible to apply by this means does not kill the eggs of the cyclops, so that the imagines appear in the well again within a few weeks. It is therefore not a practicable measure.

(ii) **Chemical.**—Most chemicals have the same limitation, that is they do not destroy the eggs, except in very high unpracticable concentrations. Lime is perhaps the most practicable substance to use as it is often available locally. One drachm of lime in one gallon of water (or about one gramme to a litre) will destroy cyclops. The gallons of water in a well can be calculated from the formula  $49 \times w^2 \times d$  where  $w$  and  $d$  are the diameter and depth, respectively, of the well in feet (or see p 389).

(iii) **Biological.**—Fish will eat both the larvæ and the guinea-worm embryos, and Moorthy and Sweet (1936) used this method successfully for controlling guinea-worm; the species they recommended were *Barbus puchelli*, *ticto*, *sophore*, and *chola*, and *Rasbora daniconius*.

To summarize, control is effected by

- (i) education and propaganda,
- (ii) provision of a piped water-supply, or at least closure of step-wells; or, as a temporizing measure, by
- (iii) destruction of cyclops by physical, chemical, or biological means

#### TREATMENT

The aim of treatment should be the destruction of the worm, preferably before it begins to give rise to symptoms; but no drug has yet been shown to effect this. In the absence of a specific, the treatment must be aimed at ameliorating the clinical manifestations and preventing the more serious complications of the infection.

It will be convenient to refer back to the six pathological processes summarized on p 700, and to discuss the treatment in each case, except the first, as in the absence of a specific there is no appropriate treatment at this stage.

(i) **The general reaction.**—Fairley and Liston claim that this attack can be cut short by the administration of 10 minims of adrenalin subcutaneously.

(ii) **The local reaction.**—This cannot be prevented but it can be relieved to some extent by hot and/or cold applications locally.

(iv) **The local inflammation at point of emergence of worm.**—This can be limited by antiseptic dressings, local hot fomentations, and to some extent by the administration of sulphonamides. Early removal of the worm (*vide infra*) will allow this to heal and limit the duration of this stage.

(v) **Cellulitis along the course of the dead worm**—If it is left the worm will eventually die and if its removal is attempted inexpertly it will break and the remaining portion will die in either case a nidus for septic infection will be left. Removal of the whole worm is therefore the first consideration under this heading.

**Removal of the worm**—The method of removing the worm that has been practised for generations in the villages where the disease occurs is to wind the head of the worm around a small twig or piece of bamboo and to give the bamboo one turn each day until the whole worm has been removed. The method is frequently successful but it takes a long time. Manson suggested a modification in which the uterus is first emptied by encouraging oviposition by repeated applications of ice or cold water to the orifice so that the worm becomes flat and can more easily be removed by the winding process. There is much to be said for this primitive method if it is carried out carefully and with aseptic precautions.

If the course of the worm can be followed or if its exact position can be shown by injecting collargol, lipiodol or some such substance at the mouth and along the whole length of the worm, visualizing it under the fluorescent screen and marking the course with a skin pencil, it can be removed at one sitting by cutting down on the worm at intervals, dissecting open the sheath in which it lies and hooking up loops of the worm. This can be done painlessly under local anæsthesia.

In the event of the worm being broken or of a portion being left its absorption can be encouraged by hot fomentations locally and the administration of sulphonamides to prevent or cure sepsis. Should this fail and abscesses form these will have to be opened in the usual way.

(vi) **Sequelæ**—Finally if the worms become calcified or fibrotic cords are formed that cause pain or interfere with the patient's movements they must be removed surgically.

#### PROGNOSIS

Generally the patient is only temporarily incapacitated for work during the few weeks following the development of the blister. After the complete removal of the worm and the healing of the ulcer the patient may be fit for work until the next season. Sometimes however serious complications develop that may even lead to permanent deformity. The patients sometimes develop fixed joints (ankle or knee) as a result of the prolonged immobilization on account of the inflammation and suppuration associated with the disease and become cripples for life.

#### REFERENCES

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| FAIRLEY N. H. and LISTON W. G. (1924)        | Studies in the pathology of Dracontiasis. <i>Indian J. Med. Res.</i> 11, 915                                |
| LISTON W. G. (1937)                          | Guinea worm Disease. <i>British Encycl. Med. Pract.</i> , 6, 61   |
| LISTON W. G., TURKHUD D. A. and BHAVE (1913) | Rep. Bombay Bact. Lab. (quoted by Liston 1937)  |
| MOORTHY V. N. and SWEET W. C. (1938)         | A Biological Method of Control of Dracontiasis. <i>Indian Med. Gaz.</i> 71, 565                             |
| POWELL A. (1904)                             | The Life-span of the Guinea worm. <i>British Med. J.</i> 1, 73  |
| RAMSAY G. W. ST. C. (1935)                   | Observations on an Intradermal Test for Dracontiasis. <i>Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. &amp; Hyg.</i> 28, 399 |

## GNATHOSTOMIASIS

INTRODUCTION	PAGE
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	704
THE PARASITE	704
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY	705
DIAGNOSIS	706
TREATMENT AND PREVENTION	706

**Introduction.**—Infection with worms of this genus are apparently not very uncommon in animals, but up to 1929 only eleven human infections had been reported. Mapleson and Bindu (1937) in reporting the fourth case from India expressed the opinion that the infection was probably far more common than had been believed hitherto and quoted the findings of Prommas and Daengsinn (1934) and Castens (1935) in Siam (Thailand). There is thus evidence that the infection is more than a medical curiosity and with a greater awareness on the part of the medical profession a wider distribution of the infection may be recognized.

The infection is not a serious one, and the commonest symptom is fugitive swellings in different parts of the body, rather than creeping eruptions that are so frequently associated with this infection in textbooks.

**Geographical distribution.**—This appears to be essentially tropical. Cases have been reported from Siam (Thailand), India, Malaya, China, Japan, and Queensland. More than half the reported cases were observed in Siam.

In Siam more females than males are affected.

**The parasite.**—*Gnathostoma spumigerum* is a relatively short nematode worm varying from 11 to 54 millimetres in length by about 2 mm in thickness. The immature adult, the form that is usually recovered from man, may be only about 3 or 4 millimetres long and about 0.5 millimetres in thickness. It has a very distinctive bulbous head around which there are eight rows of hooks arranged ringwise. The larvæ, measuring less than a millimetre and with only four rings of spines, have also been recovered from man. The characteristic heads of the adult and larvæ are shown in figure 178 on the opposite page.

The full cycle has not been worked out satisfactorily, but it would appear that the true definitive hosts are large carnivores, the tiger, leopard, dog, cat, and weasel have been found infected in nature. The ova are ingested by a crustacean (cyclops) in which they develop into larvæ. A second intermediate host appears to be necessary, fish, frogs, and snakes

have been suggested. This second intermediate host is eaten by the definitive host and development is complete (Prommas & Daengsvang 1936 1937). As however only subcutaneous and submucous infection has been demonstrated in man it is suggested that the larvæ may possibly gain entrance through the skin.

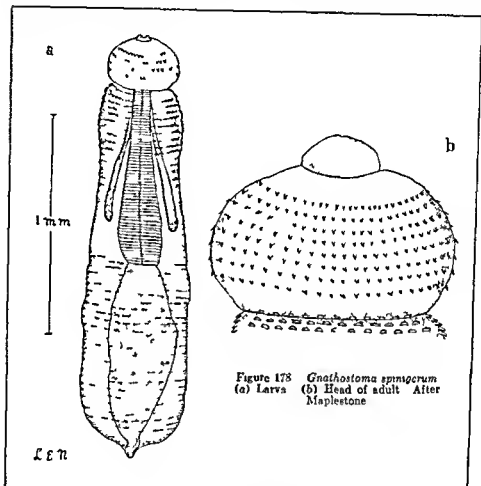


Figure 178 *Gnathostoma spinigerum*  
(a) Larva (b) Head of adult After  
Maplestone

#### PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The usual history is that of a small focal swelling of the skin and subcutaneous tissues somewhat suggestive of angioneurotic oedema which may or may not be painful this disappears completely within a day or so to appear again at a point not far from the original lesion. At other times the swellings appear within a very short time at points a considerable distance from one another. This continues often for several months but eventually the worm penetrates to a point just below the epidermis and causes a localized cellular reaction the site of which becomes secondarily infected and an abscess occurs when this bursts it releases the worm alive or dead. Or it may be seen before any abscess has formed in which case it can be removed without difficulty.

In a large percentage of cases there has been a history that at some time the worm has migrated in the neck and produced a swelling in the

pharynx that caused dyspnoea and in one case at least the worm has emerged through the mucosa of the pharynx. In others, hæmoptysis hæmatemesis and/or hæmaturia have occurred, without other obvious cause and have not recurred after the worm has emerged or been removed.

Only a very few cases have been encountered in which the worm has burrowed horizontally in the skin and produced a serpigenous itchy raised linear eruption—a condition that could be described as 'creeping eruption'.

#### DIAGNOSIS

This can only be made with certainty by removing and identifying the worm but a history of migratory swelling should certainly lead one to suspect this infection especially if the filarial infections can be excluded.

#### TREATMENT AND PREVENTION

There is no known specific, and treatment consists in removing the worm when it shows itself.

Until more is known about the ætiology, no preventive measures can be recommended.

#### REFERENCES

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| CASPER F (1935)                          | Uter gnathostoma beim menschen in Siam<br><i>Arch. Schiffs u. Tropenhyg.</i> 39, 337  |
| MAPLESTONE P. A. and BRADERTON V. (1937) | Gnathostomiasis in Human Beings. <i>Indian Med. Gaz.</i> 72, 713  |
| PROTHAS C. and DANGSVANG S. (1934)       | Nine cases of Human Gnathostomiasis. <i>Indian Med. Gaz.</i> 69, 207  |
| — (1936)                                 | Further Report of a Study on the Life Cycle of <i>Gnathostoma spinigerum</i> . <i>J. Parasitol.</i> , 22, 180                                 |
| — (1937)                                 | Feeding Experiments on Cats with <i>Gnathostoma spinigerum</i> Larvæ obtained from the Second Intermediate Host. <i>J. Parasitol.</i> 23, 115 |

# SCHISTOSOMIASIS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .. .. .	708
HISTORICAL .. .. .	708
<i>Geographical distribution</i> .. .. .	708
ÆTIOLOGY .. .. .	709
<i>The causal organisms</i> .. .. .	709
Ova—Cercaria—Adults	
<i>Life cycle</i> .. .. .	711
In man—First free-living phase—In the snail—Second free-living phase—	
The time factor—Variations in the cycle	
<i>The intermediate hosts</i> .. .. .	713
EPIDEMIOLOGY .. .. .	713
<i>Age—Race—Season</i> .. .. .	714
<i>Factors determining the incidence of the disease</i> .. .. .	714
The essentials—The extent of the incidence	
PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	715
<i>Introduction</i> .. .. .	715
PATHOLOGY .. .. .	716
<i>Skin—Lungs—General reaction</i> .. .. .	716
Local reaction to the ova	
(a) In <i>S japonicum</i> infection	
(b) In <i>S mansoni</i> infection	
(c) In <i>S haematobium</i> infection	
<i>The blood picture</i> .. .. .	719
SYMPTOMATOLOGY .. .. .	719
<i>Schistosomal dermatitis</i> .. .. .	719
<i>The febrile attack</i> .. .. .	719
<i>The period of egg extrusion and tissue proliferation</i> .. .. .	720
<i>S japonicum</i> infection—The final stage—Death	
<i>S mansoni</i> infection	
<i>S haematobium</i> infection	
DIAGNOSIS .. .. .	722
(a) <i>The history of the patient</i> .. .. .	722
(b) <i>The clinical picture</i> .. .. .	722
(c) <i>Immunological reactions</i> .. .. .	723
(d) <i>Finding of ova in stools or urine</i> .. .. .	723
Summary	

	PAGE
PREVENTION	723
(a) The elimination of the source of infection	724
(b) Destruction of molluscan intermediate hosts	724
(c) Prevention of contamination of water with human, or other host's, faeces and urine	724
(d) Obviation of contact with contaminated water	725
TREATMENT	725
Specific treatment	726
History	
Antimony preparations	
Fmetine	
Results of specific treatment	
Symptomatic treatment	727
PROGNOSIS	727

**Introduction**—There are two main clinical forms of schistosomiasis, namely the vesical and the intestinal. The causal parasites of both forms are trematodes of the genus *Schistosoma*, the former is caused by *Schistosoma haematobium* (Bilharz 1852) Weinland, 1858, and of the latter there are two types which are sufficiently different to warrant separate consideration, one caused by *Schistosoma monsoni*, Sambon, 1907, and the other by *Schistosoma japonicum*, Katsurada, 1904. These parasites are usually known as blood flukes.

**History**—The Ebers Papyrus referred to haematuria that was probably schistosomal in origin and confirmatory evidence of the early existence of this infection in Egypt is provided by Egyptian mummies several thousand years old (20th dynasty).

Bilharz discovered the flukes in the mesenteric veins at an autopsy in Cairo and later he found the eggs in the urine in cases of haematuria. Cobbold was the first to describe the worm and he gave it the generic name *Bilharzia* but Weinland's name *Schistosoma* has priority and has come to be accepted although the word bilharziasis is still used by some writers for the diseases caused by these flukes.

Manson and others suspected that there were two species of schistosome on account of the differences in the clinical picture and the geographical distribution of those cases in which the lateral-spined eggs occurred. The name *Schistosoma monsoni* was given to the intestinal species by Sambon in 1907 and the actual difference was finally proved experimentally by Leiper (1918) who demonstrated the life cycles of these two parasites. He showed that they were two distinct species with two different intermediate molluscan hosts and that the route of infection was via the skin.

In Japan the disease was recognized about a hundred years ago but attributed to other helminths. Miyagawa (1912-13) and Miyan and Suzuki (1913-14) demonstrated the life cycle of the *Schistosoma japonicum*.

**Geographical distribution**—Of the intestinal infections, *Schistosoma japonicum* infection occurs in China in the Yangtze valley, along the south-east coast of China as far west as Hong Kong, then inland as far north as Canton and in Formosa, the Philippines especially Leyte, and the Celebes and in Japan itself there are five limited foci. Whereas *S. mansoni* is encountered in north Brazil, the Guineas, Venezuela, and Puerto Rico and several of the West Indian islands, in West Africa along the Congo basin, in Central Equatorial Africa, in the northern and eastern part of the Nile delta, in Northern Rhodesia, and Tanganyika, and Madagascar.

The venereal infection—*S. haematobium*—is distributed widely through Africa, the endemic area extends along the whole of the north coast, up the Nile valley to Abyssinia and down the east coast, taking in the west coast of Madagascar, to Cape Colony throughout which it is endemic, it

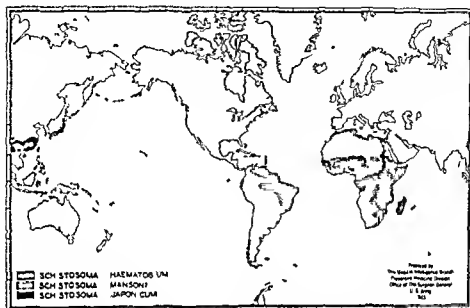


Figure 170 Distribution of Schistosomiasis (Simmons et al 1944)

occurs in the tropical countries on the west coast including the Gold Coast, Lake Chad, the Cameroons, and Nigeria, and also at the southern tip of Western Europe, in Spain, and Portugal, and in Palestine, Arabia, and Iraq

Schistosomes whose cercariae are capable of invading the skin only and causing dermatitis have been found in the great lakes of northern United States and Canada, in Germany, France and Wales and in a few other places, e.g. Malaya and San Salvador. *Schistosoma spindale* whose natural host is cattle, sheep and goats, has been incriminated in Malaya but in the European and American foci, only the cercariae have been identified, these belong respectively to the species *ocellata* and *elvae*. The presence of the last-named in both Manitoba and San Salvador suggests migrating ducks as possible natural hosts.

#### ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal organisms**—The three species of schistosome have already been mentioned. These schistosomes have five distinct stages during their life cycles, namely, the ovum (discharged from the definitive host), the miracidium (free-living and in the intermediate host), the sporocyst (in the intermediate host), the cercaria (free-living and in the definitive host), and the male and female adult (in the definitive host).

Man is the only important definitive host of *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium*, but *S. japonicum* has many—man, horse, cattle, dog, cat, rats, and mice. The intermediate hosts are molluscs of several species and a number of genera.

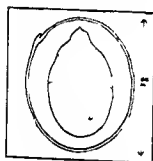
The stages of the parasite that occur in man and his excreta are described on the following page.



The ova —The mature eggs are a yellowish-brown colour with a thin transparent shell through which the mature miracidium can be seen. They are oval in shape. *S. japonicum* is distinctly shorter than the other two, but of about the same breadth. The range of measurements, as given by Craig and Faust (1943), and the distinguishing characteristics of the ova of the three species are shown below.

	Range in microns	Special characteristics
<i>S. japonicum</i>	70 to 100 by 50 to 65	Small depression near one pole with incurved hook
<i>S. mansoni</i>	114 to 175 by 45 to 68	Prominent lateral spine near one pole
<i>S. haematobium</i>	112 to 170 by 40 to 70	Distinct spine at one pole

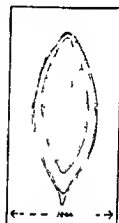
Figure 180 Schistosome eggs



*S. japonicum*



*S. mansoni*



*S. haematobium*

The cercariae —These are materially the same in the three species, though those of *S. japonicum* are smaller. They consist of an oval or fusca-shaped body and a forked tail. The bodies of the cercariae of *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium* average about 200 microns, their breadth is a little less than half their length, the main stem of the tail is a little longer than the body and about 40 microns across and each prong of the forked tail is about 100 microns long. When they enter their definitive host, they discard their tails and become metacercariae.

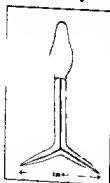


Figure 181 The cercaria of *Schistosoma*

The adults —The males are shorter and stouter than the females, they measure from 7 to 20 millimetres in length and 0.5 to 1.0 mm in breadth and have two unequal muscular suckers, the smaller one at, and the larger on the ventral aspect near, the anterior end. Along its whole length the body of the worm posterior to the suckers is folded ventrally to make the gynaecophoral canal, in which the female is held during fertilization and oviposition.

The female is longer and slenderer, it has two suckers in relatively the same position, but they are smaller and not so muscular. The uterus, which contains 20 to 30 eggs at a time, opens near the anterior end.

The range or average of sizes of the adults of the three species is given on the opposite page.

	Size in millimetres	
	Male	Female
<i>S. japonicum</i>	12 to 20 by 0.50	26 by 0.3
<i>S. mansoni</i>	7 to 10 by 1.0	7 to 14 by 0.25
<i>S. haematobium</i>	10 to 15 by 1.0	20 by 0.25

**Life cycle**—In man: the cercariae are the infective stage. They enter through the skin when he bathes or wades in infected water. They adhere to the skin at the level of the water surface, as the skin dries they burrow through the epidermis, taking about ten minutes to get beyond the reach of alcohol applied to the skin, eventually they reach a venule or a lymph vessel and are carried to the right side of the heart, and thence via the pulmonary artery they reach the lungs. They may also enter through the

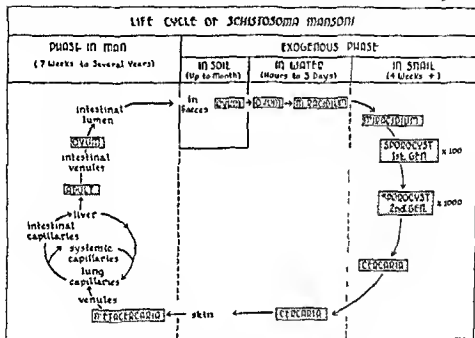


Figure 182

buccal, nasal, or pharyngeal mucous membranes in persons drinking or washing out their mouths with contaminated water, they would not however survive passage through the stomach. In the lungs, they negotiate the lung capillaries and cross over to the venous side, they are carried once more to the heart and thence into the systemic circulation. Apparently only those larvae (meta-cercariae) that get into the right traffic lines and find themselves in one of the mesenteric arteries have any future, these, on reaching the intestines, negotiate a second set of capillaries, and, crossing over to the portal system, reach the liver. It is thought possible that some pass through the liver and make another cycle before finally coming to rest in the liver. (The larvae that fail to reach the mesenteric arteries on the first round probably do not survive long enough to make another complete circle and negotiate three more sets of capillaries, but die and are removed with other blood debris). When the larvae reach the liver, they begin to feed and develop, they do not however remain here, but turn back into the portal vessels and migrate against the blood stream.

vr In the case of *S japonicum* approximately another week elapses before the eggs are deposited, in the case of *S mansoni*, which migrate further, a long time is required, and in the case of *S haematobium*, still longer. The total incubation period is therefore shortest in *S japonicum*, and longest in *S haematobium* infection.

**Variations in the cycle**—While the above is the ideal cycle from the point of view of the worms, the ova, and more rarely the adults will reach a number of other sites. Very frequently ova become detached from the intestinal venules and are carried back into the liver, this occurs much more constantly in *S japonicum* infection in view of the proximity of the superior mesenteric vein. In the latter infection in particular, the ova and even the adult worms may negotiate the liver sinusoids or the collateral portal anastomoses, and via the systemic circulation again reach the lungs, or they may be carried to and lodge in other organs and tissues e.g., the brain.

**The intermediate hosts**—Craig and Faust (1943) give the following as actual or potential hosts—

For *S haematobium*, *Bulinus truncatus* (Egypt, Cyrenaica and Tunis), *B forskohli* (Mauritius, and possibly Kenya colony), *B tropica* (South

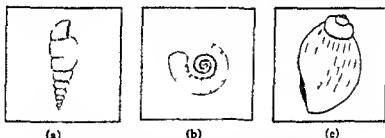


Figure 183 The snail intermediate hosts of Schistosomes

- (a) *Oncomelania*, of *S japonicum*  
 (b) *Planorbis* of *S mansoni*  
 (c) *Physopsis* of *S haematobium*  
 Actual size of average specimens

Africa), *Physopsis africana* (South Africa and the Belgian Congo), *P globosa* (Sierra Leone, West African Coast, northern Nigeria, Nyasaland and Rhodesia), *P nasuta* (Kenya Colony), and *Planorbis dufouri* (Portugal and Morocco)

For *S mansoni*, *Planorbis boissyi* (Egypt Abyssinia Eritrea, Somali-land), *P alexandrinus* and *P herberti* (Sudan), *P pfeifferi* (Natal Southern Rhodesia, Sierra Leone), *P sudanicus* (Nyasaland), *P adovenensis* (Belgian Congo), *Australorbis glabratus* (Venezuela Lesser Antilles Puerto Rico), *A olivaceus* and *A centmetralis* (Brazil), and *A antiquensis* (Lesser Antilles), and *Physopsis africana* and *Isidora tropica* (Natal)

For *S japonicum*, *Katayama nosophora* (Japan and along the coast of China), *K formosana* (Formosa), *Oncomelania hupensis* (Yangtse basin), *O hydrobiopsis* (Leyte, Philippine Islands)

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The disease occurs mainly amongst populations with a low sanitary standard, or where human faeces in a relatively fresh state are used for

manure. In some of these populations the infection is very intense, involving as much as 90 percent of the people, as for example in some parts of the Nile valley and in Egypt as a whole it has been estimated that six million persons or about half the populations are affected either by *S. haematobium* or *S. mansoni*, whereas in the heavily populated Yangtze valley tens of millions of Chinese are infected.

The persons most frequently affected in the endemic areas are fishermen, rice-field workers, washermen or -women, and bathers of any kind including ceremonial (Mohammedan) bathers.

Amongst foreign sojourners and visitors, the infection is often contracted by sportsmen whilst wading through streams or flooded rice fields, by sailors\*, whose duty necessitates their wading in contaminated water, and by pleasure seekers and children in particular, who may wade or bathe in polluted waters.

Instances have been reported, e.g. in Egypt and Puerto Rico, where sporadic cases have occurred amongst the general population of towns, and have been traced to cercaria infected piped water supplies.

Persons of all ages and races are susceptible, but there is frequently a male predominance and children appear to be very susceptible.

The season of highest infection in the Nile valley is from February to June, when the water in the streams and irrigation canals is low, and in Japan during the warmer months of the year, May to October, but in other places other factors are involved and there is a different seasonal distribution. In the Yangtze valley, for example, climatic conditions are favourable throughout most of the year, at least from March through November.

#### Factors determining the incidence of the disease

The essentials are: (i) The sources of infection, man is the sole reservoir of infection for *S. haematobium*, and probably the only important one for *S. mansoni*, although monkeys have been found infected in nature, but for *S. japonicum* there are other important sources, for example cattle, especially water buffaloes and in Japan field-mice are incriminated, but the relative importance of these non-human sources does not seem to have been estimated.

(ii) The presence of snails of certain species to act as intermediate hosts.

(iii) Promiscuous defaecation and/or urination, a sanitary system by which waterways are polluted, or the use of human excretions for manure.

(iv) The practice of bathing, wading or standing in polluted water, or drinking or washing out the mouth with water taken directly (i.e. without storage for at least 3 days) from a polluted source.

(v) Climatic (especially temperature) conditions that are favourable to the development of the parasite in the snail and to its survival during its free living stages.

The extent of the incidence of the disease present in any locality will depend on the degree to which these factors are in operation. In many places in Egypt and elsewhere, the waterways are polluted systematically,

\* Military personnel especially engineers have suffered severely from this infection in the Philippines campaign.

latrines, for example, are built over the streams so that urine and faeces fall into them, or they are used as the main sewer. And in China human excreta are stored in large earthenware jars and used as manure in the rice fields. If in such areas suitable snails happen to be present, the incidence of the disease is certain to be very high indeed. In other areas, where pollution is a rare incident, the disease will be sporadic and unimportant.

Where the specific molluscan hosts have only a limited distribution, as in certain places in Japan, the disease is localized.

From time to time new areas have become infected through snails migrating or being carried into areas where, although climatic, sanitary and social conditions were already suitable, the right species of snails did not previously exist.

The male predominance in some places in China for example, is due to the fact that boys bathe in canals, whereas the girls are not allowed to do so. Also on the whole the occupation of the men exposes them more to infection.

### PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Introduction**—The pathological changes are brought about by the reaction of the host's tissues to the presence of the flukes in their various stages, larval, adult and egg, that are spent in the mammalian host as foreign bodies, and to the secretions and excretions emitted by the parasites.

Our conception of the symptomatology and pathology of the early stages of the disease has been obtained mainly by studying clinically the infections in man accidentally subjected to a single infection episode, and pathologically the changes in experimental animals deliberately given usually single infections of varying degrees of intensity. For our knowledge of the later stages, we have had to depend on the clinical study of the complicated picture presented by the native of the endemic areas who has been heavily and repeatedly infected, and on a relatively small number of post-mortem examinations (Faust and Meloney, 1924).

There are very considerable variations in the reactions of the individuals to the infections. In Egypt, for example, a certain degree of tolerance to infection is apparent, *haematuria* is a very common incident but is often unaccompanied by any further symptomatology. Similarly, in the visceral infections, many persons pass ova in their stools without suffering any obvious dysentery or other disabilities. Further, in the intensely endemic areas in the Yangtze valley, it seems possible that a certain percentage of adults acquire some immunity to the invading cercariae, so that these are destroyed before they can establish themselves.

It is usual in order to facilitate description to divide these pathogenic reactions into stages, this device is a useful one provided it is fully appreciated that not only will one stage run into the next, often imperceptibly, but that, in an endemic area where fresh infections are repeatedly occurring, the stages will be continually overlapping one another.

The division which seems the most logical is as follows—

**I** The period of invasion and development of the parasite, up to the time the flukes reach their habitat of choice and develop into the adult stage. Clinically, this is the incubation period, during which, however, at the time of the first invasion, mild symptoms of a local nature may occur, these prodromal symptoms are not constant and are almost certainly absent in the native of the endemic area who has been previously infected.

**II The period of egg deposition**, associated with an immediate inflammatory and hypertrophic reaction, on the part of the host's tissues, to these eggs to the metabolic emanations of the adult flukes, and possibly to the bodies of the flukes themselves. The clinical picture associated with this includes a generalized febrile reaction, a skin eruption, and liver enlargement in all three infections and usually a little later, as the eggs are extruded into the intestinal lumen, dysentery, in *S. japonicum* and *S. mansoni* infections or urinary symptoms as the eggs are extruded into the bladder in *S. haematobium* infection.

**III Period of fibrosis and attempts at tissue repair**—In this stage, the most serious and varied complications, with irreparable damage to many organs occur.

The pathology and symptomatology are described separately below, as far as possible in the natural sequence of events, without separation into stages, although it will be apparent where the divisions come. Further, in order to avoid repetition, the pathologies of the three different infections are described together up to the point where the courses of the parasites diverge.

#### PATHOLOGY

**Skin**—At their point of entry, the meta-cercariae usually produce no gross pathological lesions but in experimental infections minute petechiae can sometimes be seen with a hand-lens. However, after a short time when they have penetrated into the skin proper, they call forth a local tissue reaction which destroys a certain proportion of the cercariae, and their bodies then acting as foreign protein give rise to local allergic manifestations—urticaria and oedema. This reaction is much more noticeable in foreigners than amongst the local native population.

It is of interest that this skin reaction is also much more severe and is likely to develop into a dermatitis in the case of the cercariae of schistosomes that are not the natural parasites of man and fail to establish themselves in his tissues, e.g. *Cercaria elia* reported in the United States (Lake Michigan) and *Cercaria ocellata* from Wales and elsewhere in Europe which cause cercarial dermatitis but no visceral infection. In these cases the meta-cercariae are probably all destroyed locally and give rise to the maximum reaction.

**Lungs**—Again the passage of the lung capillaries is apparently accomplished without causing much local reaction by the majority of the larvae, but others break through into the alveoli where they may cause haemorrhages and local reactions in the submucosa of the alveolar walls which appear to lower lung resistance so that atypical pneumonia or pneumonitis may follow heavy infections. In experimental animals extensive submucous and subserous extravasations are seen.

**General reaction**—When, however the larvae reach the portal vessels and develop into adults, they cause a generalized reaction that is frequently the first evidence of the disease. This reaction seldom appears before the end of the third week and is sometimes delayed for as long as three months, it is caused by metabolites from the adult parasites some of which are probably associated with the parturition of the females. This reaction occurs only during the invasion of the first crop of parasites or, if it is repeated it is much milder so that apparently the individual becomes desensitized to the toxic agent whatever it is. The reaction is associated with hyperaemia and hyperplasia of the liver and often of the spleen and a very marked eosinophilia 10 000 per c cm (circa 60 per cent) or more.

**Local reaction to the ova**—Where this reaction takes place will naturally depend on where the eggs are deposited and this will vary with the species of the infecting flukes (*vide supra*)

In *S. japonicum* infection the eggs are placed mainly in the venules of the intestinal mucosal and submucosal radicles of the lower branches of the superior mesenteric vein—in the ileum, cæcum and upper half of the colon, but some are found also in the terminal venules of the inferior mesenteric—in the descending colon and rectum. These eggs block the venules and cause a very severe local reaction, probably on account of a secretion that percolates through the shell from the miracidium within (Hoeppli, 1932), there is intense cellular infiltration (polymorphonuclears and eosinophils) around the venule and often 'abscess' formation. Around these abscesses giant cells and fibroblasts appear. This process occurs in the mucosa and submucosa, in the former the abscess bursts often almost immediately, into the lumen of the gut, but in the latter, although eventually the abscess discharges into the lumen, more local reaction is caused. There is a general thickening of the mucosal and submucosal layer, and often down growth of proliferating epithelium through the muscularis into the submucosal layer, to form the commencement of papillomatous growths.

The papillomata, which may be sessile but frequently become pedunculated, are easily damaged. They may ulcerate and eventually slough off, they are a potent source of hæmorrhage, and more rarely they are the origin of malignant growth. A dysenteric condition may develop, with ulcers in the mucosa and blood and pus, amongst which the ova will be found, in the stools.

The eggs are also deposited in the muscular coats where they produce the same infiltration, abscess formation, and fibrosis, and sometimes they calcify, so that in time the whole wall of the bowel may become a thickened and hard more-or-less functionless tube. These deep ulcers with their bases in the muscular layers may in time heal leaving scars that later contract and may cause obstruction. In these later stages any dysentery that occurs will usually be associated with intestinal strictures, and the diarrhoea, which is a common terminal event, will be due to mucosal dysfunction and malabsorption.

Finally, the serous coat may be involved, there will be a fibrinous exudate on the surface which results in adhesions forming between loops of viscera. The mesentery and the retroperitoneal tissues are also involved, as well as the lymphatic glands in both these situations. Subsequent fibrosis and contracture will tend to produce further intestinal complications.

A large number of eggs find their way back to the liver, probably because they are extruded into a larger venous radicle as it would be difficult for an ovum to be dislodged from one of the small venules. In the liver they cause infiltration, giant-cell formation and fibrosis, the eggs are surrounded by pseudo tubercle formations (Koppisch, 1941) and are eventually calcified or destroyed. These deposited eggs and the metabolites from the adult flukes lead to the production of at first hypertrophic and later cirrhotic changes in the liver. Ascites and other sequelæ of portal cirrhosis will develop, and later, when the cirrhotic changes involve the biliary canaliculi, jaundice. Thrombosis of the portal vein is not an uncommon sequel.

These changes in the liver will lead to passive congestion then hypertrophy, and finally fibrosis in the spleen so that the organ may become

immense. It may contain a few ova, but these are usually insufficient to account for the extreme enlargement which is mainly secondary to the liver involvement. In some cases the splenic vein is thrombosed.

In both the liver and the spleen, the reticulo endothelial cells contain large quantities of hæmatin from the changed blood excreted by the flukes.

Sometimes eggs are found in the lungs, brain and spinal cord, kidney and other organs and tissues, where they produce similar changes.

In *S. mansoni* infections, a very similar series of changes occur, except that the brunt falls on the lower end of the colon, the descending colon, the sigmoid and the rectum although occasionally the cæcum and lower end of the ileum are involved, and rarely the bladder and pelvic tissues. Similar changes occur in the liver, but they are less constant and usually less severe than in *S. japonicum* infection, possibly on account of the closer proximity to the liver of the latter fluke in its usual habitat in the superior mesenteric vein. In fact, the whole pathogenesis is less serious, as fewer eggs are produced by this fluke. On the other hand, not infrequently the bowel lesions appear to be absent and only the hepatic and splenic changes are found.

In *S. hæmatobium* infections, most of the eggs are laid in the radicles of the vesical and pelvic venous plexuses, but occasionally the adults wander further, reach the superficial veins of the groin, scrotum, and perineum, and deposit their eggs in the venules of the skin in these areas. These eggs may eventually rupture through the skin and if they reach water would be capable of continuing the cycle. In the bladder the eggs are placed in the venules of the mucosa and submucosa and cause parallel changes to those in the bowel, the abscesses may burst into the lumen of the bladder, so that pus, blood and ova are discharged in the urine, and papillomata are formed that also bleed and very frequently later become malignant growths. Ulcers are often formed in the bladder at the base of which is a calcified ovum, phosphates are deposited on this nucleus, resulting in the development of the 'sandy patches' which have been looked upon as almost pathognomonic of schistosomiasis. Eggs that reach the lumen may also lead to the formation of vesical calculi.

The eggs are also deposited in the muscular wall of the bladder and in the surrounding pelvic tissues. These eggs in the deeper layers of the bladder cause the same tissue reaction and are eventually surrounded by fibrous tissue, they are later either replaced by fibrous whorls or they become calcified. If there are many eggs, the bladder is eventually converted into a rigid and useless bag. Eggs are also deposited in the lower end of the ureters and may in time cause an obstruction and hydronephrosis, and also into the urethra and the tissues surrounding this, where they may cause a hypertrophic condition in the penis, and later, if the eggs become calcified, a calcification of a considerable part of this organ may occur. They are deposited in the prostate where they cause hypertrophy, and, in the pelvis, the lymphatics may be involved and the lymph flow obstructed, so that later elephantiasis of the genitalia and/or a proliferating warty condition around the anus may occur. When the eggs are deposited in the venules of the skin of the groin, scrotum, and perineum, here they cause a papular eruption which may become pustular. Viable eggs can be found in a smear made from scrapings from these eruptions.

A few eggs may be deposited in the mucosa of the rectum and be extruded in the feces as in the case of the other blood flukes, but seldom



elsewhere in the intestinal canal except apparently the vermiform appendix (in one series in Nigeria, 57 per cent of the appendices removed contained ova)

In the later stages, secondary infection of the bladder is almost the rule, this infection will often ascend to the kidneys and cause pyelitis and pyelonephritis

Eggs frequently reach the systemic circulation in the infection with this species on account of the fact that the venous return from the areas where they are most frequently deposited is via the inferior vena cava, the eggs are usually held up in the lung but sometimes get through to other organs and tissues e.g. the brain and cord. In the lungs, an interstitial pneumonia is frequently caused

The blood picture—In the early stages as already noted there is a marked eosinophilia and usually little change in the hæmoglobin percentage or red cells, in the second stage, anaemia tends to develop in all three infections, and although there may still be a relative eosinophil increase, this is less marked and is associated with an actual polymorphopenia especially in the intestinal infections so that the total count is about normal. Finally, a severe anaemia will often develop, with a complete absence of—or reduction in—eosinophils, but sometimes a polymorphonuclear leucocytosis as a result of secondary bacterial infections, though as a terminal event this also will fail

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Schistosomal dermatitis—At the time of infection, as the water dries on the skin there may be a tingling sensation which is shortly followed by the development of small urticarial weals at the sites of entry of the cercariae, these disappear rapidly possibly leaving macules. Some hours later, there may be intense itching a localized oedema and papules may appear which may later develop into pustules, this condition will usually continue to develop for three days after which it begins to subside

This condition may develop as a result of infection with any of the three pathogenic schistosomes but it is not constant and is apparently infrequent in *S. japonicum* infection (only in 10 per cent of the American group infected on Icyte). As noted above, it occurs much more constantly when the cercariae are those of some schistosome that does not establish itself in man. The syndrome is known as 'swimmers itch' in the United States (Cort 1928) and Canada (McLeod, 1940) where it commonly occurs amongst bathers in the big lakes

The febrile attack—This occurs between the end of the third week and the end of the third month. It has been reported as early as the fifth day in *S. japonicum* infection, but the experience of others and experimental work suggest that these reports of the very early occurrence of the febrile attack should be questioned. However, in *S. japonicum* infection, it occurs usually between the third and sixth weeks, whereas in *S. hæmatobium* infection the average incubation period is about ten weeks, and in *S. mansoni* infection the interval is usually between these two, but the febrile attack is not so well defined or constant. The onset may be gradual or sudden. The fever usually rises each evening to about 102° and then falls to normal or the 99° line towards morning (figure 184). There are usually chills and often an actual rigor followed by profuse perspiration during the night. The fever is accompanied by malaise, anorexia, pains in the back and along



endemic areas the process will be more or less continuous with a few quiescent periods during which the symptoms recur immediately when the patient returns to work or otherwise exerts himself and after a few years (3 to 5 years is sometimes the interval mentioned but it must be very variable) the condition will pass imperceptibly into the next stage.

In the final stage, there is increasing emaciation, debility, anaemia and dyspnoea. Children show stunted growth and intellectual retardation. The dysenteric condition may continue but usually takes on the features of chronic ulcerative colitis; there may be some intestinal obstruction with distension of the upper part of the intestinal tract and alternating constipation and diarrhoea. The liver may enlarge further but usually becomes hard and very fibrotic and tends to contract. The spleen however shows complementary enlargement and may reach the symphysis pubis or the right iliac crest and it also becomes very hard. There are frequently extensive ascites, distension of the abdominal veins and haematemesis, results of portal obstruction. The emaciation is profound on account of absorption failure in the upper intestinal tract and liver dysfunction; the patient usually develops a sub-icteric tint and sometimes frank jaundice. Jacksonian epilepsy, hemiplegia, paraplegia and blindness have followed the deposition of the eggs into the brain, the cord or the optic nerve.

Death may occur from inanition, secondary infections such as pneumonia which may be encouraged by the reaction caused by the ova in the lung, hemorrhages or intestinal obstruction or suddenly as a result of the local reaction to the ova in the heart or brain.

**S. mansoni infection.**—The course of events is very similar to that in *S. japonicum* infection but on the whole the course is not usually so severe and more symptoms are referable to the rectum. For example, prolapse due to the passage of polypoid growths, fistulae, fissure in ano, leuko-rectal and perineal abscesses and hemorrhoids are not uncommon and occasionally urinary symptoms due to the ova of this fluke reaching the bladder occur. Emaciation is not usually so profound as absorption is not interfered with to the same extent, the pathogenesis being mainly in the large bowel.

In Egypt hepatic and splenic enlargement sometimes occur without any corresponding intestinal pathogenesis (Girges 1934) and conversely in Puerto Rico intestinal lesions are reported without any liver involvement (Pons 1937).

**S. haematobium infection.** The first symptom may be an irritating papular eruption in the groin, scrotum and/or perineum which goes on to pustular formation but this may not be noticed by the less sensitive patient. The urinary symptoms usually do not appear until several months after infection took place and in some cases even several years. The first sign is usually burning and pain at the end of micturition with the passage of a little blood, increased frequency and a continuous dull pain in the bladder region. These signs and symptoms increase and the patient may begin to pass large quantities of pus, blood clots, cellular debris and calculi which have formed around ova, he will from time to time have difficulty in passing urine or he may suffer from incontinence. The calculi may eventually become impacted in the urethra or the urethra itself may be completely blocked as a result of peri-urethritic inflammatory reaction to the deposited ova and increasing difficulty in micturition alternating with incontinence will give place to complete suppression or urinary fistulae may develop. Infection of the bladder soon becomes inevitable and this in

fection will spread to the kidney. There will be a return of fever, with emaciation and increasing weakness, soon followed by death.

In more chronic cases the polypoid growths in the bladder undergo malignant changes and carcinoma of the bladder is a very common complication in Egypt.

Besides symptoms directly referable to the bladder involvement, the uterus and vagina may be involved in women and the penis in men, and there may also develop an elephantoid condition of the labia or scrotum, as a result of blocking of the lymphatics in the pelvis. A polypoid mass may develop around the anus, and the rectum may also be involved, with the development of fissures, fistulae and bleeding hæmorrhoids.

Acute appendicitis may result from deposition of eggs in the appendicular mucosa, but the latter incident, which is apparently very common in endemic areas, does not necessarily produce acute symptoms.

Bronchial asthma is a common result of schistosomiasis in Egypt and so also is interstitial pneumonitis.

In this infection, there are few symptoms referable to the liver, or spleen, but occasionally the ova reach other organs, as in the case of the other schistosomes and may rarely produce symptoms.

#### DIAGNOSIS

This must be made (a) from the history of the patient, including past symptomatology, (b) from the clinical picture, including cystoscopy, sigmoidoscopy, and blood examination, (c) by immunological reactions, and (d) by the finding of the ova.

(a) *The history of the patient*—In the endemic areas, the fact of residence in these areas is usually sufficient presumptive evidence, but this will be strengthened if the patient's occupation necessitates much wading in water. In the case of sojourners a clear history of having waded or bathed in possibly contaminated water in an endemic area will give a lead to the diagnosis. Failure to extract such a history, or failure to appreciate its significance has in the past frequently led to disastrous postponement of a diagnosis. If to the above history is added reference to a pricking sensation as the water dried followed by an urticarial rash, and some weeks later a febrile attack not unlike typhoid fever with possibly a further urticarial eruption the evidence will be very much strengthened.

(b) *The clinical picture*—This has been described above. In the case of *S. mansoni* infection and to some extent in *S. japonicum* and even in *S. hæmatobium* infections, very valuable information may be obtained by sigmoidoscopic examination, pseudo tubercles, sessile papillomata and pedunculated polypi and ulcers can be recognised, and from the latter, material can be obtained in which the ova may be found.

By digital examination of the rectum the abscesses and pseudo tubercles in the bowel wall and also in the posterior wall of the bladder may be felt.

In *S. hæmatobium* infections, suspicion will be aroused by the passage of a little blood with the last drop of urine. Cystoscopy will show yellowish or whitish patches or nodules in the mucous membrane of the base of the bladder in particular, small ulcers surrounded by areas of hyperæmia, and/or the bright yellow sandy patches. In the early stages of the in-

fection, some information will be obtained from the blood picture. There are probably few diseases in which such a striking eosinophilia will be found, as during the early generalized reaction to the infection. On the other hand, many helminthic infections will cause a very marked eosinophilia, so that this finding must be interpreted with caution. In the later stages of the infections when the liver is seriously involved, the aldehyde test (see p. 164) will become positive, indicating an increase in the pseudo-globulin (mainly  $\gamma$ -globulin) fraction of the serum protein.

(c) Immunological reactions.—The most reliable is the complement deviation test with antigenic extract from heavily schistosome-infected snails livers. A positive reaction may be expected before the ova appear in either the stools or urine, and will persist throughout the infection, although it tends to decrease in the later chronic stages of the infection.

The intradermal test with a similar alcohol-extracted saline antigenic preparation, on the lines of the Casoni reaction in hydatid, has been recommended, but it is not so reliable as the complement deviation test.

(d) Finding of the ova in stools or urine.—The parasitic diagnosis is in many ways the most satisfactory, as it enables a definite diagnosis of the infecting species to be made, but it will not be positive until the disease is well into the second stage, and there are advantages in an earlier diagnosis. Further, unless the ova in the stools are very numerous they are likely to be overlooked, and some form of concentration method is advisable.

Craig and Faust (*loc. cit.*) recommend a sedimentation method.

The stools are mixed with water and then allowed to sediment in a conical glass, the supernatant fluid is poured off and more water added; the process is repeated several times but must be completed within 4 hours or the miracidia will hatch, finally the sediment is examined under the microscope with a low power lens for the ova.

An alternative method is to place the sediment in a tall glass cylinder full of water and leave it for 24 hours, the ciliated miracidia will hatch out and can be seen by means of a hand lens swimming near the surface of the water.

As indicated above, a more certain method of finding the ova is to take a swab specimen directly from the ulcer during a sigmoidoscopic examination.

The finding of ova of *S. haematobium* in the urine presents less difficulty, if the urine is allowed to sediment in a conical glass although they may only appear intermittently. In this infection also, ova will sometimes be found in the stools.

Thus, to summarize, in the early stages a diagnosis must depend on the history, the clinical picture, and the complement deviation test, in the middle period cystoscopic or sigmoidoscopic examination and the finding of the ova in stools or urine will be additional methods, and in the final, chronic stages parasitological examination may again become inconclusive as ova may be scanty or absent, but by that time the clinical picture with the aid of the instrumental examinations should leave little doubt as to the nature of the disease.

#### PREVENTION

The reader is referred back to p. 714, where the essentials for the occurrence of the disease are given. No action can be taken under the fifth of these headings—climatic conditions, but each of the other four indicate

where the transmission cycle can be attacked. We will consider the subject under four headings, which correspond to the first four 'essentials'

(a) **The elimination of the source of infection**—The source of infection could theoretically be eliminated, in the cases of *S. haematobium* and *S. mansoni* infections, by systematic treatment of the population, as man is the only important source. This method will be less effective in the case of *S. japonicum* infection as there are other definitive hosts. In certain areas, this method has been practised in conjunction with other procedures with some evidence of success as a means of reducing the source of infection but without any real expectation of eliminating it entirely.

The educational value of an organized treatment campaign is very considerable even the most ignorant natives of the endemic areas appreciate the value of treatment and are likely to take more notice of advice regarding prevention given by the doctors who can cure them.

The destruction of rodents and other possible alternative hosts of *S. japonicum* should be considered under this heading, but the relative importance of these other hosts has not yet been properly assessed.

(b) **Destruction of molluscan intermediate hosts**—Theoretically this method promises well, in practice except for isolated and limited bodies of water it has been a failure. Periodic drying of irrigation canals reduces the snails but some burrow in the soil and reappear later. The destruction of snails by chemical means, e.g. 1 in 500 000 copper sulphate, will lead to their temporary disappearance but, unless the body of water is an isolated one, rapid reinfestation will occur, this has been the experience in Egypt.

For small isolated bodies of water, when immediate snail elimination is required, the introduction of copper sulphate sufficient to make a final solution of 1 in 200 000 to 1 in 500 000 should be applied, this can be done by placing the copper sulphate in a bag and towing it behind a small boat, backwards and forwards through the water, preferably after preliminary removal of aquatic vegetation.

(c) **Prevention of contamination of water with human, or other host's, faeces and urine**—All workers are agreed that this is the pivotal point of prevention but putting it into practice presents difficulties that are usually immediately insuperable.

In the endemic cases in Africa, including North Africa and the Nile delta, most of the population involved are ignorant peasants with not very high sanitary standards. In the dry parts of the country, where there is little rain to wash surface contaminants into the waterways, contamination of the silt, it should therefore be easier to prevent under these conditions than in wet countries, where faeces and urine deposited promiscuously on dry land will frequently be washed into water.

The introduction of proper sanitary systems and education and propaganda are the only solution but it will be generations before they are fully effective.

Where domestic animals are sources of infection, they should as far as possible be kept away from the vicinity of snail infested water.

In China an additional problem has to be faced. There human excreta are stored in *lang*s and later used as manure. If faeces and urine are undiluted with water, eggs will only survive in these *lang*s, which act as septic tanks for three weeks so that if several *lang*s are kept and used in rotation and none is used within three weeks of the last addition of fresh faeces the material should be free of eggs and miracidia. The addition of an antiseptic, such as sodium cyanide that might add to the manurial value of the contents has also been suggested as a preventive measure.

(d) **Obviation of contact with contaminated water**—In the case of the individual foreign visitor to endemic areas this should present no difficulties and the knowledge of the existence of the danger should be all that is necessary. The sportsman should wear waterproof wading boots in endemic areas. In the case of accidental immersions, as the cercariae do not apparently penetrate the skin under water bathing in some antiseptic solution immediately on coming out of the infected water should prevent infection. Experimentally, it has been shown that cercariae go beyond the reach of alcohol applied to the skin within about ten minutes so that any delay would nullify the effect of the procedure.

The case of the soldier or sailor under combat conditions is however different. Engineers who habitually have to spend a long time in the water (e.g. while building bridges) should be provided with high wading overalls but these would be too cumbersome for the infantry. Data are not yet available but it seems very probable that if the clothing were of a sufficiently fine weave, or if it were impregnated with copper sulphate or some detergent substance, the penetration of viable cercariae would be prevented. For uncovered parts of the body the application of an ointment containing copper stearate or one of the newer insect repellents would probably be effective, until it was washed off.

In the case of the native, his livelihood will often depend on entering water at frequent intervals, and prevention at this juncture of the transmission cycle seems to be out of the question. 'Nursery' rice fields are a very potent source of danger as these are heavily manured, as far as possible children, who are particularly susceptible to infection, should be kept out of these fields.

Under this heading must be considered the treatment of water that is to be used for household purposes. The cercariae will go through a 30 inch sand filter in five hours so that more efficient filtration chlorination (0.2 parts per million Mngath 1942), or boiling is necessary if the water is to be used in the bath tub or for drinking. The danger here is minimized considerably by the fact that free swimming cercariae do not usually live for more than a day, and it is safe to use water that has been stored in a snail free water storage tank, for say three days to be on the safe side.

In areas where some domestic animal, e.g. the water buffalo, acts as a reservoir of infection every effort should be made to prevent such animals entering infected water to initiate or renew their infections.

### TREATMENT

Treatment must be considered under two headings, specific and symptomatic.

### Specific Treatment

**History**—The first successful specific treatment was carried out by Christopher son in 1918 who at the suggestion of McDonagh used intravenous tartar emetic that had been in use for several years in the treatment of leishmaniasis.

**Antimony preparations**—The first drugs to be used were potassium and sodium antimony tartrate and many believe that even today they are the most effective. The sodium salt is apparently the less toxic. They are given in 2 per cent solution in normal saline made with distilled water. The solutions must be made freshly or some preservative, such as 0.5 per cent phenol, added in which case the solution can be kept at least two weeks. It is sterilized by being brought to the boiling point twice, prolonged boiling or autoclaving is liable to bring about a change in the molecule. It is given strictly intravenously, slowly, and on alternate days or three times a week. The commencing dose is 2 c cm or 40 milligrammes, the dose should be increased to 3 c cm, 4 c cm, 5 c cm and 6 c cm, if the patient appears to be able to tolerate it. The principal signs of intolerance are coughing, vomiting, and joint pains. When these occur it may be necessary to increase the doses by only 0.5 c cm or even to repeat the last dose until tolerance is established. A total of at least 2 grammes should be the aim, which, if all goes well will necessitate 18 injections, over a period of 5 or 6 weeks.

Children are given proportionately smaller doses.

It appears to be necessary to push the dosage of this drug a little higher than in the case of kala-azar (*quod vide*, p. 168). There is some difference in the tolerance of this drug by different nationals, Egyptians appear to tolerate the larger doses well, whereas in Venezuela the intolerance rate is high and it is sometimes necessary to drop the strength of the solution to 1 per cent.

Fouadin (or stibophen), a trivalent aromatic compound of antimony, is less toxic and also can be given intramuscularly. It is, in the experience of some workers more effective than the pentavalent salts of antimony, but in that of others it has proved less effective. Fouadin is marketed as a 6 per cent solution in ampoules. The dosage is 1.5 c cm, 3.5 c cm, and 5.0 c cm on the first three days, followed by 5 c cm, on alternate days until a total dose of 45 c cm has been given (Khalil and Betache 1930).

The latest recruit to the antimony preparations is the well-advertised but not very extensively tested, anthiomaline—lithium antimony thiomalate (Bauge 1941). Two cubic centimetres of a 6 per cent solution are given on alternate days, the course is 10 injections.

Emetine has also been recommended but to be effective it has to be given in dangerous doses, it should therefore be reserved for those cases in which antimony has failed.

**Results of specific treatment**—The stage of the disease appears to be more important than the species of the infecting schistosome. The treatment will be effective only during the active stages of the infection, that is before the third stage of the disease is established and irreparable damage has been done. In the earlier stages of the disease, the improvement is often immediate. The action appears to be on all stages of the worm including the ova, as the ova that are excreted after treatment have been well established are usually dead later, no more appear, indicating the death of the adult.



## OTHER FLUKE INFECTIONS

### CLONORCHIASIS

HISTORICAL	PAGE
EPIDEMIOLOGY	729
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	729
<i>Incidence</i>	729
ÆTIOLOGY	729
<i>The causal parasite—Adult—Eggs—Life cycle—Hosts</i>	729
PATHOLOGY	730
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	730
DIAGNOSIS	731
PREVENTION	731
TREATMENT	731
PROGNOSIS	731

### PARAGONIMIASIS

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	
ÆTIOLOGY	731
<i>The causal parasite—Life cycle—Hosts</i>	731
PATHOLOGY	731
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	733
DIAGNOSIS	733
PREVENTION	733
TREATMENT	733
PROGNOSIS	734

### FASCIOLOPSIASIS

INTRODUCTION	
EPIDEMIOLOGY	734
ÆTIOLOGY	734
<i>Life cycle</i>	734

extrude pass down the biliary passages again to reach the duodenum; and these are eventually excreted in the faeces, when the cycle is complete. The development in man takes about a month, but the whole cycle covers a period of about three months under favourable conditions.

**Hosts.**—Man is an important definitive host and helps to maintain the cycle, but dogs, cats, badgers, weasels, martens, and minks and several other carnivora are also definitive hosts in nature.

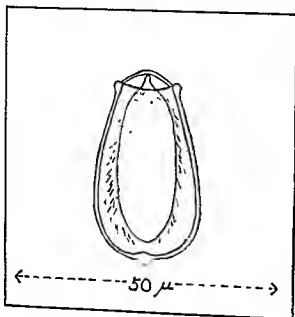


Figure 185 The egg of *Clonorchis sinensis*

involved, all other pathological changes are secondary to liver damage

Fibrosis and thickening of the walls of the bile passages throughout the whole organ with proliferation of bile-ducts in certain areas, and both intralobular and interlobular cirrhosis are described. Hoeppf (1933) found extensive changes in 66 post mortem specimens from patients who died from other causes. (In view of recent work that has shown that extensive liver changes may result from dietary deficiency, it would be well to accept his conclusions as to responsibility of the parasite in all these cases, with caution.)

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The majority of mild infections are apparently entirely symptomless.

The symptoms are not very characteristic and indicate liver damage generally rather than any specific damage caused by this parasite.

Gastro-intestinal disturbances are common, diarrhoea and irregularities of appetite, a sense of fullness in the liver region and liver enlargement, periodic jaundice, and later ascites, hæmorrhages and other results of cirrhosis often occur.

Cardiac and nervous symptoms are also described.

There is usually a leucocytosis and a slight eosinophilia.

Species of several genera of snails act as intermediate hosts, *Parafossarulus*, *Bithynia*, and *Melania*, and some 40 species of fish have been found infected.

#### PATHOLOGY

The pathological reactions to the presence of these flukes appear to result from toxic substances secreted by the adult worms, from impaction of clumps of sticky eggs in small bile ducts, and possibly from mechanical damage by the adults themselves. All the primary changes occur in the liver, except in very heavy infections when the pancreas is

## DIAGNOSIS

The only satisfactory method of diagnosis is by the finding and identification of the eggs in the stools. Flotation methods should not be used. Ova may also be recovered by duodenal catheterization.

## PREVENTION

Personal prophylaxis can be achieved by avoiding the consumption of under- or uncooked fish. Education and propaganda pointing out the danger of this practice in the endemic areas should be undertaken.

As man is an important source of infection sanitary disposal of faeces will help to reduce the infection in any locality, but will not entirely prevent it, as the sanitary habits of other definitive hosts cannot be controlled. Ammonium sulphate added to nightsoil in adequate amounts will sterilize it without destroying its manure value.

A third method of control is by the destruction of snails (*vide* SCHISTOSOMIASIS) where this is possible.

## TREATMENT

There is no entirely satisfactory specific for this infection but good results have been claimed for gentian violet (*see p.* 632). Other drugs used with apparent success are the antimony preparations sodium antimony tartrate, and fowdin, and the gold preparation solganol B.

## PROGNOSIS

This is dependent almost entirely on the weight of the infection. It is probable that most light infections are entirely innocuous and do not affect the patient's expectation of life, and the suggestion that even light infections may have serious sequelae, e.g. cirrhosis and carcinoma, has never been satisfactorily proven.

Heavy infections undoubtedly cause irreparable liver damage and shorten the patient's life. In cirrhosis from whatever cause, the prognosis is bad.

## PARAGONIMIASIS

**Geographical distribution.**—The true endemic areas of human infection are all in Asia, in Japan, Korea, Formosa, China, Manchuria, Indo-China, Siam, and the Philippine Islands, isolated cases have been reported from several places in Africa, namely in the Belgian Congo and the Cameroons in New Guinea, and, in the western hemisphere, in Peru, Venezuela, and Brazil.

Infection amongst mammals covers a much wider area, including India (the first *Paragonimus* identified was found in the lung of a Bengal tiger), Malaya, Java, and Sumatra. It is apparent that sporadic cases may at any time appear in these countries, but that the human disease will only be truly endemic where the habit of eating uncooked crustaceans is prevalent.

## ETIOLOGY

The causal parasite—*Paragonimus westermani* (Kerbert, 1878) Braun 1899, is a relatively thick (3 to 5 millimetres) ovoid fluke, meas-

uring 7 to 12 mm in length by 4 to 6 mm in breadth, slightly broader anteriorly than posteriorly, with two suckers, one placed at the anterior end and the other in the middle line, slightly anterior to the centre of the body of the fluke

The eggs measure from 80 to 120 microns in length by 40 to 60 in breadth, they are oval in shape and have a wide opening at one end over which there is a flattened operculum

The life cycle.—The egg passed by the definitive host remains in water for several weeks before it is mature, the time depends mainly on

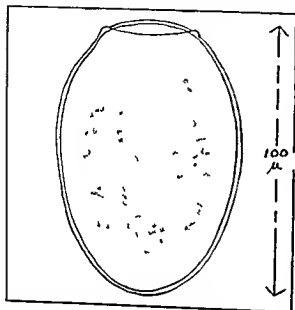


Figure 186 The egg of *Paragonimus westermani*

the temperature. The miracidium emerges and enters a suitable snail, after an interval of several weeks during which the parasite passes through several stages, it emerges from the snail as a free-swimming cercaria, this cercaria next enters the soft parts of a second intermediate host, a crustacean, and in this crustacean it encysts. When the crustacean is eaten by the definitive host (e.g. man), the metacercaria is released from its capsule by the time it reaches the duodenum, it penetrates the wall of the duodenum, migrates through the diaphragm and pleural cavity to reach the

lung\*. In a small pocket in the lung which is formed around the parasite, it develops into an adult, and when mature extrudes eggs that are coughed up by the host and the cycle is complete. If swallowed the eggs remain viable and are passed out with the faeces. The phase in the definitive host takes several weeks to complete.

Other organs or tissues in which the metacercariae may come to rest are the liver, spleen, brain, peritoneum, testes, prostate, epididymis, muscles, and skin.

Hosts.—Besides man the tiger, panther, leopard, wild cat, domestic cat, wolf, fox, dog, mongoose, muskrat, and rat can act as definitive hosts.

*Melania libertina* is said to be the commonest snail intermediate host but *Ampullaria luteostoma* and other species of *Melania* are also potential hosts.

A number of crustaceans of the genera *Astacus*, *Eriocheir*, *Potamon*, and others have been found infected and other crustaceans are probably capable of acting as the second intermediate hosts.

\* It is not clear why metacercariae should take this direct but somewhat unusual route rather than the more 'biological' one via the lymphatics and systemic blood which would take them straight to the lungs.

## PATHOLOGY

In the lung there is a sharp cellular reaction to the presence of the parasite, consisting mainly of polymorphonuclear leucocytes and eosinophils; later, fibroblasts appear and eventually a thick band of fibrous tissue is laid down around the worm. Within this fibrous capsule besides the worm there is a mass of reddish brown purulent material in which the eggs of the worm can be found. Periodically these abscess-like cavities communicate with an adjoining bronchiole and the fluid contents is discharged into a bronchus and coughed up or swallowed by the patient. The worm however remains and the process is repeated. Sometimes several of these cavities or tunnels coalesce and a comparatively large cavity is formed.

In other organs and tissues where the larvae may come to rest and the adult worms develop, a similar tissue reaction and 'abscess' formation occurs. In any of these places a secondary infection may take place and the fibrous capsule and its contents be replaced by an ordinary abscess.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

This will naturally depend on the main site of the encysted worms. When they are in the lung, the condition is not unlike that of pulmonary tuberculosis except that there is not usually any fever. There may be an irritating cough which is worse in the morning, and paroxysms may occur when the patient is at rest and disturb his sleep. The reddish-brown sputum that the patient coughs up is suggestive of the rusty sputum of pneumonia. There may be a hæmorrhage after a particularly violent fit of coughing. In uncomplicated cases physical signs are few, but there are usually riles. However, complications such as broncho pneumonia, pleurisy and empyema are not uncommon.

In the brain the encysted parasites may cause Jacksonian epilepsy and other cerebral symptoms, in the liver, they may cause liver pain and enlargement, in the intestinal walls they may cause abdominal pain and gastro-intestinal disturbances, in the prostate, epididymes and testes, they may cause pain and swelling, and in the skin they may discharge at the surface and cause an open ulcer.

## DIAGNOSIS

This is dependent almost entirely on the finding and identification of the eggs, either in the sputum or in the stools. In the latter case they may have come from cysts in the intestinal wall that burst into the lumen of the intestine, or from the lung, having been coughed up and swallowed.

X-ray examination has proved disappointing as a diagnostic procedure.

A complement fixation test has given a high percentage of positive results.

## PREVENTION

It will be apparent from the ætiology of the disease that there are several points at which the transmission cycle could be attacked, but in none of these cases would it be possible to devise any practicable measures.

By means of education and propaganda and of necessary legislation, the practice of eating uncooked crustaceans should be stopped, but even this will not reduce the potential danger, as the cycle can probably be

maintained satisfactorily through other mammalian hosts, so that any future relaxation would probably again lead to the development of fresh cases

### TREATMENT

Practically the only treatment for which any success has been claimed is with emetine. Large doses, bordering on toxic doses, must be given to be of any value. Doses of half a grain three times daily for at least a week have been recommended, and it is claimed that better results are obtained if this is combined with prontosil in full dose.

### PROGNOSIS

This is usually fairly good, except in the case of very heavy infections or in those cases in which serious complications have already developed.

### FASCIOLOPSIASIS

**Introduction** — This is a disease caused by the large intestinal fluke, *Fasciolopsis buski* (Lankaster, 1857), Odhner, 1902, that was first observed by Busk in 1843 in the duodenum of an Indian laascar who died in London. The pig is also a definitive host and probably the main reservoir of infection, the life cycle of this fluke includes stages in a snail and in an aquatic plant, and the fluke establishes itself in man when he eats the latter.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

This infection occurs in India (Bengal and Assam), southern and central China, Indo-China and Siam, Formosa, the Dutch East Indies and Borneo and other East Indian islands. It has not been reported from the other continents.

It occurs amongst the poorer members of the native populations of the endemic areas and mainly amongst children, who ingest the encysted embryos while they are removing with their teeth the outer covering of the edible portion of certain aquatic plants.

### ÆTIOLOGY

*Fasciolopsis buski* is a large broad hermaphroditic fluke, from 20 to 75 microns long by 8 to 20 microns across. It has one oral sucker at its anterior end. The eggs are large, 130 to 140 by 80 to 85 microns, golden brown in colour, and ovoidal in shape (see figure 187) (Plate A, fig 16).

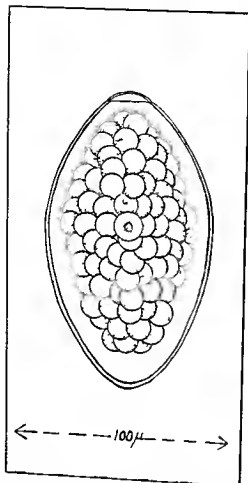


Figure 187 The egg of *Fasciolopsis buski*

The shell is thin and has a small operculum (a lid-like structure) at one end. In the immature egg the contained protoplasm is divided into a large number of regular globular masses which almost fill the shell.

**Life cycle**—Man is infected by consuming raw aquatic vegetation, the parasite gaining entry in an encysted larval stage. Excystation occurs in the duodenum, and the embryo attaches itself to the intestinal mucosa and develops into an adult in about three months. Eggs are deposited in the intestinal lumen by the mature worm at the rate of about 25 000 a day continuously for several months. The eggs are passed in faeces and on

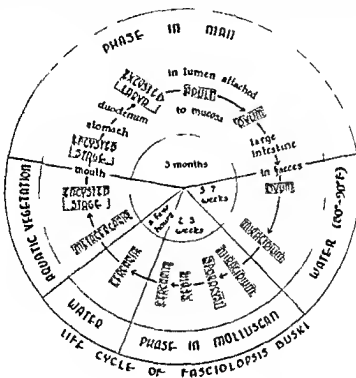


Figure 163

reaching the water mature in from three to seven weeks at a favourable temperature (80° F-90° F). The miracidium that emerges from the mature egg swims freely for a few hours and then enters the soft tissues of a suitable snail. Several species of *Planorbis*, *Segmentina*, and of other genera have been shown to be potential intermediate hosts. Within a few weeks cercariae emerge from these snails and after some hours as free swimming parasites, they penetrate the seed pods and roots of certain aquatic plants where they encyst. In Bengal and Assam, *Trapa bicornis* and in China *T. natans* and the water chestnut *Eliocharis tuberosa* are commonly infected, these are ingested by man and the cycle is complete.

#### PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Within man the parasite lives only in the intestinal canal, but it is capable of causing considerable local damage to the intestinal mucosa at the point of its attachment. There is also evidence that it secretes a toxin

that is injected into or absorbed by the host. There is an area of inflammation around the point of attachment of the worm, the centre of which later sometimes becomes necrotic, ulcerates, and bleeds, or an abscess may develop in the mucosa and eventually rupture into the intestinal lumen.

The fully developed syndrome is that of a true dysentery, with severe abdominal pain, blood and pus in the stools, and considerable toxæmia and prostration. In heavy infections particularly in children, the toxæmia predominates and is associated with oedema of the face, trunk and legs, and ascites, and may result in the death of the child. Milder infections will cause little more than abdominal discomfort, a toxic diarrhoea, and slight malaise, but even these mild infections eventually produce a state of malnutrition.

The blood picture usually shows a considerable eosinophilia with an absolute decrease in the other white cell elements, and a slight macrocytic (nutritional) anaemia unless there has been much blood loss, when the picture may be confused by a microcytic tendency.

#### DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis will usually depend on the finding of the characteristic eggs in the stools although after purgation the adults may be found. The eggs are almost identical with those of *Fasciola hepatica*, the sheep fluke that rarely affects man and with those of *Echinostoma* of which several species have been reported as parasitizing man occasionally.

#### PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

Consciousness of the mode of infection and a very modest degree of intelligence on the part of the potential victims are the only requirements for prevention. Abstinence from eating the incriminated aquatic vegetables is even unnecessary as if it is peeled without the aid of the teeth and well washed infection will be avoided, for the cercariae do not encyst in the edible portions. Immersion in boiling water for a few seconds should however be advocated as a safer procedure. In view of the simplicity of this method discussion on other methods of breaking the cycle, such as the destruction of snails and protection of the water courses from contamination, both of which will always be very difficult, would be purely academic. The latter would present insuperable difficulties in most endemic areas as pigs are the main reservoirs of infection.

For the treatment tetrachlorethylene, carbon tetrachloride, and hexylresorcinol are the best drugs. The dosage is that used for other intestinal parasites (*quod vide*).

#### REFERENCES

- FAUST E. C. and KHAW O. K. (1927) Studies in *Clonorchis sinensis* (Cobbold) Amer J Hyg Monograph series No 8
- McCONNELL J. F. P. (1875) Remarks on the Anatomical and Pathological Relations of a New Species of Liver Fluke Lancet 2, 271
- HOEPLI R. (1933) Histological changes in the Liver in 66 Chinese infected with *Clonorchis sinensis* Chinese Med J 47, 1200



## HYDATID DISEASE

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	737
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION	738
ÆTIOLOGY	738
<i>The causal organism</i>	738
<i>The life cycle</i>	738
EPIDEMIOLOGY	739
<i>Factors in the infection of man</i>	739
PATHOLOGY	741
<i>Distribution of lesions</i>	741
<i>Development of hydatid cyst</i>	741
Endogenous budding—Exogenous budding—Spontaneous rupture—Suppuration—Calcification	
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	742
<i>Latent period</i>	742
<i>Onset and course</i>	742
Liver—Lung—Brain—Bone—Kidney	
DIAGNOSIS	743
(i) <i>Clinical</i>	743
(ii) <i>Roentgenography</i>	744
(iii) <i>Blood picture</i>	744
(iv) <i>Serum tests</i>	744
(a) <i>The precipitin test</i>	
(b) <i>The complement fixation test</i>	
(v) <i>Intradermal (Casoni) test</i>	744
(vi) <i>Identification of hydatid material</i>	744
PREVENTION	745
TREATMENT	745
<i>Surgical</i>	745
<i>Prognosis</i>	745

**Introduction**—This is a disease that man shares with sheep, cattle, and pigs, it is caused by infection with the larval or hydatid stage of a small tapeworm *Echinococcus granulosus*, whose definitive host is the dog. Over a period of years these hydatids develop to a very large size in the liver

and other organs producing pathological changes mainly but not entirely by pressure. This disease occurs in temperate and cold climates, principally where sheep raising is practised extensively, but it is also encountered in a few tropical and subtropical areas.

In view of the fact that it is in no sense a tropical disease and that it is usually dealt with adequately in standard textbooks on medicine and surgery, hydatid disease is only discussed summarily here.

**Geographical distribution**—Hydatid disease has an extensive distribution throughout the world, but the most important foci are Iceland, central and south-eastern Europe, North and South Africa, South Australia, Tasmania, and New Zealand and Uruguay, Argentina, and Chile. It also occurs extensively in Palestine, Syria, Arabia, and Iraq, and in Siberia.

In India, the disease is comparatively rare, but perhaps not as rare as published reports would indicate (Editorial, 1938) and there are undoubtedly isolated foci where a higher human infection rate exists (Sami, 1938).

#### ÆTIOLOGY

**The causal organism**—*Echinococcus granulosus* is a minute worm, 3 to 6 millimetres in length consisting of a scolex, a neck, and one im-

mature one mature and one gravid proglottid. It is an intestinal parasite of the dog, the wolf, the jackal and rarely the domestic cat. The principal intermediate hosts are sheep, cattle, and pigs, but many other animals act as intermediate hosts notably horses and camels. Man is infected sporadically, taking the place of an intermediate host in the infection sequence.

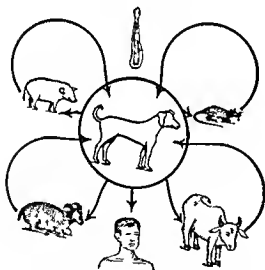


Figure 189 Showing the transmission cycles in hydatid infection

**The life cycle**—The egg, which is indistinguishable from that of the *Tæniæ* is ingested by the sheep or other intermediate host. In the host's stomach the outer shell is digested off and the oncosphere emerges in the duodenum where it penetrates the intestinal wall to reach the mesenteric venules. It is usually filtered out in the liver but may work its way through these capillaries and even those of the lung to reach the systemic circulation and any organ or tissue of the body. Wherever it is held up, it is either destroyed quickly by the tissue reaction or it develops into a hydatid cyst and commences to grow. Within this cyst, brood capsules containing scolices develop. When the intermediate host dies or is killed, and is devoured by a potential definitive host, these scolices attach themselves to the intestinal mucosa and develop into the adult echinococcus. When the adult is mature the terminal proglottid becomes detached, and

the uterus bursts discharging the ova into the bowel lumen to be passed out with the stools, or the detached proglottid itself may pass out of the intestinal canal before discharging the ova. Whichever happens, the cycle is now complete and the ova are ready to be ingested by another intermediate host.

It will be seen that man plays no part in the natural life cycle of the worm. His infection is incidental, and the worms that infect him find themselves in a *cul-de-sac*, at least in all civilized countries.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

There is evidence that climate *per se* has some influence on the distribution of the disease. For example, in Australia conditions are very similar throughout the country, yet it is only in the south that the disease is a serious problem, and again it is difficult to explain entirely satisfactorily its relative infrequency in India, although here there are undoubtedly other important factors besides the climate.

The disease is prevalent only in those countries where man, the dog, and sheep (or less commonly cattle and the pig) come into close association, and it occurs mainly amongst those members of the population that associate with dogs, e.g. farmers, shepherds, and dog fanciers.

Whilst the diagnosis is often delayed until late middle life, this is because the hydatid takes many years to reach clinical proportions when it is located in some non-vital structure such as the liver, and it is believed that many, or possibly most, infections occur during childhood. The sexes are affected equally.

**Factors in the infection of man**—From the point of view of man, sheep and other domestic—and possibly also wild—herbivores are the reservoirs of infection and dogs—primarily, and to much less extent other carnivores—are the vectors. The two primary factors in the infection of man are

(i) The infection rate amongst dogs

(ii) The number of dogs in a locality (a) that may be directly associated with man (b) that may contaminate man's water or food and (c) that may contaminate sheep and cattle pastures

(iii) The closeness of (a) the direct association between dogs and man and the extent of the opportunity for the former to contaminate (b) man's food or water and (c) sheep or cattle pastures

The secondary factors on which the infection rate in dogs will depend are

(iv) The number of infected sheep or other domestic or wild herbivores in the locality, (in sheep 90 per cent of the hydatids cysts are fertile against 24 per cent of those of other herbivores (Perez Fontana 1936) so that the former are far more important)

(v) The opportunities that dogs enjoy of feeding on the viscera of herbivores

The subject could be discussed briefly under each of these headings

(i) In many countries, the infection rate amongst dogs is very high, up to 50 per cent (South Australia), whereas in others (USA) canine infection is almost unknown (Sawitz, 1938). There is a rough parallelism between canine and human infections, but the human infection rate is nearly always on a much lower plain. At one time in Iceland where infection rate amongst dogs was 30 per cent, it was stated that nearly 20 per

cent of the population was infected, whereas in countries where infection in dogs is rare *e.g.* the United States and Canada, only 20 autochthonous cases have been reported in over a hundred years (Magath, 1941)

For India only two reports need be quoted, Sami (*loc cit*) found 50.6 per cent of 89 dogs infected in a rural district in the Punjab where he reported 40 human cases seen in a period of five years, whereas Maplestone (1933) found only two infected out of 100 dogs examined in Calcutta where the human disease is undoubtedly rare

In Iraq Senekji and Beattie (1949) found 17.8 per cent of 123 dogs infected

The infection rate in dogs will depend on factors (iv) and (v)

(ii) The disease is generally more common in countries and amongst communities in which there is a high proportion of dogs to human beings, in Uruguay, Perez Fontana (*loc cit*) reports a ratio of dog man = 2.1 in houses where hydatid disease occurs, against 1.8 in the general community

(iii) (a) The question of direct association between man and dogs is a matter of practice, to which it is impossible to attach figures. Where dogs are important as draft animals, as in Iceland and other cold countries, or where they are an important part of the farm personnel, as are sheepdogs they are treated almost as human beings and given free access to the living and sleeping quarters (a modification of this practice has caused a recent reduction in the incidence of the disease in Iceland). In many other instances children are allowed to play freely with dogs. But in certain eastern countries *e.g.* amongst the Hindus in India, dogs are looked upon as unclean animals and are allowed to exist as outside scavengers only. This is the important factor in determining the high incidence of the disease in the former communities *e.g.* Iceland and New Zealand and the comparative rarity in others, *e.g.* India

(b) The indirect association by contamination of drinking water and food supplies of the population may obviously be a danger in some countries but it has never been given an important place as a cause of the disease

(c) The chances of the infection of sheep, cattle and pigs from the promiscuous defæcation of dogs in pastures will be a constant danger and will depend mainly on the numbers of uncontrolled dogs that there are in any locality and the propinquity of the pastures to the village, away from which the dogs seldom stray any distance, except those that are used for herding cattle

(iv) In Argentina the infection rate amongst sheep is 7 to 10 per cent, and that of cattle and pigs higher. In some of the Near East foci the infection rate in sheep reaches 70 per cent, in Iraq Senekji & Beattie (*loc cit*) reported 12 per cent in sheep and goats, and 25 per cent in cattle. In these localities the human infection rate is high. On the other hand, in India the infection rate in sheep and cattle was sometimes also high, in Calcutta the writer could always obtain several hydatid livers any day by visiting a slaughter house, and in the United States it is far from negligible, but for reasons given here the incidence of hydatid disease is not high in either of these countries. The infection amongst domestic herbivores is probably maintained by cross infection from wild carnivores and herbivores (Riley, 1933)

(1) In many countries (*e.g.* in South America and New Zealand) dogs have in the past been allowed to feed on the livers of slaughtered sheep, especially those that were diseased and therefore of no value. This practice has declined as a result of propaganda, as well as because of the economic fact that liver is now more valuable. In the United States slaughter-houses are better controlled, so that the incidence of infection amongst dogs, and thence amongst human beings is low. The higher commercial value of entrails in India has also been a factor in keeping the infection rate in dogs at a comparatively low level in most parts of the country. In that country, the low association index between man and dogs and the climate, already mentioned, are also factors.

#### PATHOLOGY

The pathogenesis is caused by, (i) the pressure of the growing parasite, (ii) the seeping through the capsule of small quantities of allergins and toxins, (iii) the rupture of an hydatid cyst with the sudden release of large quantities of hydatid fluid containing allergins, toxins and daughter cysts into the blood stream, a serous cavity, the lung, or a hollow viscus, (iv) the development of secondary cysts in other organs and tissues, and (v), as a common complication the infection and suppuration of an hydatid cyst.

**Distribution of the lesions.**—When the oncospheres find their way into the portal circulation, the first organ that they reach will be the liver, about three-quarters of the hydatid cysts recognized clinically or post mortem occur here, of which four out of five are in the right lobe. Some will work their way through the liver, and of these roughly half will be held up in the next set of capillaries, that is in the lungs, about 10 per cent of hydatid cysts are found in lung. The remainder get through into the arterial blood and are distributed to other organs and tissues, the other sites, roughly in the order of frequency, are—skin and subcutaneous tissue, bone, muscle, kidneys, spinal cord, brain, heart, and other organs. The high percentage reported as occurring in the peritoneum are certainly mainly due to metastases from a ruptured primary hydatid.

**Development of the hydatid cyst.**—Of the oncospheres that come to rest in the various organs, most probably the majority are destroyed by the tissue reactions, those that survive develop into hydatid cysts and grow, reaching a size of 250 microns in about three weeks. They are now surrounded by a characteristic tissue reaction, immediately around the cyst are endothelial cells and giant cells, which are surrounded by a layer of fibroblasts with new capillary formations and infiltrating eosinophils, and an outer layer of denser fibrous tissue. When a cyst is located in the liver or other soft tissue it continues to grow and by the fifth month has reached about one centimetre in diameter, in the sheep, but in man the growth is generally slower and a cyst, which may eventually attain the size of a football seldom reaches a sufficient size to be recognizable clinically for about fifteen years, unless it is in some vital structure.

As the cyst grows, its outer covering becomes thicker and less permeable so that tissues in which it lies react less specifically but rather as they would to any foreign body. The mature cyst consists of three layers, one of host and two of parasitic origin, namely an outer fibrous tissue layer, a middle laminated hyaline layer which is elastic and usually shrinks away from the outer fibrous coat when the tension within the cyst is relieved, and the inner germinal layer. The cyst contains albumin-free saline fluid under

slight tension in which will be found 'hydatid sand', consisting of brood capsules and scolices. Within the original cyst cavity there is often *endogenous budding* with the formation of daughter cysts which separate from the main cyst wall and will develop into individual hydatid cysts should the original cyst rupture into the peritoneum or blood stream, for example

*Exogenous budding* also occurs—In such cases the tumour develops a much more 'malignant' character, as it invades rather than compresses the surrounding tissue and eventually a large multiloculated cyst which may involve practically the whole liver will result. Also without rupturing it may give rise to metastases. (It is a matter of controversy whether this exogenous budding is not the characteristic of a different species or strain of echinococcus. The evidence for this is that it commonly occurs only in a few geographical localities, *e.g.* in Central Europe, but the present consensus is that there is only one species and that some special condition determines its special development.)

When the cyst grows within the skull or the spinal column, it naturally produces pressure symptoms at a much earlier date. When it develops in a bone, the nature of the tumour is somewhat different, as the pressure causes invagination and the formation of diverticulae. The condition produced is like that of cystic disease of the bone, there is rarefaction of the bone and spontaneous fracture is likely to occur.

*Spontaneous rupture*—This is not an uncommon incident. Hydatids of the liver usually rupture into the peritoneum, or into the gall-bladder or bile ducts. In the former case, the only immediate result may be shock and allergic manifestations, but after several years a large number of cysts may develop in various parts of the peritoneal cavity. In the latter, the daughter cysts may cause a temporary blocking of the common bile duct, but the more serious consequence will be the almost inevitable infection of the cyst cavity.

In the lung, rupture into a bronchus is not uncommon. If the cyst is a large one, the incident may drown the patient, but, if he survives this, the prognosis is usually good.

*Suppuration*—This may occur in any cyst, but in the case of a unilocular cyst it is usually the result of a leak or rupture into a hollow viscus. The suppuration rate amongst multilocular hydatids is much higher than amongst the unilocular cysts.

The changes that occur when hydatid cysts develop in other, rarer locations need not be discussed here.

*Calcification*—When a hydatid cyst dies, the fluid will be absorbed slowly and be partially replaced by caseous matter. The cyst wall shrinks and may become calcified. What remains of the cyst is now completely surrounded by fibrous tissue and causing no further symptoms is perhaps discovered *post mortem*.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

*Latent period*—After infection it will usually be from five to twenty years before the first symptoms appear, and it has been estimated that in about 25 per cent of cases the cyst remains symptomless throughout life.

*Onset and course*—The onset of symptoms may be very gradual, or it may be sudden, either due to the bursting or suppuration of a hydatid cyst. It will be appreciated from consideration of the pathology of the condition that the nature of the symptoms in either case will vary accord-

ing to the site of the cyst and in the latter according to the direction in which it bursts

When the hydatid is in the *liver* the first evidence will often be the appearance of a tense cystic tumour, possibly exhibiting the characteristic hydatid thrill on percussion, in the epigastrium, or if the hydatid is near the upper surface of the liver, there may be respiratory distress and cardiac embarrassment. It is usually painless. If it bursts into the peritoneum the patient will immediately suffer from shock and possibly an urterial rash a little later, after which there may be another latent period of five to ten years before the secondary hydatids in the peritoneum begin to cause symptoms. Or, if it bursts into a bile duct there may be biliary colic and obstructive jaundice, and later suppuration with pyrexia and other complications associated with a liver abscess. If it bursts into the pleural cavity, from the liver or from the lung, after initial shock the signs will be those of pleurisy with effusion.

Multilocular or alveolar hydatids on account of their invasive nature more readily become infected, so that irregular pyrexia and pain suggestive of hepatitis or liver abscess will occur without definite rupture.

Hydatids in the lung, after the usual long latent period may produce slowly increasing dyspnoea or asthma like attacks. There may be bulging and deformity of the chest wall, but before the cyst has reached such a size there will be an area of dullness, absence of breath sounds and opacity under the fluoroscope. If the cyst bursts into a bronchus, the patient may be asphyxiated by the fluid and the daughter cysts obstructing the bronchi or he may be able to cough up the contents, in such cases about 75 per cent recover spontaneously but in others a lung abscess may develop.

In the brain, the pressure symptoms will usually appear earlier, but at first they may amount to little more than headache and visual disturbance and the hydatid may reach a considerable size—demonstrable by x ray—before the more serious signs and symptoms of intracranial pressure cause a diagnosis of tumour to be made. Again, everything will depend on the localization. Sudden death may occur from pressure on vital areas or rupture of a cyst into one of the ventricles.

In the bones, pain will usually be the first symptom, later there may be deformity and spontaneous fracture.

In the kidney, the condition will be suggestive of a hydronephrosis or a tumour. Similarly, in other organs and tissues the symptoms will be those of a benign tumour, and, when it is palpable of a cystic tumour.

### DIAGNOSIS

This is a matter of very great importance as even in countries such as Australia and New Zealand where the disease is common, only about half the cases reported are diagnosed pre operatively, and for proper treatment accurate diagnosis is essential. Diagnosis can be considered under six headings—

(1) *Clinical*—The only pathognomonic finding is a 'hydatid thrill', which can usually but by no means always be elicited in the case of large hydatids of the liver. Most of the clinical evidence is of a negative nature, the slow growth of the unifocal hydatid and its non inflammatory and non-invasive nature make possible the development of a very large tumour with the minimum of general or local effects.

(ii) **Roentgenography.**—Hydatid cyst on the upper surface of the liver can be recognized by the elevation of the right dome of the diaphragm. Roentgenography is also of great value in locating a cyst in the lung, brain, or bones. When dead cysts become calcified, they are well visualized in soft tissues.

(iii) **Blood picture.**—This will provide little help in countries where helminthic infections are common. Eosinophilia will depend on there being some seepage of hydatid fluid through the cyst wall, and a count of from 10 to 20 per cent will be found in most active cases. In the case of a rupture occurring in the cyst wall, as a result of ill-advised interference, or otherwise, there will be a sharp rise in the eosinophil count. However, a low eosinophil count does not exclude hydatid.

(iv) **Serum tests.**—Useful information will be obtained from two such tests—

(a) *The precipitin test.*—This is done with fresh carbolized hydatid fluid, collected aseptically from a sterile hydatid cyst of any intermediate host including man (mixed samples are the best as the fluid from a single cyst may be inactive), or with a 1 in 1,000 dilution of dried hydatid material. To a tube containing a small quantity of fresh or reconstituted hydatid fluid an equal quantity of the patient's serum is added, after 36 hours a fine flocculent precipitate will appear in 60 to 80 per cent of positive cases of hydatid disease.

(b) *The complement fixation test.*—This is done with fresh or dried hydatid fluid or with an alcoholic extract of scolices as the antigen. A higher percentage of positive results will be obtained with this test, this is usually placed at 80 per cent but some workers claim that it is always positive in all active cases, that is in all those cases in which the cyst is not completely shut off. The test remains positive up to a year after the removal of a hydatid cyst.

(v) **Intradermal (Casoni) test.**—This is probably the most useful of the immunological tests, it gives the highest percentage of positive results and if the test is carefully done, these will include very few false positives. It can be done with undiluted fresh filtered hydatid fluid (of proved activity), with a saline-dissolved alcoholic extract of scolices, or with a standardized heterologous tapeworm antigen. This latter can be made from almost any tapeworm, it is best to use a 1-in-100 dilution and to give 0.01 c cm by intradermal injection. There is an immediate weal, of at least one centimetre in diameter, with pseudopodia.

(vi) **Identification of hydatid material.**—It is not good practice to tap a cyst through the abdominal wall, as, even if the procedure is followed immediately by open operation, some fluid with contained daughter cysts may escape into the peritoneal cavity, and give rise to metastases. However, other opportunities for examining hydatid fluid with its contained brood-capsules and scolices will arise, as for example, when a cyst bursts into a bronchus and the contents are coughed up, in such a case, the brood-capsules may be mistaken for grape skins.

### PREVENTION

The reader should again turn to p 739 where the factors in the infection of man are discussed.

The dog is not only the most important definitive host, but he is the link between man and any other reservoirs of infection. Measures must, therefore, be directed towards—

(a) The prevention of infection in dogs by proper control of town and country abattoirs so that dogs do not have access to the entrails of infected animals.



(b) The destruction of stray and superfluous dogs the proper control of dogs and of other possible definitive hosts and the prevention of their access to places where they could infect food or water designed for human consumption or to the pastures of sheep cattle or pigs

(c) The reduction of the direct association between dogs and man this can be done by reducing the number of dogs as above but also by

- (i) keeping dogs out of the houses
- (ii) not allowing them to lick out plates or other utensils used by man
- (iii) avoiding the fondling of dogs and
- (iv) forbidding children from playing with dogs

These measures against dogs are particularly applicable in countries where there is a high percentage of infection amongst dogs. In other countries, the precautions might be relaxed regarding individual dogs that are known by careful and repeated examination of their stools to be uninfected and that are kept under proper control so that their chances of access to infected material are minimal

Some of these measures can be aided by suitable legislation, but education and propaganda will be essential to achieve success in the prevention of this infection. Already a very considerable degree of success has been achieved in Australia and New Zealand, and also in Iceland

#### TREATMENT

No drug has yet been found that has any specific effect on the parasite in the stages in which it occurs in man. It seems very possible that a specific might be found that would destroy the parasite in its early stages, but it would be difficult to establish its efficacy and its practical use would be limited to the periodic administration to those under serious risk, however, even in such cases other preventive measures would be preferable. The insulation of the cyst by the thick fibrous capsule that occurs in its later stages makes it problematical if a drug will ever be found that will penetrate the cyst and destroy its contents. Treatment must therefore be expectant or surgical

**Surgical**—It will naturally depend on the location of the hydatid whether this is possible or not. Hydatids of the liver are those that call for surgical treatment most frequently. The aim must be to remove the contents and the parasitic layers of the cyst, and to close the cavity, as far as possible, without open drainage. This must be done without any contamination of the peritoneal cavity with the hydatid fluid

It would be out of place to describe the surgical procedures in detail here, but the most recent methods include opening the abdominal cavity to display the cyst, selecting a suitable point for aspiration, surrounding it with swabs to take up any possible leaking fluid aspirating most of the cyst contents, injecting up to 50 c cm of 10 per cent formalin to destroy the daughter cysts and scolices, cutting down on and shelling out the parasitic layers of the cyst, and again swabbing out the cavity with 10 per cent formalin

#### PROGNOSIS

Hydatid disease is always a serious condition but its seriousness depends very largely on the location of the cyst, and when operative treatment is undertaken, on the experience and skill of the surgeon. In the hands of a skilled surgeon, the immediate prognosis in unilocular liver hydatids is good, but recurrences in the peritoneum still occur in a considerable percentage of cases. The prognosis in multilocular and suppurating hydatids is bad

## REFERENCES

- EDITORIAL (1938)  
 MAGATH T B (1941)  
 MAPLESTONE P A (1933)  
 PEREZ-FONTANA V (1936)  
 RILEY W A (1933)  
 SAMI M A (1938)  
 SAWITZ W (1938)  
 SENEKJI H A and BEATTIE C P (1940)
- Hydatid Disease Indian Med Gaz* 73, 225  
*Hydatid Disease in North America Pennsylvania Med J*, 44, 813  
*The Frequency of Hydatid Disease in India Indian Med Gaz* 68, 377  
*Quistes hidatídicos del Cuello Ann Fac Med Montevideo* 21, 279  
*Reservoirs of Echinococcus in Minnesota Minnesota Med J* 16, 744  
*Hydatid Disease in the Punjab Indian Med Gaz* 73, 90  
*Echinococcus infection in Louisiana J Parasitol* 24, 437  
*The Incidence of Hydatid Disease in Iraq Trans Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg*, 33, 461

## NUTRITION AND NUTRITIONAL DISORDERS IN THE TROPICS

	PAGE
<b>NORMAL DIETETIC REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>747</b>
<i>Caloric requirements</i>	748
<i>Protein requirements</i>	749
<i>Fat requirements</i>	749
<i>Carbohydrate requirements</i>	750
<i>Mineral requirements</i>	750
Calcium—Phosphorus—Iron—Iodine copper manganese and other min erals.	
<i>Vitamins</i>	751
<b>DIETETIC REQUIREMENTS IN THE TROPICS</b>	<b>753</b>
<i>Protein</i>	753
<i>Fat</i>	754
<i>Minerals and Vitamins</i>	754
<i>Some tropical dietaries</i>	754
<i>Rice</i>	756
<b>THE EFFECTS OF DEFICIENT DIET ON HEALTH</b>	<b>758</b>
<i>General effects</i>	758
<i>Special effects</i>	760
Starvation	
Protein deficiency	
Vitamin A deficiency	
Night-blindness	
Xerophthalmia	
Phrymadema	
Renal calculi	
Prevention and treatment	
Vitamin B <sub>1</sub> deficiency	
Vitamin B <sub>1</sub> complex—Niacin—Riboflavin—Tropical macrocytic anemia	
Vitamin-C deficiency	
Vitamin D deficiency	
Other vitamin deficiencies	
<b>THE PREVENTION OF NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES IN THE TROPICS</b>	<b>765</b>
<i>Causes of malnutrition</i>	765
<i>Measures for prevention</i>	768

### NORMAL DIETETIC REQUIREMENTS

**Introduction** —For growth and repair of the human frame and for the production of energy, a certain quantity of food is necessary The three

energy-producing principles of food are protein, fat, and carbohydrate, but there are a number of other essential nutrient elements, for example, minerals salts the most important of which are those of iron, calcium, and phosphorus and the vitamins, water is also essential. The food requirements of man have been studied very extensively, although it would be absurd to suggest that there was not a very great deal more to be learned. The energy value of different food substances and the energy requirements of the organism can be estimated. The unit of expression is the large calorie, that is, the amount of heat required to raise one gramme of water one degree centigrade. The energy value of one gramme of protein is four calories, carbohydrate has the same 'calorie value', as it is usually called, and a gramme of fat will produce nine calories of energy (or heat). Although the calorie value of the mineral salts and vitamins is negligible, they are essential for body-building purposes and for the proper utilization of the energy-producing foods.

**Calorie Requirements**—The calorie requirements of man vary according to the age and size of the individual, as well as the type of work that he or she is doing. There are formulæ for calculating calorie requirements dependent on weight and body surface, but for practical purposes it is usual to take a 'basic' calorie allowance, to apply coefficients for individuals of different ages and for special conditions such as pregnancy and lactation, and to add supplements for special types of work. The calorie requirement of a man living in a temperate climate and not engaged in manual work is usually considered to be 2400 calories, the coefficients and supplements to be applied are given in the table below.

TABLE XIV\*

Age in years	Work	Supplementary allowance	Coefficient	Calories
	Light work	75 calories per hour of work		
1—2	Moderate work	75—150 calories	0.35	840
2—3	Hard work	150—300 calories	0.42	1000
3—5	Very hard work	300 calories upwards	0.5	1200
5—7			0.6	1440
7—9			0.7	1680
9—11			0.8	1920
11—12			0.9	2160
12—15†			1.0	2400
Males 15 upwards			1.0	2400
Women not pregnant			0.9	2160
Women pregnant			1.0	2400
Women lactating			1.25	3000

It is not uncommon to apply the coefficient of 0.9 as a maximum to women except of course pregnant and lactating women. For babies under the age of one year the calorie requirements are best supplied on a body-weight basis thus—

Under six months

100 calories per kilogramme or  
45 calories per pound

Six months but under one year

80 calories per kilogramme or  
41 calories per pound

\* Recommended by The Technical Commission for the Study of Nutrition of the Health Organization of the League of Nations (1936)

† Meets needs of puberty

An allowance will also have to be made for the muscular activities of children this is usually calculated as 75 calories per hour of active play for boys between 5 and 11 years of age and girls above 5 years and from 75 to 150 per hour for boys above the age of 11 years that is to say the same allowance as for light and moderate work respectively. Although it is important that the full caloric requirements should be supplied the exact proportion of the various constituents is not a matter of vital importance but in a well balanced diet in temperate climates the proportion should be roughly

Protein Fat Carbohydrate=1 1 5

It is however essential for purposes of body building that a diet should include a sufficiency of good protein

The composition of all common food-stuffs in terms of protein fat and carbohydrate has been worked out and can be read from the many tables that have been prepared these tables usually give the caloric value of a given weight of the substances but if they do not this can easily be calculated from their composition. Table XXV at the end of this chapter which supplies these data for certain common food-stuffs is given as an example only. Workers in tropical countries should always obtain dietary tables for the common food-stuffs of the country in which they are living in India for example from *Health Bulletin No 23* (Aykroyd 1940)

**Protein Requirements**—The protein intake of an adult should not be less than 1 gramme per kilogramme (or 0.45 grammes per pound) but the requirements of growing children are proportionately very much greater the amounts shown in the following table are recommended

TABLE XX

Age in years		Protein requirements in grammes per kilo of body-weight	
1—3		3.5	
3—5		3.0	
5—12		2.5	
12—15		2.5*	
15—17		2.0	
17—21		1.5	
21 upwards		1.0	
Women	pregnant	0—3 months	1.0
"	"	4—9	1.5
	lactating		2.0

Protein is built up from chemically simpler substances amino acids. During metabolism these are absorbed and re arranged as body proteins. There are about twenty two different amino acids some ten of which including tryptophane and lysine are essential whereas the remainder appear not to be there are thus good proteins and poor proteins. While there are many good proteins derived from vegetable sources as a general rule the proteins from animal sources are the better and some animal protein should always be included in a diet especially the diets of growing children and pregnant or lactating women

**Fat Requirements**—There is no generally accepted minimum standard for this dietary element and the optimum intake will undoubtedly vary considerably with the climate in a temperate climate while 100 grammes is often given as the optimum most dietitians place the minimum at 50

\* Meets needs of puberty

and 60 grammes. Perhaps more important is the nature of the fat, and at least half should be of animal origin. A function of fat is its vitamin-carrying capacity and fats of animal origin are on the whole a richer source of vitamins, however, perhaps more important, fat dissolves and increases the absorption of the fat-soluble vitamins. Further, certain unsaturated fatty acids, e.g. linoleic and arachidonic acid, appear to be essential dietary elements.

**Carbohydrates**—These are the main sources of energy, and except under starvation conditions are more likely to be taken in excessive than in deficient quantities. They are the main constituent of cereals and root vegetables, and sugar consists solely of carbohydrates.

**Mineral Requirements.**—Very small quantities of these are required, but the minimum requirements have been calculated—

**Calcium:**—Fish, milk, eggs and vegetables are rich in calcium. Cereals, especially rice, are poor sources, whole meal is, however, a moderately good source.

The daily requirement of an adult is about 0.7 grammes, but that of a child, who needs an excess of calcium for bone formation, is at least 1.0 gramme, of a pregnant woman 1.5 grammes, and of a lactating woman 2.0 grammes.

**Phosphorus**—This is seldom deficient in any diet adequate in calories and other essentials. It occurs in most food substances and cereals are a rich source of phosphorus, some will be lost in washing and cooking.

**Iron**—This occurs in many foods, in cereals, pulses (legumes), fruit, vegetables, and meat, especially liver, but it is present in negligible quantity in milk. Iron is not however assimilated from the food quantitatively, in some foods most of the iron is 'available', that is to say, easily assimilated, whereas in others little of the iron present is 'available'. The older tests for 'availability' of iron have been discredited and the only reliable test is the biological one, which has not yet been applied to many food-stuffs, therefore, the iron figures in diet tables have to be interpreted with caution. However, with the exception of milk diets, almost any diet that is adequate in calories will contain sufficient iron for normal conditions. It is in abnormal conditions, such as pregnancy and excessive menstrual loss, and in disease conditions when there is a continuous loss of blood, e.g. hookworm infection and haemorrhoids, that there may be a relative iron deficiency, even in persons on a good diet. The infant is born with about three months' iron supply stored in its liver, so that only when a pure milk diet is extended beyond this period it is necessary to give additional iron, but the pregnant woman has to find this additional iron, so that her requirements are greater and she is very liable to suffer a relative deficiency.

The daily iron requirements of the adult have been placed at 12 milligrammes, but in criticizing a diet one should expect at least 20 milligrammes to allow for some of the iron not being 'available'. A far better indication of iron deficiency in a population will be obtained by blood examination of a sample of the population, than by a diet survey. A hypochromic anaemia in a large percentage of a population in which there is no widespread infection with ancylostomes or schistosomes will almost always be due to a deficient iron intake, and such an anaemia, even in the presence of one of these helminthic infections, will suggest that the iron intake is low, and relatively inadequate.

It will seldom be worth modifying the diet to any extent on account of iron deficiency, it will nearly always be more economical to give additional iron medicinally.

**Fluorine**—This is an essential dietary element. Its absence during the period of formation of the teeth appears to lead to early dental caries, and there is some evidence that fluorine present in sufficient quantities (1 part per million) in the drinking water taken in later life will protect the teeth. The requirements have been placed at 0.5 milligrammes *per diem*.

On the other hand excess of fluorine in the water will lead not only to band formations and mottling of the enamel of the teeth but to changes in the bones, for example the development of exostoses that may result in the ankylosis of the joints, of the spinal cord, or of the thoracic cage, and eventually to the death of the patient from secondary infection. Amounts of the order of 10 milligrammes per litre have been associated with these pathological changes. This amount of fluorine has been found in the natural water-supply in a number of localities throughout the world, including several in India, e.g. in Nellore district in the Madras Presidency (Shortt Pundit, and Raghavachari, 1937).

**Copper, iodine, manganese and other minerals**—Iodine will only be deficient in certain countries or parts of countries, where iodine is absent from the water. In such countries, special arrangements have to be made for supplying iodine medicinally at intervals throughout the year, or in some domestic food ingredient such as salt, in order to prevent goitre.

Of the other minerals there is always sufficient in almost any diet to supply the minimum requirements.

**The Vitamins**—Important as they are, the vitamins have received far more attention than their relative importance warrants, on account of the wide advertising of vitamin preparations to both the medical profession and the laity during the last decade. It is not very often that a person eating a good mixed diet of the appropriate calorie value will suffer at all from lack of vitamins, although cases will be encountered in which the individual requirements are inexplicably high. The danger arises mostly in the cases of children, pregnant women, invalids and when, through special circumstances such as war, many ordinary dietary substances are not obtainable.

Medical attention was first drawn to the vitamins by certain clinical syndromes that were traced to the gross deficiency of specific vitamins (e.g. beri-beri, due to deficiency of vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, scurvy, due to deficiency of vitamin C, and rickets, due to the deficiency of vitamin D). Far more important however are the widespread minor degrees of ill health that are attributable to lesser degrees of deficiency.

In the determination of pathological processes associated with vitamin deficiencies it is obvious that there are other factors than the actual amount of the vitamin in the diet, or even than the amount absorbed, amongst a group of persons on more-or-less the same diet deficient in a particular vitamin, some will display the gross lesions associated with the particular deficiency, others will show minor signs of the same deficiency, while yet others will be apparently quite healthy. Of these secondary factors, some are well recognized others have still to be determined. Amongst these factors are, (a) other dietary substances taken (e.g. large amounts of any vitamin-free cereal appear to increase the requirements

and 60 grammes. Perhaps more important is the nature of the fat, and at least half should be of animal origin. A function of fat is its vitamin-carrying capacity and fats of animal origin are on the whole a richer source of vitamins, however, perhaps more important, fat dissolves and increases the absorption of the fat-soluble vitamins. Further, certain unsaturated fatty acids, e.g. linoleic and arachidonic acid, appear to be essential dietary elements.

**Carbohydrates**—These are the main sources of energy, and except under starvation conditions are more likely to be taken in excessive than in deficient quantities. They are the main constituent of cereals and root vegetables, and sugar consists solely of carbohydrates.

**Mineral Requirements**—Very small quantities of these are required, but the minimum requirements have been calculated.—

**Calcium**—Fish, milk, eggs and vegetables are rich in calcium. Cereals, especially rice, are poor sources, whole meal is, however, a moderately good source.

The daily requirement of an adult is about 0.7 grammes, but that of a child, who needs an excess of calcium for bone formation, is at least 1.0 gramme, of a pregnant woman 1.5 grammes, and of a lactating woman 2.0 grammes.

**Phosphorus**—This is seldom deficient in any diet adequate in calories and other essentials. It occurs in most food substances and cereals are a rich source of phosphorus, some will be lost in washing and cooking.

**Iron**—This occurs in many foods, in cereals, pulses (legumes), fruit, vegetables, and meat, especially liver, but it is present in negligible quantity in milk. Iron is not however assimilated from the food quantitatively, in some foods most of the iron is 'available', that is to say, easily assimilated whereas in others little of the iron present is 'available'. The older tests for 'availability' of iron have been discredited and the only reliable test is the biological one, which has not yet been applied to many food-stuffs therefore the iron figures in diet tables have to be interpreted with caution. However, with the exception of milk diets, almost any diet that is adequate in calories will contain sufficient iron for normal conditions. It is an abnormal condition, such as pregnancy and excessive menstrual loss, and in disease conditions when there is a continuous loss of blood, e.g. hookworm infection and hæmorrhoids, that there may be a relative iron deficiency, even in persons on a good diet. The infant is born with about three months' iron supply stored in its liver, so that only when a pure milk diet is extended beyond this period it is necessary to give additional iron, but the pregnant woman has to find this additional iron, so that her requirements are greater and she is very liable to suffer a relative deficiency.

The daily iron requirements of the adult have been placed at 12 milligrammes, but in criticizing a diet one should expect at least 20 milligrammes to allow for some of the iron not being 'available'. A far better indication of iron deficiency in a population will be obtained by blood examination of a sample of the population, than by a diet survey. A hypochromic anaemia in a large percentage of a population in which there is no widespread infection with ancylostomes or schistosomes will almost always be due to a deficient iron intake, and such an anaemia, even in the presence of one of these helminthic infections, will suggest that the iron intake is low, and relatively inadequate.



It will seldom be worth modifying the diet to any extent on account of iron deficiency it will nearly always be more economical to give additional iron medicinally.

**Fluorine**—This is an essential dietary element. Its absence during the period of formation of the teeth appears to lead to early dental caries and there is some evidence that fluorine present in sufficient quantities (1 part per million) in the drinking water taken in later life will protect the teeth. The requirements have been placed at 0.5 milligrammes *per diem*.

On the other hand excess of fluorine in the water will lead not only to band formations and mottling of the enamel of the teeth but to changes in the bones for example the development of exostoses that may result in the ankylosis of the joints of the spinal cord or of the thoracic cage and eventually to the death of the patient from secondary infection. Amounts of the order of 10 milligrammes per litre have been associated with these pathological changes. This amount of fluorine has been found in the natural water supply in a number of localities throughout the world including several in India e.g. in Nellore district in the Madras Presidency (Shortt Pundit and Raghavachari 1937).

**Copper, iodine, manganese and other minerals**—Iodine will only be deficient in certain countries or parts of countries where iodine is absent from the water. In such countries special arrangements have to be made for supplying iodine medicinally at intervals throughout the year or in some domestic food ingredient such as salt in order to prevent goitre.

Of the other minerals there is always sufficient in almost any diet to supply the minimum requirements.

**The Vitamins**—Important as they are the vitamins have received far more attention than their relative importance warrants on account of the wide advertising of vitamin preparations to both the medical profession and the laity during the last decade. It is not very often that a person eating a good mixed diet of the appropriate calorie value will suffer at all from lack of vitamins although cases will be encountered in which the individual requirements are inexplicably high. The danger arises mostly in the cases of children, pregnant women, invalids and when through special circumstances such as war many ordinary dietary substances are not obtainable.

Medical attention was first drawn to the vitamins by certain clinical syndromes that were traced to the gross deficiency of specific vitamins (e.g. *beri beri* due to deficiency of vitamin B, scurvy due to deficiency of vitamin C and rickets due to the deficiency of vitamin D). Far more important however are the widespread minor degrees of ill health that are attributable to lesser degrees of deficiency.

In the determination of pathological processes associated with vitamin deficiencies it is obvious that there are other factors than the actual amount of the vitamin in the diet or even than the amount absorbed amongst a group of persons on more or less the same diet deficient in a particular vitamin some will display the gross lesions associated with the particular deficiency others will show minor signs of the same deficiency while yet others will be apparently quite healthy. Of these secondary factors some are well recognized others have still to be determined. Amongst these factors are (a) other dietary substances taken (e.g. large amounts of any vitamin free cereal appear to increase the requirements

TABLE XXI

Summarized Data on Important Vitamins

Vitamin	Name	Solubility	Sources	Stability	Physiological action	AVERAGE ADULT DAILY REQUIREMENTS		Pathological effect of deficiency
						Inter national units	milli grammes	
A	Anti infective Carotene provitamin	Fat soluble	Green vegetables, carrots, butter, liver, some fruit, eggs and red palm oil	Prolonged heating destroys	Essential for cell growth and replacement, especially affects epithelial tissues, precursor of visual purple	5000	3.00	Blepharospasm, xerosis and kerophthalmia, keratinoma, night blindness, pharyngitis, hyperkeratosis, dentine defects.
	Thiamin, Ancemin	Water soluble	Yeast, unmulled cereals, mola and vegetables, some fruit, glandular organs, meat (Milk is poor source and mulled cereals very poor)	Heat stable with standards at 120°C. and oil	Controls carbohydrate metabolism, catalyzes carboxylation of pyruvic acid	330 mg. (10)	1.2	Beri beri, polyneuritis, anorexia, cardiac dilatation
B complex	Riboflavin	Water soluble	Pulses, milk products, liver, eggs, meat, some green vegetables and brewers yeast (Charmite)	Heat stable	Factor in enzyme system that regulates cell oxygenation and affects protein and carbohydrate metabolism		2 to 3	Ariboflavinosis or riboflavinosis, glossitis, stomatitis and eye affections, dermatitis.
	Nicotinic acid, Niacin	Water soluble	Meat, liver, yeast, whole cereals, potatoes, carrots, pulses (Milk is poor source, eggs a negligible source)	Heat stable	Same as Riboflavin and may also affect water and ion metabolism		20	Pellagra, or dermatitis, glossitis, gastro-intestinal and mental disturbances.
C	Ascorbic acid	Water soluble	Citrus and other fruits, berries, mola, green vegetables, tomatoes, potatoes. (Little in human milk, less in cows)	Heat stable in presence of oxygen	Formation of collagen and intra-cellular cement substances, detoxication	1000 to 2000	70-100 Adults 1.2 Child 3.8 Pregnant 5-10 per kilo.	Scurvy, Barlow's disease
	Calciferol	Fat soluble	Fish liver oils, fish eggs, milk and butter of pasture-fed cattle, Action of sunlight on subcutaneous fat	Heat stable	Balances calcium and phosphorus absorption and execution bone formation	400 to 800	6	Rickets, osteomalacia and osteoporosis, failure of calcification
E	$\alpha$ tocopherol	Fat soluble	Seed germ oils, wheat and rice germ, lettuce, alfalfa.	Heat stable in absence of oxygen	Directs activities of cell nuclei, affects cell differentiation and division			Habitual abortion, muscular dystrophies.
K	Pro-thrombin factor	Fat soluble	Alfalfa, spinach, cabbage, kale, cauliflower, soy-bean oil, pig liver, milk and eggs (a little). Intestinal and putrefactive micro-organisms.	Heat stable	Pro-thrombin in formation		1 to 10	Hemorrhage of the newborn, hemorrhagic diathesis, in obstructive jaundice and liver disease

of vitamin B<sub>1</sub>), (b) infections (e.g. wound sepsis which similarly appears to increase the requirements of vitamin C), (c) endocrine deficiencies (*vide infra*, myxœdema and pellagra), and (d) the personal factor (an expression that is a cloak for our ignorance). Again, vitamin deficiencies are seldom single for, if a diet is deficient in one vitamin it will usually be deficient in one or more other vitamins especially in those found in the same food stuffs. Examples of grouped deficiencies are the fat soluble vitamins A and D, and the water soluble B vitamins respectively.

Our summed knowledge of the vitamins has already reached vast proportions and is increasing daily. There are many vitamins their number is continually being added to and the named vitamins are frequently being divided and subdivided. Not only do we know in what foods they are to be found in large and small amounts and what diseases and minor disabilities their deficiency causes but in many instances we know their chemical formulae and the exact daily minimum requirements of the human organism. The writer does not propose to discuss the various vitamins in any detail here but only the special dietetic problems that are likely to face the worker in the tropics. The reader who is not familiar with this important subject is advised to refer to one of the many standard textbooks on dietetics but in order to help him to follow the subsequent discussion on the dietary deficiencies encountered in the tropics, a table giving summarized data on the important vitamins is appended (*see Table XXI*).

#### DIETETIC REQUIREMENTS IN THE TROPICS

The basic dietary requirements in the tropics are naturally very much the same as they are in temperate climates, at least qualitatively, but it has been found that quantitatively certain reductions should be made. Askrovd (1911) considers that the caloric requirements of the average male adult Indian for example, engaged in a sedentary occupation is 2160 calories, or 10 per cent less than that of the average native of temperate western countries to this he adds 450 calories for the light to moderate work in which the average agriculturist is engaged making a total 2600 in round figures. To this figure he applies the following coefficients —

TABLE XXI

	Coefficient	Calories required (to nearest 100)
Adult male (over 14)	1.0	2600
Adult female (over 14)	0.8	2100
Child 12 and 13 years	0.8	2100
Child 10 and 11 years	0.7	1800
Child 8 and 9 years	0.6	1600
Child 6 and 7 years	0.5	1300
Child 4 and 5 years	0.4	1000

For pregnant women he allows 2400 calories and for lactating women 3000. For those engaged in heavy manual work a further allowance must be made on the lines of the allowances made for hard work in temperate countries (*quod vide*).

**Protein** — Vegetable proteins are as a rule poorer than animal proteins (*vide supra*), and, as a large percentage of the natives of the tropics are vegetarians, or virtually vegetarians either on religious or economic grounds, it is difficult to include sufficient good protein in their diets. As a minimum, at least one fifth of the protein should be of animal origin, and for growing children and pregnant and lactating women the proportion should be higher. It will be seen from the table of biological values of

It will be seen that the poor and ill-balanced diet is not only deficient in caloric value but in almost every item of the protective foods. Three (1, 2 & 5) out of the six average diets in Table XVIII also are below the minimum requirement in calories and four (1, 2, 3 & 5) are each defective in several important protective elements.

To summarize it can be said that 30 to 50 per cent of the indigenous inhabitants of India do not eat enough food, and that the diets of the great majority are deficient in several important elements. The diet of the rice-eater is usually deficient in iron and, under conditions of unusual heat,

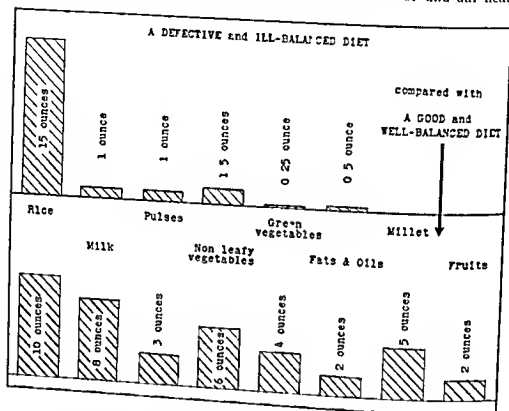


Figure 190

chlorides will also be relatively deficient. Many diets are deficient in fat-soluble vitamin A, and in vitamin B<sub>2</sub> complex unless the people take some form of country beer. Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is deficient usually only in the diets of those who use raw milled rice. Vitamin C is commonly deficient. Deficiency of vitamin D is not common but in some localities *e.g.* the south side of deep valleys where the hours of direct sunlight are few, and under special social conditions *e.g.* where women live in *purdah* and children are protected over zealously, there may be some vitamin D deficiency.

These remarks can probably be applied to the native inhabitants of most other tropical countries and certainly to those whose staple diet is rice maize or some poorer food substance such as tapioca.

**Rice**—As rice is the staple food of about half the inhabitants of the globe, it is entitled to a few lines of special discussion. There are of course

\* Country beers are crude alcoholic beverages made by fermenting various grains unlike ordinary beer they are sometimes rich in vitamin B complex.

some scores if not hundreds of varieties of rice plant but it will not be possible to discuss this aspect of the subject here. The gross nature of grain of all varieties is the same, and their chemical composition is so similar that it is possible to adopt average figures that can be applied for practical purposes to all varieties.

When threshed from the head the grain consists of an outer inedible husk and an inner edible grain. The latter consists of an endosperm with its thin outer layer of aleurone cells the surrounding pericarp and the 'germ'. The bulk of the endosperm consists of carbohydrate the aleurone layer contains most of the protein and fat, and the vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is mainly in the germ.

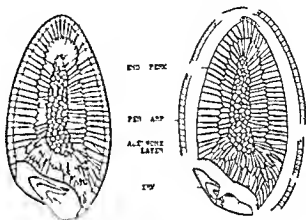


Figure 191 Section of a rice grain showing the effect of milling

There are several ways of preparing the grain for eating and the composition of the final product depends largely on the way it is prepared. The primitive method or method that is still followed by the large majority of peasants who grow their own rice is pounding the grain with a heavy wooden pestle in a large wooden or stone mortar. This removes the husk, some of the pericarp and usually most of the germ. The more sophisticated method is by machine milling in a rice mill; by this method not only the husk, the pericarp and germ but also the greater part of the aleurone layer of the endosperm is removed and there is considerable loss of protein, fat, iron and vitamin B<sub>1</sub>. There are different degrees of milling and the extreme degree of milling is carried out by rubbing the rice between two leather surfaces; this removes the last traces of the aleurone layer and pericarp and leaves a polished pearly-white grain. Rice thus treated is known as *polished rice* whereas after ordinary milling it is known as *milled rice*. In either case the part removed is known as *rice polishings*; these polishings are naturally rich in protein, fat, iron and vitamin B.

A procedure that has been practised mainly in India and is now spreading to other countries is known as *parboiling* (part boiling). The rice still in the husk is first soaked in water, then steamed for some time, dried and finally husked by one of the methods mentioned above. Parboiling has the practical advantage that it makes newly harvested rice more digestible and facilitates husking, but its real value from the nutrition point of view is that both the iron and vitamin B<sub>1</sub> and to some extent other B vitamins also in the germ are dissolved and much of these are absorbed by the endosperm; therefore much less of the iron and vitamins are lost during subsequent husking.

The following table shows the effects of milling and parboiling on the composition of rice.

TABLE XXX  
Comparison of Raw Rice and Parboiled Rice

	Raw rice		Parboiled rice	
	Milled	Home pounded	Milled	Home pounded
Protein per cent	6.9	8.5	6.4	8.5
Fat	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6
Calcium	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.01
Phosphorus	0.11	0.17	0.15	0.28
Iron mg	1.00	2.80	2.20	2.80
B <sub>1</sub> IU per 100 g	20	60	70	90
Digestibility	+++	+	+++	++
Storing properties	good	poor	poor	very poor

There is further considerable loss, up to 50 per cent, of important ingredients during washing and cooking, especially if the cooking water is discarded, which of course it should not be.

It will thus be obvious that the practice of machine milling is a bad one from a nutritional point of view. One might ask 'Why then is it practised and why is it difficult to eradicate the practice?' There are several reasons for this, some of which are sound, others are not. Firstly, (a) the industrial worker finds it very convenient to buy rice ready for cooking instead of pounding it himself. This saving of trouble will often appeal to the villager also and he frequently takes his rice to be milled, this is done almost free of cost, because the miller makes his profit out of the 'polishings'. (b) When rice has to be conveyed some distance, freight is saved if the husk is first discarded. In this mechanical age, it would be economically impossible to hand pound rice in large quantities, and, further, (c) milled rice keeps much better than home pounded rice. (d) Unhusked rice keeps well if it is stored in a dry and well-ventilated place, as the husk protects it but when the husk is removed, the fat in the aleurone layer is exposed to attack by micro organisms and become rancid very quickly. Parboiled rice even if subsequently milled, does not keep as well as raw milled rice. Finally (e) aesthetically, a plate of spotless white rice is much more appealing than one of flecked and discoloured, home-pounded rice. Thus it will be seen that the problem is not altogether a simple one, but the dangers to health in allowing persons who eat little else but rice to use polished rice are so great that it is essential that these difficulties should somehow be overcome.

One method is to limit the degree of milling to which rice may be subjected. Another would be to improve the mechanical methods of husking rice. Experiments have been carried out with a wooden grinder and it has been shown that, by using this, three times as much fat and vitamin B<sub>1</sub> are preserved as when the same sample is subjected to machine milling.

The introduction of legislative measures to prohibit machine milling is likely to be resisted on account of vested interests. Further, in a locality where the milling has been practised for many years and the people have acquired the habit of buying milled rice in small quantities as they require it it would be impracticable suddenly to prohibit the milling of rice.

#### THE EFFECTS OF DEFICIENT DIET ON HEALTH

**General Effects**—It may be taken as axiomatic that the physique of a nation is dependent to a large extent on its food. Numerous examples of peoples of the same racial type living under comparable climatic condi-

except in the ill-nourished. About the association of tuberculosis and malnutrition there is little doubt. The standard example is Germany in the last war where the incidence rose rapidly almost certainly as a result of the widespread malnutrition from which the whole population suffered. Finally though it seems doubtful if malnutrition could determine specific dysentery infections there are certainly many non-specific 'intestinal fluxes' that are caused by defective dietary (*vide supra*).

Some relevant data can be obtained from famine reports. In India Nicol (1940) reporting on the Hissar famine of 1938 and 1939 showed that there was no increase of malaria or of the diseases frequently epidemic in that district, *e.g.* smallpox and cholera but that there was a marked increase in tuberculosis, pneumonia, and in other respiratory diseases, of over 75 per cent and an increase in dysentery and diarrhoea of nearly a hundred per cent. The increase in enteric morbidity is a little harder to understand though one would certainly expect an increase in mortality. The total number of deaths in 1939 was 37,767 as compared with 20,910 in 1937. The increase in the death rate was most marked in the under-ten-years age-group and of the total deaths in 1939 21,160 were in this age group, that is 56 per cent of all deaths in Hissar were in children under 10 years of age. This is in keeping with the well established fact that the effects of malnutrition are most noticeable in infants and young children. Forty-nine per cent of all deaths in British India were in children under 10 years of age, if these figures are compared with that for Hissar (56 per cent) and England and Wales (12 per cent) it will be seen that the figure for British India as a whole is much nearer to that of the famine area than to that of England and Wales. The deduction is obvious.

The recorded infantile mortality in British India in 1939 was 155 per 1000 live births the actual infantile mortality probably being much greater. Another special group in which the death rate is very high is amongst pregnant and parturient women. Maternal mortality has been variously estimated in different large areas in India as from 16 to 25 per mille, and in one investigation in Assam an average figure of 42 was given with for one group the extraordinary figure of 137 per 1000 births (Balfour 1927) this has to be compared with 2.82 for England and Wales in 1939. Neal Edwards (1940) found that 23.3 per cent of the maternal deaths in Calcutta were due to anaemia whereas anaemia was also a contributory cause in many more cases and Napier and Neal Edwards (1941) considered that the main cause of this anaemia was dietetic.

All this points to the fact that malnutrition is an important factor in the production of ill health and high mortality in India. For other tropical countries *e.g.* for Java by de Haas (1939 & 1940), similar figures have been produced and the writer believes that it is fair to assume that much of the ill health in the tropics is due to malnutrition amongst the native inhabitants.

**Special effects of dietary deficiencies—Starvation.** A person who for any length of time eats less than the amount that may be considered his minimum requirements is being starved. The result of starvation is the loss of body fat first the adventitious fat *e.g.* the subcutaneous fat of the abdominal wall and the fat in the omentum and then the supporting fat in other parts of the body. The next call is on the muscle, the skeletal muscle followed by the unstriped muscle of the viscera *e.g.* of the bowel and eventually the heart. In partial starvation after the fat which can be looked upon as a natural reserve has been used up the subject becomes lethargic and all muscular effort is reduced to a minimum after which

**Xerophthalmia**—This condition of dryness of the conjunctiva is indicated in its earliest stages by the appearance of Bitot's spots, white exudative plaques or spots; it may lead to keratomalacia, softening and ulceration of the cornea. Keratomalacia is one of the commonest causes of blindness in some tropical countries *e.g.* southern India.

**Phrynoderma**—Nicholls (1933) in Ceylon, Iowenthal (1933) in East Africa and Frazier and Hu (1934) in China reported a follicular hyperkeratosis particularly on the extensor surfaces of the arms and legs, which they associated with vitamin-A deficiency. Nicholls gave the condition the name phrynoderma, on account of the similarity of the condition to toad's skin which is a very apt comparison. The condition is very common amongst children in several parts of India.

**Renal calculi**—McCarrison produced renal calculi in rats by feeding them on a diet deficient in vitamin A and has suggested that the urinary lithiasis that is common in some parts of India might be due to vitamin-A deficiency.

**Prevention and treatment**—All these conditions can be prevented by increasing the intake of articles rich in vitamin A, these are leafy vegetables (*e.g.* spinach, cabbage, celery, amaranth leaves and coriander leaves), carrots, fruits (particularly mango and papaya), liver, eggs, and butter. Vegetable oils contain no vitamin A with the exception of red-palm oil which contains large amounts of pro-vitamin A or carotene, which is converted into vitamin A in the body.

Medicinally the best substance to give is habbut-liver oil as this contains very large amounts of vitamin A, one drop contains several thousand units (IU). Cod liver oil is also rich in this vitamin, but has to be taken in slightly larger doses—a drachm and a half will provide an adequate daily dose of vitamin A. The latter oil, although not so rich in vitamin A, contains large amounts of vitamin D and has other nutritional qualities, which make it preferable. During the war the cod-liver oil has been difficult to obtain and several substitutes have been tried, shark-liver oil has proved very satisfactory. Many commercial concentrates are also available. The normal daily requirements of vitamin A probably do not exceed 5 000 IU, but at least 25 000 IU should be the aim in treatment and even then response may be slow.

**Vitamin B deficiency**—This vitamin has recently become a popular panacea and is at present grossly abused by the over-enthusiastic, but it does certainly appear to have a beneficial effect in a large variety of conditions *e.g.* in the polyneuritis of alcoholism, pregnancy and senility, and also in certain neuritis of doubtful origin in cardiac failure of obscure origin with hypertrophy in oedema, and in anorexia and functional disorders of the intestinal tract due to lack of tone. As the diets of rice eating people are very liable to be deficient in this vitamin, it is probable that many of the conditions of the nature of those mentioned above, from which they may suffer can to some extent be attributed to vitamin-B<sub>1</sub> deficiency, but the only definite syndrome associated with this deficiency is beri-beri, this disease will be discussed separately. The prevention and treatment of this deficiency will be discussed under **BERI-BERI**.

**Vitamin B complex deficiency**—This is a common deficiency in the tropics. Many fractions of this vitamin have been identified. The quantitative occurrence of each fraction has not been so thoroughly worked out as in the case of other vitamins, but as a general rule liver, brewer's yeast, certain green vegetables, pulses, meat, fish and poultry are the richest



sources. Vitamin B complex occurs in large amounts in dried brewers or in autolyzed yeast, and these are the best medicinal sources. It will be best to consider the effects of these different fractions separately.

**Nicotinic acid or niacin**, deficiency is an important even if not the main factor in the aetiology of pellagra (*vide infra*) it also plays some part in the production of non-specific gastro-intestinal disturbances e.g. sprue (*quod videt*) and toxic psychoses and encephalopathy. As our experience widens, it will probably be found that there are many other minor health defects especially skin conditions commonly encountered in the tropics which can be attributed to niacin deficiency.

**Riboflavin**—Evidence of the deficiency of this fraction is much more frequently encountered than that of niacin, the main clinical evidence of riboflavinosis is glossitis cheilosis angular stomatitis and certain eye changes namely, congestion of the sclera vascularization and later ulceration of the cornea and blepharospasm associated with photophobia visual fatigue, dimness of vision a burning sensation and a feeling of roughness of the eyelids.

There is superficial denudation and redness at the line of closure of the lips, maceration fissuring and a yellowish crust formation at the angles of the mouth seborrhoeic dermatitis around the ala nasi and just inside the nose at the canthi of the eyes, and on the ears and deep magenta coloration and fissuring of the tongue and swelling and flattening of the papillae or the tongue may show oval or irregular areas of desquamation with atrophic centres and raised pinkish edges. The mouth changes are associated with soreness and burning of the tongue and lips and dysphagia. The subjective eye symptoms often precede the glossitis and angular stomatitis but it may be necessary to ask leading questions to elicit the fact, they all disappear first under treatment. There is immediate response to parenteral riboflavin in doses from 5 to 15 milligrammes with smaller doses e.g. 3 mg, the response is still definite but it takes several days to become fully established.

The position of pyridoxin (vitamin B<sub>6</sub>) in human metabolism is not yet fully understood but certain nervous symptoms including irritability insomnia and muscular weakness, rigidity and painful spasms and cheilosis in pellagra patients myasthenia and muscular dystrophies chilblains and certain forms of anaemia have improved on the administration of pyridoxin in doses of 10 to 50 milligrammes. In rats at least this vitamin appears to play some part in the metabolism of unsaturated fatty acids and it is suggested that its action may be similar in man and that its deficiency is one of the causes of sprue.

There are several other fractions included in the vitamin B complex some of which have been identified, e.g. pantothenic acid but the only other common tropical syndrome associated with deficiency of vitamin B complex is tropical macrocytic anaemia, the evidence that this is associated with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency is dependent on epidemiological data and on the therapeutic test that is to say, the response to the administration of autolyzed yeast extracts (marmite or vegex) and other substance rich in this vitamin. It has been shown that the isolated vitamins thiamin (B<sub>1</sub>) niacin riboflavin pantothenic acid and pyridoxin (B<sub>6</sub>) have no effect on this condition.

Tropical macrocytic anaemia occurs in men and women living on a poor diet in the latter it is often associated with pregnancy and in both

sexes with chronic malaria. Although there is little doubt that deficiency, absolute or relative, of some fraction—as yet unidentified—of the vitamin B complex is an important aetiological factor, there are probably other nutritional deficiencies, *e.g.* protein or some specific amino acid concerned, and other factors. The writer has suggested that it may be a conditioned toxicity.

**Vitamin C deficiency**—Scurvy (*vide infra*) and sub-scurvy degrees of vitamin C deficiency are common in tropical countries particularly amongst labour forces working away from their home surroundings and familiar fruits and vegetables and during times of famine.

Scurvy is the only definite disease associated with this deficiency, but in many tropical conditions *e.g.* anaemia and intestinal disorders, improvement is delayed unless sufficient vitamin C is given.

The prevention and treatment of this deficiency will be discussed under the heading of SCURVY.

**Vitamin D deficiency**—Despite the fact that many tropical dietaries are deficient in vitamin D only under very special circumstances does frank rickets occur in the tropics as the hours of sunshine are many and the majority of people spend much of their time in the open air. However minor degrees of rickets do occur amongst the children of both natives of the orthodox classes who do not allow their children sufficient freedom and of sojourners who are too assiduous in protecting their children from the sun.

There is an adult form of rickets which is common in northern Indian towns in particular, but which also occurs in other countries amongst women who are kept in *purdah* especially when their diet is deficient in calcium. This condition known as osteomalacia is usually first noticed when the woman is pregnant and her calcium is further depleted by the inexorable demands of the foetus. There is softening and bending of the bones particularly those of the pelvis so that parturition becomes difficult or even impossible. The first symptoms are general weakness and girdle pains there may also be tetany. The condition usually becomes worse with each succeeding pregnancy if the woman survives the earlier pregnancies and no preventive measures are taken.

The first preventive measure is education and the alteration of unhygienic social habits. Otherwise it consists in seeing that all pregnant women get a sufficiency of food rich in vitamin D, calcium and phosphorus and a regular period of exposure to sunlight. Treatment, by appropriate feeding and the giving of vitamin concentrates will only be effective if it is given in the early stages before the bone deformities have become established. vitamin D occurs in milk and butter (from pasture fed cattle) liver and fish liver oil. The last named are the richest source. Cod liver oil or shark liver oil and the pure vitamin calciferol or some proprietary preparation of irradiated ergosterol (*e.g.* viosterol) are the forms in which it is usually given.

**Other vitamin deficiencies.**—Deficiencies of other vitamins for example E and K both fat soluble are probably very common in the tropics and are possibly responsible to some extent for the frequent abortions and the high neonatal death rate but the subject has not yet been sufficiently studied to make any discussion on it appropriate here.

The reader should perhaps here be reminded that few deficiencies are single, and when one deficiency condition is known to exist others should be expected and be looked for.

#### THE PREVENTION OF NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES IN TROPICAL COUNTRIES

**Causes of malnutrition**—Before attempting to devise general measures of prevention, it is necessary to enquire what are the causes. There is naturally no single formula that will cover all the causes even in one country, and there are many countries to consider. As has been suggested above, India may be looked upon as a representative tropical country.

Without going too deeply into root causes, one can say that the principal common cause of malnutrition is poverty. Figures for rural family incomes have been given by various workers, but, as the workers themselves usually claim, these estimates must be taken with considerable reserve on account of the difficulty of applying monetary values, to rural incomes in particular. The average family annual income in Bengal has been estimated as Rs 150/—, \$50 or £ 11¼ (Huque, 1939), that of a group of very poor rural families in Madras as Rs 100/— and of a similar one in Kangra Valley, also a notoriously poor area, in northern India, as Rs 125/—. The composition of a family will naturally vary, but the average can be taken at least as three consumption units (the consumption unit for a male adult = 1 and for the rest of the family according to the table of coefficients on p. 718), this will mean that, estimated optimistically and even if the whole family income were available for food, the mean monthly expenditure per consumption unit will be from less than Rs 3/— to just over Rs 4/—. In industrial populations, the monthly income per capita is often higher, but this is usually more than counteracted by the higher cost of food and the fact that often little more than half the income is available for food.

The cost of the poor and the balanced diets shown in figure 190 would (in normal times, in most places in rural India) be about Rs 2½ to Rs 3 and Rs 5 to Rs 6, respectively, so that very few of the families in the populations instanced above would be able to afford a balanced diet.

It has been shown in several investigations in India that, with an increase in the income, not only more calories but a greater proportion of protective substances are added to the diet. Thus an improvement in their economic state would not only make it possible for people to purchase a balanced diet but experience has shown that they will usually do so.

This is of course far from the whole solution to the problem, as there are many instances in which through ignorance well to do persons live on a diet that though adequate in calories is unbalanced, that is deficient in protective substances, and still others in India in particular, in which the income is sufficient for them to purchase a balanced diet but they do not in fact do so because their religious or other prejudices will not allow them to take advantage of all the available sources of protective substances. Further, malabsorption and/or increased metabolism that are common to many tropical febrile disorders, increase rather than decrease the patient's general and special dietetic requirements but such patients are usually kept on a low diet, and therefore frequently show evidence of specific deficiencies. This state of affairs which is common in temperate climates (Goldsmith 1942) is exaggerated in many tropical countries by the local prejudice in favour of starving, not only a fever but any other

TABLE XXVI  
Composition and caloric value of some common foodstuffs

Name of foodstuff	Protein%	Fat %	Carbohydrate %	Calcium (t a)	Phosphorus (P) %	Iron (Fe) mg %	Vitamin A IU per 100 g	Vitamin B <sub>1</sub> IU per 100 g	Vitamin C mg per 100 g	CALORIES		Biological value of protein
										100 grammes	ounce	
Rice, raw, home-pounded	8.5	0.0	78.0	0.01	0.17	2.8	4	60	—	351	100	80
Rice, parboiled, home-pounded	8.5	0.0	77.4	0.01	0.25	2.8	15	60	—	349	99	07
Rice, raw, milled	0.9	0.4	79.2	0.01	0.11	1.0	—	20	—	345	99	07
Wheat, whole	11.8	1.5	71.2	0.05	0.32	5.3	103	180	—	346	98	83
Wheat flour, refined	11.0	0.9	74.1	0.02	0.09	1.0	—	40	—	349	99	80
Cholam ( <i>Sorghum vulgare</i> )	10.4	1.9	74.0	0.03	0.28	6.2	136	115	—	355	101	60
Ungi ( <i>Fragaria coriaria</i> )	7.1	1.3	70.3	0.33	0.27	5.4	70	140	—	345	98	80
Maize, tender	4.3	0.5	15.1	0.01	0.10	0.7	42	—	—	82	23	60
Lentil (measur dal)	25.1	0.7	59.7	0.13	0.25	2.0	450	150	—	340	98	41
Red gram (arhar dal)	22.3	1.7	57.3	0.14	0.26	8.8	220	150	—	333	95	74
Soy a bean	43.2	19.5	20.9	0.21	0.69	11.5	710	300	—	432	125	54
Amaranth, tender	4.9	0.5	5.7	0.50	0.10	21.4	2,500-11,000	10	173	47	13	72
Brussels sprouts	4.7	0.5	9.2	0.05	0.08	2.3	210	—	72	60	17	76
Cabbage	1.8	0.1	6.3	0.03	0.05	0.8	2,000	50	121	33	9	9
Celery	6.0	0.6	8.0	0.23	0.14	6.3	0,000	7	62	61	18	76
Lettuce	2.1	0.3	3.0	0.05	0.03	2.4	2,200	90	15	23	7	9
Spinach	1.9	0.9	4.0	0.06	0.01	5.0	3,000	70	18	32	9	9
Carrot	0.9	0.1	10.7	0.08	0.03	1.5	3,000	60	3	47	13	13
Onion, large	1.2	<0.1	11.6	0.18	0.05	0.7	—	40	11	51	14	67
Potato	1.0	0.1	22.9	<0.01	0.03	0.7	40	20	17	99	28	72
Sweet potato	1.2	0.3	31.0	0.02	0.05	0.8	10	—	21	132	37	45
Tapioca	0.7	0.2	38.7	0.05	0.01	0.8	—	—	—	159	45	—
Sago	0.2	0.2	87.1	0.02	0.01	1.3	—	15	—	351	100	—

TABLE VIII—(Contd.)  
Composition and caloric value of some common foodstuffs

Name of foodstuff	Protein %	Fat %	Carbohydrate %	Calcium (Ca) %	Phosphorus (P) %	Iron (Fe) p.p.m.	Vitamin A IU per 100 g	Vitamin B <sub>1</sub> IU per 100 g	Vitamin C mg. per 100 g	CALORIES PER		Biological value of protein
										100 grammes	ounce	
Cashew nut	21.2	48.8	22.3	0.05	0.15	5.0	100	15	—	596	17.5	72
Coconut	4.5	41.6	13.0	0.01	0.24	1.7	—	—	—	414	12.0	58
Ground nut	20.7	40.1	20.3	0.05	0.39	1.6	63	200	—	519	15.0	58
Apple	0.3	0.1	13.1	0.01	0.02	1.7	—	40	2	50	1.6	—
Banana	1.3	0.2	36.4	<0.01	0.05	0.4	—	—	—	153	4.3	—
Mango ripe	0.0	0.1	11.8	0.01	0.02	0.3	4800	—	13	50	1.1	—
Orange	0.0	0.3	10.6	0.05	0.02	0.1	350	40	28	40	1.1	—
Papaya ripe	0.5	>0.1	9.5	0.01	0.01	0.4	2020	—	46	10	1.1	—
Tomato ripe	1.0	0.1	3.9	0.01	0.02	0.1	320	40	32	21	0	—
Beef (muscle)	22.0	2.5	—	0.01	0.19	0.8	59	50	2	114	3.2	89
Egg (fowl)	13.3	13.3	—	0.03	0.22	2.1	2200	—	—	173	4.9	91
Milk (cow)	3.3	3.6	4.8	0.12	0.09	0.2	180	17	2	65	1.8	85
Milk (sterilized)	2.5	0.1	4.6	0.12	0.09	0.2	—	—	—	29	0.8	—
Cheese	24.1	25.1	6.3	0.79	0.52	2.1	—	—	—	348	9.9	—
Red palm oil	—	100.0	—	—	—	—	40000	2000	—	900	25.6	—
Yeast dried	39.5	0.6	39.1	0.44	1.49	43.7	110	—	—	320	9.1	—

form of illness, a prejudice which is so deeply ingrained in the minds of the people that the medical man, even if he is not tainted with the same prejudice will have great difficulty in persuading his patient to take a better diet

To summarize, the principal general causes of malnutrition are therefore poverty and ignorance, and, as a corollary, the first two general measures of prevention will be improvement of economic status and education

**Measures of prevention**—Improvement of economic status is outside the scope of the medical profession, and our duty, as ordinary medical men or women, in this matter ends when we have demonstrated to the statesman (or the administrator) and the agriculturist the correlation between poverty and malnutrition in any particular country or community, though a constant liaison between the agriculturist and nutrition specialist is essential

But in the matter of education, our duty is much wider. Medical education has been backward in the teaching of dietetics and it is first necessary to make up this ground by impressing on the medical man of both today and tomorrow the importance of a sound knowledge of the principles of dietary, this applies more especially in the tropics where the subject is relatively much more important than in temperate climates (It is on these grounds that the present writer excuses himself for including in the chapter much that all practitioners should, and the majority of readers probably do already know). The next person to be educated is the administrator, whether he is a government administrator or the manager of a labour force. Here the advice given must be accurate and based on locally obtained data uncontroversial and practical or it will carry no weight

Direct education of the population will not be the doctor's work, this must be done through lay health workers and school teachers, but it is the business of the medical profession to see that these people understand properly what they have to impart\*. Where there is a public health department this should include a nutrition officer whose duty will include, amongst other things education and propaganda

In addition to these long-term nutrition policies it will often be possible to do something more immediate for special groups. The most critical periods, when the physiological demands are greatest, are during pregnancy and lactation, and in childhood. Where maternity and child-welfare organizations exist, much can be done by advising mothers and giving milk and other protective dietetic substances to both mothers and infants, and the school child's home diet can be similarly supplemented during school hours as is done in many western countries. Skimmed milk made from imported powder which is cheap and has a high protein content, is worth considering for this purpose also soya bean preparations. When synthetic vitamin preparations become cheaper as they probably will it may be worth ensuring that mothers and children get an adequate supply of all necessary vitamins by giving these to them in pill form, and even today it is often worth giving pregnant women iron in the form of ferrous sulphate tablets or a mixture

\* The reader in India will obtain invaluable help from the government of India *Health Bulletins* Nos 23 and 30 (Aykroyd 1941 & 1942). Publications of this kind are probably available in other tropical countries and if they are not these two pamphlets could probably be adapted to local needs

In the treatment of his own patients the doctor has a special responsibility. He should always ensure that his patients' diet is adequate in all the vitamins remembering that the requirements in the febrile conditions in particular may be above those of a normal person. He should be especially cautious when his patient is subsisting on a milk diet, which is almost devoid of ascorbic acid and iron and very low in niacin, and when nutrition is maintained largely by intravenous glucose in which case thiamin will be an additional requirement.

Special problems such as that of rice and measures directed against specific deficiencies are discussed under the appropriate deficiency diseases.

## REFERENCES

- ATKROYD W R (1911) *Nutritive Value of Indian Foods and the Planning of Satisfactory Diets*. Health Bulletin No 23 New Delhi.
- (1941a) *Indian Diets and their Improvement*. Nut Abstr Rev 11, 171.
- *et al* (1940) *The Rice Problem in India*. *Indian Med Res Mem* No 32 Thacker Spink and Co Calcutta.
- BALFOUR M I (1927) *Maternal Mortality in Childbirth in India*. *Indian Med Gaz* 62, 646.
- FAZIER, C N and HU C K (1934) *Cutaneous Manifestations of Vitamin A Deficiency in Man*. *Trans 9th Cong Far East Assoc Trop Med* 1, 461.
- GOLDSMITH GRACE A (1943) *The Incidence and Recognition of Riboflavin and Niacin Deficiency in Medical Diseases*. *Southern Med J* 36, 108.
- DI HARR J H (1939) *Indian J Ped* 6, 231.
- (1940) *J Malaya Branch Brit Med Assoc* 4, 33.
- HIGGE A (1939) *The Man Behind the Plough*. Book Company Calcutta.
- LEAGUE OF NATIONS (1936) *The Problem of Nutrition*. Vol 2 Geneva.
- LOWENTHAL I J A (1933) *A New Cutaneous Manifestation of Vitamin A Deficiency*. *Arch Derm & Syph* 288, 700.
- NAPIER, I F., and NEAL EDWARDS M I (1941) *Anemia in Pregnancy in Calcutta*. *Indian Med Res Mem* no 33 Thacker Spink and Co Calcutta.
- NEAL EDWARDS M I (1940) *Cases of Water and Mortality in Calcutta*. Gov of India Press New Delhi.
- NICHOLLS I (1933) *Phrynoderma—a Condition due to Vitamin A Deficiency*. *Indian Med Gaz* 68, 681.
- NICOL C M (1940) *Health Conditions and Health Work in a Famine Area*. *Indian Med Gaz* 75, 662.
- RUSSELL A J H (1935) *Ann Rep Pub Health Comm with Gov of India for 1935*. Gov of India Press New Delhi.
- SHORTT H E, PLADIT C C and RAGHAVACHARI T N S (1937) *Epidemic Fluorosis in the Nellore District of South India*. *Indian Med Gaz* 72, 396.

## BERIBERI

	PAGE
DEFINITION	771
HISTORICAL	771
EPIDEMIOLOGY	771
Geographical distribution—	771
India	771
Epidemiological status	772
Seasonal incidence	773
Age sex and race incidence	773
ÆTIOLOGY	773
Historical	773
The present position	774
Vitamin B <sub>1</sub> requirements	775
Source of vitamin B	775
PATHOLOGY	775
Morbidity anatomy	775
Biochemistry	776
Urine—Blood picture	776
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	777
Introduction	777
Fulminating form	777
Edematous form	777
Chronic polyneuropathic form	777
Sporadic beriberi	778
Sub clinical beriberi	778
DIAGNOSIS	778
Differential diagnosis	779
PREVENTION	780
TREATMENT	780
Specific—Dietetic—Symptomatic	780
PROGNOSIS	781



time on a monotonous diet with white flour as the staple substance, e.g. in Newfoundland where the diet was almost solely white bread and molasses for certain months of the year, and in institutions, usually mental asylums where white bread was used. It has also occurred on ships where



Figure 192 Map showing distribution of beriberi in southern India in 1938 and the number of cases of beriberi treated in each district during that year (Aykroyd et al 1940)

ships biscuits made from white flour, and tinned foods have been the principal diet

It is a disease of towns rather than rural areas

**Seasonal incidence**—In most places where the disease occurs, there is some season during which it is most prevalent, but this is not by any

an induced metabolic dysfunction both the patient's previous metabolic state and superimposed infections may well help to determine morbidity. Further, it is probable that if one vitamin is deficient others will also be deficient, and these other deficiencies may contribute to the clinical picture. And having decided that it is purely an avitaminosis do we know how a deficiency produces a disease and can we entirely discard the possibility that this vitamin and perhaps other vitamins act by counteracting the effect of some noxious product of metabolism? In fact infantile beriberi (*vide infra*) that occurs amongst suckling infants of beriberic mothers provides some evidence that this may be the case.

**Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> requirements**—The figure usually given is 330 to 660 international (IU) or 1 to 2 milligrammes. The higher figure will include such special classes as pregnant and lactating women. However it has recently been shown that the vitamin B requirement vary according to the carbohydrate intake and it is now usual to express the vitamin B<sub>1</sub> requirements in terms of the calorie intake. It is suggested that the lowest safe amount is 0.25 IU per calorie (Williams and Spicer 1938) which in the average man will be above the maximum indicated above. However when most of the calories are from carbohydrates this figure will not be too high. It spares vitamin B<sub>1</sub> and when the latter is deficient the body fat is drawn upon to reduce carbohydrate metabolism to a minimum when this vitamin is exhausted carbohydrate metabolism increases and symptoms of beriberi soon appear. It usually takes three months on a deficient diet before the vitamin B<sub>1</sub> reserves in the body are exhausted and the full syndrome is established although in human experiments Williams and others (1943) showed that on a daily diet of 2000 calories and 0.35 mg. of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> (= about 0.06 IU per calorie) the earliest symptoms appeared in thirty days.

The work of Mills (1941) with rats suggests that tropical conditions may increase the requirements of vitamin B<sub>1</sub>. This is interesting in view of the fact that beriberi is more common in tropical countries but it should be confirmed with other animal species and by human experiments in view of the contradictory fact that tropical heat reduces basal metabolism.

**Sources of vitamin B**—The best sources of this vitamin are pork whole grain cereals and their products, beans and peas, yeast and liver. Although milk, meat other than pork and fruit do not contain much vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, it is present in small quantities in most natural food stuffs. It is, however, often discarded or destroyed in the preparation of these for consumption, e.g. in the milling of rice and other cereals, in cooking and in canning. It is destroyed by heating to 130° C. in one hour, it however, withstands boiling in an acid medium but is destroyed in an alkaline medium.

Recent work (Najjar and Holt 1943) suggests that in certain circumstances thiamin may be synthesized in the human intestinal canal. The implications of this observation are very great and although it is not clear what determines the synthesis, it seems likely that the nature of the staple diet or of other non-vitamin dietary factors, may have some influence.

For further details regarding the source of this vitamin the reader is referred to the tables and discussion on rice in the previous chapter.

#### PATHOLOGY

**Morbid anatomy**—The whole body is wasted and all subcutaneous fat has disappeared, this may be masked by oedema. There may be gen-

eralized œdema with fluid in the serous cavities. This œdema is not necessarily due to cardiac failure, as it often occurs in a person with a competent heart, but to a breakdown in the mechanism that controls the interchange of fluids and maintains the water-balance of the tissues, it is more marked in the more acute cases. The changes in the peripheral nerves are degenerative rather than inflammatory, so that the word *neuritis* is inappropriate. The nerves of the legs are first affected, mainly the sciatics and their branches, then those of the upper limb, and more rarely the cranial nerves, and the sympathetic system. The nerve lesions vary in their extent according to the severity and duration of the affection, there may be barely detectable microscopic lesions, degeneration of the myelin sheath only, with the axis cylinders remaining intact, or with degeneration of some of the axis cylinders, or complete degeneration and death of the whole nerve.

As well as the peripheral nerves, scattered fibres in the tracts, cells of the anterior and posterior horns, and the sympathetic ganglia, are affected. The muscles supplied by the affected nerves show atrophic changes. There is hypertrophy and dilatation, particularly of the right side, of the heart. (This dilatation may be sudden and is often associated with heart failure and death.)

Microscopically the most striking feature is intercellular œdema. There is also fragmentation, fatty and hydropic degeneration and rarely necrosis of the cells. (The heart failure is due to this water retention with its effect on the cells of the myocardium more than to vagal neuropathy, but it is possible that both factors operate.)

**Biochemistry**—Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is absorbed in both the small and the large intestine. It is stored in the liver and kidneys, but it is also found in other organs and tissues. It is excreted in the urine, and the amount excreted is a good indication of the vitamin B<sub>1</sub> state of the organism, in health the average daily excretion in an adult is 20 to 30 IU, being higher in men and this may fall as low as 3.5 IU in beriberi. The vitamin B<sub>1</sub> content of the blood in the normal person is  $9 \pm 2 \gamma$ , or about 2 to 4 IU per 100 ccm of blood, the blood content is not a good indication of saturation, as it may be normal in beriberi. All evidence goes to show that vitamin B<sub>1</sub> acts as a co enzyme in the metabolism of carbohydrate and controls the oxidation of some intermediate product. It is certain that the vitamin B<sub>1</sub> requirements vary according to the carbohydrate intake. It is suggested that this intermediate product is (at least in the case of some carbohydrates, e.g. rice) of a toxic nature.

It has been found that the pyruvic acid in the blood and body tissues varies inversely with the vitamin B<sub>1</sub> intake. The normal level of pyruvic acid in the blood is 0.5 to 1.0 mg per 100 grammes, it rises considerably in acute cases of beriberi but is restored to normal by vitamin B<sub>1</sub> administration. In more chronic cases it may be demonstrably increased. A sharp and prolonged rise in the blood pyruvic acid after intravenous glucose constitutes a useful test for vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency.

**The urine**—This will not show any characteristic changes. It will be scanty and there may be anuria during the severe cardiac attacks. On resumption of the flow there will be a heavy cloud of albumin and granular casts. The vitamin B<sub>1</sub> content has been discussed above.

**The blood picture**—There is often a marked macrocytic anæmia. Although this may be due to associated deficiencies, the writer has seen cases

in which the mæmna appeared to respond specifically to thiamin chloride injections. The lymphocytes are reduced and in the infantile form small lymphocytes may be absent.

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Introduction**—The beriberi syndrome is a clear cut one, quite distinct from any other recognised syndrome but nevertheless as in almost any disease there are distinct clinical types the distinction being due to the predominance of different symptoms which in turn are dependent to some extent on the speed of onset of the dysfunction. In most outbreaks all types will be represented but frequently one type will predominate and give the outbreak its special character. This fact has led Vedder to believe that there are two fractions in vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, either of which may be deficient (*vide supra*), although this is a possible explanation it is not entirely necessary in order to fit the facts. The three main types described are (a) the acute fulminating cardiac form (b) the less acute oedematous or 'wet' form, and (c) the more chronic polyneuropathic or dry form. The acute fulminating form is usually fatal but if the patient recovers from the wet form he may pass into the chronic form. There will of course be obvious cases of beriberi that will defy accurate classification.

It is usually about three months after the diet has become deficient in vitamin B<sub>1</sub> that the first symptoms appear if the deficiency has been very complete the time may be shorter.

**The fulminating form**—After perhaps a few days of prodromal symptoms such as anorexia, gastro-intestinal disturbances, easy fatigability, or in some cases without any warning the patient becomes breathless and cyanosed, he complains of severe epigastric or substernal pain and often vomits, he may also suffer from aphonia (the result of pressure by the right auricle on the recurrent laryngeal nerve). His heart is greatly dilated, the veins in the neck stand out and the liver becomes large, tender and pulsating. The systolic blood pressure is usually lowered and the diastolic very low indeed. The patient dies suddenly within a day or so of the first onset of symptoms with acute circulatory collapse.

**The oedematous form**—In this form the onset is a little more gradual after a short but definite period of ill health, often with gastro-intestinal symptoms, there is a gradual onset of oedema with tiredness and shortness of breath on exertion. The oedema at first only in the extremities gradually extends until it involves the trunk, eventually there is general anasarca. There are usually some symptoms of peripheral neuropathy but as the other symptoms confine the patient to his bed they are easily overlooked, wasting is masked by the oedema.

The heart is usually dilated, the apex beat is diffuse and fluttering, the pulse is soft and rapid, the veins in the neck are prominent, the liver is enlarged and tender, and the pleural cavities fill with fluid but usually the lungs remain clear until a terminal oedema develops. The blood pressure falls as in the acute form with the relaxation of the peripheral tension an injection of adrenalin further lowers the diastolic blood pressure almost to zero but pitresin causes a rise in blood pressure that is maintained for an hour or so. The electrocardiogram may show right axis deviation and flattening of the T waves, also prolongation of the Q-T interval and a low QRS complex.

**The chronic, polyneuropathic form**—The onset of this type is far more gradual and for some weeks the patient may struggle on with his

work complaining of loss of weight, weakness, slight breathlessness on exertion headache and vague pains stiffness and laxeness of the legs. The only objective symptom may be tachycardia. The condition increases and he becomes unable to carry on his work. He now complains of numbness and a burning sensation of the feet, as well as stiffness of the legs and he finds difficulty in rising from a sitting posture, the calf muscles are tender on pressure and areas of hyperæsthesia appear which later become anaesthetic, knee jerks which were at first slightly exaggerated now disappear and so do the ankle jerks. The definite characteristic ataxic high-stepping gait appears. The condition then spreads to the upper limbs, there is wrist drop, wasting of the hands and fore-arms, and inco-ordination of the movements of the hand so that the patient drops things easily and is unable to pick up small objects. Chvostek's sign (fibrillary tremors of the muscles on being tapped) may be present.

The muscles of the limbs become wasted and show the typical reaction of degeneration. The patient gradually becomes emaciated, helpless and bed-ridden. The sphincters are usually unimpaired and the mental condition remains clear. There is usually constipation, indigestion, and some increases of cardiac symptoms, otherwise the condition of the patient remains good, but he may die of hypostatic pneumonia or some other complication.

Irreversible changes take place in the nerves, contractures occur in limbs and, even if he lives the patient becomes irreparably crippled.

**Sporadic or conditioned beriberi** \*—The beriberi that occurs in well-fed populations, in special individuals *e.g.* pregnant women, alcoholics, etc (*vide supra*), usually takes the chronic peripheral neuropathy form but with recognisable cardiac signs and symptoms, and quite often a variety of other symptoms suggestive of neurasthenia. However, acute cardiac attacks have been reported.

**Sub-clinical beriberi**—Positive evidence of a fact already assumed by many workers, namely that in a population in which there are many cases of beriberi there will be many other persons on the threshold of clinical avitaminosis, is rapidly accumulating, now that biochemical tests for this vitamin are within the scope of the medical investigator—even if not of the ordinary practising physician, and there are several relatively simple clinical tests (*vide infra*). Although these minor degrees of B<sub>1</sub> avitaminosis may be classed as sub-clinical, if the person is examined and questioned carefully, some of the minor signs and symptoms, *e.g.* tachycardia breathlessness on exertion, anorexia, stiffness and vague pains, emotional instability and mental depression may be elicited.

### DIAGNOSIS

This can be considered under a number of headings—

- (a) The patient's environment, diet and habits
- (b) The clinical picture

\* The writer has avoided the word *secondary* because he considers it misleading and believes that eventually it will be dropped. It is extremely probable that in any outbreak of beriberi in a population living on a diet deficient in vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, morbidity is determined by some secondary factor in nearly every case whether it be slight hyperthyroidism a febrile infection *e.g.* malaria or the consumption of a larger amount of rice than the rest of the population. It would be unreasonable to consider such cases *primary* whilst labelling as *secondary* a case of beriberi associated with pregnancy.

- (c) Clinical tests including the therapeutic test  
 (d) Biochemical tests

Little further need be said about (a) and (b). It is unlikely that an outbreak of oedema or 'neuritis' in a poorly-fed population would fail to arouse one's suspicion but sporadic cases very often will, in fact, there is evidence that until a few years ago the majority of such cases were wrongly diagnosed. The conditions for which they may be mistaken are considered below.

(c) Of the clinical tests, the most valuable is the therapeutic test but it is very liable to be misleading, in that in so many conditions a  $B_1$  avitaminosis may be superimposed on some other condition, so that immediate improvement on administration of thiamin chloride does not provide the whole answer, conversely, where there are other deficiencies besides those of vitamin  $B_1$ , the slowness of the improvement after the administration of the pure vitamin does not altogether exclude beriberi. However, a few doses (ten may be considered the maximum) or even a single dose of 10 milligrammes given intravenously, will often produce dramatic improvement in the leading symptoms. This applies especially to the cardiac condition, in the polyneuropathic form, the improvement will be slower, and in advanced cases of nerve degeneration there will be none.

Other tests for vitamin- $B_1$  saturation have been suggested. In a case of deficiency, adrenalin will cause a further sharp fall, often to zero, in the already-low diastolic blood pressure or, as a variation, the rise—if rise there is—in systolic blood pressure after the administration of adrenalin will be greater if a large dose of thiamin chloride has been given previously. Another test is associated with the diuretic effect of thiamin, in the deficient individual this is considerable. Finally, the circulation time, which is usually prolonged in cardiac failure, is normal or decreased in beriberi.

(d) Of the biochemical tests, the best indication is obtained from the excretion of vitamin  $B_1$  in the urine, the average daily excretion in a normal person is from 20 to 30 IU, and in a patient with beriberi about 3.5 IU, but both figures are subject to considerable individual variation. After a test dose of thiamin at least 28 per cent is excreted in the urine within 24 hours if the patient is saturated, if he is deficient the figure is much below this. Neither test can be considered a practical one, but it is probable that easier and more satisfactory tests will be devised.

**Differential Diagnosis.**—The neuropathies have to be distinguished from those of arsenic, lead, triorthocresyl phosphate ('jake') and other poisons, from diphtheritic paralysis, from rheumatism and various myopathies, from tabes dorsalis, lathyrism, and other brain and cord affections, and from Korsakoff's syndrome and other neurasthenias. Alcoholic neuritis is not included here as it seems probable that  $B_1$  avitaminosis plays an important part in this syndrome.

The oedema has to be distinguished from that of kidney and organic heart disease, from famine oedema and epidemic dropsy, from ancylostomiasis and other helminthic infections and from many other diseases in which there is debility, malnutrition, and anaemia.

In most of these conditions, if the case is a typical one, there are one or more characteristic signs or symptoms that will differentiate them sharply from beriberi, enumeration of these does not seem to be called for here.

## PREVENTION

This can of course be summed up in the single sentence 'increase the intake of food rich in vitamin B<sub>1</sub>'. There is however more to be said on the matter than this. Let us first take the sporadic case, this usually presents little difficulty. In conditions such as pregnancy, hyperthyroidism, polishings or some medicinal form of vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, as well as food rich in this vitamin (*vide supra*). This also applies to patients put on to a restricted dietary for any reason. In gastritis or pernicious vomiting, it is advisable to give the prophylactic thiamin chloride parenterally.

The real problem is the prevention of beriberi in large and poor populations. The general problem of the prevention of malnutrition has been discussed in the previous chapter, and it has been suggested that the way lies through improvement of economic status and education, but there are certain special problems connected with this disease. As was noted above, over ninety per cent of beriberi occurs amongst rice-eating people. The whole edible portion of the rice grain contains quite sufficient vitamin B<sub>1</sub> to ensure the proper metabolism of the whole grain but, when the grain is milled in the raw state, much of the vitamin is lost, and when it is washed and cooked and the water discarded more of the already depleted vitamin is wasted. Parboiling prior to husking saves most of the vitamin. If therefore people will first parboil their rice, home pound it instead of allowing it to be over-milled clean it—if this is necessary—in the dry state, cook it with the minimum of water and utilize the rice-water in their food beriberi will not occur. In populations where milling has been established for some time there are many practical difficulties in instituting this ideal procedure which are dealt with on p. 758 where also a compromised procedure of limiting the degree of milling is discussed.

The same problem has to be faced in the case of other cereals, the case of white flour which is also deficient in vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, but which for aesthetic and other reasons is often preferred has been met in some countries by fortifying the white loaf by the addition of synthetic thiamin chloride.

## TREATMENT

The treatment can be considered under three headings, specific dietetic, and symptomatic. It may be argued that the specific and the dietetic treatment cannot strictly speaking be separated but, as in many cases it will be advisable to give thiamin chloride in addition to any special diet that is recommended as it is very often given parenterally, as it is a chemical compound made synthetically in the laboratory, and as it is as dramatic in its action as any specific it seems to the writer simpler to consider it as a specific drug.

**Specific.**—It will naturally not be possible to give thiamin chloride to every member of a large community in which the majority of the people are suffering from either frank or subclinical beriberi, nor in a large percentage of the cases would it be necessary but in all frank cases of beriberi thiamin chloride should be given in large doses as early as possible for one can seldom be certain that the condition will not suddenly become acute. It has been shown that the best results are obtained when generous doses are given and for an adult a daily dose of at least 20 mg. should be given, either intramuscularly or intravenously, for ten days to a fortnight, after this the dose can be reduced considerably or thiamin (10 mg.) dried

Brewer's yeast (6 ounces) or marmite (or vegex) (2 ounces) can be given by mouth. Infants can be given 3 mg of thiamin chloride daily with safety, in fact it is very doubtful if there is any limit to the dosage. In acute cardiac cases doses of over 100 mg have been recommended but the writer believes that 25 mg is about the maximum effective dose. The development of sensitivity to thiamin chloride has been reported so that there may be danger in intermittent parenteral treatment. The dose should be not spaced too widely and if treatment has to be restarted after an interval a small test dose should be given first. There is much to be said for combining the parenteral thiamin with yeast extract as the latter contains other vitamins particularly those of the vitamin B complex group that are probably also in deficit.

**Dietetic**—Rice should be excluded from the diet at first because of its high carbohydrate content but not because of the possibility that intermediate products of metabolism of the rice carbohydrates may be especially toxic. The patient should be put on a diet composed of substances low in carbohydrate and high in vitamin B, content such as eggs, yolk, liver, pork, oatmeal, peas, beans, cauliflower, parsnips, radishes, nuts and soya beans. Later, milk, whole meal bread or other whole grain cereal and any substance other than rice that he normally includes in his diet may be added or substituted and eventually he may be allowed to return to his rice diet but it must be undermilled and parboiled and the addition of vitamin-B<sub>1</sub> containing substances should be recommended.

**Symptomatic**—In the severe cardiac case the patient must be confined to bed, put on a light solid diet with the fluid intake reduced to a minimum and generally treated as a medical emergency. Precordial pain may be relieved by applying leeches or it may be necessary to let a little blood but as the blood pressure is usually low this should be avoided if possible. Fluid in the pleural cavities that may be embarrassing the heart should be removed. A saline purgative should be given. Intravenous thiamin in large doses as recommended above will usually produce diuresis, reduce the oedema, and relieve the heart but if anuria continues one of the mercurial diuretics e.g. salyrgan may have to be resorted to. Digitalis and cardiac stimulants are usually of little value but atrophanthus has a reputation for being particularly useful in this condition. Oxygen given continuously and properly will usually relieve the patient.

Little can be done to relieve the neuropathy beyond the specific and dietetic treatment but massage and electrical treatment will help to maintain the tone of the muscles until the nerves recover. It may be advisable to use splints to prevent wrist and foot drop.

### PROGNOSIS

In fulminant cases either adult or infants the prospect is usually hopeless in any case in which there are cardiac symptoms it is bad but immediate and efficient treatment may save the patient and in the severe neuropathic cases permanent disability may result but in the earlier cases when only a few nerve fibres have degenerated suitable treatment will lead to complete recovery.

In the acute cardiac attack in sporadic beriberi where there is no background of long continued vitamin B<sub>1</sub> starvation there is often a dramatic response to large parenteral doses of thiamin.



## INFANTILE BERIBERI

Most of the evidence suggests that this disease is the same as 'adult' beriberi but there are special epidemiological and clinical features that make it more convenient to discuss the infantile form separately.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

It occurs in the infants in a population living on a diet low in vitamin-B<sub>1</sub> content and usually in one in which there are numerous cases of adult beriberi. The highest incidence is in the second to the fourth months of life in infants that are entirely breast fed, but it also occurs in infants that are partly breast fed, or even not breast fed. The mothers are usually found to be suffering from minor degrees of chronic beriberi, but they may show no clinical evidence of beriberi at all. It is believed that the particularly high infantile mortality in countries subject to beriberi can be attributed to the high incidence of infantile beriberi. This has recently been emphasized by Aykroyd and Krishnan (1941a) who have carried out a survey in the Northern Circars district of Madras, one of the worst beriberi areas in southern India, and have shown that the peak of the infantile death rate curve in this and other beriberi districts is not, as is usual, at the first month, but at the second to the sixth month.

### ÆTIOLOGY

There are two schools of thought on the ætiology of the disease, both point out that, in order to allow for the low intake of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> in the first few months of life, the fœtus must store the vitamin as it does iron, but in this case, unlike that of iron where the infant drains almost the last milligramme from its mother, both mother and child share the deficiency. The adherents of one school however, believe that the beriberic mother secretes some toxic intermediate incompletely-oxidized product of carbohydrate metabolism which is neutralized by the infant's stored vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, until the latter is exhausted, while the adherents of the other school *e.g.* Vedder, believe that the already low vitamin B<sub>1</sub> level of the infant of a beriberic mother is lowered still further to the clinical threshold by the particularly low vitamin B<sub>1</sub> content of the beriberic mother's milk. (Sundararajan (1941) has shown that the vitamin B<sub>1</sub> content of the milk of beriberic mothers is not consistently low but in any case the vitamin-B<sub>1</sub> caloric coefficient of human milk is much below the necessary 0.25 IU)

**Clinical picture**—Several classifications have been suggested but for practical purposes the cases can be divided into acute and chronic. The acute form usually occurs in breast-fed infants within the first three months of life after a short period of anorexia and restlessness, or in some cases without any previous warning, the infant has convulsions, vomits, becomes cyanosed and dyspnoeic, cries out with acute pain, if it is not aphonic, and dies of acute heart failure, within as short a time as a few hours in fulminating cases. In the chronic form, there are gastrointestinal disturbances, wasting, aphonia and dysphagia, and generalized oedema. The chronic form may terminate suddenly with a fulminating attack, and more rarely an acute attack subsides and becomes chronic.

### PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

Preventive measures applied to the whole population will naturally prevent this disease in infants but any special measures must be applied

to the mother as well as to the child. In beriberi districts, the diet of even apparently healthy mothers should be supplemented by B<sub>1</sub> concentrates.

The first step in treatment is to take the infant off breast-feeding and to give it a diet rich in vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, but it will also be necessary to add concentrates, either recognized commercial concentrates, or some more homely substance such as *tiki-tiki*, which is an extract of rice polishings made by absorbing vitamin B<sub>1</sub> on acid clay. In acute cases the parenteral administration of thiamin in 1000 IU doses is recommended.

## REFERENCES

- ATKROYD, W. R., and KAISHAN, B. G. (1911) .. Rice diets and beriberi. *Indian J Med Res.* 29, 651.
- (1911a) .. Infantile mortality in the beriberi area of the Madras presidency, *Indian J Med Res.* 29, 703.
- ATKROYD, W. R. et al (1910) The rice problem in India. *Indian Med Res Mem* (no 32) Thacker, Spink and Co., Calcutta.
- MILLS, C. A. (1911) Environmental temperatures and thiamine requirements. *Amer J Physiol.* 133, 525.
- NAJJAR, VICTOR A., and HOLT, J. E. (1913) .. Biosynthesis of Thiamin in Man. *J Amer Med Assoc.* 123, 683.
- STRONG, R. P., and CROWELL, R. C. (1912) .. The etiology of beriberi. *The Philippine J Sci.* 7, 271.
- STANDARAJAN, A. R. (1911) The vitamin B<sub>1</sub> content of human milk. *Indian J Med Res.* 29, 567.
- VEDDER, F. B. (1910) Beriberi and Vitamin B deficiency, *Amer J Trop Med.* 20, 625.
- WILLIAMS, R. D., MASON, H. L., and WILDER, R. M. (1913) Minimum daily requirement of thiamine of man, *J Nutrition*, 25, 71.
- WILLIAMS, R. R. and SPIES, T. D. (1938) .. .. Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> and its use in Medicine, The Macmillan Co., New York.

# PELLAGRA

	PAGE
DEFINITION	785
HISTORICAL	785
EPIDEMIOLOGY	785
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	786
Europe—Africa—Asia—India—Western Hemisphere	786
<i>Epidemiological status</i>	786
<i>Seasonal incidence</i>	786
<i>Age sex, race, and occupational incidence</i>	787
ÆTIOLOGY	787
<i>Historical</i>	788
<i>The present position</i>	789
NIACIN REQUIREMENTS	789
<i>Niacin in food—Contributory factors</i>	790
PATHOLOGY	790
<i>Skin—Nervous system—Alimentary tract—Other morbid changes</i>	790
<i>Blood picture</i>	790
<i>Biochemical findings</i>	792
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	792
<i>Incubation period—Onset—Dermatitis—The intestinal tract—</i>	793
<i>Nervous</i>	793
<i>Other signs and symptoms</i>	793
DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS	793
(a) <i>History—(b) Clinical picture—(c) Laboratory tests—(d) The</i>	793
<i>therapeutic test</i>	794
<i>Differential diagnosis</i>	794
PREVENTION	794
<i>Education and propaganda—Economic status—Institutions—Inva-</i>	795
<i>lid diets</i>	795
TREATMENT	795
<i>General</i>	795
<i>Dietetic</i>	795
<i>Specific</i>	795
<i>Symptomatic</i>	795
<i>Diarrhoea—Stomatitis</i>	796
PROGNOSIS	796

**Definition**—Pellagra (*pell* = skin, *agro* = rough) is a non-infectious disease, occurring in epidemic-like outbreaks, mainly in poor populations whose staple diet is maize and also sporadically in other population groups. It is associated with a deficiency of vitamin-B<sub>3</sub> complex especially of niacin, in the diet and it is characterized by gastro-intestinal disturbances, dermatitis, mental deterioration, and eventually, if the disease is uncontrolled, death. (The mnemonic "five D's"—namely, Deficiency, Diarrhea, Dermatitis, Dementia, Death—is applied to it.)

**Historical**—Pellagra is a disease with a considerable historical background. It was mentioned first in the seventeenth century as occurring in Spain and in 1735 it was described accurately by Gaspar Casal whose book was not however published until 1762. Figure 193 is a reproduction from this book.

Its progress appeared to follow closely on the heels of maize as it was introduced as the staple diet of the poor sections of the population into one European country after another according to early medical historians who of course may have been prejudiced by their inclination towards the maize theory of the origin of pellagra. In 1776 pellagra assumed serious proportions in Italy and legislative action was taken to control the sale of maize on this account. A century later Lombroso an Italian worker again incriminated maize as the cause of the disease but suggested that it was due to a special maize toxin developed during the storage and apparently as a result of action taken by the authorities by 1900 the disease incidence in that country had fallen from 4,000 to 100 deaths per annum. It was recorded in the United States in 1864 but its importance as a threat to public health was not appreciated until 1907 when an outbreak in Alabama was reported. In Great Britain the first cases were reported in 1909 but in that country it has never been more than a sporadic disease with occasional mild institutional outbreaks and in India in 1925 where it is a common sporadic and again an institutional disease.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—The disease has a wide distribution in the temperate sub-tropical and tropical zones, it is a disease of poor and backward countries rather than of hot ones. The association of the disease with maize as a staple diet is responsible for its higher incidence in subtropical countries.



Figure 193 Patient suffering from *mal de la Roca* (pellagra). From Casal's *Memorias de Historia Natural de Asturias* (1762).

As well as those European countries already mentioned other Southern European countries have suffered considerably from the disease, in 1918 it was estimated that there were 70,000 cases in Roumania and further east in Transcaucasia three to four per cent of the whole population were affected, and in France, Germany, Denmark and other northern European countries, it occurs sporadically. In Africa, it is not uncommon in the Mediterranean countries, from Morocco to Egypt in the Sudan and Abyssinia, and amongst the Kaffirs and Zulus in central and southern Africa. In Asia, it has been reported from Syria and Asia Minor, China, the East Indies and the Philippines, and Japan. In India, Lowe (1931) drew attention to it at a leper asylum and since this date sporadic cases and small outbreaks have been reported from many parts of India. In Calcutta we have diagnosed about a dozen cases a year, all sporadic, for several years past.

In the Western Hemisphere, it was estimated that in 1916 there were 150,000 pellagrins, of whom about 10 per cent died. It is still endemic throughout most of the southern United States today. Isolated cases have

been reported in Canada and the disease is also common in Central and South America

A few cases have been reported in Australia

**Epidemiological status**—Throughout its whole history the disease has been associated with maize and the largest and most characteristic outbreaks have always occurred amongst people whose staple diet is maize. Outbreaks have however occurred amongst people living on rice and other cereal diets, and in the majority of the sporadic cases no evidence of maize dietary can be traced. While all outbreaks involving a number of persons can be traced to a poor or defective dietary, this is not true of all sporadic cases, and recently several isolated cases have been reported in children living in schools, where food was plentiful and varied.

In more prosperous countries the only outbreaks are in institutions, usually mental institutions, where the food is liable to be so monotonous that the inmates do not eat all that is given to them. It is also not uncommon in prison camps, when food is short, but like beriberi it does not often occur during famines.

It has been reported amongst patients who have been placed on a restricted diet for medical reasons and who have continued this diet for long periods without reference to their medical advisers (milk and eggs are a very poor source of the pellagra preventing factor), and it also occurs amongst alcoholics; the aetiology in this case is not clear, but it is probably associated again with a low dietary intake—common amongst alcoholics—or to a lowered absorption through the associated gastritis.

**Seasonal incidence**—It shows definite seasonal incidence, although the season is different in different countries, it is constant in any one country. In cool countries it occurs in the autumn, and in hot countries in the cooler months of the year. The explanation of this apparent anomaly is that sunlight plays an important part in the aetiology, in the former countries there is more sunlight in the summer months and in the latter people tend to avoid the sunlight in the hottest months, whilst exposing themselves in cooler months. It is noticed that people susceptible to the disease suffer from an exacerbation of symptoms at the same time each year but that in pellagra endemic areas there are 'bad' years and 'good' years.

**Age, sex, race, and occupational incidence**—It occurs at all ages, from three months to a hundred years', in some populations children seem to be less affected but this is not universally true.

There is very distinct female predominance in some places, in Roumania the sex ratio, males to females, was said to be as low as 1 to 3. In India also we have found more females affected, but in some other countries it is reported to be more common in men, and the reason given has been that they work harder.

There is little evidence of any true racial selectivity, Jews have been reported as seldom affected, but here the occupational factor probably comes in.

The disease is undoubtedly much more common in outdoor workers, particularly agricultural labourers, than amongst clerks and indoor workers on comparable diets, both hard work and sunlight are predisposing factors.

## AETIOLOGY

**Historical**—The earliest theorists associated pellagra with maize but as all maize eaters did not develop the disease it was suggested by successive observers that it must be caused by badly stored maize immature maize or alternatively maize infected with some fungus (*cf. ergot and rye*). There then followed a period when scientists—with apparently very much less reason than their predecessors had for their theories and influenced by the prevailing fashion of the day—in turn incriminated a bacterium an *aspergillus*, a streptococcus and eventually an ultra microscopic virus. (A cynic might suggest that we are applying the same principle today in classing it as a deficiency disease.)

In 1913, Goldberger and his coworkers in the United States demonstrated that the disease could be eliminated by giving diets with a higher protein content, and for a time he considered that it might be due to the general protein deficiency of a maize diet or to a deficiency of some specific amino-acid that did not occur in the proteins of maize. Later, however, when he found that it could also be prevented by a yeast preparation that was practically protein-free and had been heated to destroy the heat-labile vitamin B<sub>1</sub> fraction, he revised his earlier opinion. Eventually, the pellagra preventing (PP) fraction of vitamin B was further broken down into riboflavin, nicotinic acid afterwards called niacin etc (see p 763), and Elvehjem demonstrated that niacin would cure pellagra. It has been confirmed by many workers that in most cases the administration of niacin will effect a complete cure of pellagra in a very short time. Niacin was first synthesized in 1879 and was isolated from rice polishings by Funk in 1911, but discarded by him because it did not cure beriberi.

This is not however the end of the story of the aetiology of pellagra which many people still believe to be an unsolved problem, before discussing the position as it stands today, it will be as well to review the various theories that have been put forward.

(i) **The maize infection theory**—It has been suggested that in certain cases maize is or after defective storing in damp conditions becomes, infected and produces the disease in those who consume it, either directly, or indirectly by interfering with absorption or by causing decomposition. Although the disease appears in epidemic form amongst maize eaters and although legislative measures aimed at controlling and improving the storage of maize have apparently reduced the incidence in the past the disease is never transmitted to persons on a good diet, and there is little, if any, experimental support for this theory.

(ii) **The maize toxin theory**—The neurological changes that occur appear to be of toxic rather than bacterial origin and support has recently been given to this theory by the occurrence of pellagra amongst individuals taking maize alcohol, but there is no evidence, experimental or otherwise, to indicate the actual nature of this toxin and attempts to isolate it have failed. Further, many people have taken maize as their staple diet all their lives and have never suffered from pellagra, and yet others who have never taken maize suffer from it.

The constancy of the skin lesions and the fact that the general symptoms run parallel to these improving in the cold and sunless months of the year, for example, has led to the suggestion that a *pre toxin* is ingested or formed which is converted into a toxin by the action of the ultra violet rays as ergosterol is converted into vitamin D, but here again support for this theory is lacking.

(iii) **Protein deficiency**—This theory is dependent on the fact that all pellagra-producing diets are low in protein content. Maize has a low

protein content compared with other cereals, and, further, the biological value of the protein is also very low. The two facts combined make maize a very poor source of good protein.

(iv) **Specific protein or amino-acid deficiency.**—Maize is defective in protein, not only quantitatively but qualitatively, and there are, for example, certain important amino-acids absent from maize protein, or zein, e.g. tryptophane and lysine. It was suggested that some such specific deficiency is the cause of pellagra.

(v) **Vitamin deficiency: absence of the PP factor from the diet.**—The PP (pellagra-preventing) factor is part of the vitamin B<sub>3</sub> complex which contains amongst other vitamins, niacin, lactoflavin or riboflavin, and pyridoxin (B<sub>6</sub> or anti-dermatitis (rat) factor). Food that is rich in vitamin B<sub>3</sub>, such as yeast, meat, and liver extract, rapidly cures uncomplicated pellagra, even in patients who are left on their otherwise pellagra-producing diet. More recent work, referred to above, has identified niacin as the specific PP fraction, and the synthesized vitamin will control many of the specific symptoms of the syndrome.

For this theory support has been obtained from animal experiments. Dogs fed on pellagra-producing diet develop a condition known as 'black tongue', this condition clears up rapidly when vitamin B<sub>3</sub> complex is added to the diet, and is considered to be analogous to pellagra in man. It has been shown that niacin is the fraction of vitamin B<sub>3</sub> complex that is specific in 'black tongue', whereas the other fractions of vitamin B<sub>3</sub> complex are not. On the other hand it has been shown that the dermatitis produced in rats by feeding them on a diet deficient in vitamin B<sub>3</sub> complex, which, though it has been named 'rat pellagra', is apparently not analogous to the human disease does not respond to niacin, but improves when vitamin B<sub>3</sub> is given.

**The present position.**—This can best be stated by first enumerating some of the established facts.

(a) Niacin in suitable doses will effect a complete and dramatic cure in most cases of pellagra, but of course the condition is likely to return unless the patient changes his diet.

(b) In other cases, niacin will improve the condition of the patient and cure his skin lesions but will effect little change in other symptoms, which require for their cure the administration of other vitamin fractions, e.g. riboflavin for the cheilosis and glossitis, and thiamin for the peripheral neuropathy.

(c) In yet other cases of apparently typical\* pellagra niacin has no beneficial effect at all, some of these patients respond to liver extract, but others are totally refractory.

(d) Analysis of foods for their niacin content has brought to light many anomalies, e.g. Aykroyd and Swaminathan (1940) have shown that the rice diet taken by many millions of people in India is a much poorer source of niacin than the maize diet of certain pellagrins. However, some workers question whether at present chemical methods of estimating niacin in foodstuffs are sufficiently accurate to base any important conclusions on such estimations.

\*Some workers deny the fact that the true pellagra syndrome ever fails to respond to niacin given both orally and parenterally.

Now, observations (a), (b), and to some extent (c), could be explained on the ground that the pellagra syndrome is caused by multiple deficiencies and that supplying of the most urgent need may be sufficient to balance the metabolism of the whole body, or it may not in which case other vitamins are required.

The complete explanation of (c) does not seem possible on known facts and necessitates introducing a more hypothetical explanation, it has been suggested that there is an intrinsic and an extrinsic factor, the latter being niacin and the former not, of course, the same as the intrinsic factor deficient in pernicious anemia but closely related to it, for all pellagrins show achlorhydria or hypochlorhydria. There is certainly evidence that the individual make-up of the patient, e.g. his endocrine balance determines to some extent the onset of pellagra in one person and not in another on a similar diet, and probably also the response to treatment. Cases have been reported which suggested the existence of antagonistic action between thiamin and the PP factor (Lehmann & Nielsen, 1939). The writer has recently reported a case (Napier & Chudhuri, 1943) in which pellagra was apparently controlled by means of thyroid extract. Is it possible that the antagonism lies in the fact that beriberi is associated with hyperthyroidism and pellagra with hypothyroidism?

Observation (d) is puzzling. It seems to the writer that no explanation of the aetiology of pellagra can be accepted that does not take into consideration the past and present predominance of the disease amongst people whose staple food is maize. This brings one back to the maize toxin theory which by itself is not acceptable, but yet might be reconsidered in conjunction with the vitamin deficiency theory. It is suggested that a certain amount of niacin is counteracted by the hypothetical maize toxin so that when this is present in a diet the normal requirements of niacin are increased. As alternatives to the theory of a toxin produced by the effects of external agents, e.g. bacteria on the maize grain it is possible that some intermediate product of metabolism of maize protein or maize carbohydrate is toxic or at least capable of 'fixing' the niacin, or, to carry theoretical considerations further, that niacin may be synthesized in the intestinal tract under certain conditions (cf. the synthesis of thiamin (Najjar and Holt 1943), which a maize diet does not favour).

In conclusion, putting aside theoretical considerations one can say that the exact aetiology of pellagra is not yet known, but that deficiency of niacin—actual deficiency in the diet, deficiency relative to requirements or deficiency due to malabsorption—is the important factor that possibly another factor is associated with maize or other staple food substance and yet another with the patient's individual make-up.

**Niacin requirements**—The general opinion that 10 mgm of niacin is the minimum amount required daily is little more than a scientifically based guess. The recommendation that a diet should contain 15 to 20 mgm is based on the above figure with a margin of safety.

**Niacin in food**—Liver, lean meat, yeast, whole grain cereals, peanuts and green leafy vegetables are the best source of niacin. Milk, eggs, and white flour are a very poor source.

**Contributory factors**—A point about which there can be no doubt is the effect of the sun in determining the dermal lesions, both their seasonal incidence and their anatomical distribution. It is suggested that the effect of the sun is purely a matter of trauma and that the skin in its ill nourished



state is particularly liable to damage or, to put it another way, the fullest effect of the morbid changes due to pellagra will fall on tissues already damaged by ultra-violet radiation from the sun, by infra-red radiation from a fire or by friction of the clothes. Other contributing factors are hard work, pregnancy, hypothyroidism (*cide supra*), and infections.

### PATHOLOGY

Niacin is an essential factor in the cellular enzyme systems, diphosphopyridine nucleotide and triphosphopyridine nucleotide, co-enzymes I and II, respectively, which act as hydrogen carriers. Niacin deficiency interferes with carbohydrate and protein metabolism. The specific pathological changes that are believed by most workers to be caused directly or indirectly by niacin deficiency are described below —

**The skin** —The distribution and macroscopic appearance of the lesions are discussed below. The changes are primarily inflammatory and then atrophic. There is parakeratosis of the epithelial layer, increase of pigment in the Malpighian layer followed by oedema and desquamation, which leaves the surface red, pigmented and rough. The vessels of the dermis show hyaline degenerative changes.

**Nervous system** —Demonstrable lesions are usually few, but they may be extensive in severe cases and involve the peripheral nerves, cord, and brain. The lesions are by no means constant and different observers have described them in different systems, the lesions described include demyelination or even complete Wallerian degeneration of the nerve fibres, and chromatolytic degeneration of the cells of the Betz layer, Clarke's column, posterior root ganglia and anterior horn cells. Subacute combined degeneration and atrophy of the cerebrum and cerebral oedema have been described. Leptomenigitis has also been reported, but the cerebrospinal fluid seldom shows any changes.

**Alimentary tract** —The mucous membrane of the whole tract including the tongue and mouth shows hyperaemia and sometimes ulceration. This is followed by atrophic changes in the mucosa and also wasting of the muscular coat.

**Other morbid changes** —Death occurs usually from intercurrent disease so that the specific pathological picture is obscured. However, there is usually loss of subcutaneous fat and marked muscular wasting, atrophy of the viscera including the heart, and degenerative changes in the liver, kidney and suprarenals both cortex and medulla.

**Blood picture** —Some degree of anaemia is the rule, it is usually of the microcytic type but may be macrocytic. Leucopenia and relative lymphocytosis are common findings.

**Biochemical findings** —In the urine, there is a marked increase in uroporosein a substance previously mistaken for coproporphyrin, which disappears when successful treatment is given, but this substance is also increased in many other conditions (Watson and Layne, 1943).

There is usually achlorhydria or marked hypochlorhydria but Castle's intrinsic factor is present in the secretions.

Normally, the low limit of nicotinamide (niacnamide) in the blood is about 0.600 mg per 100 ccm. In pregnant women it is slightly lower, and in pellagrins distinctly lower. The amount of niacin excreted in the urine is normally about 5 mg per diem this is decreased in pellagra.

# PLATE XX (Pellagra)



Fig 1—Showing the characteristic skin lesions on the backs of the hands and forearms and under the breasts

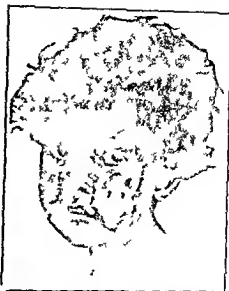


Fig 2—Showing the separation of the pellagra epidermis under treatment



Fig 3—Showing typical lesions on the backs of the hands



Fig 4—The same as Fig 3 six weeks later after treatment

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

There is no accurate information about the incubation period; it is improbable that even the earliest symptoms will appear before the patient has been taking a pellagra producing diet for two or three months, and there is evidence that in certain members of a population living on such a diet, a subclinical state of the deficiency may exist for long periods. There has been much discussion as to whether or not certain borderline states which are commonly observed in children should be considered as pellagra.

**Onset**—The first symptoms to appear are variable, but in any one population they will usually be constant (suggesting that the pellagra syndrome as it is usually seen, is due to a mixed deficiency). The most characteristic symptom is the dermatitis, and, being also a very striking one it will be the symptom that will most frequently bring the patient under medical attention. Careful inquiry will usually, however, elicit a prior history of lassitude, loss of weight, and gastro-intestinal disturbances and soreness of the tongue and dysphagia. In some cases there is definite mental deterioration before any other signs or symptoms appear. The usual history is one of periods of improvement and then relapse over a period of several years before the full syndrome is developed, although there are instances in which the disease develops more rapidly. It is noticeable that the onset and the relapses or exacerbations occur at one particular season of the year (*vide supra*).

A very large variety of signs and symptoms are attributed to pellagra, but it is uncertain how many of these can readily be associated with the central syndrome and how many with other deficiencies. The more specific signs and symptoms can be grouped under the following headings—

**Dermatitis**—The skin lesions which are usually symmetrical, at first suggest sunburn. There is hyperæmia and œdema, and a burning or itching sensation. The hyperæmia does not, however, clear up as it would in a true case of sunburn but large scales form which may separate and leave a red rough area with a sharply demarcated pigmented edge. In the acute stage bullous eruptions may appear.

The distribution of the skin lesions is typical in about 75 per cent of cases they appear on the backs of the hands. Other common areas are on the extensor surfaces of the forearms and arms, on the dorsa of the feet (where these are exposed to the sunlight) on the shoulders collarwise on the back of the neck (Casal's collar) and on the malar eminences (butterfly erythema). These are the areas that are most affected by sunburn.

The dermatitis sometimes extends like a cuff around the wrists and ankles here it tends to persist leaving a brownish stain on fair skins and sometimes depigmentation on dark ones. Other sites are the perineum the elbows and the genital and axillary folds especially when these areas are subjected to pressure of clothing. Typical lesions are shown in Plate XX.

**The intestinal tract**—The attention to the mouth is first attracted by difficulty in taking hot and spicy foods. The tongue is a scarlet red (cf. the more magenta or cyanotic tongue of riboflavin deficiency), œdematous and indented and very sore to the touch, it then loses its epithelium and takes on the characteristic glazed appearance. There is a general inflammatory condition of the whole mouth with aphthous ulcers along the edge and on the frenum of the tongue and ulceration of the gums which are often infected with *Vincent's spirochæte*. There is increased salivation due

to inability or disinclination to close the mouth over the swollen tongue. The pharynx becomes involved in the same process; this leads to difficulty in swallowing and disinclination to take food soon follows. Later the tongue may become completely denuded of epithelium atrophied and fissured.

The bowel symptoms are not by any means constant but there is often a troublesome diarrhoea of the benteric type. There is usually an anorexia even in the absence of dysphagia; discomfort in the upper abdominal segment after food and a persistent burning pain. There is evidence of gastritis which is associated with specific malnutrition of the mucous membranes generally, and is in keeping with the constant hypo- or achlorhydria. Through the gastro-scope the mucous membrane is a fiery red colour. There is often redness and soreness of the anus.

**Nervous.** Tremors of the tongue and face muscles are noted early in the disease and the occurrence of Chvostek's sign (a spasm of the facial muscles on tapping) has been reported; later, this extends to other muscles. There are fleeting pains in different parts of the body, numbness and paraesthesiae. The deep reflexes are exaggerated at first later decreased and finally lost. Peripheral neuropathy is often very troublesome but recent work tends to suggest that this may be an associated condition (vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency).

Later mental changes are characteristic symptoms of the disease; there are headaches, sleeplessness, dullness, anxiety, neuroses, confused thought and depression amounting to melancholia which quite often leads to suicide. In some cases a manic depressive syndrome has followed periods of excitement with hallucinations.

So called toxic psychoses that develop after a febrile attack or after an operation are apparently due to niacin deficiency and respond to parenteral administration sometimes within twenty-four hours. An acute encephalopathy due to sudden complete deprivation of niacin in a depleted individual has been described.

**Other signs and symptoms.**—The vaginal mucosa is usually red and sore and there may be a vaginal discharge. There is nearly always progressive emaciation. There may be irregular fever, but it is not a constant symptom nor is it probably associated with the central pathological and symptomatic syndrome. Anemia is usually very noticeable, this has been mentioned above.

#### DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

A typical case presents an unmistakable picture but the other end of the scale there are cases with slight and questionable symptoms that will defy accurate diagnosis, except possibly by biochemical and therapeutic tests.

\* Diagnosis will have to be considered under the following headings—

(a) **History.**—Environment and diet, general and special, duration and seasonal variation of symptoms.

(b) **Clinical picture.**—Especially the characteristic dermatitis with glossitis, diarrhoea and mental deterioration.

(c) **Laboratory tests.**—Decreased niacin in the urine and in the blood is the rule but the methods of estimating it are very complicated and certainly not within the scope of an ordinary diagnostic laboratory.

(d) **The therapeutic test**—This must be interpreted with reserve, all skin conditions are liable to improve by the administration of large doses of niacin but the improvement will not be so dramatic as in pellagra. On the other hand there are some cases that resist treatment with niacin, it should be given both orally and parenterally.

The skin condition has to be differentiated from sunburn, poisoning, dermatitis, trade dermatitis, lupus vulgaris, lupus erythematosus, erythema multiformis and syphilis, the gastro-intestinal symptoms from nutritional diarrhoeas and sprue (in these there is usually more commonly a macrocytic anaemia and less commonly achlorhydria and in sprue there is fatty diarrhoea and a flat blood glucose curve on oral administration), and the nervous and mental symptoms from neurasthenia, beriberi, ergotism, lathyrism, tabes, Korsakoff's and Wernicke's syndromes and general paralysis of the insane.

### PREVENTION

As pellagra is a dietetic disease its prevention is primarily an economic and educational problem rather than a medical one. However the distribution of specific preventive substances at the worst period of the year and the provision of early medical relief should form part of any anti pellagra campaign.

Maize is only used as a staple diet because the people cannot get anything better and provided it is suitably supplemented its consumption is not detrimental to health, the aim should therefore be the encouragement of suitable supplementation rather than the radical alteration of the diet.

Much can be done by **education and propaganda**. It is first necessary to make the people understand the necessity for including certain substances in their diet and many will find the means for doing so if not at first perhaps at least in the course of a few years. Again if they are made familiar with the signs and symptoms of the disease and are made to understand that it is amenable to treatment and if treatment is put within their reach they will probably prevent themselves for treatment in the earlier stages of the disease when its progress can be checked easily.

Naturally methods of improving the economic status of pellagrous populations must be explored but short of this it may be possible to encourage and even provide the means for home gardening or poultry keeping and at the worst times of the year to distribute dried yeast or even tablets of niacin (100 mg. daily) through schools or other channels.

The best supplementary foods are fresh meat especially pork, liver, whole grain cereals and green leafy vegetables. It may be necessary to fall back on tinned (canned) vegetables, fish and meat which will serve the same purpose but less effectively. The principle should be to increase the proportion of protein as well as to provide an adequate amount of vitamin B complex.

In institutions or camps the disease should never arise if the diets are properly designed but in the case of actual food shortages when it may be necessary to fall back on some poorer staple substances such as maize, dried yeast should be provided.

Dried yeast, autolysed yeast or marmite (vege) or some similar preparation is also a useful supplement for restricted invalid diets, when

for any reason it may be necessary to restrict other pellagra-preventing foods.

### TREATMENT

The treatment of pellagra seldom presents much difficulty insofar as treatment of the individual moderately-advanced case is concerned, the real difficulty arises in the treatment of large poor populations and here the medical aspects are overshadowed by the economic ones. Treatment can be considered under the four headings: general, dietetic, specific and symptomatic.

**General.**—The patient should be removed from the unsatisfactory conditions under which he is living and put into hospital or at least to bed under good home-nursing conditions. The room should be light and airy, but direct sunlight should be avoided until the patient's reactions to this have been ascertained. Any concomitant infections such as ancylostomiasis or malaria, should be treated and any other dysfunctions, such as hypothyroidism and chlorhydria corrected or compensated.

**Dietetic.**—The patient should be given a good mixed high protein diet, with a caloric value of at least 20 per cent above his normal requirements in which there is fresh meat (including liver or pork), whole-wheat (or other good cereal) meal, leafy vegetables, and fresh fruit.

**Specific.**—In most cases there will be immediate improvement following rest under good hygienic conditions with a good diet but if to this, suitable specific treatment is added, the improvement will be more rapid. The main deficiency in pellagra is the niacin fraction of the vitamin-B-complex, this must therefore be given first. It is best to give large doses—500 mg daily will usually be sufficient—for three or four days, and then to follow this up with a maintenance dose of 100 mg daily, until all signs and symptoms have disappeared. Niacin can also be given intramuscularly or intravenously in doses of 100 mg. There are no disadvantages in the intramuscular method and it obviates the danger of non-absorption, but not more than 10 mg/ml should be given intravenously by means of a serum syringe, and even this should be given slowly. If the larger dose is considered necessary, it should be given in a pint of 5 or 10 per cent glucose, slowly. Large intravenous doses cause acute peripheral dilation that may be dangerous. Nicotinic acid does not cause this dilation and may be given in the full therapeutic doses with impunity.

The effect on the skin lesions is immediate and dramatic, the writer has seen an excellent case of pellagra entirely spout, for teaching purposes, in a period of 48 hours, by an ever-enthusiastic house physician! But the improvement in the other symptoms may not be so marked. It is very often advisable also to give riboflavin in cases of severe stomatitis and thiamin in cases complicated with peripheral neuropathy, and there are some cases in which liver extract also seems to be necessary, suggesting that this contains yet other specific substances. There are some workers, who, in view of these facts, prefer to treat all cases of pellagra with liver extract parenterally and dried yeast by the mouth. Further, there are some cases in which improvement is only slight and temporary with specific treatment, unless this is combined with a general improvement in the diet and especially with an increase in the intake of good protein.

**Symptomatic.**—Drugs do not form an essential part of the treatment and in uncomplicated cases complete cure can be effected without them,

but sodium thiosulphate 7 grains daily will help the skin condition, and arsenic in the form of Fowler's solution is recommended by some writers. The skin will improve more rapidly if the area is rubbed with olive oil. If there is a hypochromic *anæmia*, ferrous sulphate gr 11, should be given three times a day.

Most of the gastro intestinal symptoms will disappear on the administration of a suitable diet but, if diarrhoea persists kaolin bismuth or even opium should be tried in turn and if constipation then supervenes, a mild vegetable purgative should be given for a night or two, and this should be followed by some bowel regulator such as isaphrol every night.

The stomatitis, if it does not respond to riboflavin, should be treated with a mild antiseptic such as borax and glycerine and if it is painful to the extent of interfering with the taking of proper nourishment cocaine may be added to the mouth application 2 grains to the ounce. For the mental symptoms and sleeplessness sedatives such as bromides or lunatal may be necessary.

#### PROGNOSIS

This will naturally vary with the circumstances. If the patient even in an advanced stage, can be placed under ideal hygienic and dietetic conditions treatment is usually easy and in most cases will end in complete cure but there may be a relapse when the patient returns to his previous mode of life. The disease however usually occurs amongst poor populations where the intensity of the symptoms will vary according to the degree of the dietary deficiency and the usual history is that of improvement during the cold months of the year (in sub tropical climates) with progressively more severe relapses during the summer months of each year.

In a small percentage of cases the patient appears to resist all forms of treatment and after short temporary remissions deteriorates rapidly and eventually dies of some complication.

The death rate in Italy is given as 3 to 5 per cent and in the United States as about 10 per cent, but in some outbreaks in the latter country, it has been placed as high as 30 per cent.

In alcoholics in chronic malarial and dysenteric subjects and in any febrile state the prognosis is less favourable.

#### REFERENCES

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| AYKROYD W R and SWAMINATHAN M (1940) | The niotins acid content of Cereals and Pellagra <i>Indian J Med Res</i> 27, 667                     |
| IEHMANN J and NIELSEN H E (1939)     | A case of beriberi followed by pellagra <i>Acta Med Scand</i> 99, 577                                |
| LOWE J (1931)                        | Pellagra in the Deccan <i>Ind J Med Gaz</i> , 66, 491  |
| NAPIER I E and CHAUDHURY R N (1943)  | Recurring Pellagra Syndrome in a Myxoedematous Subject <i>Indian Med Gaz</i> 78, 183                 |
| WATSON C J and LAYNE J A (1943)      | Studies in Urinary Pigment in Pellagra and other Pathological States <i>Annals Int Med</i> , 19, 183 |

discovery (1772-75) put the principle into practice with most striking results for he lost only one man from sickness in a voyage of over three years whereas earlier explorers frequently lost 80 per cent of their personnel.

The protective substance in citrus fruits was identified by Holst and Frolich in 1912 it was classified as vitamin C (Drummond 1920) and later given the name ascorbic acid in 1932 it was chemically identified by Szent-Györgyi (1933) and independently by Waugh and King and in 1933 it was synthesized by Reichstein, Hiworth and others.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Although historically it is a boardship disease (*vide supra*), ever since the cause of it has been recognized regulations and the shorter duration of voyages have made it a rare condition amongst sailors. It still occurs in armies living on canned and dried rations, it was rife amongst the British and Indian troops in Iraq during the 1914-18 war. It is very liable to occur in Indian African or Chinese labour forces working in unfamiliar surroundings as the uneducated labourers are often very conservative and do not eat the unfamiliar local fruits and vegetables. It appears to be the most common specific deficiency associated with famines, it occurred in India during the Hissar famine in 1940 (Nicol, 1940).

Sporadic cases not infrequently occur amongst invalids kept on a milk diet, and in the form of Barlow's disease amongst infants fed on boiled or preserved milk or on the milk of stall-fed cattle, without the supplementation of fruit juice or fresh vegetables.

The disease has no geographical or seasonal limitations, and it may occur amongst persons of every race both sexes and all ages. In certain special circumstances it may exhibit a seasonal incidence, just as it may appear to attack certain groups in a population but the incidence is always explainable in terms of vitamin C intake.

### ÆTIOLOGY

Scurvy appears to be a simple vitamin deficiency disease.

Ascorbic acid which man and other primates and certain other animals notably the guinea-pig are unable to synthesize is an essential element for cell metabolism it must therefore be taken in the food, or the organism will suffer. In health the tissues are saturated with this vitamin, so that it takes about six months of deficiency before the signs and symptoms of frank scurvy appear. A 'sub-scurvy' state is now recognized, evidence of which can sometimes be elicited prior to the onset of frank scurvy.

The daily requirements of ascorbic acid are 70 to 100 milligrammes for the adult although 30 milligrammes will prevent the development of scurvy. Children require relatively more, as also do pregnant and lactating women and persons suffering from fever, malaria in particular appears to exhaust the ascorbic acid reserves rapidly.

**Sources of ascorbic acid**—The classical, and probably the most convenient sources of vitamin C are citrus fruits, especially oranges and lemons the juice of which contains an average of 60 mg. of ascorbic acid per 100 grammes. Other fruits rich in vitamin C are black currants (200 mg.), strawberries (50 mg.), cape gooseberries (50 mg.), pineapples (60 mg.), guavas (300 mg.), papayas (40 mg.), and tomatoes (30 mg.). Fresh leafy vegetables roots and tubers also contain large amounts, provided that they are fresh and either uncooked or carefully cooked, notably



spinach cabbage cauliflower parsley green peas sprouts khol khol celery drumsticks amaranth and coriander and potatoes sweet potatoes turnips and beetroot. A very rich source of vitamin C in India is *amla* (*Phyllanthus emblica*) which grows in many forests it contains when fresh as much as 600 mg per 100 grammes. Powdered *amla* maintains about 50 per cent of its vitamin C in an active state.

Ascorbic acid is very labile and is very likely to be destroyed by cooking and canning. It is preserved best in an acid medium so that the addition of sodium bicarbonate to vegetables during cooking is a bad practice. It is destroyed by prolonged cooking and is water soluble so that much is lost if the cooking water is discarded. Copper cooking vessels will cause excessive destruction of ascorbic acid. In many brands of canned fruit less than 30 per cent of the original content of ascorbic acid is preserved but modern canning methods retain much more than this. Again during storage of potatoes for example the ascorbic acid is quickly lost.

Milk is not a good source of ascorbic acid but if the cow is fed on fresh grass her milk will contain far more than if she is stall fed. Most sterilized milk supplied in cities is a negligible source of vitamin C. Human milk is a much better source than cow's milk.

When fresh fruit and vegetables are hard to obtain ascorbic acid can be supplied by sprouting pulses or cereals. Unmilled grain is of course necessary. The following method of preparing sprouted grain is given by Aykroyd (1911) —

Grains such as dill grain or wheat or legumes particularly unsplit peas are first soaked in water for 24 hours and are then spread out on damp earth or on a damp blanket and covered over with a moist cloth or sack (gunny bag) which is kept moist by sprinkling water upon it from time to time. After two or three days the grains will have sprouted and be ready for use. The sprouted grains should be eaten raw or after cooking for not more than 10 minutes.

#### PATHOLOGY

The deficiency of vitamin C causes an imperfect formation of connective tissue with failure to develop true supporting tissue. There is not proper adhesion between the cells of the epithelium or the capillary walls so that these rupture very easily on the slightest trauma or when the internal pressure is increased and similarly scar tissue does not form properly and is very weak. Osteoblasts fail to differentiate and there is deficient formation of calcified osseous matrix so that eventually the osteoblasts come to lie in an almost exclusively fibrous matrix and further development ceases. It has been reported that in advanced cases large areas of erythroblastic and leucoblastic bone marrow tissues are replaced by amyloid connective tissue.

The post mortem picture will be largely influenced by the secondary deficiencies and the superimposed infections but a constant finding will be numerous haemorrhages in most of the tissues and organs including the brain.

**Blood picture** — A microcytic hypochromic anaemia that responds readily to the administration of vitamin C has been reported but the writer has never been able to identify any anaemia as due to ascorbic acid deficiency.

ciency and recent experimental work has failed to establish the earlier claims

### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

**Latent period**—In infants 'Barlow's disease' usually develops between the sixth and the eighteenth month and similarly in a well-nourished adult it is about six months before there is any clinical evidence of the deficiency although in a case in which a partial deficiency has existed for some time, the disease may be precipitated within a shorter period

**Onset**—The first signs are pallor, breathlessness, anorexia and general weakness this is followed by sponginess and bleeding of the gums then swelling so that they almost envelope the teeth which become loose and may fall out, at the same time petechial hæmorrhages occur in the skin and there may be deep hæmorrhages in the muscles which are evidenced by the sudden appearance of tender swellings

**Progress**—Large ecchymoses may appear in the skin then subperiosteal hæmorrhages and there may be hæmorrhages into the joints and other serous cavities, or even into the brain. There may be hæmoptysis hæmatemesis hæmaturia and/or melaena. Meanwhile severe anaemia may be developing this is partly due to the loss of blood but also, it is claimed in the bone marrow changes. The gums become secondarily infected so that there is a foul gingivitis and the teeth drop out, and usually the patient becomes progressively weaker and eventually dies of some complication such as pneumonia

In infants the most striking additional feature is the extreme tenderness of the joints so that the infant is terrified when anyone approaches its ear. If the knee is flexed and everted a swelling of the lower end of the femur will be seen which is usually symmetrical this is not tender. Later the upper limbs may be similarly affected. There is also usually radiological evidence e.g. sub epiphyseal hæmorrhage or cessation of the development. The spongy gums and other signs will also be present

### DIAGNOSIS

This can be made on (a) the dietetic history, (b) the clinical examination (c) the therapeutic test and/or (d) certain clinical and laboratory tests

Frank scurvy will usually present little difficulty from a clinical point of view if there is a dietary history that is compatible with vitamin C deficiency. However it is unwise to diagnose scurvy in an adult on a mixed diet or in a breast fed child on clinical examination alone, in such cases the confirmation of the diagnosis by laboratory tests or at least the therapeutic test should be awaited. A good clinical response within a few days to a daily dose of 700 mg of ascorbic acid constitutes a positive therapeutic test the converse may also be accepted

A relatively simple clinical test is Gothlin's capillary fragility test, a sphygmomanometer band is placed on the arm and the pressure raised to 90 mm of mercury for three minutes, the arm below the band is then inspected with a hand lens and in cases of deficiency there will be numerous capillary hæmorrhages. No clinical test is however entirely reliable although this is better than Rotter's intra dermal test that most reliable workers have now discarded

Of the laboratory tests the estimation of the urinary excretion of ascorbic acid is the simplest. On a minimum adequate intake of 25 mg the daily excretion is about 13 mg, there is a sharp response to a test dose of 700 mg if the subject is saturated but if not it may be several days before there is evidence of an overflow in the urine. The urinary ascorbic acid falls to nil in frank scurvy, and no appreciable amount is excreted until at least one gramme of ascorbic acid has been given.

The estimation of the blood ascorbic acid is also relatively simple. If this is as high as 0.7 milligrammes per 100 c.c.m. it may be assumed that the patient is saturated. A low value does not however necessarily mean that there is ascorbic acid deficiency.

In differential diagnosis, most of the haemorrhagic diseases will have to be considered, and it may be necessary to make a platelet count and do a prothrombin test.

### PREVENTION

The prevention of scurvy has been practised on ships of the navies and merchant services of many nations for several hundred years often by regulations that make it compulsory to carry fresh fruit or fruit juice for consumption by the crew. In institutions and armies it can be prevented by including in the rations some good source of vitamin C and by training cooks not to destroy such of the vitamin as is present in raw food by overcooking it, or by using copper or brass utensils. When all other sources are precluded, it can be provided by sprouting grain (*vide supra*).

The present shortage of shipping has reduced the amount of citrus fruit that can be imported into Great Britain. To replace this deficiency synthetic vitamin C is being used freely.

Education and propaganda play an important part in prevention. The importance of taking fresh fruit and vegetables or sprouted grain should be impressed on school children and pregnant women in particular, the latter for their own benefit and for that of their infants.

As a general rule the prevention of scurvy is not so much an economic problem as is the prevention of pellagra or even beriberi but this aspect will arise in the case of famines. During the Bihar famine in 1940 powdered *amla* was distributed and did much to reduce the incidence of scurvy. *Amla* powder is also being issued to troops based in India and it is hoped that this will obviate any recurrence during this war of the scurvy that was a serious source of illness in Iraq in the last war.

Infants on artificial food or on pasteurized milk should always be given fresh fruit juice daily, this will also apply to infants whose mothers are on a low ascorbic acid intake and in fact it will be a safe precaution to apply to all infants, as well as to invalids on a milk diet.

### TREATMENT

This presents no difficulties if fruit juice or synthetic ascorbic acid is available. Doses up to 700 mg of L ascorbic acid should be given by mouth daily for the first few days until the acute symptoms subside. In very acute cases, it may be safer to give 500 mg parenterally. A maintenance dose of 100 to 200 mg should be continued for a few weeks until it is certain that saturation is complete which of course could be ascertained by the estimation of the urinary secretion of ascorbic acid but this

is not usually necessary. Infants require 40 mg daily for two or three years. When synthetic ascorbic acid is used it is good practice to supply a natural source of vitamin C in the diet as well since cases have been reported in which the response to the synthetic vitamin alone was not satisfactory.

Secondary treatment is seldom necessary, but the correction of this deficiency may uncover other deficiencies so that a diet rich in all important vitamins should be given whenever possible.

If the specific treatment is given even in advanced cases the prognosis is usually good.

#### REFERENCES

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| DRUMMOND J. C. (1920)              | The nomenclature of the so-called accessory food factor <i>Biochem J.</i> <b>14</b> , 660 |
| FRIDT-GYRWAN A. (1933)             | Identification of Vitamin C <i>Nature</i> <b>131</b> , 226                                |
| VAUGHN W. A. and KING C. G. (1932) | Isolation and identification of Vitamin C <i>J. Biol. Chem.</i> <b>97</b> , 325           |

## EPIDEMIC DROPSY\*

	PAGE
DEFINITION	803
<i>Discussion</i>	803
EPIDEMIOLOGY	804
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	804
<i>Seasonal incidence</i>	804
<i>Epidemic status</i>	804
<i>Age, sex, race, and economic status</i>	805
ÆTIOLOGY	805
<i>Theories—Recent work—Summary</i>	807
PATHOLOGY	807
<i>Skin—Heart—Eyes—Blood picture—Urine</i>	808
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	808
<i>Latent period—Onset</i>	808
<i>The <math>\alpha</math> edema—Cutaneous manifestations—Sarcoids—Heart</i>	809
<i>Other symptoms—Glaucoma</i>	809
DIAGNOSIS	810
PREVENTION	810
TREATMENT	810
<i>Rest—Diet—Drugs—Complications</i>	811
PROGNOSIS	

**Definition**—Epidemic dropsy is the provisional (and not very appropriate) name given to a non infectious disease which is characterized by gastro intestinal disturbances, œdema of the extremities, certain specific skin manifestations and cardiac dysfunction and is frequently fatal, it has a very limited geographical and racial distribution being confined mainly to Bengal and Bengalees, and its exact ætiology is as yet unknown, but it is undoubtedly associated with food and probably with mustard oil.

**Discussion**—This disease has in the past suffered many things of many theories. It has been fitted into a variety of categories to which it quite obviously does not belong by both local and long-distance investigators who have exalted

---

\* The clinical paragraphs of this paper were written with the aid of some notes given to the writer for this purpose by Dr R. N. Chaudhuri, his late colleague and the assistant professor of tropical medicine in Calcutta whose clinical experience of this disease ante-dates the writers by several years.

casual clinical observations of secondary importance—both in this disease and in the diseases to which they have attempted to liken it—to the position of main symptoms and have then in these distorted pictures seen similarities, which do not exist in the typical pictures of these two diseases

The two diseases with which it is most often confused are beriberi and famine dropsy. Epidemic dropsy occurs amongst well-to-do Bengalees living on a mixed diet of which (admittedly) rice usually milled is the staple substance, and it has a short latent period between its symptomatology and that of the 'dry' form of beriberi the writer can see no major similarities, between epidemic dropsy and the wet form of beriberi the similarities are more apparent than real, and between epidemic dropsy and famose dropsy only the most long-distance investigators have seen any similarity but the confusion is still perpetuated in textbooks

Epidemic dropsy has no epidemiology which distinguishes it from other known dietetic diseases and at the same time precludes infection as its cause, it has a unique pathology and it displays a very characteristic clinical picture. It therefore deserves consideration as a distinct syndrome and although it is a disease that is at present only of local interest (the locality involved has incidentally a population of about one hundred million people), the possible wider repercussions of its study seem to justify its occupation of a separate chapter in this book

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—Epidemic dropsy was first reported in Calcutta in 1877 and this city has been the focal centre of this disease ever since. This is primarily because Calcutta is a large town with a very large Bengalee population and because medical and popular attention has been drawn to the disease here. It was reported in Mauritius in 1879 amongst labourers from Calcutta (who probably brought their own food with them or at any rate lived on the food to which they were accustomed, imported from Calcutta) and more recently an outbreak has occurred in Fiji again amongst labourers imported from Bengal. It frequently occurs in other centres in Bengal and in the neighbouring provinces, Assam, Bihar, and Orissa and to a less extent in the Central and United Provinces

**Seasonal incidence**—The main outbreaks occur in the rainy season, or immediately after it that is, from June to November, but small outbreaks may occur at other times of the year. The incidence of the disease varies very much from year to year the peak years of the last two decades have been 1926 1934 and 1939

**Epidemic status**—Sporadic cases are seldom seen. The disease occurs in small or large outbreaks involving one family or a large group, e.g. a students mess or some institution. Several outbreaks will occur at the time giving the semblance of an epidemic, but such outbreaks will be scattered widely in the locality, and it will usually be impossible to trace any link between any two of them. When the disease occurs in a labour force, it will occur amongst certain groups that feed together

It is a disease of middle class Bengal families, the entire family, except the infants and young children, is usually affected in varying degrees of severity and the servants of which there may be several in a large Hindu joint family are usually also involved, although they may escape if they have separate feeding arrangements

**Age, sex, race, and economic status**—Suckling infants are never affected and young children up to the age of four years very seldom, the sexes are equally susceptible as noted above Bengalees are particularly affected although the disease also occurs amongst Anglo Indians and others who eat both rice and mustard oil but it is practically unknown amongst Europeans and Marwaris in Calcutta, neither of which communities use rice as their staple diet nor mustard oil in cooking and the poor-

est classes of the community usually escape (The poor people often cannot afford mustard oil and also they do not throw away their rice water)

### ÆTIOLOGY

During the last sixty years many theories have been formulated they have lived their days, become history, and have been revived again

The theories that have been put forward can be grouped as follows —

(a) That it is caused by an infecting organism a bacterium or a virus that can be passed from person to person,

(b) That it is an intoxication acquired from

- (i) diseased rice
- (ii) mustard oil or
- (iii) some other source

(c) That it is a food deficiency disease

(a) Whilst the infection theory has had advocates from time to time it has never claimed a large following and nearly all epidemiological and experimental evidence is directly opposed to this being the mode of origin

(b) Similarly the food deficiency theory will not stand at least not alone, most of the main epidemiological facts are opposed to it. However, people who take milled rice as their staple diet even if this is par boiled are not living very far above vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency line so that this cannot be entirely dismissed as a possible contributing factor

(c) We are thus left with the intoxication theory (i) Rice has all ways occupied the centre of the picture, it is natural that it should as all the communities affected are rice eating communities. Acton and Chopra (1927) revived the rice toxin theory. It was suggested that after par boiling and milling if the rice were allowed to get damp in transit and/or was kept in a damp and airless godown (store room), it was likely to be come infected by a gram positive spore forming bacillus which causing degenerative changes in the starch of the rice produced a central opacity in the rice grain that could be seen easily when this was immersed in water. This degenerative change led the formation of a heat stable water soluble toxin that had a histamin like action which gave rise to the wide spread capillary dilatation of epidemic dropsy. Certainly a bacillus was found in some samples of badly stored rice and it was possible to obtain a histamin like substance from other samples but there were many gaps both on the bacteriological and on the pharmacological side particularly in the matter of controls in this attractive theory, and as such it was received with considerable scepticism

Although the broad epidemiological observations for example that the disease was virtually confined to rice eating people were in favour of any rice theory and sometimes amateur local enquiries seemed to suggest that certain supplies of so called 'diseased' rice might be responsible for some of the outbreaks no expert epidemiological investigation has been carried out prior to 1935. Discussing the problem in an editorial in the *Indian Medical Gazette* of December 1935 the present writer commented —

The epidemiological investigations must be raised from the anecdotal to the scientific level. The population subjected to enquiries must be a large one and only selected on a geographical not on an economic social or religious basis the enquiries must be made amongst those who have not as well as those who

casual clinical observations of secondary importance—both in this disease and in the diseases to which they have attempted to liken it—to the position of main symptoms and have then in these distorted pictures seen similarities which do not exist in the typical pictures of these two diseases.

The two diseases with which it is most often confused are beriberi and famine dropsy. Epidemic dropsy occurs amongst well-to-do Bengalees living on a mixed diet of which (admittedly) rice usually milled is the staple substance, and it has a short latent period between its symptomatology and that of the 'dry' form of beriberi the writer can see no major similarities between epidemic dropsy and the wet form of beriberi the similarities are more apparent than real, and between epidemic dropsy and famine dropsy only the most long-distance investigators have seen any similarity, but the confusion is still perpetuated in textbooks.

Epidemic dropsy has an epidemiology which distinguishes it from other known dietetic diseases and at the same time precludes infection as its cause, it has a unique pathology and it displays a very characteristic clinical picture. It therefore deserves consideration as a distinct syndrome and although it is a disease that is at present only of local interest (the locality involved has incidentally a population of about one hundred million people) the possible wider repercussions of its study seem to justify its occupation of a separate chapter in this book.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Geographical distribution**—Epidemic dropsy was first reported in Calcutta in 1877 and this city has been the focal centre of this disease ever since. This is primarily because Calcutta is a large town with a very large Bengalee population and because medical and popular attention has been drawn to the disease here. It was reported in Mauritius in 1879 amongst labourers from Calcutta (who probably brought their own food with them or at any rate lived on the food to which they were accustomed, imported from Calcutta), and more recently an outbreak has occurred in Fiji, again amongst labourers imported from Bengal. It frequently occurs in other centres in Bengal and in the neighbouring provinces, Assam, Bihar, and Orissa, and to a less extent in the Central and United Provinces.

**Seasonal incidence**—The main outbreaks occur in the rainy season, or immediately after it that is, from June to November, but small outbreaks may occur at other times of the year. The incidence of the disease varies very much from year to year, the peak years of the last two decades have been 1926, 1934 and 1939.

**Epidemic status**—Sporadic cases are seldom seen. The disease occurs in small or large outbreaks, involving one family or a large group, *e.g.* a students mess or some institution. Several outbreaks will occur at the time giving the semblance of an epidemic, but such outbreaks will be scattered widely in the locality, and it will usually be impossible to trace any link between any two of them. When the disease occurs in a labour force, it will occur amongst certain groups that feed together.

It is a disease of middle class Bengal families, the entire family, except the infants and young children, is usually affected in varying degrees of severity, and the servants of which there may be several in a large Hindu joint family, are usually also involved, although they may escape if they have separate feeding arrangements.

**Age, sex, race, and economic status**—Suckling infants are never affected and young children up to the age of four years very seldom, the sexes are equally susceptible, as noted above Bengalees are particularly affected although the disease also occurs amongst Anglo Indians, and others who eat both rice and mustard oil, but it is practically unknown amongst Europeans and Marwaris in Calcutta, neither of which communities use rice as their staple diet, nor mustard oil in cooking and the poor-



vary from place to place, but apparently it is a very common contaminant and a large number of samples of oil show its presence, so that it is easier to account for the wide prevalence of the disease than it is to understand why it is not more prevalent. It is for example, not quite clear why epidemic dropsy is comparatively rare amongst the poorer Anglo-Indian community who use mustard oil for cooking almost exclusively. Does it depend on the amount of argemone oil present? Ial and his coworkers (1941) place the maximum safe amount at 0.5 per cent. Is it simply because it is heated and partly inactivated, or is it something to do with the general composition of their diet, in which rice does not preponderate to the extent that it does in most Bengalee diets?

There has long been a strong belief, prevalent amongst both patients and doctors, that rice per se is bad for an epidemic dropsy patient, this belief is independent of the rice-toxin theory, because it applies to any form of rice, sound or diseased. Dr I. H. C. Wilson, studying cases in the hospital of the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine, noted that there was a distinct increase in the oedema whenever an epidemic dropsy patient was given a rice diet. There is therefore some evidence that people who live on a diet consisting largely of rice possibly by virtue of its high carbohydrate/vitamin B<sub>1</sub> ratio, are more susceptible to the disease, and that rice though not the main culprit or the vehicle of the noxious factor, does play a part in the aetiology of epidemic dropsy.

In the study of vitamins the idea of 'conditioned toxicity' is now gaining ground, there are numerous examples reported of the toxic effect of a toxic substance being conditioned by the nature of the diet, and/or the state of vitamin saturation of the subject. e.g., selenium poisoning and a high-protein diet, lead poisoning and vitamin C and indol and vitamin B. Is this possibly another such example? Such an hypothesis would provide a means of co-ordinating some of the earlier theories regarding epidemic dropsy with the latest one, for specific food deficiency was visualized as a possible cause long before the present vitamin age.

Both the clinical and the pathological evidence (*vide infra*) support the epidemiological and experimental evidence and indicate that the disease is far more likely to be due to an intoxication than to either an infection or a vitamin- or other food-deficiency.

To summarize, epidemic dropsy is apparently caused by the consumption of some toxic substance in mustard oil, probably a constituent of argemone oil, a common contaminant of mustard oil, the effect of this toxin is enhanced if the diet is predominately a rice one.

#### PATHOLOGY

The characteristic pathological change is a persistent dilation of the smaller blood vessels not simply of the capillaries, in all the layers of the skin, in the heart muscle and in other organs and tissues, associated with slight perivascular infiltration by large mononuclear cells, increased permeability, and local oedema. The 'toxin' appears to have a direct specific action on small blood vessels.

These changes can be seen in all the layers of the skin, and in the subcapillary plexus there is often new vascular formation which may progress to the development of hamangiomatous condition that gives rise to the so-called 'sarcoids'. There is often increased pigmentation in the basal layer, and some pigment will be seen in the deeper layers of the skin.

have suffered from the disease the mild cases of the disease must also be taken into account and this presents difficulties as it means that a careful medical examination of the whole population at the time of the outbreak is necessary, histories taken at a later date may be misleading. Very few investigations of this nature have been undertaken but it is only through such investigations that we are likely to reach a solution of the problem.

**Recent work**—An epidemiological investigation was undertaken by Dr R B Lal, the professor of epidemiology and vital statistics at the All-India Institute of Hygiene, Calcutta, and his staff, in six different areas, in Bengal Bihar and Assam including a ten-estate, where an outbreak of the disease had been recognized and reported by Dr Charles Terrell. These investigations appeared to point more to mustard oil as the probable vehicle of the noxious factor, and the same workers, in an investigation conducted with the clinical collaboration of members of the staff of the Calcutta School of Medicine, were able to produce suggestive symptoms in volunteers fed on samples of mustard oil that had come under suspicion in epidemic dropsy outbreaks (Lal *et al* 1937-41).

During the last half century mustard oil has been suspected repeatedly but in 1926 Sarkar recorded an outbreak in which several patients had all the symptoms of severe epidemic dropsy after taking oil that had been contaminated with argemone oil (from the seeds of *Argemone mexicana* local names *salkata* or *katakhar* oil). In 1928 Kamath, reporting an outbreak in which mustard oil was taken and applying his data to support the infection theory, noted that oil from a seed known locally as *odissimari* was also used, this seed has now been identified as *Argemone mexicana*.

Attention was thus directed to a specific contaminant of mustard oil and feeding experiments were carried out at the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine on human volunteers and on animals (Chopra *et al*, 1939) with very suggestive results.

We have now arrived at the position in which mustard oil has been incriminated once more but on this occasion the case against it rests on a much sounder basis of epidemiological and experimental evidence. Argemone oil a common adulterant of mustard oil, has been shown to produce symptoms identical with those of epidemic dropsy, whether it is administered accidentally or experimentally. Finally, in a number of recent outbreaks it has been found that the mustard oil used by the victims was badly contaminated with argemone oil and that when its use was discontinued the outbreak subsided.

We know that argemone oil contains a noxious agent, but up to the present time chemists and pharmacologists are not agreed as to its exact nature or how it acts whether it is an independent poison that produces its ill effects grain for grain according to the dose in which it is taken or whether the substratum is an important factor and the degree of toxicity depends on the excess of one food substance in the diet or on the absence of another.

Argemone oil is not an adulterant in the sense that it is often added to the oil by the retailer, deliberately for the sake of increasing his profit, but it is an accidental contaminant of the mustard crop as it grows in the field, it is a self sown weed which can be distinguished easily from the mustard plant when the crop is harvested and although the seeds are very similar they could be picked out by a careful farmer.

It is quite understandable that some years would be more favourable to the weed than others and that its percentage incidence in the crop will

vary from place to place, but apparently it is a very common contaminant and a large number of samples of oil show its presence, so that it is easier to account for the wide prevalence of the disease than it is to understand why it is not more prevalent. It is for example not quite clear why epidemic dropsy is comparatively rare amongst the poorer Anglo Indian community who use mustard oil for cooking almost exclusively. Does it depend on the amount of argemone oil present? Ial and his coworkers (1941) place the maximum safe amount at 0.5 per cent. Is it simply because it is heated and partly inactivated or is it something to do with the general composition of their diet in which rice does not preponderate to the extent that it does in most Bengalee diets?

There has long been a strong belief prevalent amongst both patients and doctors that rice *per se* is bad for an epidemic dropsy patient; this belief is independent of the rice toxin theory because it applies to any form of rice, sound or diseased. Dr H. C. Wilson, studying cases in the hospital of the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine, noted that there was a distinct increase in the oedema whenever an epidemic dropsy patient was given a rice diet. There is therefore some evidence that people who live on a diet consisting largely of rice, possibly by virtue of its high carbohydrate/vitamin B<sub>1</sub> ratio, are more susceptible to the disease and that rice though not the main culprit or the vehicle of the noxious factor does play a part in the aetiology of epidemic dropsy.

In the study of vitamins the idea of conditioned toxicity is now gaining ground; there are numerous examples reported of the toxic effect of a toxic substance being conditioned by the nature of the diet and/or the state of vitamin saturation of the subject, e.g. selenium poisoning and a high protein diet lead poisoning and vitamin C and indol and vitamin B<sub>12</sub>. Is this possibly another such example? Such an hypothesis would provide a means of co-ordinating some of the earlier theories regarding epidemic dropsy with the latest one, for specific food deficiency was visualized as a possible cause long before the present vitamin age.

Both the clinical and the pathological evidence (*vide infra*) support the epidemiological and experimental evidence and indicate that the disease is far more likely to be due to an intoxication than to either an infection or a vitamin or other food-deficiency.

To summarize, epidemic dropsy is apparently caused by the consumption of some toxic substance in mustard oil, probably a constituent of argemone oil, a common contaminant of mustard oil; the effect of this toxin is enhanced if the diet is predominately a rice one.

#### PATHOLOGY

The characteristic pathological change is a persistent dilation of the smaller blood vessels, not simply of the capillaries in all the layers of the skin, in the heart muscle and in other organs and tissues associated with slight perivascular infiltration by large mononuclear cells, increased permeability, and local oedema. The 'toxin' appears to have a direct specific action on small blood vessels.

These changes can be seen in all the layers of the skin, and in the subpapillary plexus there is often new vascular formation which may progress to the development of hamangiomatous condition that gives rise to the so-called 'saroids'. There is often increased pigmentation in the basal layer, and some pigment will be seen in the deeper layers of the skin.

There is oedema in the corium where the collagen fibres may be swollen, and in the subcutaneous tissue. The sarcoïd is a vascular tumour, with few connective tissue cells, no fibroblasts and no inflammatory cell exudate, covered by a flattened epidermis which shows thickening and down-growth deep into the normal corium at the edge of the tumour.

In the heart, there is marked vascular dilation between the muscle fibres so much so that sections sometimes give the appearance of free extravasations of blood that have dissected out individual muscle fibres or bunches of fibres.

In the eyes, there is great engorgement of the uvea which results in over production of aqueous humour increased tension in the anterior chamber and glaucoma.

The blood picture—There is usually a distinct normocytic orthochromic anemia which is apparently due to depressed hæmopoietic function (Napier and Sen Gupta 1940). The leucocyte count is usually slightly raised and there is a shift to the left in the Arnett count. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is increased considerably.

The urine shows no constant changes, there is however frequently a trace of albumin.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The latent period between the consumption of the noxious material and the onset of the first symptoms (this can sometimes be estimated with a fair degree of certainty but of course at other times not) is very variable from two or three days to two or three weeks. It is probably dependent on the dose taken. Similarly the onset may be sudden, or insidious, again this probably depends on the same circumstances. It is usually possible to obtain a history of nausea, loss of appetite, and looseness of the bowels for a few days with this there may have been irregular fever, but there is seldom much fever by the time the patient reaches the hospital, though the diarrhoea often persists.

In the acute cases breathlessness on the slightest exertion, swelling of the feet which is much worse towards the end of the day, and, in some outbreaks skin manifestations will develop rapidly. The pulse rate is usually rapid and may be very irregular, the blood pressure is variable. In very severe cases the heart condition progresses rapidly and the patient, now confined to bed is orthopnoic, or he may die suddenly before the full seriousness is appreciated. In the less severe cases oedema and shortness of breath will persist as long as he is working and taking a rice diet, but will subside rapidly under hospital treatment, and the hyperæmia of the skin may subside leaving the sarcoïds.

Finally all the more acute manifestations subside, and, as long as the patient remains in bed he feels perfectly well but he may be left with a weakened myocardium which prevents him from returning to full work for many months. There are however amongst better class patients, many whose cardiac condition appears to be normal, but in whom a cardiac neurosis develops that is even harder to cure than any true cardiac dysfunction.

Some of the symptoms will be considered in a little more detail.

The oedema, which is both central and peripheral in origin, is an almost constant symptom but variable in degree and very rarely general anasarca develops.

The cutaneous manifestations are very common in some outbreaks and apparently rare in others. In 1934 out of 39 cases admitted to the School of Tropical Medicine 15 showed some cutaneous lesion and since special attention has been drawn to them they appear to be more common than they were hitherto. They include a generalized purplish erythema, vascular mottling of the skin, hyperpigmentation of the exposed parts particularly the face, a petechial rash, and the so called 'sarcoids'.

The 'sarcoid' (quite unrelated either aetiological or histologically to Boeck's benign sarcoid and equally unlike a carcinoma, although admittedly a 'fleshy' tumour) is a hamangiomatous growth, it varies from the size of a pin's head to that of a walnut, and it may be sessile or pedunculated. It is easily injured and is liable to bleed freely and more rarely to suppurate.

**The heart**—This is frequently enlarged. A mitral systolic murmur, due to relative mitral incompetence and an accentuated pulmonary second sound due to congestion of the lungs are common and there may be a pulmonary systolic murmur due to dilatation of the pulmonary artery. In severe cases there are signs of congestive cardiac failure.

The electrocardiogram commonly shows functional derangement, tachycardia of sinus origin and extra systoles are not infrequent, the P-R interval has been found to be abnormally short in a large percentage of the cases investigated, and an abnormal T-wave and auricular fibrillation have been found. Orthodiagrams frequently show that the heart is enlarged especially the left ventricle and the right auricle.

**Other symptoms**—Patients often complain of burning or a pricking sensation and of vague pains all over the body, but very rarely of definite 'neuritic' paralyses, or areas of anaesthesia. The knee jerks sometimes appear to be brisk at first and later poor or even lost, but in most cases there is little deviation from normal in any reflexes. (Some of these symptoms may of course be due to associated thiamin deficiency.)

**Glaucoma** develops in about 5 per cent of cases. There is early complaint of rainbow haloes around a light dimness of vision then progressive contraction of the visual field and if unrelieved eventually complete blindness. There is usually little pain but on examination the increase in tension will be obvious.

Abortion is the rule in pregnant women.

#### DIAGNOSIS

This is based on the clinical picture and the dietetic history. If several members of a family give a history of acute diarrhoea followed by oedema of the legs with or without flushing which is warm to the touch and shortness of breath on exertion, careful enquiries should be made regarding the diet of the family, and other members should be examined and questioned for minor signs of the disease.

The characteristic oedema and erythema is not matched in any other condition nor are the so called 'sarcoids', though these are somewhat like the eruption in verruga peruviana (another local disease that occurs curiously enough on almost exactly the opposite side of the globe). The disease has to be distinguished from several other conditions in which there is swelling of the legs, e.g. filariasis, ancylostomiasis, schistosomiasis and cardio-vascular and renal disease, but the one that calls for comment here, in view of a persistent misconception on the subject is beriberi. Between

epidemic dropsy and the dry form of beriberi with its gradual onset, wasting and weakness and pronounced neuropathies there are no points of similarity to be discussed. In the wet form, the latent period is again longer than that of epidemic dropsy, the edema often disguises underlying wasting and neuropathies and is 'cold', that is, unaccompanied by hyperaemia there are no other cutaneous manifestations, and in the heart condition there is very frequently a dramatic response to the administration of thiamin chloride. All these points taken together will usually make it easy to distinguish even isolated cases and when there is a group of cases should make confusion impossible.

#### PREVENTION

It is obvious that this will depend on the final verdict on the cause of the disease, but the present state of our knowledge certainly justifies the adoption of public health measures aimed at the prevention of the contamination of mustard oil by argemone oil even as an experimental measure.

Preventive measures must be started with the agriculturist, to whom the danger of allowing his crop to be contaminated by this dangerous weed should be pointed out. It may however be easier to bring pressure to bear on him indirectly by inspecting the seed that is sent to the oil-press and condemning all batches that contain more than a certain percentage of seeds of *Argemone mexicana* or even by testing the oil that is supplied to the retailer. But there are technical difficulties about the latter procedure as the nitric acid test\* which has up to now been relied upon for detecting contamination is not entirely specific.

An interesting observation was made by Terrell (personal communication) namely that in some northerly districts of Assam the mustard and the *Argemone mexicana* do not ripen coincidentally so that the latter seed is not harvested in the districts the mustard oil is never contaminated, and epidemic dropsy does not occur.

As far as the individual is concerned the only advice one can give is to warn him to buy his oil from a safe source and/or to have it tested.

#### TREATMENT

This is essentially symptomatic and dietetic, no specific is known.

Rest is the first essential even if the cardiac symptoms are not prominent as until the patient has been placed on his new dietary regime for several days they may at any time supervene. If cardiac symptoms have already developed he must be kept in bed and carefully nursed, until they have completely disappeared and after graded exercise have shown no sign of returning.

The diet will depend on the symptoms to some extent, but if there are no contra indications a well balanced diet containing at least the full quota of protein and from which rice and mustard oil are excluded, should be given. Bread or *chappatis* should be given in the place of rice. If the diarrhoea persists this may be stopped by placing the patient on milk, or even lime-juice and albumin water may be necessary for a few days, but

\* About 10 c.c.m. of the oil is shaken up with an equal quantity of colourless nitric acid after two minutes a yellow or reddish brown layer appears at the bottom of the test tube. The test is reported to be roughly quantitative and to detect about 1 per cent of argemone oil.

care must be taken not to keep up this restricted dietary for too long and if there is much oedema so much fluid may be contra indicated. In the latter case salt also should be restricted.

**Drugs**—An initial purgation with two drachms of liquorice powder at night followed by two or three days of castor oil emulsion (a drachm to the ounce), or one drachm of sodium sulphate every two hours for the first day and every four hours for the next two days will help to control the diarrhoea and to some extent the oedema but if after this the former persists, bismuth and opium should be substituted.

A mixture containing tincture of ephedra 20 to 30 minims and 10 to 15 grains of calcium lactate three daily, is prescribed as a routine procedure at the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine theoretically because ephedrine is vaso constrictor and a circulatory stimulant at least patients appear to do well on it. A diuretic e.g. diuretin grs 10, is added if there is any oedema. If the oedema is more extensive ammonium chloride grs 10 is given three times a day, and then an injection of one of the mercurial diuretics such as neptil or mer-salil. For congestive heart failure, digitalis in adequate doses should be given and in severe cases venesection may be advisable.

**Complications** must be treated as they arise the fluid may have to be removed from serous cavities. Glaucoma must be watched carefully and if there is no improvement with general treatment and the visual fields tend to diminish trephining or anterior sclerotomy may be necessary.

#### PROGNOSIS

Even in the mild case the patient is not really fit for manual work within three to four weeks in the moderately severe case with any evidence of cardiac involvement he will not be fit to resume even clerical work within this period and in the severe case the patient will be incapacitated for several months.

The death rate in an outbreak will usually be about 5 per cent but in some severely affected families half the members have died. Death is from heart failure.

#### REFERENCES

- ACTON H W., and CHOPRA R N. Further investigations into the Etology of Epidemic Dropsy. *Indian Med Gaz* 62, 359 (1927)
- CHOPRA R N. and CHAUDHURI R N. (1935) Cutaneous Manifestations of Epidemic Dropsy. *Indian Med Gaz* 70, 493
- CHOPRA R N., PANDITA C. L., GOYAL R. K., LAL, S. and SEN A K. (1939) Experimental Production of Epidemic Dropsy in Man. *Indian Med Gaz* 74, 193
- EDITORIAL (1935) Epidemic Dropsy. *Indian Med Gaz* 70, 511
- KAMATH A N. (1928) Report on the Investigation of an Outbreak of Epidemic Dropsy. *Indian Med Gaz* 63, 555
- LAL, R B. et al. (1937-41) Investigations into the Epidemiology of Epidemic Dropsy. *Indian J Med Res* 25 163 177 215 233 and 239 26 213 27, 191 and 207 28 163 29 157 167 361 813 and 839
- SARKAR S I. (1926) Katakari Oil Poisoning. *Indian Med Gaz* 61, 62
- SEN GUPTA P C. and NAPIER I F. (1940) Hematologic Changes in Epidemic Dropsy. *Indian J Med Res* 28 197

## LATHYRISM

DEFINITION	PAGE
HISTORICAL	812
EPIDEMIOLOGY	812
ÆTIOLOGY	813
PATHOLOGY	814
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	814
<i>Prodromal symptoms—Onset—Gait</i>	814
PREVENTION AND TREATMENT	815
PROGNOSIS	815

**Definition.**—Lathyrism is a syndrome of which the most prominent clinical feature is muscular weakness and later spastic paraplegia, it occurs, especially during times of drought and famine, amongst certain population groups whose staple diet is a vetch *Lathyrus*, in India, Spain, and elsewhere.

**Historical.**—The condition was recognized as a dietetic disease by the early Indian medical writers and later by Hippocrates. In the 17th century it was definitely associated with the eating of the vetch *Lathyrus*, from which it derived its name and in some European countries edicts were proclaimed forbidding its use. In India the condition was reported early in the last century by several British physicians and since then outbreaks have occurred frequently.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The disease has appeared in several European continental countries, including France, Italy, and Spain (in Barcelona, Cuenca, Ciudad-Real, Toledo, Valladolid and Madrid provinces), in North Africa, Abyssinia, Iran, and in India (the Central and United Provinces, Central Indian States and Bihar, in particular). In North Rewah (Central India) in 1921 it was estimated that 6 per cent of the total population of about a million people were affected. There have been a number of recent reports of the condition in Spain (Jiménez Díaz *et al*, 1943, and Martínez Almeida, 1943).

The persons most affected are males between the ages of 15 and 30, that is, during the most active period of their lives.

It is a disease of famine years and it occurs almost exclusively amongst members of the lowest economic classes, but the individuals affected are often well nourished, since the vetch provides a diet of high caloric value.



## PATHOLOGY

Degenerative changes have been reported in the crossed and direct pyramidal tracts and in the column of Goll. The cell content of the cerebro-spinal fluid is normal but an increase of protein has been reported.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The condition appears usually after the patient has been on the uncriminated diet for two or more months. Prodromal symptoms consisting of numbness tingling or formication occasionally occur. The onset is usually very sudden and may be associated with fever and chills, or it may follow exhaustion and exposure. It seems questionable whether the fever which has been reported in certain cases is part of the syndrome or whether it is the precipitating factor. The common history is that, after a period of rest following a day's work or after a more prolonged period in bed as a result of illness, the patient finds that he is unable to rise or that his muscles are so weak and tremulous that he can walk only with difficulty. The maximum disability is usually reached within a few days, the fever and constitutional symptoms may subside but there is seldom any regression in the nervous and muscular involvement which is usually permanent.



Figure 194 The four grades of disability occurring in lathyrism

The fully developed clinical picture is that of a spastic paraplegia. The knee and ankle jerks are exaggerated and there is ankle clonus and extensor plantar response. The feet are extended, the knees flexed and the legs adducted in varying degrees. The muscles of the lower limbs may become wasted through disuse. The upper limbs usually escape entirely and in fact often show good development on account of the extra work thrown on to them. The sensation and the sphincters are usually unaffected but the sexual powers may be enfeebled.

The gait is characteristic. The degree of disability depends on the extent of the damage. The four grades shown in figure 194 are recognized. In the first grade of disability the patient walks stiffly on the balls of his toes, tilting the pelvis to raise the feet from the ground. In the second grade in order to compensate for complete absence of active flexion he has to tilt his pelvis so much that it is difficult to maintain balance without a stick. In the third grade, the adduction is so marked that each circumduction of the leg ends in a scissor leg position which necessitates the even support of two sticks to keep the patient erect. In the last grade the patient is unable to walk upright but progresses in a sitting posture by

taking the body-weight in the hands and balls of the feet, and shuffling the buttock forward

#### PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

All measures to discourage the use of *Lathyrus* as a staple diet should be taken. These will amount to anti-famine measures by irrigation schemes and by a better distribution of other staple foods during periods of drought, for example. Much has been achieved on these lines in recent years in India. When the toxic substance and/or the hypothetical antagonistic substance have been identified it will probably be possible to take more specific measures but it has been shown that a high protein diet largely of animal origin will usually arrest though not reverse, the pathogenic processes. There is little evidence that any improvement can be obtained by treatment, when parosis has developed.

#### PROGNOSIS

The vital functions are not involved and the expectation of life is not directly affected but the patients who are mostly of the uneducated agricultural class, become dependent on charity for their subsistence.

## INFANTILE CIRRHOSIS OF THE LIVER\*

INTRODUCTION	PAGE
EPIDEMIOLOGY	816
<i>Incidence</i>	816
<i>Geographical distribution</i>	817
<i>Age sex, race and social status</i>	817
<i>Heredity</i>	817
ÆTIOLOGY	817
PATHOLOGY	817
<i>Blood picture</i>	817
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	817
DIAGNOSIS	818
PREVENTION	818
TREATMENT	818
<i>Drugs</i>	818
PROGNOSIS	819

**Introduction**—In private practice, more than in hospital practice, in eastern India it is not uncommon to encounter children with a definite enlargement of the liver for which no obvious cause is found. The enlargement is progressive and painless and is often associated with irregular fever and digestive disturbances. If the condition is not treated early, or if it fails to respond to treatment clinical evidence of cirrhosis of the liver soon appears and the child invariably dies.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

**Incidence**—Hospital reports in India do not usually reflect the true state of affairs as parents will not bring their children to hospital. In a series of 1100 children investigated by Rao (1934) in Vizagapatam enlargement of the liver was found in 158 cases of which 28 (or 2.5 per cent) were due to cirrhosis. Manson Bahr (1940) gives the figure 1,748 for the number of deaths in Calcutta between 1891 and 1893 and recent Calcutta Corporation reports give an average of a little over 300 deaths a year. It is more common in urban than in rural populations.

---

\* By Dr R. N. Chaudhuri M.B. Cal. MRCP. Edin. Officiating professor of Tropical Medicine Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine.

**Geographical distribution**—The disease is particularly common on the eastern side of India in Bengal, Madras and Mysore but cases are reported from Bihar, Orissa and the Central and United Provinces. It is not seen in hill stations.

**Age, sex, race, and social status**—Children between the ages of six months to two years (the dentition period) are most commonly affected but the disease is sometimes seen in older children.

Children of both sexes are affected but possibly there is a slight male predominance. It is popularly said that the first male child after a series of females is likely to be affected, the explanation might be that it is the most pampered child who will be likely to have artificial and unsuitable food pressed upon it.

The disease has a remarkable predilection for the Hindu community, and is most common amongst orthodox Hindus who are strict vegetarians. In the series of 1748 cases referred to above 1616 were in Hindus and Narayanaiah and Tirunavurthi (1939) reported a series of 445 cases in which none were either Mohammedans or Anglo Indians.

The vast majority of the children come from middle class families.

**Heredity**—There is no strong indication of an hereditary tendency, it is usual for several children in the same family to suffer and each reaches the critical age.

#### ÆTIOLOGY

This is obscure. Inherited predisposition and defective feeding are the most important factors. Early marriage, repeated child births and an ill balanced dietary affect both the mother and the child's health. The mother is unable to nurse the child properly and artificial feeding is started early. This is usually badly done, rice, sweets, fats (buffalo milk) are given, the vitamins are not considered and the protein intake is low. The child suffers from gastro-intestinal upset and the toxins that are absorbed are not properly dealt with by the liver. Possibly an inborn error renders the liver cells peculiarly vulnerable to toxins and/or dietary (protein) deficiency and they undergo premature degenerative changes.

#### PATHOLOGY

As a result of the toxic action and/or disordered metabolism there is fatty infiltration and later the liver cells become necrosed and are absorbed. The healthy cells multiply to replace the loss and there is also a secondary fibrotic change commencing in the centre of the lobule. The fibrous tissue develops within the lobule between the cells (intercellular cirrhosis). With the regeneration of the liver cells there is no formation of new biliary channels. In the advanced stage portal cirrhosis supervenes with the resultant ascites and jaundice.

**Blood Picture**—There is a very distinct microcytic anemia and a pronounced leucocytosis. The latter is usually between 15 and 20 thousand per c mm but the normal proportions of the differential count are maintained.

#### SYMPTATOLOGY

The onset is insidious. During the prodromal stage the child although appearing well nourished, becomes peevish, irritable and refuses food. He

is constipated, the stools are pale and pasty, or muddy. There is flatulent distension of the abdomen. The child does not sleep well, and has periodic attacks of low fever.

The symptoms may be absent or may be overlooked, until the liver becomes large. The liver enlarges progressively, it is firm to the touch, the margin is sharp, and it is not tender. The spleen is slightly enlarged. The earlier signs and symptoms become more developed and then the conjunctivæ become icteric.

Later, the liver becomes harder and contracts jaundice and the constitutional symptoms increase, and there may be high irregular fever. Gradually, all the signs of portal obstruction become manifest, ascites develops and the child dies of cholæmia, or of some complication, such as bronchopneumonia.

The course of the disease is variable, but on the average it lasts about 18 months, and, unless early treatment is instituted, it is always fatal.

### DIAGNOSIS

Early diagnosis is important if the child's life is to be saved. Peculiarities, irritability and loss of appetite in a plump child whose liver appears to be painlessly enlarging should be viewed with suspicion, particularly if there is a family history of children dying between the ages of 6 months and two years. A leucocytosis will add to the suspicion.

Other forms of liver enlargement must be excluded, namely hepatitis or abscess causes pain and tenderness and are uncommon in a young child, the absence of parasites, the leucocytosis, and a negative aldehyde test will exclude malaria and kala-azar, leukemia and von Jaksch's disease will be excluded by the blood count, Hodgkin's disease by the absence of glands, rickets by the absence of the bony changes, and congenital syphilis by the absence of stigmata and by a negative Wassermann reaction.

### PREVENTION

The measures consist of

- (a) Avoidance of endemic localities if possible
- (b) Spacing pregnancies and general attention to the health of the procreative mother
- (c) Ante-natal and post-natal care
- (d) Attention to the infant's diet—continuance of breast feeding with suitable additions to the diet especially vitamins; a properly designed dietary regime if artificial feeding has to be resorted to and careful avoidance of excess of fat and carbohydrates.

### TREATMENT

Diet is the most important part of the treatment. Excess of fat being detrimental to the liver function, this element should be omitted or cut down to the minimum. Carbohydrates are given in an easily assimilated form. Extra protein is given in the form of white of egg, casein, dal and later fish and chicken, if religious considerations allow it. Vitamin concentrates particularly of the B group in the form of nutrient yeast (marmite or vegex), should be given. Skimmed milk and fruit juice should form the basis of the diet, as the condition improves, whole milk can be added slowly.

**Drugs**—Grey powder, with pulvis specacuanhæ et opii, pulvis rhei compositus, and sodium bicarbonate, given two or three times a day in suit-

able doses for the first 10 to 15 days will usually improve the bowel condition. A vegetable cholagogue e.g. *Kalmeg* liquidum may be given in doses of 20 to 30 drops in water, or a bile preparation.

Otherwise treatment is symptomatic, iron may be required for the anaemia and diuretics with paracentesis for the ascites. Intercurrent infections, such as scarlet, should be suitably treated.

A change to a non endemic area especially a hill climate may be advisable.

#### PROGNOSIS

If rigid dietetic treatment is instituted early, the life of the child may be saved. If later, however, signs of portal cirrhosis, ascites and jaundice appear, the outlook is usually hopeless.

The earlier the age at which the signs appear, the worse the prognosis and a history of the disease in the family is a bad prognostic portent.

#### REFERENCES

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| MANNON BAIR P (1940)                            | <i>Manson's Tropical Diseases</i> Eleventh edition<br>Casell & Co London                       |
| NARAYANAKRISHN K and TIRU-<br>MURTHI T S (1939) | A study of the epidemiology of infantile cirrhosis of the liver. <i>Ind an J Pediat.</i> 6, 85 |
| RAO M V R (1934)                                | Studies on infantile biliary cirrhosis part III<br><i>Ibid</i> 1, 166                          |

# ANÆMIA IN THE TROPICS

INTRODUCTION	PAGE
	820
NORMAL HÆMOGLOBIN LEVELS	821
<i>Normal standards of healthy native populations—Data for sub-standard populations</i>	821
THE CAUSES OF ANÆMIA IN THE TROPICS	822
<i>Classification of anæmia</i>	822
Table	822
<i>The specific causes of anæmia in the tropics</i>	822
ANÆMIA DUE TO INFECTIONS	822
<i>Malaria</i>	822
<i>Ancylostomiasis—Kala azar—Oroya fever—Trypanosomiasis—</i>	826
<i>Acute febrile conditions—Dysentery—Other helminthic infections</i>	826
ANÆMIA DUE TO DIETARY DEFICIENCIES	828
<i>Tropical macrocytic anæmia</i>	828
History — Etiology — Epidemiology — Pathology — Blood picture — Gastric acidity — Symptomatology — Diagnosis — Prevention and Treatment — Prognosis	831
<i>Spurce</i>	832
ANÆMIA DUE TO CONGENITAL DEFECTS	832
<i>Sickle celled anæmia</i>	832
<i>Cooley's anæmia</i>	833

**Introduction**—It seems desirable that this subject should be given a separate chapter if for no other reason than to emphasize the facts that in the tropics as in temperate climates anæmia is a symptom and not a disease that with the possible exception of fever it is the most common symptom of diseases particularly associated with tropical conditions, but that there is little evidence that the tropical climate *per se* is ever directly responsible for anæmia in the human subject living on an adequate diet.

Surprisingly little attention was paid to this subject prior to the hæmatological renaissance of the third decade of the present century, a revival of interest that was initiated by the introduction of liver in the treatment of pernicious anæmia. Previous to this it was generally assumed that the hæmoglobin level of both the native of and the sojourner or settler in tropical countries was much below that of residents in temperate climates; it was vaguely assumed that this was due to the 'depressing' effects of heat but no attempt was made to measure the extent of this tropical anæmia or even to confirm its existence. When in 1932 the

present writer was asked to investigate for the Indian Tea Association the cause of gross anemia amongst certain groups of tea-estate labourers, he failed to find any reliable data regarding the normal blood levels of not only the population groups with which he was concerned, but of any other tropical population groups. In this matter, 'tropical medicine' was only a little way behind medicine in temperate countries, where Wintrobe, Haden and Osgood in America, Wits and Price-Jones in England, and others in these and other countries were trying to clear up the confusion that existed regarding normal hemoglobin standards. This confusion was due mainly to the inadequacy of the apparatus used for estimating hemoglobin and to the unsatisfactory practice of expressing results as a percentage of a variable and unknown 'normal' standard, so that the results of different workers were not comparable. However, during the last decade figures from many sources have become available, some of which are quoted below.

TABLE XXVII  
*Normal Standards of Healthy Native Populations*

Group	Subjects & Locality	Sex	No. in series	Mean and standard Deviation	Authority
1	Students Bombay	M	121	15.37 $\pm$ 0.96	Gokher <i>et al</i> 1937
2	Clerks and doctors Calcutta	M	30	15.70 $\pm$ 0.81	Napier and Das Gupta 1936
3	Students Bombay	F	101	12.99 $\pm$ 1.10	Gokher <i>et al</i> 1938
4	Middle class age 14-30 Calcutta	F	123	12.63 $\pm$ 1.01	Napier Edwards & Das Gupta 1941
5	— " Britain	M	—	15.60	Whitby & Britton 1939
6	— " Britain	F	—	13.70	Whitby & Britton 1939
7	Eastern U S A	M	61	15.80	Wintrobe 1933
8	Eastern U S A	F	73	14.00	Wintrobe 1933

### NORMAL HÆMOGLOBIN LEVELS

It has been found that in almost every instance, whenever anemia-producing infections and gross dietary deficiencies can be excluded, the normal hemoglobin levels in the different age and sex groups in tropical countries are not significantly lower than those of the corresponding groups

TABLE XXVIII  
*Data from Sub-standard Populations*

Group	Subjects	No. in series	Mean & Standard Deviation
1	Mangalore mine recruits men	47	13.74 $\pm$ 1.79
2	— " workers " "	49	12.95 $\pm$ 1.72
3	Tea-estate A	20	12.63 $\pm$ 1.41
4	— " B " "	25	12.60 $\pm$ 1.83
5	— " C " "	24	11.83 $\pm$ 1.67
6	— " D " women	25	10.40 $\pm$ 1.73
7	— " D " "	20	10.80 $\pm$ 2.30

in temperate climates. In the case of the European sojourner in India, we found that the normal mean was distinctly higher than that of the standards given in British and American textbooks, for example the normal for men was about 17 grammes of hemoglobin per 100 c mm (124 per cent on the Haldane scale).

On the other hand, we found that in certain labour force groups much



lower normal levels of haemoglobin often existed. Figures are given from a manganese mine where malaria was endemic and from ten-estate labour forces where both hookworm infection and malaria were prevalent, the subjects were ordinary workers selected at random after the grossly (clinically) anæmic individuals had been excluded. The manganese mine recruits were mostly under-nourished but showed no heavy parasitic infection.

### THE CAUSES OF ANÆMIA IN THE TROPICS

From the data given above it will be clear that climate *per se* does not cause anæmia. What then are the causes of anæmia in the tropics? This anæmia varies in its degree and nature in much the same way as does the anæmia that occurs in temperate climates, and it is susceptible to classification along the same lines.

**Classification of anæmia**—The causes of anæmia will be appreciated best if one remembers that the red blood corpuscles are like paper currency, they are continuously being put into circulation, they circulate for a time, and eventually they wear out and have to be withdrawn. In the circulation of the average man there are about twenty-five million million red cells and the duration of the life of a red cell is probably on the average about 75 days, which means that in order to maintain the circulating red cells at a constant level about three hundred and thirty-three thousand million new red cells have to be produced by the haemopoietic tissues daily to replace the three hundred and thirty-three thousand million obsolete ones that disintegrate or are otherwise withdrawn and disposed of by the hemolytic tissues. Production and destruction have to be balanced and any blood loss from the circulation has to be made good. The body is capable of considerable adaptation but if there is failure of production, if there is any considerable loss of blood or if there is excessive destruction, anæmia must eventually result, therefore anæmia may be caused by (a) errors of erythropoiesis, (b) loss of circulating blood, or (c) errors of erythrolysis, and it will be convenient to classify the causes of anæmia under these three major headings.

The following table (Napier 1936) gives a pathogenetic classification of the anæmias in general with examples of recognized syndromes in which the anæmia of each particular group occurs. Many of these examples are cosmopolitan diseases but wherever appropriate a tropical disease is included.

**Specific causes of anæmia in the tropics**—These are (a) infections, (b) dietary deficiencies, or more commonly a combination of these two causes and (c) congenital defects. It will be convenient to consider the subject under these three headings with the full appreciation of the fact that the division is an artificial one.

In the appropriate places in this book, reference has usually been made to the blood picture in the diseases in which anæmia is a prominent symptom, but it will be worth reconsidering the subject here.

### ANÆMIA DUE TO INFECTIONS

**Malaria**—This is probably the most important source of anæmia in the tropics. The most obvious cause of the anæmia is the destruction of the red cells by the parasite, that is, it is a hemolytic type of anæmia, due to the error of erythrolysis, III A (iv) in the above classification, but there

TABLL XXIV  
Classification of the Anemias

Main groups	Sub-groups	Examples of syndrome	General character of blood picture, etc	Principles of treatment
I	A <i>Aplastic or hypoplastic of toxic or mechanical origin, due to—</i> (i) unknown causes, (ii) (a) bacterial or other parasitic toxins, (b) metabolic toxins, (iii) chemical and physical poisons, (iv) mechanical interference with blood formation, (v) exhaustion of the bone-marrow	Idiopathic aplastic anemia Anemia of many acute and chronic infections, including tropical diseases, e.g. relapsing fever and Malta fever Anemia of nephritis Anemia caused by benzol, lead, radium, phenolates, radium and x rays (c) carcinoma, thymic-Schistocera disease Anemia of kala-azar Terminal condition in many hyperplastic anemias	Usually, normocytic normochromic reticulocytes—few van den Bergh—neg urobilin—absent	Remove cause Transfuse to tide over critical period, and in extreme cases repeat periodically to supply blood needs
	B <i>Nutritional dysplasias—</i> (i) Iron deficiency (a) Actual (b) Relative (c) Failure of absorption (ii) Deficiency of hemopoietic principle (a) Absence of intrinsic factor (b) Absence of extrinsic factor a) Actual b) Relative or conditioned (c) Failure of absorption (d) Failure of storage (e) Failure of utilization (iii) Deficiency of vitamin C	Hypochromic anemia of infants, invalids and others Hypochromic anemia of pregnancy and hookworm infection Simple achrohydric anemia Addisonian pernicious anemia Idiopathic tropical macrocytic anemia Tropical macrocytic anemia of pregnancy Anemia of sprue Anemia of liver disease Achromic anemia Hypochromic anemia of vitamin C deficiency	Macrocytic hypochromic reticulocytes—few van den Bergh—neg normoblasts present urobilin—no increase Macrocytic hypochromic (a) reticulocytes + normoblasts van den Bergh + achrohydria (b) van den Bergh—neg and reticulocytes—few (c) urobilin—no increase iso or hypochlorhydria	Supply excess of iron by mouth Ferrous sulphate, gr xviii, daily for three weeks Supply deficiency by giving liver extract (a) Refined liver extract parenterally, or liver by mouth (b) Crude liver extract and marmite (c) Liver extract parenterally

ERRORS  
OF  
PATHO-  
GENESIS

TABLE XXV—(Contd.)  
4 Classification of the Anemias

Main groups	Sub-groups	Examples of syndrome	General character of blood picture, etc	Principles of treatment
II  LOSS OF BLOOD FROM CIRCULATION TRUE SECONDARY ANEMIA	Due to hemorrhage, external from mucous surfaces, or into serous cavities			
	A Following external or internal injury	Severed artery, ruptured spleen, etc	The blood picture will depend on whether the hemorrhage is acute or chronic <i>Acute</i> normocytic normochromic reticulocytes + + <i>Chronic</i> microcytic hypochromic reticulocytes + or ± van den Bergh—negative normoblasts present urobilin—no increase	Stop bleeding and remove cause where possible  Transfusion  Supply iron in excess and give good protein and vitamin diet
	B Associated with disease of tissues	Hemorrhoids, gastric ulcer, hemiplegia, dysentery—infective, bacillary or metazoal, vesical schistosomiasis		
	C Associated with hemorrhagic states	Scurvy, snake (raper) bite		
III  ERRORS OF PATHOLOGY	D Associated with blood sucking parasites	Hookworm, hirudians		
	A Conditions affecting red cells and making them more susceptible to normal lytic processes (i) Abnormal red cell structure (ii) Abnormal physical condition of red cells, e.g. spherocytes (iii) Effect of toxins, chemical poisons, etc. (iv) Parasitization	Sickle-cell anemia Achlorure jaundice, paroxysmal hemoglobinuria Lead poisoning, arsenical drug poisoning Malaria and agria fever	Normocytic or slightly macrocytic normochromic reticulocytes + + van den Bergh + + urobilin + + increased fragility of red cells	When known and when possible remove cause, e.g. malaria parasites by specific treatment. Provide hamopoietic substances in food, protein, vitamins and liver fraction
	B Conditions causing overaction of the erythrolytic tissues	Chronic malarial splenomegaly, possibly kala-azar	ditto decreased fragility of red cells	Remove cause in chronic splenomegaly remove spleen

is evidence that the anaemia is disproportionate to the blood parasitization, so that some additional explanation for the anaemia must be found. Certain observations suggest that there is a toxin which depresses blood formation as long as the malarial infection is uncontrolled, so that it must also be classified as a toxic hypoplastic anaemia, I A (iii) (a) in table XXIX.

Further, when there is very extensive red cell destruction, especially if the patient has been repeatedly subjected to these attacks, the blood-forming material stored in the body becomes exhausted. Most of the iron is stored and reutilized but some of the other haemopoietic elements apparently need replenishing, in such cases, a macrocytic anaemia sometimes develops which does not improve spontaneously, as the anaemia of malaria usually does once the infection is under control, but responds immediately with a sharp reticulocytosis when liver extract is given. This would bring the anaemia into the group of relative or 'conditioned' nutritional dysplasias, I B (ii) (b) (β).

It is frequently stated that the anaemia of chronic malaria is a hypochromic microcytic anaemia. While the writer believes that this is largely a mis-conception through the frequent association of chronic malaria with other anaemia-producing conditions, e.g. hookworm disease and dietary deficiency, there is one possible source of iron loss that should not be overlooked, namely, the fixation of haematin in the form of insoluble haemazoin pigment. It is therefore possible that in some persons on a low-iron intake this source of loss may upset the iron balance and introduce an iron deficiency element into the anaemia, I B (i) (b).

Finally, in certain persons subjected to malarial infection for many years through constant stimulation, there is an overgrowth of the haemolytic tissues in the body, e.g. in the spleen, leading to a constant excessive destruction of red cells, this places the anaemia in group III B.

One might expect the anaemia of blackwater fever to show an iron deficiency element in view of the loss of haemoglobin that occurs through the kidneys, apparently however the amount thus lost, if it is insufficient to do irreparable damage to the kidney and kill the patient, does not constitute a serious iron loss, so that this element in the anaemia is overshadowed and a microcytic anaemia that often necessitates the administration of liver extract (the 'conditioned' nutritional dysplasia mentioned above) is the more usual result of a blackwater fever attack.

It is thus apparent that the anaemia of malaria is very complex and it is perhaps not surprising that writers have been reluctant to commit themselves to a clear cut statement as to what is the characteristic anaemia of this disease.

In the malarial attack in the partially immune there is often little evidence of anaemia which suggests that some immunity to the malarial 'toxin' develops. If such a person is given specific treatment for the malaria immediately, the anaemia can usually be ignored. However, in the non-immune adult and in children anaemia is fairly constant.

The degree of the anaemia will naturally vary with the circumstances. In a severe malignant tertian (*falciparum*) attack that is not brought rapidly under control, the red cells may be reduced by as much as two millions per cubic millimetre in a few days or in a blackwater fever attack in a few hours, but the reduction is usually far more gradual and seldom so extreme.

In the well nourished person with an acute malarial attack, return to normal is usually spontaneous once the red cell destruction and the toxin production ceases. When in such a case, the hæmoglobin fails to return to normal and there is a persistent reticulocytosis, an early relapse of malaria may usually be anticipated, the recognition of this residual anaemia is sometimes of diagnostic value when malaria parasites are scanty. In the ill nourished and debilitated it may be necessary to supply some of the blood forming elements in the form of liver extract, marmite and even iron to ensure an early return to normal. If the patient has been subjected to repeated attacks over a long period, the hæmolytic tissues are hypertrophied and disorganized and, in order to adjust the dyscrasia and balance hæmopoiesis whole liver principle (crude liver extract) may have to be given as in the previous case. Finally, in extreme cases it may be advisable to remove or put out of action a large portion of the reticulo endothelial system by removing the spleen or tying the splenic artery.

**Ancylostomiasis**—This is probably the second most important source of anaemia in the tropics. The cause is almost entirely blood loss from the bowel as a result of the profligate blood sucking by the adult worm, this makes it a true chronic secondary anaemia, II D, which is usually markedly microcytic and hypochromic. In heavy infections, no amount of dietary iron is sufficient to compensate the iron loss but in moderate infections the loss of blood is such that it could be compensated if the individual were on a good iron intake but when the subject is taking a diet containing only the minimal iron requirements this extra loss is sufficient to upset the balance and produce an anaemia that can be classed as a conditioned iron deficiency anaemia, I B (i) (b).

Even when an excess of iron is given however there are some instances in which the hæmoglobin level does not reach normal, so that there is possibly a toxic element also in this anaemia which would place it in group I A (ii) (a). The degree of anaemia may be very extreme, and there are few conditions other than ancylostomiasis and hæmorrhage that will produce a microcytic hypochromic anaemia of this degree, when the hæmoglobin is as low as 2 grammes per 100 ccm in a patient obviously not in *extremis* this infection should always be suspected.

Return to the normal hæmoglobin level follows adequate iron administration even without worm removal except in the few instances referred to above. The worms must however be removed or the anaemia will return (see **ANCYLOSTOMIASIS**).

**Kala azar**—The most striking pathological reaction in this infection is a very considerable proliferation of the reticulo endothelial tissue throughout the body. This proliferation is very pronounced in the bone marrow and in that confined space it crowds out and depresses the activity of, the hæmopoietic tissue this places the anaemia in group I A (iv).

On the other hand the activity of the macrophages is stimulated so that they phagocytose red cells actively and excessively. The fact that the van den Bergh reaction is usually positive and that there is a distinct reticulocyte increase suggests that this second cause of the anaemia group III B, is not a negligible one. Other possible causes of anaemia in kala azar are toxic depression of the bone marrow, and liver dysfunction.

Under specific treatment for kala azar, the reticulocytes return to normal and there is a steady improvement in the blood picture, but the

normal may not be reached for several weeks. The administration of hæmatinics does not usually cause any material increase in the rate of improvement.

**Oroya fever**—The anemia in this condition parallels that of malaria and is mainly due to the parasitization of the red cells; however the mechanism is slightly different as the bartonella infection does not apparently cause the red cell to rupture and disintegrate but damages it so that it is phagocytosed prematurely. Thus anemia is thus classified as III A (ii).

**Trypanosomiasis**—Anemia is not usually marked in the early stages of the disease, and any anemia that occurs is probably of toxic origin. In the later stages in the native patients it is often very striking and is certainly mainly nutritional in origin. This class of patient becomes lethargic and indifferent to his dietary needs and lacks the energy to work to earn his food.

**Acute febrile conditions**—The mechanism of the anemia is not very clear in most of these conditions though a degree of anaemia is common. One must conclude that the anemia is mainly due to a toxic hypoplasia I A (ii) (a).

In the *typhus fevers* anemia is not usually prominent but it may be considerable after a severe attack of Rocky Mountain spotted fever; this is probably due to the extensive hæmorrhages that are likely to occur and it can be placed in group II C.

In *yellow fever* Weil's disease and *relapsing fever* again anemia is not usually prominent. The jaundice that occurs is not hæmolytic in origin but hepatic and it is due to the failure of the damaged liver cells in disposing of the products of the normal quota of destroyed red cells. Such anemia as occurs must also be toxic in origin.

In *brucellosis* the anemia may be considerable in proportion to the severity of the disease. This suggests that there is a specific action by the bacterial toxins on the hæmopoietic tissues and the anemia must be grouped as I A (ii) (a).

**Dysentery**—Any severe dysentery whether it is caused by bacteria, protozoa, or metazoa may produce an anemia of the true secondary type that is due to loss of blood II B. This of course may be acute but it is more frequently subacute or chronic.

In the later stages of these infections the anemia is due mainly to malabsorption; it is a nutritional dysplasia I B either sub group (i) (c) or (ii) (c), usually both elements being apparent.

In chronic amœbiasis it has been suggested that the anemia is due to toxic absorption from the intestinal tract but the evidence for this is not entirely satisfactory, this would place it in group I A (ii).

The anemia of amœbic hepatitis and liver abscess is often very marked, it is usually normocytic or macrocytic. It can be classified as I B (ii) (d). As the bowel condition improves the blood picture returns slowly to normal but the rate of improvement is accelerated considerably by the administration of liver extract and in some cases this must be considered an essential part of the treatment.

**Other helminthic infections**—*Diphyllobothrium latum* has been reputed to cause a pernicious anemia like anemia but the causal relation

ship of this worm to the anæmia is still in question. However, a fatty-acid that is capable of causing a macrocytic anæmia in experimental animals has been isolated from this worm, it is therefore possible that this anæmia is a hypoplastic dysplasia of toxic origin, I A 121 1a)

The schistosomes produce an anæmia of the secondary type by causing blood loss in the bowel and bladder but there is evidence that they also are capable of causing some anæmia by their 'toxins' in the earlier stages of the infection, and in the later stages by the damage to the bowel, which will cause failure of absorption of essential hemopoietic substances, and to the liver which will cause failure of their storage.

## ANÆMIA DUE TO DIETARY DEFICIENCIES

### *Tropical Macrocytic Anæmia*

**History**—In 1929 under the title malignant anæmia of the tropics Mackie drew attention to an anæmia which he had observed twenty years earlier, that was common amongst both men and women in Bombea. Two years later Wills (1931) showed that a macrocytic anæmia which was particularly common amongst pregnant women but which also occurred in non-pregnant women was curable by the oral administration of antolysed yeast (marmite). She called the condition 'tropical macrocytic anæmia' and considered that it was primarily a nutritional condition.

These two writers were obviously describing the same condition. Mackie who was writing his paper from notes that he had made many years before did not give much in the way of hematological data except regarding the degree of the anæmia and the statement that in about half the cases the colour index was above unity, but Wills claimed that her anæmia was a macrocytic non-hemolytic anæmia.

Napier (1936) pointed out that all macrocytic anæmias occurring in the tropics and responding to marmite or liver extract were not the same and that there was a hemolytic type of macrocytic anæmia that was usually associated with a large spleen possibly of malarial origin. Farley and coworkers (1938) reporting observations in Macedonia suggested the name nutritional neurotoxic anæmia and confirmed the observation that there was a hemolytic and a non-hemolytic type. It was shown that this anæmia did not respond in the way that pernicious anæmia does—to moderate doses of purified liver extract *et al.* indermin (Napier 1933 and Wills and Evans 1938) but later it was found that there may be a brisk response to large doses of anabæmin (Napier *et al.* 1938 and Fox and Koudi 1939). Subsequently workers in many tropical countries described macrocytic forms of anæmia that were distinguishable from pernicious anæmia on the one hand and sprue on the other.

### ÆTIOLOGY

It is possible that in a few instances tropical macrocytic anæmia (TMA) is a pure dietary deficiency, but there is strong evidence that, in the majority of cases, it is a 'conditioned deficiency' in which bowel disorders, malaria, and other infections play a part. The deficient dietary substance has not been identified, but it is associated with the vitamin B-complex and protein, it is probably not a single fraction.

In tropical macrocytic anæmia hemolytic, there is always a history of repeated attacks of malaria in childhood and adolescence, and there is usually a large spleen. Apparently there is overaction of the hemolytic tissues which destroy red cells in excess, these have to be replaced, so that there is a greater demand for hemopoietic substances than can be met by the low dietary intake of the patient and 'relative' nutritional anæmia develops. The iron is recovered and reutilized, so that the anæmia is of the macrocytic type.

Tropical macrocytic anæmia of pregnancy occurs amongst women of the poor-dietary classes usually with a previous history of dysentery and/or

malaria they are mostly vegetarians whose protein intake is low and though a particularly low vitamin B complex intake has not always been demonstrated a marked improvement sometimes follows the administration of this vitamin in the form of marmite. However, the absence of any appreciable response in the presence of the fetus and the rapid recovery in all moderately severe cases after its removal at term or prematurely, suggest the possible action of a pregnancy toxin producing a 'conditioned' deficiency.

Another suggestion is that it is a 'relative' deficiency like that known to occur in the case of iron deficiency in pregnant women but the positions are not parallel because the infantile mortality is very high in TMA, suggesting that the fetus also suffers from a deficiency, whereas in iron-deficiency anaemia the infant takes all the iron it requires and the infantile mortality is low.

Thus to summarize, tropical macrocytic anaemia may be (i) a pure dietary deficiency (ii) it may be due to a combination of a poor diet and poor absorption, when it is associated with definite bowel syndromes such as sprue or para-sprue, (iii) it may be due to a combination of a poor diet and repeated malarial infections or (iv) it may be due to the super addition of pregnancy to any of these three causes or to any combination of them.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Since this condition was first described several instances of the pregnancy form have been reported from temperate countries but it is nevertheless essentially a disease of backward tropical countries. It has been shown to be prevalent in India, Malaya, tropical Africa, the West Indies and South America and will probably be found to occur in every tropical country where it is sought.

It occurs mainly in the poor economic classes of the natives or settlers in tropical countries. It may occur at almost any age, but it is more common in late adolescence and early adult life, and partly because of the association with pregnancy it is more common amongst women than men but it occurs in both sexes. It was more frequently observed in first and second pregnancies.

The condition shows seasonal variations. It was more prevalent in the second half of the year in India; this appeared to be correlated with the lack of fresh vegetables and fish during the hot weather and monsoon (April to October).

#### PATHOLOGY

Our knowledge of the morbid anatomy of this condition is very poor and in the few post-mortem examinations that have been performed the associated diseases clouded the picture.

**Blood picture**—The anaemia may be extreme and figures as low as 500 000 red cells per cmm and 2 grammes of hæmoglobin per 100 ccm of blood are sometimes recorded, though in the majority of cases the red cell count will not be much below 2 000 000 per cmm. The red cells are macrocytic, usually between 100 and 150  $\mu$ , the mean corpuscular hæmoglobin between 30 and 40  $\gamma\gamma$  and the mean corpuscular hæmoglobin concentration between 33 and 37 per cent, so that the anaemia is ordinarily a normochromic one. The Price-Jones curve is shifted to the right, but tends to retain its normal shape and is not usually a low spread out curve.



like that of pernicious anæmia. Polychromasia and anisocytosis are usually observed but are not particularly marked. Normoblasts may be found but not megaloblasts.

Reticulocytes will average about 5 per cent in the hæmolytic form, but will not be above 1 or 2 per cent in the other forms.

The leucocyte count is usually normal or slightly raised. The weighted mean of the modified Arneeth count is below 20. There may be a slight relative increase of lymphocytes.

In the non hæmolytic forms the van den Bergh test will be negative but in the hæmolytic forms the indirect van den Bergh test will show 10 milligrammes or more of bilirubin per 100 c.cm., and in severe cases the direct van den Bergh test may also be positive.

The sternal puncture does not usually show the presence of true hæmoglobinized megaloblasts (Ehrlich's) but there is a considerable increase in the percentage of basophilic non hæmoglobinized primitive red cells with finely stippled lightly staining nuclei often referred to as megaloblasts.

Gastric acidity. Acid is usually present but in the majority of cases there is some degree of hypochlorhydria.

#### SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The clinical picture naturally varies with the degree of the dyscrasia and the symptoms are basically those of any anæmia: lack of energy, breathlessness and palpitations on slight exertion, pallor and swelling of the feet. In this condition the conjunctivæ sometimes show a subicteric tinge and the mucous membranes are a faint lemon colour rather than the alabaster white of the patient with hypochromic iron deficiency anæmia. The tongue may be sore and slightly denuded but the fiery red tongue of the pernicious anæmia patient is rare. There may be cardiac dilatation and hæmic murmurs but these are less pronounced than they would be in a case of iron deficiency anæmia of the same severity. The pulse rate is usually rapid but fever is unusual.

In the hæmolytic cases the spleen (usually) and the liver (often) are enlarged.

The typical clinical picture will usually be overshadowed by the determining (e.g. bowel disorder and/or pregnancy) or other associated conditions.

#### DIAGNOSIS

Tropical macrocytic anæmia has to be differentiated (a) from pernicious anæmia and (b) from sprue and para sprue.

(a) Pernicious anæmia which incidentally is rare in true natives of the tropics can be excluded by the presence of hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice by the absence of hæmoglobinized megaloblasts in the sternal puncture smear and by the absence of appropriate reticulocyte response to refined liver extract (anashæmin) in ordinary doses as well as by the absence of many signs and symptoms of the true pernicious anæmia syndrome e.g. the raw beef tongue (very rare in TMA) and the neurological symptoms.

(b) Sprue and para sprue can be excluded by the absence of the full syndrome of either of these conditions. It seems very probable that in many cases of sprue the anæmia has the same ætiology as that of TMA.

but TMA is not a constant part of the sprue syndrome, nor are most of the symptoms of sprue present in the majority of cases of TMA. The same is true with regard to para-sprue.

### PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

The disease does not occur amongst people living on good mixed diet containing a sufficiency (100 grammes a day) of protein and an adequate amount of all the vitamins even in the presence of the other ætiological factors.

The treatment in the uncomplicated case is the provision of the missing fraction. Marmite (veget), or some other form of nutolysed yeast should be given in generous amounts 30 grammes a day. This alone will effect a cure in a number of cases, but it is often difficult to persuade a patient to take this amount and there are cases which do not appear to respond therefore whole liver (lightly cooked) liver soup, or liver extract should be given as well. Some patients respond best to oral administration others to parenteral. Campolon\* was, in the writer's experience far better than any other liver extract for parenteral use. The refined extracts (e.g. ana-hamin) have to be given in large doses (200 mg. daily) to be effective.

When pregnancy is the determining factor marmite and liver extract should be given in generous doses but the response may be disappointing until pregnancy is terminated. In severe cases and even in moderately severe cases prior to parturition a blood transfusion will help to tide over a critical period.

In the hæmolytic form anti-malarial treatment will not usually achieve anything as the infection may not be active but reduction of the hæmolytic lysis by removal of the spleen or by tying the splenic artery often produces a considerable improvement.

### PROGNOSIS

In the pure dietary-deficiency cases this is excellent but in the 'conditioned' cases this will depend on the conditioning factor. In pregnancy if TMA is diagnosed early and treated vigorously it is often possible to carry pregnancy to full term. Later, unless the patient is very near full term, it is usually impossible to effect improvement without inducing abortion or premature labour. In very severe cases even this may be unsuccessful. The infantile mortality is very high, it was 36 per cent in one series (Napier and Edwards *loc cit*).

In the hæmolytic cases repeated relapse is common and the prognosis is on the whole not good.

**Sprue**—While the exact ætiology of this disease is still in doubt it is almost certainly not due to a specific infection. It is now usually classified as a dietary disease but the writer believes that it has its basis in an 'inborn error of metabolism'. The anaemia is probably due to malabsorption of essential blood-forming elements especially of the hæmopoietic principle. The anaemia is usually macrocytic and is classified as I B (ii) (c).

This anaemia may respond to liver extract by mouth but a much more satisfactory response is usually obtained when liver extract is given paren-

\* This is not now available and no commercial substitute appears to contain exactly the same liver fractions.

terally and in fact in some cases this seems to tip the balance and cause a complete remission of all symptoms although in the fully-developed syndrome dietetic treatment also is necessary.

### ANÆMIA DUE TO CONGENITAL DEFECTS

Sickle-celled anæmia which is confined to negroes, though most of the studies of this disease have been made in North America amongst the settled negroes in that country, is perhaps the most striking example of a tropical anæmia of congenital origin. Cooley's anæmia has less claim to be considered tropical, this disease again has been studied mainly in the United States, but nearly all the subjects have been of Mediterranean stock, Italian, Greek, Armenian, or Syrian. However, several cases have been reported from India. Reference should perhaps be made again here to sprue, this disease occurs mainly possibly only, in individuals of the racial stock of cold countries but it usually develops when the subject lives in a tropical climate.

A short description of the former two conditions will be given here.

**Sickle-celled anæmia**—This disease must not be confused with the sickle-cell trait ('sicklæmia'), a condition relatively common amongst individuals of negro stock, occurring in 73 per cent of 8453 negroes (Diggs *et al.*, 1933), but not necessarily associated with any morbidity, this trait is transmitted hereditarily as a dominant Mendelian characteristic.

Sickle-celled anæmia occurs in about 1 in 40 negroes with the sickle-cell trait. Few authentic cases have been reported in persons without some admixture of negro blood. The condition has been diagnosed during the first year of life, most patients come under observation during the first two decades and they seldom survive the third decade.

**Pathogenesis**—The sickling phenomenon is associated with 'reduction' of the hæmoglobin in the cell, *in vitro* and apparently also *in vivo*, as for example when a local anoxæmia is caused by constriction of a finger. The shape of the red cell can be restored by oxygenation of the blood. When this sickling occurs in the capillaries of the tissues, an aggregation of the sickled cells apparently results and stasis and occlusion may follow. Many of the symptoms for example the painful crises in the spleen and elsewhere, the heart changes, the secondary pulmonary changes, and the ulceration in the legs may be caused by vascular occlusion in different organs and tissues. The compensatory hyperplasia of the bone-marrow will account for the bony changes.

The hæmolytic blood picture and the anæmia are caused by the early hæmolysis of the defective sickle cells which in turn leads to the vicious cycle of anoxæmia and further sickling. This anæmia may be classified as III A (1).

**Blood picture**—The red cells are reduced to 2 000 000 or even 1 000 000 per cmm and the hæmoglobin percentage proportionately. The mean corpuscular hæmoglobin is usually within the normal limits, but the size of the cell will depend entirely on the state of oxygenation of the blood both *in vivo* and *in vitro*, for example, in pneumonia or after an extended period of local venous congestion the cells will be large but this same sample will show normal or small-sized cells after standing and/or oxygenation. The reticulocyte percentage is between 5 and 25 per cent. Normoblasts are constantly present, from 1 to 10 per 100 leucocytes. In a rapidly drawn

A sample taken without much previous venous congestion, there are usually a few sickle cells present, but if a sealed wet preparation is made the majority of the cells will develop into the sickle or some other bizarre shape within a few hours. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) will vary with the degree of oxygenation. A sample taken after a period of local venous congestion will show a very slow ESR from 1 to 4 mm in one hour, whatever the degree of anemia, but this same sample will usually show a rapid ESR up to 70 mm or more in one hour, according to the degree of anemia after oxygenation.

There is a leucocytosis with a large mononuclear increase and a leftward shift in the Arnett count.

The indirect van den Bergh reaction is strongly positive.

**Symptomatology**—The patient may suffer from a considerable degree of anemia before any special symptoms develop, and there is usually a history of periodic attacks with symptom-free intermissions.

The main symptoms beyond those directly attributable to the anemia, namely weakness and breathlessness on exertion, are fever—which may be a low irregular fever or rise to 103° or so, pains in the joints, pains in the abdomen—that may simulate an acute abdominal emergency, enlarged and painful spleen, cardiac dilation, various neurological manifestations, chronic leg ulceration—similar to varicose ulcers and bony deformities—scurvy, thin scrofulous and kyphosis.

Röntgenological examination of the bones shows osteoporosis or osteosclerosis, and hürter and thickening of the skull. In the retina there is a very marked tortuosity of the vessels.

**Diagnosis**—Sickling alone is not evidence of sickle celled anemia, but in sickle-celled anemia, if the blood is taken from a vein with an air free syringe (dead space filled with liquid paraffin) and injected into 10 per cent neutral formaldehyde in 0.85 per cent saline 30 to 60 per cent of the cells will be sickled, whereas only an occasional sickled cell will be found in the patient who simply has the sickle cell tendency.

The following simple method of diagnosis is recommended by Winsor and Burch (1944).

A sphygmomanometer cuff is placed on the arm and inflated sufficiently to stop the venous return for 6 minutes. A sample of 5 ccm of blood is taken into an air free syringe and transferred to a small tube or bottle of the same capacity containing 3 mg of dry ammonium oxalide and 2 mg of dry potassium oxalide. This is immediately corked and mixed gently between the fingers to ensure oxalation of the sample. Part of the sample is filled immediately into a Winthrope tube which is corked and placed in a water bath to distill in a suitable rack. The rest of the sample is transferred to a 10 ccm dry test tube rotated for 15 minutes until the sample is thoroughly oxygenated (this will be apparent from the bright red colour of the blood) and filled into another Winthrope tube. In most cases of sickle celled anemia the difference between the sedimentation rates in the two tubes after an hour will be 60 or 70 mm but a difference of 20 mm which may be observed after as short a time as 15 minutes indicates sickle celled anemia or at least the sickle-cell trait.

**Treatment**—This is symptomatic only.

**Prognosis**—This is always bad, temporary improvements will often occur, but death usually occurs within the first three decades.

**Cooley's anemia**—This syndrome has recently been separated from the more comprehensive von Jaksch's syndrome. As indicated above it was

first believed to be confined to individuals of Mediterranean stock but has recently been reported in several Indian children (Napier Shorten and Das Gupta 1939) and one Chinese (Foster, 1910)

The most characteristic feature of the disease is the bony changes. In the long bones there is an increase in the medulla with thinning of the compact bone. The general decrease in the density of the medulla leaves the trabecula standing out forming a characteristic mosaic pattern in the x ray picture. In the skull the diplo is thickened in several times its natural thickness with perpendicular striations standing out to give the appearance of hair standing erect on the inner plate of the skull the outer plate being invisible.

The blood picture is less characteristic and has features common to other examples of the von Jaksch's syndrome. The degree of anæmia is variable but often considerable. The erythrocytes vary considerably in size from extreme microcytosis to extreme macrocytosis but the mean corpuscular hemoglobin is low so that the anæmia is hypochromic. There are frequently target cells present, and many of the red cells are distorted and fragmented. There are many nucleated red cells, mostly normoblasts and always a distinct and sometimes marked—up to 50 000 per c mm—leucocytosis. The van den Bergh reaction indirect, is usually positive.

The anæmia and the large head are the most striking clinical features.

The steady progress towards a fatal termination is usually uninterrupted. If the symptoms appear in the first year of life death usually occurs within six months. If however they do not appear until later, the child may survive several years. Death is usually due to intercurrent infection.

#### INVESTIGATING ANÆMIA

The causes of anæmia in the tropics are thus numerous and varied. Whenever anæmia is suspected in an individual or in a group of individuals an adequate hæmatological investigation including at least hæmoglobin estimations, red cell and reticulocyte white cell and differential and platelet counts, packed cell volume (hæmatocrit) and erythrocyte sedimentation rate estimations, the van den Bergh tests, gastric analysis and sternal puncture should be carried out. In the case of a group these examinations should be done on a random sample of the group with if possible a control sample from the general population. The possible causes should be considered (see table XXIX), the necessary parasitological examinations carried out and finally the diets should be reviewed and possibly a therapeutic test with iron made.

With these data and the aid of table XXIX it should be possible to arrive at a satisfactory conclusion as to the cause of the anæmia. Although the cause even in one individual is seldom a single factor, the correction of one factor will often reduce the anæmia to negligible proportions.

#### REFERENCES

- COOLEY T B and ILLI P (1925) Series of cases of Splenomegaly in Children with Anæmia and Peculiar Bone Changes *Trans Amer Ped Soc* 37, 29
- DIGGS L W, AHMANN C F and BISS J (1933) Incidence and Significance of Sick-cell Trait *Am J Med* 7, 769

- FORLEY, N. H., BROMFIELD R. J. For H. and KONDI, A. (1938) Nutritional Macrocytic Anaemia in Macedonia *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg* **32**, 132
- FOSTER, L. P. (1940) Cooley's Syndrome (Erythroblastic Anaemia) in a Chinese Child *Amer J Dis Child* **59**, 828
- FOY, H. and KONDI, A. (1939) Response of Nutritional Macrocytic Anaemia to Anilimum *Lancet* **2**, 360
- MACKIE, J. P. (1929) Malignant Anaemia of the Tropics *Indian Med Gaz* **64**, 305
- MAZUMDAR, J. P. (1939) Classification of the Anaemias *Indian Med Gaz* **74**, 313
- (1936) Tropical Macrocytic Anaemia *Lancet*, **2**, 679
- (1938) Anakemia in Tropical Macrocytic Anaemia *Lancet* **2**, 106
- , and DAS GUPTA C. R. (1936) Hematological Studies in Indians. Part V. Red Blood Cell Measurements *Indian J Med Res* **23**, 973
- , EDWARDS, M. I., and DAS GUPTA, C. R. (1941) Hematological Studies in Indians. Part XIII. Normal Indian Women in Calcutta *Indian J Med Res* **29**, 375
- , SHORTEN, J. A. and DAS GUPTA, C. R. (1939) Cooley's Erythroblastic Anaemia *Indian Med Gaz* **74**, 660
- SEKHAR, S. S. et al (1937) Red Cells, Hemoglobin, Colour Index and Volume Index Standards. Part I-II *Indian J Med Res* **25**, 505 & 723
- WHITBY, L. F. H., and BRITTON, C. J. C. (1939) *Disorders of the Blood* J & A Churchill Ltd London
- WILKS, L. (1931) Treatment of Pernicious Anaemia of Pregnancy and Tropical Anaemia with Special Reference to Yeast Extract as Curative Agent *Ind Med J* **1**, 1059
- and FAYNE B. D. F., (1935) Tropical Macrocytic Anaemia. Its Relation to Pernicious Anaemia *Lancet*, **2**, 416
- WESTROSS, M. M. (1933) Blood of Normal Men and Women *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp*, **53**, 118

# **SNAKES AND SNAKE-BITE\***

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	837
CLASSIFICATION	837
<i>Table showing main characteristics and habitats</i>	839
IDENTIFICATION	838
<i>Table Data required for identifying the species of a snake from its external characters</i>	846
<i>Schema Identification of Poisonous Snakes</i>	844
<b>SNAKE-BITE</b>	
EPIDEMIOLOGY	847
ANATOMY AND TOXICOLOGY	848
<i>Poison apparatus</i>	848
<i>The venom</i>	848
Physical nature—Quantity—Chemical composition—Toxic principles	
<i>Selective actions of different venoms</i>	849
<i>Minimal lethal doses of different venoms</i>	850
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	850
<i>Symptoms after colubrine bite (cobra)</i>	850
Local—General	
<i>Symptoms after viperine bite (Russell's viper)</i>	851
Local—General	
<i>The effect of the bite of the rattlesnake</i>	851
DIAGNOSIS	851
<i>Non poisonous snake bite</i>	852
<i>Differentiation between colubrine and viperine poisoning</i>	852
PROGNOSIS	853
TREATMENT	853
<i>Introduction</i>	853

---

\* By Major S. K. Ganguli I.M.S. lately assistant professor of entomology Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine and the author

<i>Non-specific procedures</i>	854
(a) Localization of venom	
Tourniquet—Refrigeration	
(b) Illumination of the venom at the site	
Multiple incisions—Suction—Injection and aspiration	
(c) Neutralization of the venom <i>in situ</i>	
(d) Treatment of general symptoms	
Primary shock—Secondary shock and collapse—Hæmorrhagic state—Respiratory failure	
(e) Treatment of complications and sequelæ	
Septicæ—Gangrene—Other complications and sequelæ	
<i>Specific treatment</i>	855
Antivenene	
Dosage	
Precautions	
<i>PRACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS</i>	857

**Introduction.**—The practical importance to the ordinary practitioner of any knowledge regarding snakes and snake bite is often questioned by the logically minded. It is difficult to refute their arguments on statistical grounds as the annual incidence of fatal snake bite (outside India) is less than 0.005 per mille and probably not one tenth of the subjects will have been within reach of medical aid. Nevertheless a practitioner in the tropics with no knowledge of snakes will not only feel himself ill-equipped but perhaps once during his life he will encounter a case in which a better knowledge of snakes might have helped him to save a life, and he will certainly often find himself in the embarrassing position of being quite unable to make even a reasonable guess as to whether or not a snake brought to him for identification is poisonous.

Further, it is the duty of a practitioner in a tropical country to familiarize himself with the commoner snakes in the locality, and thus he cannot hope to do without a knowledge of the essentials of herpetology. This study is important from two points of view—firstly, in order to be able to recognize and avoid or destroy the poisonous snakes, and, secondly, to exonerate the non-poisonous ones, so that they may not be destroyed unnecessarily, but rather encouraged as they are often useful members of the local fauna in that many of them kill or frighten away rodents and also smaller poisonous snakes.

#### CLASSIFICATION

Snakes belong to the class *REPTILIA*.

The class *REPTILIA* is divided into twelve orders of which eight are extinct. Extant reptiles belong to four orders:

- 1 *Crocodylia*—crocodiles, alligators, and gavials
- 2 *Chelonina*—tortoises, turtles and terrapins
- 3 *Rhynchocephalia*—represented by a single living species the Tuatara or *Sphenodon (Hatteria punctata)* of New Zealand a lizard like reptile in which the traces of the median eye can still be made out
- 4 *Squamata*—snakes, lizards, and chameleons

The order *Squamata* is divided into three sub orders of which two are still extant, namely



(2) Ophidia (or Serpentes)—snakes

(a) *Iacertila*—lizards and chameleon

In the sub order Ophidia (snakes) about twenty four hundred species have been described of which over three hundred are sufficiently poisonous to cause fatal effects in man. In India including Burma and Ceylon there are at least 330 species of snakes of which about 70 are poisonous to man (40 terrestrial and 30 marine species) this is the only country in which all the families and sub families are represented.

There are nine families (1) Typhlopida (2) Leptotyphlopida, (3) Anilida (4) Boida (5) Uropeltida (6) Xenopeltida, (7) Amblycephalida, (8) Colubrida (9) Viperida.

The family Boida includes several of the largest constrictor snakes. In it there are two sub families Pythonina and Boina the former includes *Python repticulatus* the regal python the largest snake in the world which attains a proven length of thirty-three feet, and the latter *Constrictor constrictor* the boa constrictor. The Boida are not poisonous but kill their larger prey by coiling around them and crushing them.

All the species of the first seven families are non poisonous the last two families include all the poisonous snakes. The Colubrida are divided into eight sub families of which three are non poisonous three are mildly poisonous and two are highly poisonous and in the Viperida there are two sub families all the species of which are poisonous.

The sub families of the Colubrida and Viperida are sometimes grouped according to the nature and position of their fangs if these are absent, as in the three non poisonous sub families of the Colubrida the snakes are known as Aghra (αγρη=a groove) if the fangs are behind the teeth they are known as opisthoglypha (οπισθοδοι=behind) if the fangs are developed from the front teeth and are grooved, they are known as proteroglypha (προτερον=before) and if the fangs are hollow tubes (like hypodermic syringe needles) they are known as solenoglypha (σωλην=tube). The first three of these groups correspond to non poisonous mildly poisonous and highly poisonous sub families respectively, of Colubrida, and the last to the Viperida. The opisthoglypha snakes from the position of their fangs are incapable of injecting a fatal dose of venom into man, but their bite is nonetheless poisonous and they kill small prey by this means.

The families and sub families of the sub order Ophidia with their main characteristics and commoner species are shown in Table XXX (a) and (b).

#### IDENTIFICATION

The identification of the species of a snake is a highly technical procedure that is the domain of the zoologist or more especially the herpetologist it takes account of the characteristics of bones and teeth and of the arrangement of the scales as well as the general shape and size of the body. However it is possible by the study of external characteristics alone for the less highly specialized observer to make a provisional identification. The characteristics to be studied are shown in Table XXXI.

Poisonous or non poisonous?—For practical purposes, it will usually be sufficient to distinguish between the poisonous and the non poisonous species of snakes.

TABLE XX (a)

Classification of snakes

Family

1. *Trophobryx* (non poisonous)

Small, worm like burrowing snakes, uniform small scales, usually toothed mandible bare. Tail small, usually as thick as the head and

Distribution—widespread in tropics  
Species—over 100

2. *Leptotyphlops* or *Glaucocoryx* (non poisonous)

Remembers the preceding family except maxilla bare, mandible toothed tail long

Distribution—cosmopolitan  
Species—over 30

3. *Anilius* or *Hypsiglena* (non poisonous)

Burrowing snakes of variegated colour usually about 2½ to 3 feet long, claw like spur at the vent representing vestigial remnant of hind limbs, ventral shields slightly enlarged  
Species—6

4. *Borophis* (non poisonous)

Includes several largest constricting serpents, claw like spurs at vent which are much longer than in the preceding family, very large number of scales on the dorsum of the body  
Ventrals are moderately enlarged but do not stretch across abdomen

Sub-family —

(i) *Pythoninae*

Supra-orbital bone present

Premaxilla—toothed

Species—over 20

(ii) *Borophinae*

Supra-orbital bone present

Premaxilla bare.

Species—about 40

Sub-family

*Trophobryx*

*T. thersites*

*T. prasinus*

*Glaucocoryx*

*L. (G.) blanfordi*

*Cylindrophis*

*C. maculatus*

*Hypsiglena*

*Python*

*P. reticulatus*

*P. apudus*

*Liasis*

*Constrictor*

*C. macleayi*

*Eryx*

*E. johnstoni*

Habitat

Tropical Asia including India, Tropical Africa, Australia

India, North America

South-east Asia, Ceylon, Tropical America

South-east Asia, India, Burma, Malaya, Australia, New Guinea, N. Australia, Tropical America, Tropical S. America, India, India

TABLE III (a)—(Contd.)

Family	Classification of Snakes	Examples	Habitat
5 <i>Uropeltidae</i> (non-poisonous)	Short bevelled tail usually covered with a scute. Variegated coloration of dorsal scales which are glossy and sometimes iridescent. Ventrals moderately enlarged but do not stretch across abdomen. Ventrals covered in the ocular shield except the genus <i>Platyplectrurus</i> . Found only in southern India and Ceylon. Burrowing habits. Length one to two feet. Species—about 50.	<i>Uropeltis grandis</i> <i>Rhinophis ozurhynchus</i> <i>R. sanguineus</i> <i>Silybura grandis</i> <i>Plectrurus perroteti</i> <i>Platyplectrurus trilineatus</i>	Ceylon Ceylon South India " " " " " "
6 <i>Xenopeltidae</i> (non-poisonous)	Contains a single genus. High iridescent, uniform black or brown in colour. Ventrals enlarged and almost cover the abdomen. Length about 3 feet long. Premaxilla—toothed. Species—one.	<i>Xenopeltis unicolor</i>	South-eastern Asia, South India
7 <i>Amphigophalidae</i> (non-poisonous)	Lumpy head on a slender neck. Large eyes, pupils vertical. Mental groove absent. Ventrals much enlarged stretching across abdomen. Slender body, long tapering tail. Arboreal in habits. Species—about 40.	<i>Amphigophalus monitcola</i>	Eastern India, Burma

\* Except for the absence of mental groove, this family resembles in external characters the family Colubridae, and for this reason some modern authorities classify it as a sub-family, Amphigophalinae, of the family Colubridae.

TABLE XXX (b)—(Contd.)

Family	Sub-family	Examples	Habitat
8 Colubridæ—(Contd.)			
Opisthoglypha			
Small fangs at the back of the maxilla			India, S E Asia
Small poison glands			India, S E Asia
			Australia
	(iv) <i>Hemalophis</i> (mildly poisonous)	<i>Cerberus rhinoceros</i>	
	Ventrals slightly enlarged do not stretch across abdomen	<i>Hyposphidion enhydrus</i>	
	River and estuarine snakes	<i>H. macdonaldi</i>	
	Tail slightly compressed in many species		
	Species—about 25		
	(v) <i>Phachistodoninae</i> (mildly poisonous)	<i>Phachistodon westermanni</i>	North Bengal
	Like <i>Dasyatis</i> it possesses tooth like projections into the oesophagus to break birds' eggs		
	Species—one		
	(vi) <i>Dipsadomorphinae</i> (mildly poisonous)	<i>Dryophis mycterizans</i> —The green whip snake	S E Asia, India
	A parallel to sub-family Colubrinae comprising racers, arboreal, and semi-aquatics of various size and shape	<i>Chrysocrotalus ornata</i>	
	Species—about 300	<i>Dipsadomorphus trigonatus</i> —The cat snake	Malaya peninsula
	(vii) <i>Elapinae</i> (highly poisonous)	<i>D. dendrophilus</i>	South Africa
	Terrestrial, arboreal or semi-aquatic in habits	<i>Diplophis typus</i> —The boomslang	Tropical Asia including India
	Tail cylindrical and tapering	<i>Pseudoboa elatus</i> —The common cobra	South-eastern Asia
	Very much enlarged and stretch across abdomen	<i>Naja naja</i> —The common cobra	North Africa
	They are among the most deadly of all serpents	<i>N. hannah</i> —The king cobra	Africa
	Species—about 180	<i>N. haje</i> —The Egyptian cobra or asp.	South Africa
		<i>N. nigricollis</i> —The spitting cobra	India
		<i>N. fuscus</i> —The cape cobra	India and South-eastern Asia
		<i>B. fasciatus</i> —The banded krat	
		<i>Dendraspis angusticeps</i> —Mamba	
		<i>Pseudochis porphyreus</i> —The black snake	
		<i>Notchis scutatus</i> —The tiger snake	
		<i>Acanthophis antarcticus</i> —The death adder	
		<i>Draconia superba</i> —Austrian copper head	
		<i>Callophis macellandri</i> —Coral snake	
		<i>Macrurus fulvus</i> —The hedgequin snake	
			Eastern India, Southern China, Burma.
			North America

# Identification of Poisonous Snakes

Character

Ophidia

TAIL

Cylindrical  
Stumpy tapering or with rattles

Compressed laterally  
oar shaped

VENTRAL  
SCALES

not enlarged

enlarged but  
do not stretch  
across abdomen

much enlarged  
and stretch  
across abdomen

Hydrophinae  
(sea snakes)

Typhlopidae  
Leptotyphlopidae

Borae Uropeltidae  
Amphisbaenidae  
Xenopeltidae

MENTAL  
GROOVE

Present

Absent



LOREAL  
PIT

Present

Absent



Crotalinae and Lachnesinae

Amblycephalidae

HEAD

Small scales

Shields

Small scales

Shields



Viperinae  
(pitless vipers)  
except genus Azemiops

Colubridae

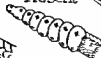
TAIL  
RATTLES

Present

Absent

Present

Absent



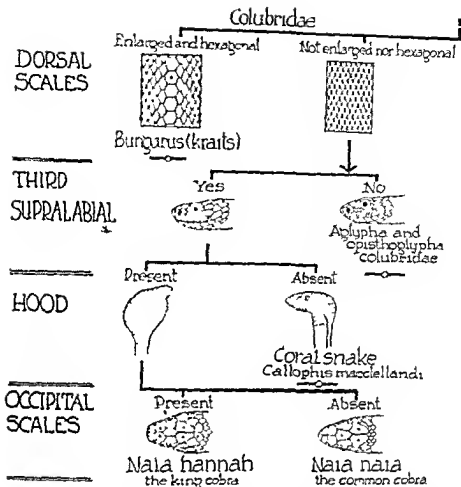
Crotalus  
C. atrox or  
diamond backed  
rattler

Lachnesinae  
(except genus  
Atractaspis)  
Lachesis muta  
or bushmaster  
Bothrops atrox  
or fer de lance

Sistrurus  
Scalatus  
or  
massasauga  
rattler

Atractaspis  
A. piscivorus  
water moccasin  
or cotton mouth

continued



**Key** When the name is printed in large type it indicates that the species is a poisonous one, or if it is the name of a family, subfamily or genus that all or many of its members are poisonous

For example, all **HYDROPHINAE** or sea snakes are poisonous, so are *Crotalinae*, *Lachninae* and *Viperinae*. Colubridae contain both poisonous and non-poisonous species

On the other hand the Typhlopids, etc., are non-poisonous, so are the Amblycephalids. Of the Colubridae, *Bungurus*, *Naja hannah* and *Naja naja* are very poisonous. Coral snakes are poisonous but not so highly poisonous, and the alyps and opisthoglyphs Colubridae are non-poisonous

(If this diagram is copied for class purposes the poisonous snakes should be printed in red ink)

\* The third supralabial scale touches both the eye and the nasal scale in the poisonous Colubridae

If the fangs and teeth are intact and can be examined, they provide the simplest means of answering the above question. The upper jaw should be examined\* to ascertain whether the snake is

<i>Alypious</i>	two rows of teeth on either side of the maxilla and no fangs	non-poisonous
<i>Ophiophthalmus</i>	two rows of teeth with one pair of grooved fangs at posterior end of outer row	mildly poisonous
<i>Proteroglyphous</i>	one row of teeth on either side with outer rows replaced by a pair of short rigid grooved fangs at anterior end with or without accessory fangs	poisonous
<i>Solenoglyphous</i>	one row of teeth with a pair of long tubular movable fangs and one or more pairs of accessory fangs	poisonous

TABLE XXXI

Data required for identifying the species of a snake from its external characters

- 1) SIZE
  - (a) Length including the tail.
  - (b) Length of the tail only.
- 2) SNOUT OR NOSE
  - (a) Snout—whether flat or cylindrical, tapering slender or stout, bevelled rounded or pointed, rattles present or not.
  - (b) Body—whether stout moderate sized or slender.
  - (c) Head—whether distinct from the neck or not broad or narrow high or flat.
  - (d) Snout—pointed or obtuse.
  - (e) Nostril—whether on the sides or on top of the snout and whether valved or open.
  - (f) Eyes—whether large moderate or small.
  - (g) Pupils—whether round or elliptical (vertically or horizontally).
  - (h) Neck—whether distinguishable or not.
  - (i) Frenal pit between eyes and nostrils—present or not.
- 3) COLORATION
 

(Ground colour of the dorsum and venter, any colour pattern such as longitudinal and transverse markings stripes or streaks spots rings or other markings. Markings on the head and tail)
- 4) ARRANGEMENT OF SCALES OR EPIDERMIS
  - (a) Body and tail
    - (i) Ventrals—whether broad moderate sized or narrow, rigid or angulated at the sides their number.
    - (ii) Anals—whether divided or entire.
    - (iii) Subcaudals—their number divided or entire.
    - (iv) Dorsals—number of longitudinal rows in the mid body character of the scale—whether discrete or imbricated smooth tuberculated or keeled, oval or rhombic.
    - (v) Vertebrae—whether enlarged or not hexagonal or rhombic.
  - (b) Head
    - (i) Whether shields or scales, if shields—their pattern shape and size.
    - (ii) Supra labials—their number and pattern especially the relation of the 3rd supra labial in the family (*Colubridae*).
    - (iii) Infra labials—their number and pattern.
    - (iv) Sublinguals—size and shape, whether the mental groove is present.
- 5) ARRANGEMENT AND CHARACTER OF TEETH
  - (a) Whether both maxillae and mandibles are toothed.
  - (b) How many rows of teeth on the upper jaw.
  - (c) Premaxilla toothed or not.
  - (d) Fangs present or not if present—whether anterior or posterior grooved or hollow tubes.

\* Great care should be exercised in examining recently killed snakes as muscular spasm may occur and many people have been bitten by a dead snake.



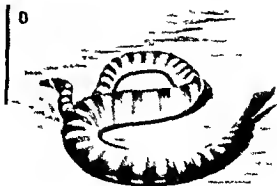
4



6



8





Snakes can also be identified with a fair degree of certainty by observing certain external characteristics and using the schema Identification of Poisonous Snakes.

It is important to remember that colour is seldom of use as a distinguishing characteristic the colour of most species is variable to a greater or lesser degree. However plate D will give some idea of the usual colour of some of the more common Indian poisonous snakes.

## SNAKE-BITE

**Epidemiology**—The geographical distribution of snake bite is naturally dependent on the geographical distribution of the dangerous species of venomous snakes, this can be seen from Table XXXI. India the East Indies, tropical Africa and tropical America are the fields richest in snakes and India with at least 70 species of poisonous snakes heads the list.

On the other hand there are many islands that are free from terrestrial poisonous snakes e.g. Iceland Ireland New Zealand Madagascar Hawaii and many islands in the South Pacific and several in the West Indies.

In Europe there are few poisonous snakes the most common are the adder (*Vipera berus*) and the asp (*Aspis*).

In Australia, the commonest causes of snake bite death are the death adder (*Heathophis antarcticus*) the tiger snake (*Notechis scutatus*) and the black snake (*Pseustes porphyriacus*).

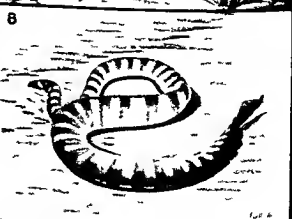
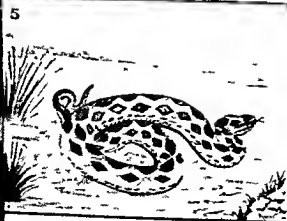
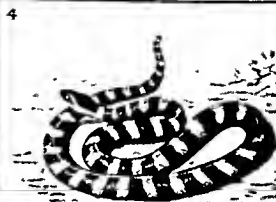
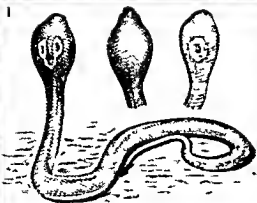
In Africa the commonest deadly snakes are the mamba (*Dendroaspis angusticeps*), the spitting cobra (*Naja nigricollis*) the puff adder (*Bitis arietans*), the rhinoceros viper (*Bitis nasicornis*) the asp (*Naja haje*) and the Cape cobra (*Naja flava*).

In North America poisonous snakes are relatively common in the mountainous and marshy districts. The best known are the rattlesnakes, the diamond backed rattlers (*Crotalus atrox* and *adamanteus*), the banded rattlesnake (*C. horridus*) and the massasauga (*Sistrurus catenatus*) the rattlesnake pit vipers the water moccasin or cotton mouth (*Agkistrodon piscivorus*) and the copperhead (*A. mokasen*), and the harlequin (coral) snake (*Microurus fulvius*).

In South and Central America, the most feared snakes are the bush master (*Lachesis muta*), the fer de lance (*Bothrops atrox*) and the jararaca (*B. jararaca*), but there are many other species.

In India the cobras, the kraits the Russell's viper and the echin viper are the snakes mainly responsible for the high mortality.

In countries where poisonous snakes are abundant death from snake bite constitutes not an unimportant cause of mortality. Between 20 000 and 25 000 deaths from snake-bite are reported annually in British India. Although snake-bite is sometimes a convenient euphemism for death by violence, in other instances death from snake bite will escape registration as such, so that on the whole the figure probably represents something near the truth. On the other hand in Australia between 1910 and 1926 the average annual deaths from snake bite numbered less than 15. For the rest of the world the annual deaths from snake bite are usually placed at between 5 000 and 10,000.



Snakes can also be identified with a fair degree of certainty by observing certain external characteristics and using the schema Identification of Poisonous Snakes.

It is important to remember that colour is seldom of use as a distinguishing characteristic the colour of most species is variable to a greater or lesser degree. However plate D will give some idea of the usual colour of some of the more common Indian poisonous snakes.

### SNAKE-BITE

**Epidemiology**—The geographical distribution of snake bite is naturally dependent on the geographical distribution of the dangerous species of venomous snakes, this can be seen from Table XXXI. India the East Indies, tropical Africa and tropical America are the fields richest in snakes and India with at least 70 species of poisonous snakes heads the list.

On the other hand there are many islands that are free from terrestrial poisonous snakes e.g. Iceland Ireland New Zealand Madagascar Hawaii and many islands in the South Pacific and several in the West Indies.

In Europe there are few poisonous snakes the most common are the adder (*Vipera berus*) and the asp (*B. aspis*).

In Australia the commonest causes of snake bite death are the death adder (*Acanthophis antarcticus*) the tiger snake (*Notechis scutatus*) and the black snake (*Pseustes porphyreus*).

In Africa the commonest deadly snakes are the mamba (*Dendraspis angusticeps*) the spitting cobra (*Naja nigricollis*) the puff adder (*Bitis arietans*), the rhinoceros viper (*B. nasicornis*) the asp (*Naja haje*) and the Cape cobra (*Naja flava*).

In North America poisonous snakes are relatively common in the mountainous and marshy districts. The best known are the rattlesnakes the diamond backed rattlers (*Crotalus atrox* and *adamanteus*) the banded rattlesnake (*C. horridus*) and the moccasin (*Sistrurus catenatus*) the rattlesnake pit viper the water moccasin or cotton mouth (*Aphistronotus punctatus*) and the copperhead (*A. mohavensis*) and the harlequin (coral) snake (*Micrurus fulvius*).

In South and Central America the most feared snakes are the bush master (*Lachesis muta*) the fer de lance (*Bothrops atrox*) and the jararaca (*B. jararaca*) but there are many other species.

In India the cobras the kraits the Russell's viper and the common viper are the snakes mainly responsible for the high mortality.

In countries where poisonous snakes are abundant death from snake bite constitutes not an unimportant cause of mortality. Between 20 000 and 25 000 deaths from snake bite are reported annually in British India. Although snake bite is sometimes a convenient euphemism for death by violence in other instances death from snake bite will escape registration as such so that on the whole the figure probably represents something near the truth. On the other hand in Australia between 1910 and 1926 the average annual deaths from snake bite numbered less than 10. For the rest of the world the annual deaths from snake bite are usually placed at between 5 000 and 10 000.

Few snakes are aggressive as far as man and other large mammals are concerned and the majority bite only when attacked, frightened, or accidentally injured. The persons most affected therefore are the bare-foot villagers walking along a jungle path at night who may accidentally tread on a snake. Snakes will often come into a hut or house to escape unfavourable climatic conditions—cold, extreme heat or rain—and it is not uncommon for a person to be bitten when he, or more frequently she, places a hand into a receptacle in a dark corner.

Children are frequently bitten, either in and outside their huts, and the bites are fatal in a much higher percentage of cases in children, as the toxicity is dependent on the proportion between the amount of venom injected and the body weight of the subject.

### ANATOMY AND TOXICOLOGY

**Poison apparatus**—This consists of a pair of poison glands connected by ducts to the grooved or canaliculated fangs on the maxilla. The poison glands are modified supra labial glands analogous to the parotid glands of the mammals. They occupy an intermuscular space in the temporal regions below and behind the orbit on either side of the upper jaw (maxillæ).

The glands are enveloped by a fibrous capsule to which are partly attached the fibres of the masseter muscles and are surrounded by a group of muscles, consisting of the anterior, middle and posterior temporal, and the digastric. During the act of striking these muscles are involuntarily contracted and the glands are violently squeezed, so that the venom is driven along the duct to the grooved or canaliculated fangs and thence to the tissues of the victim, even if the snake misses its victim. Venom will sometimes be ejected. The venom of the spitting cobra *Naja nigricollis*, can be ejected a distance of 6 to 8 feet and it will cause temporary blindness if it comes in contact with the eyes. In other species, especially the opisthoglyphæ the actual pressure of the bite appears to be necessary to eject the venom.

In the proteroglyphæ and solenoglyphæ the fangs, which are situated anteriorly on the maxillæ, differ one from the other in their structure, size and shape. In the proteroglyphæ (*Colubridæ*) the fangs, though slightly movable, are erect and small; the groove which runs anteriorly lengthwise from the base to the tip of the fang is open, but in the living state is covered by a fold of mucous membrane which thus completes the canal. In the solenoglyphæ (*Viperidæ*), the maxillæ with large completely canaliculated fangs attached to them are movable and are controlled by various muscles. In the resting position when these muscles are relaxed, the fangs are kept folded under the palate inside a sheath of mucous membrane (*vagina dentis*) but when the muscles are contracted for the strike or bite the fangs come forward automatically and project at a right angle from the maxillæ. This movement of the fangs does not take place in the proteroglyphæ. Besides the main fangs there are always reserve fangs behind, in both the viperine and poisonous colubrine snakes, and these come into operation when the main fangs are broken.

**The venom**—**Physical nature**—It is a colourless or golden-yellow liquid of thick consistency, neutral or slightly acid with a specific gravity of from 1.030 to 1.060 or more. When desiccated it yields about 25 to 50 per cent of solid matter and becomes a crystalloid substance which is soluble in normal saline.

It is thermolabile and destroyed by the gastric juice

**Quantity**—The venom is collected either by compressing the gland or by the spontaneous bite of the snake on a parchment or rubber membrane spread over any convenient receptacle\*. The latter method gives a better yield. The quantity of venom varies with each species and with the size of the individual, from about 8 mg. in the krait to 375 mg. in the cobra.

**Chemical composition**—The results of a broad analysis of the venoms of various snakes show that they consist of—

- (1) Protein matter—albumin and globulin (coagulable by heat)—which forms the major portion
- (2) substances of the nature of proteoses and peptones (not coagulable by heat)
- (3) enzymes or ferment
- (4) inorganic salts (chlorides, phosphates etc)
- (5) a trace of fatty matter, and
- (6) colouring matter

**Toxic principles**—It was at one time generally believed that the coagulable proteins, the non-coagulable protein like substances and the enzymes were responsible for the toxicity of the venoms, but separate toxic elements of a non protein nature have been isolated from the protein molecule with which they are associated. The substance from cobra (*Naja naja*) venom has been called ophiotoxin ( $C_{11}H_{16}O_{16}$ ) and from that of the rattle-snake, *Crotalus adamanteus*, crotolotoxin ( $C_{11}H_{16}O_{16}$ ). It is believed that these substances are of the nature of glucosides free from nitrogen and belonging to the saponin group.

The toxicological action of the venoms of different species of venomous snakes varies widely and depends upon the summation of various toxic principles present in the venom, the proportions vary with each species. The toxic principles are—

- (1) neurotoxins with special affinity (a) for the nerve cells and particularly for the respiratory centre and/or (b) for the nerve terminations of the muscles especially for those of the diaphragm
- (2) various cytolytins namely
  - (a) hæmolytin—acting on the red blood cells
  - (b) hæmorrhagin or endothelytins—acting on the endothelial cells lining the blood vessels allowing the blood to extravasate
  - (c) cytolytins acting on cells of several other tissues such as the liver, kidneys etc
- (3) an antithrombin ferment (protease) destroying the fibrinogen thus acting as an anti-coagulum
- (4) a fibrin ferment (thrombace) causing thrombosis
- (5) a proteolytic ferment and
- (6) a cardiac toxin which in small quantities tones up the heart but in higher concentration stops it in systole

**Selective action of different venoms**—As a general rule the venoms of *Colubridæ* contain a predominating quantity of neurotoxins, this is especially true of the common cobra, the kraits, the tiger snake, the black snake, the death adder, and the sea snakes. In the cobra venom, neurotoxins are responsible for 50 per cent of its toxicity, hæmolytins and anti-coagulins for about 40 per cent, and a proteolytic ferment for the rest.

On the other hand, in the *Viperidæ* the venom as a rule contains a high proportion of hæmorrhagin. Thus in the Russell's viper venom

\* In India the snake charmers collect venom in the shell of a water mussel over which a palm leaf is tightly held. The snake bites on the palm leaf and the poison trickles down into the cavity of the shell.

haemorrhagin represents about 70 to 75 per cent of the total toxicity, the cytolytic thrombin and cardiac toxin represent about 20 to 25 per cent, and the proteolytic enzyme the balance. But there are exceptions to this rule as in *Crotalus terrificus* a viper, the venom is strongly neurotoxic.

**Minimal lethal doses of different venoms for man**—Acton and Knowles (1921) estimated the minimal lethal dose (MLD) of cobra venom for man to be 15 mgm by a study of fatal cases of cobra bite given in the literature in which no treatment, or valueless treatment, had been administered. The MLD for the venoms of other Indian species of poisonous snakes was also calculated by them on the assumption that the relative toxicities of different venoms for the monkey hold good for man.

The data in the following table were taken from their papers and from other sources.

TABLE XXXII

Snake	Approximate dose given at bite mgm	Estimated fatal dose for man mgm
<i>Naja naja</i>	211.3	15.0
<i>Naja hannah</i>	100.0	12.0
<i>Bungarus candidus</i>	5.4	1.0
<i>B. fasciatus</i>	42.9	10.0
<i>Daboia russellii</i>	72.0	42.0
<i>Echis carinatus</i>	12.3	5.0
<i>Trimeresurus gramineus</i>	14.1	100.0
<i>Agkistrodon malakense</i>	45-60	} approx imately 25.0
<i>A. piscivorus</i>	90-150	
<i>Crotalus horridus</i>	60-90	
<i>C. adamanteus</i>	210-450	
<i>Bothrops atrox</i>	80-160	
<i>Lachesis muta</i>	300-500	
<i>Dendraspis angusticeps</i> (Mamba)	50-80	

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

As the toxic principles in colubrine and viperine venoms differ, the symptoms produced in the victim after the bites of the snakes of these two families are also different and they are therefore considered separately.

**Symptoms after colubrine (cobra) bite**—Local. Immediately after the bite there is a burning sensation at the site which passes off in a few minutes. This is followed by loss of sensation and paralysis of the area around the site, where a moderate amount of oedema supervenes. There is oozing of blood from the fang punctures as the blood does not coagulate on account of the action of anticoagulin.

**General**—The neurotoxins act on the motor end plates of muscles, on the respiratory centre and on the centres of the 9th, 10th, 11th and 12th nerves. The following is the usual sequence of symptoms—drooping of the eyelids, unsteady gait, incoordination of speech, slight difficulty in respiration and uncontrollable desire to lie down. Paralysis starts from the lower extremities irrespective of the site of bite, except for the local paralysis in the bitten area, and gradually mounts upwards. With the complete paralysis of all the voluntary muscles there is drooping of the head and difficulty in deglutition. Asphyxial symptoms supervene, breathing becomes shallow and rapid and the face becomes cyanotic. There is profuse salivation. Later convulsions start and there is vomiting and involuntary passage of urine and faeces. Finally, the victim dies of respiratory failure. The pulse is little affected except as a result of primary shock which is

mainly due to fright. The heart continues to beat after the respiration has failed. Consciousness is retained almost to the last. Death usually takes place in untreated cases in from one to six hours.

The symptoms after krait bite are similar to those of cobra bite with an additional symptom of violent abdominal pain which is associated with hemorrhages in the stomach and the intestines.

Authentic cases of sea snake bite are rare. The symptoms caused by their bite are similar to those after cobra bite.

**Symptoms after viperine bite (Russell's viper).**—**Local.** Immediately after the bite there is an intense burning pain, which persists, along with the incessant oozing of blood from fang punctures. There is also marked edema and redness of the area and later ecchymoses around the puncture. There is no loss of sensation or paralysis of the bitten part.

**General.** The hemorrhagins destroy the endothelial cells of the finer capillaries and blood escapes through them. In consequence there is evidence of external as well as internal hemorrhages. There may be epistaxis, hematuria, hamoptysis, hamatenesis, melæna, sub-conjunctival hemorrhages and extensive petechiæ. Convulsions may supervene early as a result of hemorrhages inside the brain and there may be loss of consciousness. Nausea and frequent vomiting are the rule. There is dilatation of the pupils which do not react to light. The pulse is feeble and rapid as a result of the initial shock due to fright and then there is a gradual fall in blood pressure due to secondary shock or collapse which invariably supervenes in fatal case of viper bite. Death usually takes place in two to six days.

The above symptoms are produced if a moderate quantity of venom is injected. If on the other hand a large amount is injected with the bite death occurs in a few hours as the result of acute cardiac and vasomotor failure or if by any chance the venom is introduced directly into a vein death follows within a few minutes as the result of intravascular and intracardiac coagulation but this occurrence is very rare in human beings. Whereas death after Russell's viper bite is usually due to vasomotor paralysis or to septic absorption from the extensive local gangrene in the case of *Echis* late death is usually due to multiple hemorrhages.

**The effect of the bite of the rattlesnake.**—The effect of the bite of the rattlesnake genus *Crotalus* is similar to that of the viper, there is much pain, local swelling and hemorrhagic reaction. The hemorrhagic mottling and swelling tend to spread up the limb from the site of the bite. Later, general symptoms of viperine poisoning develop. The exception to this rule is the bite of dog faced rattlesnake *Crotalus terrificus* whose venom is strongly neurotoxic and cause little local reaction but later the vision and respiratory centres are affected.

## DIAGNOSIS

The first important point to decide is whether the patient has been bitten at all and then whether the bite was by a *poisonous* or *non poisonous* snake. The vast majority of those bitten by a snake never see the snake and even if they or their companions do happen to see it they will seldom be able to describe it with sufficient accuracy to make identification possible. On rare occasions the offender is caught and killed then it will usually be possible to decide on its identity (see p 846). Diagnosis will

therefore often depend largely on the local examination for marks and on the signs and symptoms presented by the patient. But diagnosis is not easy, one cannot afford to await the development of typical symptoms or it will be too late to take any action.

The part where the bite is supposed to have occurred should be examined carefully for the teeth and/or fang marks. The harmless aglyphous and the relatively harmless opisthoglyphous snakes may leave the marks of two double rows of teeth, the posterior fang of the snakes

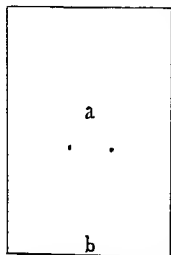


Figure 19a Showing upper jaw fang marks of

- (a) Aglyphous (non poisonous) snake
- (b) Proteroglyphous (poisonous) snake

of the latter group seldom coming into action when biting man whereas the proteroglyphs leave two single rows with a pair of deep bleeding fang marks just outside and at the anterior end of the rows of teeth marks and the ophioglyphs often leave only a pair of bleeding fang marks as they strike rather than bite. The larger the snake the greater the distance between the fang marks.

Before considering the diagnostic points in the symptomatology of poisonous snake bite it will be as well to review the symptoms that are likely to occur after the bite of a non-poisonous snake.

**Non poisonous snake bite**—Fear of snake bite is so highly developed in the human race that many people suffer from a severe degree of primary shock even after a bite by a non-poisonous snake. In so called 'strong nerved'—that is unimaginative—individuals one might be able to discount the effects of fear but it is no easy matter to gauge a person's mental make up so that one must always first

exclude the possibility that the shock is simply due to fear. The symptoms may be pallor, shallow breathing, a feeble rapid pulse, an almost inaudible heart beat, a cold and clammy skin and faintness. Cases have been recorded where death has occurred as a result of shock after the bite of a harmless snake. In a person who is familiar with the symptoms of snake bite all the subjective symptoms and even the paralysis may supervene as a result of hysteria but the objective symptoms such as cyanosis and hemorrhages will of course be absent. On the other hand the symptoms of a child whom it is usually possible to reassure can be taken at their face value.

More help will be obtained from the local signs: there will be only very slight redness or swelling, the characteristic paired fang marks will be absent, teeth marks will be superficial and there will be no bleeding from them; also there will be no local loss of sensation nor paralysis but these may be simulated by a hysterical patient.

**Differentiation between colubrine and viperine poisoning**—This also is difficult in the early stages when the differentiation may be of any value. In colubrine poisoning local pain passes fairly rapidly and is replaced by local anaesthesia; local paralysis develops and there is some local oedema. In viperine poisoning local pain is marked and persistent, there is a more intense local reaction which may include ecchymosis around the puncture.



and there will be no local paralysis. In the later stages, more marked differences in the general symptoms appear (*vide supra*). Shortly, the predominant symptoms in the former are paralytic, and in the latter hemorrhagic.

### PROGNOSIS

This is dependent on a large number of factors several of which are unappraisable, and it must therefore be very guarded. (It is however essential that the patient himself must be reassured for his own sake.)

The factors concerned are

(a) the species of the snake and the individual variation in the toxicity of its venom, (b) the amount of venom injected, (c) the site of the bite, (d) the body-weight of the victim, (e) the immediate measures adopted, and (f) the facilities available for treatment.

(a) If the snake is not identified this factor can only be gauged in general terms, for example the snakes of Europe, Australia, and temperate countries generally are much less poisonous than those of India and other tropical countries.

(b) The amount of venom injected is dependent on the efficacy of the bite which will to some extent depend on (c) the part bitten, a bite on a small member, such as a finger or toe or even hand or foot, is likely to be more effective as for mechanical reasons, the poisoning mechanism can come into full play, on the other hand, in such a position it will be easier to give effective local treatment.

(d) The body weight is important as the effect of a given amount of poison will be in inverse ratio to the body weight, therefore, the larger the individual the better are his chances of recovery.

(e) The prompter the application of the ligatures and other immediate measures the better the prognosis.

(f) Finally, to be of any use specific or polyvalent serum must not only be immediately available, but available in sufficient amount.

### TREATMENT

**Introduction**—More fables have grown up around the treatment of snake bite than around any other procedure in medical practice. Many millions of inhabitants of eastern countries are firm believers in amulets, snake-stones, potions with a most diverse range of ingredients—from plant juices to powdered gall stones—and/or prayers and incantations, as infallible cures for snake-bite. This credulity is not confined to the uneducated classes nor even to the inhabitants of eastern countries for there is a widespread belief amongst the laity of western countries—a belief that is even accorded semi official recognition in countries where 'prohibition' is in force—that the drinking of a bottle of whiskey is the best treatment for snake bite. This is not difficult to understand, for it is not usually appreciated that the large majority of snakes are non poisonous and that even poisonous species often fail to inject a fatal dose, so that all remedies, however useless, will enjoy at least a ten to one chance in favour of success and with a run of luck may easily acquire a reputation for infallibility.

There is no specific treatment for snake bite other than the appropriate antivenom serum although there are many non specific procedures

that must be considered as adjuvants when antivenene is available and as substitutes when it is not

It will be suitable first to consider shortly these non-specific procedures then the specific treatment, and finally the practical aspects of the treatment of snake-bite in various circumstances

### Non-specific Procedures

(a) **Localization of the venom**—(i) **Tourniquet**.—The application of some form of tourniquet, either a tightly applied one to prevent arterial flow, or a lightly applied one to cause venous congestion and control lymph return, appears to be the common-sense procedure, but nevertheless it is not a measure that is universally recommended. The main case against the tourniquet is that no tourniquet will prevent poison spreading through the tissues and an arterial tourniquet at least will often do considerable and unnecessary local damage. On the other hand, most practical workers consider that a lightly-applied tourniquet is always beneficial and some recommend an arterial tourniquet as well. The writers believe that combined with other measures at least a light ligature should be applied, and one of us (S. K. G.) has seen marked benefit from an arterial ligature in preventing the neurotoxin reaching the central nervous system in colubrine bites.

(ii) **Refrigeration**.—There is little practical support for this theoretically plausible procedure, but it is sometimes worth practising if only for its psychological effect.

(b) **Elimination of venom at the site**—(i) **Multiple incisions** should be made with aseptic precautions and if possible under local anaesthesia, a large deep ( $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch according to the depth of the bite) crucial incision through the fang marks and a series of small ( $\frac{1}{4}$  inch by  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch) incisions around the edge of the advancing swelling, blood vessels must be avoided and, if cut, tied.

(ii) **Suction** may be effected by means of Bier's suction tubes, a breast pump, or some special suction apparatus such as that suggested by Jackson (1929). Suction by applying the mouth to the wound should be looked upon as a 'first-aid' measure. Suction must be combined with ligature and saline irrigation, and continued for a long time. Although much of the toxin is absorbed by the local tissues, a considerable amount can be extracted by this means, as experience has shown that the extracted fluid is very toxic.

(iii) The objects of **excision** and **amputation** are the same, namely, the removal of the tissues in which the toxin is fixed. The choice of procedure will depend on the site of the bite, and amputation should only be considered in the case of bites on the toes or fingers. These measures should only be undertaken when the limb has been effectively ligatured continuously since the bite, or when it is possible to excise the site or amputate the limb immediately after the bite.

(c) **Neutralization of the venom *in situ***.—Local infiltration with calcium hypochlorite, potassium permanganate, gold chloride, or other substances, some of a secret nature, has been advocated in the past and is still considered by some workers to be a valuable procedure. However, the present trend of opinion is against any local injection, except with antivenene. The latter, if available, should always be used, at least in the case

of viper bite, and as much as they will take should be infiltrated into the tissues around the bite.

(d) **Treatment of general symptoms**—(1) **Primary shock**—The patient should be laid on his back with his head slightly lower than his feet. He should be given hot coffee or tea, and reassured and calmed. Caffeine may be given as a stimulant, and morphia,  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain, if there is severe pain. Alcohol should not be given unless it is obvious that the bite was a non-poisonous one, in such a case, given in moderate amounts, it will help to combat primary shock from fear.

(ii) **Secondary shock and collapse**—Hæmorrhages and vasomotor failure may lead to collapse which should be combated by the usual procedures, including plasma or serum transfusions of at least two pints, and pituitrin and adrenalin. In the absence of plasma, whole blood may be used. Chopra and Chowhan (1939) strongly advocate veritol (15-30 mg intramuscularly or 40-80 mg by mouth).

(iii) **Hæmorrhages**—For the multiple hæmorrhages after viperine bite, injections of calcium chloride or gluconate congo-red solution, vitamin C, vitamin K and hæmostatic serum have all been advocated and each appears to have been of value in certain cases.

(ii) **Respiratory paralysis**, caused by the neurotoxins may occur. Respiratory stimulants such as coramine, and eardiazol by the parenteral route may help to alleviate respiratory embarrassment, but in some cases artificial respiration and oxygen may have to be maintained for several hours.

(e) **Treatment of complications and sequelæ**—(1) **Sepsis**—Septic absorption from the site after viperine bite is not uncommon. Early administration of drugs of the sulphonamide group prevent this complication. Some authorities advocate the routine use of antitetanic serum in prophylactic doses.

(ii) **Gangrene**—It frequently occurs after viperine bite and is due to the action of thrombæse. Early administration of antivenene, early release of the ligatures, and, when the general symptoms appear to be well controlled, vigorous local treatment with frequent hot fomentations will usually prevent gangrene, but once it supervenes amputation is the only remedy.

(iii) **Other complications and sequelæ**—*Hæmopericardium*, *hæmothorax*, *hæmarthrosis*, *pyæmia*, and *nephritis* are some of the sequelæ of viperine bite, each of these requires its own line of treatment.

#### SPECIFIC TREATMENT

**Antivenene**—The only specific treatment against poisonous snake bites is the early administration by the intravenous route of antivenom serum, so-called antivenene. As the venoms of different species of snakes differ in their toxic principles, different antibodies are produced in the immunized animal (horse) and the antiserum produced against the venom of a particular species is effective against that venom alone, or against the venom of closely related species. For example, in India, antivenene either against cobra venom, or Russell's viper venom (the two commonest poisonous species which are responsible for the majority of the 20 000 or more annual snake-bite deaths) will not protect the victim bitten by the other species. To surmount this difficulty polyvalent sera which are effective against more than one common local species have been prepared by serum

institutes of different countries \* Heterologous serum is sometimes used but there is little evidence that it is of any real value

**Dosage.**—The points to be considered in calculating antivenene dosage are —

(a) The amount of venom inoculated; this is an unknown quantity, but the average quantity injected by a snake of the particular species is usually known (see table XXXII, p 850), and some idea of the efficacy of the bite may be obtained from the site and the circumstances of the bite

(b) The toxic activity of the venom of the individual snake; this is always an unknown quantity, but is likely to vary from country to country and the venom is usually more toxic in tropical countries

(c) The neutralizing capacity of the antivenene, for example, whether it is concentrated or not, 1 c.cm. of polyvalent antivenene (Kasauli) given intravenously will neutralize 0.4 mgm. of dried cobra venom or 0.9 mgm. of daboia venom

(d) The time that has elapsed after the bite

(e) The route of administration; the intravenous route is three to four times more effective than the intramuscular or subcutaneous

It will be seen from the above and from table XXXII on p 850 that the amount of concentrated polyvalent antivenene, for intravenous injection required in the treatment of an average cobra-bite will be 130 c.cm. and of an average daboia-bite 23 c.cm., in practice, however, it is usually advisable to give not less than 40 c.cm. in the latter case. The subcutaneous route is of little value because of the slow rate of absorption, but it should be remembered that such large doses of horse serum by the in-

---

\* In India, the Central Research Institute, Kasauli (Punjab) prepares and issues in 10 c.cm. ampoules concentrated (high-titre) polyvalent antivenene which is effective against both cobra and Russell's viper venom. The serum is concentrated four times by the ammonium sulphate method, so that 10 c.cm. equals 40 c.cm. of unconcentrated serum of former times. It is available from the Director of the Institute at a cost of about four rupees per ampoule

Polyvalent high titre antivenene against two or more different local species are being produced by —

(a) Butantan Institute in São Paulo, Brazil, South America, prepares four polyvalent antivenenes against (i) rattlesnakes, (ii) Bothrops, (iii) rattlesnakes and Bothrops and (iv) coral snakes

(b) The South Africa Institute of Medical Research at Johannesburg, South Africa prepares a polyvalent antivenene against the Cape cobra, the Mamba and several species of African viper

(c) The Pasteur Institute of Lille, France, used to prepare a number of antivenenes against different species

(d) Institute of Infectious diseases of Tokyo, Japan, used to prepare an antivenene against the 'habu', *Trimeresurus flavoviridis*

(e) Public Health Department of New South Wales, Australia, prepares an antivenene against Australian species

(f) In the United States, Mulford Laboratories prepare a 'nearctic crotalidæ' antiserum against North American Crotalidæ (pit vipers) and a Bothrops antiserum against Central and South American Lachesinæ

The sera are usually issued in ampoules containing 10 c.cm. of serum which have to be kept in a cool place or they lose their potency. It is probable that the 'lyophilic' process, in which the sera are frozen and dried to a powder, will be applied to antivenene in the future and thus will obviate the necessity of keeping them in a refrigerator

travenous route may cause severe anaphylactic symptoms in susceptible individuals

**Precautions**—In the case of persons giving a history of allergy, such as asthma or hay fever, or of previous injection of horse serum, a test for sensitiveness to the proteins of horse serum must be made by giving intradermally 0.1 c cm of a 1-in-10 dilution of horse serum. If no skin reaction occurs, the treatment may be commenced immediately. In the case of a positive reaction (manifested by the appearance of an urticarial weal at the site of the injection which enlarges rapidly and is surrounded by a zone of erythema within 5 to 20 minutes) it is absolutely essential to desensitize the patient before giving the main dose.

The patient can be desensitized by the method described by Kellaway and Morgan (1931).—The following doses are given at half-hourly intervals, 0.025 c cm, 0.1 c cm and 1.0 c cm subcutaneously, and finally 0.1 c cm intravenously. If this dose causes no general allergic symptoms, the intravenous injection may be given very slowly. If allergic symptoms occur, the injection should at once be stopped and 1/50th gr of atropin and 0.5 c cm of a 1 in 1,000 solution of adrenalin chloride should be administered hypodermically.

We have usually adopted the practice of giving 50 c cm of concentrated antivenene intravenously diluted with the same quantity of 25 per cent glucose solution to start with and then the balance of the dose slowly in a pint of 5 per cent glucose in normal saline. No ill effects were noticed in any of the patients.

After the requisite quantity of antivenene has been given, the ligatures may be removed.

#### PRACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS

When a patient is brought to him, the first problems facing the practitioner will be to decide (i) whether the patient was actually bitten at all, (ii) whether or not the snake was a poisonous one and in the former case (iii) whether it inoculated a fatal or dangerous dose. He then has to decide how far he is justified in carrying out possibly mutilating procedures on the chance that the snake may have been a poisonous one and that the dose may have been one that would ordinarily prove fatal.

If the snake is captured or killed and is not too badly mutilated it must be identified (*vide supra*). A careful examination for tooth and/or fang marks of the part supposed to have been bitten and of the surrounding tissues for local reaction must be made.

Prompt action is necessary as delay may be fatal. The chances must be weighed on the evidence available (see Diagnosis). One's decision will naturally be somewhat influenced by the circumstances under which treatment is to be given, for example if there were a chance that the snake was poisonous, it would be wrong to withhold antivenene, on the other hand, one would hesitate to take such drastic procedures as amputating a limb or even making extensive incisions which might damage important structures and would usually be a potential source of sepsis unless the suspicion were well founded.

It will be as well now to consider the case of snake bite as an emergency in four different sets of circumstances

A In the jungle or bush where no medical equipment is available and first aid has to be applied

B In the isolated village dispensary where no antivenene is obtainable

C In an out-station hospital where, although there is no antivenene at hand this will be obtainable within a few hours

D In a well-equipped hospital where antivenene is available in sufficient quantity

A. In the jungle or bush where no medical equipment is available, and 'first aid' has to be applied.—A ligature must be placed immediately above the bite and a second tight (arterial) ligature around the first single-bone portion of the limb proximal to the first ligature, that is, except in the case of a bite on the tip of a digit when the second ligature might be put around the proximal phalanx, around the humerus or femur. Mouth suction should be applied over the punctures and, if a sharp and reasonably clean knife is available, a cruciate incision may be made into the fang marks to facilitate effective suction, but it is doubtful if any further cutting procedures should be undertaken in these circumstances. The patient must be reassured as far as possible and, when they are available, given hot coffee or tea to drink and  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain of morphia subcutaneously. He must then be removed to the nearest place where further treatment can be given

Wherever possible the snake should be killed, without damaging the head unduly, and identified or preserved for identification

Do not give alcohol if it is thought that the bite was by a poisonous snake, as it is definitely detrimental

B. In the isolated village dispensary where no antivenene is obtainable.—This is the situation that probably nine times out of ten faces the medical man who has to treat snake bite in tropical countries. A firm ligature sufficient to stop the lymph flow and the venous return should be applied immediately proximal to the bite and an artery-occluding tourniquet further proximally around the upper arm or thigh. The patient should be assured and any treatment for primary shock thought necessary should be administered, but alcohol should not be given (*vide supra*). The patient and his friends should be questioned more closely regarding the incident and a decision made as to the probabilities of the snake having been a poisonous one. This will be facilitated if the snake was killed and brought with the patient. If the decision is in favour of an effective bite by a poisonous snake, then under a local or a general anaesthetic a series of incisions should be made under strict antiseptic conditions, one deep cruciate incision immediately over the bite, a number of shallower ( $\frac{1}{4}$  inch) cruciate incisions in a circle around the bite at the edge of the swelling and, if the swollen area is a wide one, several incisions should be made within this area. Suction must be applied for half an hour or more and as much fluid as possible drained away from the site. The wound should be irrigated with warm citrate saline to encourage the bleeding. When the bleeding has stopped, the arterial tourniquet should be released and the suction repeated. The arterial tourniquet need only be reapplied if the bleeding is dangerously profuse. The suction should be applied at hourly intervals for 10 to 15 hours, but may then be discontinued if no further general symptoms appear, and any symptoms that have developed show evidence of subsiding. Plenty of fluid, including hot demulcent drinks, must be given to the patient and, if, during this procedure, he loses a dangerous amount of blood, a blood transfusion must be administered

Other treatment for secondary shock and other general symptoms, and for the various complications that may arise will naturally be given (*vide supra*)

C. In an out station hospital where although there is no antivenene at hand, this will be obtainable within a few hours—Tourniquets must be applied and vigorous local measures for eliminating the toxin as indicated above undertaken to prevent the absorption of a fatal amount before the antivenene is obtained. Primary shock must be treated and other symptomatic treatment applies as need arises.

D. In a well equipped hospital where antivenene is available in sufficient quantity—if no tourniquet has been applied both tourniquets and ice should be applied immediately while the patient or his friends are being questioned and the syringe and antivenene are being prepared for injection. Primary shock should be treated. Tien antivenene should be given intravenously by preference with the usual precautions (*vide supra*). If there is any question regarding the identity of the snake or when other than genus specific antivenene is being given—e.g. in the case of echis or krait bite when only the divalent cobra and Russell's viper antivenene is available—local treatment for eliminating the venom must be undertaken (*vide supra*).

## REFERENCES

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| ACTON H W and KNOWLES R<br>(1921)     | Snakes and Snake Biting <i>Practice of Medicine in the Tropics</i> by Byam and Archibald Vol I 683 |
| CHOPRA R N and CHOWHAN J S<br>(1939)  | Snake Bites and their Treatment in India part II <i>Indian Med Gaz</i> 74 422                      |
| DESMAR R I (1931)*                    | Snakes of the World The Macmillan Company New York   |
| JACKSON D (1929)                      | Treatment of Snake Bite <i>Southern Med J</i> 22 605   |
| KELLAWAY C H and MORRIS F G<br>(1931) | Treatment of Snake Bite in Australia <i>Med J Australia</i> 1 432                                  |
| SCHMIDT A P and DAVIS D D<br>(1911)*  | <i>Field Book of Snakes</i> Putnam and Sons New York   |

---

\* General references\* not cited in text

## RABIES

	PAGE
DEFINITION	860
EPIDEMIOLOGY	860
ÆTIOLOGY	861
PATHOGENESIS	861
SYMPTOMATOLOGY	862
DIAGNOSIS	862
PREVENTION	863
<i>Control of rabies in animals</i>	863
<i>Control of the infection in man</i>	863
Cauterization	
The rabid dog	
Indications for vaccination	
Anti rabie vaccination	863
TREATMENT	864
PROGNOSIS	864

**Definition**—Rabies or hydrophobia is a zootic disease which is potentially world wide in its distribution but has been excluded from certain countries and entirely banished from others it is however always a serious problem in the tropics. It is caused by a filtrable virus which is transmitted to man by the bite of carnivores usually canines. The virus spreads along the nerves and the symptoms are mainly of a nervous nature excitation and/or depression and later paralysis. When the symptoms are established the disease is invariably fatal.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

One of the reasons for the relatively heavy incidence of rabies in the tropics is the presence of innumerable stray dogs and of other actual and potential reservoirs of infection for example jackals foxes and mongoose in India and vampire bats in Brazil Trinidad and Jamaica. Another cause is general administrative and sanitary backwardness in these countries.

The disease is very widespread in India and in the Pasteur Institute in Calcutta which is only one of several such institutes in the country as many as 10 000 persons undergo anti rabie treatment annually. It is also very prevalent in Africa and South and Central America.

The disease has apparently never been introduced into Australia this is the result of rigid quarantine rules aided possibly by the absence of any



potential wild reservoirs of infection. It was banished from Great Britain by rigidly enforced muzzling orders of half a century ago, as well as by the adoption of a six months' quarantine period for imported dogs, but was temporarily reintroduced after the First World War, apparently by the returning soldiers' dogs which evaded the quarantine regulations. In the United States, where the control problem is admittedly a complex one on account of its many miles of land frontier, between fifty and sixty deaths from rabies occur each year.

There is a popular superstition that the disease is confined to certain seasons of the year, especially the late summer days. There is no statistical support for this belief.

### ÆTIOLOGY

The causal organism is a medium-sized filtrable virus, about 125 millimicrons in diameter. For infection to occur, the virus must reach nerve tissue, it cannot therefore be transmitted through the unbroken skin or mucous membrane.

By repeated sub-passage of the virus directly on to the brain of a series of rabbits or sheep, it is possible to change an ordinary 'street' virus, with its long and inconstant incubation period, into a virus with a fixed incubation period of three to six days. After attenuation—by one of several recognized methods—this 'fixed' virus introduced subcutaneously into man is usually innocuous, but retains its antigenic properties.

Most animals are susceptible to infection, but not all are capable of transmitting it by their bite. This is probably true of the large herbivora that are frequently infected in some countries. As far as man is concerned, dogs, jackals, cats and possibly 'vampire bats' are the only important transmitters of infection, though other animals may act as regional reservoirs of infection. In the United States during 1941, out of 7,877 cases of rabies 6,648 were in dogs. The dog may have the virus in its saliva 3 to 4 days before symptoms of the disease appear, and it remains infectious until it dies, death usually occurring within six days of the onset of symptoms.

### PATHOGENESIS

The virus spreads up the nerve trunks until it reaches the cord from which point its spread is both centripetal and centrifugal. Spreading along the efferent nerves, the virus reaches the nerve terminals in many organs in the body, and infected nerve ganglia are shed into the secretory fluids, *e.g.* the saliva. Symptoms do not appear until the central nervous system is involved, hence the incubation varies considerably, from under 30 days to over 60 days according to the distance of the point of entry from the central nervous system. In the brain it produces an encephalomyelitis.

The most characteristic specific changes are produced in the pyramidal cells of the hippocampus major where the specific Negri bodies are most readily found, though they are often present in other nerve cells in the brain. Negri bodies are acidophilic bodies observed in the cytoplasm of the nerve ganglion cell, they vary considerably in size and shape, usually being 3 to 10 microns in diameter and round or oval in shape and are granular in appearance. Negri bodies are not parasitic structures but result from the reaction of the cell to the virus, and are comparable to the inclusion bodies that are seen in various parenchyma cells in other virus infections.

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period is from two weeks to six months, this is influenced by several factors, including the site of the bite (*vide supra*). The onset is usually preceded by a day or so of malaise, headache, insomnia, irritability, and slight fever, or the onset may be sudden, with the development of periods of restlessness, anxiety and hyperexcitability. Breathing becomes rapid and 'air hunger' may develop. These periods of excitement alternate with periods of calm, but the former tend to become longer and soon are accompanied by actual spasms of muscle groups, such as those of deglutition. These spasms are precipitated when the patient attempts to drink, and in his thirsty state even the sight or thought of water may cause the spasmodic retraction of the head in a series of jerks. Spasms are also precipitated by other stimuli such as a light touch, noise or even air movement. These spasms alternate with periods of complete normality when the patient's mind is clear and he talks perfectly rationally about his condition. Later, the spasms are replaced entirely by paralysis which is at first local but eventually becomes generalized. Sweating and salivation is increased and the mouth is often filled with a ropey and frothy mucus. There is often a low fever.

Eventually, the patient sinks into a paralysed and weak state and death follows, or this may occur suddenly during one of the spasms, within 2 to 3 days of the onset of symptoms.

Other types have been described including a form in which paralysis develops from the onset and simulates acute ascending myelitis.

## DIAGNOSIS

The combination of the history and clinical picture are usually sufficient to make a diagnosis certain but hysteria, malingering, tetanus, meningitis, encephalitis and poisoning and, in the paralytic type, other paralyzes, e.g. Landry's may have to be excluded.

Post mortem diagnosis may be made in man or dog by examination for Negri bodies and by animal inoculation. Both impression and crushed preparations of Ammon's horn in the hippocampus major (in the floor of the lateral ventricle) and of the oculomotor nucleus should be made, stained by Giemsa's method and examined for Negri bodies (*vide supra*).

Cerebral inoculations of mice should also be made. Webster (1942) recommends the following procedure —

A bit of Ammon's horn of the suspected animal is emulsified by grinding it in a mortar diluted about 20 times with sterile water or broth and injected in 0.03-cc quantities through the skulls into the brains of eight 2 to 3 weeks-old Swiss mice. In case the suspected material is contaminated it may be immersed for several hours in 10 per cent ether and then injected intracerebrally or into the gastrocnemius muscle in 0.02-cc volumes. On the 5th, 6th and 7th days respectively, one mouse is sacrificed and its brain examined for Negri bodies according to the techniques described above. The remaining mice are observed for 20 days for signs of rabies. Mice developing lower limb paralyzes and becoming prostrate are sacrificed and their brains tested for Negri bodies.

If the suspected material really contains rabies virus the mice usually show Negri bodies on the 5th or 6th days, become sick on the 7th to 10th days and die on the 9th to 12th days. They are generally uniform in their response—either nearly all become sick and die or all remain well. Rarely do the mice remain well for periods of 15 days and then develop rabies.

Great care should be taken to avoid self infection while carrying out these examinations.

Whenever possible expert advice should be obtained and if examination is to be carried out elsewhere, the whole brain in the case of man and the whole head in the case of the dog should be sent in a suitable receptacle to the laboratory on ice—not on dry ice

### PREVENTION

**Control of rabies in animals**—This is first a matter of wise legislation and then rigid enforcement of the laws made. Six months quarantine for imported dogs, the licensing of all dogs and the destruction of all stray (unlicensed) dogs and the muzzling of all dogs while at large or in any public place whenever there is a rabies epizootic have successfully controlled this disease in several countries. Compulsory inoculation of dogs has also been adopted with success. It may be necessary to maintain these control measures over long periods and some of them of course permanently especially when there is a danger of reintroduction of infection by wild carnivores but rabies is an essentially controllable disease and should be controlled.

**Control of the infection in man**—When an individual is bitten by a dog that is known or suspected to be rabid the wound should be cleaned immediately and cauterized. After protecting the skin with vasoline this may be done carefully with fuming nitric acid or pure phenol which should be washed out with sterile saline. powdered potassium permanganate can also be used. The extent of the cauterization must depend on the site of the bite and on the chance of the dog's being rabid. While it must be admitted that unsightly scars have often been produced unnecessarily there is considerable evidence that skillful cauterization is of value. Cauterization must not be used as an excuse for neglecting anti rabie vaccination.

**Anti rabie vaccination** should be carried out as early as possible in every case of effective bite by a dog which is known to be rabid. Before this step is taken a determined effort to find out whether or not the animal was rabid should be made. When it can be caught it should be shut up and kept under observation and if it dies within 10 days or shows obvious signs of rabies and has to be destroyed the brain must be examined or sent for examination for evidence of rabies. If it survives this period it may be assumed that it was not rabid.

**The rabid animal**—The first evidence is a departure from normal behaviour and disposition. An unusual display of affection or the reverse a withdrawal from human and canine company irritability and snappishness should arouse suspicion. Later the animal will often run amok biting everything and everybody and uttering a shrill meaningless bark. An unsolicited bite from a dog should always raise suspicion and when it is from a jackal it may be assumed that the animal is rabid. The animal's lower jaw sometimes drops and it dribbles saliva. As opposed to the excitable or furious form of the disease a paralytic form also occurs and the first sign may be difficulty in swallowing often diagnosed as a bone in his throat.

Many febrile conditions such as distemper will cause cerebral symptoms especially in the young dog these symptoms may include irrational behaviour with apparent aural and visual hallucinations which will often simulate rabies.

The virus is present in the salivary glands of a dog 3 to 4 days before it shows evidence of rabies.

**Indications for vaccination.**—Whether anti-rabic vaccination is begun immediately or whether a report on the dog is awaited will depend on circumstances, the probability of the dog's being rabid and on the nature and location of the bite. In the case of severe bites on the upper limb and face, treatment should be begun immediately if there was any possibility that the animal was rabid, the same applies to any effective bite if there is strong evidence that the animal was rabid. On the other hand, if the animal is under observation and the bite is a slight one, through clothes or on the trunk or lower limbs, it will be safe to await the verdict on the condition of the dog. Further, when a dog under observation is declared non-rabid, any course of treatment commenced can be discontinued.

The virus does not enter through the unbroken skin so that licks and other contact with rabid animals are not an indication for anti-rabic vaccination. It is, however, the practice, in most Pasteur institutes in India at least, to advise anti-rabic vaccination for anyone who has had any direct contact with a rabid or supposedly rabid animal. It is difficult to criticize this cautious attitude, but perhaps the time has come for a greater display of moral courage. The treatment is expensive and not entirely without risk.

**Anti-rabic vaccination.**—Many types of vaccine, both dead and alive, have been used. There is considerable evidence that the best and most economical to prepare on a large scale is phenolized sheep vaccine, made up as a 1 per cent emulsion of sheep's brain. It is given subcutaneously in doses of 5 c cm daily for 14 days. During the course of injections, the patient is advised to take only light exercise and to avoid alcohol.

The only post-vaccinal accident, other than the avoidable ones due to sepsis, is paralysis, varying from that of a localized group of muscles to an ascending paralysis of the Landry type. This sequel only occurs in about one in ten thousand cases when killed vaccine is used, although more frequently with live vaccine. The difference suggests that many of the latter cases are examples of fixed-virus rabies. It is very rarely fatal.

### TREATMENT

No specific treatment of the slightest value has yet been discovered.

The patient should be put to bed in a darkened room, protected from all external stimuli, and kept under the influence of sedatives and anti-spasmodics, of the latter, the classical one is atropin. Sedatives must be administered in particularly large doses if they are to produce their effect.

### PROGNOSIS

Experience indicates that, once symptoms have developed, the infection cannot be overcome and a fatal issue is inevitable. It must however be appreciated that there are many factors, namely, the position\* and depth of the bite, the genus of the biter (jackal bites are more frequently fatal

\*The importance of this factor is well brought out in a recent report of the Pasteur Institute of Bengal, attached to the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine; an analysis of the Indian patients who underwent treatment during 1939 shows the following —

Position of Bite	Number Treated	Deaths	Death Rate
Leg	3203	12	0.375
Trunk	164	0	—
Arm	1877	16	0.85
Head	250	11	4.40

than dog bites), the interposition of clothing, and the infectivity of the bite, to be taken into account, and it has been diversely estimated by different observers that from 2 to 80 per cent of all persons actually bitten by rabid animals, if untreated, would develop the disease. The present day opinion is that the figure is about 10 per cent, and that efficient anti-rabic treatment will reduce the death rate in these persons, as a group, to about 2 per cent, but here yet another variable factor comes in, the time after the bite at which treatment is given. Most Pasteur institutes give a lower death rate than this, but their figures are usually diluted by a large number of persons who were not bitten at all or who were bitten by non-rabid animals.

## REFERENCES

- \*McKENDRICK, A. G. (1933) .. Rabies. *The British Encyclopædia of Medical Practice*, 10, 446
- \*— (1940) .. A Ninth Analytical Review of Reports from Pasteur Institutes on The Results of Anti-rabies Treatment. *League of Nations Bull. Health Organization*, IX, 31
- \*PROCA, B., and BOWEN, S. (1940) . Anti-rabic Immunization. *Living Vaccines and Killed Vaccines. League of Nations Bull. Health Organization*, IX, 79
- WEBSTER, L. T. (1942) .. Rabies. The Macmillan Company, New York

---

\* Not referred to specifically in text

## A NOTE ON MYIASIS AND SCARABIASIS\*

### MYIASIS

At times, invasion of the tissues and organs of man and other animals by fly maggots may take place. This condition is comprehensively known as myiasis.

The screw-worm larvæ of *Chrysomya bezziana* will infest the natural orifices of the human body, such as the ear, mouth, eye, nose, and vagina, and cause considerable destruction of tissues. Myiasis due to *Cochliomyia hominivorax* is common in man in tropical America.

The flesh-fly, *Sarcophaga*, generally causes external myiasis. The larvæ are deposited on gangrenous sores, lacerated wounds, etc., and being saprophagous in their habits they bring about a rapid healing of the ulcers. Larvæ of *Sarcophaga* sp., and of *Chrysomya megacephala*, have been successfully employed in the treatment of cellulitis and osteomyelitis in India, whereas in America larvæ of *Lucilia serricata*, *Phormia regina*, and *Calliphora erythrocephala* grown in a sterile condition have been employed for artificial maggot therapy.

Cutaneous myiasis is often caused by larvæ of bot-flies; subcutaneous tumours are generally produced. The maggots of sheep bot-flies, *Œstrus ovis*, have been found in the conjunctiva and nasal cavities of man in the Central Sahara, in the United States, and elsewhere.

Intestinal myiasis is to a great extent accidental, the larvæ being swallowed with food. The frequency with which 'rat-tailed' larvæ of the drone fly, *Eristalis tenax*, occur in liquid excrement should make one extremely cautious in accepting the numerous reports of these larvæ being evacuated with the stools. There are, however, several cases on record in which untoward symptoms, such as indigestion, constipation, emaciation and dysentery could be associated with these larvæ in the intestine.

### SCARABIASIS

Scarabiasis or "beetle-disease" is caused by the invasion of the intestine by dung beetles, this occurs particularly in children. It has not been reported in sucklings and only once in an adult. Only those who have cut their teeth and are able to take solid food are affected.

The reports usually state that the insects are passed with the faeces at intervals which may extend over some months. The passing of the beetles is generally associated with symptoms of failing health such as loss of appetite, occasional diarrhoea, dysentery, progressive emaciation, and sometimes there are slight rises of temperature. The stool is usually semi-

\* By Dr D N Roy, M D, Professor of Entomology, Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine

solid, never hard, and, after it has been voided, the attention of the mother is attracted to some movement in it, a beetle gradually works its way up to the surface, emerges and flies away. As a rule the infestation is by more than one beetle and sometimes over a period of months large numbers are passed, the health of the child improving in the intervals. Strickland and Roy (1939) have discussed at length the method by which these insects gain access to the alimentary canal and they believe that the infestation takes place *per anum*.

Instances have been reported from the eastern parts of India and Ceylon also from South Africa.

#### REFERENCES

- STRICKLAND C and ROY, D N. Scabiasis or the Presence of Beetles in the Intestine. *Indian Med Gaz* 74, 416 (1939)

# SUBJECT INDEX

Caps and small caps indicate chapter title and sub-title

- Abdominal pain, in dysentery, 418
- Abortion, as complication in cholera, 393
  - habitual, due to vitamin deficiencies, 752
- Abortus febr, 353
- Abcess, amebic, therapeutic test for, 447
  - due to schistosome eggs, 717, 721
  - in filarial infection, 674
  - liver, technique of aspiration in treatment of, 449
  - perinephric, differentiated from liver abscess, 418
  - pin-point, in granuloma venereum, 565
  - resulting from *Paragonimus* infection, 723
  - sub-acute, in dracunculiasis, 700
  - sub-phrenic, differentiated from liver abscess, 449
- Absorption, failure of, as a cause of sprue, 464
- Abyssinia, kala-azar in, 137
  - seasonal incidence of, 140
  - lathyrism in, 812
  - schistosomiasis in, 709
  - yaws in, 525
  - yellow fever in, 297
- Acanthocheilonema perlati*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 656
- Acclimatization in the tropics 17, 39
- Accole form of malaria parasite, 68
- Achlorhydria, in dysentery, 409
  - in para-sprue 477
  - in pellagra, 794
  - in sprue, 467
- Achlorhydric anemia 823
- Achrestic anemia, 823
- Acid-fast bacilli, demonstration of, 508
- Acne vulgaris* in differential diagnosis of yaws 532
- Acridavine in treatment of ringworm of feet, 577
  - of yaws, 534
- "Actinic-ray proof" clothing, 24
- Actinomycosis, in differential diagnosis of liver abscess, 448
  - in differential diagnosis of lymphopathia venereum, 560
- Adder (*Vipera berus*), 843, 847
- Addisonian pernicious anemia, 823
- Addison's disease, in diagnosis of sprue 469
- Adhesion phenomenon, in diagnosis of trypanosomiasis, 211
- Adhesion test, in Weil's disease, 252
- Adrenal cortex, in kala-azar, 149
- Adrenal glands, effect on, in the tropics 13
- Adrenalin, in diagnosis of malaria, 85
  - in test for beriberi, 779
- Aedes aegypti*, 666
  - transmitter of dengue fever, 314
- Aedes albopictus*, transmitter of dengue fever in the Philippines 314
- Aedes luteocephalus*, as vector of yellow fever, 293
- Aedes scutellarius* var *pseudoscutellarius*, 660, 666
- Aedes simpsoni*, as a potential transmitter of yellow fever, 299
- Aedes taeniorhynchus*, 666
- Aedes togoi*, 666
- Aerosol bombs 116
- Estivo-autumnal malaria 57
- Eristus ovis*, the bot fly, 866
- Afforestation as a factor in disease distribution, 5
- Africa, *Ancylostoma brasilense* in, 609
  - blackwater fever in, 125
  - Central, Loa loa in, 689
  - plague in 323
  - tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233
  - linea imbricata in 580
- East plague in, 323
  - tick borne relapsing fever in 233
  - yaws in 525
- Equatorial, schistosomiasis in, 708
  - yaws in, 525
  - filariasis in, 657
  - leprosy in 482, 485, 489
- North, sand fly fever in 317
  - tick-borne relapsing fever in 233
  - veldt sore in, 552
- Northwest, tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233
- oriental sore in, 179
- poisonous snakes of, 847
- rabies in, 860
- relapsing fever in, 225



- Africa sleeping sickness in 203  
   South plague in, 323  
   veldt sore in 552  
   Tropical beriberi in 771  
   granuloma venereum in, 563  
   hookworm in 608  
   onchocerciasis in, 690  
   tropical macrocytic anaemia in 829  
   ulcus tropicum in 511  
   Weil's disease in, 246  
 African trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness), 197  
 Afridol (antiseptic soap) 574  
 Age, as contributory factor in heat stroke, 35  
 Agglutination, in bacillary dysentery, 412  
   in Malta fever, 358  
   in plague, 337  
   in tularemia, 350  
 Agkistrodon mokasen (copperhead), 843  
 Agkistrodon piscivorus (water moccasin or cotton mouth), 843  
 Aglypha 838, 841, 846  
 Agriculturist, and nutrition 768  
 Air-conditioning in offices and houses, in the tropics, 30  
   in operating theatres, 32  
 Air-hunger, in rabies, 662  
 Air movements, 5  
 Akia (*Vicia sativa*), and lathyrism, 813  
 Alabama, pellagra in 785  
 Albumin, in urine in blackwater fever, 129  
   in cholera 382  
   in Weil's disease, 250  
   in yellow fever, 301  
 Albumin globulin ratio in kala-azar, 151  
 Albuminuria after bismuth injections, 536  
   in dengue, 316  
 Albumose substance, acting as toxin in aecaria infection, 598  
 Alcohol as precipitating factor in blackwater fever, 126  
   as psychological stimulant, 21  
 Alcohols, beriberi in 778  
 Alcoholism and heat stroke, 35  
   and neurasthenia 48  
   as cause of tropical neurasthenia, 47  
   differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92  
 Aldehyde (Napier) test, in kala-azar, 160, 164  
   in lymphopathia venereum, 558  
 Aleppo boil 179  
 Aleurone layer, of rice grain, 757  
 Alfalfa, as source of vitamins, 752  
 Algeria kala-azar in, 137  
 Algid forms of malaria, 81  
   in differential diagnosis of cholera, 385  
 Algiers yaws in, 525  
 Alimentary tract, in leprosy, 496  
 Alkali reserve, in blackwater fever, 129  
 Alkaline saline, intravenous use of, in heat stroke, 41  
 Allergic manifestations, due to filariae, 679  
 Allergic nature of pathological reactions in dracontiasis, 699  
 Amaranth composition and caloric value of, 766  
*Amblyomma cayennense*, 272  
*Amblyomma hebraeum*, as vector of typhus, 275  
 Amblyopia, in onchocerciasis, 691  
 Amenorrhoea, in kala-azar, 157  
 America, fish tapeworm infection in, 635  
 American army anti-malaria routine, 105  
 American cities, heat stroke in, 35  
 Amino-acids, 749  
 Amla, as preventive in scurvy, 801  
   as source of ascorbic acid (vitamin C), 752, 799  
 Ammonium sulphate, for killing ova in faeces used for manure, 731  
 Ammon's horn Negri bodies in, 662  
 Amebiasis, 425  
   cutaneous, 544  
   effect of diet in, 759  
 AMOEBIC DYSENTERY, 424  
   anaemia due to, 824  
 AMOEBIC HEPATITIS AND LIVER ABSCESS, 441  
 Amulets, as cures for snake-bite, 853  
   for cure of cholera, 390  
 Anaconda 539  
 Anaemia, as cause of high maternal mortality, 760  
   classification of, 822  
   due to hookworm infection, 618  
   due to schistosomiasis, 720  
   from trichuris infection, 604  
   in blackwater fever, 130  
   in epidemic dropsy, 808  
   in faeciolopsiasis, 736  
   in heat exhaustion, 43  
   in malaria, 75  
   in para-sprue, 478  
   in pellagra 793  
   in sprue, 469  
   intrinsic factor in, absence of, 823  
   pernicious, absence of intrinsic factor in, 465  
   possible association of pyridoxin deficiency with, 763  
 ANAEMIA IN THE TROPICS, 820  
 Anaesthetic variety, neural type leprosy, 499, 500  
 Anahaimin, limited value of, in tropical macrocytic anaemia, 830  
 Anaphylactic shock, 170  
 Anchovy-sauce appearance in amoebic stools 432

- Ancylostoma braziliense*, 583, 589 591, 592, 593, 607  
*Ancylostoma duodenale*, 583, 589 591, 592, 593, 607, 614  
*Ancylostomiasis*, anemia of, 626  
 differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92  
 effect of diet in, 759  
*ANCYLOSTOMIASIS AND HOOKWORM DISEASE* 606  
*Andaman* Weil's disease in 246  
*Andrews* types of shigella, 401  
*Aneurin* (thiamin), 752  
*Ankioneurotic* edema in differential diagnosis of filariasis 689  
*Anglo-Egyptian Sudan* trypanosomiasis in, 201  
 yellow fever in 297  
*Anglo-Indian*, epidemic dropsy among 601, 607  
*Angola*, trypanosomiasis in 201  
*Angular stomatitis* due to riboflavin deficiency, 763  
*Animal* inoculation in diagnosis of trypanosomiasis, 210  
*Animal parasites*, as cause of dysentery, 369  
*Animal trypanosomiasis*, 211  
*Animals*, experimental, infectable with schistosomiasis 715  
*Ankylosis*, due to excess fluoride, 731  
*Anopheles* types of, which transmit malaria, 66  
*Anopheles aconitus*, 666  
*Anopheles albimanus*, 666  
*Anopheles albitarsis*, 666  
*Anopheles algirensis*, 666  
*Anopheles amictus*, 666  
*Anopheles annularis* (fuliginosus), 666  
*Anopheles barbitarsis*, 666, 687  
*Anopheles barbitarsis* var *bancrofti* 666  
*Anopheles fluviatilis* and malaria, 68  
*Anopheles funestus*, 666  
*Anopheles gambiae*, 666  
 and malaria, 68  
*Anopheles hyrcanus* var *nigerrimus*, 666 687  
*Anopheles hyrcanus* var *sinensis*, 666 687  
*Anopheles maculatus*, 666  
*Anopheles minimus* and malaria, 68  
*Anopheles pallidus*, 666  
*Anopheles philippinensis*, 666  
*Anopheles pseudojansen* (ramsayi), 666  
*Anopheles punctulatus*, 666  
*Anopheles rhodensis*, 666  
*Anopheles squamosus*, 666  
*Anopheles stephensi*, 666  
*Anopheles subpictus*, 660, 666  
*Anopheles sundavicus*, 666  
 and malaria, 68  
*Anopheles umbrosus* and malaria, 68  
*Anopheles varuna*, 666  
*Anorexia* due to vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency, 762  
 in beriberi 777  
 in scurvy, 800  
*Anorexia*, a diagnosis of sprue, 469  
*Anoxemia*, in blackwater fever, 129  
*Antelope* as reservoir of trypanosomiasis infection 201  
*Anthelmintic* in treatment of filariasis, 684  
 of granuloma venereum, 567  
 of schistosomiasis, 726  
*Anti amaryl* measures 307  
*Anti-dermatitis* factor (pyridoxin or vitamin B<sub>6</sub>), 788  
*Anti-dysenteric* serum, 417  
*Anti rabic* treatment, 860  
 vaccination in, 864  
*Antimony tartrate*, in treatment of clostridiosis, 731  
*Antimony* (Chopra) test in kala azar 164  
*Antimonyl tartrate* in treatment of filariasis, 683  
 of granuloma venereum, 567  
 of lymphopathia venereum, 561  
 of schistosomiasis 726  
*Antivenene*, in treatment of snake bite, 854 855  
 polyvalent 856  
*Antypol* in treatment of sleeping sickness 212  
*Anura* in blackwater fever treatment of, 131  
 in cholera, 395  
 in leptospirosis 251  
*Anxiety neurosis*, in pellagra 793  
*Aphasia*, in relapsing fever, 235  
*Aphonia*, in beriberi, 777  
 in infantile beriberi, 782  
*Aplastic anemia*, 823  
*Apoplexy*, differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92  
*Appendectomy* in schistosomiasis 727  
*Appendicitis amebic*, 435  
 differential diagnosis of, from liver abscess 448  
 from malaria, 92  
 resulting from ascari infection, 598  
 supposed result of threadworm infection, 601  
*Apple* 767  
*Arab countries* bejel in 539  
*Arabia*, bejel in 540  
 dracontiasis in 694  
 filariasis in 657  
 heat stroke in 35  
 hydatid disease in, 738  
 plague in 322  
 schistosomiasis in, 709  
 yeldt sore in 552  
*Arabs* 13  
*Arctomys bobac*, 329 See also Marmot

- Argemone mexicana*, as cause of epidemic dropsy 806
- Argentina dengue fever in, 314  
hookworm in, 608  
hydatid disease in, 738 740  
*Hymenolepis* infection in, 642  
kala-azar in, 139  
muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192  
plague in, 323
- Ariboflavinosis 752 763  
a diagnosis of sprue, 469
- Armadillo, as reservoir in Chagas's disease, 219  
tick-borne relapsing fever in, 234
- Armenian stock, Cooley's anaemia in persons of 832
- Armigeres obturans, 687
- Arneth count, 13, 150
- Aromatic diamidines, in treatment of kala-azar, 171
- Arsenic in treatment of malaria, 105  
of jaws, 534
- Arsenic poisoning anaemia of, 824  
in differential diagnosis of beriberi, 779
- Arsenic-antimony preparation, in treatment of Oroya fever, 292
- Arspenamine, as precipitating factor in blackwater fever, 126  
in leptospirosis, 253  
in South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis, 195  
in ulcer tropicum, 550
- Arthralgia in lymphopathia venereum, 558
- Arthritis, as a complication of dysentery, 409  
chronic, resulting from dracontiasis 700
- Artificial cooling in tropics, 30
- Ascariasis, 596
- Ascaridol, in oil of chenopodium, 625
- Ascaris lumbricoides, 587, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 596, 644
- Ascaris suum, 596
- Ascites due to fascioliasis 736  
due to schistosomiasis, 717  
in infantile cirrhosis of liver, 817
- Ascoli treatment in malaria, 110
- Ascorbic acid (vitamin C), 752, 797  
in treatment of scurvy 802  
sources of 798
- Asepto (antiseptic soap), 574
- Asia an endemic area of leprosy, 489  
oriental sore in, 179  
plague in, 322
- Asia Minor, louse borne diseases in, 261  
pellagra in 785  
tularemia in, 347
- Asiatic Russia relapsing fever in, 225
- Asp (*Vipera aspi*), 843, 847
- Aspergillus as cause of pinta, 537
- Asphyxia, in snake bite, 850
- Aspidium filix mas* (male fern), in treatment of *Hymenolepis* infections, 615  
of tapeworm infection, 610
- Aspiration, in treatment of liver abscess, 449
- Assam, epidemic dropsy in, 804  
filariasis in, 659  
high maternal mortality in, 760  
kala-azar in, 137  
liver embriacata in, 580  
jaws in, 525
- Asthenia in trypanosomiasis, 208
- Asthma, as complication of schistosomiasis, 722
- Ataxic gait, in beriberi, 778  
in yeldt sore, 553
- Atebrin, absorption of, 97  
first use of, 93  
in treatment of flagellate diarrhoeas, 453  
of eupundia, 195  
of malaria, 96  
of oriental sore, 185  
personal idiosyncrasy to, 108  
plasma level of, 97  
test for, in urine, 102
- Athlete's foot, 574
- Atoxyl, in treatment of sleeping sickness, 212
- Atropic virus, 208
- Atropol in treatment of sleeping sickness, 212
- Auchincloss's operation in filariasis, 686
- Australasia leprosy in, 486
- Australia, beriberi in, 771  
Central, "irkiutja" in, 524  
filariasis in, 657  
granuloma venereum in, 563  
hydatid disease in, 743  
Malaria fever in, 354  
poisonous snakes of, 847  
South, hydatid disease in, 738, 739  
yeldt sore in, 552  
jaws in, 525
- Australian copperhead, 842
- Australorbis glabratus*, 713
- Austria, tularemia in, 347
- Auto-infection, in *Hymenolepis nana*, 642  
in granuloma venereum, 565  
in strongyloidiasis, 630
- Autolysed yeast, in treatment of tropical macrocytic anaemia, 828
- Azemiops ferox* (Ferox's viper), 843
- Azotemia, in blackwater fever, 130
- BACILLARY DYSENTERY, 399  
anaemia due to, 824  
in aetiology of hill diarrhoea, 480
- Bacillus coli* infections, differential diagnosis of, from liver abscess, 448
- Bacillus fusiformis*, 645

- Bacteriophage, use of, in treatment of  
  cholera, 374, 390  
  of dysentery, 418
- Bacterium alkalescens*, 402
- Bacterium ombiguum* Schmitz, 402
- Bacterium dysenteriae*, 400
- Bacterium dysenteriae* Boyd, 401
- Bacterium flexneri*, 379
- Bacterium pseudo-carolinense*, 420
- Bacterium sonnei*, 402
- Bacterium tularensis*, 316  
  the causal organism of tularemia, 315
- 'Bacto'-beef extract, in *Shigella* medium,  
  411
- Bael fruit, in dysentery, 419
- Baghdad boil, 179
- Balantidiasis, 453
- Balantidium coli*, 453
- Balkans, louse-borne typhus in, 261  
  relapsing fever in, 225
- Baltic countries, fish tapeworm infection  
  in, 635
- leprosy in, 495
- Banana, 767
- Banded rattlesnake (*Crotalus horridus*),  
  843, 847
- Bandicoots, in plague epizootics, 329
- Barbadoes, malaria in, 55  
  yaws in, 525
- Barbus puckerli*, 702
- Barcoo river area, yeldt sore in, 552
- Bergen's diplococcus in ulcerative colitis,  
  457
- Bark, cinchona, 93
- Barlow's disease, 752, 797, 800
- Barometric pressure, 5
- Bartonella bacilliformis*, casual organism  
  of Oroya fever, 288
- Bartonella canis*, 289
- BARTONELLOSIS 288 See Oroya fever
- Basal metabolic rate, in the tropics, 12
- Batavia, beriberi work in, 773
- Bathroom, the, in the tropics, 29
- Bauris, 191 See South American muco-  
  cutaneous leishmaniasis
- Bayer 7602 in Chagas's disease, 222
- Bears, as definitive hosts of fish tapeworm  
  infections, 636  
  as intermediate hosts of helminth infec-  
  tions, 589
- Beef, as medium of infection in helminth  
  infections, 589  
  calorie value of, 767
- Beef tapeworm, 635
- Beer, 'country', as source of vitamin B,  
  756  
  in tropics, 21
- Beetle disease, 866
- Beggars, exploitation of elephantoid limbs  
  by, in Far East, 675
- BEJEL, 539
- Belgian Congo, onchocerciasis in, 690
- paragonimiasis in, 731
- yaws in, 525
- Belgium, leptospirosis in, 253
- Benares cholera in, 378
- Bengal, cholera in, 376  
  epidemic dropsy in, 803, 801
- filariasis in, 659
- foot-rot in, 574
- granuloma venereum in, 563
- infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 817
- tinea imbricata in, 580
- H. malaya* infection in, 687
- Bengal tiger, *Paragonimus* infection in,  
  731
- Bengal-Assam type of malaria, 58
- Bengalese, epidemic dropsy among, 803
- Benger's food, in treatment of amoebic  
  dysentery, 439  
  of bacillary dysentery, 419
- BERBERI, 751, 762, 770  
  conditioned, 778
- digitalis in treatment of, 781
- electrocardiography in, 777
- in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509
- of pellagra, 794
- sporadic, 778
- etrophanthus in treatment of, 781
- sub-clinical, 778
- BENISEMI, INFANTILE, 782
- Berberine sulphate, in the treatment of  
  oriental sore, 188
- Bernhardt's disease in differential diag-  
  nosis of leprosy, 509
- Bernes, as source of vitamins, 752
- Beta-naphthol, in treatment of hookworm  
  infection, 625
- Betz layer, involvement in pellagra, 790
- Beverages and alcohol in the tropics, 20
- Bhain (*Isopaphula*), 19, 419
- Bicarbonate solution, in treatment of  
  cholera, 392
- Bier's euction in treatment of snake-bite,  
  854
- Bihar, epidemic dropsy in, 804  
  infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 817
- yaws in, 525
- Bilharzia (*Schistosoma*), 369
- Bilharzial dysentery, 369
- Bilharziasis, differential diagnosis of, from  
  liver abscess, 448
- Bihrubumuria, in blackwater fever, 127
- Biochemical equilibrium, maintenance of,  
  in cholera treatment, 391
- Biochemical tests for beriberi, 779
- Biological methods in the control of  
  malaria, 117
- Biskra button, 179
- Bismuth, in treatment of yaws, 536
- Bismuth, in treatment of amoebic dysen-  
  tery (carbonate), 439

- Bismuth, in treatment of hill diarrhoea, 480  
 in treatment of yaws, 531  
 precipitated bismuth, 536  
 tartrate, 536
- Bitot's spots, 752, 762  
 as a symptom of vitamin A deficiency, 46
- Bitter Boot Valley, Rocky Mountain  
 spotted fever in, 273
- Black Death 322
- Black fever, 137 See Kala-azar
- Black snake, the, 842, 817
- Black tongue, in dogs, analogy with pellagra, 788
- 'Black vomit,' in yellow fever, 302
- Blackwater fever, the anæmia of, 825
- Blastocystis hominis, 436
- Blood culture, in diagnosis of undulant fever, 358
- Blood dressings, in treatment of ulcer tropicum, 550
- Blood picture, in amebic dysentery, 433  
 in beriberi, 776  
 in cholera, 381  
 in chronic post-dysenteric ulcerative colitis, 457  
 in dengue fever, 314  
 in dysentery, 406  
 in epidemic dropsy, 808  
 in fasciolopsiasis, 736  
 in filariasis, 672  
 in hookworm infection, 618  
 in infantile cirrhosis of liver, 817  
 in kala-azar, 150  
 in liver abscess, 447  
 in louse-borne typhus, 263  
 in malaria, 75  
 in Malta fever, 356  
 in Oroya fever, 290  
 in pellagra, 790  
 in plague, 334  
 in rat-bite fever, 240  
 in relapsing fever, 229  
 in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 273  
 in sand fly fever, 317  
 in schistosomiasis, 719, 723  
 in scurvy, 799  
 in sickle-celled anæmia, 832  
 in sleeping sickness, 206  
 in sprue, 466  
 in strongyloidiasis, 631  
 in tick-borne relapsing fever, 234  
 in trichinosis, 650  
 in tropical macrocytic anæmia, 829  
 in tsutsugamushi, 277  
 in tularemia, 348  
 in Weil's disease, 249  
 in yellow fever, 300
- Blood pressure, in kala azar, 155  
 in the tropics, 12
- Blood-sucking parasites, anæmia caused by, 821
- Blood sugar, in kala-azar, 151
- Blood transfusion, as means of malarial transmission, 72  
 in hookworm infection, 627
- Blood volume, in the tropics, 12
- Blubbery tissue, in filariasis, 669
- Box-constrictor, 838, 839
- Boeck's sarcoid, differentiated from sarcoid of epidemic dropsy, 809
- Bohvia, Oroya fever in, 289  
 plague in, 323  
 Smith American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192
- Bombay Presidency, dracontiasis in, 691  
 filariasis in, 659
- 'Bontb', aerosol, 116
- Bone marrow, in kala-azar, 148  
 in Oroya fever, 290  
 in relapsing fever, 229  
 in sprue, 466  
 in Weil's disease, 249  
 Leishman-Donovan bodies in, 142
- Bone necrosis in leprosy, 516
- Bones, hydatid cysts in, 743  
 rarefaction of, in yaws, 523
- Bonifazione or bonification, 117
- Boomerang leg, in yaws, 531
- Booms-lang 812
- Boophilus annulatus*, the cattle tick  
 which spreads 'Q' fever infection, 279
- Boophilus decoloratus*, as vector of typhus, 275
- Bored-hole latrine, 30, 414, 622
- Bornholm disease, 318
- Borneo, fasciolopsiasis in, 734  
 hookworm in, 608  
 limea imbricata in, 580  
*Wuchereria malayi* infection in, 687
- Bornu, dracontiasis in, 694
- Boston, trichinosis in, 647
- Bot-flies, as cause of cutaneous myiasis, 866
- Bothrops atrox* (*B. lanceolatus*), the Fer-de-lance, 843
- Bothrops jararaca* (the Jararaca), 843
- Bothrops jararacussa* (the Jararacussa), 843
- Bothrops lanceolatus* (*B. atrox*), 843
- Bouché oil, in pinta, 539  
 in treatment of leucoderma, 584
- Boyd's classification of Indian typhus, 282
- Boyd's types of Shigella, 404
- Braun, hæmorrhages in, in snake-bite, 851  
 hydatid cysts in, 743
- Brawny skin, in elephantiasis, 675
- Brazil, *Ancylostoma braziliense* in, 609  
 beriberi in, 771  
 dengue in, 314  
 dracontiasis in, 694

- Brazil filariasis in 657  
*granuloma venereum* in, 563  
hookworm in 608  
kala-azar in 139  
leprosy in 489  
paragonimiasis in, 731  
pinta in, 537  
rubea in 860  
schistosomiasis in, 708  
South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192  
*tinea imbricata* in 580  
trichinosis in, 617  
typhus in 271  
Breathlessness, in beriberi, 777  
in scurvy, 800  
Brewer's yeast, in treatment of beriberi, 781  
source of vitamin B<sub>2</sub>, 762  
Brilliant green, in treatment of ringworm of feet, 577  
Brill's disease, 263  
Brisbane, 'Q' fever in, 279  
British Guiana dracontiasis in, 691  
filariasis investigations in, 683  
South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192  
British Isles, leprosy in, 483  
British soldiers in India, prickly heat in, 571  
Bronchitis, differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92  
Broncho-pneumonia, as complication in infantile cirrhosis, 818  
in paragonimiasis, 733  
Bronchopneumonic type of malaria, 82  
*Brucella abortus*, causal organism of abortus fever, 353, 362  
*Brucella melitensis*, causal organism of Malta fever, 353  
*Brucella suis*, 353 See *Brucella abortus* as causal organism in abortus fever, 362  
*Brucellosis*, antitoxin of, 827  
Brussels sprouts, composition and caloric value of, 766  
BTU (British Thermal Unit), 27  
Bubonic plague, 511  
Buenos Aires 608  
Bulgarianized milk, in treatment of bacillary dysentery, 419  
*Bulinus truncatus*, 713  
*Bungarus candidus* (the common krait), 842, 850  
Burma, blackwater fever in, 125  
cholera in, 376  
filariasis in 657  
hookworm in, 608  
leprosy in, 482, 489  
malaria in, 56  
plague in, 323  
*tinea imbricata* in, 580  
Burma yaws in 525  
Burnouse of Arab, 8, 21  
'Bush start', 21  
*Buschmüller*, the (*Lachens muta*), 843, 847  
Butter as source of vitamins, 752  
Butterfly erythema in pellagra, 792  
in post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis 159  
Buttermilk, 755  
Cabbage, composition and caloric value of, 766  
Cachar, *Wuchereria malaya* infection in, 687  
yaws in 525  
Calabar swelling, 689  
Calabria oriental sore in, 179  
Calend briquettes for rat destruction, 340  
Calciferol, 752, 764  
Calcium content, of blood in kala-azar, 151  
deficiency, as a cause of sprue, 464  
daily requirements, 750  
gluconate, in treatment of trichinosis, 652  
in treatment of sprue, 470  
percentage of, in rice, 758  
Calcutta, epidemic dropsy in 804  
filariasis in, 660  
infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 816  
pellagra in, 785  
Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine, 806, 807  
Pasteur Institute at, 800, 864  
*Calliphora erythrocephala*, 422, 806  
Collagen formation of, by vitamin C, 752  
Calomel, in treatment of cholera 397  
Caloric value of food-stuffs, 766, 767  
Caloric, large, 748  
requirements, 748  
value, 748  
*Calymmatobacillus granulomatis*, 564  
Camels as intermediate hosts of *Echinococcus*, 738  
trypanosomiasis in, 211  
Cameroons paragonimiasis in 731  
schistosomiasis in, 709  
Camphor, in treatment of prickly heat, 574  
Campolon, in treatment of tropical macrocytic anemia, 831  
Canada, fish tapeworm infection in, 635  
malaria absent from, 56  
schistosomal dermatitis in 709  
tularemia in 347  
Cancer, in the tropics, 4 See also Carcinoma  
Cancerum oris, in kala azar, 156  
*Candida albicans*, 575  
Canines as reservoir in helminth infections of man 589

- Canthorrhaphy, lateral, in leprosy, 517  
 Canton clonorchiasis in, 729  
 Cape cobra, 847  
 Cape Colony schistosomiasis in, 709  
 Capillary-fragility test, Gotthlin's, 800  
 Carate (pinta) 537  
 Carbarone in treatment of dysentery, 416  
   chronic amebic, 410  
   of yaws 536  
 Carbohydrate dietary requirements 750  
 Carbohydrate-thiamin ratio 807  
 Carbon dioxide snow, for destroying larvae  
   of *Ancylostoma braziliense*, 625  
 Carbon tetrachloride 644  
   in treatment of balantidiasis, 454  
   of fascioliasis, 455, 736  
   of hookworm infection, 625  
   of *Esophagostomum apistomum* in-  
   fection, 455  
   poisoning, differentiated from yellow  
   fever, 364  
 Carcinoma, as sequel to clonorchiasis, 731  
   to schistosomiasis, 722  
   differential diagnosis of, from liver  
   abscess 448  
 Cardiac changes, due to hookworm infec-  
   tion, 618  
 Cardiac type of malaria, 82  
 Carditis, in the tropics, 4  
 Caribbean Islands, dracontiasis in, 604  
 Carnivores, and hydatid disease 739  
 Carotene (pro-vitamin A), 752, 762  
 Carrots, as a source of vitamins, 752  
   composition and calorie value of, 766  
 Casual collar, 792  
 Cashew nut, 767  
 Casoni test, for hydatid disease, 744  
 Cassia *beareana*, extract, as specific in  
   the treatment of blackwater fever,  
   131  
 Cassia *fstula*, extract, in treatment of  
   blackwater fever, 131  
 Castellani's fuchsin paint, 580  
 Castle's intrinsic factor, 790  
 Cat, as host of *Echinococcus*, 738  
   as reservoir of infection in paragonimi-  
   asis, 732  
 Chagas's disease in, 219  
   definitive host of fish tapeworm infec-  
   tion, 636  
   rat bite fever in, 240  
   South American mucocutaneous leish-  
   maniasis in 193  
 Cat snake 842  
 Catania, kala-azar in 137  
 Catarrhal jaundice, in differential diag-  
   nosis from yellow fever, 304  
 Cattle, as intermediate hosts of beef tape-  
   worm infection 636  
   of *Echinococcus*, 738  
   of nematode infections, 589  
 Cattle as the reservoir of abortus fever  
   infection 303  
 Cauliflower, as source of vitamins, 752  
 Cauterization, in prevention of rabies, 863  
 Ceilings, in the tropics, 28  
 Celebes schistosomiasis in, 708  
   *Wuchereria malayi* infection in, 687  
 Celery, composition and calorie value of,  
   766  
 Cellotex, 27  
 Cellulitis, in differential diagnosis of  
   leprosy, 509  
   in dracontiasis, 700  
   treated by maggot therapy, 866  
 Central America, filariasis in, 657  
   granuloma venereum in, 563  
   hookworm in, 608  
   leprosy in, 455  
   pinta in, 537  
   poisonous snakes of, 847  
   rabies in, 800  
   sand fly fever in, 317  
   tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233  
   yaws in, 525  
 Central nervous system, in sleeping sick-  
   ness 205  
*Ceratophyllus fasciatus*, as transmitter of  
   rat-borne plague, 331  
*Cercaria elva*, 709, 716  
*Cercaria ocellata*, 709, 716  
 Cercariae of *Schistosoma*, 709  
*Cercopithecus* monkeys, trypanosomiasis  
   in, 210  
 Cerebrospinal fever, frequent occurrence  
   of, in tropics, 3  
 Cerebrospinal fluid, in relapsing fever, 235  
   in sleeping sickness, 206  
 Cervical rib, in differential diagnosis of  
   leprosy, 509  
 Cestoda, 583, 589  
 Ceylon, *Ancylostoma braziliense* in, 609  
   cholera in, 371  
   filariasis in, 657  
   hookworm in, 609  
   malaria in, epidemic, 58  
   meloidosis in, 366  
   plague in, 323  
   scarabiasis in, 867  
   sprue in, 463  
   tinea imbricata in 580  
   *Wuchereria malayi* infection in, 687  
   yaws in, 525  
 CHAGAS'S DISEASE, 217  
   interstitial fibrosis of myocardium in,  
   220  
 Chancreoid, in differential diagnosis of  
   lymphopathia venereum, 560  
 Chaplis' as preventive of prickly heat,  
   576  
 Charcot-Leyden crystals, 433, 438  
   in amebic dysentery, 432

- Charcot-Leyden crystals, in coccidiosis, characteristic, 454
- Cheese, caloric value of, 767
- Cheilosis, 752
- due to riboflavin deficiency, 763
- Cheirpompholyx, 576
- Chenopodium, oil of, 644
- in treatment of ascaris infection, 599
- of filariasis, 694
- of hookworm infection, 625
- of trichuris infection, 604
- Cheyne-Stokes breathing in blackwater fever, 130
- Chicago epidemic of amœbic dysentery, 425
- Chicle-gum gatherers, occurrence of South American micro-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192
- Chlublains, due to pyridoxin deficiency, 763
- Chile, louse-borne typhus in, 261
- South American micro-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192
- trichinosis in, 647
- Chilling local, 24
- Chilomastix mernsi, a common intestinal flagellate, 451
- China, beriberi in, 771
- blackwater fever in, 125
- cholera in, 371 *et seq*
- clonorchiasis in, 779
- fasciolopneumia in, 731
- filariasis in, 657
- gnathostomiasis in, 704
- granuloma venereum in, 563
- helminthic diarrhoea in, 455
- hookworm in, 606
- hydatid disease in, 738
- kala-azar in, 138
- leprosy in, 485 *et seq*
- Malta fever in, 354
- paragonimiasis in, 731
- pellagra in, 755
- plague in, 322 *et seq*
- relapsing fever in, 225
- schistosomiasis in, 708
- sprue in, 463
- tinea imbricata in, 580
- typhus in louse-borne, 261
- Huchereria malayi* infection in, 687
- Chinese, Cooley's anemia in, 834
- Chiniofon in treatment of chronic amœbic dysentery, 440
- Chittagong Hill Tracts, jaws in, 525
- Chlorides in urine, test for, 40
- Chlorination of water, in prevention of cholera, 388
- to destroy amœbic cysts, 429
- to kill cercariae of Schistosomes, 725
- Chloroform in treatment of hookworm infection, 625
- Cholæmia as cause of death in infantile cirrhosis, 818
- Cholam (*Sorghum vulgare*), 766
- Cholangitis suppurative, differential diagnosis of from liver abscess, 448
- Cholecystitis differential diagnosis of, from liver abscess, 448
- from malaria, 92
- in cholera, 383
- CHOLERA, 3, 370
- belt, 24
- charms for cure of, 390
- collapse in, 382, 395
- differential diagnosis of from malaria, 92
- effect of nutrition in, 759
- forecasts of incidence of, 379
- quarantine regulations for, 385
- Cholera-red reaction, 374
- Choleraic type of dysentery, 408
- Choleraphage in treatment of cholera, 397
- Cholesterol blood content of in blackwater fever, 129
- Choline requirements of in tropics, 754
- Chota Nagpur, jaws in, 525
- Christophers method of taking spleen index, 120
- Chromatoid bodies in *Entameba histolytica* cysts, 437
- Chrysomya bezziana* in malaria, 866
- Chrysomya megacephala*, 422
- Chrysomya metacephala*, 866
- Chrysops, as intermediate hosts of helminth infections, 559
- vectors of Loa loa, 689
- Chrysops dimidiata*, 689
- Chrysops discalis*, a transmitter of tularemia, 345, 346
- Chrysops niter*, 689
- Chrysorolin synthetic (Cignolin), 579
- Chvostek's sign in beriberi, 778
- in pellagra, 793
- Chyle varix due to filariasis, 678
- Chylæcæle, due to filariasis, 670, 678
- Chylous ascites due to filariasis, 670, 678
- Chylous diarrhoea, due to filariasis, 670, 679
- Chyluria due to filariasis, 665, 670, 678
- Ciknoka, 579
- Cikooal, 96
- Cimex, as vector in Chagas's disease, 218
- Cinchona alkaloids, in malaria, 94
- Cinchonism, 94, 106
- Circinate lesions in bejel, 541
- Circulatory collapse, in beriberi, 777
- in heat stroke, 37
- Cirrhosis of the liver, 435
- diagnosis of from liver abscess, 448
- due to schistosomiasis, 717
- in clonorchiasis, 730



- Citellus beecheyi*, as reservoir of schistosome plague 329
- Clarke's column involvement of in pellagra 790
- Clavus (jaws), 530
- 'Claw hand' in leprosy 500
- Climate as cause tropical neurosthenia 47
- direct effects of 6
- effects of on distribution of disease, 4 6
- indirect effects of in the tropics, 14
- Climate lubo 555 See *Lymphopathia venereum*
- Clostridiosis, 729
- symptomless infection in 730
- Clostridium sinensis*, 587, 588, 589 591, 592, 594 729
- Clothing in the tropics, 23
- Cobra, 817
- common (*Naja naja*) 812 830
- venom of, 849
- Coccidiosis, 454
- Cochin filariasis in 639
- jaws in 525
- Cochlosoma hominivorax*, in myiasis, 806
- Cockroaches as intermediate hosts of *Hymenolepis diminuta* infection, 613
- destruction of hookworm eggs by, 615
- Cock's comb appearance of labia minora, in lymphopathia venereum, 559
- Cocktails, in the tropics 21
- Coconut, 767
- Coconut water as a drink, 21
- Cod liver oil 762
- as source of vitamin D, 764
- dressings in treatment of ulcer tropicum 550
- Colic disease, syndrome of identical to that of sprue 465 470
- COLITIS CHRONIC POST DYSENTERIC ULCERATIVE 456
- Colitis, ulcerative See Ulcerative colitis
- Collargol for visualizing guinea-worms, 703
- Colocasia antiquorum*, 494
- Colombia filariasis in, 657
- Oroya fever in, 289
- pinta in, 537
- South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192
- typhus in louse-borne, 261
- jaws in 525
- Colorado, Rocky Mountain spotted fever in 271
- Colorado tick fever, 313
- Colubridæ, 838, 841 842
- venom of, 849
- Colubrine bite 850
- poisoning differential diagnosis of, 852
- Comfort zone, 8
- Community, prevention of malaria in, 112
- Complement-fixation test, in amebic dysentery, 438
- in diagnosis of paragonimiasis, 733
- in hydatid disease, 744
- in kala-azar, 147
- in leprosy, 489
- in lymphopathia venereum, 559
- in schistosomiasis 723
- Conditioned beriberi, 778
- deficiency state tropical macrocytic anemia, 828
- toxemia, cause of epidemic dropsy, 807
- cause of tropical macrocytic anemia, 764
- Congenital defects, anemia due to, 832
- Congo basin, *Loa loa* infection in, 687
- schistosomiasis in, 708
- Conjunctivitis, in onchocerciasis, 691
- Constipation, in the tropics, 19
- 'correctives' in, 19
- Consumption unit, 755
- Convalescent serum, in leptospirosis, 253
- Convulsions, in infantile beriberi, 782
- in infants in malaria, 80
- in snake bite, 857
- Cook-house, 19 See Kitchen
- Cooley's anemia, 832, 833
- Cooling artificial, in tropics 30
- Copepod as intermediate hosts of fish tapeworm infection, 637
- Copper, dietary requirements of, 751
- Copper cooking vessels, and vitamin C deficiency, 799
- Copper sulphate in malaria control, 115
- Copperhead (*Aphistodrom mokasen*) 843, 847
- Coppery pigmentation, in pinta, 538
- Coral snake (*Callophis maclellandi*), 842
- 'Co-respondent' shoes, as preventive of prickly heat, 576
- Cornea, sloughing of, in cholera, 393
- Corneal ulcer, treatment of, 517
- Cornwall, hookworm in, 608
- Cortin, in treatment of blackwater fever, 131
- Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (Klebs-Loeffer bacillus), 548
- in ulcer tropicum, 548, 551, 552 553
- COSMOPOLITAN INTESTINAL NEMATODE INFECTIONS, 595
- Cotton mouth or water moccasin (*Aphistodrom mokasen*), 843, 847
- Councilman cell, 300
- Coup de soleil, 34 41 See 'Solar dermatitis'
- Crab jaws, 530
- Crabs, as intermediate hosts of helminth infections, 589
- Cramp stalker's 43
- Cranial nerves affected in leprosy, 500

- Crepung eruption, 608  
 due to hookworm infection, 616  
 in gnathostomiasis, 706
- Crete, kala-azar in 137  
 oriental sore in, 179
- Crocutulus griseus, 143
- Crocutus auratus 143
- Crotalaria (rattle snake very poisonous)  
 843
- Crotalus adamanteus (Eastern diamond-backed rattlesnake), 843
- Crotalus atrox (Western diamond backed rattlesnake) 843
- Crotalus confuentus, 843
- Crotalus horridus (the banded rattlesnake), 843
- Crotalus terrificus (the dog faced rattlesnake), 843
- Crustaceans, as intermediate hosts in parasitism, 732  
 uncooked, as source of infection to parasitism, 731
- Ctenocephalus canis as transmitter of rat-borne plague, 331
- Ctenocephalus felis, as transmitter of rat-borne plague, 331
- Cuba, pinta in 537
- Culex albi, 666
- Culex annulirostris, 666
- Culex fuscocephalus, 666
- Culex habitator, 666
- Culex pipiens, 666
- Culex pipiens var. pallens, 666
- Culex quinquefasciatus (fatigans), 557, 666, 666 680
- Culex tritaeniorhynchus, 666
- Culex whitmorei 666
- Culicoides, as intermediate hosts of helminth infections 589
- Culicoides furens, 657
- Cutaneous manifestations in epidemic dropsy, 809
- Cutaneous myiasis 806
- Cutaneous necrotic thickening of an mental type leprosy, 498
- Cutaneous ulceration due to amebæ, 435
- Cyanogen gas in rat destruction 339
- Cynosis in beriberi 777  
 in infantile beriberi 782  
 in snake-bite 850
- Cyclopidae as intermediate host in dracontiasis 696  
 ecology of, 697
- Cyclops as intermediate host of helminth infections 582  
 elimination of, as preventive measure in dracontiasis, 702
- Cymag for rat destruction 340
- Cysticercosis, 638
- Cysticercus infections, in British soldiers in India 637
- Cystitis differential diagnosis of, in malaria 92
- Cystoscopy in diagnosis of echinostomiasis 722  
 in treatment of chyluria 686
- Cysts multilocular in hydatid disease seriousness of, 745
- Dabolia russelli (Russell's viper), 843
- Dalhaar calorie value of 766
- Dandruff tinea versicolor and 581
- Danube countries fish tapeworm infection in 635
- Dark skinned races greater susceptibility of, to pinta, 537
- DDT malaria control by 115
- Deafness in relapsing fever, 235
- Death adder (*Acanthophis antarcticus*) 842 847
- Deforestation as a factor in disease distribution, 5
- Dehydration in cholera, 381  
 in the tropics 39
- Dein-el zor bejel in, 539
- Delhi boil 179
- Dendroaspis angusticeps (the mamba), 842 650
- DENVIR 312  
 differential diagnosis of from malaria, 92
- DEVELOP SAND-FLY GROUP, 312
- Dentine defects, 752
- Dermacentor andersoni, transmitter of Colorado tick fever, 313  
 of 'Q' fever, 280  
 of Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 271  
 of tularemia 316
- Dermacentor variabilis, as a transmitter of tularemia 317
- Dermacentororensis tickellii 271
- Detrital leishmaniasis differential diagnosis of, from leprosy, 509  
 from leucoderma, 583  
 post-kala-azar, 357 et seq
- Dermatitis as source of secondary bacterial infection in filariasis, 682  
 differential diagnosis of, from leprosy, 509  
 due to vitamin deficiency, 752  
 in pellagra 792  
 schistosomal 719  
 solar 41
- DERMATOPHYTOSIS, 574
- Dermis, in malaria control 115
- Desensitizing doses for anti-dysenteric serum 417
- Desoxycorticosterone acetate in treatment of blackwater fever, 132
- Dhobie as source of tinea cruris 578
- DHOBIE ITCH OR TINEA CRURIS, 578
- Dhoti the cause of leucoderma, 582

- Dutch East Indies Malta fever in 351  
melioidosis in 366  
*tinea imbricata* in 380
- Dutch Guiana South American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis in 192
- 'Dutch wife' use of in prevention of prickly heat 573
- Dyschromatic skin effects in jints 538
- Dysentery amebic carrier state in 431  
441  
incubative period in 433  
localized abscesses in 435  
anemia of 827  
lacillary carriers of 403  
chronic 409  
differential diagnosis of from lymphogallia venereum 360  
from malaria 92  
due to intestinal myiasis 866  
due to scurvy 867  
due to schistosomiasis 721  
due to strongyloidiasis 631  
fulminant 408  
in fasciolopsiasis 736  
in kala-azar 156  
in relapsing fever 235  
increase of during famine 760  
intravenous therapy of 418  
other protozoal and metazoal forms of 451
- Dyspepsia in para-sprue 478
- Dysphagia in infantile beriberi 782  
in para-sprue 478
- Dyspnea associated with gnathostomiasis 706  
in blackwater fever 129  
in infantile beriberi 782
- Earthenware jars used for storing feces for manure 715
- Earwig as intermediate hosts of *Hy menolepis dimidiata* infection 613
- East Africa cholera in 371  
filariasis in 657  
plague in 323  
jaws in 525
- East Indies filariasis in 657  
pellagra in 785  
sprue in 463  
jaws in 525
- Fiber papyrus reference of to lemmaturation apparently to schistosomiasis 708
- Echymoses in scurvy 800
- Echinococcus granulosus* 588 589 592 591 737
- Echinostoma* 588 589 591 592 736
- Echis carinatus* (Phoorsa Echis viper) 813 817  
bite of 851  
treatment of 859
- Economic status as a factor in disease distribution 5
- Fever for horse borne typhus in 261  
Orova fever in 289  
jints in 537  
plague in 323
- Eczema differential diagnosis of from scurvy 532  
due to prickly heat 572  
infective temperature 8
- Eggs as source of vitamins 752  
caloric value of 767  
in Indian diets 755
- Egypt cholera in 378  
filariasis in 657  
hookworm in 608  
sand fly fever in 317  
schistosomiasis in 714 721  
velvet sore in 552
- Egyptian asp the 817
- Egyptian cholera 608
- El Tor strains of cholera vibrio 373
- Electrolytic imbalance in heat stroke 37
- Elephantiasis 674  
of the genitals 555 See lymphopathia venereum
- Elephantiasis graecorum 453 See Lep-tosy
- Elephantiasis limbs in filariasis 670  
skin in filariasis 670
- Eleusine cornucopia (ragi) 766
- Filice Islands filariasis in 657
- Flora gu nearctic as source of vitamin A 751
- Fumigation due to intestinal myiasis 866  
due to scurvy 866  
due to trichurias infection 604  
in para-sprue 479  
in sprue 469  
in trichinosis 651
- Functine in treatment of balantidiasis 453  
of paragonimiasis 731  
overdosage of as cause of tropical neurasthenia 47  
toxic effects of 439
- Functine bismuth iodide (EBI) in treatment of amebic dysentery 438 439
- Emotional instability in avitaminosis B<sub>1</sub> 773
- Empyema as complication in paragonimiasis 733  
differential diagnosis of from liver abscess 448
- Encephalopathy due to niacin deficiency 763  
in pellagra 793
- Endemic (murine) typhus 257 et seq
- Endocrine functions in the tropics 13
- Psittacus* 427
- Enema medicated in treatment of ulcers in the colon 459

- Fuhydrina talakadien*, 813  
*Entamæba coli*, 427  
     differential characters of, 437  
*Entamæba gingivalis*, 427  
*Entamæba histolytica* as factor in ulcerative colitis, 456  
     causal organism in amebic dysentery, 425 *et seq*  
     differential characters of 437  
 Enteric (typhoid), in India, 4  
     differential diagnosis of, from liver abscess 448  
 Enteric-like type of kala-azar, 152  
*Enterobius vermicularis*, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 600, 614  
 ENVIRONMENT AND DISTRIBUTION OF DISEASE, 4  
 Eosinophilia due to hookworm infection, 617  
     in ascaris infection, 598  
     in clonorchiasis, 730  
     in fasciolopsiasis, 736  
     in filariasis, 672, 681  
     in hydatid disease, 731  
     in onchocerciasis 691  
     in schistosomiasis 719, 723  
     in strongyloidiasis, 631  
     in trichinosis 650  
     in trichuris infection 601  
 Ephedra tincture of, in treatment of epidemic dropsy, 811  
 Epiblastotropic reaction in yaws, 523  
 Epidemic, definition of, 324  
 Epidemic Dropsy, 803  
 Epidemic typhus, 3, 261 *See* Typhus, louse-borne  
 Epidemiological Record, League of Nations 378  
*Epidermophyton floccosum*, 575, 578  
*Epidermophyton inguinale*, 578  
 Epididymo orchitis due to filariasis, 677  
 Epilepsy, differential diagnosis of, from malaria 92  
     due to schistosome infection, 721  
 Epileptic fits and cysticercosis, 640  
 Epileptiform fits, resulting from atebim, 108  
 Epistaxis in kala-azar, 156  
     in pneumonic plague, 336  
 Epithelioma 45  
 Epizootic of rabies, 862  
 Ergosterol conversion of, into vitamin D, 6  
     irradiated 764  
 Ergotism, in differential diagnosis of pellagra 794  
*Eristalis tenax*, 866  
 Erysipelas as a complication of oriental sore, 185  
     in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
     in the tropics 4  
*Erythema nodosum*, in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
*Erythrocyte sedimentation rate* (ESR), 150  
     in sickle celled anemia, 833  
 Erythrogenesis, errors of, 822  
 Erythrololysis, errors of, 822  
 Leprosy, 131, 191, 511 *See* South American mucro-cutaneous leishmaniasis  
     in differential diagnosis of yaws, 532  
 ESR *See* Erythrocyte sedimentation rate  
 Essential oils in treatment of cholera, 397  
 Essential-oils mixture, the, 390  
 Fathomene, 555 *See* Lymphopathia venereum  
 Ethyl carbonate of quinine (equisinine), 91  
 Ethyl chloride spray, for destroying larvae of *Ancylostoma braziliense*, 625  
 Eucalyptus, oil of, in hookworm infection, 625  
 Equisinine (ethyl carbonate of quinine), 91  
 Eurasians incidence of sprue among 463  
 Europe, cholera in, 372  
     leprosy in, 485  
     plague in, 323  
     poisonous snakes of, 817  
 Europe, Central, hydatid disease in, 738, 742  
 Evaporation mechanism in the tropics, 14  
 Excrete, importance of, in the tropics, 22  
 Exostoses due to excess fluorine, 751  
 Expectation of life, in India and other countries, 759  
 Experimental animals infectable with schistosomiasis 715  
 Exploratory puncture, in diagnosis of liver abscess, 447  
 Extra-genital lesions, in lymphopathia venereum, 557  
 Extra-genital ulcers, in granuloma venereum, 565  
 Extrinsic factor absence of, 823  
 Eye complications in bacillary dysentery, 409  
 Eye lesions of leprosy, 503, 567  
 Eyelids, swelling of, in trichinosis 650  
 Faeces human, use of, as manure, 715  
     viable *Leishmania* in, 142  
 Famine dropsy, 761  
 Fangs, of snakes examination of, 846  
*Fannia canicularis*, 422  
 Farmers, and hydatid disease, 739  
*Fasciola hepatica*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 736  
 Fasciolopsiasis, 734  
*Fasciolopsis buski*, 455, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 594, 734  
 Fat, absorption of, failure of, as cause of sprue 465  
     physiology of 465

- Fat, dietary requirements,** 749  
   in the tropics, 751  
   in para-sprue, 478  
   in stools, in sprue estimation of 467  
   percentage of, in rice, 758  
**Fatigability, cases, in beriberi,** 777  
**Fat-soluble vitamins** 752  
**Favism** 130  
   differential diagnosis of, 130  
**Fear a viper (*Aeremiops fear*),** 843  
**Felines as reservoir in helminth infections of man** 589  
**Fer-de lance (*Bothrops atrox*),** 843, 847  
**Ferrets rat-bite fever in,** 240  
**Ferrous ammonium sulphate, in treatment of hookworm infection** 627  
**Ferrous sulphate, in treatment of anemia,** 823  
   of anemia of pellagra 700  
**Fever in abortus fever,** 303  
   in African type tick-borne relapsing fever, 235  
   in dengue, 313  
   in filariasis 679  
   in kala-azar, 154  
   in lymphopathia venereum, 556  
   in Malta fever, 357  
   in rat-bite fever, 241  
   in sleeping sickness, 207  
   in trichinosis 650  
   in tritugamulid type, 273  
   in Weil's disease, 250  
   in yellow fever 302  
**Fibro-lypoma, differentiated from filariasis** 650  
**Fibromatosis diffuse, differentiated from filariasis,** 650  
   from jaws, 533  
**Ficus doliana, in treatment of Trichuris infection** 605  
**Ficus plabrata, in treatment of Trichuris infection,** 605  
**Fields rapid staining method in examining for trypanosomes,** 87, 210  
**Fiery serpent,** 694  
**Fiebre boutantique** 275  
**Fiji Islands** 660  
   absence of maltrix from 55  
   *Ancylostoma braziliense* in 609  
   filariasis in, 657  
**FILARIASIS** 588 654  
   differential diagnosis of, from lymphopathia venereum 560  
   from malaria, 92  
   secondary bacterial infection in 670  
   symptomatic classification of, 672  
   symptomless infection in, 674  
**Filariasis Commission of London School of Tropical Medicine,** 683  
**Filarioidea,** 656  
**Filix mas,** 614  
**Fingers as medium of infection in helminth infections** 589  
**Furjal (bejel)** 539  
**Fish as intermediate hosts of helminth infections** 455 589  
   as source of vitamins 752  
   in Indian diets 755  
**Fish tapeworm** 635  
**Fishermen exposed to infection with schistosomiasis** 714  
**Fish liver oils as source of vitamins** 752  
**Fistulae due to schistosome infection,** 721, 722  
**Fixed virus used in vaccine** 861  
**Flatulence in para-sprue,** 478  
**Fleas as intermediate hosts of *Hymenolepis diminuta* infection,** 643  
**Fletcher's medium** 247  
**Flies** 422  
   adult destruction of 423  
   as active agents of cholera infection, 375  
   as transmitter of dysentery, 403  
   control of as a preventive measure against dysentery, 412  
   in spreading of cholera 387  
**Floatation methods for examining stools for ova** 604 620  
   Lane's direct centrifugal for hookworm ova 620  
**Flocculation test, in filariasis** 651  
**Floors in the tropics** 23  
**Florida *Ancylostoma braziliense* in,** 600  
   fish tapeworm infection in 635  
**Fluid intake in the tropics** 39  
**FLUX INFECTIONS, OTHER,** 728  
**Fluorine dietary requirements,** 751  
   poisoning 751  
**Fluorosis,** 751  
**Follicular hyperkeratosis** 752  
**Folliculitis, from prickly heat,** 572  
**Fonilling of dogs dangers of,** 745  
**Fontana stain,** 239  
**Tribondeau's modification of,** 242  
**Food, as medium of infection in helminth infections,** 589  
   deficiency, as a cause of sprue, 464  
   theory of epidemic dropsy, 805  
   preparation and presentation of, in the tropics, 19  
**Food handlers control of, in the prevention of dysentery,** 413  
**Food-stuff common composition and caloric value of,** 766, 767  
**Foot-drop, in beriberi, obviation of,** 781  
   in yeldt sore, 553  
**'Foot rot,'** 25  
**Footwear, in the tropics** 25  
**Forest jaws** 191 *See* South American Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis  
**Formosa, clonorchiasis in,** 729  
**Formosa, fasciolopsiasis in,** 734

- Enhydra valakadieu* 813  
*Entamoeba coli* 427  
     differential characters of 437  
*Entamoeba gingivalis*, 427  
*Entamoeba histolytica*, as factor in ulcerative colitis 456  
     causal organism in amebic dysentery, 425 *et seq*  
     differential characters of 437  
 Enteric (typhoid), in India, 4  
     differential diagnosis of, from liver abscess 448  
 Enteric-like type of kala azar, 152  
*Enterobius vermicularis*, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 600, 611  
 ENVIRONMENT AND DISTRIBUTION OF DISEASE, 4  
 Eosinophilia due to hookworm infection, 617  
     in ascariis infection 598  
     in clonorchiasis, 730  
     in fasciolopsiasis, 736  
     in filariasis, 672, 681  
     in hydatid disease, 734  
     in onchocerciasis 691  
     in schistosomiasis 719 723  
     in strongyloidiasis, 631  
     in trichinosis, 650  
     in trichuris infection 604  
 Ephedra tincture of, in treatment of epidemic dropsy 811  
 Epiblastotropic reaction in jaws, 528  
 Epidemic, definition of, 324  
 Epidemic Dysentery, 803  
 Epidemic typhus, 3, 261 *See* Typhus, louse-borne  
 Epidemiological Record, League of Nations 378  
*Epidermophyton floccosum*, 575, 578  
*Epidermophyton inguinale*, 578  
 Epididymo-orchitis, due to filariasis, 677  
 Epilepsy, differential diagnosis of, from malaria 92  
     due to schistosome infection, 721  
 Epileptic fits and cysticercosis, 640  
 Epileptiform fits, resulting from atabrin, 108  
 Epistaxis, in kala azar, 156  
     in pneumonic plague, 336  
 Epithelioma 45  
 Epizootic, of rabies, 862  
 Ergosterol, conversion of, into vitamin D, 6  
     irradiated, 764  
 Ergotism, in differential diagnosis of pellagra 794  
*Eristalis tenax*, 866  
 Erysipelas, as a complication of oriental sore, 185  
     in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
     in the tropics 4  
*Erythema nodosum*, in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
*Erythrocyte sedimentation rate* (ESR), 150  
     in sickle-celled anemia, 833  
 Erythrogenesis, errors of, 822  
 Erythrolysis, errors of, 822  
 ILLNESS, 134 191 344 *See* South American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis  
     in differential diagnosis of yaws 532  
 ESR *See* Erythrocyte sedimentation rate  
 Essential oils in treatment of cholera, 397  
 Essential-oil mixture, the, 390  
 Ethuomene, 555 *See* Lymphopathia venereum  
 Ethyl carbonate of quinine (euquinine), 94  
 Ethyl chloride spray, for destroying larvae of *Ancylostoma braziliense*, 625  
 Eucliptus, oil of, in hookworm infection, 625  
 Euquinine (ethyl carbonate of quinine), 94  
 Furazins, incidence of sprue among, 463  
 Europe, cholera in, 372  
     leprosy in, 455  
     plague in, 323  
     poisonous snakes of, 847  
 Europe, Central, hydatid disease in, 738 742  
 Evaporation mechanism in the tropics, 14  
 Exercise, importance of, in the tropics, 22  
 Exostoses due to excess fluorine, 751  
 Expectation of life, in India and other countries, 759  
 Experimental animals, infectable with schistosomiasis 715  
 Exploratory puncture, in diagnosis of liver abscess, 417  
 Extra-genital lesions, in lymphopathia venereum, 557  
 Extra genital ulcers, in granuloma venereum, 565  
 Extrinsic factor, absence of, 823  
 Eye complications in bacillary dysentery, 409  
 Eye lesions of leprosy, 503, 507  
 Eyelids, swelling of, in trichinosis, 650  
 Faeces, human, use of, as manure, 715  
     viable *Leishmania* in, 142  
 Famine dropsy, 761  
 Fangs, of snakes, examination of, 846  
*Fannia canicularis*, 422  
 Farmers, and hydatid disease, 739  
*Fasciola hepatica*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 736  
*Fasciolopsiasis*, 734  
*Fasciolopsis buskii*, 455 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 594 734  
 Fat, absorption of, failure of, as cause of sprue 465  
     physiology of, 465

- Fat, dietary requirements, 749  
     in the tropics, 754  
     in *para-sprue*, 478  
     in stools, in sprue, estimation of, 467  
     percentage of, in rice, 758
- Fatiguability, easy, in beriberi, 777
- Fat-soluble vitamins, 752
- Favism, 130  
     differential diagnosis of, 130
- Fox's viper (*Acanthiops fox*), 843
- Felines as reservoir in helminth infections of man, 589
- Fer-de-lance (*Bothrops atrox*), 843, 847
- Ferrets, rat-bite fever in, 240
- Ferrous ammonium sulphate, in treatment of hookworm infection, 627
- Ferrous sulphate, in treatment of anemia, 823  
     of anemia of pellagra, 790
- Fever in abortus feber, 363  
     in African type tick borne relapsing fever, 235  
     in dengue, 315  
     in filariasis, 679  
     in kala-azar, 154  
     in lymphopathia venereum, 555  
     in Malta fever, 357  
     in rat-bite fever, 241  
     in sleeping sickness, 207  
     in trichinosis, 650  
     in *cutaneous* type, 278  
     in Weil's disease, 250  
     in yellow fever, 302
- Fibro-lypoma, differentiated from filariasis, 680
- Fibromatosis diffuse, differentiated from filariasis, 680  
     from jaws, 533
- Ficus doharna, in treatment of Trichuris infection, 605
- Ficus glabrata, in treatment of Trichuris infection, 605
- Fields rapid staining method, in examining for trypanosomes, 87, 210
- Fiery serpent, 694
- Pierre boutonniere, 275
- Fiji Islands, 660  
     absence of malaria from, 55  
     *Ancylostoma braziliense* in, 609  
     filariasis in, 657
- FILARIASIS 588-654  
     differential diagnosis of, from lymphopathia venereum, 560  
     from malaria, 92  
     secondary bacterial infection in, 670  
     symptomatic classification of, 672  
     symptomless infection in, 674
- Filaria Commission of London School of Tropical Medicine, 683
- Filariorhea, 656
- Filix mas, 644
- Fingers as medium of infection in helminth infections, 589
- Firgal (bejel), 539
- Fish, as intermediate hosts of helminth infections, 455-589  
     as source of vitamins, 752  
     in Indian diets, 755
- Fish tapeworm, 635
- Fishermen exposed to infection with schistosomiasis, 714
- Fish-liver oil, as source of vitamins, 752
- Fistula, due to schistosome infection, 721, 722
- Fixed virus, used in vaccine, 861
- Flatulence in para-sprue, 478
- Fleas, as intermediate hosts of *Hymenolepis diminuta* infection, 613
- Fletcher's medium, 247
- FLEAS, 422  
     adult destruction of, 423  
     as active agents of cholera infection, 375  
     as transmitter of dysentery, 403  
     control of, as a preventive measure against dysentery, 412  
     in spreading of cholera, 387
- Flotation methods, for examining stools for ova, 601, 620  
     Lancet direct centrifugal, for hookworm ova, 620
- Flocculation test, in filariasis, 681
- Floors in the tropics, 23
- Florida, *Ancylostoma braziliense* in, 609  
     fish tapeworm infection in, 635
- Fluid intake, in the tropics, 39
- FLUXUS INFECTIONS, OTHER, 728
- Fluorine dietary requirements, 751  
     poisoning, 751
- Fluorosis, 751
- Follicular hyperkeratosis, 752
- Folliculitis, from prickly heat, 672
- Fondling of dogs, dangers of, 745
- Fontana's stain, 239  
     Tribondeau's modification of, 242
- Food, as medium of infection in helminth infections, 589  
     deficiency, as a cause of sprue, 464  
     theory of epidemic dropsy, 805  
     preparation and presentation of, in the tropics, 19
- Food handlers' control of, in the prevention of dysentery, 413
- Food-stuffs common, composition and caloric value of, 768-767
- Foot-drop, in beriberi, obviation of, 781  
     in veldt sore, 553
- 'Foot-rot,' 25
- Footwear, in the tropics, 25
- Forest yaws, 191. See South American Mucro-cutaneous leishmaniasis
- Formosa, clonorchiasis in, 729
- fasciolopneumia in, 734

- Iormosa paragonimiasis* in 731  
   schistosomiasis in, 703  
   tsutsugamushi in 275  
 Foudin (Stibophen), in treatment of  
   clonorchiasis 731  
   of filariasis 684  
   of granuloma venereum, 567  
   of lymphopathia venereum, 561  
   of onchocerciasis, 691  
   of oriental sore, 188  
   of schistosomiasis, 726  
   of South American muco-cutaneous  
     leishmaniasis, 195  
 Fournau 309 (germanin), 212  
 Foxes as reservoirs of rabies infection, 860  
   of paragonimiasis infection, 732  
   tick-borne relapsing fever in, 231  
 Framboesia (jaws), 524  
 Framboesia in jaws, 530  
 Framboesia, 524  
 France, beriberi in institutions of, 771  
   lathyrism in, 812  
   oriental sore in, 179  
   schistosomal dermatitis in, 709  
   typhus in, 271  
   Weil's disease in, 246  
 Frei's test, 559, 566  
 French Guiana, muco-cutaneous leish-  
   maniasis in, 192  
 Freon aerosol bombs 116  
 Friedlander's bacillus similarity of, to  
   Donovan body 566  
 Friendly Islands filariasis in, 657  
 Fruit in Indian diets, 755  
 Fulguration in treatment of chyluria, 686  
 Fulminant bacillary dysentery, in differ-  
   ential diagnosis of cholera, 334  
 Fungulitis, due to filariasis, 677  
 Furfuraceous desquamation, in jaws, 530  
 'Furor tropicus,' 13  
 Furunculosis, from prickly heat, 572  
  
 Gait characteristic, in lathyrism, 814  
   unsteady, in snake-bite 850  
 Gallipoli, veldt sore in 552  
 Gambia trypanosomiasis in 199, 204  
 Gametocytes, in malaria, 89  
   destruction of, as a prophylactic meas-  
   ure 105  
   of Plasmodium, 89, 90  
 Gangosa (jaws), 532  
 Gangrene, as complication in cholera, 353  
   in snake bite treatment, 855  
 Gassing of rats 339  
 Gastric acidity, in cholera, 375  
   in the tropics, 13  
 Gastric ulcer, anaemia due to, 824  
 Gastro-coelic anastomosis, as a diagnosis of  
   sprue 470  
*Gastroduocoides hominis*, 588 589, 591, 592  
  
*Gastrophilus* larvae, as cause of creeping  
   eruption, 610  
 Genito recto anal structure, 555 See Lym-  
   phopathia venereum  
 Gentian violet, 644  
   in treatment of clonorchiasis, 731  
   of *Hymenolepis* infections, 611  
   of ringworm of feet, 577  
   of strongyloidiasis, 631  
 Gerbilles tick-borne relapsing fever in, 231  
 'Germ' of rice grain 757  
 Germany 212 See Antrypol  
 Germany, increase of tuberculosis in, dur-  
   ing World War I, 760  
   leptospirosis in, 253  
   schistosomal dermatitis in, 709  
   Weil's disease in, 246  
 Ghee 755  
*Giardia enterica*, a common intestinal  
   flagellate 451  
*Giardia intestinalis* (lamblia), 451  
 Giardiae, 451  
   a diagnosis of sprue, 470  
 Giemsa's stain, 86, 161, 165 200 230, 239,  
   242 201, 532, 566, 680, 662  
 Gilbert Islands filariasis in, 657  
 Gippy tumour, a diarrhoeal disease, 369  
 Glad puncture, diagnostic method in  
   kala azar, 161  
   in trypanosomiasis, 210  
 Glandular enlargement in tularemia, 349  
 Glandular fever, differential diagnosis of,  
   from malaria, 92  
   in diagnosis of plague, 337  
 Glaucoma, in epidemic dropy, 808, 809  
   treatment of, 811  
 Globulin-precipitation test, in kala azar  
   165  
 Glossina, 198  
*Glossina morsitans*, 199  
*Glossina palpalis*, 199  
*Glossina swynnertoni*, as transmitter of  
   *Trypanosoma rhodesianae*, 199  
*Glossina tachinoides*, as transmitter of  
   *Trypanosoma gambiense*, 199  
 Glossitis, due to riboflavin deficiency, 763  
   due to vitamin deficiency, 752  
 Glucose-absorption cure, in sprue, 469  
 Glycogen mass in *Entamoeba histolytica*  
   cysts, 437  
*Gnathostoma spinigerum*, 588 589, 591,  
   592, 593, 704  
 GNATHOSTOMIASIS, 704  
   differential diagnosis of, from ancylostom-  
   iasis, 619  
 Goats, as Malta fever reservoir, 354  
 Godavari delta, beriberi in 772  
 Gold Coast, schistosomiasis in, 709  
 Gothlin's capillary fragility test 800  
 Goundou (jaws), 532  
 Grana's stain, 336



- GRANULOMA VENEREUM**, 544, 563  
 differential diagnosis of, from lympho-  
 pathia venereum, 560  
 granulomatous ulcer in, 565  
 primary sore in, 565
- Granulopenia**, in Rocky Mountain spotted  
 fever, 273
- Grass snake**, 841
- Great auricular nerve**, affected in leprosy,  
 500
- Great Britain**, abortus fever in 363  
 beriberi in institutions of 771  
 non-tropical sprue in, 463  
 pellagra in, 785  
 trichinosis in, 647  
 Weil's disease in 246
- Greece**, blackwater fever in, 125
- Greek Islands**, kala-azar in 137
- Greek stock** Cooley's anemia in persons  
 of, 832
- Green pit-viper** (*Trimeresurus gramineus*),  
 843
- \* **Green vegetables** as source of vitamins,  
 752
- Green whip snake**, 842
- Ground itch**, 608  
 due to hookworm infection 616
- Ground nut**, 767
- Guatemala** onchocerciasis in 600
- Guianas**, the filariasis in 657  
 hookworm in, 608  
 schistosomiasis in 708  
 South American mucocutaneous leish-  
 maniasis in, 192  
 yaws in, 525
- Guinea pigs** South American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis in 193  
 trypanosomiasis in, 201
- Guinea-Worm Disease** or **Dracunculiasis**,  
 693
- Gumma** diagnosis of, from liver abscess  
 449
- Gummatas** in yaws 528, 531
- Gums** bleeding of, in scurvy, 800
- Habits** contributing, cause of heat stroke,  
 35
- Habitus**, as predisposing cause of heat  
 stroke 35
- Habu the** (*Trimeresurus flaviventris*), 843
- Hamaphysalis humerosa**, as transmitter of  
 'Q' fever infection from rat to rat,  
 279
- Hamaphysalis leachi**, as vector of typhus  
 275
- Hamaphysalis leporis-palustris**, as trans-  
 mitter of tularemia, 346
- Hæmatemesis** in gnathostomiasis, 706  
 in pneumonic plague 336  
 in scurvy 800  
 in snake-bite 851
- Hæmatocele** due to filariasis, 670
- Hæmatochylocele**, due to filariasis 678
- Hæmatochyluria**, in filariasis, 672, 678
- Hæmatological renaissance**, 820
- Hæmatolymphuria**, in filariasis 672
- Hæmatoporphyrinuria**, 45
- Hæmaturia** differential diagnosis of, 130  
 due to filariasis, 670  
 in blackwater fever, 130  
 in gnathostomiasis 706  
 in pneumonic plague 336  
 in scurvy 800  
 in snake bite 851  
 in Weil's disease, 250  
 in yellow fever 301
- Hæmoglobin casts** in urine, in blackwater  
 fever 129
- Hæmoglobin levels**, normal, 821
- Hæmoglobinæmia** in blackwater fever,  
 127
- Hæmoglobinuria** differential diagnosis of,  
 130  
 in blackwater fever 127
- Hamopogon capricornis** as a transmitter  
 of yellow fever, 299
- Hæmolytic anæmia** differentiated from  
 malaria 92
- Hæmolytic crises** in blackwater fever 129
- Hæmolytic streptococcus vaccine**, in treat-  
 ment of filariasis, 685
- Hæmopoietic function** in the tropics 12
- Hæmopoietin deficiency**, 823  
 in sprue, 465
- Hæmoptysis**, anemia due to 824  
 in gnathostomiasis, 706  
 in pneumonic plague, 336  
 in scurvy, 800  
 in snake-bite, 851  
 in trichinosis, 651
- Hæmorrhages** in dengue, 316  
 in snake-bite, 851  
 in vitamin-C deficiency, 799  
 of the new-born, 752  
 petechial in strongyloidiasis 631  
 under the nails, in trichinosis, 651
- Hæmorrhagic diathesis**, 752
- Hæmorrhagic states**, anemia associated  
 with 824
- Hæmorrhoidæ** anemia due to, 824  
 due to schistosomiasis 721, 722  
 effect of, in increasing iron requirements,  
 750
- Hæmostatic serum**, in treatment of snake-  
 bite 855
- Hæmozoin pigment**, 61, 73, 91  
 in blackwater fever, 123
- Hair lotion** antiseptic in prevention of  
 prickly heat 573
- Hair-on-end thickening** of skull, in sickle-  
 celled anemia, 833
- Haldane scale**, for hæmoglobin 821

- Halibut-liver oil, 19, 762  
 Harlequin snake (*Micrurus fulvius*), 812, 847  
 Hawaii, freedom of, from poisonous snakes 817  
   leprosy in 486  
   malaria absent from, 55  
 Headgear, in the tropics, 25  
 Health Bulletin, No 23, 749, 755  
 Heart the in kala-azar, 155  
   in malaria 80  
   in sprue, 466  
   in yellow fever, 300  
 Heat balance 7  
   cramp, 37 43  
   exhaustion, 42  
   hyperpyrexia, definition of, 31  
   loss 7  
   latent, 35  
   production, 7  
   rays of the sun, 7  
   pathological conditions produced by, 34  
   shock, 37 38  
   stroke, 34  
   differentiated from malaria, 92  
   trauma 17  
 Heating, Ventilating and Air-Conditioning Guide, 19  
 Hebrew literature, 'fiery serpent' in, 691  
*Helcosoma tropicum*, 181  
 HELMINTHIC DIARRHOEAS AND DYSENTERIES, 454  
 HELMINTHIC INFECTIONS, 586  
 Hemiplegia, due to schistosome infection, 721  
   in relapsing fever 235  
 Hepatic congestion, differentiated from liver abscess 448  
 Hepatitis a complication of amebic dysentery, 435  
   amebic, 432  
 Herbivores, and hydatid disease, 739  
 Heredity as cause of tropical neurasthenia, 47  
   in neurasthenia 47  
 Herpes zoster, in kala-azar, 156  
 Herpetologist, 838  
*Heterophyes heterophyes*, 455, 588, 589, 591 592  
 Hexylresorcinol, 644  
   in treatment of ascari infections, 599  
   of fasciolopsiasis, 736  
   of hookworm infection, 626  
   of *Hymenolepis* infections, 645  
   of threadworm infection 602  
   of trichurias infection 604  
 Hiccough in cholera, 396  
 High protein meat diet, in treatment of sprue, 473  
 High-stepping gait, in berberi, 788  
 HILL DIARRHOEA, 479  
 Hill tribes, susceptibility of, to yaws, 626  
 Humiliyas, blackwater fever, at foot of, 425  
 Hindus, infantile cirrhosis among, 817  
*Hippelates pallipes*, 510  
   as possible transmitters of yaws, 627  
   suggested as transmitters of pinta, 538  
 Hirsutism, anemia due to, 824  
 Hissar famine in India, 760, 798  
*Histoplasma capsulatum*, similarity of, to Donovan body, 564  
 Hodgkins' disease, differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92  
*Holarrhena anti-dysenterica* in treatment of amebic dysentery, 438  
 Holland, berberi in institutions of, 771  
   Weil's disease in, 216  
 Home leave, 22  
 Hongkong, foot-rot in, 574  
   plague in, 324  
 Hookworm Disease (Ancylostomiasis), 606  
 Hookworm infection, 588  
   anemia of, 623, 624  
   host tolerance in, 616  
   increase of iron requirements in, 750  
   malnutrition associated with, 626  
 Hookworm larvae in soil, estimation of, 622  
 Hops as source of vitamins, 752  
 Horses, as intermediate host of *Echinococcus*, 738  
 House-fly, as possible vector of ulcus tropicum, 516  
 Housing, in the tropics, 20  
 Human excreta, for use as manure, 'sterilization' of, 623  
 Humidity, 4  
   as a factor in yaws incidence, 626  
 Hungary, filariasis in 657  
 Hydatid cysts, calcification of, 742  
   differentiated from liver abscess, 448  
   endogenous budding of, 742  
   exogenous budding of, 742  
   spontaneous rupture of, 742  
 Hydatid Disease, 737  
   education in prevention of, 745  
   propaganda in prevention of, 745  
   surgical measures in treatment of, 745  
 Hydatid thrill, 743  
 Hyderabad, dracontiasis in, 691  
   yaws in, 525  
*Hydnocarpus wightiana*, oil of, in treatment of leprosy, 511, 512  
 Hydra, kala-azar in, 137  
 Hydrarthrosis as a complication of dysentery, 409  
 Hydrogen peroxide, 550  
 Hydrogen-ion concentration in blood, in kala-azar, 150

- Hydrophinae* (Sea snakes very poisonous), 613
- Hygiene, individual in the tropics, 18
- Hymenolepis diminuta*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 635, 642
- Hymenolepis nana*, 587, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 635, 642, 644
- Hyper-adrenia and leucoderma, 582
- Hyperæsthesia, in beriberi, 778
- Hyperbilirubinæmia, in blackwater fever, 127
- Hyperchondriasis, in ulcerative colitis, 458
- Hyper-excitability, in rabies, 862
- Hyperinfection, so-called, in strongyloidiasis, 630
- Hyperkeratosis, follicular, 752
- in bejel, 541
- in pinta, 538
- Hyperpyrexia*, in heat stroke, 36
- Hypertonic saline, 392
- Hypochlorhydria, in para-sprue, 477
- in sprue, 470
- Hypochondriasis, in the tropics, 49
- Hypodermic syringe, as means of malaria transmission, 72
- Hypopigmentation, in yaws, 529
- Hypo-pigmented macules, in post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis, 158
- Hypopituitarism, differentiated from filariasis, 640
- Hypoplastic anemia, 623
- Hypoproteinæmia, 761
- Hypothyroidism, as contributing factor in pellagra, 700
- Hysteria, in differential diagnosis of rabies, 862
- Ice, as predisposing source of cholera infection, 387
- Iceland, beriberi in, 771
- freedom from poisonous snakes in, 847
- hydatid disease in, 738
- leprosy in, 483
- Icthyosis, in differential diagnosis of yaws, 532
- Idaho, Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271
- Idiopathic tropical macrocytic anemia, 823
- 'Ids', 576, 577
- Ill balanced diet, 755, 756
- Immunity See each disease
- Impetigo contagiosa, in differential diagnosis of yaws, 532
- Inaba, cholera strain, 733
- Incubation period See each disease
- India, *Ancylostoma braziliense* in, 609
- beriberi in, 771
- blackwater fever in, 125
- Central Provinces of, dracontiasis in, 694
- epidemic dropsy in, 804
- India Central Provinces of, filariasis of, 659
- infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 817
- Wuchereria malayi* infection in, 687
- yaws in, 525
- dracontiasis in, 694
- epidemic dropsy in, 804
- famine in, 760
- fasciolopsiasis in, 734
- filariasis in, 657
- gnathostomiasis in, 704
- granuloma venereum in, 563
- helminthic diarrhoea in, 455
- hookworm in, 608, 613
- hydatid disease in, 740
- Hymenolepis* infection in, 642
- infant and maternal mortality in, 760
- infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 817
- kala-azar in, 138
- lathyrism in, 812
- leprosy in, 482, 485, 489
- leptospirosis in, 253
- malaria in, 56
- northern, tick-borne relapsing fever in, 213
- North-West Frontier Province of, dracontiasis in, 694
- heat stroke in, 35
- sand-fly fever in, 317
- oriental sore in, 180
- pellagra in, 785
- pinta in, questionable cases of, 537
- plague in, 322 *et seq*
- poisonous snakes of, 817
- rat-bite fever in, 238
- relapsing fever in, 225
- scrubiasis in, 867
- sprue in, 463
- tinca imbricata in, 580
- tropical macrocytic anemia in, 829
- ulcus tropicum in, 544
- United Provinces of, epidemic dropsy in, 804
- filariasis in, 659
- infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 817
- velvet sore in, 552
- Weila disease in, 246
- Wuchereria malayi* infection in, 687
- yaws in, 525
- Indian Medical Gazette, 805
- Indian Plague Commission, 326
- Indian Research Fund Association, 754
- investigations of, on cholera, 386
- Indigestion, caused by intestinal myiasis, 866
- Indo-China, beriberi in, 771
- blackwater fever in, 125
- clonorchiasis in, 729
- fasciolopsiasis in, 734
- hookworm in, 608
- leprosy in, 489

- Indo-China melioidosis in 366  
 piragonimiasis in 731  
 plague in 323  
 relapsing fever in 225  
 tinea imbricata in 550  
 tsutsugamushi in, 276  
*Wuchereria malaya* infection in, 657  
 yaws in 525  
 Indore system of composting, 423  
 Industrial concerns, heat stroke in, 40  
 Industrialization as a factor in disease distribution 5  
 INFANTILE BERNIERI, 782  
 INFANTILE CIRRHOSIS OF THE LIVER, 816  
 intercellular cirrhosis in 817  
 Infantile mortality, in India and elsewhere, 760  
 Infantile scurvy 797  
 Infants, malaria in, 80  
 Infections theory, of anemia, 822  
 of epidemic dropsy, 805  
 of sprue, 463  
 Infective hepatitis, differential diagnosis of, from liver abscess, 92, 419  
 from yellow fever, 301  
 jaundice, 245 See Weil's disease  
 Inflammatory structure, of the rectum, 555  
 See Lymphopathia venereum  
 Influenza differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92  
 Infra red rays, in treatment of filariasis, 686  
 of lymphopathia venereum, 561  
 Insect bite as cause of ulcer tropicum, 546  
 as predisposing cause of skin ulceration, 546  
 Insomnia, in the tropics, 49  
 resulting from trichuris infection, 604  
 Insulin shock, differentiated from malaria, 92  
 International Congress on Leprosy, 483, 499, 513, 522  
 International Journal of Leprosy, 485, 521, 522  
 INTERNATIONAL FLUXES, 368  
 classification of, 368  
 International units (IU), 762  
 Intestinal helminth infections, spread by promiscuous defecation, 599  
 INTESTINAL HELMINTHS, DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF, 644  
 Intestinal myiasis, 866  
 Intestinal tuberculosis 478  
 Intradermal test, in dracontiasis, 701  
 in filariasis, 681  
 in hydatid disease (Casoni test), 744  
 in Malta fever, 359  
 in schistosomiasis 723  
 in scurvy (Rotter's test), 800  
 in trichinosis, 652  
 Intradermal test, in tularemia, 350  
 Intussusception, as complication of ascari infection, 595  
 of dysentery, 409  
 Invalids, as predisposing cause of pellagra, 794  
 in the tropics, 19  
*Iodamrba bütschli*, 427  
 Iodine, dietary requirements of, 751  
 Ipecacuanha, in treatment of amebic dysentery, 438  
 Iran, cholera in, 371  
 dracontiasis in, 694  
 heat stroke in, 35  
 lathyrism in, 812  
 Malta fever in, 354  
 oriental sore in, 179  
 plague in, 323  
 relapsing fever in, 225  
 sand fly fever in, 317  
 tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233, 235  
 Iraq begel in, 639  
 heat stroke in, 35  
 hydatid disease in, 739, 740  
 schistosomiasis in, 709  
 scurvy in, 798  
 yeldt sore in, 552  
 Ireland, freedom from poisonous snakes in, 817  
 louse-borne typhus in, 261, 262  
 Indocyclitis treatment of, 516  
 Intis in relapsing fever, 235  
 'Irkinija' 524  
 Iron, availability of, 750  
 cooking vessels of, as source of iron 754  
 dietary requirements of, 750  
 percentage of, in rice, 758  
 Irrigation, as a factor in disease distribution, 5  
 Ischio-rectal abscess, due to schistosomiasis 721  
 Isogel (Normacol), 419  
 Isolation, as a factor in disease distribution, 5  
*Isospora hominis*, the causal organism of coccidiosis, 454  
*Ispaghula (Plantago ovata)*, 19  
 in treatment of amebic dysentery, 439, 441  
 in treatment of bacillary dysentery, 419  
 in treatment of sprue, 474  
 Italian stock, Cooley's anemia in persons of, 832  
 Italy, blackwater fever in, 125  
 fish tapeworm infection in, 635  
 hookworm in, 608  
 kala-azar in, 137  
 lathyrism in, 812  
 leptospirosis in, 253

- Klebsiella inguinalis*, 564  
 Knee-jerk loss of, in yeldt sore, 553  
 Koch's postulates, 487  
 Kolmer reaction, in bejel 510  
 Korea, clonorchiasis in, 729  
     paragonimiasis in, 731  
 Korakoff's syndrome, in differential diagnosis of beriberi, 779  
     of pellagra, 791  
 Krait 847  
     banded (*Bungarus fasciatus*), 842, 850  
     bite of, treatment of, 859  
     common (*Bungarus candidus*), 812, 850  
 Kuala Lumpur, beriberi work in, 773  
 Kukri snake, 841  
 Kumbh mela, 778  
 Kupffer's stellate cells, 148  
 Kurchi, extract of, in treatment of chronic amoebic dysentery, 441  
 Kyphosis, in sickle-celled anemia, 533  
 Laboratory workers, hookworm infection in, 612  
     undulant fever in, 355  
 Labrador, beriberi in, 771  
*Lachesna* (very poisonous), 843  
*Lachesis muta* (the bushmaster), 843  
 Lactating women, dietary allowances for, 748  
*Laelaps australiensis*, vector of *tsutsugamushi*, 276  
*Laphaut* (bejel), 539  
 Lahore sore, 179  
 Lake Chad, dracontiasis in, 694  
     schistosomiasis in, 709  
 Lake Michigan, schistosomal dermatitis on the shores of, 716  
*La Lepra*, 521  
 Landry's paralysis, after anti-rabic vaccination, 864  
     in differential diagnosis of rabies, 862  
 Lane's direct centrifugal flotation, 620  
 LATHYRISM, 812  
     in differential diagnosis of beriberi, 779  
     of pellagra, 794  
*Lathyrus*, as cause of lathyrism, 812  
*Lathyrus odoratus*, toxicity of, 813  
*Lathyrus sativa*, 813  
 Latrine, bore-hole, 30, 414, 622  
*Latta* (bejel) 539  
 Lead poisoning, anemia of, 824  
     in differential diagnosis of beriberi, 779  
     of leprosy, 509  
 League of Nations, Health Organization, cholera investigations of, 373  
*League of Nations Weekly Epidemiological Record*, 378  
 Leave, in the tropics, 22  
 Lebanon, bejel in, 539, 540  
 Leche de Higuerón, 644  
     in treatment of trichuris infection, 604  
 Leech bite, as cause of ulcer tropicum, 516  
 Leishman-Donovan body, differentiation of, from Donovan body, 564  
*Leishmania brasiliensis*, 131, 142, 147, 191, 192  
*Leishmania canis*, 142, 147  
*Leishmania donovani*, 135, 137, 142, 147, 158, 181  
*Leishmania infantum*, 142, 147  
*Leishmania tropica*, 135, 142, 147, 179, 183, 518  
 Leishmanial dysentery, questionable occurrence of, 369  
 LEISHMANIASIS, 131, 514  
     cutaneous, in differential diagnosis of jaws, 533  
     dermal, in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
 Leishman's stain, 86, 161, 185, 200, 230, 212, 532, 566  
 Lemo, in *Shigella* medium, 411  
 Lentil (maesur dsl), 766  
 Leonard Wood Memorial Conference on Leprosy, 522  
 Leopard, as reservoir of infection in paragonimiasis, 732  
*Lepro Arabum*, 453 See Leprosy.  
*Lepra Bibliotheca Internationalis*, 453, 521  
 Lepromin test in leprosy, 500  
 LERNOST, 481, 514  
     anesthetic variety of, 499, 500  
     colonies for control of, 519  
     confused with filariasis, 657  
     familial susceptibility to, 493  
     in differential diagnosis of oriental sore, 186  
     in western countries, 3  
     intra-dermal injections in treatment of, 512  
     lepromatous (L) type of 483, 485 et seq  
     reaction in, 504  
     leprous eye affections in, 516  
     malnutrition and, 759  
     neural (N) type of, 483  
     reaction in, 501  
     subcutaneous tissues, 496  
     summary of, 521  
 'Leprosy in India', 489, 521  
 Leprosy Review, 521  
 Leptomenigitis, in pellagra, 790  
*Leptopsylla segnes*, a transmitter of rat-borne plague, 331  
*Leptospora*, 246  
*Leptospora biflexa*, 246  
*Leptospora hebdomadis*, 254  
*Leptospora icterohæmorrhagica*, 247  
*Leptospirosis*, 245  
     differentiated from liver abscess, 448  
 Lettuce, composition and caloric value of, 766

- Leucobilin in stools in eprue, 467  
 Leucocyte count, in the tropics, 13  
 Leucocytosis in bacillary dysentery, 405  
   in clonorchiasis, 730  
   in infantile cirrhosis of liver, 817  
   in liver abscess, 446  
   in sickle-celled anemia, 833  
 LEUCODERMA OR VITILIGO, 532, 570, 582  
 Leucoderma, in differential diagnosis of  
   leprosy, 509  
 Leucopenia, in pellagra, 790  
   in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 273  
 Leukemia, in differential diagnosis of in-  
   fantile cirrhosis 818  
   of liver abscess, 448  
   of malaria, 92  
 Levaditi's method of staining for lepto-  
   spira, 251  
 Leyte, schistosomiasis in, 708, 719  
 Lichen planus, in differential diagnosis of  
   leprosy, 509  
   of yaws, 532  
 Lichenous rash, in yaws, 530  
 Lieberkühn, crypts of, infection of, in  
   dysentery, 428  
 Light-stroke, in the tropics, 45  
 Lime juice, as drink in the tropics, 21  
 Lapidol, for visualizing guinea-worms,  
   703  
 Lithium antimony thiomalate (anthio-  
   maline), 567  
   in treatment of filariasis, 681  
 Liver, amebic, involvement of (chart),  
   448  
   as source of vitamins, 752  
   hydatid cysts in, 743  
   in cholera 380  
   in kala-azar, 148 152, 154  
   in lepromatous type of leprosy, 496  
   in malaria, 80  
   in relapsing fever, 229  
   in secondary extra-colonic lesions of  
     amebic dysentery, 431  
   in sleeping sickness, 205  
   in Weil's disease 249  
   in yellow fever, 300  
   Leishman-Donovan bodies in, 142  
   puncture of, in diagnosis of kala-azar,  
     163  
   tropical 50  
 LIVER ABSCESS, 441  
   a complication of amebic dysentery,  
     435  
   differential diagnosis of, from malaria,  
     92  
   direction in which it may burst, 447  
   Liver disease, anemia of, 823  
   due to vitamin deficiencies, 752  
 Liver extract, in treatment of anemia, 823  
   introduction of, 820  
   of para-eprue, 478  
 Liver extract, in treatment of eprue, 474  
   tropical macrocytic anemia, 831  
 Liver\* soup, in treatment of tropical  
   macrocytic anemia, 831  
 Loa inquirenda, 689  
 Loa loa, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 656  
 Loa Loa INFECTION, FILARIASIS DUE TO, 689  
 LOBIASIS, 689  
 Loeffler's methylene blue, for staining of  
   diphtheria bacillus, 554  
 London, leptospirosis in, 253  
 Louse-borne relapsing fever, 223  
 Louse-borne typhus 261  
 Lucilia serricata, 866  
 Lumber puncture, in trypanosomiasis, 210  
 Luminous rays, effect of, 7  
 Lungs hydatid cysts in, 743  
   in cholera, 380  
 Lupus erythematosus, in differential diag-  
   nosis of leucoderma, 583  
   in differential diagnosis of yaws, 532  
 Lymph ascites, 670  
 Lymph glands, in kala-azar, 149  
   in leprosy, 496  
   in sleeping sickness, 205, 208  
   in Weil's disease, 249  
 Lymph varices, 670  
   due to filariasis, 675  
 Lymphadenitis, due to filariasis, 668, 674  
   general, in diagnosis of plague, 337  
 Lymphangitis, due to filariasis, 668, 674  
   Leishman-Donovan bodies in, 142  
 Lymphogranuloma inguinale See Lym-  
   phopathia venereum  
 LYMPHOPATHIA VENEREUM, 337, 544, 555  
   headache in, 558  
   primary lesions in, 557  
 Lymphorrhea, due to filariasis, 677  
 Lymphuria, due to filariasis, 672, 677  
 Lyme, 749  
 Macedonia, blackwater fever in, 125  
 Machado-Guerrero reaction, 222  
 Macrocytic anemia, in para-eprue, 477  
 Madelon variety of neural type leprosy,  
   498  
 Macules, in yaws, 530  
 Marulo-papular lesion in yaws, 529  
 Madagascar, blackwater fever in, 125  
   filariasis in, 657  
   freedom from poisonous snakes in, 847  
   hookworm in, 608  
   plague in, 323  
   use of live plague vaccine in, 341  
   Plasmodium vivax strain in, 61  
   schistosomiasis in, 708  
 Madras beriberi in, 771  
   cholera in, 376  
   fluorosis in, 751  
   granuloma venereum in, 563  
   infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 817

- Madura foot confused with filariasis, 657
- Magenta colour of tongue, in riboflavin deficiency, 703
- Maggot therapy 866
- Maggot that live on man, 866
- Magnesium sulphate fomentations, in treatment of ulcus tropicum, 550
- Maize, composition and caloric value of, 766  
as staple diet, 756
- Maize-toxin theory of pellagra, 767
- Mal del Pinta (pinta), 637
- Malabar filariasis in, 639
- Maladie de sommeil, La, 198
- MALARIA, 3, 52  
anemia of, 822, 824  
as cause of reaction in leprosy, 501  
cerebral forms of, 81  
differential diagnosis of, from infantile cirrhosis, 818  
from liver abscess, 448  
from relapsing fever, 241  
drug prophylaxis in, 112  
effect of diet in, 759  
immunity from, 69  
in children treatment of, 101  
malnutrition and, 759  
poverty and, 759  
quartan, 79  
spontaneous remission in, 78  
tertian malignant, long strain of, 121  
severe anemia of, 825  
therapy of, 71, 121
- Malaria-like type of kala-azar, 152
- Malarial splenomegaly, chronic anemia of, 824
- Malarial ulcers (so-called), 545
- Malassezia furfur, 581
- Malaya beriberi in, 771  
blackwater fever in, 125  
filariasis in 657  
gnathostomiasis in, 704  
hookworm in, 608  
leptospirosis in, 253  
meloidosis in, 366  
schistosomal dermatitis in, 709  
sprue in 463  
tinea imbricata in, 580  
tropical macrocytic anemia in, 829  
tsutsugamushi in, 275  
*Wuchereria malaya* infection in, 687  
yaws in, 525
- Male fern in treatment of tapeworm infections, 640
- Malignant anemia of the tropics, 828
- Malignant disease, a diagnosis of sprue, 469  
suggesting para sprue, 478
- Malignant endocarditis differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92
- Malignant stricture, in differential diagnosis of lymphopathia venereum, 560
- Malignant ulcers, in differential diagnosis of yaws, 533
- Malta, kala-azar in, 137
- Mura Fever 352  
anemia of, 823
- Mamba (*Dendroaspis angusticeps*), 842, 847, 850
- Manchuria, cholera in, 371  
fish tapeworm infection in, 635  
paragonimiasis in, 731
- Manganese, dietary requirements of, 751
- Manganese-mine recruits, hemoglobin levels of, 821
- Mango, 767
- Manic depressive syndrome, in pellagra, 793
- Manipur, yaws in, 525
- Mansonella ozzardi*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 650 657
- Mansonia fuscipennis*, suspected carriers of Rift Valley fever, 311
- Manure, use of human feces as, 715  
hookworm infection and, 614
- Marchafava-Micheli syndrome, 130
- Marmite (veget), as source of vitamin B<sub>2</sub> complex, 763  
as source of vitamins, 752  
in prevention of pellagra, 794  
in treatment of beriberi, 781  
of blackwater fever, 132  
of sprue, 474  
of tropical macrocytic anemia, 823, 831
- Marmot, 329. See Tarabagan
- Marriage, early, contributing to cause of infantile cirrhosis, 817
- Marwari rarity of epidemic dropsy among, 801
- Maryland Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271
- Massi tribes in Africa, diet of, 759
- Massasauga rattlesnake (*Sistrurus catenatus*), 843, 847
- Masur dāl (a lentil), 766
- Mastomys coucha*, as reservoir of sylvatic plague, 329
- Maternal mortality, in India, 760
- Maurer's dots, 84
- Mauritius, cholera in, 371  
epidemic dropsy in, 804  
filariasis in, 657  
malaria in, 85
- McCoy strain of benign tertian malaria, 121
- McLenden strain of malignant tertian malaria, 121
- Measles, in differential diagnosis of dengue, 316

- Meat, in Indian diets, 755  
 Meat-eaters, in tropics, 12  
 Mecca, cholera in, 386  
   pilgrimages to, and spread of cholera, 378  
 Median nerve, affected in leprosy, 500  
 Medical Research, National Institute of, cholera investigations in, 373  
 Mediterranean countries, leprosy in, 455  
 lymphopathia venereum in, 556  
 Mediterranean phthirus, 357 See *Malta fever*  
 Mediterranean stock, Cooley's anemia in persons of, 832  
 Megaloblasts, in anemia, 823  
   in sprue, absence of, 469  
 Meissner's plexus, 465  
 Melena, in pneumonic plague, 336  
   in scurvy, 800  
   in snake-bite, 831  
 Melancholia, in pellagra, 793  
 Melanoblasts, stimulation of, in treatment of leucoderma 551  
 Melano leucoderma, in differential diagnosis of leucoderma, 563  
*Melas*, 378  
   as a factor in disease distribution in India 5  
 Melimpois, 365  
 Memory, deterioration of, due to cysticercosis, 635  
   failure of, in the tropics, 14  
   West Coast 14  
 Mendelian law, 493  
 Meningitis, differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92  
   from rabies, 862  
 Meningo-encephalitic, stage of trypanosomiasis, 208  
 Mental changes, due to cysticercosis, 635  
 Mental depression, in avitaminosis-B<sub>1</sub>, 778  
   in pellagra, 793  
 Mental strain, as a cause of neurasthenia, 45  
   of tropical neurasthenia, 47  
 Menthol, in treatment of prickly heat, 574  
 Mepacrine, *BP*, in malaria, 96 See *Atebrin*  
 Mepacrine (atebrin), in treatment of flagellate diarrhoea, 453  
 Mercurial lotions, in treatment of jaws 534  
 Mercury perchloride, in treatment of ring-worm of feet 577  
 Merozoites, 89, 90  
*Mesocyclops leucares*, 696  
 Mesopotamia, bacillary dysentery in, 410  
 Metabolic failure theory of the cause of sprue, 464  
 Meta-cercariae of *Schistosoma*, 710, 711  
*Metagonomus yokogawai*, 588, 589, 591, 592  
 Metazoal dysentery, 369  
   anemia due to, 624  
 Meteorism, in sprue, 475  
 Methemalbumin, in blackwater fever 129  
 Methemoglobin, in urine, in blackwater fever, 129  
 Methemoglobinemia in blackwater fever, 127  
 Methylene blue, in treatment of balantidiasis, 453  
 Mexico blackwater fever in 125  
 Malta fever in, 351  
   pinta in, 537  
   onchocerciasis in 600  
   tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233  
 Mica in water, as a cause of hill diarrhoea, 479  
 Mice, relapsing fever in 227  
   South American mucro-cutaneous leishmaniasis in 193  
   tick-borne relapsing fever in 234  
   Weiss's disease in 245  
   yellow fever in, 298  
*Microcyclops karici*, 694  
 Microfilaria periodicity of 601  
*Microsporon*, 578  
*Microtus montebelli* as reservoir of tungiasis 276  
 Miliary abscesses, in amebic dysentery, 432  
   in liver, 445  
 Miliary lesions, in Oroya fever, 291  
 Milk, as a medium of cholera infection, 375  
   as source of vitamins, 752  
   caloric value of, 767  
   in Indian diets 755  
   in tropics, 19  
   pasteurization of, in prevention of undulant fever, 360  
 Milk diet, in treatment of sprue, 471  
   in the tropics, 19  
 Millets, 755  
 Millipedes, as intermediate hosts of *Hymenolepis diminuta* infection, 613  
 Mineral dietary requirements, 750  
 Mineral salts, requirements of, in tropics, 754  
 Mineral failure of absorption of, as cause of sprue, 465  
 Miners, hookworm in, 615  
 Minks, as definitive hosts of fish tapeworm infections, 636  
 Miracidia of *Schistosoma* 712  
 MLD (minimal lethal dose) of snake venoms 850  
 Moroccan, water, or cottonmouth, 847



- Mengola, cholera in, 371  
 kala-azar in 139  
 relapsing fever in 225  
 Monocose as reservoir of paragonimiasis infection 732  
 of rabies infection 800  
 Monilia as cause of pinta 537  
 Monkey relapsing fever in 227  
 reservoir in helminth infections of man, 589  
 South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 193  
 typhus fever in, in India, 281  
 yellow fever in, 298  
 Monsoon prickly heat in 574  
 Montana Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271  
 Montenegro, intradermal test of, 105  
 Moranyl (germanin), 212  
 Morbus britannicus 41  
 Morocco, kala-azar in, 137  
 Morpha, in differential diagnosis of leucoderma, 582  
 Morpha, in treatment of amebic dysentery, 440  
 Mucular cells, 205  
 in trypanosomiasis, 206  
 Mowse and dracontiasis, 694  
 Mosqui'o boots', 25  
 Mosqui'o nets, 119  
 Mosquitoes, as intermediate hosts of helminth infections, 589  
 'Mother jaw', 529  
 Moths as intermediate hosts of *Hymenoleps diminuta* infection 643  
 Mowse-protection test, in yellow fever, 299  
 Mouth lesions in pellagra, 792  
 Mozambique, trypanosomiasis in, 204  
 Mucous membranes affected in leprosy, 503  
 Mulford Laboratories preparation of antivenene by, 856  
 Multilocular hydatid cysts, 742  
*Musca domestica*, 422  
 as possible transmitter of yaws, 527  
 Muscular cramps in cholera, 396  
 in trichinosis, 651  
 Muscular dystrophies, due to pyridoxin deficiency, 763  
 due to vitamin deficiencies, 752  
 Muskrat, as reservoir of infection in paragonimiasis, 732  
 Mussurana snake, 842  
 Mustard oil and epidemic dropsy, 803  
 Myasthenia, due to pyridoxin deficiency, 763  
*Mycobacterium leprae*, causal organism of leprosy, 483  
 Mtriasis 866  
 Myocardium, interstitial fibrosis of, in Chagas's disease, 220  
 Mysore infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 817  
 Myxedema, 753  
 Nagai Hills, 514  
 Naga Sore on Ulcus Tropicum, 514  
 Naga hay (the Egyptian asp), 812  
 Naga Hannah (the king cobra), 812  
 Naga raja (the common cobra), 812  
 Naga nigricollis (the spitting cobra), 812  
 Nanukayami, 254 See Seven-day fever of Japan  
 Narcotic poisoning, differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92  
 Nasal secretion, viable leishmania in, 142  
 National Institute of Medical Research, cholera investigations of, 373  
 Near East, hydatid disease in, 740  
*Necator americanus*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 607  
 Neem-bath, the, for rat destruction, 340  
 Negri bodies, 601  
 Nexton's partial immunity of, from hookworm infection, 615  
 Neill-Mooser reaction, 272, 281, 285  
 Neko (antiseptic soap), 574  
 Nellore, India, fluorosis in, 751  
 Nemistoda 588, 589  
 NEMATODE INFECTIONS, INTESTINAL, COSMOPOLITAN, 595  
 NEMATODE INFECTIONS, INTESTINAL, TROPICAL, 606  
 Neocarphenamine, in treatment of ulcer tropicum, 550  
 of yaws, 534, 541  
 Neosalsaran in treatment of ulcer tropicum, 550  
 of yaws, 534, 541  
 Neostibosan, in treatment of filariasis, 684  
 of kala-azar, 168, 188  
 Neotrepol in treatment of yaws, 536  
 Nerve sheath, removal of, in treatment of leprosy, 517  
 Nerve thickening detection of, 508  
 Nerve trunk involvement, in neural type leprosy, 500  
 Nerve, in leprosy, 496  
 Nervousness resulting from trichuris infection, 601  
 Netherlands Indies See Dutch East Indies  
 Neural (N) type, of leprosy, 483, 498  
 Neuralgia in trypanosomiasis 208  
 Neurasthenia, as result of prickly heat, 572  
 associated with beriberi, 778  
 in differential diagnosis of pellagra, 794  
 in the tropics, 13  
 Neuritic paralysis in epidemic dropsy, 809  
 Neuritis, as a complication of dysentery, 409  
 in relapsing fever, 235  
 resulting from dracontiasis 700

- Neurological effects of climate, in the tropics, 13
- Neuro-macular type of leprosy, 506
- Neuro-syphilitic conditions, malaria treatment of, 121
- Neurotoxic substance from dead ascaris, 593
- Neurotoxins, of cobra venom, 850  
of rattlesnake venom, 851
- Neurotropic virus, 293, 303
- Nevada, Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271
- New Caledonia, leprosy in, 486
- New Guinea, filariasis in, 637  
paragonimiasis in, 731  
tinea imbricata in, 580  
Wuchereria malaya infection in, 687
- New Orleans, epidemic of yellow fever in, 290  
trichinosis in, 647
- New South Wales, Public Health Department of, preparation of antivenene by, 856
- New York, heat stroke in, 35
- New Zealand, freedom from poisonous snakes in, 847  
hydatid disease in, 733, 741, 743
- Newfoundland, beriberi in, 771
- Niacin (nicotinic acid), 752, 763  
first synthesis of, 767  
in food, 763  
in treatment of pellagra, 795  
in treatment of sprue, 470  
requirements of, 763
- Niacinamide (nicotinamide), 790  
in treatment of pellagra, 795
- Nicolas-Favre disease, 555, 556 *See* Lymphopathia venereum
- Nicotinic acid (niacin), 752, 763
- Nigeria, schistosomiasis in, 709, 719
- Night-blindness, 752  
due to vitamin-A deficiency, 761  
in the tropics, 46
- Night-soil, breeding of flies in, 423
- Night's rest, importance of, 23
- Nili swab, 602
- Nile delta, schistosomiasis, 708
- Nile valley, dracontiasis in, 694
- NNN medium 143, 161, 185, 200
- Nodular lesions in Oroya fever, 292
- Nodules, in post-kala azar dermal leishmaniasis, 159
- Noguchi's medium, 247
- Nomadic Arab tribes, bejel in, 540
- Non alcoholic drinks, in tropics, 21
- Non tropical sprue, 463
- Normacol 419
- North Africa, filariasis in, 637  
heat stroke in, 35  
hookworm in, 603  
kala azar in, 137
- North Africa lathyrism in, 812
- louse-borne typhus in, 261
- probable presence of bejel in, 540
- tularæmia in, 347
- typhus in, 271
- yaws in, 525
- North America, hookworm in, 603  
leprosy in, 485  
poisonous snakes of, 847  
strongyloidiasis in, 623  
yaws in, 525
- North Carolina, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 271
- Northern Circars, beriberi in, 771  
infantile beriberi in, 782
- Norway, tularæmia in, 347
- Novarsenobenzol, in treatment of ulcer tropicum, 550
- Nuba Mountains, yellow fever in, 297
- NUTRITION IN THE TROPICS, 747
- Nutrition Research Laboratories, 755
- Nutritional diarrheas, 300
- NUTRITIONAL DISEASES IN THE TROPICS, 747
- Nutritional dysplasias, 823
- Nutritional macrocytic anemia, a diagnosis of sprue, 469
- Nuta as source of vitamin A, 754
- Nyasaland, trypanosomiasis in, 204
- Obesity, as contributory factor in heat stroke, 35
- Obese, prickly heat in the, 571
- Obliterative endarteritis, in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 609
- Occupation predisposing factor in Weil's disease, 246
- Occupational distribution of Malta fever, 354
- Oceania, oriental sore in, 180 *See also* Pacific Islands
- Edema, due to fasciolopsiasis, 736  
in beriberi, 775, 776  
in epidemic dropy, 608  
in kala-azar, 155  
in para-sprue, 479
- Edematous form of beriberi, 777
- Esophagostomum apistomum*, 455, 588, 589, 591, 592
- Ogawa cholera strain, 373
- Onchocerca cutcutiens*, 690
- Onchocerca volutus*, 587, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 656, 690
- ONCHOCERCOSIS, 690
- Onchospheres of *Echinococcus*, 741
- Oncomelania hupensis*, 713
- Onion, composition and caloric value of, 766
- Opisthoglyphous snakes, 838, 842, 846
- Opisthorchis felineus*, 588, 589, 591, 592
- Opossum, as reservoir in Chagas's disease, 219

- Opsono-cytophagic test, for diagnosis of  
  Malta fever, 359
- Orange 767
- Orethritis in dengue 316
- Oregon Rocky Mountain spotted fever in,  
  271
- ORIENTAL SORE 134, 178, 544 *See also*  
  *Leishmania tropica*
- Orissa epidemic dropsy in, 801
- filariasis in 639
- infantile cirrhosis of liver in, 817
- Wuchereria malayi* infection in 687
- Ornithodoros*, as vector in Chagas's dis-  
  ease, 218
- Ornithodoros erraticus*, as vector of re-  
  lapsing fever, 234
- OROYA FEVER 288 *See* Bartonellosis
- anæmia of 821, 827
- Oramine, in treatment of sleeping sick-  
  ness, 212
- Osteitis rarefying in jaws, 531
- Osteomalacia, 752
- due to vitamin D deficiency, 764
- Osteomyelitis treated by maggot therapy,  
  866
- Osteoporosis 752
- in sickle-celled anæmia, 833
- Osteo-clerosis, in sickle-celled anæmia, 833
- Overwork, as cause of tropical neuras-  
  thenia 47
- Osloplasma orientale*, 181
- Oxyhæmoglobin, in blackwater fever, 129
- OXYURIASIS OR THREADWORM INFECTION,  
  600
- Ozyura 600
- Pacific Islands filariasis in, 657
- granuloma venereum in, 563
- leprosy in 485
- oriental sore in, 180
- jaws in, 525
- Palestine, bejel in, 539, 540
- blackwater fever in, 125
- fish tapeworm infection in, 635
- hydatid disease in, 738
- sand-fly Fever in, 317
- schistosomiasis in, 709
- Pallor in scurvy, 800
- in tropics cause of, 7
- Pamaquium B P, in malaria, 96 *See*  
  Plasmochin
- Panama blackwater fever in, 125
- Panblastotropic reaction, in syphilis, 529
- Pancreatic tumour, a diagnosis of sprue,  
  470
- Pancreatitis, a diagnosis of sprue 470
- Pandy's test, in trypanosomiasis, 210, 213
- Panther, as reservoir of infection in  
  paragonimiasis 732
- Pantothenic acid, 763
- Pantropic virus 298
- Papaya, 767
- Papillomata, in schistosomiasis, 717, 722
- Papillomatous fronsideride, of jaws, 530
- Papua, filariasis in, 657
- ulcus tropicum in, 515
- Papulo-macular eruption in jaws, 530
- Paracyclops fimbriatus*, 606
- Parathyroids, in pellagra, 793
- in velvet sore, 553
- PARAGONIMIASIS, 731
- Paragonimus westermanni*, 587, 588, 589,  
  591, 592, 594, 731
- Paraguay, hookworm in, 608
- South American mucocutaneous leish-  
  maniasis in, 192
- Parakeratosis in pellagra, 790
- Paralysis in rabies 862
- in snake-bite 850
- spastic, in relapsing fever, 235
- Paraplegia, due to schistosome infection,  
  721
- spastic, in lathyrism, 814
- PARASPRUE 477
- differential diagnosis of, from sprue, 470
- gastric analysis in, 477
- Parenteral therapy in malaria, 102
- Paris green, in malaria control, 115
- Parotitis, acute, as a complication of  
  dysentery, 409
- as complication in cholera, 353
- in relapsing fever, 235
- Paroxysmal hæmoglobinuria, differential  
  diagnosis of, 130
- in differential diagnosis of blackwater  
  fever, 126
- Pasteur Institute, in Calcutta, 860
- of Lille, preparation of antivenene at,  
  856
- Pasteur Institutes statistics of, 864
- Pasteurella pestis*, 322, 323
- Pasteurization of milk, in prevention of  
  undulant fever, 360
- Pedicular humanus*, as vector of relapsing  
  fever, 228
- as vector of trench fever, 267
- as vector of typhus, 262
- Pel-Ebstein syndrome, in differential diag-  
  nosis of liver abscess, 448
- PELLAGRA, 45, 753, 763 784
- differential diagnosis of, general paraly-  
  sis 794
- para sprue in, 478
- sprue in, 469
- mnemonic for, 785
- prevention of, education in, 794
- in camps, 794
- in institutions, 794
- propaganda in, 794
- protein-deficiency theory of, 787
- Pellagra-like symptoms in sprue, 465
- Pellagra-preventing (PP) fraction, 787

- Pellagra-producing diets, 787  
 Penicillin, in treatment of venereal sore, 531  
   of yaws, 542  
 Peptic ulcer, in the tropics, 4  
 Peptone in *Shigella* medium, 411  
   use of, in cholera-red reaction, 374  
 Perchloride of mercury in prevention of  
   prickly heat, 574  
   in treatment of ringworm of feet, 577  
 Peripheral nerves, affected in beriberi, 776  
 Peritonitis due to *aeraria* infection, 595  
   due to *filariasis*, 637  
   due to tapeworm infection, 638  
 Peritonitis and perforation, as complica-  
   tions of amoebic dysentery, 435  
 Pernicious anemia in differential diag-  
   nosis of tropical macrocytic anemia,  
   830  
   in differential diagnosis of sprue, 469  
   introduction of liver treatment for, 820  
 Peroneal nerve affected in leprosy, 499  
 Personal habits, in the tropics, 17  
 Peru filariasis in, 637  
   louse borne typhus in, 261  
   Oroya fever in, 289  
   paragonimiasis in, 731  
   pinta in, 537  
   plague in, 323  
   South American muco-cutaneous leish-  
   maniasis in, 192  
 Petechial hemorrhages in eczema, 600  
   in strongyloidiasis, 631  
 Pfeifferella whitmanii, the causal organism  
   in melioidosis, 265  
 Phagedenic ulcer (ulcus tropicum), 511  
 Philippines, *Ancylostoma braziliense* in,  
   609  
   beriberi in, 771  
   cholera in, 371, 376  
   filariasis in, 637  
   hookworm in, 609  
   leprosy in, 492, 498  
   Malaria fever in, 351  
   paragonimiasis in, 731  
   pellagra in, 785  
   schistosomiasis in, 708  
   acquired during campaign in, 714  
   tsetse-gamushi in, 276  
 Phlebitis as a complication of oriental  
   sore, 185  
 Phlebotomus genus of sand fly which  
   transmits South American muco-  
   cutaneous leishmaniasis, 191  
 Phlebotomus argentipes, 141 et seq., 180  
 Phlebotomus fever, 317. See Sand-fly  
   fever  
 Phlebotomus intermedius, as transmitter  
   of South American muco-cutaneous  
   leishmaniasis, 193  
 Phlebotomus langeroni var. orientalis, 141  
 Phlebotomus macedonicum, 182  
 Phlebotomus major, 141  
 Phlebotomus major var. chinensis, 141 et  
   seq.  
 Phlebotomus naguchii, 259  
 Phlebotomus papatasi, 180-182  
   transmitter of sand-fly fever, 317  
 Phlebotomus perniciosus, 141 et seq.  
 Phlebotomus sergenti, 180-182  
 Phlebotomus terrecurum, 259  
 Phoebea (*Fehia cinnamul*), 813  
 Phormia regina, 806  
 Phosphorus dietary requirements of, 750  
   percentage of, in rice, 738  
 Photophobia in onchocerciasis, 691  
 Phrynodermis, 752-762  
 Phyllanthus emblica (amla), 799  
 Physoporus africana, 713  
 Pian, 521  
 Pig tapeworm, 635  
 Pigmentation of the skin in kala-azar, 153  
   in malaria, 88  
   in neural type leprosy, loss of, 499  
 Pigmy rattlesnake (*Crotalus mitchellii*),  
   813  
 Pigs abortus fever in, 363  
   as definitive hosts of fish tapeworm in-  
   fection, 636  
   as intermediate hosts of helminth in-  
   fections, 589  
   of pig tapeworm infection, 635  
 Pilgrim ships control of, in cholera pre-  
   vention, 386  
 Pilgrimages, as a factor in disease distribu-  
   tion in India, 6  
   in spread of cholera, 379  
 Pinta, 537  
   in differential diagnosis of leucoderma,  
   583  
 Pin-Worm Infection. See OXYURIASIS  
 Piped water supplies, as source of infec-  
   tion with schistosomiasis, 714  
 Platystrates, 687  
 Pith helmets, 25  
 Pith "topps," 25  
 Pituitary, anterior, deficiency of, in sprue,  
   466  
 PITUIRIS (TINFA) VESICOLOR, 570, 581  
   in differential diagnosis of yaws, 532  
 PLACET, 3, 321  
   effect of nutrition in, 759  
 Planorbis as intermediate host of Fascio-  
   lopus, 735  
 Planorbis boissyi, 713  
 Plantago ovata (ispaghula or bhune), in  
   treatment of sprue, 474  
 Plasma level of atlebrin, 97  
   of quinine, 97  
 Plasmodium, in malaria, 96. See Pama-  
   quium  
   in treatment of onchocerciasis, 691  
 Plasmodium falciparum, 61

- Plasmodium inui*, 127  
*Plasmodium knowlesi*, 61, 127  
 infection of monkey with, 71  
*Plasmodium ovale*, 61  
*Plasmodium tenue*, 61  
*Plasmodium perniciosum*, 61  
*Plasmodium vivax*, 61  
 Pleocholia, in blackwater fever, 129  
 Plerocercoid of *Bothriocephalaidea* in man 639  
 Pleurisy, as complication in paragonimiasis, 733  
 basal, in differential diagnosis of liver abscess, 448  
 Plummer-Vinson syndrome, in differential diagnosis of sprue, 469  
 Pneumonia, as complication of ascaris infection, 598  
 as complication in cholera, 383  
 differential diagnosis of, from liver abscess, 448  
 Pneumonic plague, 336  
 Pneumonitis, 28  
 as complication of ascaris infection, 598  
 due to hookworm infection 617  
 Poisonous snakes, identification of, 838  
 Poland, louse-borne typhus in, 261  
 relapsing fever in, 225  
 Polynuritis, due to vitamin-B<sub>1</sub> deficiency, 762  
 in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
 of alcoholism, 762  
 Polyneuropathic form of beriberi, 777  
*Polyplax spinulosus*, the rat louse, 269  
 Polyvalent antiferment, 856  
 Polyvalent serum, in leptospirosis 253  
 Pond snake, 841  
 Potos, 137 See Kala-azar  
 Poor whites, hookworm among, 613  
 Pork, as infective medium in helminth infections, 589  
 Porphyria, in sprue, 465  
 Portugal, schistosomiasis in, 709  
 Portuguese East Africa, 608  
 Post-dysenteric ascites, 409  
 Post kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis, 149 et seq  
 Posterior nuclear forms, 291  
 Posterior tibial nerve, affected in leprosy, 499  
 Potassium chlorate, as a mouth-wash, 475  
 Potassium iodide, as cause of reaction in leprosy, 501  
 in treatment of leprosy, 513  
 Potassium permanganate, in disinfection  
 of water supply for prevention of cholera, 389  
 in treatment of cholera, 391  
 Potato, composition and caloric value of, 766  
 Poverty, as a factor in disease distribution, 5  
 PP (pellagra-preventing) fraction, 787  
 Precipitin test, in hydatid disease, 744  
 in trichinosis, 632  
 Pregnancy, as contributing factor in pellagra, 790  
 Pregnant women, beriberi in, 778  
 dietary allowances for, 749  
 hookworm infection in, danger of, 628  
 malaria in, 80  
 treatment of, 110  
 Price-Jones treatment, in tropical macrocytic anemia, 829  
 Prickly heat, 569, 571  
 Primitive tribes and jaws, 526  
 Protosol, in treatment of paragonimiasis, 734  
 prophylactic inoculation against, 341  
 Protein, percentage of, in rice, 758  
 sources of, 75  
 Protein deficiency, 761  
 Protein requirements, 749  
 in the tropics, 18, 753  
 Proteose-peptone, in Shigella medium, 411  
 Proteroglyphous snakes, 838, 842, 843, 846  
 fangs of, 848  
*Proteus morgani*, 402  
 Prothrombin, 752  
 test, in sepsis, 801  
 Protozoal dysentery, 368  
 Pro-vitamin A (carotene), 752, 762  
 Prune-juice sputum, in pneumonic plague, 336  
 Pruritus as a result of threadworm infection, 600  
 Pseudo-appendicitis in amebic dysentery, 435  
 Psoriasis, 462 See Sprue  
*Psoralea corylifolia* (bouché oil), 584  
 in pinta, 539  
 Psoriasis, 481  
 in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
 of jaws, 532  
 Psychological effects of climate, in the tropics, 13  
 Psychological stimulant, alcohol as, 21  
 Psychoneurotic manifestations, due to filariasis, 679  
 Psychoses toxic, in pellagra, 793  
 Puberty, dietary requirements at, 749  
 Puerto Rico, schistosomiasis in, 708, 714, 721  
 Puff adder (*Bitis arietans*), 843, 847  
*Pulex irritans*, a transmitter of rat-borne plague, 331  
 Pulse rate, in the tropics, 12  
 in yellow fever, 302  
 Pulses, 755  
 as source of vitamins, 752  
 Punctate keratitis in onchocerciasis, 691

- Punjab, dracontiasis in, 694  
epidemic malaria in, 58, 115  
hydatid disease in, 740  
*Purish*, as a cause of rickets 6  
cause of vitamin D deficiency, 750-764  
*Puri*, cholera in 378  
Purpuric spots, in pneumonic plague 336  
Pyemic abscesses, in differential diagnosis  
of liver abscess 448  
Pyelitis as complication in schistosomiasis 719  
in differential diagnosis from malaria 92  
Pyelonephritis as complication in schistosomiasis 719  
differential diagnosis of, from liver  
abscess, 448  
Pyorrhea, as source of secondary bacterial  
infection in filariasis, 682  
Pyramidal cells in hippocampus Negri  
bodies in 861  
Pyrethrum in malaria control, 115-119  
Pyrethrum cultivation, in India, 116  
Pyridoxin (Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>) deficiency, 763  
and pellagra, 768  
'Pyrocyte 20' 231  
  
'Q' fever, 258  
American, 279  
Australian, 279  
Queensland gnathostomiasis in 704  
hookworm in 609  
sprue in, 463  
troutgumushi in 275  
veldt sore in, 552  
Queensland hindfoot 'Q' fever in 279  
Quinine, absorption of, 97  
administration of, as precipitating factor  
in blackwater fever, 126  
albuminuria, 76  
overdosage of, as cause of tropical  
neurasthenia, 47  
plasma level of, 97  
salts of, in malaria, 91  
Quotidian malaria, 77  
  
Rabbits trypanosomiasis in 201  
Rabies, 860  
malingering in differential diagnosis of,  
862  
muzzling order in prevention of, 861  
post-vaccinal accidents in, 861  
Radial nerve, affected in leprosy, 800  
Ragi (*Fleusine coracana*), 766  
Rainfall, 5  
Rajaputani, dracontiasis in, 691  
Rangoon meloidosis in, 365  
Rarefying osteitis in jaws, 531  
*Rasbora daniconius*, 702  
Rash in dengue fever, 316  
in Indian typhus, 283  
Rash in louse-borne typhus fever,  
261  
in rat bite fever, 211  
in relapsing fever, 229  
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 273  
in sleeping sickness, 298  
in troutgumushi 278  
in tularemia, 319  
in Weil's disease, 250  
Raspberry-like lesion in jaws, 824  
'Rat falls,' as indicators of plague out-  
break, 339  
Rat pellagra difference between human  
pellagra and, 788  
Rat poisons, 339  
Rat snake, 841  
Rat traps 339  
Rat bite fever, 237, 511  
differential diagnosis of, from liver  
abscess, 448  
Rats, as intermediate hosts of helminth  
infections, 589  
as reservoir of infection in murine  
typhus 269  
in paragonimiasis, 732  
in Weil's disease, 245  
destruction of, 339  
exwing of, 339  
Orova fever in, 289  
relapsing fever in, 227  
tick borne relapsing fever in, 231  
trypanosomiasis in 201  
Weil's disease in, 248  
Rattlesnake (*Crotalus confluentus*), 813,  
817  
bite of, 851  
venom of, 819  
*Rattus norvegicus*, 329  
*Rattus rattus* 329  
Raynaud's disease, in differential diagnosis  
of leprosy, 509, 510  
Recto-vaginal fistula as complication in  
lymphopathia venereum, 539  
Recurring dysentery, 408  
Red gram (arhar dhal), 766  
Red-currant jelly appearance of stools in  
dysentery, 406  
Red palm oil, as dietary factor, 754  
as source of vitamin A, 762  
as source of vitamins, 752  
vitamin content of, 767  
Refrigeration, in treatment of snake-bite,  
854  
of meat, in prevention of trichinosis, 652  
Regal python, 839  
Reinsterma's serum, in treatment of lep-  
rosy, 514  
Relapses, in African type of tick-borne  
relapsing fever, 235  
in rat-bite fever, 241  
in Weil's disease, 251

- Relapsing fever afebrile period in African type of tick-borne, 235  
 anemia of 823  
 differential diagnosis of, from liver abscess 443  
   from malaria, 92  
 effect of nutrition in 759  
 louse-borne 225  
 tick-borne 233
- RELAPSING FEVERS, THE 223
- Relative humidity, method of calculating, 10
- Religious practices, as factors in disease distribution, 5
- Renal calculi, due to vitamin A deficiency, 762
- Repellents for malaria 118
- Respiration rate, in the tropics, 12
- Respiratory centres, effect of rattlesnake venom on 851
- Respiratory tract, in leprosy, 496
- Rest, importance of, in the tropics, 23
- Reticuloocytes in anemia, 823
- Retro-colonic abscesses, in amœbic dysentery, 435
- Reunion Island filariasis in, 657  
 malaria in, 55
- Revista Brasileira de Leprologia, 521
- Revista Colombiana de Leprologia, 521
- Rewah North lathyrism in, 812
- Rhinopharyngitis mutilans (gangosa), 532
- Rhino-cleroma, in differential diagnosis of jaw 532
- Rhipicephalus*, as vector in Chagas's disease 218  
*Rhipicephalus appendiculatus*, as vector of typhus 275  
*Rhipicephalus sanguineus*, as vector in relapsing fever, 231  
   of *fièvre boutonneuse*, 272
- Rhodesia, schistosomiasis in, 708  
 trypanosomiasis in, 204
- Riboflavin, 752
- Riboflavin deficiency, 763  
 tongue in, 792
- RICE, 756  
   comparison of constituents of raw and par boiled, 758  
   composition and caloric value of, 766  
   digestibility of 758  
   endosperm of 757  
   fields, as source of infection with schistosomiasis, 714 725  
   home-pounded 758  
   composition and caloric value of, 766  
   husk of, 757  
   milled 757  
   composition and caloric value of, 766  
   machine, 757  
   parboiled, 757, 773
- Rice, parboiled, composition and caloric value of, 766  
   pericarp of, 757  
   polished, 757  
   raw, 758  
   composition and caloric value of, 766  
   storing properties of, 758  
   unmilled, as source of vitamins, 752
- Rice-toxin theory of beriberi, 773
- Rickets, 752, 761  
   in the tropics, 4
- Rickettsia burnetti*, a causal organism of 'Q' fever, 279
- Rickettsia diaporica*, 280
- Rickettsia muricola*, causal organism of murine typhus 268
- Rickettsia orientalis*, causal organism in tansugamushi, 275
- Rickettsia prowazeki*, causal organism of louse-borne typhus 261
- Rickettsia quintana*, causal organism of trench fever, 267
- Rickettsia rickettsii*, 271
- Rickettsia weigii*, 267
- Riding as exercise, 23
- RIFT VALLEY FEVER, 310
- RINGWORM OF THE FEET, 574
- Rivanol in treatment of chronic amœbic dysentery, 440
- Rock python, 839
- ROCKY MOUNTAIN SPOTTED FEVER, 271  
 anemia of, 827
- Rodent ulcer, 45
- Rogers' treatment of cholera, 391, 392
- Roman Campagna, malaria in, 60
- Roman historians and malaria, 59
- Romana's sign, 220 et seq
- Romonow's stain, 227, 239, 289
- Rome strain of *Plasmodium falciparum*, 61
- Röntgenological appearance, in sprue, 469
- Roosting, in the tropics, 27
- Rooms, size of, in tropics, 29
- Roscolar eruptions, in bejel, 541
- Rosette forms of malaria plasmodium, 69, 90
- Rost's leprolin, in treatment of leprosy, 544
- Rotter's intradermal test 800
- Roumania, pellagra in, 785
- Roumanian strain of *Plasmodium vivax* 61
- Rural sanitation, 413
- Russell's viper (*Daboia russelli*), 843, 847  
 bite of, treatment of, 859
- Russia, cholera in, 371  
 dracontiasis in, 694  
 louse-borne typhus in, 261  
 relapsing fever in, 225  
 tularemia in 346
- Russian Turkestan endemic foci of kala-azar in, 139

- Sabre tibia, in sickle-celled anemia, 533  
in yaws, 531
- Sago composition and caloric value of, 769
- Sahars myxoma in the, 866
- St Elizabeth strain of quartan malaria, 121
- St Gothard tunnel hookworm during construction of, 608
- Sakusku fever, 254 See Seven Day Fever of Japan
- Salicylic acid in treatment of ringworm of feet, 577  
in treatment of *linx verucolor*, 551
- Salivation in rabies 862
- Salmonella enteritidis*, 365
- Salmonella paratyphosa-B*, 368
- Salmonella typhi muenum* 368
- Salt in prevention of prickly heat 573
- Salt requirements in the tropics, 40
- Salyrgan in treatment of beriberi 751
- Samoa absence of malaria from 85  
filariasis in 557
- San Domingo yellow fever in 295
- San Salvador Chagas's disease in, 219  
schistosomal dermatitis in, 709
- Sandflies, laboratory breeding of 116
- SAND-FLY FEVER 317  
differential diagnosis of from malaria 92
- Sanitary engineering in the tropics, 26
- Sanitary sense, as a factor in disease distribution 5
- Sanitation, in the tropics 26
- Santal Pargana *Wuchereria malaya* infection in 657  
yaws in 525
- Santonin in treatment of ascaris infection, 599
- São Paulo, *Ancylostoma braziliense* in 609
- Butantan Institute in preparation of antivenene at, 556
- Sarcoid, 807  
in epidemic dropsy, 809
- Sarcophaga*, 866
- Sari the, as cause of leucoderma, 582
- Scandinavia, leprosy in 435  
malaria absent from, 56
- Scandinavian immigrants, and introduction of fish tapeworm infection 635
- Scarsinia 866
- Scarlet fever, in differential diagnosis of dengue 316  
in the tropics 4
- Scarlet-red lotion, in treatment of ulcer tropicum 551
- Schistosoma (Bilharzia), 369
- Schistosoma hamatobrium*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 591, 708
- Schistosoma japonicum*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 591, 708
- Schistosoma mansoni*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 591, 708
- Schistosoma spindale*, 709
- Schistosomal dermatitis, 719
- SCHISTOSOMIASIS, 707  
vesical anemia due to, 824
- Schizonts of malaria *laxmodium*, 88 90
- Schizotrypanum 215
- Schüffner's dots, 84 89 90
- Scissor-legged posture in lithyrium, 814
- Sclerotomy for gliucoma 814
- Scolex recovery of in assessing cure 614
- Scoliosis in sickle-celled anemia 833
- Scotland leptospirosis in 253
- Screening against flies 423  
in prevention of malaria 148  
in the tropics 28
- SECTARY 752 764 797  
anemia of, 821  
associated with starvation 764  
subepiphyseal hemorrhages in 800  
synthetic ascorbic acid in prevention of 802
- Seasons as definitive hosts of fish tapeworm infection 636
- Sea-snake 843
- Seals as definitive hosts of fish tapeworm infection 636
- Seed-germ oil, as source of vitamins, 752
- Schvatic plague 324
- Senegal unduocerriasis in 690  
plague in, 323  
trypanosomiasis in 294
- Senekju = machuni 162
- 'Sensible' heat loss 33
- Septicemia due to filariasis 677
- Serbia deaths of doctors from typhus fever in, 262
- Serum tests in kala-azar, 160
- Serum therapy in undulant fever, 362
- Serum-formalin test, in trypanosomiasis, 241
- Seriana's clusters 20
- Servants' quarters 29
- SEVEN-DAY FEVER OF JAPAN, 254
- Sexual maturity, in the tropics, 13
- Sexual nervousness, as cause of tropical neurasthenia, 48
- Skat-liver oil as source of vitamin D, 761
- Sheep, as intermediate hosts of *Echinococcus*, 738  
of helminth infections, 589
- Sheep raising, association of, with hydatid disease, 738
- Sheepdogs and hydatid disease, 740
- Shepherds and hydatid disease, 739
- Shiga dysentery, differential diagnosis of, from cholera, 385
- Shigella 401  
infection as complication in filariasis 682
- Shigella-Salmonella (SS) agar, 444
- Shock heat, 37



- Shock, in cholera, 395  
in snake-bite, 850  
primary, 851  
treatment of, 855  
secondary, 851  
treatment of, 855
- Sialkuta* oil, 806
- Siam (Thailand), beriberi in, 771  
blackwater fever in, 125  
fasciolopiasis in, 731  
gnathostomiasis in, 701  
hookworm in, 608  
leprosy in, 489  
paragonimiasis in, 731  
plague in, 323
- Siberia fish tapeworm infection in, 635  
hydatid disease in, 738  
louse-borne typhus in, 261  
malaria absent from, 56
- Sicily, hookworm in, 608  
kala azar in, 137  
oriental sore in, 179
- Sicklelema, 832
- SICKLE-CELLED ANEMIA, 821, 832
- Sickling phenomenon, 832
- Sigmoidoscopy in amœbic dysentery, 431, 433  
in bacillary dysentery, 412  
in lymphopathia venereum, 559  
in schistosomiasis, 722  
in ulcerative colitis, 458
- Silenus* *rus* monkey, malaria in, 127
- Silenus* *rhesus* monkey, malaria in, 127  
trypanosomiasis in, 210  
yellow fever in, 298
- Silver nitrate, in treatment of chronic amœbic dysentery, 410  
of chyluria, 686  
of ulcerative colitis, 459
- Simulium*, as intermediate host of helminth infections, 589  
as vector of onchocerciasis, 690
- Simulium aridum*, 690
- Simulium damnosum*, 587, 690
- Simulium hematopotum*, 540  
as possible transmitter of pinta, 583
- Simulium mooseri*, 690
- Simulium ochraceum*, 690
- Singapore foot rot, 574
- Siphunculina*, 546
- Siphunculina funicola*, 422
- Sistrurus catenatus* (Massasauga rattlesnake), 843
- Sistrurus miliaris* (pigmy rattlesnake), 843
- Sitz baths in treatment of granuloma venereum, 567
- Sixth venereal disease, 556 See Lymphopathia venereum
- Skimmed milk, 768  
in treatment of amœbic dysentery, 439
- Skin changes in amœbic dysentery, ulceration, 432  
in kala-azar, 149, 156  
in lepromatous type leprosy, 503  
in leprosy, 496  
in neural type leprosy, thickening and erythema, 498  
in the tropics, 14
- SKIN DISEASES OF THE TROPICS, COMMON, 569
- Sleep, disturbance of, in threadworm infection, 601  
loss of, as result of prickly heat, 572
- SLEEPING SICKNESS, 197  
effect of nutrition in, 759
- Sleeping Sickness Commission, 199
- Slurred speech, in plague, 336
- Smallpox, effect of nutrition in, 759
- Smoking, in the tropics, 23
- Snails as intermediate hosts of helminth infections, 589  
as intermediate hosts of *Schistosoma*, 712  
destruction of, in control of schistosomiasis, 724
- Snake (viper) bite, anemia due to, 824  
annual incidence of, 837  
incantations for, 833  
prayers for, 833
- Snake-stones, as cures for snake-bite, 833
- Snakes, fangs of, 816  
non-poisonous, 838  
bite of, effect of, 852  
identification of, 838  
poisonous, 838  
teeth of, 816
- SNAKES AND SNAKE-BITE, 836
- Sorbin (atoxyl), in treatment of filariasis, 684
- Soda water, as source of cholera infection, 357  
in tropics, 21
- Sodium antimonyl tartrate, in treatment of lymphopathia venereum, 561  
in treatment of sleeping sickness, 212
- Sodium chloride, in the tropics, 20
- Sodium iodide, in treatment of ulcer tropicum, 556
- Sodium sulphate, in treatment of ascari infections, 599
- Sodium tannocholate, in *Shigella* medium, 411
- Sodium thio-sulphate, in treatment of pellagra, 796  
in treatment of sleeping sickness as antidote for arsenic poisoning, 213
- Soil, as medium of infection in helminth infections, 589
- Solar dermatitis, 44
- Solenoglyphs, 838, 843, 846  
fangs of, 818

- Sorghum vulgare* (bholam millet), 766
- South Africa, beriberi in, 771
- hydatid disease in, 738
- Malta fever in, 351
- scrabiasis in, 807
- South America blackwater fever in, 123
- Chagas's disease in, 219
- dracontiasis in, 694
- granuloma venereum in, 563
- hookworm in, 608
- hydatid disease in, 741
- kala-azar in, 137
- leprosy in, 492, 493, 499
- lymphopathia venereum in, 556
- Malta fever in, 351
- plague in, 323
- poisonous snakes of, 817
- rabies in, 860
- sand fly fever in, 317
- sprue in, 463
- strongyloidiasis in, 628
- tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233
- tropical macrocytic anemia in, 829
- yaws in, 825
- SOUTH AMERICAN MICO-CUTANEOUS LEISHMANIASIS, 191
- SOUTH AMERICAN TATTAOSOMIASIS OF CHAGAS'S DISPAR, 217
- South Carolina filariasis in, 657
- South Pacific Islands, *Ancylostoma braziliense* in, 609
- filariasis in, 679
- tinea imbricata* in, 580
- Southern China leprosy in, 492
- Southern Italy, sprue in, 463
- Southern United States, pellagra in, 783
- sprue in, 463
- Soya beans, as source of vitamin A, 751
- as a source of vitamin, 752
- composition and caloric value of, 766
- Spain, filariasis in, 657
- hookworm in, 608
- kala-azar in, 137
- lathyrism in, 812
- house-borne typhus in, 261
- oriental sore in, 179
- pellagra in, 783
- schistosomiasis in, 709
- tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233 235
- yellow fever in, 296
- Sparaganois, 639
- Sparms in rubies, 862
- Spastic paraplegia in lathyrism, 814
- Speech in snake-bite, 850
- Spinach, as source of vitamins, 752
- composition and caloric value of, 766
- Spirillum minus*, 238 *et seq*
- Spirocheta duttoni*, 225
- Spirocheta pertenuis*, 826
- Spirocheta recurrentis*, 225
- Spitting cobra, 817
- Spleen enlargement of, in infantile cirrhosis, 818
- in kala-azar, 152
- in abortus fever, 363
- in blackwater fever, 128
- in cholera, 380
- in kala-azar, 149 *et seq*
- Leishman-Donovan bodies in, 142
- in lepromatous type of leprosy, 496
- in malaria, 73 80
- in diagnosis, 83
- in Malta fever, 356
- in relapsing fever, 228
- in sleeping sickness, 206
- in tsutsugamushi, 278
- in Weil's disease, 249
- in yellow fever, 300
- Spleen index, 120
- Spleen puncture diagnostic method in kala-azar, 162
- Spleen rate, in malaria, 120
- Splenectomy, in schistosomiasis, 727
- Splenic anemia differential diagnosis of, from malaria, 92
- Splenic enlargement, in sickle-celled anemia, 833
- Sporozoites, 63
- Spray-killing as a control measure, in malaria, 115
- Sprouted grain preparation of, 799
- value of, as preventive in scurvy, 801
- Sprue, 461, 478
- anemia of, 823 831
- differential diagnosis of, from pellagra, 791
- from tropical macrocytic anemia, 830
- error of metabolism, inborn, as cause of, 465
- gastric analysis in, 467
- Squirrels, rat bite fever in, 240
- relapsing fever in, 227
- Sr agar, 411 See *Shigella-Salmonella* agar
- Staggering gait, in plague, 336
- Stall fed cattle and Barlow's disease, 798
- Standards Laboratory at Oxford, cholera investigations of, 373
- standardization of dysentery organisms by, 401
- Starvation, effects of, 760
- Steatorrhea, absence of, in sprue, 470
- Step-wells as source of infection in dracontiasis, 696
- Sternum puncture, as diagnostic method in kala-azar, 161
- Stibophen (Fouadin), 567
- in treatment of schistosomiasis, 726
- Stokers' anemia, 12
- Stokers' cramp, 43 See 'Heat cramp'
- Stolla method, for counting ova, 621

- Stomatitis after bismuth treatment, 536  
 in pellagra, treatment of, 796  
 Stomoxys 201  
 Stool examination, in diagnosis of amebic dysentery, 436  
 Storminess associated with disease, 5  
 Stovarsol in treatment of yaws, 536  
 Strabismus in relapsing fever, 235  
 Straus's reaction in the guinea pig in nichoidosis 366  
*Streptobacillus moniliformis*, 233  
 Streptococcal infections, 461  
 in the tropics 4  
 Strongyloides larvæ, differentiation of, from hookworm larvæ 621  
 STRONGYLOIDES STERCORALIS, 455, 588, 589, 591 592, 593 644  
 STRONGYLOIDIASIS, 628  
 Submucosa, *Leishmania* in, 142  
 Sub soil pollution of wells, 387  
 Suction Bier, in treatment of snake-bite, 854  
 Sudan, dracontinosis in, 691  
 kala-azar in 137  
 seasonal incidence of, 140  
 onchocerciasis in, 690  
 yeldt sore in, 552  
 yaws in, 525  
 Sugar 755  
 'Sulpha' drugs in treatment of Malta fever, 362  
 of schistosomiasis 727  
 Sulphanilamide, in treatment of ulcus tropicum, 550  
 Sulphanilyl guanidine, in treatment of cholera, 391  
 of dysentery, 416  
 of hill diarrhoea 480  
 of Malta fever, 362  
 Sulphapyridine in treatment of dysentery, 416  
 of para-sprue 478  
 of rat bite fever, 243  
 of ulcerative colitis, 459  
 Sulphaphenamine, in treatment of yaws 534  
 Sulphathiazole, in treatment of plague, 343  
 of ulcus tropicum, 550  
 Sumatra, tsutsugamushi in 276  
 If *uchereria malayi* infection in 687  
 Sun bathing in prevention of prickly heat, 573  
 Sunburn 45  
 similarity to, of pellagra 792  
 Sun headache, in the tropics 45  
 Sun's rays 6  
 Sunshine effect of, on disease, 5  
 'Sunstroke' so-called 34  
 Super-dehydration, 37  
 Suppressive treatment in malaria, 97  
 Suprarenal atrophy in sprue, 466  
 Surra, 198  
*Sushruta Samhita*, 512  
 Sweating, in rabies, 862  
 profuse, in undulant fever, 357  
 Sweden, tularemia in, 317  
 Weil's disease in, 216  
 Sweet potato, composition and caloric value of, 766  
 Swimming as exercise, 23  
 Switzerland, fish tapeworm infection in, 635  
 Syphilides in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
 in differential diagnosis of leucoderma, 583  
 Syphilis, in differential diagnosis of liver abscess 418  
 of malaria, 92  
 of plague, 337  
 relation of, to yaws, 527  
 Syphilitic sore, in differential diagnosis of oriental sore, 186  
 Syphilitic ulcers 519  
 Syria, bejel in 539  
 blackwater fever in 125  
 hydatid disease in, 738  
 pellagra in, 785  
 relapsing fever in, 225  
 sand-fly fever in, 317  
 Syrian hamsters, kala-azar infection in, 143  
 Syrian stock, Cooley's anemia in persons of, 832  
 Syngo-mvelia, in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509  
 Tabes dorsalis in differential diagnosis of beriberi 779  
 in differential diagnosis of pellagra, 794  
 Table I Identification of Species of Malarial parasites 90  
 Table II Fevers of the Typhus Group, 260  
 Table III Typhus Fevers in India, 282  
 Table IV Differential Diagnosis of Cholera, 384  
 Table V Showing Sugar Reactions of Dysentery Bacilli, 402  
 Table VI Contrasting Bacillary and Amebic Dysentery, 413  
 Table VII Important Morphological Characters of *Entameba histolytica* and *Entameba coli*, 437  
 Table VIII Five Stages in the Milk Diet, in the Treatment of Sprue, 471  
 Table IX Showing the Dietary Items, Their Quantity, Their Protein Fat, and Carbohydrate Content, and Their Caloric Value, in the Five Stages in the Sprue Diet 472  
 Table X High Protein Meat Diet, 473

- Table XI: Showing the Relations of the Clinical, Bacteriological, and Pathological Findings, in Leprosy, 506
- Table XII: The Main Points of Differentiation between Yaws and Syphilis, 533
- Table XIII: Classification of Helminths, 588, 589
- Table XIV: Differential Diagnostic Table of Yaws and Syphilis, 533
- Table XV: Classification of Helminthic Diseases, 588, 589
- Table XVI: Helminthic Parasites Arranged According to Portals of Entry and the Medium of Transmission, 591
- Table XVII: Helminth Infections Arranged According to the Clinical Parasitic Findings: a Diagnostic Classification, 592
- Table XVIII: Diagnosis and Treatment of Intestinal Helminths, 611
- Table XIX: Calorie Requirements at Different Ages and Work Supplements, 748
- Table XX: Protein Requirements in Grammes per kilo of Body-Weight, at Different Ages, 749
- Table XXI: Summarized Data on Important Vitamins, 752
- Table XXII: Dietary Coefficients and Requirements in the Tropics, 753
- Table XXIII: Some Indian Diets, 755
- Table XXIV: Summary of an Ill-balanced and a Well-balanced Diet, 756
- Table XXV: Comparison of Raw and Parboiled Rice, 758
- Table XXVI: Composition and Calorie Value of Some Common Food-stuffs, 766, 767
- Table XXVII: Normal Hemoglobin Standards of Healthy Native Populations, 821
- Table XXVIII: Data from Sub-standard Populations, 821
- Table XXIX: A Classification of the Anemias, 823, 824
- Table XXX: Classification of Snakes, 839, 840
- Table XXXI: Data Required for Identifying a Snake from Its External Characters, 846
- Table XXXII: Giving Approximate Dose of Venom Given at Bite, by Various Poisonous Snakes, and Estimated Fatal Dose for Man, 850
- Tachycardia, in avitaminosis-B<sub>1</sub>, 778
- Tania saginata*, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 634, 644
- Tenia solium*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 594, 631, 644
- Tamiorhynchus (Monosioidea) annulifera*, 687
- Tamiorhynchus (Monosioidea) indiana*, 687
- Tamiorhynchus justamansonia*, 666
- Tamiorhynchus (Monosioidea) longipalpis*, 687
- Tamiorhynchus pseudotitillans*, 666
- Tamiorhynchus (Monosioidea) uniformis*, 686, 687
- Tahiti, absence of malaria from, 55
- Takata-Ara test, 151
- Tanganika, hookworm in, 608
- schistosomiasis in, 708
- trichinosis in, 647
- trypanosomiasis in, 204
- yaws in, 525
- yellow fever in, 297
- Tanks (fermenters) as source of infection in diphtheria, 606
- Tanret-Mayer test, in malaria, 102
- TAPWORM INFECTIONS, 634
- TAPWORMS DWARF, 642
- Tapoca, as staple diet, 756
- composition and calorie value of, 766
- Tar crude, in treatment of ulcer tropicum, 550
- Taralagan, as a reservoir of Asiatic plague, 329
- Tartar emetic, for treatment of leishmaniasis, 166, 195
- Taeniasis, hydatid disease in, 738
- Tea, as a drink in the tropics, 21
- Tea-garden workers, dysentery in, 413
- hermoglobin levels of, 821
- hookworm among, 614
- ulcer tropicum among, 511
- Teeth of snakes, examination of, 846
- Testotolum, in the tropics, 21
- Telluric factors, effect of, on distribution of disease, 5
- Temperature, atmospheric, 4
- effective, 8
- Temperature chart, in amoebic liver abscess, 419
- in cholera, 333
- in dengue fever, 315
- in kala-azar, 169
- at onset, 152
- in liver abscess, 446
- in the louse-borne typhus, 261
- in Malta fever, 357
- in plague, bubonic, 334
- septicemic, 335
- in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 273
- in sand-fly fever, 318
- in tsutsugamushi disease, 277
- in tularemia, 349
- in typhus classical, 264
- Malayan (NK), 277
- 'scrub', 278
- Tender swellings, in scurvy, 800
- Teniasis in dysentery, 418

- Tenosinovitis, resulting from draconiasis, 700
- Tertiary syphilide, in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509
- Testes affected in leprosy, 503
- Tetanus, in differential diagnosis of rabies, 862
- Tetrachlorethylene, 644  
in treatment of fasciolopsias, 455, 730  
of hookworm infection, 626  
of trichuris infection, 601
- Thailand See Siam
- Thiamin (aneurin), 752
- Thiamin chloride, in diagnosis of epidemic dropsy, 816  
in treatment of beriberi, 780
- THREADWORM INFECTION OR OXYURIASIS 600
- Thrombosis, in schistosomiasis, 717
- Thymol, in treatment of hookworm infection, 625
- Thyroid in Chagas's disease 220
- Thyroid-adrenal system, effect of climate on, in the tropics, 13
- Thyrotoxicosis, in differential diagnosis of sprue, 469
- Tibia puncture, diagnostic method for kala-azar, 162
- Tick-bite fever of South Africa, 275
- Tick-borne relapsing fever, 233
- Tiger snake, 812, 817
- Tiki-tiki (rice polishing), in treatment of beriberi, 783
- TINEA CRURIS OR DIOBIE ITCH, 578
- TINEA IMBRICATA OR TOKLAL, 569, 570, 580
- Tinea in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 509
- TINEA PEDIS, 574
- TINEA (PITYRIASIS) VERSICOLOR, 581  
in differential diagnosis of leprosy, 510  
a tocopherol, 752
- Toilet, in the tropics 29
- Toilet pan in the bathroom 29
- TOKELAU OR TINEA IMBRICATA, 580
- Tokyo, Institute of Infectious Diseases in, preparation of antivenene at, 856
- Tomato, 767
- Tomato juice, as a drink in tropics, 21
- Tongue, in pellagra 792  
in sprue, 468 *et seq*  
in tropical macrocytic anemia, 830
- Totaquina standard 95
- Tourniquet in treatment of snake-bite, 854
- Toxins 403
- Tracheotomy, in treatment of leprosy, 517
- Transcaasia, louse-borne typhus in 261
- Transcaucasia kala-azar in, 139  
endemic foci of, 139  
pellagra in, 785
- Transfusion, blood, in treatment of anemia, 823  
of blackwater fever, 132
- Trans-Jordan, hejel in, 539
- Transmission cycles, in plague infection, 328
- Trapa bicornis*, infected by *Fasciolopsis*, 735
- Trauma, in differential diagnosis of malaria, 62
- Travancore, filariasis in, 659, 665  
jaws in, 525
- Travancore, North *Wucherera malayi* infection in 687, 688
- Trematoda 588, 589
- TRACH-FEVER, 267
- Trephining, for glaucoma, 811
- Treponema carateum*, 537, 540
- Treponema hercetoni*, 538
- Treponema pallidum*, 526, 527, 540
- Treponema pertenue*, 525, 526, 527, 540, 545
- Treponema vincenti*, 545
- Triatoma infestans*, as a vector of Chagas's disease, 218
- Triatoma megista*, as a vector of Chagas's disease, 218
- Tribondeau's stain, 239, 532  
modification of Fontana's stain, 212
- Trichinella spiralis*, 585, 588, 589, 590 591  
592, 593, 594, 646
- TRICHINOSIS, 646  
in differential diagnosis of cholera, 355  
of malaria, 92
- Trichloroacetic acid, in treatment of leprosy, 514
- Trichocephalus trichiurus*, 587, 590, 591, 592, 593, 588, 589
- Trichomonas intestinalis*, 451
- Trichophytids, 576
- Trichophyton, 575, 578  
as cause of pinta, 537
- Trichophyton rubrum*, 576
- TRICHOSTROGYLIASIS, 632
- Trichostrongylus*, 588 589, 591, 592, 593, 644
- Trichostrongylus orientalis*, 632
- TRICHURIS (WHITWORM) INFECTION, 603
- Trichuris trichiura* (*Trichocephalus trichiurus*), 603, 641
- Trimeresurus flavoviridis* (the Habu), 843
- Trimeresurus gramineus* (green pit viper), 843
- Trinidad, rabies in, 860
- Trinket snake, 841
- Trinorthoeryl phosphate poisoning, in differential diagnosis of beriberi, 779
- Triphosphopyridine nucleotide, 790
- Triple dye, in treatment of nagworm of feet, 577

- Tmpoli blackwater fever in 125  
   yaws in 525  
*Trombicula akamushi* 275  
   vector of tsutsugamushi 276  
*Trombicula delensis* vector of Indian  
   typhus 281  
   of tsutsugamushi 276  
 Tropic lesions in leprosy 500 515  
   in anaesthetic variety neural type 500  
 Trophozoite of malaria plasmodium 89  
   90  
 Tropical Africa syrus in 463  
 Tropical anemia so-called 46 820  
 Tropical Climate Diseases Due to  
   Direct Effect of 31  
 Tropical Climate Measures for Mitigating  
   the Effects of 16  
 Tropical Intestinal Nematode Infections 606  
 Tropical liver 50  
 Tropical Macrocytic Anemia (TMA)  
   828  
   due to vitamin B<sub>12</sub> complex deficiency  
   763  
   hemolytic 828  
   of pregnancy 823  
 Tropical medicine genesis of 1  
   scope of 3  
 Tropical neurasthenia 46  
 Tropical Skin Lesions 513  
 Tropical syrus 462  
 Tropical typhus 3  
 Tropical ulcerative conditions 511  
 Troponin in yellow fever 278  
 Troy siege of plague at 322  
 Trypsin in treatment of Malta fever  
   362  
*Trypanosoma brucei* 199  
*Trypanosoma cruzi* 217  
*Trypanosoma gambiense* 194 199  
*Trypanosoma rhodesiense* 193  
*Trypanosoma* chancre 207  
*Trypanosomiasis* unknown of 826  
 Trypanum in treatment of sleeping  
   sickness 212  
 Tryptophane 742  
 Tsetse flies as transmitters of sleeping  
   sickness 198  
 Tsutsugamushi 275 514  
 Tubercloid type of leprosy 506  
 Tuberculosis 3  
   in differential diagnosis of liver abscess  
   418  
   of malaria 92  
   of syrus 469  
   malnutrition and 759  
   of the skin in differential diagnosis of  
   oriental sore 185  
 Tularemia 315 511  
   in differential diagnosis of liver abscess  
   418  
 Tularemia of lymphopatia venereum  
   500  
 Tull grass in treatment of ulcus tropicum  
   531  
 Turbidity assay in 137  
 Tunisia hookworm in 608  
 Turkish dermoconiosis in 694  
   kala-azar in 139  
 Turkey 378  
   filariasis in 677  
   relapsing fever in 225  
   tularemia in 317  
 Turpentine stupes in treatment of syrus  
   475  
 Two-headed snake (*Fryx johni*) 839  
 Typhoid fever differential diagnosis of  
   from malaria 92  
   from schistosomiasis 722  
 Typhoid state like in malaria 81  
 Typhus epidemic effect of nutrition in  
   759  
 Typhus Fever The 256  
   anemia of 827  
   classical epidemic or louse-borne 259  
   etiology  
   differential diagnosis of from dengue  
   316  
   from malaria 92  
   epidemic effect of nutrition in 759  
   in India 280  
   prophylactic inoculation against 267  
 Tyrocin in prevention of leucoderma 581  
 Uagat is discontinuous in 691  
   plague in 323  
   trichinosis in 617  
   yaws in 525  
   yellow fever in 297  
 Ulceration in leprosy 507  
 Ulcerative colitis 409 478  
   chronic due to schistosomiasis 721  
   post-dysenteric 456  
   colonic irrigation in treatment of 459  
   in differential diagnosis of lymphoma  
   thymicum 560  
   surgical treatment in 460  
 Uterine cancer in differential diagnosis of  
   yaws 533  
 Uta Tropica or Vaca Sore 514  
   in differential diagnosis of oriental sore,  
   185  
   in differential diagnosis of yaws 533  
   high protein diets as protection from  
   545  
 Ulnar nerve commonly affected in lep-  
   rosy 499  
 Ultra violet rays 6  
 Undulant Fevers 352  
   chemotherapy in 362  
   differential diagnosis of from liver  
   abscess 418

- UNDULANT FEVERS, differential diagnosis of,  
from malaria, 92  
protein therapy in, non-specific, 362  
United States, abortus fever in, 363  
beriberi in institutions of, 771  
blackwater fever in, 125  
Cooley's anemia in, 832  
granuloma venereum in, 563  
myiasis in, 866  
non-tropical sprue in, 463  
pellagra in, 785, 796  
rabies in, 861  
rat bite fever in, 238  
schistosomal dermatitis in, 709  
tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233  
trichinosis in outbreaks of, 617  
tularemia in, 346  
Weil's disease in, 246  
Uræmia, in blackwater fever, 130  
Urban plague, 321  
Urbanization, as a factor in disease distribution, 5  
Urea stibamine, in treatment of kala-azar, 170  
Urethrae, in intramuscular injections for malaria, 103  
Urine, atebria in, test for, 102  
in cholera, 382  
in dengue fever, 315  
in louse-borne typhus, 263  
in malaria, 76  
in plague, 334  
in rat-bite fever, 240  
in relapsing fever, 229  
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 272  
in sleeping sickness, 207  
in tsutsugamushi, 277  
in Weil's disease, 250  
in yellow fever, 301  
viable *Leishmania* in, 142  
Urobilin in urine, in anemia, 823  
Urticaria, in trichinosis, 650  
'Urticaria solaris', 45  
Urticarial rash, in schistosomiasis, 720  
Uruguay, hookworm in, 608  
hydatid disease in, 738, 740  
South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192  
Uta 191 *See* Muco cutaneous Leishmaniasis  
Utah, Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271  
Vaccination, for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 274  
Vaccines, in dysentery, 420  
chronic amoebic, 441  
in treatment of filariasis, 685  
of leprosy, 514  
of undulant fever, 361  
Vagino-vesical fistula, in lymphopathia venereum, 559  
Vampire bats, as reservoirs of rabies infection, 860  
van den Bergh reaction, in anemia, 823  
in yellow fever, 300  
in sprue, 467 *et seq*  
indirect, 150  
Varicose ulcers, 548  
in differential diagnosis of yaws, 533  
Vascular system, in leprosy, 496  
Vegetable oils, 755  
Vegetables, as medium of infection in helminth infections, 539  
leafy, 755  
non-leafy, 755  
Vegetarians, 753  
Veget *See* Marmite  
VELDT SORE, 551  
in differential diagnosis of oriental sore, 186  
of yaws, 133  
'Velvety feeling', of lesions in leprosy, 56  
Venesection, 41  
in treatment of epidemic dropsy, 811  
Venereals, filariasis in, 637  
hookworm in, 608  
paragonimiasis in, 731  
pinta in, 537  
schistosomiasis in, 708  
South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192  
Verandahs, in the tropics, 28  
Vermiform appendix, ova of schistosomes in, 719  
Verruga peruana, 291  
Vervoot's medium, 217, 251, 289  
Vesical calculi, in schistosomiasis, 718  
Vesical tenesmus, in bacillary dysentery, 418  
Vesicular eruptions in yaws, 530  
Vicia faba, 130  
Vicia sativa, and lathyrism, 813  
Vincent's spirochæte in mouth in pellagra, 792  
Vioform, in treatment of chronic amoebic dysentery, 440  
Viosterol, 761  
Vipera aspis (the asp), 843  
Vipera berus (adder), 843  
Viperidae, 838, 839, 843  
venom of, 849  
Viperinae (very poisonous), 843  
Viperine bite, 851  
Viperine poisoning, differential diagnosis of, 852  
Virginia, Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271  
Visceral leishmaniasis, 137 *See* Kala-azar  
Viscerothomy in yellow fever investigations, 303

- Viscerotropic virus, 298  
 Vision centres, effect of rattlesnake venom on, 851  
 Visual purple, origin of, 752  
 Vitamin A, deficiency of, 761  
   as cause of *ulcus tropicum*, 815  
   in night-blindness, 46  
   sources of, 754  
 Vitamin B requirements of, in tropics, 754  
 Vitamin (thiamin) B<sub>1</sub>, 759  
   deficiency of, 751, 762  
   requirements of, 775  
   sources of, 775  
   synthesis of, 774  
 Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> complex deficiency 762  
   as a diagnosis of sprue 470  
 Vitamin C (ascorbic acid), 797  
   deficiency of, 751, 761  
   in treatment of blackwater fever, 132  
   in treatment of snake-bite, 855  
 Vitamin D, 6  
   requirements of, in tropics, 754  
 Vitamin K, in treatment of snake-bite 855  
 Vitamin requirements, 751  
 Vitamins failure of absorption of, as cause of sprue 465  
   in treatment of leprosy, 514  
   requirements of, in tropics, 19, 754  
   sources of, 752  
*Vitex pedunculata* extract, as a specific for treatment of blackwater fever, 131  
 Vitreous ex. Lat. morosa, 535, 582  
 Vogt-Proskauer test, 374, 402  
 Vomiting in blackwater fever, treatment of, 131  
   in cholera treatment, of, 399  
   in malaria of infants, 80  
   in trichinosis, 650  
 von Jaksch's disease, in differential diagnosis of infantile cirrhosis, 815  
 von Jaksch's syndrome, 833  
 Wales, schistosomal dermatitis in, 709  
 Wallerian degeneration of nerve fibres, in pellagra, 790  
 Walrus, as definite host of fish tapeworm infection 636  
 Washermen, exposed to infection with schistosomiasis, 711  
 Wassermann antigen, in leprosy, 489  
 Wassermann reaction, 513, 566  
   in malaria, 76  
   in pinta, 539  
   in rat-bite fever, 240  
   in yaws 528, 531  
   reversal of, as indication in treatment of yaws, 536  
 Water, as a medium of cholera infection, 375  
   as medium of helminth infection, 589  
 Water drinking of, in the tropics, 19  
 Water buffalo, as reservoir of infection with *Schistosoma*, 725  
 Water chestnut as medium of helminth infection, 589  
   source of infection in fasciolopsiasis, 735  
 Water itch 607, 608  
 Water moccasin (*Aphelrodon molossus*), 843  
 Water sores 546  
   due to hookworm infection 616  
 Water-soluble vitamins, 752  
 Water supplies in prevention of cholera, 346  
   in prevention of dracontiasis, 701  
 Weasels rat-bite fever in, 240  
 Tick-borne relapsing fever in, 234  
 West-Elch test, 259, 265, 270, 274, 275, 276, 281, 283  
 Weil's Disease 245  
   in differential diagnosis of dengue, 316  
   of malaria 81, 92  
   of yellow fever, 301  
 Wernicke's syndrome in differential diagnosis of pellagra, 794  
 West Indies berberis in 771  
 Blackwater fever in, 125  
 Glarosis in, 657  
 granuloma venereum in 563  
 pinta in 537  
 sprue in, 463  
 tropical malarial anaemia in 829  
 yaws in 525  
 yellow fever in, 266  
 Westergren method for erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), in kala-azar, 150  
 Wheat, 755  
   composition and caloric value of, 765  
 Whip snake, 841  
 Whipworm or Trichurias infection, 603  
 Whiskey, as popular cure for snake-bite, 853  
 Whitfield's ointment, 579  
 Widal tests, 282  
 Wild rats, rat-bite fever in, 239  
 Wilson-Wel-Felix test, 259  
 Wind prevailing, 5  
 Windows, in the tropics, 28  
 Wives of tropical sojourners, 20  
 WKK antigen in diagnosis of kala-azar, 166b  
 Wolf, as host of *Echinococcus*, 738  
   as reservoir of infection in paragonimiasis, 732  
 Wolf snake, 841  
 Wooden shutters, value of, in the tropics, 28  
 Work, as contributing factor in pellagra, 790  
   in the tropics, 22



- UNDULANT FEVERS, differential diagnosis of,  
from malaria, 92  
protein therapy in, non-specific, 362
- United States, abortus fever in, 363
- beriberi in institutions of, 771
- blackwater fever in, 125
- Cooley's anemia in, 832
- granuloma venereum in, 563
- myiasis in, 866
- non-tropical sprue in, 463
- pellagra in, 785, 796
- rabies in, 861
- rat-bite fever in, 238
- schistosomal dermatitis in, 709
- tick-borne relapsing fever in, 233
- trichinosis in, outbreaks of, 617
- typhoid in, 346
- Weil's disease in, 216
- Uremia, in blackwater fever, 130
- Urban plague, 324
- Urbanization, as a factor in disease distribution, 5
- Urea stibamine, in treatment of kala-azar, 170
- Urethane, in intramuscular injections for malaria, 103
- Urine, atebirin in, test for, 102
- in cholera, 382
- in dengue fever, 315
- in louse-borne typhus, 263
- in malaria, 76
- in plague, 334
- in rat bite fever, 240
- in relapsing fever, 229
- in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 272
- in sleeping sickness, 207
- in tsutsugamushi, 277
- in Weil's disease, 250
- in yellow fever, 301
- visible *Leishmania* in, 142
- Urobilin in urine, in anemia, 823
- Urticaria, in trichinosis, 650
- 'Urticaria solaris', 45
- Urticarial rash, in schistosomiasis, 720
- Uruguay, hookworm in, 608
- hydatid disease in, 738, 740
- South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192
- Uta, 191 See Muco-cutaneous Leishmaniasis
- Utah Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271
- Vaccination, for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 274
- Vaccines, in dysentery, 420
- chronic amoebic, 441
- in treatment of filariasis, 685
- of leprosy, 514
- of undulant fever, 361
- Vagino-vesical fistula, in lymphopathia venereum, 559
- Vampire bats, as reservoirs of rabies in, section 850
- van den Bergh reaction, in anemia, 823
- in yellow fever, 300
- in sprue, 467 et seq
- indirect, 150
- Varicose ulcers, 518
- in differential diagnosis of jaws, 533
- Vascular system in leprosy, 496
- Vegetable oils, 755
- Vegetables, as medium of infection in helminth infections, 589
- leafy, 755
- non-leafy, 755
- Vegetarians, 753
- Vegex See Marmite
- Velvet Sore, 551
- in differential diagnosis of oriental sore, 186
- of jaws, 133
- 'Velvety feeling', of lesions in leprosy, 56
- Venesection, 41
- in treatment of epidemic dropsy, 811
- Veneruela, filariform in, 637
- hookworm in, 608
- paragonimiasis in, 731
- pinta in, 537
- schistosomiasis in, 708
- South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 192
- Verandahs, in the tropics, 28
- Vermiform appendix, ova of schistosomes in, 719
- Verruga peruana, 291
- Vervoor's medium, 217, 251, 269
- Vesical calculi, in schistosomiasis, 718
- Vesical tenesmus, in bacillary dysentery, 418
- Vesicular eruptions in jaws, 530
- Vicia fava, 130
- Vicia sativa*, and lathyrism, 813
- Vincent's spirochete in mouth in pellagra, 792
- Vioform, in treatment of chronic amoebic dysentery, 440
- Vioosterol, 764
- Vipera aspis (the asp), 843
- Vipera berus (adder), 843
- Viperidae, 838, 839, 843
- venom of, 849
- Viperinae (very poisonous), 843
- Viperine bite, 851
- Viperine poisoning differential diagnosis of, 852
- Virginia, Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271
- Visceral leishmaniasis, 137 See Kala-azar
- Viscerotomy, in yellow fever investigations, 303

- Viscerotropic virus, 298  
 Vision centres, effect of rattlesnake venom on, 831  
 Visual purple origin of, 752  
 Vitamin A, deficiency of, 761  
     as cause of ulcus tropicum, 545  
     in night-blindness 46  
     sources of, 751  
 Vitamin B requirements of in tropics, 751  
 Vitamin (thiamin) B<sub>1</sub>, 755  
     deficiency of, 751 762  
     requirements of, 775  
     sources of, 775  
     synthesis of, 774  
 Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> complex deficiency 762  
     as a diagnosis of sprue 470  
 Vitamin C (ascorbic acid), 797  
     deficiency of, 751 764  
     in treatment of blackwater fever, 122  
     in treatment of snake-bite 855  
 Vitamin D, 6  
     requirements of in tropics, 754  
 Vitamin K, in treatment of snake-bite 855  
 Vitamin requirements 751  
 Vitamins failure of absorption of as cause of sprue 463  
     in treatment of leprosy 514  
     requirements of in tropics 10 754  
     sources of 752  
*Vitex pedunculata* extract, as a specific for treatment of blackwater fever, 131  
 Virilism on *Leucococcus*, 538, 582  
 Voges-Proskauer test 374, 402  
 Vomiting in blackwater fever, treatment of, 131  
     in cholera, treatment, of, 390  
     in malaria of infants 80  
     in trichinosis 650  
 von Jaksch's disease in differential diagnosis of infantile cirrhosis, 818  
 von Jaksch's syndrome, 833  
 Wales, schistosomal dermatitis in, 709  
 Wallerian degeneration of nerve fibres, in pellagra, 790  
 Walrus as definite host of fish tapeworm infection 636  
 Washermen, exposed to infection with schistosomiasis, 714  
 Wassermann antigen in leprosy, 489  
 Wassermann reaction, 549 566  
     in malaria, 76  
     in pinta 539  
     in rat-bite fever, 240  
     in yaws 528, 531  
     reversal of as indication in treatment of yaws, 536  
 Water, as a medium of cholera infection, 375  
     as medium of helminth infection, 589  
     Water drinking of, in the tropics, 19  
     Water buffalo, as reservoir of infection with *Schistosoma* 725  
     Water chestnut, as medium of helminth infection, 589  
         source of infection in fasciolopsiasis 735  
     Water itch, 607, 608  
     Water moccasin (*Apiktrodon mokasen*), 843  
     Water sores 546  
         due to hookworm infection 616  
     Water-soluble vitamins, 752  
     Water supplies in prevention of cholera, 386  
         in prevention of dracontiasis, 701  
     Weasels rat-bite fever in, 240  
         tick-borne relapsing fever in 234  
     Weil Felix test 259 265 270 274 275, 278, 281 285  
     Wells Disease, 245  
         in differential diagnosis of dengue, 316  
         of malaria 81, 92  
         of yellow fever, 304  
     Wernicke's syndrome in differential diagnosis of pellagra, 791  
     West Indies beriberi, in 771  
     blackwater fever in 125  
     filariasis in 657  
     granuloma venereum in 563  
     pinta in, 537  
     sprue in, 463  
     tropical macrocytic anemia in 829  
     yaws in, 525  
     yellow fever in, 256  
     Westgren method for erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) in kala-azar, 150  
     Wheat, 755  
         composition and calorie value of, 766  
     Whip snake, 811  
     Whitworm or *Trichuris* infection, 603  
     Whiskey as popular cure for snake-bite, 833  
     Whitfield's ointment, 570  
     Widal tests, 282  
     Wild rats rat-bite fever in, 239  
     Wilson-Weil-Felix test 259  
     Wind prevailing 5  
     Windows in the tropics, 28  
     Wives of tropical sojourners, 20  
     WKK antigen in diagnosis of kala-azar, 161b  
     Wolf, as host of *Echinococcus* 738  
         as reservoir of infection in paragonimiasis, 732  
     Wolf snake, 811  
     Wooden shutters, value of, in the tropics 28  
     Work, as contributing factor in pellagra, 790  
         in the tropics, 22

- Work supplementary allowances for, 748  
 Working hours, arrangement of, in the tropics 22  
 Wright's stain 566  
*Wuchereria bancrofti*, 587, 590, 591, 592, 593, 588, 589, 656  
*WUCHERERIA BANCROFTI*, FILARIASIS DUE TO, 657  
*Wuchereria malayi*, 588, 589, 591, 592, 593, 656, 657  
*WUCHERERIA BANCROFTI*, FILARIASIS DUE TO, 687  
 Wyoming, Rocky Mountain spotted fever in, 271  
 Xeno-diagnosis, in Chagas's disease, 224  
*Xenopsylla astia*, as transmitter of rat-borne plague, 331  
*Xenopsylla brasiliensis*, as transmitter of rat-borne plague, 331  
*Xenopsylla cheopis*, as transmitter of endemic typhus, 268  
     as transmitter of rat-borne plague, 331  
 Xerophthalmia, 752, 762  
     as a symptom of vitamin A deficiency, 46  
 Xerosis, 752  
 X-rays, as precipitating factor in black-water fever, 126  
     in diagnosing amebic dysentery, 438  
 Yangtze valley, schistosomiasis in, 708, 714, 715  
 Yntren, in treatment of dysentery, 416, 440  
 Yaws or FRANKFURTER, 524  
     differential diagnosis of, from leprosy, 509  
     from oriental sore, 186  
     from syphilis (Table), 533  
 Yeast, as source of vitamins, 752  
     dried or autolyzed, in prevention of pellagra, 791  
     in treatment of tropical macrocytic anemia, 828  
     vitamin content of, 767  
 Yellow discoloration of skin after atabrin, 108  
 YELLOW FEVER, 293  
     effect of nutrition in, 759  
     in differential diagnosis of dengue, 316  
     of malaria, 92  
     prophylactic inoculation against, 305  
 Yolk sac, growth of causal organism of granuloma venereum on, 564  
 Yucatan, South American muco-cutaneous leishmaniasis in, 191  
 Yugoslavia, kala-azar in, 137  
 Ziehl-Neelsen technique, of staining leprosy bacillus, 496  
 Zinc oxide, in treatment of prickly heat, 574  
 Zoologist, 538  
 Zoophilism and malaria, 70  
 Zoöprophylaxis, in malaria, 118  
 Zulus, pellagra among, 785

## AUTHOR INDEX

Page numbers which appear in italics indicate that a full reference appears at the end of the chapter in which the author's name occurs

- Acton, W. H., 104, 102, 435, 545, 665, 670,  
805, 813, 830
- Adams A R D., 167, 173
- Adler, S., 144, 147, 167, 182
- Agramonte, Aristides, 296
- Agronick, M. A., 172
- Ahmad, B., 753
- Ahmann, C F., 534
- Almeida, R. Martinez, 212
- Amster, S., 190
- Anderson J F., 204
- Anderson, K., 604
- Anderson, L. A P., 114, 813
- Andrews, F W., 400, 401
- Andrews, J., 633
- Armenteros, 537
- Arning, F., 493
- Ashburn, P. M., 313
- Ashburton, 493
- Ashford B K., 404, 615, 617
- Aylard, 137
- Augustine, Donald L., 232
- Austin, 493
- Aykroyd, W R., 740, 753, 754, 755, 773,  
782, 789, 790
- Bacot, A W., 227
- Bacque, M., 131
- Bahr, F H., 601
- Baird, S Y., 71
- Balfour, M L., 760
- Balina, 493
- Bancroft, 660
- Banerjee, D N., 231
- Bang B., 353
- Bancroft, J., 12
- Barker, F A., 240
- Barraud, P J., 144
- Barton, A L., 289
- Bastianelli, G., 61
- Bauer, J H., 298
- Bauge, R., 726
- Bayne-Jones, S., 233
- Beatie, C P., 740
- Beguét, M., 182
- Ber, M., 182
- Bergey, D H., 604
- Betache, M H., 720
- Beyan E W., 353
- Bladham, N V., 657
- Bhattacharyya J C., 123
- Blaze, 604, 609
- Bills J., 634
- Bignami, A., 61
- Bilham, 608, 708
- Birkeland I W., 633
- Birt, C., 317
- Blaisot L., 220
- Blomfield, D M., 671
- Bolton, S., 603
- Boeck W C., 420, 424, 621, 637
- Bogrow S L., 181
- Bontius, Jacob, 371, 525
- Borchardt, W., 202
- Borowsky, 181
- Bou-Ghail L., 137
- Boyd J S K., 201, 223, 400, 404
- Boyd M T., 63, 121
- Boyle, James, 121
- Bradley, H., 313
- Brady, F J., 602
- Brahmachari, U N., 158, 160, 176
- Briercliffe, 201
- Brill, N F., 230, 264
- Britton, C J. C., 821
- Bromfield, R J., 835
- Brown, H C., 232
- Brown, T McP., 233
- Bruce, Sir David, 103, 100, 353
- Brug S L., 687
- Brumpt, E., 191, 633
- Brumpt, L., 459
- Brunton, Lauder, 395
- Bundesen, H N., 426
- Burth, G E., 833
- Burga, B., 192
- Burnet, F M., 250
- Busk, 734
- Butcher, D., 93
- Wyant, W., 263
- Cadbury, W W., 1922, 12
- Campbell, H G M., 127
- Cantlie, J., 404

- Carini, A, 191, 192  
 Caronia, T, 166  
 Carrion, D A, 288  
 Carroll, James, 296  
 Carter, Vandyke, 226, 238, 657  
 Cartron, M, 181  
 Castellini, Sir Aldo, 198, 526  
 Castens, E, 704  
 Castle, W B, 464  
 Castle William, 790  
 Caventou, J B, 93  
 Celli, A, 60  
 Cerquiera, A de C., 192  
 Chadwick Edwin, 372  
 Chagas, Carlos, 217, 221  
 Chambers, H D, 529  
 Chandler, A C, 616, 643  
 Charters, A D., 545  
 Chatterjee, B C, 392, 397  
 Chatterjee, D N, 376, 435  
 Chaudhuri, R N, 167, 177, 789, 803, 811, 816  
 Chesterman, C C, 212, 213  
 Chevers, Norman, 444  
 Chitre, G D, 464  
 Chyuto, 435  
 Chopra, R N, 397, 438, 806, 808, 813, 835  
 Chowlin, J S, 855  
 Christophers, S R, 69  
 Christopherson, J B, 726  
 Cilento, 495  
 Clark, H C, 430  
 Clegg, M T., 426  
 Cleland, J B, 313  
 Clements, F W., 545  
 Cobbold, 708  
 Cochrane, R G, 455  
 Cochrane, S, 164  
 Cohn, F., 226  
 Cole, 485  
 Conseil, E 226, 259  
 Corson, J F, 200  
 Cort, W W, 719  
 Costa, P, 195  
 Councilman, W J, 428  
 Covell, G, 60, 71, 91, 114, 115, 119  
 Cox, H R, 280  
 Craig, C F, 313, 622, 642, 656, 710, 713, 723  
 Craig, C McK, 552  
 Craighead, A C, 144  
 Craigie, David, 225  
 Cram, E B, 596  
 Crowden, 26, 27  
 Crowell B C, 774  
 Cruz, 217  
 Cuica, 121  
 Culbertson, 684  
 Culpin, M, 48  
 Cunningham, D. D., 181  
 Cunningham, J, 227  
 Curry, D. P., 118  
 Dieng-rang, S, 705  
 da Matta, A, 191  
 Danielson, D C, 484, 621, 657  
 d'Antoni, J S, 605, 632  
 Darling, S T, 63  
 da Rocha-Lima, H, 259  
 Das Gupta, B M, 71, 93, 239, 239, 240, 242, 247, 248, 249, 429, 454  
 Das Gupta, C. R, 12, 150, 159, 615, 618, 672 821, 834  
 da Silva, R, 192  
 Daubney, R., 310  
 Daude, J, 211  
 Davis, D D, 859  
 Davis, G E, 290  
 Dean, 485  
 Degotte, J., 465  
 de Haas, J. R, 709  
 de Laogen, C. D, 485  
 Delmotte, H, 485  
 Demaraquay, 660  
 deMouibreun, W. A, 554  
 deMonte, A J. H, 381, 396, 397  
 Denney, O E, 455  
 Derrick, E H, 259, 279  
 De Souza Araujo, H E., 485, 522  
 De Souza Campos, 485  
 de Vasconcellos, A., 192  
 de Vogel, W., 341  
 Dej, N. C, 599  
 Dharmendra, 453, 458, 459, 522  
 d'Herelle, F, 112  
 Díaz, C Jiménez, 812, 813  
 Di Cristina, G, 166  
 Dienst, R B, 500  
 Diggs, L W, 832  
 Ditmar, R L., 859  
 Dobell, C, 426, 429, 438, 454  
 Doerr, R, 317  
 Donath, W F, 774  
 Donatien, A, 182  
 Donovan, C, 563  
 Dostrowsky, A, 181  
 Drbohlav, J, 428  
 Drummond, J. C., 793  
 Dubini, 608  
 Dubois, A, 485  
 Dubowskoj, P Y, 187  
 Duke, H L, 199  
 Duncan, Andrew, 444  
 Durand, M, 555  
 Durand, P, 266  
 Dutton, J E, 199, 233  
 Dyer, B R, 26, 357, 414  
 Dyer, J I, 485  
 Dyer, R E, 268, 269

- Edwards M J Neal 477 821 831  
 Eilers F., 483  
 Eijkman C., 773  
 Eilers C., 474  
 Elvehjem C A., 787  
 Ehllich Paul 211  
 Faconel F., 229  
 Esterer M B., 513  
 Evans B D F., 829  
 Evans G I 3  
  
 Fairley N Hamilton 124 472 474 475  
 Faust F C 479 430 605 622 626 630  
 619 660 710 713 715 723 729  
 Favre M., 835  
 Fedtschenko GO 691  
 Felix A., 259  
 Fendlerber M B 11  
 Fernandez J M M., 483 488  
 Filinas 483  
 Field J W., 87 88  
 Findlay G M 93 856  
 Finlay Carlos 229  
 Fletcher W., 359 365 366 773  
 Flexner S 400  
 Forde R M., 198 199  
 Forkner C F 149 150  
 Foshay I 346 350  
 Foster I P., 834  
 Fox H., 657 828 835  
 Francis F., 3, 3  
 Francis I., 317  
 Franz K 317  
 Fraser G 67  
 Fraser H 773  
 Fraser 485  
 Frazer C N., 267  
 Freeman M 251  
 Frei W 856  
 Fröhlich T., 708  
 Fullerborn F 630  
 Funk C 774 787  
 Futaki H., 287 297  
  
 Gamna C., 600  
 Gardener A D., 573  
 Garnham P C., 310  
 Gauthier J C 327  
 Gay Prieto J A 656  
 Gear J 276  
 Geiger B 813  
 George P V 338  
 Gerlard W W., 258  
 Ghosh B N 73  
 Ghosh G 414  
 Gibbins F G 215  
 Giles G M 137  
 Girdes R 721  
 Godding C C 655  
 Goldberger J 204 787  
 Goldsmith Grace 765  
 Golgi 60  
 Goodall J., 191 194  
 Goodpasture J W., 604  
 Gore H K 735  
 Gothlin 800  
 Goyal R K., 811  
 Goyle A N 2, 5  
 Grace A W 659 670  
 Grace F B 670  
 Graham H 515  
 Granett P 119  
 Graser B 61 608  
 Green N K 638  
 Grival 161b  
 Grjns G 773  
 Gupta J C 151  
 Gupta S K 375 381 397  
  
 Hackett C J 824  
 Hackett I W 60 117  
 Haffkine 341  
 Haggis G W 93  
 Haller K C 158 184  
 Hall M C 605 623  
 Hall M W 913  
 Hanes F M 47  
 Hansen G A 484 485 821  
 Hardy A V 476  
 Hasselmann C M 537  
 Hata 526  
 Hayashi F 483 488  
 Haworth 798  
 Heberg 373  
 Heibelberger 211  
 Heitz R., 241 618  
 Heiman F R 244  
 Heiser Victor 483 625  
 Hellerstrom S 856  
 Henderson J M., 159 225 483 859  
 Henderson I H 140 141 167  
 Henler P G 821  
 Herrejon S G 637 838  
 Hettell W F 2, 4  
 Hertig M., 144  
 Hewelt ne 485  
 Hilary William 472 657  
 Hunle J 147 305  
 Hux P H., 400 401  
 Hutchens A P 313  
 Hodgkin F P 89  
 Hoepflich R., 717 739  
 Hoff H., 641  
 Hoff and Shabey 511  
 Hoffmann 485  
 Hollman 485  
 Hold A 798  
 Holt J F 776 789  
 Hopkins R 483  
 Hon P C 147  
 Houghton F C 11

- Carini A, 191, 192  
 Caronia, T, 166  
 Carrion, D A, 288  
 Carroll, James, 296  
 Carter, Vandjke, 226, 238, 657  
 Cartron, M, 181  
 Castellani, Sir Aldo, 198, 526  
 Castens, E, 704  
 Castle, W B, 464  
 Castle, William, 790  
 Caventou, J B, 93  
 Celli, A, 60  
 Cerquiera, A de C, 192  
 Chidwick Edwin, 372  
 Chagas, Carlos, 217, 221  
 Chambers, H D, 626  
 Chandler, A C, 616, 643  
 Charters A D, 645  
 Chatterjee, B C, 392, 397  
 Chatterjee, D N, 376, 485  
 Chaudhuri, R N, 167, 177, 769, 803, 811, 816  
 Chesterman, C C, 212, 213  
 Chevers, Norman, 444  
 Chitre, G D, 464  
 Chiyuto, 485  
 Chopra, R N, 397, 436, 805, 806, 813, 855  
 Chowhau, J S, 856  
 Christophers, S R, 69  
 Christopherson, J B, 726  
 Cilento, 485  
 Clark, H C, 430  
 Clegg, M T, 426  
 Cleland, J B, 313  
 Clements, F W, 645  
 Cobbold, 708  
 Cochrane, R G, 485  
 Cochrane, S, 164  
 Cohn, F., 226  
 Cole, 485  
 Conseil, E., 226, 259  
 Corson, J F, 209  
 Cort, W W, 719  
 Costa, P, 195  
 Councilman, W. J., 426  
 Covell, G, 60, 71, 91, 114, 115, 119  
 Cox, H R, 230  
 Craig, C F, 313, 622, 649, 666, 710, 713, 723  
 Craig, C McK, 562  
 Craighend, A C, 144  
 Craigie, David, 225  
 Cram, E B, 506  
 Crowden, 26, 27  
 Crowell B C, 774  
 Cruz, 217  
 Cuica, 121  
 Culbertson, 684  
 Culpin, M, 48  
 Cunningham, D. D, 181  
 Cunningham, J, 227  
 Curry, D. P, 118  
 Dieng-vang, S, 705  
 da Matta, A, 191  
 Danielsen, D C, 484, 621, 657  
 d'Antoni, J. S, 605, 632  
 Darling, S. T, 63  
 da Rocha-Lima, H, 259  
 Das Gupta, B M, 71, 93, 233, 237, 240, 242, 247, 248, 249, 429, 454  
 Das Gupta, C. R, 12, 150, 159, 615, 618, 672 821, 834  
 da Silveira, R, 192  
 Daubney, R, 310  
 Daude, J, 211  
 Davis, D D, 859  
 Davis, G E, 289  
 Deao, 485  
 Degotte, J., 485  
 de Haas, J R, 769  
 de Langen, C D, 485  
 Delhooite, H, 485  
 Demaraquay, 660  
 deMontbreun, W. A, 664  
 deMoote, A J H., 391, 396, 397  
 Deoney, O E, 485  
 Derrick, F. H, 259, 279  
 De Souza Araujo, H E, 485, 622  
 De Souza Campos, 485  
 de Vasconcellos, A., 192  
 de Vogel, W., 341  
 Dey, N C, 650  
 Dharmendra, 485, 488, 489, 522  
 d'Herelle, F, 112  
 Diaz, C. Jimémez, 812, 813  
 Di Cristina, G., 166  
 Dicourt, R B, 666  
 Diggs, L W, 832  
 Ditmar, R L., 859  
 Dobell, C., 426, 429, 438, 454  
 Doerr, R, 317  
 Donath, W F., 774  
 Donatien, A., 182  
 Donovan, C, 663  
 Dostrowsky, A, 181  
 Drbohlav, J, 428  
 Drummond, J C., 798  
 Dubini, 608  
 Dubois, A, 485  
 Dubowskoj, P. J, 187  
 Duke, H L., 199  
 Duncan, Andrew, 444  
 Durand, M., 655  
 Durand, P, 266  
 Dutton, J E, 199, 233  
 Dyer, B R, 28, 387, 414  
 Dyer, J. I, 485  
 Dyer, R E, 268, 269

- Edwards, M. I. Neal, 628, 477, 821, 831  
 Ehlers, E., 483  
 Eijkman, C., 773  
 Elders, C., 464  
 Elvehjem, C. A., 787  
 Ehrlich, Paul, 211  
 Escoroch, L., 292  
 Esterer, M. B., 815  
 Evans, B. D. F., 829  
 Evans, G., 198  
  
 Fairley, N. Hamilton, 183, 462, 464, 473, 762, 828  
 Faust, E. C., 429, 436, 605, 622, 628, 630, 649, 666, 710, 713, 715, 723, 729  
 Favre, M., 835  
 Fedtschenko, G., 691  
 Felix, A., 252  
 Ferderber, M. B., 11  
 Fernandez, J. M. M., 483, 489  
 Fidanza, 483  
 Field, J. W., 87, 98  
 Firdlay, G. M., 395, 636  
 Finlay, Carlos, 299  
 Fletcher, W., 237, 363, 366, 773  
 Flexner, S., 400  
 Forde, R. M., 198, 199  
 Forkner, C. E., 142, 150  
 Foshay, L., 316, 350  
 Foster, L. P., 834  
 Fox, H., 837, 838, 845  
 Francis, E., 345  
 Francis, I., 317  
 Franz, K., 317  
 Fraser, G., 687  
 Fraser, H., 773  
 Fraser, 483  
 Frazer, C. N., 762  
 Freeman, M., 259  
 Frei, W., 636  
 Fröhlich, T., 798  
 Fullerton, F., 630  
 Funk, C., 774, 787  
 Futaki, K., 238, 249  
  
 Gamna, C., 654  
 Gardener, A. D., 375  
 Garnham, P. C., 510  
 Gauthier, J. C., 527  
 Gay-Prieto, J. A., 659  
 Gear, J., 275  
 Geiger, B., 813  
 George, P. V., 532  
 Gerhard, W. W., 268  
 Ghosh, B. N., 73  
 Ghosh, G., 414  
 Gibbins, E. G., 216  
 Giles, G. M., 137  
 Girges, R., 721  
 Godding, C. C., 655  
 Goldberger, J., 294, 787  
 Goldsmith, Grace, 765  
 Golgi, 60  
 Goodall, J., 181, 184  
 Goodpasture, E. W., 864  
 Gore, H. K., 755  
 Gothlin, 800  
 Goyal, R. K., 811  
 Goyle, A. N., 248  
 Grace, A. W., 552, 670  
 Grace, F. B., 670  
 Graham, H., 515  
 Granett, P., 119  
 Grawe, B., 61, 608  
 Green, N. K., 639  
 Grevat, 16th  
 Grijsse, G., 773  
 Gupta, J. C., 131  
 Gupta, S. K., 575, 581, 597  
  
 Hackett, C. J., 614  
 Hackett, L. W., 60, 117  
 Haikine, 311  
 Haggis, G. W., 91  
 Hablar, K. C., 158, 194  
 Hall, M. C., 615, 625  
 Hall, M. W., 315  
 Hanes, I. M., 467  
 Hansen, G. A., 484, 485, 621  
 Harby, A. V., 426  
 Haselmann, C. M., 532  
 Hata, 526  
 Havaki, F., 483, 622  
 Haworth, 798  
 Heberg, 373  
 Heidelberg, 211  
 Heilig, R., 294, 618  
 Hedman, F. R., 246  
 Heiser, Victor, 485, 625  
 Hellerstrom, S., 559  
 Henderson, J. M., 150, 225, 485, 652  
 Henderson, L. H., 140, 141, 167  
 Hencke, P. G., 621  
 Herrejon, S. G., 637, 538  
 Herrell, W. E., 244  
 Hertig, M., 144  
 Heweltine, 495  
 Hilary, William, 462, 657  
 Hinde, E., 147, 305  
 Hise, P. H., 400, 401  
 Hitchens, A. P., 313  
 Hodgekin, E. P., 98  
 Hocppli, R., 717, 730  
 Hoff, H., 641  
 Hoff and Shabey, 541  
 Hoffmann, 485  
 Hoffman, 495  
 Holst, A., 798  
 Holt, J. E., 775, 789  
 Hopkins, R., 495  
 Hou, P. C., 147  
 Houghton, F. C., 11



- Howard, A, 813  
 Hu, C K, 762  
 Huddleson, I F, 359  
 Hudson, E H, 533, 541  
 Hudson, J R, 310  
 Hudson, Paul, 295  
 Hughes, M L, 353  
 Huguer D C, 556  
 Hunt, E H, 39  
 Hunter, T A A, 235  
 Huque, A, 765  
 Hurst, A, 464  
 Hutchinson, Jonathan, 485, 491, 495
- Ido, Y, 254  
 Inada, R, 240, 253  
 Inchaustegui, A, 193  
 Inman, A C, 400, 404  
 Ito, H, 254  
 Iyengar, M O T, 601, 603, 605, 637
- Jackon, D, 854  
 Jacobs, L, 653  
 Jacobs and Heidelberger, 211  
 Jadassohn, J, 455, 521  
 James, S P, 63, 78, 121  
 Jameson, W W, 10  
 Jansen, B C P, 774  
 Jeanselme, Ed, 485, 521  
 Jessner, M, 180  
 Jimbo, K, 632
- Kamath, A V, 806  
 Kaposi, Moriz, 521  
 Kartulis, S, 426, 444  
 Kean, B H, 12  
 Keefer, C S, 353  
 Kellaway, C H, 857  
 Kennedy, J A, 543  
 Kerandel, Jean François, 211  
 Kerr, K B, 615, 653  
 Ketelaer, Vincentius, 462  
 Khalil, M, 726  
 Khaw, O K, 729  
 Kikuth, W, 289  
 King A F A, 61  
 King C G, 798  
 Kinghorn, A, 193, 205  
 Kingsbury, A Neave, 108  
 Kirk, R, 144, 157, 164, 167, 171, 192  
 Kirwan, E O G, 153  
 Kitchen, S F, 76  
 Kleine, F K, 199  
 Klingmuller, V, 485, 521  
 Klotz, O, 193  
 Knipe, F W, 116  
 Knowles R, 144, 235, 248, 429, 850  
 Koch, R, 372 373, 390, 444  
 Kohlbrugge 464  
 Kolle W 388  
 Kondi A 828 835
- Koppich, E, 718  
 Krishnan, B G, 773, 782  
 Krishnan, K V, 163  
 Krishnaswami, C S, 303  
 Kruse, W, 400  
 Kupper, W H, 70
- Laffeur, H A, 429  
 Lahiri, M N, 215  
 Lal, R B, 350, 806, 807, 811  
 Lal, S, 464  
 Lambi W, 451  
 Lampe, 455  
 Lamprell, B A, 99  
 Landazuri, F Ortiz de, 815  
 Lane, C A, 620, 663  
 Lapping, D, 410  
 Lara, 485  
 Lawrow, A P, 187  
 Layne, J. A., 790  
 Lascar, Jesse, 296  
 Leach, 625  
 Lebert, 226  
 Ledentu, G, 211  
 Lehmann, J, 789  
 Leiper, R T, 661, 670, 694, 708  
 Leistner, Z A, 464  
 Leon y Blanco, F, 533  
 Lesser, J E, 259  
 Leuckart, R., 617  
 Levaditi, C, 550  
 Lewis, D J, 144  
 Lewis, H B, 815  
 Lewis, M., 243  
 Lewis T, 660  
 Lewthwaite, R., 259, 277  
 Lie, 485  
 Lindenber, A., 191, 192, 193  
 Lippmann, A, 1942, 14  
 Linton, W Glen, 694, 698, 702  
 Livingstone, D, 198, 233  
 Lloyd, R B, 71, 146  
 Loewenthal, L J A, 762  
 Loft, C, 485, 521  
 Looss, 603  
 Losch, 426  
 Low, G C, 660, 664  
 Lowe, J, 78, 322 485, 521, 522, 785  
 Luisada, A, 150
- Macdonald, 485  
 Macdonald D R, 167  
 Machado, 166 195  
 Mackie, F P., 142, 226, 462, 464, 823  
 Mackie, T T, 470  
 Maclean, 444  
 Macnamara, 374 438  
 Magath T B 725  
 Majumdar, D N, 618  
 Malik K S, 375

- Manalarg, J., 483  
 Manson, Patrick, 2, 60, 61, 151, 180, 462,  
 660, 694, 703  
 Mansou-Bahr, Sir Philip, 77, 427, 440, 468,  
 473, 484, 660, 816  
 Maplestone, P. A., 880, 881, 892, 618, 629,  
 631, 641, 647, 641, 687, 682, 704  
 Marchafava, H., 60  
 Marchoux, E., 485  
 Marshall, F. K., 12  
 Marshall, W. F., 157  
 Marston, J. A., 333  
 Martin, C. J., 327  
 Martin, P., 453  
 Marznowsky, F. I., 181, 183, 184  
 Mason, H. L., 783  
 Maxcy, K. F., 232, 268  
 Maxwell, James, 483  
 Mayer, M., 259  
 Mayne, Bruce, 118  
 Mazza, S., 193, 219, 221  
 McAllister, Joan, 231  
 McCallum, F. O., 903  
 McCarrison, Sir Robert, 114, 751, 762  
 McConnell, J. F. P., 727  
 McCoy, O. W., 345, 483  
 McDonagh, J. E. R., 726  
 McDonald, W., 315  
 McKee, C. M., 852  
 McKendrick, A. O., 863  
 McKinley, E. B., 483, 622  
 McLeod, J. A., 719  
 McLeod, K., 663  
 Mechel, J. H., 73  
 Megaw, Sir John W. D., 102, 279, 288,  
 289, 290, 291, 283, 313  
 Meleney, H. E., 715  
 Menk, W., 433  
 Mewer, A., 11  
 Mian, A. S., 377  
 Michael, P., 679  
 Migone, L. E., 192  
 Mills, C. A., 15, 775  
 Minuroli, A., 61  
 Mitchell, 485  
 Mitra, D. D., 755  
 Mitra, K., 755  
 Mitsuda, 485, 488, 622  
 Miyagawa, Y., 889, 708  
 Miyani, 708  
 Moiser, B., 485  
 Molerworth, 485  
 Montel, M. L. R., 485  
 Montgomery, R. E., 510  
 Moorthy, V. N., 702  
 Morgan, F. G., 857  
 Mortara, F., 660  
 Muhlen, P., 453  
 Muir, E., 151, 157, 160, 621, 622  
 Mukerji, A. K., 800, 641  
 Musgrave, W. E., 400, 426  
 Naidu, V. R., 234  
 Najar, V. A., 778, 789  
 Napier, L. F., 12, 71, 93, 127, 145, 144, 149,  
 159, 188, 189, 192, 196, 187, 184, 261, 255,  
 378, 391, 410, 477, 618, 618, 629, 672,  
 760, 782, 808, 821, 822, 823, 831, 834  
 Narayanamurthi, K., 817  
 Neal-Edwards, M. I., 410, 400  
 Nepveu, 193  
 Neubert, 433  
 Newman, G., 828  
 Nicholls, L., 762  
 Nicol, C. M., 760, 798  
 Nicol, W. D., 78  
 Nicolas, J., 835  
 Nicolle, C., 181, 220, 252  
 Nielsen, H. E., 789  
 Niven, J. C., 98  
 Noruchi, H., 147, 195, 250, 289, 298, 304,  
 826  
 Nolasco, 483  
 Nunemaker, J. C., 233  
 Nuttall, G. H. F., 327  
 Obermeier, O., 226  
 O'Connor, F. W., 454, 604, 670  
 O'Flynn, E. G., 326  
 Ogata, M., 320  
 Orini, O., 192  
 Oiler, Sir William, 426, 444  
 Otten, L., 311  
 Otto, G. F., 618  
 Parkharian, A., 217, 249  
 Paldrock, 485  
 Panja, D., 894  
 Panja, G., 546  
 Paranhos, U., 191, 192  
 Parks, 433  
 Parkinson, G. S., 10  
 Parona, 608  
 Parrot, L., 188  
 Parsons, H. J., 813  
 Pasricha, C. L., 326, 327, 484, 811  
 Patton, W. S., 147, 183  
 Payne, F., 635  
 Payne, G. C., 635  
 Pedrosa, A., 193  
 Pelletier, Pierre-Joseph, 93, 488  
 Perez-Fontana, V., 739, 740  
 Pewoa, S. B., 194  
 Pestana, B. R., 194  
 Peter, F. M., 166  
 Pillai, V. M., 688  
 Plummer, H. G., 211  
 Pons, J. A., 721  
 Pouchet, Félix Archimede, 372  
 Pound, R. E., 470  
 Powell, A., 700  
 Proca, B., 805  
 Fromman, C., 705

- Pulvirenti, 179  
 Pundit C G, 751  
 Pym, Sir William, 317  
  
 Rachmulewitz, M, 167  
 Radcliffe-Crocker, 485  
 Radna, 485  
 Raghavachari, T N S, 751  
 Rai Chaudhuri, M N, 167  
 Raja, K C K E, 339  
 Rake, G, 559  
 Ramay, G W St C, 701  
 Ransome, B H, 696  
 Rao, S Sundara, 656, 660, 661, 665, 670,  
     672, 683, 685, 687, 688, 697, 698, 816  
 Rao, T R, 116  
 Ray, P N, 665  
 Raybaud, A, 527  
 Rebello, 435  
 Reed, A C, 438  
 Reed, Walter, 290  
 Reichstein, T, 793  
 Rhoads C P, 464  
 Riley, W A, 740  
 Robinson, H M, 667  
 Robinson, J M, 567  
 Roda, E, 816  
 Rouriquet, J N, 435  
 Rogers, Sir Leonard, 42, 137, 147, 166, 325,  
     379, 381, 390, 395, 396, 397, 435, 438, 444,  
     445, 521, 683  
 Rose, 435, 634  
 Ross Sir Ronald, 2, 61, 137, 296  
 Rotberg, A, 485, 522  
 Roy, D N, 422, 547, 866, 867  
 Rush Benjamin, 313  
 Russell A J H, 330, 338  
 Russell F, 400, 404  
 Russell, P F, 116  
 Russell, Sir Alexander, 759  
 Ruttie, John, 225  
 Rytie, G A, 485, 598  
  
 Salisbury, 660  
 Sarabon, 708  
 Sami M A, 738, 740  
 Santra, J, 485  
 Sarkar, S L, 806  
 Sati, M H, 157, 164, 167, 171  
 Savoor, S R, 259, 277  
 Sawitz, W G, 605, 733  
 Sawyer, W A, 305  
 Schaudinn F, 426  
 Schmidt Hans, 168, 177  
 Schmidt, K P, 859  
 Schockov, N F, 181, 183  
 Scholl, A J, 39  
 Schottmuller, H, 238  
 Schourenkoff, A I, 183, 184  
 Schuffner, 625  
 Schuyman, 485  
  
 Selldemann, Professor, 93  
 Schutze, H, 343  
 Scott, H H, 124, 372  
 Scudder, J, 381  
 Sellards, A W, 259, 420  
 Sen, A K, 811  
 Sen, G N, 169, 167  
 Senekpie, Harry A, 164b, 539, 740  
 Sen Gupta, P C, 150, 164b, 167, 808  
 Sergeant, Fd and Fl., 182  
 Shaby, J A, 641  
 Shaffer, M F, 659  
 Shah, M H, 180  
 Shannon, 121  
 Shattuck, G C, 238  
 Shee, J C, 318  
 Sheldon, J H, 647  
 Shiga, K, 400  
 Shorten, J A, 834  
 Shortt, H E, 142, 144, 317, 751  
 Shute, P G, 78  
 Sicre, A, 181  
 Siler, J F, 313  
 Simon, 455  
 Simond, P L, 325  
 Simonsen, J L, 813  
 Simpson, J Y, 521  
 Singh, Narindra, 755  
 Sinton J A, 75, 104, 121, 145  
 Sitanala, 435  
 Smith, E C, 671  
 Smith, R O A, 71, 144, 153  
 Sokhev, S S, 342, 821  
 Sonne, 400  
 Soule, 435  
 Southby, R, 215  
 Sparrow, H, 206  
 Spector, B K, 426  
 Spies, Tom D, 775  
 Splendore, A, 102  
 Stannus, H S, 656  
 Stanton, A T, 365, 366, 773  
 Steenbock, H, 813  
 Stein, 435  
 Stephens, J W W, 199  
 Stephenson, R W, 167  
 Stiles, 608  
 Stille, A, 258  
 Stockman, R J, 813  
 Stokes, Adrain, 298  
 Strachan, 485  
 Stratman-Thomas, W K, 63  
 Strickland, C, 71, 867  
 Strong, R P, 288, 341, 342, 774  
 Sullin S E, 559  
 Sundararajan, A R, 782  
 Sundra, Rao, S See Rao S Sundra  
 Suskind, F H, 559  
 Suzuki, 708  
 Swaminath, C S, 144  
 Swaminathan, M, 783

- Swaroop, S., 389  
 Sweet, W. C., 688, 702  
 Swynnerton, C F M., 109  
 Symes C H., 215  
 Szent-Györgyi, A., 728  
  
 Takaki, 773  
 Tausig, S., 317  
 Taylor, Sir John, 248, 375  
 Terrell, Charles 806, 810  
 Thayer, T. E. H., 402  
 Treiler, M., 238, 303  
 Theodor, O., 144, 182  
 Thomas, 211  
 Thompson, J A., 485  
 Thomson, D S B., 137  
 Thomson, J D., 211  
 Tinnurthi, T S., 817  
 Tresselt, 485  
 Todd, J L., 221  
 Tonkin, 485  
 Topley, W W C., 228, 350, 402  
 Topping, N H., 313  
 Traut, J., 253  
 Triana 537  
 Tropp, C., 102  
 Turkhud, D A 694, 698  
 Tyzzer, E F., 220  
  
 Uhlenhuth, P., 246  
 Unna, P. G., 483  
  
 van der Burg, C L., 462  
 Vedder, E B., 438, 490, 774  
 Venkatraman, K V., 573  
 Verboort, 625  
 Vienna, G., 166, 192, 195  
 Vilela, F., 192, 194, 194  
 Virchow, R., 73, 485, 511, 617  
 von Jauregg Wagner, 121  
 von Prowazek, S., 259  
  
 Wade, H W., 485, 522  
 Wagle, P M., 345  
  
 Walker, F. L., 420  
 Walche F M R., 652  
 Wani H., 254  
 Wandle, R A 638  
 Wassen E., 652  
 Watson, Cecil J., 700  
 Waugh W A., 708  
 Webb E. L., 76  
 Webster L. T., 802  
 Webster W J., 332  
 Weigl, R 209  
 Weil A., 240  
 Weil E., 259  
 Weiner, 451  
 Weinland, 708  
 Weinman D., 250, 270  
 Weiss, W., 102  
 Wenson, C M., 142, 154, 426  
 Whithy, L. E. H., 221  
 Whitmore, A., 265  
 Wilder, R M., 232, 753  
 Williams, R D., 774  
 Williams, R R., 775  
 Wills, Lucy, 828  
 Wilson 483  
 Wilson G S., 238, 252, 350, 402  
 Wilson, H Ellis C., 755, 807  
 Winckel, C W F., 121, 600  
 Winsor, T., 221  
 Wollbach, S B., 232  
 Wright, 160  
 Wright, J H., 181  
 Wright, W H., 602, 607  
 Wucherer, 600  
  
 Yaglou, C P., 11  
 Yakunoff, W L., 181, 183  
 Yerrin, A., 326  
 Yorke, Warrington, 167, 201, 205, 211, 213  
 219  
 Young, C W., 144  
  
 Zia, I. S., 142, 150  
 Zimmer, H., 261, 265, 269, 269

- Pulvirenti, 179  
 Pundit, C G, 751  
 Pym, Sir William, 317  
  
 Rachmilewitz, M, 167  
 Radcliffe-Crocker, 485  
 Radon, 485  
 Raghavachari, T N S, 751  
 Rai Ghaudhuri, M N, 167  
 Raja, K C K E, 350  
 Rake, G, 559  
 Ramsay, G W St C, 701  
 Ransome, B H, 599  
 Rao, S Sundara, 650, 660, 661, 665, 670, 672, 683, 685, 687, 688, 697, 698, 816  
 Rao, T R, 116  
 Ray, P N, 665  
 Raybaud, A, 327  
 Rebello, 485  
 Reed, A C, 433  
 Reed, Walter, 290  
 Reichstein, T, 793  
 Rhoads, C P, 464  
 Riley, W A, 740  
 Robinson, H M, 607  
 Robinson, J M, 607  
 Roda, E, 816  
 Rodriguez, J N, 485  
 Rogers, Sir Leonard, 42, 137, 147, 166, 325, 379, 381, 390, 395, 396, 397, 435, 438, 441, 445, 521, 683  
 Rose, 485, 684  
 Rose, Sir Ronald, 2, 61, 137, 296  
 Rotberg, A, 485, 522  
 Roy, D N, 422, 547, 866, 867  
 Rush, Benjamin, 313  
 Russell, A J H, 350, 388  
 Russell F, 400, 404  
 Russell, P F, 116  
 Russell, Sir Alexander, 759  
 Rutty, John, 225  
 Rytie, G A, 485, 598  
  
 Salisbury, 660  
 Sambon, 708  
 Sami, M A, 738, 740  
 Santra, J, 485  
 Sarkar, S L, 806  
 Sati, M H, 157, 164, 167, 171  
 Savor, S R, 259, 277  
 Sawitz, W G, 605, 739  
 Sawyer, W A, 305  
 Schaudinn, F, 426  
 Schmidt, Hans, 166, 177  
 Schmidt, K P, 859  
 Schockov, N F, 181, 183  
 Scholl, A J, 39  
 Schottmuller, H, 238  
 Schourenkoff, A I, 183, 184  
 Schuffner, 625  
 Schuyman, 485  
  
 Seifemann, Professor, 93  
 Schutze, H, 343  
 Scott, H H, 124, 372  
 Seudder, J, 331  
 Sellards, A. W., 259, 420  
 Sen, A K, 811  
 Sen, G N, 159, 167  
 Senekjue, Harry A, 16th, 539, 740  
 Sen Gupta, P. C., 150, 164b, 167, 808  
 Sergeant, Ed and Et., 182  
 Shalby, J. A, 541  
 Shaffer, M F, 559  
 Shah, M H., 180  
 Shannon, 121  
 Shattuck, G C., 233  
 Shee, J. C., 318  
 Sheldon, J H, 647  
 Shiga, K, 400  
 Shorten, J A, 834  
 Shortt, H. E., 142, 144, 317, 751  
 Shute, P. G., 78  
 Siere, A., 181  
 Siler, J. F., 313  
 Simon, 485  
 Simond, P. L., 325  
 Simonson, J. L., 815  
 Simpson, J. Y., 521  
 Singh, Narindra, 755  
 Sinton J A, 73, 101, 121, 145  
 Sitanaka, 485  
 Smith, E. C., 571  
 Smith, R O. A., 71, 144, 153  
 Sokhey, S S., 342, 521  
 Sonne, 400  
 Soule, 485  
 Southby, R., 215  
 Sparrow, H., 200  
 Spector, B K, 426  
 Spies, Tom D, 775  
 Splendore, A., 192  
 Stannus, H S., 556  
 Stanton, A T., 365, 366, 773  
 Steenbock, H., 815  
 Stem, 485  
 Stephens, J W. W., 199  
 Stephenson, R W., 167  
 Stiles, 608  
 Stille, A., 253  
 Stockman, R J, 813  
 Stokes, Adrain, 293  
 Strachan, 485  
 Stratman-Thomas, W. K., 63  
 Strickland, G., 71, 867  
 Strong, R P, 288, 341, 342, 774  
 Sulkim S E., 559  
 Sundararajan, A R, 782  
 Sundra, Rao, S See Rao S Sunda  
 Suckind, F H, 559  
 Suzuki, 708  
 Swaminath, G S, 144  
 Swaminathan, M, 738

- Swaroop, S., 389  
 Sweet, W. C., 683, 702  
 Swynneston, C F M., 199  
 Symes, C B., 215  
 Szent-Györgyi, A., 798  
  
 Takaki, 773  
 Tatuwig, S., 317  
 Taylor, Sir John, 248, 373  
 Terrell, Charles, 806, 810  
 Thayer, T. E. H., 462  
 Thetler, M., 238, 305  
 Theodor, O., 144, 152  
 Thomas, 211  
 Thompson, J A., 483  
 Thomson, D S B., 157  
 Thomson J D., 211  
 Timmurthi, T S., 317  
 Tiscuil, 483  
 Todd, J L., 233  
 Tonkin, 493  
 Topley, W W C., 238, 356, 402  
 Topping, N H., 315  
 Traum, J., 353  
 Triana, 337  
 Tropp, C., 102  
 Turkhud, D A., 674, 679  
 Tysler, E E., 220  
  
 Uhlenhuth, P., 246  
 Ussa, P. G., 493  
  
 van der Burg, C L., 462  
 Vedder, E. B., 438, 466, 774  
 Venkatraman, K V., 373  
 Vervoort, 625  
 Vanna, G., 166, 192, 193  
 Villela, F., 192, 193, 194  
 Vurhow, R., 73, 493, 521, 647  
 von Jauregg Wagner, 121  
 von Prowazek, S., 259  
  
 Wade, H W., 485, 522  
 Wagle, P. M., 349  
  
 Walker, E L., 420  
 Walche F M R., 552  
 Wani H., 254  
 Wardle R A., 638  
 Wassen, E., 556  
 Watson Cecil J., 799  
 Waugh W A., 793  
 Webb E L., 76  
 Webster L T., 862  
 Webster W J., 332  
 Weigl R., 266  
 Weil A., 246  
 Weil E., 259  
 Weiner, 494  
 Weinland, 708  
 Wenman D., 236, 290  
 Weise, W., 162  
 Wenyon C M., 182, 184, 426  
 Whithy L F H., 821  
 Whitmore, A., 305  
 Wilder R M., 259, 783  
 Williams R D., 774  
 Williams, R R., 773  
 Willis, Lucy., 823  
 Wilson., 433  
 Wilson G S., 233, 259, 358, 402  
 Wilson, H Ellis C., 753, 607  
 Winkel C W F., 121, 660  
 Winsor, T., 833  
 Wolbach, S B., 259  
 Wright, 160  
 Wright, J H., 181  
 Wright, W H., 602, 607  
 Wucherer, 660  
  
 Yaxlou, C P., 11  
 Yakimoff, W L., 181, 183  
 Yersin, A., 326  
 Yorke, Warrington, 167, 201, 205, 211, 213, 219  
 Young, C W., 144  
  
 Zin, L S., 142, 150  
 Zinsser, H., 264, 255, 263, 269